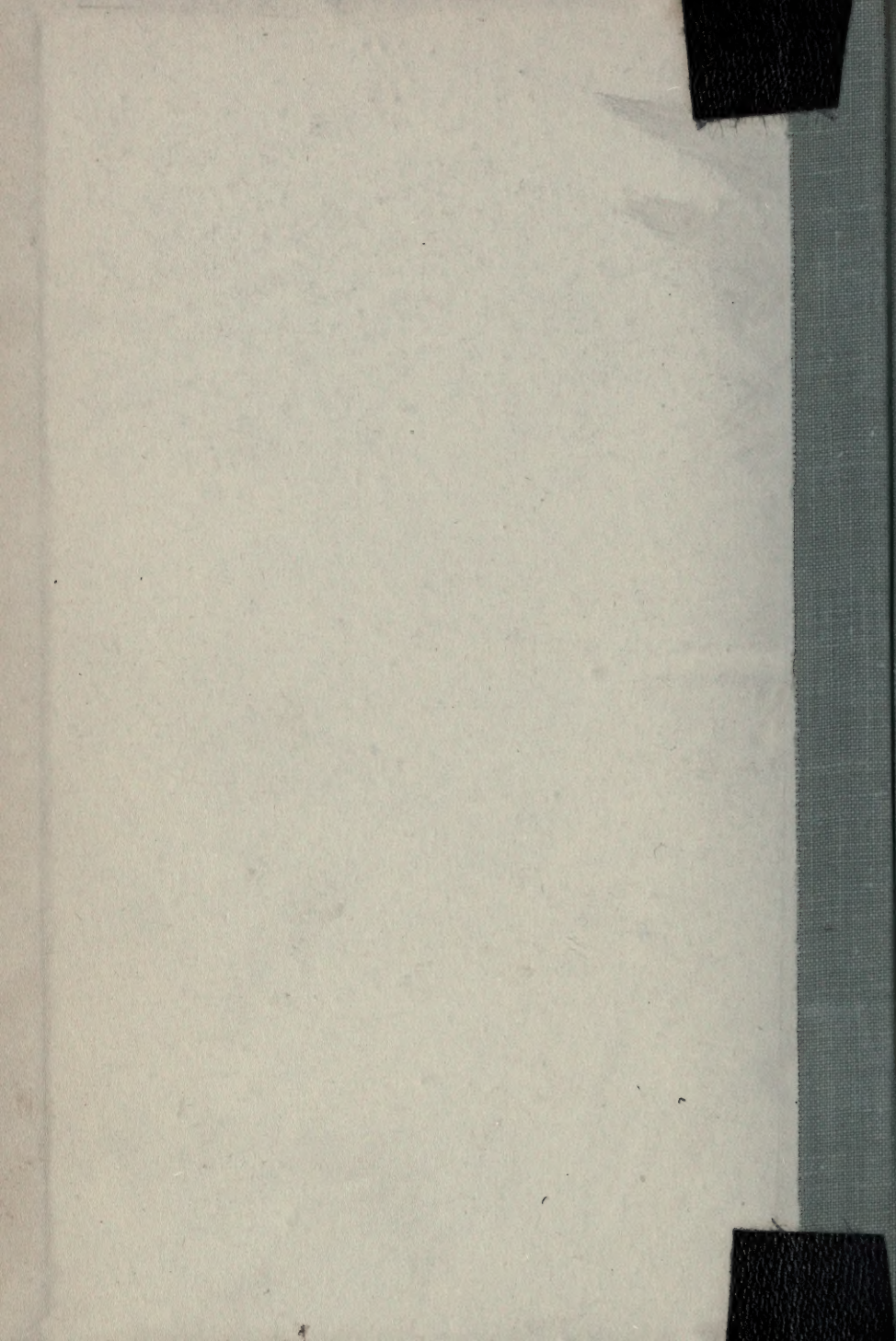
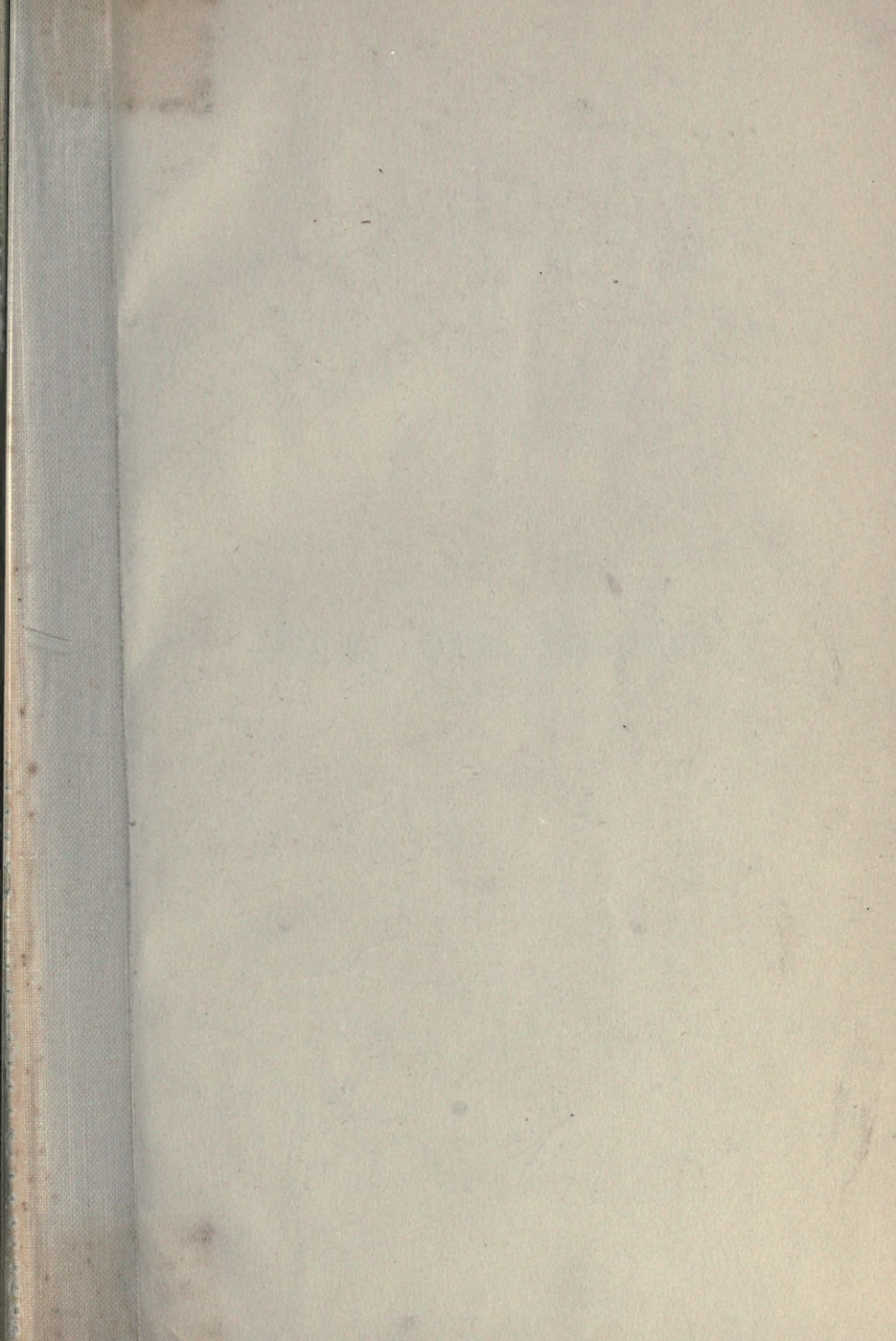


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361280 1





Life of Saint Katherine.

WPH
TN

Agents for the sale of the Early English Text Society's Publications.

BERLIN: ASHER & Co., 53, Mohrenstrasse.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & Co.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & Co.

*Printed
Eug.*

492
47

The

Life of Saint Katherine.

FROM THE ROYAL MS. 17 A. xxvii., &c.,

With its Latin Original

FROM THE COTTON MS. CALIGULA, A. viii., &c.

EDITED,

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY,

BY

DR. EUGEN EINENKEL, M.A.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 AND 59, LUDGATE HILL.

1884.

38047
7/10/96.

PR

1119

AZ

no. 80

SEEN BY
PRESERVATION
SERVICES

DATE 00

PREFACE.

IF this edition should prove to be useful, it will chiefly be due to those who, by encouragement or otherwise, have assisted the editor in his work. He therefore thinks he cannot make a better use of his preface than in giving the names of, and conveying his thanks to, his helpers.

The Revd. James Morton and the Revd. Charles Hardwick, and those of their works, of which use has been made, are named in the Introduction below. As the former, I am sorry to say, is no more amongst the living, I think it proper to give a brief account of the life and works of this distinguished scholar.

The Revd. James Morton, B.D., Vicar of Holbeach, etc., was a native of Kelso. He was ordained Deacon in 1811 and Priest in 1812, by the Bishop of Durham. He was a ten-year man, of St. John's College, Cambridge, and took the degree of Bachelor of Divinity on July 1, 1824. He became Vicar of Holbeach in 1831, etc.¹ He died at the Vicarage of Holbeach, Lincolnshire, July 31, 1865, aged 82. As an author or editor, he published the *Memoir and Poetical Remains of Dr. John Leiden*, 1812; the *Monastic Annals of*

¹ See Crockford, *Clerical Dictionary*, 1860, and the *Memoir* in *The Gentleman's Magazine*, Sept. 1865, pp. 390-1, from the *Edinburgh Courant*, etc.

Teviotdale, 1832; the Legend of St. Katherine, 1841, for the Abbotsford Club; and the Ancren Riwe, 1853, for the Camden Society.

The Revd. J. Morton's knowledge of Middle English was profound, and almost surprising, if we consider the then state of English Philology. As a proof of this may be cited his translations of the Ancren Riwe and St. Katherine, which, apart from some slight mistakes, deserve to be called exact, and are still useful.

The Revd. W. W. Skeat's share in this edition is nearly as important as those of the two scholars just mentioned. His experienced hand will be easily discernible in the notes on the vv. 387, 538, 1309, 1617, 1690, 1827, and 1940.

The editor likewise begs to give his thanks to Mr. F. J. Furnivall and Mr. Henry Hucks Gibbs, who, by their conscientious revisions, have greatly contributed to the accuracy of the texts.

The editor is well aware of, and does not try to make an excuse for, the many imperfections of his work, which came to his notice too late to be removed. He, however, begs his readers to consider that a work but seldom receives the form its editor intended to give it in starting.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE HISTORY OF ST. KATHERINE AND HER LEGEND.

Katherine of Alexandria is one of those saints, the originals of whom are so much shrouded in mystery, that, but for some unmistakeably historical evidence turning up in their behalf, it remains at the historian's discretion whether he will accept their existence or reject it.

Though with respect to our St. Katherine, from a comparatively early date till up to the time of the Reformation, doubts have been raised and inquiries made as to the bona fides of her hagiologists, the question of her existence has not been settled—so far as with the present material this could be done—until very recently, by a little treatise entitled ‘An Historical Inquiry touching St. Catherine of Alexandria, to which is added a Semi-Saxon Legend, by Ch. Hardwick, Cambridge, 1849,’ in which the learned author disposes of his subject with such research and impartiality, that in taking from him the few particulars we require regarding the history of our saint and her legend, we need not be afraid of being led wrong.

Though, if true, the incidents of the saint's life were so full of special interest, that they could not possibly pass or remain unnoticed by contemporaneous or later writers, we nevertheless look in vain for anything like a proof of her existence for many centuries after her supposed death. A passage in the *Historia Ecclesiastica* by Eusebius (who wrote shortly after her death), has, from its resemblance to some incidents in the legend of our saint, been thought an allusion to her. But as by some other strong evidence, Eusebius, who adds no name, is almost conclusively proved to allude, in the passage referred to, not to St. Katherine, but to St. Dorothea, likewise a native of Alexandria, the above assumption can safely be dismissed as unfounded.

The first undoubted allusion to, and at the same time narrative of, St. Katherine's life and passion, is contained in the so-called *Menologium Basilianum*, a collection of legends compiled for the use of the Emperor Basil the First, who died in 886. As it is interesting to see how considerably the legend has been changed and enlarged in the course of a few centuries, I reprint it from the oldest edition existing, published at Urbino in 1717,¹ adding a translation below it.

Ἡ Μάρτυς Αἰκατερίνα ἐγένετο ἀπὸ Ἀλεξανδρείας, θυγάτηρ βασιλίσκου τινὸς, πλουσίου καὶ ἐνδόξου· εὐμορφος πάνν. Εὐφυνὴ δὲ ὑπάρχουσα, ἔμαθεν ἑλληνικὰ γράμματα, καὶ ἐγένετο σοφὴ· λαβοῦσα καὶ γλώσσας πάντων τῶν ἐθνῶν. Ἐπετελεῖτο δὲ ἑορτὴ τοῖς εἰδώλοις παρὰ τῶν ἑλλήνων· καὶ θεωροῦσα τὰ ζῶα σφαζόμενα, ἐλυπήθη. καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα Μαξιμίνον, καὶ ἐφιλονεΐησεν αὐτὸν, εἰποῦσα, ὅτι διὰ τί ἐγκατέλιπες Θεὸν ζῶντα καὶ προσκυνεῖς εἰδώλοις ἀψύχοις; ἐκείνος δὲ ἐκράτησεν αὐτήν, καὶ ἐτιμωρήσατο ἰσχυρῶς. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἔφερεν ὁ βασιλεὺς πεντήκοντα ῥήτορας, καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς· ὅτι διαλέχθητε πρὸς τὴν Αἰκατερίναν, καὶ πείσατε αὐτήν. ἐὰν γάρ μὴ νικήσητε αὐτήν, πάντας ὑμᾶς κατακαύσω πυρί. Ἐκεῖνοι δὲ ἰδόντες, ὅτι ἐνίκηθησαν, ἐβαπτίσθησαν, καὶ οὕτως ἐκάησαν ἀπεκεφαλίσθη δὲ καὶ αὕτη.

The martyr Aikaterina was the daughter of a rich and noble chieftain of Alexandria. She was very beautiful, and being at the same time highly talented, she devoted herself to Grecian literature, and to the study of the languages of all nations, and so became wise and learned. And it happened that the Greeks held a festival in honour of their idols; and seeing the slaughter of the animals, she was so greatly moved that she went to the King Maximinus and expostulated with him in these words: "Why hast thou left the living God to worship lifeless idols?" But the emperor caused her to be thrown into prison, and to be punished severely. He then ordered fifty orators to be brought, and bade them to reason with Aikaterina, and confute her, threatening to burn them all if they should fail to overpower her. The orators, however, when they saw themselves vanquished, received baptism, and were burnt forthwith. She, on the contrary, was beheaded.

Upon this simple narrative are founded—whether directly or not is left open to doubt—the elaboration in Greek by Simeon Metaphrastes of about the beginning of the tenth century, and another and somewhat later version (likewise in Greek) by one Athanasios. The latter story, of which up to the present only two copies are known to exist,² is evidently the prototype of

¹ Vol. i, page 213.

² The first in the library at Vienna, the other in the Bodleian Library at Oxford (Baroccean Collection, No. 180), the two, so far as we could ascertain, only differing in minor points, as transpositions or insertions of words.

the Latin legend printed in the present edition, which in its turn again is, as will be seen, the original of our Middle-English, or rather Late-Old-English poem.

There are a great many more Middle-English versions, both in the library of the British Museum and elsewhere. Many of them have already been edited by J. O. Halliwell, Horstmann the indefatigable publisher of legends, and others. Other versions are, I understand, on the point of being published. It would lead me too far to examine them all, even if I were to give no more than a short account of their respective dialects, ages and forms. Nearly all of them, moreover, do not go back upon Athanasios's version, but upon Simeon's, and so claim our interest only in a secondary degree.

With regard to elaborations of the legend in general, and without confining ourselves to English soil, there are several which I cannot pass unmentioned. One I name because of its author's name, he being no less than the Italian Pietro Aretino, the great reviver of antiquity;¹ another, on account of the works of art by which its copies are embellished, and the interesting circumstances which attended its origination. It was composed at the command of Philip the Good of Burgundy, by his secretary, Jean Mielot.²

In this work is already to be found St. Katherine's genealogy, baptism, and marriage with the Divine Saviour, fictions which are no doubt derived from an older source, as they are frequently met with in English legends of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.³

Finally, I mention, as the highest possible development our legend could attain to,—a fate which only a very few other legends shared with it,—some adaptations for the stage. And, indeed, it was not to be expected that the thoroughly dramatic character of the plot, which, even in the quickest perusal,

¹ There are two old prints of the 'Divine' Aretino's *Vita di Catherina Vergine* in the possession of the Br. Mus. Both of them are supposed to have been printed in Venice, the one probably in 1540, the other a year later.

² Copies of this work, which is more an independent creation than a version or elaboration, are to be found at Paris and Brussels. A renovation of it, together with facsimiles of the most elaborate miniatures and numerous modern drawings, was published two years ago in Paris.

³ Harl. MS. 2258, Cott. Tit. A. xxvi.

any sensible reader must become aware of, should remain unnoticed¹ by the stuff-hungry writers of the great epochs of the French and English Dramas.

There were two attempts to adapt our legend for the stage, and both of them proved failures. It is not for me to inquire into the reasons of this fact, but some of them are so obvious that a few words will suffice to point them out.

That Saint Germain's play did not succeed is evidently due in the first place to the general conservative tendencies of the French classic drama, but in particular to the way in which the character of the heroine is treated. The spectator or reader cannot reasonably be supposed to take interest in the doings and sayings of a person whose behaviour is of such invariable saintliness, and whose entire individuality is raised so unattainably high above the common standard of men.

The same drawback is found in Dryden's tragedy, 'Tyrannick Love,' and the absence of the other, which we took occasion to blame in the French tragédie, is wholly made up for by the emptiness of the character of the Emperor, whose rants have always been the sport of criticism, and were at length, if we may trust his own confession, the shame of the poet.

I cannot conclude this chapter without some further remarks concerning the history of our saint, though these remarks may take us back to the point from where we started.

As I said above, it has not been possible to establish the existence of a person whose life can resemble in the slightest the particulars given by the imperial hagiologist, in whose legendary, St. Catherine is, for the first time, undoubtedly mentioned.

Now in the history of Christianity, we meet with very many cases where features and attributes of pagan gods or heroes have been transmuted into those of the persons of the Trinity, the holy mother, or the saints, or where traits of the evil spirit and his followers have been imparted to pagan gods. This occurred

¹ We hear from Matthew Paris of a miracle play of St. Catherine, which Geoffrey, a learned Norman, and future abbot of St. Albans, wrote and intended to have acted by his scholars. See *Matt. Paris. Vita. Abb. S. Alb.* p. 56. And by a strange coincidence, this note of Matthew's—for nothing but this is left us—is, at the same time, the first trace of theatrical representation in England altogether.

sometimes to such an extent, that in certain times, and certain countries bordering on those which were already Christianized, it must have been difficult for people to keep these two sets of divinities asunder. These were the countries where the most capricious changes and transmutations of this kind were likely to occur, where gods and heroes worshipped of yore, might continue to be so in a new guise after Christianity had taken firm hold of the country. And in a country like Egypt, where between the second and fourth centuries the struggle of pagan worship was fiercest and most tenacious, the heated imagination of the people must have been particularly apt for transmutations of this kind. Now it so happens by a strange coincidence, that the figure which, in this time and in this struggle of worship against worship, plays the most important part, is that of a woman—of a woman whose character and intentions were as pure, her abilities as high, as her fate was tragic and melancholy. What, then, is more natural than that a person whose talents were so extensive, the particulars of whose life were so full of thrilling interest that they must have made an indelible impression upon the popular mind,—that such a person, I say, should continue to be regretted and revered when the sanguinary struggle was settled, and when the worship for the cause of which she had waged war, and finally suffered death, was in the end overpowered and destroyed?

I scarcely need say that I mean the pagan philosopher Hypatia; and I cannot but express my astonishment that no one before me thought of untwining the knot in such a simple and natural way; so striking are the similarities of the life of our saint with that of her pagan paragon.¹ Time, place, and background exactly agree. Both ladies are of high and noble origin; both deeply, and from their childhood, imbued in the sciences of paganism; both reasoning with philosophers, and, indeed, philosophers themselves; both suffering and dying for

¹ I accidentally came across an interesting article in the *Fortnightly Review*, vol. xi. on a subject similar to ours, discussing the transformation, by the Middle Ages, of Virgilius the Poet into Virgilius the Enchanter. The learned writer closes his discussion with the judicious remark that, if Virgil had lived after the Christian era, the popular belief would no doubt have made him a saint.

their belief. Here, too, in the religious story as in Egyptian history, we have a representative of the worldly power playing an ominous part in the tragedy, he being in reality the only slayer of the virgin. If we come to speak of the alterations which the plain historical facts have undergone, there is indeed not one of them which might not easily be accounted for, either by the change of religion or by the changes of times.¹

OUR MANUSCRIPTS.

THE LATIN TEXT.

The Latin legend does not appear here in print for the first time. Besides the copy of an old print which Mr. Hardwick mentions in his Inquiry, and which, on the ground of some MS. notes found in it, is supposed to have been made by Kölhof of Cologne, there are two more copies of a different edition of it in the possession of the British Museum, which is believed to have been printed at Bâle about the end of the fifteenth century, though neither place nor date is mentioned.²

The text I give is that of MS. Cotton, Caligula A. viii., written in Roman characters, and by a rather careless hand, of about the middle of the eleventh century. The writer was indeed so careless in his transcription as to make a revision of it necessary. There are three or four hands discernible in the corrections: some of them date from a comparatively late period, though none of them seems to be later than the end of the thirteenth century. But even the revisers left many blunders uncorrected, which will easily be detected by consulting my footnotes.

¹ P.S.—Mr. H. Hucks Gibbs has since pointed out to me that in 1848 Mrs. Jameson did identify St. Katherine with Hypatia.—*Sacred and Legendary Art*, ii. 87-8.

² It is printed and bound with a tract on Christ's passion, the whole being entitled: *Passio Johannis Kannemann Sacre Theologie Professor Ordinis minorum. Necnon alius tractatus de Christi passione. Una cum legenda beate Katherine virginis.*

These notes represent the various readings of a Leipzig MS., a town once famous for its culture of the saint.¹ This MS. is in Gothic characters, and carefully written, and seems to be about as old as the Cotton MS. The reason why I did not put the Leipzig MS. into my text is simply because it necessarily cannot be so closely related to the Middle-English elaboration as the English MS., the peculiarities of which account for certain omissions or mistranslations in the English text. The same reason caused me to retain the old punctuation and the old spelling, quaint as they are. The only change I made, besides extending the abbreviations, was to put *v*, *U* and *j*, instead of *u*, *V*, and *i*, wherever in modern times it is usual to do so.

And this course was taken to facilitate the reading. I should have liked to render *e* by *æ*, which in certain cases it is intended to represent. But as in my MS. the use of this *e* is anything but regular,—not to mention those abbreviations in which it was impossible to use it at all,—I had to abstain from putting *æ*. A few accents occur on the last leaves. I have given them as a kind of curiosity, rather than with the view of being accurate. In regard to part of the revision mentioned above being posterior to the elaboration, I took care to note every correction, and give the original reading whenever it could be found out with any certainty. The various readings of the Leipzig MS. are restricted to those conveying a different idea or relativity. Orthographical differences have not been registered.

I abstained from giving the various readings of the prints. As they are almost as carelessly printed as the Cott. MS. is written, the readings would only have swelled the notes without affording great benefit. I make sure that the two MSS. are fully sufficient, not only for my special purpose, but for giving a clear idea of the original text, and of its literary merits.

As I have elsewhere² closely collated the Latin text with its M.E. elaboration, one might think I could have done without

¹ The large paintings covering the walls of one of the arcades of what is now the University, representing scenes from the saint's passion, will be known perhaps to some of my readers. These paintings are not without some artistic merit.

² In a disquisition entitled: Ueber den Verfasser der Neuangelsächsischen Legende von Katharina, Anglia, vol. v. pp. 110-122.

the Latin altogether, especially if I commented on all the passages requiring a still closer collation. But apart from the advantage of always having the chance of consulting the original in case of the many puzzles offered by the M.E. text, I hope to receive the thanks of many a scholar for printing the whole, as I have every reason to believe that MSS. as well as prints of this Latin text, are exceedingly scarce, a fact which, considering the numerous French and German elaborations based upon it, is certainly to be regretted, and could not but seriously tell upon the various inquiries written about them.

THE MIDDLE ENGLISH TEXT.

This Middle English version has been edited twice already. First, by the Rev. James Morton for the Abbotsford Club, then by the Rev. Mr. Hardwick for the Cambridge Antiquarian Society, as an appendix to his above-mentioned Inquiry (p. vii). But as, not to mention other shortcomings, neither of these editions makes use of more than two of our MSS. (Cott. and Reg.), and as the number of the copies printed was in both cases ridiculously small, the work had to be redone, and an edition to be published large enough to render the interesting document accessible to a wider circle of philologists.

In the ninth annual report of the Early English Text Society,¹ the Committee announced that Dr. Morris intended to do the edition. But when, about the beginning of 1882, I applied to him for further information, I was told that it had been given up long ago.

So I came to undertake it. When it was all but finished, I was invited to do it for the Society. I heard at the same time that the Rev. Prof. Skeat had taken the work in hand, and carried it on considerably far, but that he would kindly resign in my favour, seeing that I had nearly finished mine.

The MSS. are small quartos of about six inches in height and five in breadth, all three written in the former half of the thirteenth century,² the oldest of them being no doubt MS.

¹ Prefixed to Dr. Morris's edition of the Old English Homilies, Second Series.

² For other contents of the MSS. see references to the MSS. at the end of this Introduction.

Reg. 17 A. xxvii.; the youngest, MS. Cotton Titus D. xviii. With regard to the relation of the MSS. to each other, I refrain from proving at great length what almost every line of the poem teaches us, namely, that the Bodleian MS. NE. A, 3, 11, and the Royal MS., are transcriptions from one and the same copy Z, which, with the Cotton MS.—whether directly or no is doubtful—is again transcribed from another lost copy, which I shall call X.

Numerous agreements in details of spelling point to the fact that there cannot be many copies intervening between Z and X on the one hand, and C(otton MS.) and X on the other hand, and we could be certain that X is the first, *i.e.* the elaborator's own copy, but for some awkward blunders which betray the writer of X as not knowing the sense of the word or passage he was about to write, a want of judgment which surely the author cannot be thought capable of.

We now come to a point which, I am afraid, it will be rather difficult for me to make plausible to the reader, I mean the arrangement of the M.E. text.

I am perfectly aware of the objections so often made to so-called critical editions, and am myself convinced of their soundness. Like many others I am of opinion—an opinion which here as in my own country is rapidly gaining ground—that dialects as we find them in the purified editions of the Lachmann-School are practically impossible. The really spoken dialects,—even if we take the word in its narrowest sense,—must have allowed the changing of sounds and forms, just as their modern descendants do, in which, apart from certain peculiarities constituting their essence, we find nothing but fluctuation and gradation; and this, not only in districts of the narrowest possible limits, but in individuals. A critical edition of the Lachmann kind, produced by eliciting normal sounds, and substituting them for every variation occurring in the MSS., such an edition was from the beginning out of question.

Nevertheless, in my case matters lay so as to make a diplomatic edition as unadvisable as its reverse. Here were three MSS., two of them undoubtedly old, the third rich in later forms, each of them frequently dropping words, omit-

ting sentences which would have rendered a fluent reading, and still more the appreciation of a metre, all but impossible. At the same time the MSS. supplied each other so easily and fully, and the variations were often so insignificant (in many verses none at all), that in at least half of the lines the original reading was morally certain.

Under these circumstances the only course advisable was to make one MS. the base of the text, correcting and altering it whenever the concurrence of the two others proved it to be wrong. That such a course is impossible with C(otton MS.) will be evident from what I have said about its relation to the other MSS. B(odleian MS.), on the other hand, is defective, wanting three leaves in the middle of the poem. There remains only R(oyal MS.), which though somewhat carelessly written, deserves our confidence on account of the many archaic forms it has preserved.

In this way, of course, we upon the whole only reach the reading of Z. But I think it better to be contented with a safe reading of Z, than to try for X, whose reading in many cases could not be found but by guesses. My partiality for Z does not of course go the length of accepting simple and obvious mistranscriptions; but, on the other hand, it will be good to stick to the reading of R whenever the congruence of B with C can be accounted for by a mutual though independent alteration on their part. This latter course will be taken in the case of archaic words and forms such as 'mid(t),' which B and C often, though not always mutually, change for 'wið;' and in the case of the few dual forms and the fuller terminations of verbs and adverbs, which are pretty faithfully preserved by R, but frequently mutilated by B, and still oftener by C. In the terminations of adjectives and substantives the confusion is greatest, and nearly the same in all our MSS. Here the greatest reserve was necessary, and I have, in accordance with my principal rule, deviated from R only when B and C agree with each other.

There are a few instances where, either by internal evidence or by the wording of the Latin original, C is shown to be right. In such cases as these, I thought it right to go with C, pre-

serving, however, as far as possible the spelling of Z. Still less in number are those cases where X must have been corrupt, and where each copyist tried to get some sense into his copy. Here no other course was left me than to take as a guide the faint resemblances of the MSS., and the reading of the Latin original, and so to restore what had in all probability been the reading intended by the author. Where, however, in such a case the MSS. agreed with each other, I unhesitatingly accepted the reading, however corrupt it seemed, and however easy and plausible its emendation. The Notes will show several new words, and many old ones employed in a sense which they were hitherto unknown to imply. It would be rash, therefore, and certainly anything but critical, to venture on the emendation of readings so well supported.

Z frequently softens the anlauting *f* to *u*, that is, *v*. Whenever this *u* is no more than a peculiarity of Z's, and not traceable back to X (as it is but in two cases), I gave it up for the *f*, which C always has as 'anlaut.' I admit that I ought not to have done so, as it is highly probable that this *u* was something more than an orthographic whim, and that it indicates the same change of sound which has but recently been advocated for the O. and M.H.G. anlauting *u-v* from *f*. Still, this cannot be altered now.

With respect to abbreviations, the characters þ and ʔ have been put in the text, as it seemed doubtful whether the original had *þet ant* or *þat and*. Their expansions, whenever they occur, are noted in the various readings. 'qʒ q' and 'ih'u' have been expanded to *quʒ* and *Iesu*, as they are mostly found when written in full. Still, I have thought fit to note the abbreviations whenever they occur. Other abbreviations have been expanded without notice being given, as their meaning is beyond all doubt.

The use of the initials is that of modern times. The preservation of the ancient custom would in the present case have been preposterous, and a great hindrance to cursory reading. It is known that as a rule the copyists of the time only put an initial when they began a new break.

I highly regret having been obliged to leave the old

interpunctuation, a matter so important and even essential in the case of a poem ; but since the coincidence of the three MSS. would alone have been conclusive as to the division of the lines, and as I could not possibly have given more than the punctuation of one, no other course was left me. Suffice it to say that the punctuation found in the three MSS. agrees better by far with my division than with that of Morton. The Latin quotations had to be left out of the English text. This was a necessary consequence of my printing the Latin original from which these quotations are taken unaltered. Still, the passages where they occur are pointed out in the various readings.

THE POSITION OF THE M.E. ELABORATION IN CONTEMPORANEOUS LITERATURE.

Unlike *Lazamon's Brut*,—that interesting work towering in lonely height, and in point of language as well as subject pointing back to times of long ago,—our *Katherine* stands in the midst of, and in the closest relation to, a series of documents of nearly the same date, all pursuing the same object, all written in the same dialect.

The creation of the writings I shall have to mention in the course of this chapter, extends over a period of about forty years, beginning with the *Ancren Riwe*, written about 1200, and ending with the so-called *Wohunge of ure Louerd*, the *Ureisun of God Almihti*, the *Lofsong of ure Louerde*, and some smaller pieces, all contained in Dr. Morris's collection of *Old English Homilies*.

The dialect is that of the middle portion of Southern England, the *Ancren Riwe* pointing furthest to the south, *Hali Meidenhad* along with *Sawle Warde* farthest to the north, the rest occupying the intermediate districts. The object of all these tracts is obviously enough the love between the Son of God and the pious nun or (more generally) maiden. The form is partly prose, partly poetry. From the didactical prose of the *Ancren Riwe* we pass over to the didactical poetry of *Hali Meidenhad* and *Sawle Warde*, and from these to the narrative poetry of the three sister-legends. The poetry

of the pieces mentioned is all of the same kind. It is, in my opinion, the four-accent metre which is such a favourite with the Old-German poets. And this metre forms the only point that our poems have in common with Laßamon's Brut. But even in this respect they differ from it in not attempting the end rhyme.

The form of the minor pieces is undoubtedly prose, but prose of such poetic strain, such lyrical colour, as to fulfil the higher demands of poetry infinitely better than is done by any of the professed poems of the time.

The simplicity and sincerity exhibited in these prayers, together with the extensive and at the same time exclusive use of phrases and ideas taken in more or less modified form from such works as the Ancren Riwle, Hali Meidenhad, and Sawle Warde—works which are professedly addressed to nuns—induced me to consider the prayers as being the immediate and practical result of the fanatic and ascetic spirit pervading those didactic tracts. To this suggestion of mine I gave vent in a short disquisition printed in the Anglia, vol. v., and entitled: 'Eine englische Schriftstellerin aus dem Anfange des 13. Jahrhunderts,' in which such interesting matters came to light that I should really wish the inquiry to be taken up and completed by a historical student.

Mr. Morton's and Mr. Cockayne's opinion that the Ancren Riwle, Hali M., Sawle W., the three legends, the Oreisun of St. Mary, 'and other tracts now lost,' were written by one and the same person, is not only *a priori* quite improbable, but has been finally disproved by my inquiry entitled: 'Ueber die Verfasser einiger Neuags. Schriften,' the continuation of which will be found in Anglia, vol. v.

The results of this inquiry are, in short, that the three legends and Hali Meidenhad were written by three different authors. The legend of St. Katherine by one, those of St. Margaret and Juliana by another, and the Homily by a third. The order in which they are just given represents their actual succession, which forms another subject of my inquiry. That Hali M. was the last written, is evident from the fact that, in it, all the rest are distinctly referred to.

The style in which St. Katherine is written is in truth quite different from that of the rest. The style of the two other legends with which it offers most points of comparison, is exceedingly dry, and—owing to the elaborator's predilection of strong passages, high-sounding words, and passionate scenes,—fluctuates abruptly between the two extremes of sweetishness and coarseness. Like the writer of the other two legends, the author of St. Kath. abridged and elaborated the narrative of his original, but he so arranged his alterations that the result was quite the reverse of their treatment.

Much more than is the case with St. Juliana and St. Margaret the character of Saint Katherine is depicted in the original as impetuous and vindictive; in one word, anything but saintly, if we take this expression in its current meaning; but instead of elaborating and finishing up these traits as is done by the author of the two other legends, our writer abolishes them, and curtails them wherever he can. The character of the maiden's adversary shares this mitigating treatment. The Latin text shows him as one of those artful and bloodthirsty tyrants, who may well have existed in those barbarous times, whose characters however are entirely unfit for poetic purposes. The poet puts in the fore-ground his fatal and impotent grappling with an opponent weak in appearance, but in reality too strong for him and all his power, and thus makes him, no doubt unintentionally, the worthy object of the reader's compassion. We likewise approve of the elaborator's consistently curtailing the reflective element so exuberant in the original. He omits learned quotations, superfluous and tedious conversations, historical allusions, and so forth. By such alterations as these, the narrative becomes terse and dramatic.

The author was less fortunate in endeavouring to follow closely the learned and long-winded breaks of his original. Every such attempt—as nobody acquainted with the shattered state of the M.E. grammar will find surprising—must of necessity end with a general break-down, and for this reason we should have liked him to strike off still more of the controversy, especially as this does not seem to be the strongest part of the legend.

As to interpolations, they are small and scarce compared with those in St. Margaret. Moreover, the longest of them, extending to no less than sixty lines, is in all probability not of our author's own make. A passage in form and succession of images and ideas perfectly coinciding with this passage, is found in the first part of the O.H.G. poem 'Himmel und Helle,' a poem which, curiously enough, is in its unrhymed form unique in O.H.G., and forms the only perfect analogy to our three legends, and to numerous other Old and Middle English poems of the same class. The common original is, I suppose, a Latin tract on the beauties of heaven, which is either lost or has not yet turned up.

THE METRICAL FORM OF THE LEGEND.

In a previous treatise¹ I have proved that the legend of St. Katherine, as well as those of St. Margaret and St. Juliana, and the homily Hali Meidenhad, are written in the same form with Otfrid the monk of Weissenburg's great poem, commonly called 'Krist,' of the ninth century.

This metre is commonly referred to as the 'Vierheber,' that is, 'four-accent metre,' and its principal characteristics are the following :

1. The verse is essentially based upon the logical or word-tone.
2. Every verse must have at least four syllables capable of bearing this tone.
3. The number of syllables not capable of bearing this tone may rise to three, or may be wanting entirely.
4. Syllables of the kind mentioned under 3 can bear an artificial or, as we might style it as well, verse-accent, but this they cannot do except when followed by at least one syllable of the same class, and preceded at the same time by a syllable raised by the logical or word-tone.
5. The syllable concluding the verse, whether short or long, whether capable or incapable of bearing the tone, is always

¹ The same Inquiry (*Anglia*, vol. v.) as is mentioned above, on page xix.

accented, so that *α*. when the verse ends with a dissyllable,¹ the first syllable of which bears the tone, both syllables receive the tone resp. accent; *β*. when the verse ends with a trisyllable, the first syllable of which bears the tone, and the second is short, the first and the last syllables are accented; and that when *γ*. the verse is concluded by a trisyllable, the first syllable of which, as in the former case, bears the tone, but the second is long, all the three syllables receive the tone resp. accents.—Words of more than three syllables are compounds, which are treated as if they were single words.

6. The law given under 5 suffers but one exception: whenever the verse concludes with a dissyllable, the first syllable of which, though bearing the tone, is short, the last syllable remains unaccented.

In illustration of the foregoing laws, I give a few examples from my text.

First thesis² or 'auf tact' wanting:

ant Maxence stéoredè 10. *Wéox úmbe hwilè | wréððe hám bitwéonèn* 12-13.

Second thesis wanting:

þ téar hé atstüttè 23. *þ léi into Rómè* 28. | *állè to héaðendòm* 35.

Third thesis wanting:

wárð king óf þ lónd 27. *éuchán wíð his lác | fór to wúrðgín ham* 54-5.

Fourth thesis wanting:

þ féole télleð wél tó 89. *dh se sóne ha zéald hám* 127. *of hire búrdebóldès* 139. *há ihérde a swúch núrð* 140.

Second and fourth theses wanting (very often):

méiden i méðshàd 137. *máumètes témpè* 142. *hwet wúndèr hit wérè* 151. *azéin gódes wíllè* 172.

Second and third theses wanting (seldom):

of tréo ððèr of stán 266.

Third and fourth theses wanting:

óf þen háli gást | ás te kéisèr stód | bimóng þ súnful sláht | of þ' isléin dhtè 196-9. *né ne méi ná þing* 225. *þ' hit ná wís món* 323.

¹ I need scarcely tell my readers that I only count the syllables following the one bearing the tone, this latter one of course included.

² In using terms such as these I ask for the reader's indulgence. Taken strictly, they are certainly out of place in Germanic prosody; but in exchange for that, they are widely known and—short.

First, second and third theses wanting :

déarnlichè to him 406. *Cóst héhtë mi fédér* 465.

First, second and fourth theses wanting :

Hómères mótes 850. *búrhmén t óðrè* 1475.

Verses without any thesis :

Héi! hwúch wis réad 580. *sóð gódd wérè* 1200.

Verses with no thesis wanting :

wið néauer án ne kéccheð hé 257. *Ne náueð hé þurh óðer þing* 274.
for *þi þ þé ne séhen hám* 278. *t féng on þús to spéokenè* 312. *þ eúch*
mon áh to hérsumèn 352.

Verses with theses consisting of two syllables are very common.

First thesis consisting of three syllables :

t wið his dñes wit awárpèn 591.

Second thesis consisting of three syllables :

in álle mine déarne rúnès 575. *t kénest of ow álle óf þa créft* 814.
for *sóne se ha Crist cléopedè* 1328.

Third thesis consisting of three syllables :

þ nówðer stúrien ne máhèn 361. *þa, zét, ne máhte ha na mårè* 2027.

Cases of the fourth thesis consisting of three syllables do not seem to occur in our legend.

Dissyllabic words concluding the verse ; the first syllable is long :

for *þi léofmon ánt þi láuèrd* 679. *as þáh ha gódes wérèn* 273.
t héore éche héalè 872.

The first syllable is short :

háre héaðène gódes 147. *azéinès þi déore nóme* 651. *ówer wiðer-*
wines witen 642.

The concluding word consists of three syllables, the second of which is short :

óftest bá togéderès 113. *þ nán nes hire éuening* 118. *t wénde háre*
wihelès 129. *þe ihéret is in héouenè* 183. *blód ál biblódegèt* 204.

The case of verses concluding with words of three syllables, the second of which is long, is of some importance, as here the only difference between the English and German way of treating the metre comes in.

Prof. Trautmann, who first proved the existence of the Otfridic verse in England, in his inquiry into the metre of

Lazamon's Brut, found that these trisyllables, when concluding the verse, can be treated in two different ways, namely, they can be accented either on each syllable, (as is done by Otfrid,) or only on the first and the last, and I believe I have observed that the former, and no doubt original accentuation must be used wherever it can be with convenience, that is, without overburdening the preceding theses, while the latter, peculiar to the English four-accent metre, is to be considered as a kind of expedient.

I subjoin a selection of verses illustrating this twofold way of accentuation:

of his riælingè 44. *of hire childhādè* 79. *swūcche zéincléppès* 128.
fōr þin hēhnissè 209. *þūrh his wissungè* 187. *béoð unlēflicè* 345.
þīne léasungès 788. *wisliche ⁊ wārliche* 82. *⁊ cwēðen hire þe mēistriè*
133. ⁊ wisdóm as wisliche 185. *þ̅ alle ówer léasungès* 344. *fōr sūtel*
is ⁊ ēðsenè 381. *éaren bāten hērungè* 497. *Cómen alle strikindè* 732.
þe hwile in cwarternè 601 or *þe hwile in cwarternè.*
of wórdliche wisdómès 525 or *of wórdliche wisdomès.*
þ̅ wēren in éstlondè 535 or *þ̅ wēren in éstlondè.*
zēlden ow hēhlicè 569 or *zēlden ow hēhlicè.¹*

It will be observed that there is very seldom a doubt as to the choice between the two kinds of accentuation, and I believe that upon the whole, wherever such a doubt is possible, the threefold accentuation ought to be chosen, especially in verses, the concluding words of which are plainly discernible compounds, which, as stated above, are to be treated like single and separate words.

This observation leads us back to the great influence which the logical or word-tone still has upon our metre. This word-tone may, under ordinary conditions, enable a monosyllable, no matter whether short or long—provided it conveys an intelligible and distinct conception (as substantives, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and certain classes of pronouns²)—to bear the stress both of arsis and thesis, or, as we may say, to bear the arsis unsupported by a following thesis (law 1).

¹ The greater part (those concluding with a compound) of the above specimens can serve to exemplify the struggle between (word-) tone and (verse-) accent. This struggle cannot be much younger than the metre itself, though in Germany it began much later. We all know how it ended.

² Demonstrative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns, and numerals.

This licence, if it deserves this name, goes farther still. Any monosyllable, even the most insignificant and the most used for filling up the thesis, may bear both arsis and thesis at the same time, if it is heightened by the rhetorical tone (which, in fact is no more than a higher power of the logical one), that is, when in sensible recitation it would receive a high accent or stop.

It is this very liberty which qualifies our metre, like it did the old alliteration, for distinctly rendering the nicest shades and lights of rhetoric; and this is what accounts for the favour that our metre used to find with the poets, and, still more, the preachers of the time.

What I mean by 'rhetorical tone' is plain. However, I add a few examples out of many, just to show how delicately our poet felt in this respect.

Cléopest þéo þinges gódes 360. *zéf þu wúlt þi wíl* 399. *þéo þ' ham mákvæð* 500. *þú quóð ha kéisèr* 750. *I'ch quóð þe méidèn* 828. *þurk him t ón his* 1075. *þ' is bicóm món* 1209. *ánt táh we cuðèn* 1323. *ánt fór to fèstnin hámm* 1985. *him þét ha wréoðeð ón* 1327. *hé is þ glédeð mé* 1521. *þé ánt ti pássiún* 2433. *þér Móyses fáttè* 2466.

Judged according to the strictness of the above rules, these verses are one arsis short, some of them even two; but if we read them as an intelligent understanding will or should direct us, all of them are as complete as can be.

Another kind of rhetorical tone seems to exist, when, by its stress, not merely a syllable is singled out, but when the tone is more or less equally divided all over the line, as in uncommonly fervent passages of prayers, or, where we may frequently hear it still, in important and strongly urged sentences of sermons and controversies.

This kind of rhetorical tone appears to be applied in the following verses:

ánt nom blóð ánt bán 908. *þét hé is sóð góðð* 924. *ás dæðlich món* 927. *þét tú of þét þing* 980 (both kinds of tone are here combined). *þét is i sóð góðð* 1021. *fór þi þét he wés* 1103. *fór his tréowe hlue* 1377. *þér há héuen úp* 1407. *swá þét nán ne méi* 1775. *ás án þunres dæne* 1998. *þét beo fléschlich* 2140. *in ælre wórlde wórlð* 2504.

It seems highly probable, especially if we think of our modern analogies, that in exceptional cases like the above-mentioned, even casual and verbal inflections, etc., were able to bear both arsis and thesis, as in *bútén óf án* 870,¹ *félen nówšér sár* 1164, *ónswéréde pá* 1296, *þis we scháwš þé* 1349, *O' kéné kíng* 1909, *wš þe hwéolés swá* 1941, and *Almihti gódd* 1981, a verse which, taken strictly, does not belong to this class, but which could not conveniently be put elsewhere. The concluding syllable of *Almihti* is certainly no inflection, but *mihti* is no compound either; at least it could hardly have been felt as such at the time our legend was written. The case is the same with *hali* when used in connection with *gast*. In this formula, as is natural, it occurs very often, and always bears two tones or accents, not only in our legend (l. 1402), but in St. Margaret, St. Juliana, etc., etc.

The number of the verses, especially of the last two categories, I have tried to make complete. And their scarcity might be a proof of the versifier's skill, even if there was no other reason to account for them.

Formerly I used to explain verses such as these as defective or corrupt. But when I observed that all or nearly all the verses of this kind occurred in passages of the greatest rhetorical or poetic vivacity and force, I gradually came to the conclusion that the one might account for the other.

That there do occur defective verses in our legend is a fact as undoubted as it is natural, if we take into consideration the way in which these old compositions were preserved and handed down to us. The number of defective verses is however exceedingly small. As in the above I have given the pseudo-corrupt verses, the few really corrupt ones will be easily detected and, the greater part of them, as easily corrected.

It may be useful to show my metrical rules, with all their limitations and restrictions, applied to a longer piece of the poem. For this purpose I choose the description of Paradise, not only because in it the accentuation is perhaps the most intricate and difficult in the whole poem, but because this

¹ Still *an* is more likely to be a corruption from *ánè*, which would make the verse all right.

same piece best shows what degree of musical beauty and redundancy our metre was capable of.

As a matter of course, some verses will allow of a different accentuation; but I can only accent these according to my understanding and reading of them.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1640 Béo nu þénne, Porphirè,
stille ⁊ únderstónt mé :
Cónstu búldèn a búrh,
ínwið í þín héortè, | 1676 álle pléiènde sómet,
álla láhinde sómet,
éauer ilíche lústi,
búte línnúngè ; |
| 1644 ál abútèn bitrúmet
wið a deorewúrðe wál,
schínínde, ⁊ schénrè,
of þímstánes stéaprè | 1680 fór þér is á líht,
⁊ léitínde léómè.
Ne níht nís ter néauèr
ne néauèr ná nówén ; |
| 1648 þén is éni stéorrè ;
⁊ éuch bóld þrínwið
bríht ás hit béarndè,
⁊ léitínde ál on léiè ; | 1684 ne éileð þér ná món
nówðer sórhè ne sár,
nówðer héate ne chélè,
nówðer húngèr ne þúrst, |
| 1652 ⁊ ál þ' terín ís
glístínde ⁊ gléamínde,
ás hit wére séoluèr
óðer góld sméatè ; | 1688 ne nán ofþúncúngè :
for nís ter náwt bíttèrè,
áh is ál bátewíl,
swóttèrè ⁊ swéttèrè |
| 1656 isténet éuch strétè
mid deorewúrðe stánès,
of mísliche héowès,
iméngèt togéderès, | 1692 þen éauer éni hálewí,
í þ' héouenlíche lónd,
í þ' éndelése líf,
í þe wúnnen ⁊ te wéolèn |
| 1660 islíket ⁊ ismákèt
as éni glés sméðèst ;
búte slóh ⁊ sléc,
éauer ilíche súmerlích ; | 1696 þúrhwúniènde :
⁊ mónie má múrhðèn
þen álla mén máhtèn
wið háre múð múnèn, |
| 1664 ⁊ állè þe búrhmén
séouen síðes bríhtèrè
þén béo þe súnnè,
gléowínde of éuch gléo, | 1700 ⁊ téllèn wið túngèn,
þáh ha áa táldèn ;
þe néauèr ne línneð
nówðer ne léssèð, |
| 1668 ⁊ á máre ilíche gléad ?
for náwíht ne dérueð hám ;
ne náwíht ne wónteð hám
of ál þ' ha wílnèð | 1704 ah léasteð áa máre,
se léngèrè se máre.
þéf þu þét wíten wúlt
hwúcche wíhtes þér béon, |
| 1672 óðer máhen wílnín ;
álla síngínde sómet,
áse lífléouíè,
éuch án mid óðerè ; | 1708 þér as ál þis blísse ís,
þéf þér is órcóst
óðer éni áhté,
ích þé onswériè : |

- | | | | |
|------|--|------|---|
| 1712 | Al þ éauer óht ís,
ál ís þér íhwér;
‡ hwét se nóht wúrð nís,
þ' nís ter nóhwér. | | ne nán éorðlich éaré |
| 1716 | ʒef þu éskest: Hwét óht?
Nán éorðlich éhè
ne méi hit séon, ich séggè, | 1720 | hércnin ne hérèn,
ne héorte þénchèn of món,
‡, hùre, méalè wið múð,
hwét te wórldes wealdént |
| | | 1724 | háueð iʒárket álle þeo
þé him ariht láuièð. |

The opinion contended for in this chapter, that the legend is written in the so-called Otfridic metre, has for the first time been disputed by Dr. Schipper in his 'Englische Metrik.'¹ To recapitulate his arguments I think superfluous, the more so as his work will be in the hands of all interested in the controversy. I content myself with mentioning that the author entirely denies the presence of an accent or minor tone, 'neben-ton,' as it is commonly called (in words like *lârè, làverdès, heouenè*, etc.), on which the metre under discussion is known to be principally founded; and this he does, not only for Middle English, but for the later stages of the Old English dialects as well. The restrictions, however, which Dr. Schipper makes in favour of compounds, and such words as once having been compounds might still have been recognizable as such by the contemporaries of the poem in dispute (and he reckons amongst these, forms like *láuèrd, sustèr, feirèst*, etc.), and the fact that Dr. Schipper did not take into consideration the most important and decisive of all arguments, namely the rhymes, except in a wholly unsatisfactory manner, prompted me to resume and deepen my inquiry, the results of which I laid down in a critique on Dr. Schipper's 'Englische Metrik,' which was published in the 'Anglia' some months ago.

I do not flatter myself that I have found the philosopher's stone in the conclusions arrived at in my critique, but I shall certainly stick to them until some other and more satisfactory explanation is found for the facts there treated of. And as up till now Dr. Schipper has not openly refuted them (I can only consider the few remarks appended to his refutation of other critiques as evasory), I see no reason why the arguments

¹ Bonn, Strauss, 1882.

brought forward in my critique should not still be as conclusive and as valid as they were when first published.

I shall here give the most important parts of my argument, thus complying with a desire communicated to me by the Society. The reader will so be enabled to form his own opinion.

“It is evident from the polemics of this chapter (the sixth of the ‘*Englische Metrik*’)¹ that anything can be proved by anything, so long as we work with such scanty material as that which Dr. Schipper uses in his present argument. One argument has been left unnoticed by him almost entirely up to now, and that just happens to be the most important one, and, in fact, the only one which allows of a positive conclusion.

This argument is the rhyme. By the rhymes it was once proved¹ that the inflectional terminations of Old- and Middle-High-German words in poetry² were capable of bearing a verse-accent (*neben-ton*), and in this way it was that we got to a certainty as to the nature of Otfrid’s metrical system, and of all the many strophical forms based upon it; and just so in the present case, the only evidence from which we can safely derive conclusions must be looked for in the rhymes.

If we can adduce a sufficient number of rhymes in which inflections rhyme with each other, or with monosyllabic words, the accentability of these inflections and (by way of corollary) the existence of the ‘four-accent’ verse and metre must be considered as proved, in the first place for the English poem under discussion, in the second for the whole of its epoch.

Old-English, it is true, is not rich in rhymes. The so-called Rhyming poem is, considering the date of its origin, so perfectly rhymed that this fact alone speaks strongly in favour of its foreign make, and the few and short poetic excurses in the *Chronicles* afford too insignificant material to be of great help to us. By the way, however, I mention the rather

¹ By Lachmann.

² This ‘in poetry’ is a later addition. We owe it to Prof. Trautmann, who, in a sagacious disquisition on Otfrid’s verse, Halle, Niemeyer, 1877, proved to a certainty that this way of accentuation was not admissible in prose, as Lachmann had contended. This view, shunned up to now as coming from the anglicist quarter, has but recently been taken up and enlarged upon by proper germanists.

suggestive rhymes: *wyrceān* : *swenceān*, *heortās* : *bards*, *mændōn* : *beceorodōn*, *swiðe stéarc* : [*under-*] *þeoddān*, selected from the poem on the Conqueror's death.

The first poem yielding a sufficient quantity of rhymes is *Lazamon's Brut*. It will be said by way of objection to my choosing this poem, that the *Brut* is not rhymed throughout, and that for this reason it is difficult to know whether a rhyme is intended or accidental. I hope, however, to remove this scruple by selecting specimens in the most careful manner possible. Only from the closest surroundings and out of the midst of rhymed passages shall I select them, and, on the other hand, I shall keep a sharp look-out for rhymes used more than once. Lastly, I shall use only the last two volumes of Sir F. Madden's edition, having recourse to the first for no more than corroboration of the facts taken from the other two.

These precautions will be found to be wholly sufficient.

Before entering into our disquisition proper, it will not be useless to drop a few remarks relating to the history of rhyme in general.

Let us remember how the minor tone (*neben ton*) originated in Old High German. It was engendered by treating (I.) simple polysyllabic words as compounds. This fact is easy to explain. Keeping in view the history of the Teutonic languages, we see that compounds are formed by simple words coalescing with other words, the separate meaning of which, though for a long time understood, is steadily effaced till it loses itself in that of the first word. Outwardly, this change shows itself by the last word gradually losing its separate tone, and becoming weakened and shortened, owing to the greater stress naturally resting upon the determining syllable. In this manner compounds have always been formed, and are still formed, so that if we take one of our modern languages or dialects at any epoch we like, we find an abundance of such compounds in every stage of development. And if this is the case with modern languages,—where from plain reasons this process is partly interrupted,—how much more must it have been so with dialects entirely free, and unstinted in the display of their creative powers. In fact, there is no theoretical differ-

ence between simple words and compounds; and whether the second syllable of a word be called formal or inflectional, it was once a separate word, with a meaning of its own and a tone of its own.

Let us apply this to poetry. Here are three words: *heilfluot*, *heilant*, *heilem*, which are compounds in different stages of development, but still all capable of bearing two tones each. So that if any of the three ends a verse, we may either rhyme both syllables of the word or only the last.

With dissyllabic words or compounds the first syllable of which is short, the case is slightly different, though not theoretically.

The stages corresponding to the first two words above still bear two tones, and the liberty of rhyming the two syllables or only one is quite the same. The third, however, can bear no more than one tone, on the root syllable; and a word of the type of *gibu* can be rhymed only on both syllables.

In the place whence I take these remarks, I have explained this inconsistency by saying that only in words of the type of *heilem*, could the first syllable be stretched out so long in pronouncing as to fully correspond to the first and most accented part of the compound, whereas the syllables of dissyllables with short roots like *gibu*, followed each other so rapidly in pronunciation, that both together would correspond to no more than the second part of the compound. But whatever may be the reason, there is the fact, and we must take it into account. I hold, however, that there must have been a time when even these short-rooted words were capable of bearing two tones like all the others, though this may have been before our metre came into use. And there is some reason to believe that, in many of the so-called defective and apparently rhymeless verses in Otfrid, Lazzamon, and others, we can see the last lingering traces of this older and uniform way of accentuation.

(II.) Another way leading to the minor or 'neben-ton' was the following:

There are many words in Old H. German, which, originally dissyllables with roots long by position, frequently occur also

afterwards in a trisyllabic form, from having inserted an anomalous vowel between the consonants ending the root. The latter trisyllabic form is even the common one, at least in O.H.G., and the return to the old form is here a sign of the deterioration of the language.

The transition from one state to the other was of course not an abrupt, but a gradual one, nor was it likely that in such a case the third syllable (which is naturally and at the end of a verse even necessarily possessed of a minor tone), would lose this tone after the word had been contracted.

So we have forms and accentuations like *biféluhàn* and *bifélhàn*, *pipórakèn* and *pipórgèn*, *bésamò* and *bésmò*.

Nor will transitions, like *meinán*, *gisello*, from *meinjan* and *giselljo*, etc.,—the older forms of which are not very remote from genuine trisyllabism,—have failed to bear upon the accentuation of our words.

Now the same circumstances which gave birth and rise to the O.H.G. metrical system are to be found in exactly the same way in Old and Middle English; and if we add to this the fact that the ‘dimeter iambicus acatalectic’ of the church-hymns (which, as we have some reason to suppose, was the model of our verse), was practised in English as well as in German cloisters, it would be surprising indeed if in both countries a verse of the same nature and the same accentuation should not have sprung up.

In order to put in the right light the following specimens selected from the Brut, I shall accompany them by others taken from different Old High German poems, the rhymes of which are beyond all doubt as to their being intended. The so-called ‘Anno-Lied’ will be preferred as best suiting my purpose. It is both in point of language and rhyming licenses very similar to the Brut.

And now for my task. I had best begin with the trisyllabic rhyme words described above under 5 β (see page xxii). These words have, as is known, two accents, that is to say, the word-tone on the first, and the minor tone or verse-accent on the last syllable. For the rhyme, only these two syllables are important, the intermediate one is not essential, as it is unaccented.

Full rhymes after the type of *fillorane*: *giborane* (Krist I 23, 37) do not often occur in Brut; I may mention, however, *isworene*: *forlorene* II 83, *scomede*: *gromede* II 151, *oðere*: *broðere* II 188. Much more frequent are half-rhymes, or assonances, amongst which, after the type of *herige*: *menige* (An. L. 442), the most innocent occurring are: *heuene*: *heonene* III 26, *wunie*: *icumene* III 295, *iwitene*: *scipene* II 183 (see a similar rhyme, *ibidem* 249), *ihouene*: *isworene* III 209, *wunien*: *sumeres* II 189. More daring are *hauene*: *hæleðe* III 136, *cleopeden*: *stæuene* II 88, and still more so *læuarda*: *hauene* I 64, for the latter of which we find a good analogy in *vuristin*: *diurftigin* (An. L. 600).

The rhymes or assonances just mentioned lead us on to those trisyllabic rhymes in which only the last syllables, *i.e.* those bearing the minor accents, rhyme with each other. Indeed, it is hard to believe that in *hauene*: *hæleðe* III 136, *ihalezed*: *ifulezed* III 180, *clerekes*: *hokeres* III 195, *beiene*: *ifarene* III 209, *sechien*: *susteren* III 151 (cf. *edlin*: *vorderin* An. L. 348), the intended rhyme does more than embrace the last syllables—a fact which is still more corroborated by such specimens as *gadere*: *muchele* I 78, *makede*: *smiðeje* III 235, *hateren*: *werien* III 237, *hauede*: *scipene* III 242, *isturmede*: *makeden* I 71 and *Zangustel*: *Methahel* I 114. But we are forced to admit the possibility of rhyme upon the minor tone wherever one of the two parts constituting the rhyme is divided and broken in such manner, that only the concluding monosyllabic word rhymes with the last syllable of the trisyllabic word. Here are to be mentioned such rhymes as *Hercules*: *wes* I 56, *Totenes*: *þes* I 76, *þus*: *Membricius* I 39, 43, and innumerable cases in which the subst. *men* (plur.) rhymes with the inflectional ending *-en*. The rhyme *men*: *kæiseren*¹ III 109, is a full one. There are of course also half-rhymes in which *heom* (Dative case of *heo*) is generally used. As specimens from the An. L. I give *man*: *generian* 224, *offene*: *é* 789, as full rhymes; *brunieun*: *sturm* 126, as half-rhyme or assonance. All of these rhymes being suggestive enough

¹ To render the rhyme complete the poet added an anomalous *n* (so-called nunnation); *kaiser* stands for the acc. sing.

for any one who knows that where there is a rhyme there is an accent.

As indicated above, there are also in *Lazamon's* language a great number of words which fluctuate between dis- and trisyllabism. From the *Brut* I quote only *hauede*, *ʒeueðe*, *bureʒe*, *childeren*, *seoleuen*, *deiʒede*, *aneoweste*, *feʒerest*, *muchele*, for *hafde*, *ʒifðe*, *burhe*, *children*, *seoluen*, *deide*, *aneowste*, *feirest*, *mucle*; and it seems to be quite at the discretion of the poet to employ which form he likes.

To exemplify the use of words of this kind in constituting the rhyme, I give first some specimens from the *An. L.*: *havite*: *sagite* 178: *lante* 403: *virmanitin* 662: *sagite* 800, *haritin*: *sprachin* 340: *lantin* 496, but *irgezsin*: *hetti* 412, *hattin*: *dadin*, 620; *uristin*: *diurftigin* 600, but *vurstin*: *brustin* 732, *werilte*: *vehtinde* 180: *sedele* 372, elsewhere spelt *werlt*, *werlti*, which forms unfortunately do not occur as rhymes; worthy of notice, however, is *werilte*: *swertin* 454.

In the *Brut* we have—partly on account of the greater licence in the use of anomalous vowels, partly because of the larger material—a much greater choice of rhymes of that kind. I content myself with mentioning: *sweuene*: *ʒeueðe* III 132 (elsewhere *ʒifðe*), *ihaleʒed*: *ifuleʒed* III 180 (elsewhere *ifuʒed*), *clerekes*: *hokeres* III 195 (elsewhere *clerkes*). The greatest licence is found in *murie*: *Ambresburie* (for *burhe*), II 268, and *wunede*: *munede* (for *munte*), II 260, III 187. As certainly no one ever spoke *munede* as it is spelt in these places (the spelling doubtless only indicates the way in which words differing in number of syllables were made to agree with each other in reading¹), this last specimen leads us into the midst of the hybrid rhymes proper, that is, of those interesting rhymes which consist of a trisyllabic (simple compound or broken) word, and a genuine and unchangeable disyllable.

Before giving specimens I take leave to draw the attention of the reader to the striking similarity in the construction of rhymes between the two poems.

¹ The first *e* in *wunede* as it appears was slurred over, and the *n* in *munte* stretched more than usual.

I divide the specimens into two sections, according to the character of the root-syllables of the dissyllables employed.

An. L. *diuniti* : *gliunte* 70, *Künige* : *sturme* 248, *inne* : *brunigen* 296, *zuelevin* : *einti* 326, [*scif*-] *menigin* : *Eilbin* 332, *widewin* : *sidde* 604, *gigerwa* : *variwa* 654, *vogite* : [*Ar*-] *molte* 794, [*ougi*-] *stirnin* : *widere* 848, *nahin* : *manig man* 422. Brut *loseden* : *þeoden* III 44 : *leoden* III 297, *dæzen* : *makien* II 31, *daizen* : *wæzen* III 72, *fullehteð* : *fuseoð* III 194, *iwraðede* : *sweðe* III 104, 195, *Lundene* : *swuðe* I 343, *bozede* : *leode* III 89, *Noréine* : *Denene* III 88, 252, *bihedde* : *cleopede* III 210, *leoden* : *cleopeden* II 264, *ihaten* : *maidenen* III 18, *medewe* : *stede* III 214, *zarewe* : *þare* III 89, *drihtene* : *lihte* III 187, *seide* : *maidene* III 38, *spekene* : *kene* III 164, *gadere* : *gode* III 189, *gædere* : *þede* III 9, *æzene* : *isezen* II 109 (cf. *ceichin* : *eigine* An. L. 536), *Sexstorius* : *Boccus* III 5, *weoren* : *weorede* III 191, *cunnesmen* : *cudðen* II 160, *hæste men* : *læden* II 263, *ibroht to me* : *æhte* II 132, *widen sæ* : *blīðe* III 13, *ræze men* : *ræsdén* II 263, *hæze men* : *isechen* I 393, *Febus* : *seide þus* II 95.

An. L. *Alexanderin* : *lantin* 206, *gescephthe* : *bezziste* 54, *gesindin* : *Sicilia* 362, *hinnan* : *India* 370, *Anno* : *langere* 694, *lasterin* : *gebaldin* 814, *sinin sun* : *sünden* 62, *Cristisman* : *minnan* 70, [*mein*-] *streinge man* : *bidwigan* 276. Brut *Bruttes* : *Fulgenes* II 8, *ilefede* : *craftes* I 101, [*Ar*-] *ðures men* : *Brutten* III 48, *Lundene* : *zunge* II 190 : *londe* II 208, *funde* : *wunede* III 234, *hureden* : *eorðen* III 233, *ældre* : *aðele* III 272, *wintren* : *wondrien* II 195 : *wuneden* II 284, *felde* : *werede* III 198, *answerede* : *worðen* I 45, *bodede* : *Brutte* III 132, *beondes* : *wuneden* III 218, *marzen* : *sturién* III 251, *hæuene* : *habben* I 399, *kingen* : *nimenen* III 208, *cunnes men* : *Brutten* II 36, *sondes-mon* : *Lunden* II 144, *isomned wes* : *londes* III 6, *after heom* : *imahten* III 246, *sake beo* : *sæhte* III 45, *æie to* : *ærde* III 79, *Penda* : *sende þa* III 243, *Penda* : *iwunded þa* III 276, *siþen to* : *cnihtes* I 426, *biwiten heom* : [*wiðer*-] *iwinnen* III 97, *buþen to* : *bigunnen* II 61.

To those who are readily persuaded, the above-mentioned rhymes will sufficiently prove the presence of an accent in the inflectional endings of the words of Middle-English. However, in following up my argument I hope to find proofs of still greater conclusiveness.

Rhymes like *dæde* : *hæuede* II 136, *Ʒeorenden* : *wifmen* I 429, *læuedi* : *mæhti* II 157, *childere* : *kinge* II 115, *ronenen* (for *ronnen*=songs) : *monnen* II 165, *Bruttes* : *bureden* II 2 (cf. *Bruttes* : *biburden* I 325), bring us gradually and without any leap down to those rhymes, both rhyme-words of which are dissyllables.

Instead of giving specimens of dissyllabic rhymes, which would be of no conclusiveness whatever, I sketch rapidly another way, already referred to above, in which the minor tone was likely to take possession of inflectional syllables.

Amongst the specimens given above we have such rhymes as *sinin sun* : *sünden*; *isomned wes* : *londes*, which are constructed in just the same way as An. L. *wisheit* : *vili breiht* 192, *wichaft* : *iri craft* 292. Brut *swikedom* : *wimmon* II 202, *wifmon* : *seineð on* III 249, *feorlic* : *deope dich* II 93, both rhyme-words of which are compounds. The following equally dissyllabic rhymes are constructed in like manner, *vorhtsam* : *gehorsam* An. L. 246, *wepmon* : *wifmon* Brut I 79, *alswa* : *batwa* I 101, *forðward* : *orchærd* II 116, *wifmen* : [*wið*-]innen II 65, *cómen* : *burmen* (for *burhmen*) II 145, *seið me* : *hehne* III 88 and from these a short and direct way leads us to rhymes consisting of equally simple rhyme-words as An. L. *suster* : *Laster* 965, *wunter* : *grunte* 218, 226; Brut *hundred* : *wunder* II 101, 224; *Lunden* II 93; *grunden* III 77; *grunde* I 332, 334, II 191, III 199, *Walwain* : *bihaluen* III 66, *Ʒohte* : *dohter* II 221, and to the very frequent rhymes of *drihtin* : *lihte* : *nihte*, etc. If the last two words are taken as the end of the line of development, every one looking with unprejudiced and impartial eyes at the specimens given in the last paragraph, is bound to admit that there is no trace whatever of a leap or bound in their construction. So that whoever admits that such words as *vorhtsam* : *gehorsam*; *wepmon* : *wifmon*, are rhymed as well as accented upon both syllables (which the author of the 'Englische Metrik' admittedly does) is forced to admit the same possibility or rather necessity as to rhymes like *lihte* : *nihte*, representing the concluding link of our chain of development.

I resume the argument at the point where it was dropped before the digression in the foregoing paragraph.

I spoke of the class of rhymes composed of equally dissyllabic simple rhyme-words. The reader will remember the way in which the presence of a minor tone in the last syllables of trisyllabic words was proved. In the same way the presence of that tone can be proved with regard to dissyllabic words. It is superfluous to cite specimens exemplifying the gradual transition. The rhyme of the first part of the compound with the first syllable of the single word grows less and less discernible, till at last only the latter part of the compound and the second syllable of the simple word rhyme with each other.

The rhymes engendered by this kind of licence are very numerous in An. L. The monosyllable most in use in such cases is *man*, which generally occasions the return of the old inflectional ending *-an*, that elsewhere in this document is softened down into *-in -en*. There are, however, half-rhymes, as *man : sichen* 710. Assonances of another kind are *quam : virlouchinan* 812 : *ginadin* 772. In Middle-English, where *men* or *heom*,—and in a lesser degree *mon*, *nom*, *com*—were very favourite monosyllables, the necessity of such a violent assimilation was not so urgent. As specimens of full rhyme I may cite here *men : streten* III 72 : *iwurſen* III 164 : *horen* III 166 : *burhſen* III 169 : *aſen* III 291 : *isohten* II 192, etc. As interesting analogies to the assimilations cited from the An. L. we find here *mon : habbeon* III 277 ; *wifmon : Judon* I 172.

Just as the inflectional *-en*, we find *-e* in rhyme. Amongst the monosyllables used for rhyming with the inflectional *-e*, the pronouns *me*, *ſe*, *he* are the favourites. But the substantive *sea* also seems to have been used for the same purpose. On a foregoing page I had occasion to mention the hybrid rhyme *widen sæ : blæde*, to which may here be added the rhymes of *se (sæ, sea)* with *isome* (for *isomme*!) III 229 : *iſene* ibidem : *ferde* I 47 : *swein* (Dat. c. for *sweine*) I 149 : *Deſſe* III 200 : *ende* III 201 : *Bruttaine* III 281 : *ſuſende* III 284 : *sæle* II 14, *wolcke* I 394, II 15 : *funde* III 222. Half-rhymes are formed by means of *treo*, *ſreo*, *to*, *ido*, *ſa*, *ſwa*, and the like.

There can be no doubt either as to the inflectional *-es* being able to constitute a rhyme. Unfortunately I have found only two specimens, viz. *was : cunnes* II 607, *arás : ærmes* III 118.

As rhymes of similar structure, however, may be mentioned, *Flandres : wes* III 115; *Luces : wæs* III 81 : *us* III 2; *vobis : iwis* II 103; *cernis : iwis* III 190.

Much more frequently is the ending *-ed* employed in rhyme. Rhymes like *blīðemod : iblissed* III 191 (cf. *hali mot : hundred* III 277); *hirēd : istronged* II 4 : *isomned* III 38; *Modred : itimbred* III 127, offer a short and direct transition to full rhymes like *iuēd : ifostred* III 277; *imenged : bet* III 142, *iset : isemed* III 93, *dæd : for-demed* I 425 and half-rhymes like *bidæled : ærd* II 107; *sæg : iwunded* I 341; *wod : bidæled* II 3 : *icraððed* II 76; *binceaued : godd* I 6-7; the structure of which corresponds perfectly with that of the rhymes *abbed : god* II 124, 127 (cf. *abbede : gode* II 123) : *råd* II 125, 129, *maumet : god* III 170, and the Teutonic *bar-fot : gôd* I 377.

Besides those above mentioned, I could not find any other endings used as rhymes. Only for the sake of completeness I mention rhymes in *-est* (superl.), which,—though even the author of the 'Metrik' concedes its capability of bearing a minor tone,—occurs much too seldom to build strong theories on.

The inflection of the second person sing. of verbs is not to be met with, any more than that of the plural and third person sing. pres.—at least not in full rhyme.

In the foregoing pages I have spoken of dissyllabic rhymes in which the word-tone and minor-tone were bound together. Great as this licence seems, there is a still greater one to be found where the rhyme consists of only the syllables bearing the minor tone, or, in other words, where minor tone rhymes with minor tone, as in *Cadwa(ð)lan : londen* III 256 : *kempen* III 257 : *Anglen* III 257 : *eorlen* III 258 : *stunden* III 275 : *icunden* III 277 : *ihaten* III 278, *baluwen : ileoten* III 258, *beorzen : hunden* II 451; in vol. III. pp. 58-59, a passage of no less than sixteen verses in succession may be found connected by rhymes of this kind; *andswarede : kinge* III 123, *iherde : icorne* III 259, *kene : swiðe* III 55, *iheled : ineoðered* III 203, *hundes : togaderes* III 274, *gripes : fuzeles* III 120, *beornes : Bruttes* II 46, etc. From Old H.G. I quote : *gehelfen : gelüteren* Arnsteiner Marienleich 207, *fillen fâhen* Leich vom

heiligen Georg 37, *mālo* : *herigo* ibid 1, *volke* : *gezelle* An. L. 284.

I abstain from giving more specimens.

The foregoing pages seem to show the way in which poets, with the view of lightening their work, were gradually led from one rhyming licence to another, till, at last, the consonance of the rhyme-words was scarcely perceptible. But, in reality, the genealogy of the rhyme was just the reverse, and I only chose the above method of argument for convenience sake.

The rhymes upon the accent or minor tone no doubt first came into existence, since they were the easiest and most consistent with the common and prosaic way of accentuation.

The specimens given in the above sketch sufficiently show what I intended to prove.

As where rhyme is, there is accent, I have shown that trisyllables, without regard to their root-syllables, had an accent or minor-tone on their last syllables, the same as dissyllables, except that here things depend on the length of the root, for only inflections of dissyllables with long root-syllables can be found rhyming.

I come to the last conclusion. The same accentuation which words receive at the ends of verses is, if necessary, likewise admissible when these words stand in the middle of verses.¹

The result of thus transferring this accentuation from the end to the middle of verse, is the line of Otfrid's four-accent metre.²

PHONOLOGY.

ā has suffered comparatively little damage in our text.

Before *n*, *m*, it is weakened, as in most of the O.E. dialects, into *o*, except in *anan* 31, 440, etc., and *cang* 258, *acanget* 2018, the derivation of which has not yet been made out with sufficient certainty (Swed. *kång* ?).

e before *n*, *m* instead of *o* (*a*), we find in *hwen* 389, *þenne* 426, 774, *imenget* 608. *eo* in *þeonne* 2468.

¹ Very often, especially in Lajamon, the rhyme embraces three arses. Sometimes whole verses seem to be rhymed.

² For the Old and Middle English poems claimed for our metre, see my 'Critique.'

e in *scheome* belongs of course, as in *scheop*, etc., to a preceding guttural.

a before *r* remains nearly everywhere. The only exceptions are *onswere* 357, *aber* 1544, *gersum* 798, *dearnliche* (Old E. already *derne*) 406, 575, 576, *wearnen* 769, *bearnde* 1650.

Before *l* exceptions are equally scarce. Vacillating between *a*, *ea* (*e*) are *aldrene* 81, 800, *wealt* 218, 504, 556, 933, 1067, *smeal* 1588; *ea* is certain only in *alwealdend* 618, 1723, 1765, *healden* 686, *wealt* 1780, 2036, *æald* 127, *bealden* 1609.

Before *h* or *x* (= *hs*) the exceptions are still fewer. Only in *seh*, has *a* been replaced by *e*.

Before the rest of the consonants, *a* has not been preserved so purely. But even here all the three texts not seldom agree in having *a*: thus it is the rule in such words as *makien*, *schaftē*, *ischapen*, *haben*, etc.

For *a*, which, in Old E., is mostly replaced by *ā*, R as a rule has *e*, B *ea*, C *a*. That R represents the reading of the original, is sufficiently evident from the fact that in about fifty of the words concerned (a great number of which are in very frequent use in our text, as *cweð*, *æf*, *dei*, and the various forms of *seggen*), C leaves its *a* in favour of the vowel used in R, a favour which is not returned by either R or B but in a very few instances, as in *wattres* 271, *was* 527, *raðe* 555, *tat* 1338, and *hwas* 680, 765, etc., which last word we may safely suppose began to lengthen its vowel in that time.

ea for Old E. *a* occurs in *ileaðet* 1895.

ë as an old 'umlaut' of *ā* occurs wherever it is to be found in Old E.; this *e* very seldom vacillates between *ea*, *e*, *a*, as in *meremannes* 1490.

ï is even more uncertain than *ä*. Just as in O.E. it frequently changes with the older *e* and *eo*; unfortunately very often this change is not carried out simultaneously by the MSS. of my text. R, however, seems to be right again, as the following specimens will show.

eo is certain in *weorre* 20, 2399, *gleo*, *gleowinde* 1667, *feole*, 89, 159, 799, 2052; *leornin* 110, 386, 938, etc.; *heorte*, 86, 168, 181, etc.; *eorðe*, 353, 1017, etc.; *icleopet* 462, 2346, 2375; *neomen* 653, 765, 1001, 1180; *steorren* 714; *feor*, 823;

weorrin 1348, 2039; *steortnaket* 1537; *heouene* 1574, 1731, 1984, 2417; *æorne*, 1576; *heonne* 2068; *æouen* 37; *heowes* 1658; *tintreohe* 1948; *eornen*, 2268.

Fluctuating between *e*, *eo*; *seolf* 58, 69; *icleopet* 88, 360; *feole* 119, 121, 860, etc.; *heouene* 183, etc., *speokene* 312, 1577, 2058; *beoren* 453, 2458; *seoluen* 493; *foræoteð* 1368; *heonne* 1383; *heorte* 1495, 2116; *seouensiðes* 1665; *biæoten* 2113; *tintreohe* 1504, 2131; *leoðien* 1519.

Fluctuating between *e* and *i*: *etsterten* 700; *firreste* 1554; *zirnede* 1579, 2387; *fehten* 766; *rinneð* 2477.

Fluctuating between *eo*, *o*, is only *sweord* 2180, 2234, 2404.

The old *e* sound is preserved in *cweðe* 867, *helpen* 1140, *zelpen* 1280, *wreken* 2049, *zelden* 2216, *heuene* 364, 2461, *schelde* 809.

eo attenuated into *o*, occurs only in *world*.

ea stands for *e*, *i*, *eo*, in *chear*, *chearren*, 2288–9.

ī for Old E. *y* is only to be found in *forbisne*, *king*, and the other compounds with *kine*, *kineburh*, *kinemot*, etc.

Elsewhere *i* equals Old E. *i*.

ō=Old E. *ō* except in *leowsin* 1519, and *marhen* 605, etc., the latter of which is no doubt assimilated to those with *ar* in their roots; it evidently goes back to the by-form *mergen*.

ǔ=Old E. *ū*, *ȳ*, except in *-luker* 2086, comparative of *-līch*.

Â (except in the few cases where already in O.E. it had been obscured into *ō*, as in *nomen*, *moneð*, *æomere*, etc.) has been preserved in its old purity. Exceptions, only *lo*, 98, *keiser* 306 etc., *steah*, 338, 714, 1854, and *hehte* 73, etc. The two latter are, I suppose, assimilated to similar forms (*stéap*, *hêt*?).

Æ umlaut of *ā* is subjected to the same fluctuations as *ā*, umlaut of *ǣ*. As before, R mostly offers *ē*, B *ea*, C *ā*. As for the two former vowels, a kind of rule may be established, in so far as *ē* is certain wherever it is to be derived from a Teutonic *ā*, whereas *ea* takes its place where it answers to Goth. *ai*, O.H.G. *ei*. Exceptions are *flesch*, *ledden*, 2219, 2313, *lerden* 469, *del* 669, on the one hand; *read* 6, *pear*, 8, 23, *fearlac*, *offearet*, etc., *mealen* 1319, on the other.

Certain *ā*, we have only in *halewi* 1692, *rawe* 1930 (Old E. *rāve* and *rēwe*) *wraððe* 2048, *dale* 99, *stanene* 2480.

Uncertain and fluctuating between *e*, *a*, *ea*, we find the vowel in *lefði*, *wreððe* 154, 1903, *cweðen* 539, *idealet* 752, *arerde* 1060,

1111, *bireadde* 1230, *unmoreste* 1260, *leasteð* 1704, 2164, *eskest*, 1716, *lesten* 1790, *read* 1975, *iled* 1202, *clane* 2247, 2265, *heaste*, 816.

Also with *eo* this vowel is sometimes found changing, as in *feorlich* 2056 and *leoteð*; and we find it fluctuating between *e* and *eo* in the same two words 1995 and 2252.

ē = O.E. *ē* except in *heanin* 1020, 2402.

ī = O.E. *ī* is occasionally broken into *eo* as in O.E. Cf. *-luker* mentioned under *ū*.

ó is, with only a few exceptions, = O.E. *ó*: the uncertainty in *wod wed* 31, evidently arises from assimilation to the past part. of *wēden*, 1257. In *hef* 181 and *step* (*steap*) 713, 1852, the original vowel seems to have been affected by a similar cause.

Uncertain as either *o*, *eo*, or *e*, we find it in *Wodnesdei*, 2184.

û = O.E. *ú*, *ý*.

O.E. *eó*, Goth. *iū* answers to *eo* in St. Katherine.

O.E. *eá*, Goth. *áu* answers to *ea*, except in a few words, of which *deð* and *heh*, with their divers forms and compounds, are the most frequently used.

CONSONANTS.

The inflectional *m*, wherever preserved, is weakened to *n*.

In other cases it is O.E. *m*.

n is frequently dropped in the inflections of substantives, and, though more seldom, in those of the verb, and in the prepositions *in*, *on*, the indefinite article and the first and second persons of the poss. pronouns, etc. Single *n* instead of double *n* is put in forms like *speokene*, *ane*, with the exception of *donne* 782, etc, *underfonne* 2234, where it is always preserved.

p inserted in *inempnet*.

b the same as in O.E.

f in *anlaut* seldom represented by *u*, as in *ules*. In *inlaut* between vowels or liquids softened into *u*=*v* the vibrating (buzzing) labiodental aspirate, as in *bileau* 319, *halue* 20, *deoules* 2312, *derure* 947, *culurene* 1823. The first signs of this transmutation we can observe already in Old E. (cf. Sievers, Grammatik, § 194).

t in *auslaut* often takes the place of *d*. MS. B goes farthest in this respect. In *preottuſe* 1413, *tt* stands for *t*.

d in *auslaut* seldom replaces *t*; *isend* 711. Sometimes *d* is used instead of *dd*, as in *ischrud*, *iprud* 1449. Nearly always omitted in *onswere-de-n*, *c* written for *ds* in *milce* 295.

þ, *ſ*, the first of which signs is used in *anlaut*, the latter anywhere else. *þ* in *anlaut*, and after words ending with *s*, *d*, *t*, is often replaced by *t*. *ſ* omitted in *wurgiſ* 272. *t* is written for *tt*, i.e. *tþ* in *mahtu* 1494, *schaltu* 2132, etc.

s, except that it stands for double *s* (*ſs*) in *blisful* 1857, does not offer points worth notice. More interesting is the ligature *sc* which, except in *sker* 867, *scolmeistres* 521, *esken* 1716, *menske* 1983, in our text, appears as *sch*. Only once in *ules* is *sch* narrowed into *s*, a change peculiar to the Middle Kentish dialect.

c (*k*) is by far the most interesting consonant in the dialect:—

IN ANLAUT,

c is used before all guttural vowels, whereas *k* precedes vowels of palatal character, that is, *e*, and *i*, *y* (the umlaut of *u*). From the former rule only two words are excepted, *kasten*, 945, and *Katerine*, which are of foreign origin, and to the latter the only exception is *bicherde* 1183, 2228, 2229. Doubtful are *bikimet* 1291, and *nowcin* 1840, 2395.

Before *i* (old) and *eo*, *c* (so far as I can judge,) becomes *ch*, as in *childhade* 79, *cheosen* 1871.

IN AUSLAUT

c is preserved in most instances. In *spek* 308, it has given way to *k*. In *euch*, *hwuch*, *swuch*, *-lich*, the *ch* is apparently taken from the dissyllabic forms, an explanation, however, which does not account for the change of *ic* into *ich*, and *ac* into *ah*. In the word last mentioned, the dissolution of the *c* is gone already so far as a slender aspiration, but the last state it reaches is in *þulli* 348 (O.E. *þyllic*), for which the text elsewhere reads *þullich*, as in ll. 357, 847, 2333.

IN INLAUT

the hard guttural has partly remained intact, and partly been palatalized. From want of material I cannot make a thorough examination as to whether or not my text agrees with the rule set up by Mr. Sievers in his *Grammatik*, § 206, 6. The fact that *ch* does not precede either *ä* or *ā* certainly speaks in its favour. Other vowels are followed by either *k* or *ch*, as in *eche* 298 (but *ecnesse* 2505), *speche* 451, *biseche*, 2343, *enawlechiš* 1343, 1379, *loken*, 790, *bokes*, 837, *token* 2060, *hokeres* 419, *lokede* 1206, *ibroken* 1201, *strikinde* 732, *iwiket* 1740, *pikes* 1929, *swike* 1937; but *riche* 47, 50, 60, *liches* 1045 (cf. *licome* 2202), *iliche* 1663, *siker* 25, *cwike* 63, *sikel* 825, *isliket* 1660, *blikede* 2364, *toluken* 2092, *bruche* 334, *muchel* 456, *bruchel* 2003, *meoke* 103, *speokene* 312, *brookeš* 1294. Although the use of the gutturals in the foregoing specimens is pretty regular, and might suggest certain ideas, I abstain from founding any rule upon such scanty materials. It must not be forgotten, however, that in the text there is no word showing (in inlaut) *k* after *ē*, *ū*; or *ch* after *ö*, *ō*, *ī*, *ū*.

When the hard guttural stands by another consonant, the following seems to be the rule: *c* remains intact when followed, and is palatalized when preceded, by the other consonant; exceptions from the latter part of this rule are *wlonke* 842, *ponki* 2382, *werkes* 1016, *ilke* 1095, 1199.

O.E. *cc* in our text takes the form of *cch*, which, in *strecche*, appears simplified into *ch*; whilst on the other hand *cch* in *hwucche*, 445, 1032, 1707, and *swucche* 2190, is an anomaly, standing for *ch*.

O.E. *cg* becomes *gg* in our text, as in *leggen* 772, *seggeš*, 321, 327.

The old ligatures *cl*, *cn*, *cr*, *cw*, are still in use. The last of them is changed into *qu* in *quoš*.

As to the use of *g* and *ȝ* in *anlaut*, it is impossible to formulate a rule from the scanty materials of our text; for we find *ȝarewe* 1734, *ȝarkin* 1735; and on the other hand *togederes gederin* 989, *ageide* 1249, *geaš* 1883, not mentioning interchanges which apparently nothing can account for. So, for instance, l. 215, we find *ȝulde*, but l. 231 *unfo*, *gult*, l. 499

offers *ʒonge*, which in l. 2469 is uncertain. In spite of all these irregularities, however, we may say that *g* has in most cases been palatalized before *e*, *i*, *eo*.

The prefix *ʒe-* has dwindled into a single vowel *i*. The suffix *-ig* had a similar fate, except that it sometimes reappears when the word is inflected. Of *witti*, for instance, we have the forms *wittezen* 843, *wittege* 489 (but *wittiest* 533).

As for *inlaut* and *auslaut*, we may lay down the rule that *g*, when preceded by consonants and guttural vowels, becomes *h*, whereas it is perfectly vocalized and becomes *i* when preceded by palatal vowels. Only one single exception from the first part of this rule is to be met with in *buriboldes* 439, which as simple, however, is always spelt *burh-es* 6, 9. To the second part of our rule several exceptions occur, in *hehest* 416, *fehene* 2291 (comparative; the posit. is always spelt *feir(e)*), *sehen* 278, *stihen* 1012, *hihe* 1381, and *wiheles* 129, 1051, which last word, however, is, in l. 891, in better accordance with our rule spelled *wiles* for *wieles* (?).

There is not much to be said about *h*. It is lost in *anlaut* before *l*, in *lowinge* 143, *ludinge* 144, etc., the same as before *r*, as in *rake* 1138, *raðe* 555, 972, *ream* 2293, *arudden* 1137, *reoðeren* 60, etc. *h* in *inlaut* is omitted in *hest*, a form which in my text not seldom interchanges with the older *hehest*.

The semivowel *w*, which in our MSS., except in *quoð*, is rendered by the old *wén*, is, in *inlaut*, upon the whole preserved intact. Not mentioning the cases where in Old E. it was allowed to drop, it is omitted in *ichulle*, besides which, however, the regular formula *ich wulle* is still in use. With the following vowel it is blended in *euch* and in *hu*, which promiscuously appears beside the old *hwi*. It has darkened the following vowel in the various forms of *wullen*, *nullen*, in *wummon*, *hwuch*, *swuch*; *world*, *sword*, *quoð*. It has disappeared without leaving a trace in *nat*, *nes*, *neren*, forms in use already in Old E.

The semivowel Teutonic *j* was rendered by *ʒ* in Old E., and this custom is retained by our scribes. Only in *inlaut* it is frequently replaced by *i*, while, on the other hand, it is sometimes hardened into *g*, as in *wurðgede* 59, 508, *biblodeget* 204,

studgi 1264; and in *herhede* 336, it even passes over into the guttural line.

Over *l* and *r* we need not lose many words. I shall only mention that like *m* and *n*, *r* is frequently dropped in inflections. This is always the case with *l* in *euch*, *hwuch*, *swuch*, and their by-forms.

FORMS AND INFLECTIONS.—DIALECT.

NOUNS.

A rapid glance at the forms of our text will teach us that the obliteration of the language had already gone so far as to make the classification used in O.E. grammar inadvisable. The only way to bring some order into our materials, is to treat each case separately.

The form of the nominative is changed in a few cases. Final *e* is dropped in *wil(l)* 371, added in *cwarterne* 671, *heaðene* 36, *wununge* 2423, and others terminating in *-ung*, *-ing*; the oblique case of *wa*, *weane* is (beside the old form) used as a nominative, cf. 1166-7.

The genitive case in the singular of masculine and neuter substantives is commonly denoted by *-es*.

keiseres 3, *healendes* 612, *þunres* 1998, *weis* 1864, *deies* 1077, *meidenes* 909, 2062, *blodes* 1398, *swinkes* 805, *cunnes*, 1912.

Our text is in accordance with other writings of the same period in using the noun proper without the genitival termination. So we find *Belial* for *Belials* 1906. The word *feder*, however (which elsewhere, like *moder*, *broðer*, *suster*, and *dohter*, is still without the sign of the genitive case), has in *federes* 619, assimilated itself to the rest of the genitives.

The same termination is applied in the genitive case of fem. nouns: *mereminnes* 1490, *worldes* 1502, 1723, *cristenes* 2045, *lefdis* 2192.

Alixandres 47, is not necessarily of *Alexander*, as Morton has sometimes rendered it, but more probably of *Alexandria*, or *Alexandriæ*, as the Latin text puts it.

The adverbial genitive *nihtes* 1077 is in use as of old.

The dative and accusative cases mostly coincide in form. There is, however, a marked difference to be noticed according

to the prepositions they are connected with. Sir F. Madden, in the Introduction of his well-known edition of *Lazamon's Brut*, puts forth the opinion that when the *Brut* was written, the prepositions which formerly governed the dative had changed this case for the accusative. This may apply to the *Brut*, but it certainly does not to our *Katherine*.

for and *mid* (*wið*), it is true, appear to govern the accusative case everywhere, with the exception of only a few cases, as *for neode* 9, and *mid rihte* 769.

But in the case of *in* and *of*, the dative case is not so rare. I find *in* . . . *lif* 1694, *lond* 21, 1693, *hond* 1779, *hus* 1807, *niht* 2189, *zer* 43, *meiðhad* 137, *bur* 138, *burh* 46, 64, *mod* 60, *anhad* 931, *strif* 940, *þing* 1032, 1035, *world* 1224; but *in* . . . *halle* 416, *londe* 535, 1304, *stalle* 683; *of* . . . *god* 100, *gleo* 145, *hird* 156, *deað* 165, 337, 1334, *blod* 204, *treo*, *stan* 266, *gold*, *seoluer* 269, 493, *wind* 217, *dei* 436, *lond* 586, *strif* 701, *creft* 814, *lam* 990, 2150, *world* 1626, *niht* 1741, *folc* 2010, *lei* 195, *gast* 196, 1401, *monhad* 985, *þing* 980, *lif* 885, *muð* 192; but *of* . . . *worlde* 80, 97, 472, *childhade* 79, *weie* 126, *akte* 143, 199, 231, *gode* 392, *burhe* 2317, *witte* 1285, *wohe* 1235.

After *to*, the dative case is employed nearly as often as the accusative case: *to* . . . *heaðendom* 35, *healent* 182, 2067, *þing* 245, 993, *leaf* 384, *zelp* 470, *lif* 478, *deað* 566, *strif* 795, *wealdent* 1765, *lauerd* 2066, 2128, *þing* 993, and the frequent *to-dei*; but *to* . . . *balewe*, *bismere* 552, *Criste* 694, 2181, 2492, *deaðe* 2206, *fehete* 14, *kinge* 1300, *lake*, 62, 200, 1898, *londe* 7.

And *on* seems to have stuck to the old construction: we find *on* . . . *blode* 1543, *breoste* 190, *halue* 121, *liue* 2360, *rode* 1901, *seotle* 45, *worlde* 526, 1068, and only *on* . . . *dei* 339, *half*, 2014, *writ* 110.

Of other prepositions I shall only mention *bute* . . . *mel* 1819, *azeines* . . . *heast* 2218, *wiðuten* . . . *burh* 2240, *toward* . . . *deað* 2268, *from* . . . *bale* 2295, and governing the dative case, *under* . . . *schelde* 809, *bi* . . . *bane* 2177.

For the nominative case in the plural number (such forms as *fet* 499, and *men* 799, of course, excepted) we have two terminations *-es* and *-en*; the former mostly used with masculine and neuter nouns, the latter with feminine nouns. There are

exceptions (though not so numerous as to make the rule impractical), which may be partly remains of the old declensions (as many of the *weak* substantives), but they may be also partly due to change of gender. We know, for instance, from ll. 781 and 1026, that *bileau* and *deað* have become feminines, and from l. 2037 that *medschiþe* has become neuter.

For the genitive plural, the termination *-e* is the rule, as in *breoste* 2122, *kinge* 2211, *meidene* 2379, 2425, *schafte* 882, *smelle* 617, *þinge* 253, *worlde*, 663, 2504. Very seldom we find the termination of the weak declension (O.E. *ena*) employed, as in *aldrene* 81, 100, *cnihdene* 1558, *culurene* 1823, *dahene* 2469, *kempene* 2469. Beside the ancient form *-menne* 6, we find a form without *umlaut*: *monne* . . . 450, 2022. An analogy we have in the fluctuation between *mennesse* and *monnesse* 985.

The only exception to the above rule we have in foreign words, as in *maumetes temple*, Latin *templo idolorum*, *liunes leohe*, Latin *lacu leonum*, *martirs licomes* (no Latin equivalent). Here the genit. seems to have taken the form of the nom. acc. *martirs*, *maumez*, which forms are, no doubt, influenced by Norman-French.

The accusative pl. is almost without exception the same in form with the dative and, of course, the nominative. So we have *men* a. 33, d. 144; *þreates* a. 2002, d. 40; *godes* a. 147, d. 53; *tintreohen* a. 1887, d. 41; *godes* a. 2088, d. 53; *ehnen* a. 111, d. 307; *deouelen* n. 553, d. 211; *creftes* a. 1052, d. 256; *engles* n. 291, d. 1830; *wordes* a. 374, d. 311, 378; *sahen*, a. 358, d. 382; *meistres* a. 467, d. 446; *honden* a. 1358, d. 494; *runes* a. 109, d. 575; *kinges* n. 224, d. 637; *earen* n. 497, d. 1128; *weolen* n. 1035, d. 1695; *teð* a. 1266, d. 191; *cnihdes* n. 1738, d. 1436; *lefdis* n. 2328, d. 1478; *dahes* a. 1824, d. 1918; *huweoles* a. 1919, d. 1941; *fuheles* a. 2092, d. 2245.

Wherever these cases differ, we are certain that this has nothing to do with the inflections, as in *wiheles* a. 129, *wiles* d. 891.

As to *murhðen* n. 1697, 2159, *murhðes* d. 2186, the termination of the nominative seems to have been a double one, as is doubtlessly the case with *þing*, the accusative pl. of which is in ll. 934, 999, formed after the old fashion, while in ll. 360

and 370, the word shares the fate of the other masculines and neuters. It is the same with *word*, the plural of which is sometimes *wordes*, as in ll. 311, 316, sometimes *word*, as in ll. 482, 488.

As interesting plural forms I have further to mention *schep* a. 60, *deor* d. 2244, and the quite irregular *bule* a. 61, which, in O.E., is weak masc.

ADJECTIVES.

The most frequent termination of adjectives is *-e*. But to judge from our material, however scanty it may be, the use of this termination does not seem to have been arbitrary. So when employed substantivally, the adjective appears in the singular without inflection, as in *leafful* 1038, in the plural with *-e*, as in *þe oðre* 30, *poure*, *riche* 50, *neodfule*, *nakede*, 102, *summe* 37, 39. The same seems to apply to the adjective being employed predicatively, as in *þung* 66, *feier*, *freolich* 68, and *wode* 2269, *isleine* 2009. Only in the case of its being used as an attribute does the use of the inflectional *-e* seem to have been left at the writer's discretion.

In our text, as in other writings of the period, there are some traces to be met with of adjectives being followed by the indefinite article by way of inflection, and this not only when the adjective is used substantivally where this course is fully carried out in modern grammar, as in *þe cuddeste an*, 821-2 (also inverted *þe an modgeste* 1240), but also when employed as an attribute, as in *leouest an wummon* 2420.

The comparison of adjectives exhibits no striking peculiarities any more than the formation of adverbs; both are, on the whole, formed on the same principles as in O.E. Changes of sound have been mentioned in their proper place.

Of pronouns inflected like adjectives, several have preserved their old forms; *ilke* we find only in the expression *mid tet ilke* 713, 789; of (*n*)*an*, a genitive sing. occurs *anes* 1959, 1961, *nanes* 1912; and of *al* a genitive plur. *alre* 253, 587, 592, a form which is in use up to a comparatively late period. As to the use of *al* and *alle*, I observe that the latter form is employed wherever in the plural it is used substantivally or

attributively, while the former (*al*) is made use of in all other cases.

Of *seolf* we find the sing. nom. *seolf* 1095, the acc. *seoluen* 1144, the same form for the dat. 1835, and plur. nom. 634, acc. 130, 2353. We meet, however, already with traces indicating that this old difference is going to be abolished. We find the form *seolf* for the sing. acc. 58, 1835, 1901, and for the dative 96.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Of the first and second persons sing. we have the nom. *ich þu*, and the acc. dat. *me þe*. Of the forms of the dual, we are sorry not to find certain instances. It is, however, more than probable that MS. R in *wit* 1512, and *unc* 1515, represents the reading of the original.

The plural is complete: *we ȝe* for the nom. *us, ow*, for the acc. dat. and *ure* 802, *ower* 1277, for the genitive.

The third person is nearly as poor in forms as the first and second sing. Of the sing. we meet with the nom. *he* and *hit*, and the acc. dat. *him, hit*. Of the dative of the latter form, moreover, we cannot find a specimen.

The feminine gender of this pronoun deserves special notice. The common form is *ha*. In elevated passages, however, the older form *heo* is still in use. So we find it in ll. 116, 168, 726, 742, 1319, 2372. Dat. and acc. is *hire*. The plural form for all genders is *ha*, which in elevated passages, as in the case of the fem. sing., is replaced by *heo*, 365, 740, 1142. The dat. acc. is *ham*. For the genit. we have a rather doubtful specimen in *heore* 872, for which, as this is the form in impassioned passages, the common form would be *hare*.

I must not forget to mention that there are some traces of an absolute pronoun coming into use: *hire* and *him* are sometimes used for *he* and *ha*, and this is mostly the case when the pronoun is followed by *seolf*, *seoluen*, cf. l. 1083. If we could find *hisseolf* instead of *himseolf*, we might easily account for the change by *seolf* being taken for a substantive. In connection with *ane*=*allone, only*, the pers. pronoun was similarly treated sometimes, cf. *þe ane* 2265. See also Maetzner's Glossary under *an, ane*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

As in O.E. these pronouns are framed by treating the genitive of the personal pronouns as a nominative. The first and second persons which were declined in O.E. lost their inflections in our dialect,—occasional changes in their form, as in *ower*, *owre*, having nothing to do with cases. To the different forms of *min*, *þin*, the rule applies which I gave when treating of the adjectives, save that the fuller forms *mine*, *þine* are occasionally to be met with before substantives in the plural and (very seldom¹) in the singular, where forms like *þi*, *mi*, are the rule.

The possessive pronoun of the third person remains undeclined, as in O.E. Changes of *hare* 129, and *heore* 252, are accounted for like those of *ha* and *heo* mentioned on the last page; and the form *hise* 1954, 2235, is to be explained by assimilation to the possessive pronouns of the 1st and 2nd persons singular.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

In the following tables the forms put first are considered to be the common ones, while the others are understood to be exceptional.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
N. þes 228, 431, 517, etc., þis 1488.	þis 24, 77, etc., þeos 103, 354, 1861, tes 1387.	þeos 104.
G. —	—	þeose 881.
D. —	þis 894, 1035, 1405, etc.	þis 64, 766, þisse 2079.
A. þis 275, 598, etc., þes, 1762.	þis 210, 342, etc.	þeos 417, 2388, þis 283.
Instrumental, þus 910. Cf. þus ido dede, literally=by this done deed=by the accomplishment of this deed.		

PLURAL.

N. —	—	—
G. —	—	—
D. þeos 879, 1918, þes(?) 730, 2082, þeose 487.	þeos 2227.	—
A. þeos 724.	—	—

¹ Perhaps only with feminines.

DEFINITE PRONOUN.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
N. <i>þe</i> 197, etc.	<i>þ</i> 27, etc., <i>þe</i> 828, 2490.	<i>þe</i> 468, 748, etc.
G. <i>þes</i> 2123, <i>þe</i> 2201.	<i>þes</i> 2062.	<i>þe</i> 9, <i>þes</i> 2045.
D. <i>þe</i> 182, etc.	<i>þe</i> 43, etc., <i>þet</i> 203, 980, 1693-4, etc.	<i>þe</i> , etc., <i>þet</i> 143, 1607, 1934, 2480.
A. <i>þe</i> 264, etc., <i>þene</i> 1183, <i>þen</i> 1184.	<i>þe</i> 689, 725.	<i>þe</i> 244, 757.

Instr. *þi* 85, *þe* when connected with comparatives, 413.

PLURAL.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
N. <i>þe</i> 34, etc., <i>þeo</i> 92, 500, 950, 2389, 2432.	<i>þe</i> 30, 1928.	<i>þe</i> 1632.
G. <i>þe</i> 6.	—	—
D. <i>þe</i> 144, etc., <i>þeo</i> 1724.	<i>þe</i> 410, 1941, etc.	<i>þe</i> 1635, 1695.
A. <i>þe</i> 592.	<i>þe</i> 836, etc.	<i>þe</i> 1330, 1358.

A glance at the foregoing tables teaches us that there are some traces, however few, of the old richness of form. The modern look of the latter table is due to *þe* having taken possession of nearly all cases and genders. *þ*, however, still firmly holds its place in at least the nominative and (with a slight deviation from the old practice) dative, so that I am inclined to explain its being used elsewhere by a change of gender. *kinedom* 1624, 2149, at least, and *hird* 2413, 2426, have evidently become neuters. That the use of *þeo* beside *þe* in the nom. and dat. plur. of masculines is analogous to that of *heo* beside *ha*, and *heore* beside *hare*, is obvious from the passages where they occur.

INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Of interrogatives, we find the nom. *hwa* 168, neuter *hwet* 2212, genit. *hwas*, and two forms for the instrumental, namely, *hwi* 992, 968=why, and *hu* 956, 959=how, which, however, are not yet strictly kept asunder. *hwucche* 1707, 1632, seems to have been used as a kind of plural.

All of these pronouns could be employed as relative pronouns, if we are allowed to judge by our material. I find *hwa* used as a relative 516 (?), *hwet* 1723, *hwas* 680, 765, *hwam* 223, 281, 1216, *hwi* 507, and *hwuch* (*as*) 157.

As a common relative, however, two forms of the definite article are employed: *þe* and *þet*; the former of which is preferred by the plural, the latter by the singular.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Only a few of these pronouns are found in the text. For the O.E. *man*, Z has *me*, and C has regularly *men*. O.E. *aels* is *euch*, which, when employed absolutely, *i.e.* substantively, coalesces with the indefinite article *euchan*, 54, 57; *swylc* is *swuch*; *þullic* is *þulli(ch)* 348, 847, 2333; *feð feawa* is *fe(a)we* 949, which is occasionally replaced by *lut* 34. O.E. (*n*)*āwih*t I found in several forms: *ewt* 996, *oht* 1913, *noht* 1714, *nawt* 1689, and the archaic form *nawih*t 283, 473.

NUMERALS.

The number of the numerals is equally small. I give them in a table:

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
<i>an(e)</i> 99, 367.	<i>ear(e)ste</i> 883.
<i>twa</i> 67, dat. <i>twa</i> 973, <i>twaien</i> 1515.	<i>oðer</i> 1458.
<i>þreo</i> 1777, 2182.	<i>þridde</i> 1949
<i>four</i> 1919, 1991.	
<i>fif</i> 793.	
<i>tene</i> 793.	
<i>twenti</i> 67.	<i>twentuðe</i> 2182.
	<i>þrittuðe</i> 43.
<i>fifti</i> 521.	
<i>hundret</i> (ð) 1810.	
<i>þusent</i> (ð) 2011.	

VERBS.

I shall restrict myself to pointing out those peculiarities of the verbal forms of the text, which are most important in regard to the dialect. For the present indicative, the legend

has the following terminations: *-e*, *-est*, *-eð*, for the singular, and *eð* for the plural, the latter termination of which, in the case of inversion, *i.e.* when closely followed by the personal pronoun, undergoes the same changes as in O.E. In the same case the termination of the second person singular is changed so that it drops the concluding *t*, at the same time transforming the aspirate of the pronoun into the corresponding tenuis.

The terminations of the present optative, are *-e* for the singular, *-en* for the plural, the latter of which is altered in the same case and in a similar manner as the corresponding termination of the indicative mood.

The terminations of the imperative and the present participle are *-e*, *-eð* and *-ende*, that of the infinitive *-en*, in its oblique form *-ene*, which is preceded by *to* in consonance with the rest of the Southern dialects.

In the case of *-ja-* formations, which are pretty regularly preserved in our dialect, the *-e-* of all these terminations is mostly absorbed by *-i-*, the rest of the word-formative element.

The preterite of weak verbs is formed by adding *-de*, *-dest*, *-de* in the singular, *-den* in the plural; and these terminations change their media for the tenuis in cases similar to those which brought about the same changes in O.E.

For the optative I cannot quote sufficiently certain specimens.

The termination of the preterite participle is commonly *-ed*, curtailed in certain cases, into *-d* and *-t*. Also in the forms of the preterite, the formative element *-ja-* is, though much less frequently, preserved. It very seldom, however, appears as *-i-*. Mostly it is softened down into *-e-*.

The old richness of form in what Prof. Sievers calls the 'third weak conjugation' is happily preserved, though *habben* 87, *libben* 706, and *seggen* 327, are the only words left of it: pres. sing. *habbe* 466, *segge* 868, *hauest* 755, *seist* 391, *haueð* 817, *seið* 486, *liueð* 1754; plur. *habbeð* 395, *seggeð* 321; opt. sing. *habbe* 2267; imp. sing. *haue* 1573, *sei* (!) 1350; part. *liuende* 1220; pret. sing. *hefde* 111, *seide*, 153; plural *hefden* 95, *seiden* 532; part. *ihauet* 466, *iseid* 1993.

The strong verbs deserve a special treatment. The termina-

tions of the present indicative, optative and infinitive, and the pres. part. are the same with those of the weak verbs. And for an imperative the bare stem is used. The terminations of the preterite are the same as in O.E., with the only difference that the termination of the plural has been weakened to *-en*. There are, however, some noteworthy disagreements in the formation of this preterite. I pass over the simple changes of the stem-vowel, though sometimes they may imply a change of more importance. I believe I have done enough in pointing them out in the Vowel-changes. The only case worthy of being repeatedly quoted is that of *warpen* 18, 591, *weorp* 835, 2031, *awarpen* past part. 1277; which forms clearly enough point to the verb being transferred to the reduplicative conjugation, though the preterite plural *wurpen* 1813, still sticks to the ablauting class.

Other forms suggesting the same kind of change are *-dredde* 1336, preterite participle of *dreden* 622, and *slepten* 1426, preterite plural of *slepen*, and a doubtful form *bearnde* (C *bearninde*) 1650, preterite singular of *beornen*. The change is complete in *leten* 1464, preterite singular *lette* 354, 791, plur. *letten* 2329. Only the imperatives, *dred* 2144, *let* 1920, are still in accordance with the O.E. grammar. A change of another kind is found in *cheosen* 1871, which has formed a new pret. part. *ichosen* 834, its old part., however, being still in use, though mostly as an adjective *icoren(e)* 1394, 1596, 1635, 2143. A strange confusion has taken place in the forms of *drehen* (*dreien*) 1087, 1097, 1736, 1891, 2101, and *drahen* 1891, 1966. Only the forms of the latter word are complete, and frequently employed in our legend (unless the doubtful form *drehde* 1160 is meant to be the preterite of the former), as *drohe* 2434, *droh* 1087, 1363, *drohen* 2124, 2173, *idrahen* 1949, but all these forms are promiscuously used for *to suffer*, as well as for *to draw*, *drag*. A similar confusion consists in *hehte*=*he was called* being sometimes put for *het*=*he ordered*, *caused*, as in l. 432. The reverse has not been observed.

Finally, may be mentioned the anomalous verb *-gan* 519, which, in addition to its old weak perfect *eode* 746, 1204, *-eoden* 1601, is beginning to frame another preterite from *wenden*. In

the sense of *eode*(*n*) we finde *wende* 918, *wenden* 1732. The old past part. is still preserved in *ouergan* 519.

The forms of only three other anomalous verbs are important, and at the same time copious enough to be allowed some space in this short survey. The first is the verb substantive, the second is *wullen*, and the third *schullen*. The following are the certain forms of *beon* to be found in our legend: present ind. sing. 2 p. *art* 387, 2034; 3 p. *is* 381, 393, plur. *beo* 503. Opt. sing. *beo* 511, 560, plur. *beon* 507, preterite ind. sing. 3 p. *wes* 36, etc., plur. *weren* 1336, opt. sing. *were* 898, 969, 1219, plur. *weren* 533, 1275, infinitive *beon* 501, imp. sing. *beo* 2041, plur. *beo* 2343.

Our forms of *wullen* are, pres. ind. sing. 1 p. *wulle* 878, 1301, 1493; 2 p. *wult* 505, 1018; 3 p. *wule* 562, 763, 787, plural *wulle* 1746, 1759, and *wullen* 1324: pret. ind. sing. 2 p. *waldest* 1866; 3 p. *walde* 626.

The forms of *schullen* are perhaps the most uniform in our dialect. They are the following: 1st and 3rd persons sing. pres. *schal* 942, 241; 2nd person *schalt* 396, plur. *schulen* 394: 2nd person sing. pret. *schuldest* 458; 3rd person *schulde* 604, plural *schulden* 288.

The foregoing remarks are intended to show the most important changes the Old English grammar has suffered in the dialect of St. Katherine, as well as to give a short survey of the sounds and forms characteristic and decisive enough for ascertaining the nature of this dialect, and therewith the place of origin of our legend.

Summing up the results of this treatise, and comparing the various characteristic sounds and word-forms with those of other writings, I come to the conclusion that the dialect is closely akin to that of *Lazamon's Brut*, the *Ancren Riwe*, and even more, if possible, to that of the sister Legends of *Seinte Marherete* and *Juliana*, all of which are proved to be written in a more or less pure Southern dialect. As to the exact district in which these three legends may have been written, I do not venture a definite opinion. Still the numerous agreements with the dialect of *Lazamon's Brut* on the one hand, and that of the *Ancren Riwe* on the other, point to the legend having been

written somewhere between Worcestershire and Dorsetshire—say Gloucestershire. The later form of this dialect, as represented in Robert's well-known chronicle, would not oppose the above assumption.

THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE TEXTS, ETC.

On the left-hand side stands the Latin text; on the right, and closely following the Latin, is the M.E. text. The numbers in brackets are those of Morton's edition. Below the texts are printed the various readings of the M.E. text, which are thus explained. The case of words or verses wanting, needs no explanation. In case of a MS. having more words than the text, the first word of the text is given along with the surplus word or words, when occurring in the middle of the verse. When the alterations are too extensive, the whole line is printed, introduced by the words 'R (B or C)' writes, etc. In case of words being transposed, the words, when not more than two, are given in the order of the text, with the note 'transposed.' If their number exceeds two, the words are printed in the order of the respective MSS.

Below the various readings of the English text are given those of the Latin text. MS. L(eipzig) is not mentioned, except when it comes into contact with MS. C(otton).

Below the Latin notes is printed the translation of the M.E. poem into Modern English, as closely following the former as was feasible. It was the express wish of the Society to have a modern translation, and for that purpose I used Morton's, simply altering and completing it wherever I thought advisable.

REFERENCES TO THE M.E. MSS.

1. R (MS. REG. 17 A. XXVII.).

Fol. 1a.—10b. Sawles Warde.		Fol. 13b. þ . . . line	290
„ 11a.—37a. Katherine.		„ 14a. cu[-men]	340
„ 11a. moderburh . . . line	45	„ 14b. of . . .	392
„ 11b. dale . . .	99	„ 15a. a[-nan]	440
„ 12a. gleowunge . . .	145	„ 15b. wisdom . . .	484
„ 12b. hali . . .	193	„ 16a. wisdoms . . .	525
„ 13a. wur[-ðmunt] . . .	244	„ 16b. þe . . .	577

Fol. 17a. war[-nedest]	. line	625	Fol. 27a. cleopede	. line	1558
„ 17b. heouene	. . .	668	„ 27b. ha	. . .	1606
„ 18a. stod	. . .	716	„ 28a. stanes	. . .	1657
„ 18b. me[-iden]	. . .	760	„ 28b. is	. . .	1709
„ 19a. ant	. . .	810	„ 29a. ȝe	. . .	1757
„ 19b. ilearet	. . .	859	„ 29b. te	. . .	1806
„ 20a. unsehelic	. . .	904	„ 30a. schulen	. . .	1850
„ 20b. feole	. . .	949	„ 30b. him	. . .	1898
„ 21a. hehnesse	. . .	997	„ 31a. euer	. . .	1951
„ 21b. lif	. . .	1046	„ 31b. bre[-ken]	. . .	2002
„ 22a. purh	. . .	1093	„ 32a. hu	. . .	2047
„ 22b. raketehe	. . .	1138	„ 32b. flesch	. . .	2092
„ 23a. drahen	. . .	1187	„ 33a. neauer	. . .	2138
„ 23b. akast	. . .	1232	„ 33b. niht	. . .	2189
„ 24a. an	. . .	1277	„ 34a. sare	. . .	2238
„ 24b. tah	. . .	1323	„ 34b. ham	. . .	2285
„ 25a. Ah	. . .	1368	„ 35a. wordes	. . .	2333
„ 25b. iweom[-met]	. . .	1416	„ 35b. of	. . .	2385
„ 26a. ierunet	. . .	1466	„ 36a. wið in[-wið]	. . .	2435
„ 26b. ȝ	. . .	1513	„ 36b. eoli	. . .	2483

Fol. 37a.—56a. Margarete.

„ 56a.—70a. Juliana.

„ 70a.—70b. Oreisun of seinte Marie (incomplete).

All of these are apparently written by the same hand.

Foll. 71a.—97a. contain a tract on Christ's Passion, illustrated with drawings of relics, etc., by a fourteenth-century hand.

2. B (MS. NE. A. 3, 11).

Fol. 1a.—18a. Katherine.			Fol. 9b. rihte	. . . line	1509
„ 1a. reo[-deren]	. line	60	„ 10a. hire	. . .	1572
„ 1b. eanes	. . .	124	„ 10b. rihte	. . .	1638
„ 2a. as	. . .	186	„ 11a. pu	. . .	1706
„ 2b. sehelic	. . .	249	„ 11b. heo[-unenlich]	. . .	1767
„ 3a. steape	. . .	307	„ 12a. engles	. . .	1830
„ 3b. mon	. . .	372	„ 12b. teo[-nen]	. . .	1888
„ 4a. hehte	. . .	432	„ 13a. of	. . .	1953
„ 4b. fecit	. . .	489	„ 13b. ken[-chen]	. . .	2015
„ 5a. ȝ to	. . .	552	„ 14a. him	. . .	2075
„ 5b. alwealdinde	. . .	618	„ 14b. heorte	. . .	2133
„ 6a. stude	. . .	683	„ 15a. smif[-rede]	. . .	2193
„ 6b. bigon	. . .	745	„ 15b. bi[-buriel]	. . .	2251
„ 7a. ge	. . .	810	„ 16a. bimong	. . .	2307
„ 7b. intel	. . .	877	„ 16b. hire	. . .	2364
„ 8a. seggen	. . .	1315	„ 17a. ȝe	. . .	2421
„ 8b. cnaw[-lechung]	. . .	1379	„ 17b. is	. . .	2476
„ 9a. se	. . .	1447			

Fol. 18a.—36b. Margerete.

„ 36b.—56a. Juliana.

„ 56b.—75b. Hali Meidenhad.

„ 76a.—84b. Sawles Warde (incomplete).

The whole MS. is written by one and the same hand.

3. C (MS. COTT. TIT. D. XVIII.).

Fols. 1*b*.—12*b*. divers alphabets, and fol. 13*b*. index of the older MS., both written in fifteenth-century characters. The following pieces are in double columns, and are all written in a thirteenth-century hand.

Fol. 14*a*.—105*a*. Aneren Riwe (wants the beginning).

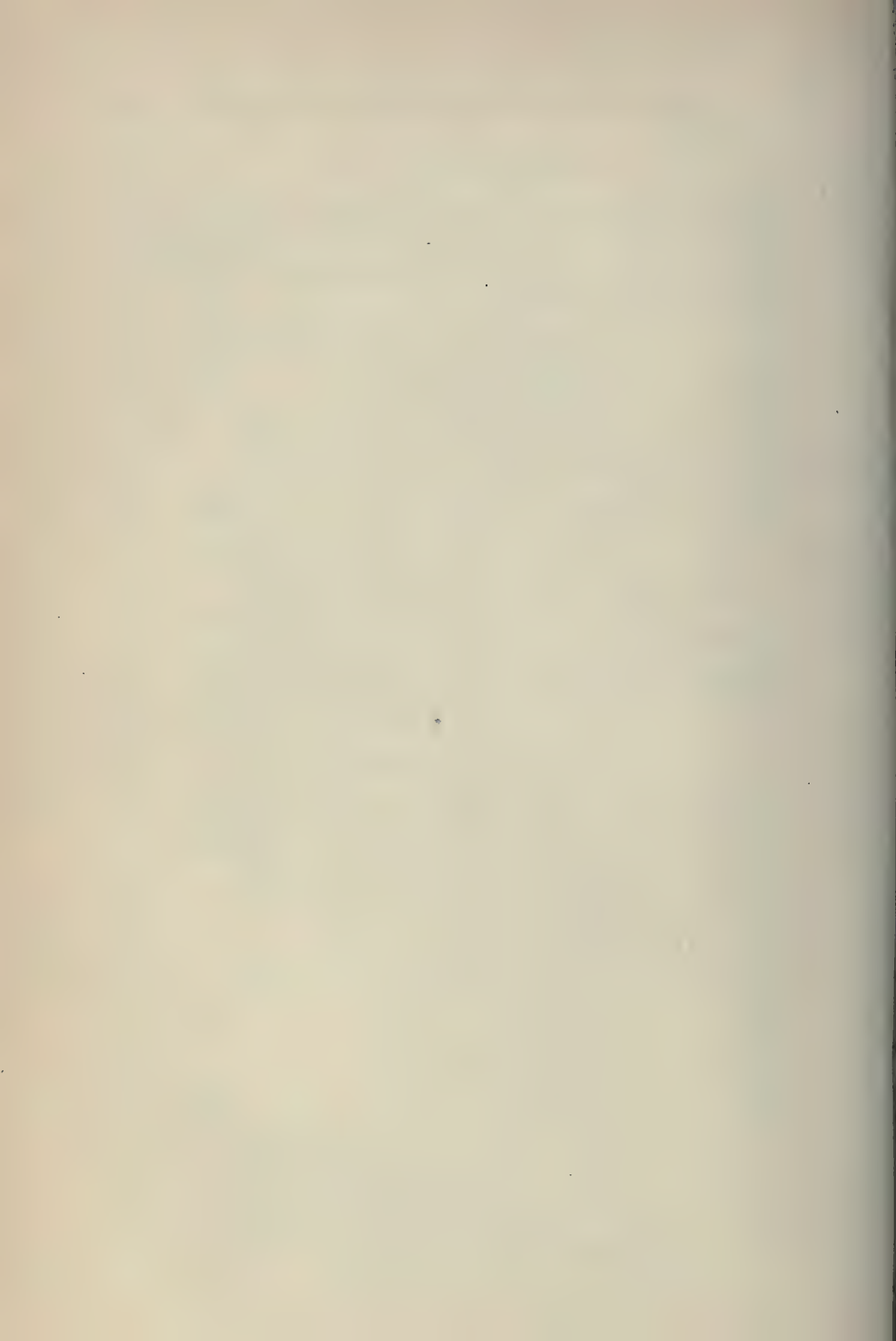
„ 105*b*.—112*b*. Sawles Warde.

„ 112*b*.—127*a*. Hali Meidenhad.

„ 127*a*.—133*a*. Wohunge.

„ 133*b*.—147*b*. Katherine.

Fol. 133 <i>b</i> .	col. <i>a</i> .	mis[-liche]	line	38	Fol. 140 <i>b</i> .	col. <i>a</i> .	meid[-enes]	line	1314
„	„	<i>b</i> .	baðe	77	„ 141 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	<i>a</i> .	1356
„ 134 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	heo	116	„	„	<i>b</i> .	bruchen.	1396
„	„	<i>b</i> .	wurðen	155	„ 141 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	mih[-ti].	1442
„ 134 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ha[-li]	193	„	„	<i>b</i> .	makest	1487
„	„	<i>b</i> .	muचे	227	„ 142 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ȝ.	1529
„ 135 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ȝi[-uen]	269	„	„	<i>b</i> .	hea[-ued]	1571
„	„	<i>b</i> .	awun[-drede]	309	„ 142 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	hondhwi[-le]	1617
„ 135 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	he	355	„	„	<i>b</i> .	slec	1662
„	„	<i>b</i> .	wult	399	„ 143 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	or[-cost].	1709
„ 136 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ich ne	444	„	„	<i>b</i> .	in	1750
„	„	<i>b</i> .	reprobabe	483	„ 143 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	schunie	1794
„ 136 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	alle	522	„	„	<i>b</i> .	ha[-uest]	1839
„	„	<i>b</i> .	to	573	„ 144 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	lif	1880
„ 137 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	alre	617	„	„	<i>b</i> .	preo[-nes]	1924
„	„	<i>b</i> .	wit	655	„ 144 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	amid[-heapes]	1971
„ 137 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	atstirten	700	„	„	<i>b</i> .	ȝen	2016
„	„	<i>b</i> .	ne	747	„ 145 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	spe[-ken]	2058
„ 138 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	to	795	„	„	<i>b</i> .	ȝrefter	2100
„	„	<i>b</i> .	ah	841	„ 145 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	hise	2143
„ 138 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	heuenliche	889	„	„	<i>b</i> .	anan[-riht]	2188
„	„	<i>b</i> .	schal	941	„ 146 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	sch[-alt]	2230
„ 139 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	up[-on]	994	„	„	<i>b</i> .	ase	2272
„	„	<i>b</i> .	lifese	1045	„ 146 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	Heo	2318
„ 139 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ȝat	1092	„	„	<i>b</i> .	hire	2364
„	„	<i>b</i> .	rake	1138	„ 147 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	he nime	2407
„ 140 <i>a</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	ihud	1182	„	„	<i>b</i> .	ȝ	2452
„	„	<i>b</i> .	honde[-were]	1222	„ 147 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	of	2488
„ 140 <i>b</i> .	„	<i>a</i> .	stille	1265	„	„	<i>b</i> .	Amen	2506



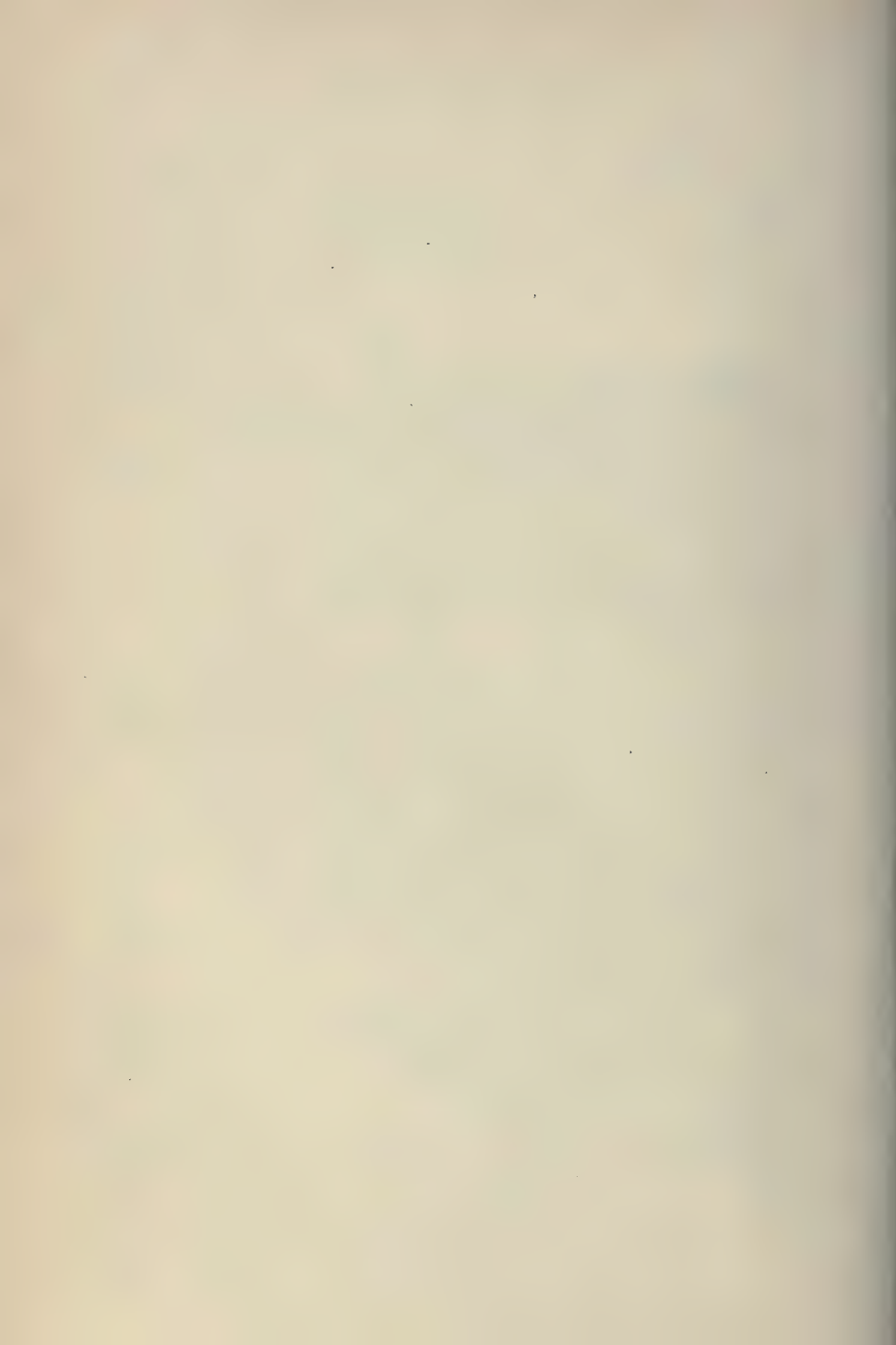
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

- Page viii, l. 10, *read* εὐμορφος.
P. viii, l. 18, *put* half stop *after* αὐρήν.
P. viii, l. 20, *insert* half stop *after* ἐκάθησαν.
P. xxiv, l. 13, *read* héhnéssè.
P. xlvii, l. 13, *put* *but* in Roman type.
P. xlviii, l. 12, *read* 2428.
P. xlviii, l. 24, *dele* godes a. 2088, d. 53.
P. 3, l. 1 (*from the bottom*), *read* as were.
P. 4, l. 20, *read* biforen.
P. 6, ll. 11-13, *insert* commas *after* bileaue, hehte, and dohter.
P. 8, l. 6, *read* hali gast.
P. 8, l. 20, *put* comma *after* seoluen.
P. 32, l. 13, *put* full stop *after* þrof.
P. 32, l. 1 (*from the bottom*), *read* the High Father.
P. 34, l. 22, *read* hehengel.
P. 35, l. 14, *put* comma *after* oueral.
P. 39, l. 23, *read* wiðalle.
P. 39, l. 1 (*from the bottom*), *read* likewise *for* entirely.
P. 41, l. 9 (*from the bottom*), *dele* B heaste.
P. 49, l. 5 (*from the bottom*), *read* that it is.
P. 54, l. 5 (*from the bottom*), *read* jaws *for* rule.
P. 57, l. 7 (*from the bottom*), *read* that is, to become man.
P. 62, l. 1 (*from the bottom*), *read* to thee now.
P. 65, l. 16, *put* full stop *after* heafden.
P. 76, l. 21 (v. 1579) *read* al þ̅ ha ȝirnedē.
P. 84, l. 13, *read* hwet se.
P. 87, l. 4 (*from the bottom*), *read* everywhere *for* supreme.
P. 93, l. 14 (v. 1892), *read* me *for* mi.
P. 93, l. 15 (v. 1893), *read* mi *for* me.
P. 96, l. 3 (*from the bottom*), *read* whirling *for* sound.

- P. 96, l. 12 (*from the bottom*), read: R writes *rewe bireawe*.
- P. 102, l. 7 (*from the bottom*), read *reasonable for convinced*.
- P. 131, note on l. 782, read *imperative for indicative, and dele the following sentence*.
- P. 132, note on l. 854, add: *argument*; see l. 689, *flit*, and l. 720, *fliten*=*to argue*.
- P. 133, l. 1, read *worldmen*.
- P. 133, l. 14, read *than C does*.
- P. 134, between notes on ll. 1042 and 1054, insert: 1044 *awahte*. This assimilation to forms like *pohte, brohte, rahte, tahte*, does not seem to have been observed yet; the usual M.E. preterite of *wakien* is *wakede*. Of *smeccen*, O.E. *smeccan*, forms like *smeihte, smahte* are very common.
- P. 135, note on l. 1137, read *jaws*, from O.E. *hraca*, O.H.G. *racho*, for *path, power, reach*.
- P. 135, between notes on ll. 1145 and 1155, insert: 1151 *cnotten*; Aelfric in his translation of Alcuini Interrogationes, lately edited by M'Lean in *Anglia*, vii. 2, 13, uses *cnottum* in exactly the same sense.
- P. 135, last line, read *neodeles*.
- P. 136, l. 14, read *prefix for suffix*.
- P. 137, note on l. 1262, add: The modern *dolt*=*simpleton, fool*, is an old past part. of *dullen* now used as a substantive.
- P. 138, note on l. 1311, read *Bouterwek's*.
- P. 139, note on l. 1367, read *utnumne*.
- P. 139, note on l. 1486, add: See Maetzner's Glossary under *flen*.
- P. 142, note on l. 1660, read *Bouterwek's*.
- P. 143, note on l. 1690, after 1655, insert: Still comp. Cant. Tales 3207 *setewale*, O.Fr. *citoual*.
- P. 143, between notes on ll. 1699 and 1709, insert: 1702 C *blunne*ŝ seems to be a different word from (*b*)*linnen*. Its past part. we apparently have in the modern *blunt*. Does it mean *to get blunt or dull, to decrease*?
- P. 144. note on l. 1841, read *stonden*.
- P. 144, note on l. 1908, read *heorte*.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
INTRODUCTORY REMARKS—	
THE HISTORY OF ST. KATHERINE AND HER LEGEND.	vii
OUR MANUSCRIPTS—THE LATIN TEXT	xii
THE MIDDLE ENGLISH TEXT	xiv
THE POSITION OF THE M.E. ELABORATION IN CONTEM- PORANEOUS LITERATURE	xviii
THE METRICAL FORM OF THE LEGEND	xxi
PHONOLOGY—VOWELS	xxxix
CONSONANTS	xlii
FORMS AND DEFLECTIONS—NOUNS	xlvi
ADJECTIVES	xlix
PERSONAL PRONOUNS	l
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	li
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN	li
DEFINITE PRONOUN	lii
INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS	lii
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	liii
NUMERALS	liii
VERBS	liii
DIALECT	lvi
THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE TEXTS, ETC. . . .	lvii
REFERENCES TO THE M.E. MSS.	lvii
LIFE OF SAINT KATHERINE	1
NOTES	125
GLOSSARY	151



LIFE OF SAINT KATHERINE.



INCIPIE PASSIO SANCTE KATHERINE VIRGINIS.¹

VM sanctorum fortia gesta ad memoriam posterorum transcribimus. quid aliud agimus nisi ut ita dicam quoddam incentivum bellicum² promovemus. per quod imbelles animos auditorum ad bella dominica accendamus.³ ut cum pro laborum exercitiis coronas adquisitas audierint. jam certi de spe retributionis ardentiores fiant ad tolerandas passiones. hoc sane perpendentes. quia non leve aut inane constat. esse.⁴ premium. pro quo sancti dei corpora sua diris tormentorum suppliciis tradiderunt? Hec mihi causa extitit. qua gloriose virginis katherine memorabilem certaminis agonem stili officio proposui enarrandum. ut dum infirmioris sexus constanciam. et imbecille⁵ etatis virtutem attendimus. hoc nobis ad ignominiam et opprobrium iure quis esse dicat. quod puellas teneras per ignem et ferrum ad patriam celestem tendere videmus? et nos barbati homines nec per pacem (fol. 169b) christum sequi curamus; Et forte aliquis dicat fidem catholicam per totum orbem disseminatam? Christi nomen ubique gentium fateri. et quia christianitas in suis principibus⁶ jam religiosa. jamque fidelis est? jam persecutionis procella detumuit. jam vincula et verbera. carceres. et eculeos et cetera suppliciorum⁷ genera

¹ Incipit prologus in passionem Sancte Katerine virginis.

² bellum.

³ accendimus.

⁴ omits esse.

⁵ imbecillem.

⁶ C originally *principibus*.

⁷ tormentorum.

procul cessisse manifestum est: et ideo christicolis jure non potest imputari. si his nostris temporibus penalibus tormentis non probantur. quia persecutionis¹ occasio² sedata pace jam quievit; Huic quisquis ille est tale damus responsum; Virgo hec non uniformi persecutionis genere inpugnabatur. cui a fronte externus hostis: a tergo incumbibat domesticus et occultus; Alia enim intelligenda est persecutio. que inmanior et magis noxia est: et quam non materialis interquet severitas. sed viciorum³ gignit adversitas; Porro hec generosa virago gemina oppugnantium acie circumsepta. et furentem persequentium rabiem constanter⁴ evicit. et conglobatas viciorum acies viriliter debellavit; Vnde gemino gloriosa triumpho non inutiliter ut spero ad informandas mentes proponitur. que puellari corpore sic sexum vicit et seculum. ut et noxia carnis oblectamenta⁵ vitaret. et victoriosa passione tormentorum genera superaret; De hac igitur pro edificatione locuturi tale sumamus⁶ exordium.

[T]radunt annales historie. quod constantinus qui gubernacula imperii a patre constantio⁷ suscepit. que uno et trigin—(fol. 170a)—ta annis moderator egregius tenuit: pacem ecclesiis post decem annos quibus a persecutoribus vexabantur indulsit.

Hic constantinus cum rem publicam strenue in galliis procuraret: pretorii milites rome maxentium herculii filium qui privatus

Constantin & Maxence
weren, on ane time,
as in keiseres stude
4 hehest i Rome.
Ah Constantin ferde,
þurh þe burhmenne read,
in to Fronclonde,
8 & wunede summe hwile þear

1 RB ant, C Constantin, B Costentin. 2 B were, CB a. 3 B i. 4 C in. 5 C constantin, B costentin. 6 C reað. 7 B francclonde. 8 R ant, C sum, R hwiles þer.

¹ *persecutio*.

² omits *occasio*.

³ *viciniorum*.

⁴ C -anter added from above.

⁵ C originally *oblecta mente*.

⁶ *sumpsimus*.

⁷ *constantino*.

Constantine and Maxence were, upon a time, as in the emperor's place, highest in Rome. But Constantine went, by advice of the citizens, into France, and dwelt some time there, for

in lucania morabatur augustum
nuncupaverunt;

Inde inter constantinum et
maxentium¹ bellum civile exor-
tum est. Maxentius siquidem
prelio fugatus. Alexandriae parti-
bus sese recepit; Audiens autem
constantinum intra illiricum si-
num bellis undique consurgenti-
bus detineri:'

for þe burhes neode;
ƿ Maxence steorede [10]
þe refschiþe in Rome.

12 Weox umbe hwile
wreððe ham bitweonen,
ƿ comen to fehte.

Wes Maxence ouercumen
16 ƿ fleah into Alixandre.
Constantin walde efter
ƿ warpen him þeonne.
Ah se wide him weox

20 weorre on euch halwe, [20]
ƿ nomeliche in an lond
Ylirie hatte,
þ tear he atstutte.

24 þa Maxence iherde þis
þ he wes of him siker
ƿ of his cume carles
warð king of þ lond

28 þ lei into Rome
as duden meast alle
þe oðre of þe worlde. [30]

ipse repentina rabie incitatus. ec-

Bigon anan ase wed wulf

9 C burh nede. 10 RB ant, R storede. 11 B i. 12 R hwiles. 13 C weorre for wreððe
B wreaððe, R him, C bitwenen. 14 RB ant, R to þe fehte, C fhte. 15 C Was, R writes
þes maxence wes ouercumen. 16 RB ant, R fleh, alixaundre. 17 C Costentin, B
Costentin, C after. 18 RB ant. 19 R so, wide (*dot above p by mistake*), C wex. 20
B weorre inserted from above, euche, C half. 21 C þ ƿ (*þ expunged*), R after an letter t
or e effaced), CB a, B lont. 22 R yrie, C het. 23 C þ te arhe (*sic*), R ter, etstutte,
B except þ the words of this verse indistinct. 24 C herde. 25 C was. 26 R ant,
B cunne, R karles, C careles. 27 B war keng, R þat, B lont. 28 B þe. 29 C diden.
30 R oðere, world, B weorlde. 31 B Bigen, R as, C wod.

¹ maxentium et constantinum.

the city's need; and Maxence directed the government in Rome. There grew after a while
wrath between them, and they came to battle. Maxence was overcome and fled into Alex-
andria. Constantine wanted to follow him and drive him out thence. But war (wars) grew
to him so wide (extensive) on every side, and especially in a country called Illyria, that he
stopped there. When Maxence heard this that he was (could be) secure respecting him and
without anxiety about his coming, he got (made himself) king of that country which was
subject to Rome as was almost all the others (rest) of the world. He began anon like a mad

clesiam christi zelo idolatrie persequi instituit: et ad profana sacrificia christianos aut premiis aut tormentis incurvare;

[A]nno igitur¹ regni sui tricesimo quinto² residens in civitate alexandrinorum.³ feralia per vicinas provincias misit edicta⁴ jubens Christianos diis suis immolare: aut penalibus cruciatibus interire;

32 to weorrin hali chirche
 ⁊ dreien cristene men
 þe lut þ̅ ter weren
 alle to heaðendom,
 36 heaðene as he wes;
 summe þurh muchele ȝeouen
 ⁊ misliche meden
 summe þurh fearlac
 40 of eisfule þreates; [40]
 o least wið stronge tintreohen
 ⁊ licomliche pinen.
 I þe fif ⁊ þrittuðe ȝer
 44 of his rixlinge
 he set o kineseoðle
 i þe moderburh
 of Alixandres riche
 48 ⁊ sende heaste ⁊ bode
 se wide se þ̅ lond wes
 þ̅ poure ba ⁊ riche [50]
 comen þer beforen him

Extat hujusmodi edictum. ab eo per regiones circumquaque et nationes emissum; Maxentius imperator. his qui edictis nostris adquiescent. salutem; Iubet nostra imperialis majestas omnes orbis nostri incolas divites et pauperes ad nos usque convenire. et nostre institutionis sententiam audire; Si quis jussioni nostre contraire presumpserit. sciat se capitali sententia puniendum; Auditis itaque

32 C werren. 33 R ant, C drahen, B dreaien. 35 R heðenedom. 36 R heðene. 37 R ȝeoue. 38 RB ant, B ineden. 39 C sume, R farlac. 40 R of his fule, C eifule. 41 C last, R tintreo, C tintrohen. 42 RB ant. 43 B ant. 44 R rixlunge. 45 C kineseoðle. 47 R alixaundres. 48 B ant, R he for ⁊, heste, C heast. 49 R so—so, B wid, C þe, B lont, C was. 51 R omits þer, RB biuoren, C toforen.

¹ omits *igitur*.

² inserts *maxentius*.

³ *alexandrie*.

⁴ C originally *dicta*.

wolf to persecute holy church and to draw Christian men the few that there were all to heathenism, heathen as he was; some by large gifts and divers rewards, some through fear of his awful threats. At last with severe torments and bodily pains.—In the thirty-fifth year of his reign he sat on (his) royal throne in the capital of the kingdom of Alexandria, and sent command and proclamation, as wide as the land was, that both poor and rich should

tirannice jussionis mandatis. fit conventus universalis ad pretorium regis; [P]ostera autem die sedens pro tribunali. jubet omnes introduci: et preconis voce¹ acclamare.²

ut ad templum deorum suorum 52 to þe temple, i þe tun
of his heaðene godes,
omnes pariter convenirent. euchan wið his lac
for to wurðgin ham wið

et quia hora sacer—(fol. 170b)—dotes aris thura imponerent. et imperator solenne sacrificium diis offerret:'

mox omnes incurvati ante simula- 56 Comen alle to his bode
ʒ euchan bi his euene,
cra deorum. juxta possibilitatem biforen Maxence seolf
wurðgede his maumez :
suam. divites quidem tauros et 60 þe riche reoðeren ʒ schep [60]
ʒ bule, hwa se mihte,
oves. pauperes vero volucres vivos brohten to lake ;
offerrent; þe poure cwiike briddes.

Porro imperator ut erat regio accinctus ornatu. et militari ambitu stipatus preveniens obtulit sacrificium tauros centum triginta; Hinc reges et principes. hinc magistri militum. hinc prefecti et tribunicie dignitatis illustres persone prout gratiores tiranno aparere³ nitebantur. formosa diis animalia immolabant; Quibus vero ad sollempnem pompam sacrificiorum armenta non suppetebant. passeret et volatilia que poterant inferebant; Auditur per universam civitatem vox diversa animalium. perfunditur tellus effuso sanguine bidentium; fit sonus

53 B of nearly invisible; C hise, R heðene. 55 R wurgin, B wurðgi[n ham ? effaced], C wurðchipen. 57 R bi his (originally bis, hi inserted from above). 58 R biuoren, C bifore, B [bi]uore, effaced; C self. 59 R to wurgen, C wurðchipede, B wurdgede, R mawmez. 60 R roðeren, B reoderen (three last letters almost invisible), C scheop. 61 R so mahte. 62 RB brohte.

¹ preconis voce, transposed.

² C originally accamare.

³ apparere.

come there before him to the temple, in the town, of his heathen gods, each with his offering to worship them with. They came all at his bidding and every one according to his property, before Maxence himself worshipped his idols. The rich brought oxen and sheep, and, whoso could afford it, bulls, as offerings; the poor, live birds. In this same city there was dwelling a

confusis plausibus et choris alternantibus.¹ in tantum ut tremula tellus aut exultare aut sane indignari tantis mortibus (!)² videretur;

[H]ac in urbe Alexandrinorum
erat quedam puella annorum duo
de viginti. speciosa valde: sed
quod pluris est religiosa fide:
que regis costi³ quondam filia
unica. patre jam defuncto filie
nomen amiserat: nomine Katerina;
Hec parentum orbata solatio te-
nera licet etate. familiam que suc-
cessionem hereditaria sibi inheserat
pervigili cura gubernabat: non
quia servorum aut ancillarum
numerosa turba quod inter prima

64 In þis ilke burh wes
wuniende a meiden
swiðe ðung of ðeres
twa wone of twenti
68 feier & freolich
o wlite & o westum
ah ðet, þ is mare wurð, [70]
steðelfest wiðinnen,
72 of treowe bileaue
anes kinges Cost hehte;
anlepi dohter
icuret clergesse
76 Katerine inempnet.
þis meiden wes baðe
federles & moderles
of hire childhade.
80 Ah þah ha ðung were, [80]
ha heold hire aldrene hird
wisliche & warliche
i þe heritage & i þe herd
84 þ com of hire burde:
nawt for þi þ hire þuhte
god in hire heorte

64 B I, CB omit ilke, C was. 67 C two. 68 R feier (r added from above). B feire, C feir. 69 R wastun. 70 B ant for ah, R wes for is, B wurdð. 71 R steðeluest, C staðelfest, B steaðeluest. 72 B bileoue. 73 C Ane. 75 C clergesse (c expunged, s above it), B cleargesse. 77 B þeos, C was, R boðen. 78 B feoderles. C faderles. 80 B gung. 81 C held, eldrene, B ealdrene. 82 B ant worliche. 83 RB eritage, B ant eard. 84 C of hire transposed, burðe. 85 R þi for þi þ. 86 R omits in hire heorte.

¹ C originally *alternantibus*.

² *motibus*.

³ C *costi* added on margin, L omits *costi*.

maiden very young in years, (no older than) two (years) less than twenty, fair and of noble aspect in face and stature, and, that which is more estimable, steadfast within, of true faith: the only daughter of a king called Cost; an excellent scholar, named Katherine. This maiden was both fatherless and motherless from her childhood. But though she was young, she maintained her parents' servants wisely and warily in the heritage and in the household that came to her by birth: not because in her heart it seemed to her good to have many under her,

mortales putant delectabatur. sed
quia non sine crimine esse puta-
bat. si paternum censum auide
retinens. fame et inedia quemlibet
eorum perire pateretur: quippe
que nichil cum mundo habere
commune decreverat; De his tan-
tum sollicita ex omni (fol. 171a)
substantia patris paululum sibi
reservabat. cetera in usus paupe-
rum consumendo patrios thesauros
penitus exaurierat;¹

Non ipsa puellares jocos.

non amatoria carmina videre aut

to habben monie under hire;
88 ꝥ beon icleopet lefdi,
ꝥ feole telleð wel to;
ah ba ha wes offearet [90]
of scheome ꝥ of sunne,
92 æf þeo weren todreauct,
oðer misferden,
ꝥ hire forðfederes
hefden ifostret.
96 For hire seolf ne kepte ha
nawt of þe worlde.
þus, lo, for hare sake
ane dale ha etheold
100 of hire caldrene god [100]
ꝥ spende al ꝥ oðer
in needfule ꝥ in nakede.
þeos milde, meoke meiden
104 þeos lufsume lefdi
mid lastelese lates
ne luuede heo nane lihte plohen
ne nane sotte songes.
108 Nalde ha nane ronnas
ne nane luue runes
leornin ne lustnen [110]

87 B habbe, C monie habbe (*transposition indicated*). 88 C iclepet, lafdi, B leafdi. 89 C tellen. 90 C baðe, was, offeard. 91 C schome. 92 R ꝥ for æf, C æf, todreauct, R todreuct. 94 C forðfadres, B forðfeadres. 95 R ifostred, B iuostret. 96 C self, R heo. 97 R world. 99 R heo, C atheld. 100 R *line wanting*, C eldrene. 101 B ant. 102 R needful, C nedfule, B i, ant, i. 103 C meke. 104 R þes lufsum, C lafdi, B leafdi. 105 B wið, C *after wið the word lufsume crossed out*, R lasteles, B leastelese. 106 C ha, plahen. 107 R luueronnes for sotte songes. 108 R heo, songes for ronnas. 110 C leornen, R. lustnin, B lusten.

¹ exhauserat.

and be called lady, that many highly esteem; but she was afraid both of shame and sin, if they whom her forefathers had fostered (brought up) were dispersed, or evil befell them. For herself she did not care for the world. Thus (look!) for their sake she retained one part of her parents' property and spent all the other on the needy and the naked. This mild, meek maiden, this lovely lady with chaste looks, loved no frivolous plays nor foolish songs. Nor would she learn ditties nor listen to love talk, but had ever on holy writ her eyes or her

audire volebat. divinis tantummodo et his attentius scripturis insistebat;

[H]anc pater ab annis puerilibus studiis liberalibus imbuendam tradiderat. quibus decenter ornata tunc temporis nulla sophistice artis argutia poterat supplantari; Et quamvis multi experiendi studio litterati¹ objectis eam questionibus attemptassent:

stultos se et idiotas recognoscences. eam sane insuperabilem reliquerunt; Illa custos virgini-

ah eaue ha hefde on hali writ
 112 ehnen oðer heorte,
 ofttest ba togederes.
 Hire feder hefde iset hire
 earliche to lare,
 116 ƿ heo, þurh þen haligast,
 undernom hit se wel
 þ nan nes hire euenig.
 Modie meistres ƿ feole [120]
 120 fondeden hire ofte
 o swiðe feole halue
 for to underneomen hire;
 ah nes þer nan þ mahte
 124 neauer eanes wrenchen hire
 mid alle his crefti crokes
 ut of þe weie;
 ah se sone ha ƿeald ham
 128 swucche ƿeinceppes
 ƿ wende hare wiheles, [130]
 upon ham seoluen.
 þ al ha icneowen ham
 132 crauant ƿ ouercumen,
 ƿ cweðen hire þe meistrie
 ƿ te menske al up.
 þus hwil ha wiste hire,

111 B euer. 112 R horte. 114 C fader, B feader. 115 R writes earliche to leaf ƿ to lare. 116 B ant, R writes ƿ heo underueng hit, C B þe. 117 R writes þurh þen hali gast so wel, C vndernam. 118 C ne was for nes, B euenig. 119 C B Modi, B ant, C fele. 120 B hire ofte transposed. 121 C fele. 122 B te, C undernimen. 123 C ter, B þear, C mihte. 124 R neuer enes. 125 CB wið, R al, C hise. 124-125 transposed by C. 127 R swa, heo, ƿeld. 128 C swucche ƿa (ƿa expunged) ƿainclappes, B ƿeinceappes. 130 R uppon, C seluen. 131 C cneowen. 133 B ant; cweþen supplied on the margin. 134 B meske. 135 C a for ha.

¹ C originally *literate*.

heart, oftenest both together. Her father had set her early to learning, and she, through the Holy Ghost, acquired it so well that none was her equal. Many proud scholars tried her often, to entrap (catch) her in very many ways; but there was none that might, with all his crafty wiles, ever once entice her out of the way; but so soon she dealt them such counter-strokes and turned their wiles upon themselves, that they acknowledged themselves craven and overcome, and yielded her entirely the mastery and the glory. Thus while she guarded

tatis sue taliter in palatio patris	136	ƿ johte aa to witen hire
residebat. cum ex templo idolorum		meiden i meiðhad,
hinc sonus animalium et tibici-		as ha set in a bur
num. hinc multimodum ¹ genus ²	140	of hire burdeboldes [140]
organorum		ha iherde a swuch nurð
		towart te awariede
		maumetes temple,
		lowinge of þ ahte,
auribus ipsius insonuit; Stupens	144	ludinge of þe men
itaque causam celeranter jubet		gleowinge of euch gleo,
inquiri;		to herien ƿ hersumin
		hare heaðene godes;
	148	as ha þis iherde
		ƿ nuste ƿet hwet hit wes, [150]
		ha sende swiðe for to witen
		hwet wunder hit were.
Quam cum ex nuntio audisset:	152	Sone se hire sonde com aȝein,
		ƿ seide hire þ soðe
		heo swa itend of wreððe wes
assumptis secum aliquibus de		þ wod ha walde wurðen.
familia. ad templum usque pro-	156	Het up of hire hird
peravit; Ibi queruloso gemitu		hwuch as ha walde
		ƿ wende hire þiderward. [160]
		Ifont ter swiðe feole

136 C ai, B a. 137 C meidenhad. 138 B burh. 139 C burðeboldes. 140 C þa herde ha a, R heo, murhðe, C murð. 141 C toward, R þe, B aweariede. 142 R mawmetes. 143 R lowung, B lowinde. 144 R luding, C þa. 145 R gleowunge, B gleowinde. 146 C hersumen. 147 R heðene. 149 C hwat, B wet for hwet, C was. 150 B te. 151 C hwat. 152 R so, C aȝain. 153 C þe. 154 C wreððe; was omitted, B writes heo wes swa itend of wreððe. 155 R walde wurðen transposed, B iwarden. 156 R after hire the letters ha w expunged. 157 R heo. 158 R B ant, R þiderward, B þiderwart. C Ifont, R þer, C swuðe (second stroke of u expunged).

¹ Originally the same, afterwards altered to *multimodorum*.

² Omits *genus*.

herself, and thought ever to keep herself a maiden in maidenhood, as she sat in a room of her hereditary mansion she heard such a noise in the direction of the accursed idols' temple, lowing of cattle, shouting of men, and all kinds of music, to honour and reverence their heathen gods. As she heard this and wist not yet what it was, she sent immediately to learn what wonder it might be. As soon as her messenger returned, and said to her the truth, she was so kindled with wrath that she was about to go mad. She called up of her household such as she would and went thitherward. She found there a great number crying and screaming

deplorantes quosdam insepexit.	160	ẓeinde ẓ ẓurinde, ẓ þeotinde unþuldliche wið reowfule reames, þ cristene weren
qui se ¹ christianos ² esse fate- bantur. sed metu mortis ad pro- phana sacrificia impellebantur ;	164	ẓ leaffule in godes lei ; ah, for dred of deað, duden þes deoueles lac as þe heaðene duden.
Hic ³ vehementi dolore cordis sauciata. deliberat erroneum hujus- modi sacrificium liberali auctori- tate dampnare : simul et tiranni male sanum edictum improbare ;	168	Hwa wes wurse þen heo, [170] heorte iwundet, inwið, for þe wrecches þ ha seh swa wraðe werkes wurchen
	172	aẓein godes wille ? þohte þah as ha wes þuldi ẓ þolemod se ẓung þing as ha wes,
	176	hwet hit mahte ẓeinen, þa heo hire ane were [180] aẓein se kene keisere ẓ al his kineriche.
Tenens itaque paululum intra se silentium tacite ⁴ quidem sed abalto fudit orationem ;	180	Stod stille ane hwile, ẓ hef hire heorte up to þe hehe healent þe iheret is in heouene.
	184	Bisohte him help, ẓ hap

160 C ẓeinde, ẓurende. 162 R reowfule remes, B reowðfule. 163 B þe. 164 R leafful, CB i, R laẓ. 166 C diden, CB þ for þes, R þes þes (sic) deouels, B deofles. 167 R heðene, B headene, C diden. 168 C was, B þene, R hire for heo. 170 B þet, R heo iseh, C verses 170-80 nearly invisible. 171 R omits swa, B se, C wra[ðe?] indistinct. 172 R aẓeines, C aẓain. 173 R heo. 175 R so, heo, C was. 176 C hwat, mihte, B ẓeinin. 177 RCB þah for þa, C ha. 178 C aẓain, R so, CB keiser. 179 B ant, R omits al. 180 B stod. 182 C helend, B healant. 183 C þ ibered, heuene. 184 B ant.

¹ C se inserted from above. ² se christianos transposed. ³ hinc. ⁴ C originally tacita.

and yelling impatiently with rueful lamentations, who were Christians and believing in God's law ; but, through fear of death, performed the devil's sacrifice as the heathen did. Who was inwardly, in heart, worse wounded than she, for the wretches whom she saw work such evil works against God's will ? She thought, however, as she was patient and mild, being so young a thing, what it might profit, as she was alone (to strive) against so powerful an emperor and all his empire. She stood still awhile, and lifted up her heart to the high

Hinc pectus et linguam christi
 muniens signaculo. audenter ad
 conspectum imperatoris prorupit:
 ubi inter cesorum stragem ani-
 malium. et aras inmundi cruoris
 sorde contactas. supra omnes fla-
 gitiosus¹ idolatra eminebat;

[I]ntrogressa ergo² beata virgo.
 sic ait tiranno; (fol. 171b)

Salutationem tibi imperator

ƿ wisdom, as wisliche
 as al þe world is iwald
 þurh his wissunge. [190]
 188 þrefter wepnede hire
 mid soðe bileaue
 ƿ wrat on hire breoste
 ƿ biforen hire teð
 192 ƿ tunge of hire muð
 þe hali rode taken
 ƿ com leapinde forð
 al itend of þe lei
 196 of þen hali gast,
 as te keiser stod
 bimong þ sunful slaht [200]
 of þ islein ahte
 200 deouele to lake
 þ euch waried weoued
 of þe mix maumez
 ron of þ balefule
 204 blod al biblodeget
 ƿ bigon to þeien
 ludere steuene :
 “Gretunge, keiser,
 208 walde wel bicumen þe [210]

185 B ant, C wisdom, B ase. 186 C wealt, B iweld. 188 C prafter. 189 CB wið.
 190 B ant. 191 RB ant biuoren, C omits ƿ, R teeð. 192 B ƿ te tunge, C writes ƿ
 hire tunge. 193 C omits rode. 194 B ant, R lepinde. 195 B as al itent. R omits þe.
 196 CB þe. 197 R þe, B stot. 198 R þe, C sunful, B sunfule. 200 R deoulen.
 201 R wariet, weouet. 202 C þa, R mawmez. 203 C þat, balefule. 204 C blod
 omitted, biblodked. 205 B ant. 206 R stefne, B steauene. 207 R Gretinge.
 208 R wel omitted, bicumen þe transposed, C B bicume.

¹ C originally *fagitosus*.

² Omits *ergo*.

Saviour that is honoured in heaven. She sought of him help and success and wisdom, as wisely as all the world is governed through his direction. Thereafter she armed herself with true faith and marked on her breast and before her teeth and the tongue of her mouth the sign of the holy cross, and came bounding forth all kindled with the flame of the Holy Ghost, as the emperor stood among that sinful slaughter of the cattle slain as a sacrifice to the devil, so that each accursed altar of the foul idols ran all besmeared with that baleful blood, and (she) began to cry with a loud voice: “Greeting, O emperor, would well become thee for thy

proferre nos et ordinis dignitas et
rationis via promonebat.¹ si hec
ista que cultibus demonum exhi-
bes quamquam in nullo proficua
sed omnino noxia sint atque damp-
nosa: si hec inquam creatori tuo
impenderes.

et solam illius majestatem ado-
randam intelligeres. per quem
reges regnant. per quem ele-
menta mundi² initium sump-
serunt³ atque subsistunt. qui non
innoxiorum cede animalium. sed
fide et salutarium observantia⁴
mandatorum delectatur;⁵

for þin hehnesse
ʒef þu þis ilke ʒeld,
þ̃ tu dest to deouelen,
122 þ̃ forðeð þe baðe
i licome t̃ i sawle
t̃ alle þ̃ hit driueð;
ʒef þu hit ʒulde
216 t̃ ʒeue to his wurðmunt
þe scheop þe t̃ al þe world,
t̃ walt þurh his wisdom [220]
al þ̃ ischapen is.
220 Ich walde, king, greten þe
ʒef þu understode
t̃ he ane is to herien,
þurh hwam t̃ under hwam
224 alle kinges rixleð;
ne ne mei na þing
wiðstonden his wille,
þah he muche þolie. [229]
228 þes heouenliche lauereð luueð
treowe bileaue
t̃ nowðer blod ne ban
of unforgult ahte;
232 ah þ̃ me halde t̃ heie
his halewunde heastes.

210 C ʒif, B gef, R ille. 211 C dost. 212 B forðeð. 213 C in—in, R licom. 214 B ant, þe, C driuen. 215 C ʒif. 216 C ʒeoue, wurðmund, B wurðemunt. 217 C þ̃ for first þe, schop, R ant. 218 B ant, R t̃ al walt, C weald, B welt. 219 R t̃ al. 220 R keiser for king; igreten, C grete. 221 C ʒif, B ʒof. 222 R he him ane. 224 C rixlen, B rixlið. 225 C mai. 226 R iwil. 228 R heouenliche, C heuenliche. 230 B ant nowder. 232 C mon for me. 233 C halewende, B halewinde, C heaste.

¹ *premonēbat*. ² *elementa mundi* transposed. ³ C originally *sumserunt*. ⁴ C originally *observantia*. ⁵ *salutarium observantia* transposed; *mandatorum delectatur* transposed.

glory (highness) if thou (gavest) this same tribute, which thou dost to devils, and which destroys thee both in body and in soul and all that pursue the same course; if thou payedst and gavest it to his honour who made thee and all the world, and rules by his wisdom all that is made. I would greet thee, O king, if thou understoodest that he alone is to be praised, through whom and under whom all kings rule; nor may anything withstand his will, though he has much forbearance. This heavenly Lord loveth true faith and neither blood nor bone of innocent cattle; but that we keep and reverence his sanctifying behests.

Hunc temeritas humana in
nullo¹ perniciosius offendit. quam

ut rationalis creatura rebus insensibilibus cultum divinitatis exhibeat:
et honorem invisibilis majestatis
ad visibiles transferat creaturas;

Etenim malorum omnium inventor
diabolus. inter omnes sce-

Ne nis na þing hwerþurh
monnes muchele madschipe
236 wreððeð him wið mare
þen þ schafte of mon
þ he schop ⁊ ʒef schad [240]
ba of god ⁊ of uuel
240 þurh wit ⁊ þurh wisdom
schal wurðen se forð,
ut of his witte,
þurh þe awariede gast,
244 þ he ʒelt þe wurðmunt
to witlese þing,
þ te feont wuneð in,
þ he ahte to godd;
248 ⁊ hereð ⁊ hersumeð
seheliche schaftes, [250]
blodles ⁊ banles,
⁊ leomen buten liue,
252 as he schulde his ⁊ heoren
⁊ alre þinge schuppent,
þ is godd unsehelic.
þe feont þe findeð euch uuel,
256 bimong alle his crokinde creftes,
wið neauer an ne kecheð he

234 R hwarþurh. 235 R madschipe. 236 B wreððeð, C wraððeð, B omits wið.
237 RB þe for þ, R schaft. 238 R scheop, C sched. 239 B uel. 241 CB wurðe,
R omits se, B uorð. 242 C wit. 243 B þur. 244 C wurðschipe, B wurðmunt.
245 R unwitlese, B unwitelese. 246 C feond. 247 B þet, gode. 248 B ant, C hereð
(second e written over s), B herieð. 249 C schaft. 250 R ⁊ blodles, B ant.
251 B ant, C limen, wiðute, B bute. 252 B sculde, C ⁊ omitted, heren. 253 B ant,
schupent. 254 B god. 255 C feond, þ for second þe, R fnt, al for euch. 256 C omits his,
B hise. 257 B kecheð.

¹ C originally *nulo*.

Nor is there anything by which the great folly of man angers him (with) more than that the creature man whom he made and gave the faculty of distinguishing both good and evil by reason and wisdom, should lose his wit so far, through the accursed spirit, that he pays the worship, which he ought to pay to God, to senseless things, that the fiend dwells in; and honours and reveres visible creatures, bloodless and boneless, and limbs without life, as he should the Creator of himself and of them and of all things, who is the invisible God. The fiend that inventeth every evil, among all his crooked crafts, with none catcheth he

lerum suorum artes nulla dubios
 perniciosius appetit. nec alias a dei
 cultu subtilius avocat. quam ut
 cum sciamus nos deo soli¹ debere
 quod formamur et² nascimur;
 hec omnia elementis mundi as-
 cribi debere suadeat. quibus vos
 divinitatis³ numen attribuitis et
 appositis⁴ nominibus pro deo sin-
 gula atque universa veneramini.
 nulla alia rationem⁵ (!) in hanc
 erroneam opinionem traducti. nisi
 quod coeternam deo essentiam in
 se servare videntur;

Que plane a deo ex nichilo facta

creftiluker cang mēn, [260]
 ne leadeð to unbileauē,
 260 þen þ he makeð men
 þ ahten to witen wel
 þ ha beoð biȝetene,
 iborene t ibroht forð
 264 þurh þe heouenliche feder,
 to makien swucche maumez
 of treo oðer of stan,
 oðer, þurh mare medschipe,
 268 of gold oðer of seoluer, [270]
 t ȝeouen ham misliche nomen
 of sunne oðer of mone
 of wind t wude t wettres
 272 t hersumeð t wurgið
 as þah ha godes weren.
 Ne naueð he þurh oðer þing
 i þis bileauē ibroht ow
 276 bute þ ow þuncheð
 þ ha schulen leasten a,
 for þi þ ȝe ne sehen ham [280]
 neauer biginnen.
 280 Ah þer nis buten an godd,
 þurh hwam witerliche

258 R creftlucker, C men (e altered from o). 261 B ahte, CB wite. 263 B t (inserted from above) iborene ant, C iborne, R broht. 264 R heoueneliche, C heuenliche fader, B feader. 265 C make, B makie, C swuche, R mawmez. 267 C madschipe, B meadschipe. 268 C seluer. 269 B ant, C ȝiuen, R nome. 271 R of for t, of for t, C wattres, B weattres. 272 R hersumið, C wurcheð, B ant wurgið. 273 C tah; hit for ha. 274 C after oðer the letters oð expunged, B oder. 276 C bote þat, þunche. 277 R schulden, C lasten, R aa, B á. 278 RB schulen for sehen. 279 R neuer. 280 C bot, a. 281 B þur.

¹ deo soli transposed. ² inserts et. ³ C originally apositis. ⁴ diuitatis. ⁵ ratione.

more craftily foolish men, nor leadeth them to unbelief, than (in) that he maketh men who ought to know well that they are begotten, born and brought forth through the heavenly Father, to make such idols of wood or of stone, or, through greater folly, of gold or of silver, and give them divers names of sun or moon, of wind, wood and rivers, and revere and worship them as if they were gods. Nor hath he by any other means brought you into this belief but that it seems to you that they shall last for ever, because that you never saw their beginning. But there is only one God, through whom assuredly all these things were made,

sunt: et in hanc mundi formam
mirabili conspiratione sociata;

Que sicut initium ex dei crea-
tione¹ sumpserunt.

ita perhennitatem ejus beneficio
consequentur;

Et ideo coeterna deo non sunt.
quia impossibile² est craeaturam³
temporaliter factam. creatori suo
qui est sine tempore coevam esse
et consempiternam;

Ille enim solus est sine initio.
a quo omnium rerum processit
exordium;

ha alle weren iwrahte,
t of nawiht; t i þis world
284 iset us for to frouirin
t for to fremien;
t alswa as euch þing hefde
beginnunge of his godlec, [290]
288 alswa schulden alle
habben endunge,
þef he þ walde.
Engles t sawlen,
292 þurh þ ha bigunnen
ahten t mahten
endin þurh cunde;
ah he, þurh his milce
296 t godlec of his grace
makeð ham þ ha beoð
in eche buten ende; [300]
t þerfore nis na þing
300 euening ne eche
wið godd, þ ȝe gremieð;
for he is hare alre schuppent,
t scheop ham in sum time
304 t na time nes neauer
þ he bigon to beon in."

282 R ha omitted. 283 B ant—ant, R nawt, second t omitted, B weorlde. 284 C frouiren.
285 B ant, RB omit for, C framien. 286 C And, hafde. 287 C biginninge. 288
C schulen. 289 C endinge. 290 C þif, R ha, walden. 297 B maked, C beon. 298 C in
omitted. 299 R teruore, B þeruore. 301 C gremien. B gremied. 302 C schuppent
(right half of second p cut off), B schupent. 303 B ant, schop, R al for ham, B i. 304
B ant. 305 R he ne bigon.

¹ C originally *cratiane*.

² C originally *impossible*.

³ C originally *craeaturem*.

and of nothing; and placed in this world to comfort us and to benefit us; and also as every-
thing had a beginning of his goodness, so should all things have an end, were he to will it.
Angels and souls, as they had a beginning, ought and might naturally have an end; but he,
through his mercy and goodness of his grace, makes them to be eternal without end. And
therefore there is nothing equal to nor everlasting with God, whom you provoke; for He is
the Creator of them all, and made them in time (in some time: to-day or yesterday)
and there never was a time in which he (himself) began to exist." The emperor

Talibus ergo divinitas non est ascribenda. que sub dei dispositione posita non que sue¹ voluntatis sunt (fol. 172a) faciunt. sed a deo inposite serviunt rationi; Dum (!)² ergo non sunt plures. sed unus nascentium et viventium formator est deus: qui sicut omnia creavit. ita imperio suo omnia coercescet atque disponit; Tibi ergo imperator perpendere opus est: ut cum tu quidem homo sis et ideo mortalis. et tu prout terreni imperii exigit principatus multis mortalium milibus prees. si quis horum debitum tibi specialiter honorem alio conferret. et alteri quamlibet³ potenti aut inpotenti decollato sibi a te beneficio famulaturus insisteret. num tu non⁴ hunc reum majestatis judicares. et quem promptiorem in tua fidelitate animadverteres. huic omnem honorem deposito fraudulentum condonares? Miranda ergo est sed timenda tibi dei patientia. qui cum te sublimi imperio quod mortales magni estimant preesse hominibus voluit. tu tamen tantis ejus ingratis beneficiis. rebus insensibilibus attribuis. quod conferre debueras illius magne majestati;

[C]um hec puella loquitur. imperator jamdudum visu in virginem defixus. vultus ipsius claritatem et verborum constantiam tacitus considerabat; Dehinc in verba hujusmodi erupit;

Speciosa quidem hec ista forent o virgo que asseris. si rationis munimento fulcirentur;

pe keiser bistarede hire
wið swiðe steape ehnen [310]
308 hwil þ ha spek þus.
Swiðe he awundrede him
of hire wliiti westum,
t swiðere of hire wordes,
312 t feng on þus to speokene:
“ þi leor is, meiden, lufsum,
t ti muð murie;
t witti t wise
316. wordes hit weren,

306 B bistearede. 307 B swide, R steap. 308 R spec. 309 R him omitted.
310 R wastun. 311 B ant, C swiðre, B swider. 312 C speken. 314 R muri.
316 R wordes h hit (sic), B weordes.

¹ C sue inserted from above.

² Dii.

³ C originally *quemlibet*.

⁴ L omits non, C

non added on margin.

gazed at her with shining eyes while she spake thus. Much was 'he amazed at her beautiful form, and more at her words, and began thus to speak: "Thy countenance, O maiden, is lovely, and thy mouth pleasant; and these were witty and wise words, if they

Nos vero non ignoramus omnes
religionum sectas et universos sa-
crorum ritus rationalibus manasse
primordiis;

320 hefde lahe sprung.
321] 320 hefde lahe sprung.
322] 320 hefde lahe sprung.
323] 320 hefde lahe sprung.
324] 320 hefde lahe sprung.

Romani namque principes iusticia semper et religione mortales
omnes preeuntes. totum in leges suas orbem redegerunt; Non ergo
vana superstitio est his uti¹ cerimoniis. quibus longa etas religionis
auctoritatem dedit. et servata tot seculis fides. sequendos monet nobis²
esse (fol. 172b) parentes. qui feliciter secuti sunt suos;

Vestre autem credulitatis secta.
ita superflua et irrationabilis est
ut nulli sane menti recipienda³ vi-
deatur; Quidenim tam absurdum
et ab humana ratione tam alienum.
quam ut jesum quem judei cruci-
fixerunt dei filium asseratis. quem
virilis ignara consortii virgo con-
ceperit. conceptum clauso utero
pepererit⁴ qui a discipulo traditus
crucis suspendio interierit. de
cruce triduane sepulture moras
pertulerit. de sepulchro re-

Ah al þ 3e seggeð
is se sutel sotschipe,
þ hit na wis mon,
324 ah witlese, hit weneð.
Me hwet is mare medschipe
þen for to leuen on him,
t seggen he is godes sune,
328 þe þ Giws demden [330]
t heaðene ahongeden?
t þ he wes akennet
of Marie, a meiden,
332 buten monnes man,
t iboren buten
bruche of hire bodi,
deide t wes iburiet,

317 C þif. 318 R we omitted, weiten (*first e expunged*), C lahes, B lajen. 319 R ley.
321 C seggen. 322 R swa. 324 B wittlese, C wenen. 325 C hwat, madschipe,
B meadschipe. 327 B ant, C seggen þ he. 328 R omits þe, B þe for þ, þiws indistinct,
R giwes. 329 R heðene, C heaðe, R ahongen, C hongeden. 330 C omits t, B ant,
R tet, C was. 332 entirely omitted by C. 333 C writes wiðute, R writes t iboren of hire
bodi, B writes t iboren of hire bute. 334 R writes buten bruche. 335 B ant, C
iburied.

¹ C originally *ut*.

² *monet nobis* transposed.

³ C originally *reipienda*.

⁴ C originally *peperit*.

were not false: but we know well that our laws, our belief, and our faith had a legitimate origin. But all that you say is such manifest folly, that no wise man, but witless, would credit it. Now (Why) what is greater madness than to believe in him, and say that he is the son of God, whom Jews condemned and heathens hanged? and that he was born of Mary, a maiden, without connexion of man and (born) in spotless purity, (that he) died and was

sumpto spiritu surrexerit.¹ que

sane omnia vana et nulli sapienti
credibilia habentur;

Nec sufficit vobis tam stulto
errori adibere consensum. nisi et
inmortales deos nostros solem
et lunam temeraria² insectatione
condempnetis: quorum beneficio
utentes mortales honorem qui
numinibus debetur non solvere
sine offensione non possunt;

Quem³ enim tam remota celi plaga et secreta orbis regio ab
humana conversatione adeo servat ignotum. ut magno deo soli voti-
vam non exhibeat religionis culturam? Que gens tam barbara. que
lune celi divinos non attribuat honores?

[A]d hec summotenus virgo ore
subridens. tiranno ait; Tota in er-
rore⁴ vestra disputatio ex hoc esse

336 ⁊ herhede helle;
⁊ aras of deað,
⁊ steah in to heouene;
⁊ schal eft, o domesdei,
340 cumen ba to demen [340]
þe cwiike ⁊ te deade—
hwa walde ileuen þis,
þ is as noht wurð,
344 þ alle ower leasunges
beoð unlefliche.
Ah ⁊et ne þuncheð ow nawt inoh
to forleosen ow þus
348 in þulli misbileau;e;
ah gað ⁊et ⁊ seggeð scheome
bi ure undealliche godes, [350]
þe sunne ⁊ te mone,
352 þ euch mon ah to hersumin
⁊ herien in eorðe.”

336 R herehede. 337 R aroas, deð. 338 R ant, steh, omits in; to þe heouene,
C heuene. 339 B ant. 340 B te. 341 B ant. 342 CB ileue. 343 R is al as,
B ase, C nowt. 345 R unleflich. 346 R omits inoh. 348 CB i. 349 R omits ⁊et;
B ant, R segeð, C schome. 350 R omits bi; undedliche, C undeaðliche, B undeaddeliche.
352 CB te for to, C her for hersumin. 354 R þis. 355 B omits al. 356 R B ant,
C smirkende.

¹ C originally *surrexit*.

² C originally *temeria*.

³ *que*.

⁴ C originally *erore*.

buried, and harrowed hell; and arose from death, and ascended into heaven, and shall again,
on doomsday, come to judge both the quick and the dead? Who would believe this, which
is as nothing worth, so that all your leasings are incredible? But yet it seemeth not to you
enough to destroy (lose) yourself thus in such unbelief; but you even go and say shame con-
cerning our immortal gods, the Sun and the Moon, which every man on earth ought to honour
and worship?” This maiden thought little of all that he said, and smiling complacently

patet. quod iis¹ de quibus sermo est et ceteris elementis divinitatis nomen inaniter attribuitis. nec² illis inesse sed preesse divinitatem attenditis;³ quia alterius adiumento divinitas sola non indiget. sed una in se et simplex atque perfecta est quia incorporeus et invisibilis. et incorruptibilis deus est: ad cuius nutum hec ipsa mundi elementa velut factori suo (fol. 173a) famulantia inpositis officiis subvenire⁴ conspiciamus.

et pro meritis hominum dei⁵ iudicio vitales mortalibus aut corruptiores⁶ auras ingerunt; Nullam⁷ igitur divinitatis essentiam⁸ talibus constat inesse. quibus officii naturalis observantia non ex proprio arbitrio. sed ex creantis pendet imperio; Aspice cursum solis luneque discursus. et utrique cotidie per vicissitudines temporum vel ortum vel occasum repetendum; Superventu noctis sol diem perdit. quem tamen nec semper illuminat. dum nubium objectu excluditur; Luna sui patitur detrimentum. et plenitudinem luminis sub constitutione creatoris aut perdit aut recipit; Varios preterea siderum lapsus itidem considerare licet. accessum quoque⁹ maris et recessum. quod alternantibus motibus aut sereno quiescit aut tempestate turbatur; terra imbris infusa mollitur.¹⁰ eadem aut gelu stringitur aut calore siccatur; Quin et aspectu dei¹¹ metuens contremiscit.¹² ac se imperio subditam motu ipso fatetur; Ipsum aerem perniciosior¹³ alitus sepe corrumpit et dum gravaverit efficit¹⁴ pestilentem; Vincuntur fuis ad

þef him þullich onswere:

“ Alle ich iseo þine sahen
sotliche isette.

360 Cleopest þeo þinges godes, [360]

þ nowðer sturien ne mahen
ne steoren ham seoluen,
buten as þe hehe king

364 hat ham of heuene—

þ heo buheð to him
as schafte to his schuppent?

357 R onsware. 358 B al, C i, seo. 359 B sotliche, R sotlich, iseide. 360 C clepes, þoa, B þing. 361 C sturie. 362 R storen, C seluen. 363 CB bute, C te, R heh. 364 B in for of, R heuene. 365 R beoð for buheð. 366 R schat, C schuppent.

¹ his. ² inserts in. ³ attenditis omitted in L, added on margin in C. ⁴ subservire. ⁵ domini. ⁶ corruptionis. ⁷ Nulla. ⁸ essentia. ⁹ L quo. C originally quoque, the last syllable of which is scraped out, but by another hand again added on the margin. ¹⁰ mollescit. ¹¹ domini. ¹² C originally contremescit. ¹³ C originally perniciosior. ¹⁴ C writes eff cit, letter between f and c scraped out.

gave him this answer: “I perceive that all thy sayings are foolishly ordered (put in order). Call you those things gods, which can neither stir nor (when moved) steer their course, except as the high king of heaven bids them, and they submit to him like creatures to their creator?

dominum precibus pluvie. et proluxa rursum serenitas supplicatione mutatur; Adverte igitur qualiter cuncta hec elementa aut inopite serviunt rationi. aut in usus hominum necessarios ex gratia conditoris vertuntur; Hec sunt¹ que pro deo venerantes adoratis. nec intelligitis quantum creatori contumeliam ad vestram nisi conversi fueritis eternam dampnationem infertis.

qui unus et incommutabilis deus
in se permanens numquam (fol.
173b) desinit esse quod est cuius
consempiterna² divinitas potenter
omnia mutat nec mutatur;

Nis buten an godd,
368 as ich ear seide,
þ al þe world wrahte
t alle worldliche þinges; [370]
t al wurcheð his wil
372 bute mon ane.

Quod si ita est immo quia ita est: falso dii estimantur et error impromptu est.

Desine igitur talia predicare.
que nulla valent ratione compro-
bare;

Stille beo þu þenne
t stew swuche wordes;
for ha beoð al witlese,
376 t windi of wisdom."
þe keiser wundrede him
swiðe of hire wordes,
t wedinde eweð:
380 "Meiden, ich iseo wel, [380]
for sutel is t eðsene
o þine sulliche sahen,
þ tu were iset þung
384 to leaf t to lare.

[S]tupens imperator in verbis
puelle ait; Quantum ex verbis
tuis adverti;³ fas est:

si nostrorum philosophorum⁴ gim-
nasiis a primis annis erudienda
persedisses.⁵ nullo inferior in-

369 R þe for þ, C þat for þ. 370 B al, þing. 371 C And. 373 R buo (u underlined and e inserted instead, apparently by other hand). 374 R swucche. 375 C beon. 376 R B ant, R wundi. 378 C swuche for hire. 379 B ant, R t al wedinde. 380 C seo. 381 R sutel hit is, B etsene. 382 R of for o, C pulliche. 383 B þet, gung, R iset þung transposed.

¹ omits sunt.

² sempiterna.

³ C originally averti.

⁴ C originally philophorum.

⁵ C originally perseclises.

There is but one God, as I before said, who made all the world and all worldly things; and all things work his will but man only. Be thou still then, and stop such words; for they are all void of reason, and empty of wisdom." The emperor wondered greatly at her words, and angrily said: "Maiden, I see well, for it is manifest and easily seen by thy strange words, that thou wert set young to belief and learning. But of such doctrine thou hast (so) learned

doctrina patuisses. et deorum
nostrorum

numina divinitatis honore vacua
nequaquam astrueres;

Dum ergo nos¹ incepta sacra
peragimus. te interim² opperiri³
oportet. quia nobiscum itura es
ad palatium. et regiis honoranda
muneribus si nostris ad quiescis
jussionibus;

Hec dicens.⁴ accito clanculum
nuntio misit litteras regio anulo
signatas per infra jacentes pro-
vincias. ad omnes rethores et

Ah of swuch larspel
þu hauest leaue ileornet,
þ̅ tu art þeronont
388 al to deope ilearet,
hwen þu foreweðest, for þi Crist,
ure undedliche godes; [391]
t̅ seist ha beoð idele
392 t̅ empti of gode.
Ah wastu nu hwet is?
We schulen bringen to ende
þ̅ we bigunnen habbeð;
396 t̅ tu schalt, þu motild,
to curt cumen seoðen,
t̅ kinemedede ikepen,
zef þu wult þi wil [400]
400 iwenden to ure;
for zef hit went aȝein us,
ne schal þe na teone
ne tintreohe trukien."
404 þa he þus hefde iscid,
cleopede an of his men
dearnliche to him,
t̅ sende iseelede writes
408 wið his ahne kineriŋ

385 R t̅ for Ah, C larespel. 386 C haues, R omits leaue, C ileorned. 388 C leared.
389 B forewedest, C godd for Crist. 390 B undeðliche, C undeadliche. 391 B ant,
R idel. 392 C emti. 393 RB omit nu, C hwat, B wet. 394 CB bringe. 396 B ant:
tu for þu. 397 CB cume, R soðen, C siðen. 398 B t̅ pine mede, C kepe.
399 C jif. 400 C wenden, B iwende. 401 C jif, aȝain, R aȝeines. 402 C tene. 403
R tintreo, C trukie. 404 B þus hefde transposed. 405 C clepede, hise. 406 R dernliche,
C dearnliche, B dearliche. 407 B ant, C iseelede, B iseledede. 408 B wid.

¹ omits nos. ² inserts nos. ³ C originally operiri. ⁴ *Imperator maxentius* for
Hec dicens.

(thy) belief that thou art in that respect all too deeply learned, when thou, for thy Christ, blasphemest our immortal gods, and sayest that they are vain and void of good. But knowest thou now what is to be done? We shall bring to an end what we have begun; and thou shalt, thou babbler, then come to court, and receive royal meed, if thou wilt bend thy will to ours; for, if it goes against us, there shall not fail thee trouble and torment." When he had thus spoken, he called one of his men privately to him, and sent writings sealed with his own royal

grammaticos. et quibus in doctrina
fama celebrior nomen adquisierat.
ut ii¹ omnes ad pretorium alex-
andrinorum² sine recusatione oc-
currant. eo studiosius quo illos

altis imperator honoribus donan-
dos promittit. et inter primos
palatii suis interesse consiliis. tan-
tum si hanc contionatricem teme-
rariam suis assertionibus supera-
tam reddiderint.³

et hunc imperatori optatum reportaverint triumphum.

quatinus blasphemias quas diis

magnis irrogaverat. in suum caput

refusas agnoscat. quia rationis
ordo exigit. ut primum arte ora-

toria qua se jactanter attollit⁴ re-
vincatur.⁵ postmodum vero si diis

immolare detrectat. penali cruci-
atu intereat;

Paruit nuntius (fol. 174a) regis

zeont al his kineriche [410]
to alle þe icudde clerkes,
ʒ het ham hihin toward him

412 hare cume swiðe;
ʒ swa mucche þe swiðere
þ he bihet to medin ham
mid swiðe heh mede,

416 ʒ makien ham hehest in his halle,
þef ha þeos modi motild
ouerecumen mahten,

ʒ wenden þe hokeres [420]
420 of his heaðene godes
upon hire heaued;

þ ha were on alre earst
iken ʒ icnawen,

424 þ nis bute dusilec
al þ ha driueð;

ʒ þrefter þenne
fordon ʒ fordemed,

428 þef ha nalde leauen

þ ha ʒet lefde, [430]

ʒ hare lahe luuien.

þes sonde wende him forð,

409 C ʒont. 411 C And, B ant; þet ha for het ham, C hihen, B toward. 412 C come.
413 C muchel, swiðre. 414 C meden, B meaðin. 415 C wið, B wid, R kinewurðe for
swiðe heh; meden. 416 C maken, omits ham. 417 C ʒif. 418 CB ouercume, C mihten.
419 B ant wende, R hire for þe. 420 R heðene. 421 R uppon, heauet, B heauead.
422 B þ for þ; erst, R earest. 423 B ikennen ant, R icnawes. 426 B ant. 427 B ant,
R writes fordon hire ʒ fordemen; C fordemet. 428 C ʒif. 429 B þet. 430 B ant, lajen.
431 R þeos.

¹ hi. ² alexandrinum. ³ L redderint; C originally the same. ⁴ C originally attollat.
⁵ C originally revincantur.

ring to all the celebrated clerks, and commanded them to hasten quickly to come to him; and so much the more (quickly), because he promised to reward them with right high meed and to make them highest in his hall, if they might overcome this proud preacher, and turn the insulting mockeries away from his heathen gods upon her own head; so that it might be, first of all, known and acknowledged, that all that she aims at is but folly; and thereafter that she should be destroyed and condemned, if she would not forsake that which she still believed, and love their law. This messenger went forth, as the King commanded, and he

mandatis. et expletis imperator
sacrilegis officiis.

virginem jubet comprehendi et ad
palatium duci.

quam blando primum sermone
cepit affari; Nomen inquires tuum
puella aut genus. et quos in studiis

liberalibus magistros habuisti pe-
nitus ignoro. sed speciosa facies

et decora te alto sanguine ortam

protestatur. et loquendi peritia in

laudem refunderetur magistro-

rum. nisi in hoc uno oberrasses.

quod diis omnipotentibus (*sic*)¹

derogando contumeliosa persistis;

432 as þe king hehte;

ʔ he heold on to herien
his heaðene maumez
wið misliche lakes,

436 long time of þe dei,

þ he idon hefde;
ʔ wende þa, þe wari,

toward his buriboldes, [440]

440 ʔ bed bringen anan

þis meiden biforen him,
ʔ seide to hire þus:

“Nat ich nowðer þi nome

444 ne ich ne cnawe þi cun,

ne hwucchemen þu hauest ihaued
hiderto to meistres.

Ah þi schene nebscheft

448 ʔ ti semliche schape

schaweð wel þ ʔ tu art [450]

freo monne foster;

ʔ ti swuti speche

452 walde of wisdom ʔ of wit

beoren þe wittnesse,

ʒef þu ne misnome

onont ure maumez,

456 þ ʔ tu se muchel misseist

432 C te. 433 B omits ʔ, C þ for ʔ he; held; after to the word heaðe scored out.
434 R heðene, B heaðne, R mawmez. 436 R longe, C dai. 438 B ant, C þe omitted;
weri, R awaride. 439 B towart, R te for his. 440 B ant, R het for bed. 441 R B
biuoren. 442 B ant. 444 R cnawe þe ne þi. 445 R hwuche, ihauet, C haued.
447 C nebschaft. 448 B ant. 450 R monnes. 451 B ant, R sputi (*sic*), B swuti
(*doubtful if w or þ*). 453 C bere, B beore, wittnesse. 454 C þif. 455 R mawmez.
456 R so muche, C misseist (*first s inserted from above*).

¹ omnipotentibus.

(the latter) kept on to worship his heathen idols with divers offerings, long time of the day, till that he had done; and then went, the wretch, to his palace, and bade bring immediately this maiden before him, and spoke to her thus: “I know neither thy name nor do I know thy race, nor what kind of men thou hast hitherto had as masters. But thy fair features and thy seemly shape show well that thou art the child of noblemen; and thy sweet speech would bear witness of thy wisdom and understanding if thou didst not mistake concerning our idols, which thou so greatly revilest and mockest our gods; who shouldst, as we

- [R]espondens puella dixit ti-
ranno;¹
- Si nomen queris² Katerina
dicor. costi quondam regis filia;
Liberalium artium non ignobiles
doctores quantum ad inanem
mundi gloriam habui. de quibus
quia nichil michi quod esset con-
ducibile ad beatam vitam contu-
lerunt. tota hec eorum memoria
silescat; Postquam enim michi³
sanctioris doctrine lux emicuit. mox
tenebrosam erratice doctrine noc-
tem deserui; Audiui enim beatam
vocem evangelii domini mei jesu
- 460 Ha onswerede t seide :
“ ʒef þu wult mi nome witen,
ich am Katerine icleopet.
ʒef þu wult cnawen mi cun,
464 ich am kinges dohter ;
Cost hehte mi feder ;
t habbe ihauet hiderto
swiðe hehe meistres.
468 Ah for þi þ te lare
þ heo me larden, [470]
limpeð to idel ʒelp,
t falleð to biȝete
472 t to wurðschipe of þe worlde,
ne ne helpeð nawiht
eche lif to habben,
ne ʒelpe ich nawiht þrof.
476 Ah sone se ich seh þe leome
of þe soðe lare
þ leadeð to eche lif,
ich leafde al þ oðer, [480]
480 t toc me him to lauerd
t makede him mi leofmon,

457 B ant. 458 R þet. 459 C heien ham t. 460 R heo him onswere (de added from above), ant. 461 C ʒif, wilt. 462 B icleoped (d written over t). 463 C ʒif, wilt, R icnawen, C B cnawe. 464 R h expunged after am. 465 C fader, B feader. 466 C haue, ihaued. 467 R B monie for hehe. 468 R t for Ah. 469 C ha, B learden. 471 B ant, C biȝete 472 B omits t. R for for t to, B wurdshipe, R world. 474 R winnen for habben, B haben. 475 R ich ne ʒelpe, C nawt, B þerof. 476 R so, iseh. 477 R hali for soðe. 478 B þe, to þ eche. 480 R B ant, C tok, R lauerd (e written over r). 481 R leouemon.

¹ C originally tranno.

² nomen queris transposed.

³ omits michi.

do, honour and reverence them.” She answered and said : “ If thou wilt know my name, I am called Katherine. If thou wilt know my lineage, I am a king's daughter. Cost was the name of my father ; and I have had hitherto very distinguished masters. But because the learning which they taught me serves to vain glory, and tends to the gain and to the honour of the world, and helpeth not at all to attain everlasting life, I boast not of it. But as soon as I saw the light of the true learning that leads to eternal life, I forsook all the other, and took him for my lord and made him my love, who said these words by one of

christi. cui me sponsam et ancillam
foedere stabili devovi. cuius nu-
mine inspiratus multo ante tem-
pore ex voce ipsius propheta cla-
mabat dicens; Perdamsapientiam¹
sapientium et intellectum intelli-
gentium reprobabo;

Audieram et illud propheticum;
Deus autem noster in celo. omnia
quecumque voluit fecit;

Simulacra gentium
argentum et aurum.

opera manuum hominum;

Os abent et non loquuntur² usque

qui confidunt in eis; Et alibi:

omnes dii gentium demonia; Alio-

quin tu qui manu hominis forma-

tos omnipotentes deos asseris. quos

þe þeos word seide

þurh an of his witeþen:

484 'Ichulle fordon þe wisdom
of þeos wise worldmen,
he seið, 't awarpen þe wit
of þeose world witti.'

488 Ich herde eft þeos word
of an oðer witege: [490]

'Ure god is in heouene
þ wurches al þ he wule.

492 þeos maumez beoð imaket
of gold, 't of seoluer,
al wið monnes honden
muð bute speche,

496 ehnen buten sihðe,
earen buten herunge,
honden buten felunge,
fet buten ʒonge. [500]

500 þeo þ ham makieð
moten beon ilich ham,
't alle þ on ham trustes!'
Ah nu þu seist þ ha beoð

504 alweldinde godes,
't wult þ ich do ham wurðschipe:

482 C þ, pis, R seide perdam . . . reprobabo. 483 entirely omitted by R, C hise, B witegen
Perdam . . . reprobabo. 484 R þ is ichulle, B Ich chulle, fordo. 485 C þeose. 486 RB ant,
R warpen, C awarpe. 487 R þeos, C wittie. 488 C þis. 489 R witege Deus . . . aurum
't al forð a þ Similes illis f., CB witege Deus . . . aurum usque ad similes illis fiant.
490 R þ is ure, godd, B Vre, goð, C heuene. 491 R þe for first þ, C wile. 492 R mawmez,
C beon. 493 R al mid for of, C seluer. 494 C omits al. 495 C wiðute. 496 B spehnen (sic), C
wiðute, B bute, siðhðe. 497 C wiðuten, heringe, R herung. 498 CB bute, C felinge. 499 CB
bute. 500 R heom, C makien. 501 CB mote, R iliche heom transposed. 502 B ant, þe, omits
on, C trusten. 503 C þat, B beod. 504 C alwealdende, B alle weldinde. 505 B wurdschipe.

¹ C sapientiam added on margin. ² inserts et cetera.

his prophets: 'I shall destroy the wisdom of those wise worldlings, he saith, and cast down the understanding of the prudent of this world.' I heard again these words of another prophet: 'Our God is in heaven, who doeth all that he will. These idols are made of gold, and of silver, all by the hands of man; a mouth without speech (have they), eyes without sight, ears without hearing, hands without feeling, feet without walking. May they that make them be like to them, and all they that trust in them!' But now thou sayest that they are all-powerful gods, and wilt that I should do worship to them. Show

corpore prostrato et vultu humili	schaw sumhwet of ham,	
adoras. postquam me de cultura	for hwi ha beon wurðe	
ipsorum ¹ suades. certum potentie	508 for to beon iwurðget ?	
(fol. 174b) sue experimentum os-	for ear nullich nowðer	[510]
tendere debes ;	ham heien ne herien."	

Dum enim sculptura artificis ex politi aut arte mechanica ex erea massa in hominem formantur. aut in ligno et lapide velut sensu vigentia membra inculpantur. restat ut ora loquantur. oculi videant. aures audiant. manus palpent. et cetera officia² nature³ quod simulant peragant ;⁴ Sin autem vana plane religio immo insania est⁵ talibus divine potentie honorem asseribi. qui nec cultoribus suis beneficia ulla prestare. nec offensi se vindicare possunt. certe quia nec se esse sciunt. dum materia insensibilis ; in⁶ quamcumque eam similitudinem miseris⁷ nec forme gaudet nitore. nec monstruose⁸ vilem rei imaginem⁹ exhorret.¹⁰ quin potius tanto est illis¹¹ in templo marmoreo sedem habere. quanto in inmundis cloacis jacere ; O igitur deos¹² venerabiles. quibus nec honor inpensus benivolentiam. nec contemptus parit offensionem ; O felices talium numinum cultores. quibus¹³ tanta in necessitate non assunt. in tribulatione non succurrunt. in periculis non defendunt ;

" Nat ich hwuch þi þoht beo,"
 512 quoð þe king Maxence,
 " ah wordes þu hauest inohe.
 Ah þole nu ane hwile,
 ꝥ tu schalt ifinden
 516 hwa þe onswerie."

506 C scheaw, sumhwat. 507 C hwat for hwi. 508 B te, R iwurget, C iwurðchet, B iwurðget. 509 R er, C nullich, B nulle ich. 510 R ham heien *transposed*. 512 C *Q* for quoð, B qð. 513 C haues. 515 R ant, B schald. 516 B onswerie.

¹ eorum. ² I. officium ; C originally the same. ³ naturale. ⁴ C originally pergant. ⁵ omits est. ⁶ C in inserted from above ; L omits in. ⁷ L inseris ; C originally miseretis. ⁸ C originally monstruose. ⁹ nec vilem monstruose rei imaginem. ¹⁰ C originally exhorrent. ¹¹ illi. ¹² dii. ¹³ C quibus added on margin.

somewhat of them for which they might be worthy to be worshipped ; for before this shall I neither honour nor reverence them." " I wot not what thy meaning is," quoth the King Maxence, " but words thou hast enough. But have patience now awhile, and thou shalt find who will answer thee." The messenger, in course of time, when he had gone over all

[R]egius interea nuntius peragratis provincie finibus alexandriam revertitur: ducens secum quinquaginta¹ viros.

qui se in omni doctrina egyptiorum et artium liberalium. immo in omni sapientia mundi excellere ultra omnes mortalis asserebant; Hos introductos. imperator sciscitari cepit: de doctrina et sapientia eorum; Illi e contra multa²

referunt. et quod inter universos orientales oratorie facultatis³ et sapientie arcem tenebant;

Sed tu⁴ inquiunt imperator (fol. 175a) nobis habes aperire

þes sondesmon, umbe long,
þa he hefde al þ lond
ouergan ⁊ þurhsot, [520]
520 com, ⁊ brohte wið him
fifti scolmeistres,
of alle þe creftes
þ clerc ah to cunnen,
524 ⁊ in alle wittes
of worldliche wisdomes
wisest on worlde.
þe king wes swiðe
528 icwemet, ⁊ walde
witen þef ha weren
se wise ⁊ se witti [530]
as me foreseide;
532 ⁊ ha somet seiden,
þ wittiest ha weren
of alle þe meistres
þ weren in estlonde
536 ⁊ heaued of þe heste,
⁊ mest nomecuðe icud
of alle clergies.
“Ah þu,” cweðen ha, “keiser,
540 ahest to cuðen

517 R writes þes sondes mon com aȝein umbe long, B log. 518 C ha, B lont. 519 B ant, R omits ⁊ þurhsot. 520 B ant. 521 C scolemaistres. 523 B þe clearc. 525 R wisdoms. 526 C wiseste, C B o. 527 C was, C swiðe wel. 528 R icweme. 529 R iwiten, C ȝif. 530 R so—so, B ant, witi. 531 C men, forewende, R uoreseide. 532 C And, B ant, R heo, C somen. 533 B witiest. 535 R þet, B þe, C eastlonde. 536 R heauet, C hehste. 537 C meast, R icudd. 539 C cweaðen, B queðen, R heo, C omits keiser. 540 entirely omitted by C.

¹ C originally *quiquaginta*. ² *multa e contra*. ³ C originally *facultates*.

⁴ C *tu* inserted from above.

the land and sought it through, came and brought with him fifty schoolmasters, of all the crafts that clerk ought to know, and in all sciences of worldly wisdom the wisest in the world. The king was extremely pleased, and wished to know if they were as wise and as intelligent as they were said to be; and they all of them said that they were of most understanding of all the masters that were in the East, and the chief of the highest, and known as the most renowned for all kinds of knowledge. “But thou,” said they, “O Emperor, oughtest

quanam causa e nostris sed-
ibus evocatos huc venire volu-
isti. si magnum aliquid aut divi-
num est quod per nos tibi
queras exponi; Ille respondit;
Est penes nos juvenis quidem
etate puella. sed verborum afflu-
entia et sensu ut nobis videtur
incomparabiliter astuta: que etiam
viros disputando victos reddit et
elingues sed quod altius me¹ urit.
immortalium deorum nostrorum
culturam inanem esse non solum
asserit: sed vana simulacra de-
monum affirmat; Poteram sane
hanc vi regia ad sacrificandum in-
pellere. aut penalibus tormentis²
extinguere³: sed pluris nobis esse
videtur. si fieri potest vestris eam

argumentis inclausam confutare:
et ad viam rationis inflectere;

Quibus si obstinatius restiterit.

for hwet icud þing [540]
þu hete us hider to cumene?"
t he ham onswerede;
544 "Her is a meiden
þunglich of þeres,
ah se swiðe witti
t wis on hire wordes,
548 þ ha wið hire anes mot
meistreð us alle.
Ah þet me teoneð mare,
þ ha takeð ure godes [550]
552 to balewe t to bismere;
t seið hit beoð deoulen
þ in ham dearieð.
Ich mahte inoh raðe wel,
556 habben aweld hire,
þef ha nalde wið luue,
wið luðer eie lanhure.
Ah þet me þuncheð betere
560 þ ha beo ear ouercumen
wið desputinge; [560]
t þef ha þe þet wule
þen ha wat hire woh,
564 wiðstonden aþein us,
ich hire wule don

541 C hwat, R icudd. 542 C cumen. 543 RB ant, R onswered, B onswerede. 545 C þungling, B on for of. 546 R so. 547 R of for on, C hise for hire. 550 C teneð. 551 B tuket. 552 R bale, bismere. 553 B seid, C beon, deoulen, B deoflen. 554 R darieð, B dearieðe (*last letter expunged*). 555 C mihte, B reaðe. 556 C awealt. 557 C þif. 558 R omits eie. 560 R writes: þ heo beo ofcumen ear. 561 R desputing, B desputunge. 562 C þif, þa. 564 C aþain. 565 C wile.

¹ *altius me* transposed.

² *penalibus tormentis* transposed.

³ C originally *extingure*.

to tell us for what notable cause thou badest us to come hither;" and he answered them: "Here is a maiden young in years, but so exceedingly intelligent and wise in her words, that she with her reasoning alone masters us all. But it grieves me yet more, that she brings our gods into contempt and derision; and says they are devils that lurk within them. I might speedily enough have compelled her, if she would not with love, with appalling horror at least. But yet to me it seemeth better that she be first overcome with argument; and if she will still, when she knows her error, resist us, I shall put her to the

ego eam exquisitis tormentis
faciam interire;

Vos autem si hanc superare preva-
lueritis:

altis vos muneribus donatos ad
propria remittam. aut si id potius
eligitis:

internis consiliis meis¹ vos pre-
cipuos interesse concedam;

Ad hec verba imperatoris. unus
eorum vehementer indignatus:
stomachanti voce respondit; O
magnum imperatoris consilium. o
memoria dignam sententiam: qui
ob degenerem unius puelle con-
flictum sapientes mundi de remotis
partibus jussit invitari. cui satis
fuisse potuerat unum ex² clien-
tulis nostris adversum omnes oc-
cidui orbis philosophos

to þe derueste deað

þ me mei hire demen:

568 ʔ wið kinewurðe ʒeoues
ʒelden ow hehliche

ower ʒong hider,

ʒef ʒe aʒein wulleð; [570]

572 oðer, ʒef ow is wilre

for to wunien wið me,

ʒe schulen beon mine readesmen

in alle mine dearne runes

576 ʔ mine dearne deden."

þa onswerede þe an

swiðe prudeliche,

þus, to þe prude prince:

580 "Hei! hwuch wis read
of se icudd keiser [580]

makien se monie

clerkes to cumene,

584 ʔ se swiðe crefti,

of alle clergies

ut of Alixandres lond

þe alre leste ende,

588 to motin wið a meiden!

Me an mahte of ure men

wið his mot meistren,

567 C mai, demet (t expunged, line above c preceding). 568 R ant, C mede for ʒeoues.
569 R ower hwile for ow hehliche. 570 entirely omitted by R, C gong. 571 R ʔ ʒef,
C ʒif, aʒain, willeð. 572 C ʒif, B willre. 573 B te, C B wunie. 574 B schule, C beo,
readesmen, R readmen. 575 R derue, B run. 576 R derne, C dedes. 577 B onswerede. 578
R prudeliche (r inserted from above), C prudliche. 579 R omits þus. 581 R so, C cointe
for icudd, B cud. 582 CB makie, R so. 583 C cumen. 584 R ant, omits se, C creftiw
(w expunged). 586 RB omit ut, B lont. 587 C laste, B leaste. 588 C moten. 590
B meistrin, R meistren hire.

¹ consiliis meis transposed.

² de.

most painful death that it is possible to doom her to; and with royal gifts repay you highly for your coming hither, if you wish to return; or, if it be more desirable to you to remain with me, ye shall be my counsellors in all my secret councils and my secret undertakings." Then answered one of them right proudly thus, to the proud prince: "Ha! what wise counsel (is this) of so renowned an emperor, to make so many clerks, and such right skilful ones in all kinds of knowledge to come out of the remotest bounds of the land of Alexandria to argue with a maiden! Surely one of our men might with his reasoning master, and with

productum disputare:¹

nedum tot sapientes unius causa
puelle vexari compelleret; Sed
quantulacumque est producat in
presentiam nostram de qua dicis
puella. ut cognoscat se nondum
vidisse aut audisse preter hodie
sapientem; (fol. 175b)

[S]ervabatur¹ interea virgo
sancta sub custodia.² sola contra
quingenta pugnatura. cui nun-
tius supervenit de consilio regis
et de conflictu in crastinum con-
stituto; Nichil tamen ex his
famula christi turbatur. sed in-
perterrita militie sue agonem
domino commendabat dicens; O

⁹ wið his anes wit awarpen,
592 þe alre wiseste [590]
þe wuneð bi westen.
Ah, hwuch se ha eauer beo,
let bringen hire forð,
596 þ ha understonde
þ ha ne stod neauer,
ear þene þes dei,
bute biforen dusie."
600 þis meiden wes bicluset
þe hwile in cwarterne
⁹ i cwalmhuse. [600]
Com a sonde ⁹ seide hire
604 þ ha schulde cumen forð
to fehten in þe marhen
ane aȝein fifti.
Nes þis meiden nawiht'
608 herfore imenget
in hire mod inwið;
ah, buten euch fearlac,
bitahte al hire feht
612 in hire healendes hond,
⁹ bigon to him [610]
to bidden þeos bone:
"Crist, godd, godes sune!

592 C wisiste. 593 R þ. 594 R so heo. 597 C þat, B stoð. 598 C þen, þis, dai, R omits this line entirely. 599 R binoren, C bifore, B biuore. 600 C þes, B þeos, C was. 601 R þeo, B i. 602 C in, cwalmhus. 604 R inne marhen for cumen forð, B cume. 605 R writes: cumen forð to fehten, B i. 606 C aȝain, B uifti. 607 C tis, B nawhit, R heruore for nawiht. 608 C perfore, B heruore, R nawiht for herfore. 610 R farlac. 612 R hire omitted; healindes, B helendes, hont. 613 RB ant. 614 B bidde, C þes.

¹ C originally [S]ervabatur.

² sub custodia virgo sancta.

his wit alone overthrow, the wisest of all that dwell in the West. But, whatsoever she be, let her be brought forth, that she may understand that she stood never, ere this day, but before fools." This maiden was shut up the while in prison and in the torture-house. There came a messenger and told her that she must come forth to contend on the morrow alone against fifty. This maiden was no whit on that account troubled within her mind; but, without any fear, committed all her battle into her Saviour's hand, and began to pray to him this prayer: "Christ, God, thou Son of God! sweet compassionate Jesu, of all odours

sapientia et dei virtus altissimi	616	swete softe Iesu, alre smelle swotest !
jesu bone. qui tuos milites ne		þu alwealdende godd ! þi federes wisdom !
inter pressuras mundi formidare	620	þu þ tahtest þine þ·ha ne schulden nowðer diuerin ne dreden for teone, ne for tintreohc, [620]
debuissent. nec ¹ minis adversan- tium turbarentur.	624	ne for nan worldlich wondreaðe; ah warnedest ham wel hu me ham walde þreatin t leaden unlacheliche,
pia eos consolatione premunire dignatus esicens. dum steteritis	628	t elnedest ham swa, þ ham wes eð to drehen al þ me dude ham, t al þ ha drehen
	632	for þi deore luue, deorewurðe lauerd ! [630] t seidest þe seoluen, 'Hwen þe stondeð biforen
ante reges et presides. nolite pre- cogitare quomodo aut quid loqua- mini. ego enim dabo vobis os et	636	kinges t eorles, ne þenche þe neauer hwet ne hu þe schulen seggen ; for ichulle þeouen ow
	640	ba tunge t tale,

616 C ih'u. 617 R smealle. 618 R alweldende, B alwealdinde. 619 C faderes, B feadres. 620 R þe for þ, C tahtes. 621 B selude for schulden. 622 C diueren. 623 R tintreo, C tintrehe. 624 C B na, C worldes, R wondreaðe, B wontreaðe. 625 C wearnedes. 626 C men, þreaten, B threaten. 628 R ant, C elnedes, omits ham. 629 C was, eað. 630 C men, duden or dude? 631 R ant, drehden, C druhen. 632 R deorewurðe. 633 R deore. 634 R B seoluen Dum . . . presides etc., C seluen Dum . . . cog. 635 B hwene, R biuoren, C bifore, B biuore. 636 B ant. 637 C hwat, B hweat. 639 C ich wule, B ich chulle, C þiuen.

¹ ne.

sweetest ! thou Almighty God ! thy Father's wisdom ! thou that didst teach thy disciples that they should neither tremble nor dread for trouble nor for torment, nor any worldly tribulation, but warnedst them well how men would threaten and treat them unlawfully, and didst comfort them so, that it was easy for them to endure all that men did to them, and all that they suffered for thy dear love, precious Lord ! and thyself didst say, ' When ye stand before kings and nobles, think ye never what or how ye shall speak ; for I shall

sapientiam. cui non poterunt re-
sistere et contradicere omnes ad-
versarii vestri. adesto famule tue
et da sermonem rectum et bene
sonantem in os meum ut ii¹ qui
ad derogandum nomini tuo con-
venerunt. non prevaleant adver-
sum me; Sed verbi tui virtute
consternati hebetatis sensibus aut
penitus obmutescant. aut conversi
nomino (*sic*)² tuo dent honorem
et gloriam: qui solus cum patre et
spiritu sancto es et eris gloriosus

þ an ne schal of alle
ower wiðerwines witen [640]
hwet he warpe a word aȝein ow.
644 Lauerd, wune wið me,
t hald þ tu bihete us,
t sete, Iesu, swucche sahen
i mi muð to marhen,
648 t ȝef swuch mahte
t strengðe i mine wordes,
þ þeo þe beoð icumene
aȝeines þi deore nome,
652 me to underneomene, [650]
moten missen þrof,
Aweld, þurh þi wisdom,
hare worldliche wit;
656 t þurh þi muclehe mihte,
meistre ham swa þ ha been
mid alle istewet t stille,
oðer iwente to þe,
660 t ti nome wurðgin,
þe wið godd hehfeder, [660]
t wið þen hali gast,
þurhwunest in alre worlde world

641 R nan for an. 643 C hwat, aȝain. 644 R lauerd (d added from above), B lauert.
645 B halt, R þet, C þat, bihet. 646 C sette, B ihesu, C ih'u, swuche, B swete swete (sic)
for swucche. 648 R swucche, B gef, C ȝif, mihte. 649 R strenge. 650 C þ for þe,
R icumen. 651 R omits aȝeines, C aȝaines, ti R deorewurðe. 652 R aȝeines me to to
(sic); above aȝeines and icumen þi three horizontal lines indicating the order of words as given
by our text; C to underneome me. 653 C misse. 654 R awed, C aweald, B awelt. 656
R B ant. 657 B mestre, omits þ. 658 B omits mid. 659 R B wenden. 660 B ant þi,
R wurgin, C wurðched (d expunged and line above e), B wurdgin. 661 C þ for þe,
B hehfeder, C fader. 662 R ant, omits wið, C B þe for þen. 663 B omits worlde.

¹ hi.² nomini.

give you both tongue and speech, so that not one of all your adversaries shall know what word he may object against you.' Lord, abide with me, and keep that which thou didst promise us, and put, O Jesu, such sayings in my mouth to-morrow, and give such power and strength to my words, that they who are come against thy dear name, to tempt me, may fail thereof. Overrule, by thy wisdom, their worldly prudence; and, by thy great power, master them so that they may be totally checked and silent, or converted to thee, and worship thy name, that with God the Father, and with the Holy Ghost, ever livest in the

in secula amen; Necdum verba compleverat. et ecce angelus domini apparuit illi. cujus vultus claritate. locus quo virgo clausa tenebatur mira chorouscatione fulgurabat. ex qua virgo stupore et admiratione pene defecerat; Cui angelus; Ne paveas inquit deo grata¹ puella: sed constanter age. (fol. 176a) quia tecum est dominus pro cujus honore certamen inisti.

ipse affluentis verbi impetum fundet in ore tuo. cui non tantum

664 a on ecnesse.”
 Nefde ha bute iseid swa,
 ꝥ an engel ne com
 lihtinde, wið swuch
 668 leome, from heouene,
 ꝥ ha wes sumdel
 offruht ꝥ offearet; [669]
 for al ꝥ ewarterne, of his cume
 672 leitede o leie.
 Ah ꝥ engel elnede hire
 ꝥ sweteliche seide,
 “ Ne beo ꝥu nawiht ofdred,
 676 drihtines dohter;
 hald hardiliche
 on ꝥ tu hauest bigunnen :
 for ꝥi leofmon ꝥ ti lauerd,
 680 for hwas deorewurðe nome
 ꝥu undernome ꝥis strif, [680]
 is mit te eauerihwer,
 i stude ꝥ i stalle,
 684 ꝥe wel wule witen ꝥe.
 He bihat te ꝥ he wule
 i ꝥi muð healden
 flowinde wettres
 688 of wittie wordes,

664 R aa, ecnesse amen. 666 R writes: ꝥ ter ne com an engel. 667 C lihtende. 668 C fram, heuene. 669 C was. 670 R offruh, C offeared, B offert. 672 R leitede al o. 675 B ofdret. 677 B halt, R herdeliche. 678 C B o, C haues. 679 R leouemon, C lefmon, B lauert. 680 B omits deorewurðe. 681 C underneome. 682 C B wið ꝥe. 683 B ant. 684 C ꝥ, wile, R wel wule transposed, C B wite. 685 C wile. 687 C wattres, B weattres. 688 C witti.

¹ deo grata transposed.

world of all worlds eternally.” She had but spoken, when an angel came descending, with such light, from heaven, that she was somewhat affrighted and afraid; for all the prison, by his coming, was illuminated with flame. But the angel comforted her and sweetly said, “Be not thou aught afraid, daughter of the Lord; keep steadfastly to that thou hast begun: for thy beloved and thy Lord, for whose precious name thou hast undertaken this strife, is with thee everywhere, in (every) place and post, who will well guard thee. He promises thee that he will pour into thy mouth flowing streams of prudent words, that shall

non prevalebunt resistere adversarii. sed¹ novo stuporis genere confusi convertentur ad christum. et hii cum palma martyrii intra vite januam recepti. multos ad fidem christi² suo roborabunt exemplo; Tu autem brevi tempore cursum certaminis tui victoriosa morte consummabis. et sic inter choros virgineos suscepta immortali sponso perhenniter adherebis; Ego sum michael archangelus testamenti. dei. missus a deo hec tibi evangelizare; His dictis. con-

þe schulen þe flit of þine fan
 swiftliche afellen; [689]
 ⁊ swuch wunder ham schal
 692 þunchen of þi wisdom,
 þ̃ ha wulleð alle
 wenden to Criste,
 ⁊ cumen, þurh martirdom,
 696 to drihtin in heouene.
 Monie schulen turnen
 to treowe bileaue
 þurh hare forbisne;
 700 ⁊ tu schalt sone etsterten
 al þe strengðe of þis strif [700]
 þurh a stalewurðe deð,
 ⁊ beon þenne underfon
 704 i þe feire ferreden
 ⁊ i þe murie of meidnes,
 ⁊ libben liues ende
 wið Iesu Crist þi lauerd
 708 þi leofmon, in heouene.
 Ich hit am Michaël, [710]
 godes heh engel,
 ⁊ of heouene isend
 712 for to seggen þe þus;”
 ⁊ mid tet ilke step up,

689 C þ̃ for first þe, R þ̃ for second þe, B schule. 690 B swiftliche auellen, R afallen.
 693 C willeð. 694 R iwenden, B wende. 695 R ant, C B cume. 696 C drihten,
 heuene. 697 B schule. 698 B treow. 700 C atstirten. 701 R strengðe, B deð *expunged*
after strengðe. 702 B stalewurðe, C deað. 703 C B beo, R B underuon. 704
 B uerredene. 705 R meidenes, B meiddnes. 706 R ant, C libbe, B liuesi (*sic*). 707 C ti.
 708 C ⁊ ti, R leouemon, C lefmon, heuene. 709 R micael, C Mihel. 711 R ant, C heuene,
 B isent. 712 B te for to, C segge, R þis for þus. 713 C þ̃, R steh.

¹ inserts *etiam*.

² omits *christi*.

quickly overthrow the arguments of thy foes; and such wonder shall thy wisdom seem to them, that they will all turn to Christ, and come, through martyrdom, to the Lord in heaven. Many shall turn to true faith through their example; and thou shalt soon escape all the severity of this strife, by a death endured with constancy, and shalt be then received into the fair and joyful fellowship of maidens, and live eternally with Jesus Christ thy Lord and thy beloved, in heaven. I am called Michael, God's Archangel, and sent from heaven to tell thee thus," and with that he went up and ascended to the stars. This maiden,

tinuo discessit ab ea; Ad hanc
vocem virgo dei in agonia robo-
rata. exspectat quam mox vocetur¹
ad laborem certaminis.

[S]edens itaque pro tribunali
imperator memoratos oratores
adesse jubet. puellam itidem ad
pretorium jubens adduci; Illa tri-
umphale crucis signum sibi inpri-
mens. inperterrita vadit ad pa-
latium;

Fit ex omni civitate concursus.
ad audiendas controversias dispu-
tantium; Stant ex adverso ora-
tores pomposo² eloquentie fastu-
tumentes: stat et puella³ fidens

ƿ steah to þe steorren.
þeos meiden þ̅ ich munne,
716 stod, þurh þeos steuene
starcliche istrenget;
ƿ abad baldeliche
aƿet me come ƿ fatte hire [720]
720 to fliten wið þe fifti.
Maxence, ine marhen,
set in kinesecotle;
ƿ bed bringen biforen him
724 þeos modi moteres,
ƿ te meiden wið ham.
Heo wið Cristes cros
cruchede hire oueral.
728 ƿ com baldeliche biforen
þes feondes an foster, [730]
ƿ aƿein þes fifti,
alle ferliche freken.
732 Comen alle strikinde,
þe strengest te swiðest
of eauer euch strete,
for to heren þis strif.
736 Stoden on an half
þeos meistres so monie,
ƿ unimete modi;

714 R *omits* ƿ steah. 715 C þis, B munie. 716 B stot, C þis, R stefne, B steauene.
717 B sterliche, C istrengðet. 718 RB ant. 719 C til þ̅ men, CB com, R ant.
721 C in þe for ine. 722 C Bi. 723 R bed bringen *transposed*, R B biuoren. 724
B þes, C modie. 725 R ant, C mid. 728 R baldeliche forð biuoren, B biuoren. 729
C þeos. 730 C aƿain, R þeos. 731 R feorliche, freoken, C frechen. 733 R *omits* þe,
C *writes* þe strengeste swiðest. 734 C ewch. 735 B te for to, CB here. 737 C þes,
maistres. 738 B ant, unimeð, C unimete.

¹ L *invitetur*, C originally *vivetur*. ² *pompose*. ³ C originally *puellam*?

whom I speak of, stood, by this voice mightily strengthened; and waited with fortitude till they came and fetched her to dispute with the fifty. Maxence, on the morrow, sat on his royal throne, and bade bring before him those proud rhetoricians, and the maiden with them. She with Christ's cross crossed herself all over, and came boldly before this foster-child of the devil, and against the fifty, all formidable antagonists. All came eagerly hastening, the strongest the speediest, out of every street, to hear this strife. On one side stood the masters, so many and so exceedingly proud; this maiden on the other side. They all beheld

in domino; Illi torvo vultu in-
becillam¹ etatem contuebantur.
ista corde tacito auxilium de celo
postulabat;

Stomachatur² tyrannus. quod diem
ingrato consumunt silentio;
Cui puella;

Tuinquit imperator pugnam istam
haud equo iudicio preordinasti.
contra unam puellulam³ (fol. 176b)
quingenta oratores opponens.
quos etiam regiis muneribus in
premium victorie donandos⁴ pro-
mittis. me autem donativum nul-
lum expectare iubes;

Ego vero hujus quodcumque fuerit
certaminis premio diu fraudari

þeos meiden on oðer half. [740]
740 Heo biheolden hire
hokerliche alle;
ʒ heo stod hercnende,
ʒ biheold efter help
744 up toward heouene.
þe king bigon to wreððen,
þ̅ te dei eode awei,
ʒ heo ne duden nawiht;
748 ʒ te eadie Katerine
bigon for to seggen: [750]
“þu,” quoð ha, “keiser,
nauest nawt þis strif
752 rihtwisliche idealet,
þ̅ dest fifti meistres
to motin wið a meiden;
ʒ hauest ham bihaten,
756 ʒef ha mahen on me
þe herre hond habben,
kinewurðe meden;
ʒ me, nawiht under al, [760]
760 þe moti, a meiden,
aȝeines ham alle.
Ah ne drede ich nawiht
þ̅ mi lauerd nule wel

739 C þis. 740 C bihielden. 742 B ant, omits heo; stot, hercnede, R hercnede (c inserted from above). 743 B ant, biheolt, C after. 744 B toward, C heuene. 745 C wraððen. 746 C awai. 747 C diden. 748 B þe, R edie. 749 B te, C segge. 750 C ʒ for quoð, R heo. 751 R writes þu nauest nawt rihtwisliche (þu in a smaller apparently later hand). 752 R writes þis strif idealet, C idealet. 753 B þu for þ̅. 754 C moten, B moti. 755 R ant. 756 C ʒif. 757 B hont. 760 C þ̅. 761 C aȝain. 762 R ich me nawiht. 763 R for for þ̅, B lauert, R wule.

¹ imbecillum.

² C originally Stomachantur.

³ puellam.

⁴ inserts esse.

her contemptuously; and she stood listening, and looked for help up toward heaven. The king began to wax wroth, that the day was passing away, and they did nothing; and the blessed Katherine began to say: “Thou hast not, O emperor,” quoth she, “fairly arranged this contest, who makest fifty masters to dispute with one maiden; and hast promised them, if they be able to have the higher hand of me, royal rewards; and to me, nothing whatever, who, a maiden, dispute against them all. But I fear not that my Lord, for

non timeo. erit ipse mihi premium
 in cuius nomine pugnatura¹ cam-
 pum istum aggredior. christus
 dominus qui est spes et corona
 certantium; Vnum a te quero
 quod mihi negare jure non potes.
 ut si mihi sors victoriam contu-
 lerit. deum meum vel tunc credu-
 lus adorare ne differas; Indignatus
 ad hec tyrannus. non est inquit
 tuum nobis condicionem imponere.
 de credulitate mea cura te nulla
 sollicitet; Tu age quod agis. nobis
 instat videre an deus tuus vic-
 toriam tibi annuerit;

764 ȝelden me mi hwile,
 for hwas nome ich underneome
 to fehten o þis wise.
 Ah ȝette me an hwet,
 768 þ̅ tu ne maht nawt
 wearnen mid rihte: [770]
 ȝef me is ileuet,
 þurh mi leoue lauerd,
 772 for to leggen ham adun,
 þ̅ tu þin misbileaue
 lete þenne, lanhure,
 ȝ̅ lihte to ure."
 776 "Nai," quoð he, hetterliche,
 as him þ̅ hoker þuhte,
 "ne lið hit nawt to þe
 to leggen lahe upon me. [780]
 780 Of mine bileaue,
 beo ha duhti oðer dusi,
 naue þu nawt to donne.
 Do nu þ̅ tu schalt don;
 784 ȝ̅ we schulen lustnin
 hu þi lauerd ȝ̅ ti leof,
 þ̅ al þin bileaue is upon,
 wule werien to dei

764 C B ȝelde. 765 R underuo. 766 R for to fehtin, C fihten, R þisse. 767 C hwat.
 769 R wernin, C B wearne wið. 770 C ȝif, leued, R ilenet. 771 C leue, B lauert.
 772 B te. 773 C B þi. 774 R omits þenne lanhure. 776 R B qð, C q, heterliche,
 R hatterliche. 777 C þe for him. 778 C omits hit. 779 B legge, R uppon, C B upo.
 780 C omits mine. 783 B þet, R tu inserted from above. 784 R B ant, C B schule.
 785 R ant, C lef. 786 R þe for þ̅, C B þi, C leaue, R uppon. 787 C B werie, R werien
 þe to, C dai. 788 R of þine.

¹ C originally *pugnatu*.

whose name I undertake to fight in this wise, will not well reward me (for) my trouble (time). But grant me one thing, which thou mayest not refuse with justice; if it is permitted to me, through my dear Lord, to set them down, that thou wilt then, at least, forsake thy unbelief and descend to ours (=our faith)." "Nay," quoth he, angrily, as if (or because) he thought himself insulted, "it lieth not with thee to dictate laws to me. In regard of my faith: be it sound, or foolish, thou hast nothing to do therewith. Do now that which thou hast to do, and we shall listen how thy Lord and thy beloved, in whom is all thy belief,

[S]ic puella	788 þine leasunges.” þis meiden, mid tet ilke, [790] lokedo on oðer half, ƿ lette him iwurðen;
ad oratores conversa dicit;	792 ƿ toc on toward þeos fif siðe tene to talien o þis wise.
Postquam premiis incitati ad dis-	“Nu ȝe alles to strif
putandum convenistis seniores. et	796 beoð isturet hidere, for to beon mid gold ƿ gersum igrette; ƿ se feole cuðe men [800]
hic confluentem turbam ad audi-	800 ba ƿ uteumene copnið ƿ kepeð hwuch ure is kempes to ouereumen oðer;
endum spectare videtis: turpe est	804 lure ow is to leosen ower swinkes lan, þe leoteð se lutel of, ƿ sparieð ower speche;
professionis vestre nomen et coro-	808 ƿ schome ow is to schuderin lengre under schelde, [810] ƿ schunien þ ȝe schulen to. Scheoteð forð sum word,
nam tacendo omittere;	812 ƿ let us onswerien,

788 R of þine. 789 R mit, C þ. 792 R B ant, C tok, B toward. 793 C þa for þeos, B þes. 794 R taelin, C þise. 796 C beon, istured, R omits hidere. 797 B te, C beo, C B wið, R gold added in margin. 798 R an for ƿ, C ȝersum. 799 R so. 800 R ant, uncuðe for uteumene. 801 R copneð. 802 R ur. 806 C þ, R so, B lihtliche for lutel. 807 C omits ƿ, B sparieð, C owre. 808 R scheome, C schuderen. 810 R ant, B ge, schule, R schlen (sic). 812 B onswerien.

will defend to-day thy leasings.” This maiden, upon this, looked on the other side, and left him to himself, and began to speak to those five times ten in this wise: “Now ye are entirely come hither to this contest, in order to be greeted with gold and treasure; and so many men, both natives and foreigners, wait and are anxious (to see) which of us is the combatant that is to overcome the other; it were harm to you to lose the wages of your toil, of which (the wages) you (seem to) think so lightly, since you spare your speech; and shame is it for you to shrink longer under shield, and shun that you should go to. Shoot forth some word and let us answer him who is considered (to be) the greatest champion and

Si quis est in vobis¹ attica² elo-
quentia peditus. aut latina ora-
tione inbutus: proferat in medium
quod animo concepit;

Hic³ unus qui⁴ natu prior. et re-
thorum peritissimus videbatur re-
spondit; Te potius audire primum
debemus. cujus causa labo-(fol.
177a)-riosum iter aggredi con-
puli sumus.

Ego vero inquit puella postquam

deposito gentilitatis errore christi

sacramentis incitata⁵ sum. ro-

bustas et fuco verborum plenas

þe meast kempe is icud
ʒ kenest of ow alle of þe creft,
þ he, þ is nomecuðest
816 ʒ meast con, cume cuðe þrof,
ʒ þ he haueð in heorte;
(nu we schulen talien take [820]
ut of his tunge)

820 ʒ teueli wið me."

"Nai," quoð þe cuddeste

an of ham alle,

"ah nu we beoð of se feor

824 for þe iflut hidere,

þu schalt setten sikel forð,

ʒ seggen earst hwet tu wult,

ʒ we schulen seoððen."

828 "Ich," quoð þe meiden, [830]

"sone se ich awei warp

ower witlese lei,

ʒ leornede ʒ luuede

832 þe liffulle leaue

of hali chirche,

þe ich ichosen hadde,

ich aweorp wið alle

836 þe glistinde wordes

þ beoð in ower bokes

813 C þ, cud, R icudd. 814 R ant. 815 C writes þeo þ nomecuðest is, R B omit
second þ, B nomecudest. 816 R mest, omits cume. 817 B þet, R B omit he. 818 R neu
(e expunged), B schullen, tallien. 819 B on for of. 820 R tauale. 821 R B C qð,
C cuðest, B cuddest. 822 C omits an. 823 B omits nu, R so, for. 824 R ifluth for
þe, C hider. 825 C B sette. 826 R ant, earest, C hwat. 827 C B seoðen. 828 C q.
829 R so, C awai, B weorp. 830 R ley. 831 R B ant. 832 R lifful, lare for leaue.
834 C þ, i for ich, cheosen. 835 R al. 836 B glistinde. 837 C beon, owre.

¹ inserts aut. ² L atica, C originally the same. ³ Hinc. ⁴ inserts et. ⁵ initiata.

the most intrepid of all you of the crafts, that he who is most renowned and knows most, may give proof thereof, and of what he has in his heart; (now we shall take babbling out of his tongue) and argue with me." "Nay," quoth the most renowned of them all, "since now we have journeyed so far hither for thee, thou shalt put sickle forth, and say first what thou wilt, and then we shall." "I," quoth the maiden, "as soon as I had thrown away your senseless religion, and learned and loved the life-giving belief of holy Church, which I have chosen, I cast away entirely the glittering words that are in your books (which

dictiones. quibus vos fultos ad	(þe beoð wiðuten godleic [840] t empti wiðinnen)
instantem pugnam video occurrere.	840 þ 3e beoð mit toswollen, nawt wið wit ah wið wind of ane wlonke wordes, þ þuncheð se greate,
has inquam dictiones penitus ab-	844 t beoð godlese þah t bare of euch blisse, þah 3e blissen ow þrof. Low! þullich is al
jeci.	848 þ 3e þencheð to dei [850] for to weorin me wið:
philosophicas ¹ homeri disserciones	Homeres motes, t Aristotles turnes;
et aristotelis circumplectentes	852 Esculapius creftes, t Galienes grapes; Philistiones flites, t Platunes bokes;
sillogismos. esculapii quoque et	856 t alle þeos writeres writes þ 3e wreoðieð ow on. þah ich beo in alle [860] of se earliche ilearet,
galieni sagacissimas latentium	860 þ ich ne font nawt feole neauer min euening,
rerum inventiones. sed et philis-	
tionis cum platone ceterorumque	
famosa auctorum volumina repro-	
bavi. et quamvis his omnibus adeo	
inbuta adeo informata sim. ut nul-	
lum in his mihi secundum repe-	

838 C þ, beon, wiðute, B godlec. 840 C beon, CB wið. 841 B nawit, wint. 842 R wordes (*s added from above*). 843 B þe, R so. 844 R ant, C beð. 845 R ant, B beare. 846 R blissin. 847 B lo. 848 C þenchen, R weorin for dei, C dai. 849 C weorre, B weorri, R *writes* me wið todei. 850 B Homers, R motes (*s added from above*). 851 R ant. C Aristotles, B aristocles. 852 R esculapeies. 853 R gallienes, C 3alienes. 854 R phistiliones, B filistiones. 855 R ant. 856 R ant, B al, þes, C þis, B writers. 857 B wreoðien, *omits* ow, R uppon for on. 858 B *omits* ich beo. 859 R so, B ilearet (*t written over d*). 860 C fond, fele. 861 C mine.

¹ C originally *philosophias*.

are empty within and void of goodness), wherewith ye are inflated (not with wisdom but with the wind of nothing but pompous words), that seem to you so great, and are worthless though, and bare of any joy, though ye rejoice in them. Lo! such is all that ye think to-day to strive against me with: Homer's reasonings, and Aristotle's tricks; Esculapius's crafts, and Galen's grips (=art); Philistio's argumentations, and Plato's books; and all these writers' writings that ye lean upon. Though I am instructed in all these from such (an) early (age), that I never found many equal to me, yet, because they are full of vain-glory,

rerim. tamen quia vana sunt	þah, for þi þ ha beoð
omnia et a vera beatitudine aliena.	ful of idel ȝelp,
864 hec ista penitus abrogans. iudico	ƿ empti of þ eadi
	ƿ lifful lare,
me inter vos nichil aliud scire nisi	al ich forsake her,
	ƿ cweðe ham al sker up ;
868 hunc qui est vera scientia et cre-	ƿ segge þ ich ne con [870]
	ne ne enawe na creft
dentium beatitudo sempiterna. do-	buten of an,
	þ is soð wit ƿ wisdom
872 minum meum Iesum christum.	ƿ heore eche heale
	þ him riht leueð ;
	þ is Iesu Crist,
	mi lauerd ƿ mi leofmon,
876 qui dixit ¹ per prophetam.	þe seide, as ich seide ear,
	ƿ ȝet wule seggen,
	‘Ichulle fordon þe wisdom [880]
Perdam sapientiam sapientium. et	of þeos wise world men,
880 intellectum intelligentium repro-	ƿ awarpen þe wit
	of þeose world witti.’
babo. Hinc (!) ² est qui in preteritis	þes alre schafte schuppent,
	schawde ure eareste aldren,
884 generationibus viam et disciplinam	Adam ƿ Eue,
justitie preceptis salutaribus pre-	þe wit ƿ te wei of lif,
monstravit.	þurh his halwunde heast ;

862 R ah for þah. 864 R ant, R B hali for eadi. 865 R ant, B omits ƿ, R lifful. 866 B forsake ham her. 867 R cweoðe, B omits ham, C alle, B scher. 868 R ant, C i. 870 C B bute, R omits of. 871 R ant. 872 C heore of eche. 875 R leouemon, C lefmon, B lauert. 876 C þ, R omits þe seide; seide ear transposed. 877 C wile, R seggen Perdam . . . intellectum etc, C seggen perdam sapi. saþ ƿ intel’, B Perdam . . . intel—*After this three leavis are wanting.* 878 C wisdom. 879 C þeose, omits wise. 880 R warpen, C awarpe. 881 R þeos, C wittie. 882 R þe, C schuppent. 883 C earste, ealdren. 884 R ant. 886 C omits his; halewende, hest, B heaste.

¹ *dicat.*

² *Hic.*

and void of that blessed and life-giving doctrine, I now utterly forsake them, and give them all clean up, and say that I neither comprehend nor know any power but of one alone, who is the true understanding and wisdom and the eternal salvation to those that rightly believe in him, that is, Jesus Christ, my Lord and my beloved, who said, as I said before, and still will say, ‘I shall destroy the wisdom of these wise worldlings, and reject the understanding of the prudent of this world.’ This maker of all creatures showed our first parents, Adam and Eve, the understanding and the way of life, by his hallowing command ;

per que cultores suos ad immortalis	888	ƿe hefe ham bihaten
vite premia incitavit. Qui genus		ƿef ha ham wel heolden, [890]
humanum per diabolum a para-		heoueneliche meden.
disi deliciis dolens exclusum.	892	Ah ƿe wrenchfule feont,
		ƿurh onden, wið his wiles
		weorp ham ut sone
		of paraides selhðen
		into ƿis liflese lif ;
		ƿ al ƿ lihte of ham twa
	896	schulde forleosen,
		ƿef ƿ godes godlec
		nere ƿe mare, [900]
		ƿe swa mucche luuede us
his novissimis temporibus cum esset	900	ƿah he luðere ahte,
		ƿ he lihte nu late,
		of heouenliche leomen ;
		ƿ for ƿi ƿ he is,
invisibilis deus de virgine carnem	904	to ure sihðe unsehelich
		in his ahne cunde,
		com ƿ creap in ure,
assumpsit. per quam visibilis appa-		for to beon isehen ƿrin,
	908	ƿ nom blod ƿ ban [910]
		of a meidenes bodi.
		ƿus he schrudde ƿ hudde him,
reret. et presentiam suam nobis		alre ƿinge schuppent,
	912	mid ure fleschliche schrud,

887 R writes ant ƿette ham. 888 C ƿif, R heo, C helden. 889 C heuenliche. 890 C feond. 891 C onde, omits his, R wiltes (t doubtful; hole in MS.). 892 C wearp. 893 C paraise, selhðe. 894 C liflease. 895 C And. 896 R uorleosen. 897 C ƿif, godleic, R goddlec. 899 C ƿ, se. 900 C ƿe for he, omits ahte. 901 C omits ƿ he; leate. 902 C heuenliche, limen. 903 R ant. 907 C ische. 908 C nam. 909 C omits a. 911 C schuppent. 912 C wið.

and had promised them, if they conducted themselves well, celestial reward. But the crafty fiend, through envy, with his wiles cast them soon out of the joys of Paradise into this lifeless life; and all who descended of those two would perish, if that God's goodness were not the greater, who so much loved us, although he little (?) ought, that he descended, now in these latter days, from the heavenly light, and because he is, to our sight, invisible in his own nature, came and crept into ours, that he might be seen therein, and took blood and bone of a maiden's body. Thus did he, the maker of all things, shroud and hide

exibuit.

ƿ schawde us his nebscheft,
ƿ weole, hwil his wil wes,
bimong worldliche men ;

916 ƿ ȝa he hefde arudd us
of feondes raketehen,
wende up, as he walde, [920]
to-wunien ȝer he wuneð aa

920 wiðuten wonunge.

ex qua et mirabilibus operum

Swa ȝ we witen wel
ȝurh wundres ȝ he wrahte,
ȝ na mon ne mahte,

signis. et nature passibilis experi-

924 ȝ he is soð godd ;
ƿ eft, ȝurh ȝ he ȝrowede,
ƿ ȝolede deð on rode,
as dedlich mon,

mentis nobis quia deus et homo

928 ȝ he is ec soð mon :
of his feader soð godd, [930]
ƿ of his moder soð mon
in anhad ba somet ;

esset verus apparuit.

932 soð godd ƿ soð mon,
weldinde ƿ wissinde
allȝ worldliche ȝing,
etter his wille.

Hic est dominus noster. hic est

936 ȝes is mi lauerd
ȝ ich on leue,

913 C scheaunde, nebschaft. 914 R ant, C welc, wille, R wes (s added from above), C was.
916 C ta, arud. 917 C writes of ȝe feondes rake. 918 C he wende. 919 R to omitted,
C ai. 920 C wiðute wanunge. 921 C wite. 922 C ȝat. 923 C mihte. 925 R ant.
926 C deað, o. 927 C deadliche. 928 R ȝat. 929 C fader. 930 R ant, C omits ƿ.
931 C somen. 932 R ant, C writes soð mon ƿ soð godd. 933 C wealdinde, R ant.
935 C after. 936 C ȝis ; te for mi. 937 C omits ich.

himself with our fleshly clothing, and showed us his countenance, and walked, while it was his will, among worldly men ; and when he had rid us of the fiend's chains, he went up, as he designed, to dwell where he ever dwelleth without waning. So that we know well by the miracles which he wrought, which no man could work, that he is true God ; and then (secondly, furthermore), in that he suffered and endured death upon the cross, as a mortal man, that he is also true man : of his Father true God, of his mother true man, in unity both together ; true god and true man, ruling and guarding all worldly things, according to his will. This is my Lord in whom I believe, this is all the learning that I now

philosophia mea. hic victoria mea.	þes is al þe lare þ ich nu leorni: [940]
In hujus nomine si qua ingruunt	940 þes is þe, i þis strif, schal strengen me aþein ow. In his hali nome ich schal leten lihtliche
cuncta adversantia superabo: cui	944 of al þ þe cunnen kasten aþein me, ne beo þe se monie.
facile est in paucis et in multis	For nis him no derure 948 for to adweschen feole þen fewe, [950]
salvos facere credentes.	biforen þeo þ him riht leueð t luueð."

Nec dum verba virgo sancta compleverat. cum unus furiali (fol. 177b) spiritu in risum excicatus (*sic*).¹ totam regiam blasphema voce replevit dicens. O cives. o romani imperii alta nobilitas: usque quo hec stulta christianorum supersticio injurias diis nostris irrogabit? Nimirum ingrati deorum beneficiis utimur. si frivola puelle hujus deliramenta impunita pretereant. Et nos sane ab ea sperabamus² insigne aliquid audire. postquam tanti estimata est pro qua romane arcis patricius sapientes mundi sibi accersiri voluit. et ecce principium orationis sue fecit de quodam iesu quem christianorum fabule deum suum esse testantur: qui quondam a discipulo suo traditus et morti adjudicatus³ in ipso mortis periculo sibi adesse non⁴ potuit. Hunc discipuli sui nocturna fraude sublatum. mentiti sunt post triduanam sepulturam triumphata morte surrexisse: et ad cumulum figmentorum

938 C þis. 940 C þis; þ for þe. 941 C strengðe, aþain. 942 C i for ich. 943 C leote, R lihtlich. 945 C aþain. 946 R so. 947 C na. 948 C adweschen adun. 949 C fele, feawe. 950 C bifore, R writes biuoren þ him luueð. 951 R writes riht ant leueð.

¹ *excitatus*.

² *sperabamus ab ea*.

³ C originally *adjudicatur*, L inserts *nec*.

⁴ C *non* added on margin, L omits *non*.

learn; this is that which, in this strife, shall strengthen me against you. In his holy name I shall esteem lightly all that ye can object against me, how many soever ye be; for it is no more difficult for him to throw down many than few, before those who truly believe and

suorum in celum ascendisse testificati sunt. Ad hec virgo respondit.¹ Ego principium orationis mee jure ab ipso cepi qui est rerum omnium principium. fons et origo bonorum. Per quem deus pater hanc inexplicabilem mundi formam cum non esset condidit. qui sane omnia et me et te inter omnia:² per quem omnia in quo omnia³ visibilia et invisibilia constant.

Cui rethor. Si deus inquit ut as-
seris aut dei filius erat. mori⁴
quomodo potuit?

Si homo. mortem superare quo-
modo prevaluit? Hoc plane contra
totius mundi rationem et legem
nature esse constat. ut immortalis
mori possit:

et legem mortis vincere queat
mortalis. Cum utique et si aliquo
modo concedatur:

ut deus aut homo debeat predi-

952 An, for ham alle,
onswerede t seide,
“ ʒef he wes, as þu seist,
soð godd t godes sune,
956 hu mahte he as mon
derfliche deien ?
ʒef he wes soð mon, [959]
hu mahte he deað ouercumen ?
960 Alle wise witen wel
þ hit is aʒein riht,
t aʒein leaue
of euch cundelich lahe,
964 þ godd, þe is undedlich
mahe deð drehen,
t deadlich mon mahe
deð ouercumen :
968 t þah hit mahte nu beon
þ he ba were, [970]
soð godd t soð mon
efter þ tu munnest,

954 C ʒif, R wes (s added from above), C was, tu. 956 C mihte. 957 C deaðlich.
958 C ʒif, was, omits soð. 959 C mihte. 961 C aʒein. 964 C þ, undeadlich.
965 C deað. 967 C deað. 968 R ant, C And, tah, mihte, beo. 969 C baðe.
971 C after.

¹ *Beata Katerina dixit for Ad. h. v. resp.* ² *creavit et ut multa paucis includam ipse est ex quo omnia inserted.* ³ *omits in quo omnia.* ⁴ *inserts etiam.*

love him." One, for them all, answered and said, "If he were, as thou sayest, true God and the son of God, how might he as a man miserably die? If he were true man, how might he overcome death? All wise men know well that it is against right, and against the permission of every natural law, that God, who is immortal, may undergo death; and that a mortal man may overcome death: and even though it might be that he were both, true God

- cari. certum sit alterutrum fieri posse: simul utrumque esse non posse.
Cui virgo respondit.
Vestre autem video controversie,
hec est subtilitas. ut in eo.
quod credere non vultis recepta parte una: quod integrum est subruatis. videlicet ut cum deus sit: homo esse non possit tanquam omnipotenti deo hoc impossibile esse constet. ut qui potenter . . .
it omnia facere¹ de nichilo:² idem deus
- 972 an he mahte inoh raðe
don of þeos twa þing;
ba somet, nanes weis."
Heo ne sohte nawiht,
976 ah seide ananriht aþein:
" þis is nu þe derfshippe
of þi dusi onsware,
ʒ te deopnesse, [980]
980 þ tu of þ þing
þ te misþuncheð,
underfest þe an half
ʒ dustest adun þe oðere:
984 þe godcundnesse of godd,
for mennesses of his monhad;
as þah þe almihti
ne mahte nawt þeos twa
988 misliche cundes
gederin togederes. [990]
þe! ne makede he mon
of lam to his ilicnesse?
992 Hwi schulde he forhohien
to wurðen to þ þing
þ is iwend upon him?
ʒ hwen he hit mahte don
996 buten ewt to leosen

972 C mihte. 973 R omits don, C þes, þinges. 974 C Ah ba, somen. 976 C ananriht again transposed. 978 C dusie, onswere. 979 C deopnesse. 982 R underuest, C underfes, þ 983 R dudest, C dustes, þ, oðer. 984 R goddnesse, C godecundnesse (second d inserted from above by another hand). 985 C mannesse, R omits his, C manhad. 987 C mihte, 989 C gederen. 990 C omits ne. 991 R is for his. 993 C wurðe. 994 C iwent, R uppon. 995 C And.

¹ C . . . it omnia facere added on margin, in L these words are omitted. ² L here inserts the words omnia et hominem creavit de nihilo.

and true man according to thy words, one of these two things he might readily enough do; but both together by no means." She deliberated not, but replied immediately: "This is now the strength of thy foolish answer, and its depth, that thou of a thing that to thee mis-seemeth, admittest one part and rejectest the other,—the divine nature of God, for the humanity of his manhood; as though the Almighty might not join together these two distinct natures. Yea! made he not man of clay after his likeness? Why should he disdain to become that thing which is formed after him? And when he might do it without losing aught of majesty,

	of his hehnesse, hwi were him erueð to don (þe þ alle þing mei, [1000]
substantivam hominis formam (fol. 178a) induere non possed	1000 t wule al þ god is) to neomen monnes cunde, t beon isehen soð mon, godd þah unsehlich
per quam invisibilis ¹ videri et in- passibilis mori potuisset.	1004 in his ahne cunde; t þolien, as soð mon, deð hwen him þuhte? Ah þef þu wult siker beon
Tu vero si rei veritatem scire pre- optas. depone false sapientie super- cilium: et assume formam disci- puli. ut cum ex rebus inenarra- bilem dei potentiam agnoveris:	1008 þ soð beo þ ich segge, leaf þi lease wit þ tu wlenchest te in, [1010] t liht to ure lare, 1012 þ tu mahe stihen to understonden in him godes muchele strenðe t nan monnes mihte
vel tunc credulus non deroges in	1016 þurh his wundri werkes t wurðful in eorðe. For nultu nawt tenne þ tu schuldest heien 1020 heanin na mare: [1020] þ is, i soð godd

997 C omits his. 998 R h (*expunged*) for him; omits to, C were hit him, earfð. 1000 C wile. 1001 C neome. 1002 C beo, isehe. 1003 C unsehlich. 1005 R omits soð. 1006 C deað; þen for hwen. 1007 R ant for ah, C jif, wilt. 1008 R seoð, C i. 1010 C wlenches. 1011 R ant, C thliht (*first t expunged*). 1014 C strengðe. 1015 R ant, C na. 1016 C hise. 1017 C wurðfule. 1018 C nawt penne *transposed*. 1019 C schuldes. 1020 C heane, R *writes* heanin ne hatien na mare. 1021 C in.

¹ *visibilis*.

why should it be difficult for him to do (who can do all things, and wills all that is good), viz. to assume man's nature, and be visible as very man, though God invisible in his own nature; and suffer death as very man, when it seemed good to him? But if thou wouldst be certain that what I say is true, forsake thy false wisdom in which thou boastest, and condescend to receive our learning, that thou mayest mount up to understand in him God's great power, and not man's might, by his marvellous and honourable works upon earth. For then thou wilt no more despise that which thou shouldest extol: that is, the weakness

eo hominis quam voluntarius as-	monnes unmihte ;
sumpsit infirmitatem.	þ he neodeles nom
	1024 upon him seoluen,
	us for to saluin,
	ʒ makien us stronge
	þurh his unstrencþe ?
	1028 His unstrencþe ich cleopie,
	þ he wes, as mon, cundeliche
	ofhungret ʒ weri, [1030]
	ʒ pinen mahte þolien.
Nam cum in re omni inestima-	1032 In euch þing of þe world
biles sint divitie dei maxime in	beoð sutel ʒ eðsene
	þe weolen of godes wisdom ;
	þah in þis an þing
honore sui nominis approbando	1036 he schawde, ʒ sutelede inoh,
	þ he wes soð godd,
	(þe leadeð euch leafful
provocandis ad fidem hominibus	to treowe bileaue,
	1040 ʒ his leoue nome [1040]
	to herien ʒ to heien)
majestas vera ostenditur ubi virtus	þa he wið his steuene
	þe storuene astearde,
imperiosa mortuis vitam refun-	1044 ʒ mid his word awahte
	þe lifese liches
	to lif ʒ to leomen.
dit : cecis lumen restituit. Hujus	þus ne dude neauer

1023 R þet, C noðeles. 1024 R uppon, C seluen. 1025 C sauuen. 1026 R maken. 1027 C unstrengþe. 1028 C unstrengþe, i, clepie. 1029 C was. 1031 C pine, mihte. 1033 C sutele. 1034 C þ, þolien for weolen. 1035 C i. 1036 C scheaude, R ant. 1037 R þat, C was. 1038 C þ, leafful mon. 1040 R ant. 1042 C þat for þa, R stefne. 1043 C arearde. 1044 C wið. 1046 R ant, C leome. 1047 C þis, dide.

of man in the true God ; which he voluntarily took upon himself, to save us, and make us firm by his infirmity ? His infirmity I call it, that he was, as man, in a natural manner hungry and weary, and was capable of enduring pain. In every thing of the world the benefits of God's wisdom are manifest and easily seen ; though in this one thing he showed, and made it manifest enough, that he was true God (who leadeth every faithful man to true belief, and to honour and exalt his dear name), that he with his voice raised up the dead, and with his word awoke the lifeless corpses to life and to light. Thus never did any mortal man

nimirum singulariter est admi-	1048	nan dedlich mon þurh his anes mihte, ʒef he godd nere. [1050] Oðre þurh wiheles
randa deitatis potentia. qui non	1052	ʔ þurh wiecheoreftes wurchið summe wundres, ʔ biʒulið unweoten, þe weneð ʔ hit beo swa
magicis ¹ carminibus	1056	as hit on ehe bereð ham. Ah wes, þurh ʔ he wes soð godd, in his cunde icuplet wið ure,
sed sola divina potentia	1060	arerde þe deade, [1060] botnede blinde, þe dumbe, ʔ te deaue, healde halte ʔ houeredede,
mortuorum spiritus revocat ad	1064	ʔ euch unheale, ʔ draf of þe awedde awariede wihtes; ʔ as alweldende,
corpora: cuius potenti virtute	1068	wrahte her, on worlde, al ʔ he walde; ʔ ʒef þu nult, nanes weis, witen ʔ he wrahte [1071]
claudis gressus redditur. leprosi	1072	þulliche wundres;
mundantur.		
Que si ab eo gesta non credis:		

1048 C na, deadlich. 1049 C ahne for anes. 1050 C ʒif. 1051 R oðer, C opre.
1052 R ant, C omits þurh. 1053 C wurches. 1054 R ant, C biʒuleð, unwiten, R
unweoten (*between o and t a letter erased*). 1055 C ʔ, R *between þe and weneð the syllable ne*
blotted out and expunged. 1060 C arearde. 1062 R ant, C 1061 and 1062 transposed.
1063 C healede, R ant, C houere. 1064 R ant. 1065 R ant, wedde. 1067 C alwealdent.
1068 C o. 1070 R ant, C And ʒif.

¹ non magicis transposed.

through his might alone, if he were not God. Others through wiles and witchcraft, perform some wonders, and beguile the unwise, who ween that is so as it seemeth to the eye. But it was, because he was true God, in his nature joined with ours, that he raised the dead, cured the blind, the dumb, and the deaf, healed the lame and the humpbacked, and every disease, and drove the accursed beings out of the insane; and, as supreme ruler wrought here, in this world, whatever he would. And if thou wilt not, by any means, acknowledge that he

fieri ab hominibus in nomine ejus
vel certe multociens facta
cognosce.

Qui si deus non esset :

mortuis vitam dare non posset.
Si homo non fuisset :¹ mori ut
homo non potuisset

lef, lanhure, þ tu isist,—
miracles þ beð maket þet
þurh him, ⁊ on his
1076 deorewurðe nome,
deies ⁊ nihtes.
Ah beo nu soð cnawes,
þef ich riht segge : [1080]
1080 þu seist he ne mihte nawt
godd ba beon ⁊ mon.
Ah þef he nere soð godd,
⁊ undeadlich him seolf,
1084 hu mahte he lenen
lif to þe deade ?
⁊ þef he nere soð mon,
hu mahte he drehen þ he droh,
1088 ⁊ deien se derfuliche ? [1090]

Nam idem christus deus est qui mortem suam (*sic*)¹ carne suscepit.

et idem christus homo est qui
mortem sua divinitate destruxit ;
Idem quippe² dei filius qui divini-

þurh þis suteleð soð
al þ ich segge,
⁊ tat he is godd seolf,
1092 þe duste deað under him,
þurh þ he is drihtin
meiful ⁊ almihti ;
⁊ þe ilke seolf is godes sune,
1096 þe onont þ he godd wes

1073 C sest. 1074 R his men *for* beð, C maked, R þette. 1075 R ant, *omits* on. 1077 C daies. 1079 C þif. 1081 C ba beo godd, R ant. 1082 C *between* Ah and þif *the syllable* nif *blotted out*. 1083 R ant, undealich, C self. 1084 C mihte, leanen. 1086 R ant, C And, þif. 1087 C mihte. 1088 R ant, so, C derfulliche. 1091 R ant, *omits* he, C þ *for* tat ; self. 1092 C þat. 1094 R ant. 1095 R ant seolf þe ilke, C And, self. 1096 C þ, R onnont, C was.

¹ *sua in.*

² *christus for quippe.*

wrought such miracles as these ; believe at least what thou seest,—miracles that are done yet through him, and in his precious name, daily and nightly. But be now candid ; acknowledge it if I say rightly. Thou sayest that he might not be both God and man. But if he were not very God, and immortal himself, how could he bestow life upon the dead ? And if he were not very man, how could he suffer what he did suffer, and die so painfully ? Through this all that I say is manifested to be true, and that he is very God, who cast death under him, by reason that he is the Lord powerful and almighty. And the very same is God's son, who,

tate mori non potuit. carne mortu-
us est quam mortalem deus in-
mortalis suscepit:'

et idem
christus
dei filius carne
mortuus
surrexit.
quia
inmortalitem
sue divinitatis:
carne
mortuus
non
amisit.

nemahte drehennadeſ; [1100]
t tah deide ah fleschliche.
For ba he underfeng ban
1100 t flesch of ure cunde
þ is bruchel t dedlich,
for to deien in hire;
for þi þ he wes
1104 undedlich in his ahne,
ne in hire ne mahte
nanes weis deien
buten in ure. [1110]
1108 þes soðe godd t godes sune,
þe deide onont ure
cunde þ he hefde,
aras, t arerde
1112 him seoluen from deaðe:
for þah he were dedlich,
þurh þ he mon wes,
onont his mennesse,
1116 t deide, as ich seide,
he ne losede na lif, [1120]
onont þ he godd wes,
ne undedlichnesse
1120 onont his drihtnesse;
ah wes eauer t is
drihtin undedlich.

1097 R mahte he drehen, C drehe, deað. 1098 C þah. 1099 R underueng. 1100 R on
for of. 1101 R ant, C deadlich. 1103 C was. 1104 C undeadlich. 1105 R mahte he. 1107
C wiðuten, omits in. 1108 C þe, R ant. 1109 C þ. 1111 R ant, C arearde. 1112
C self, fram. 1113 C deadlich. 1114 C was. 1115 C mannesse. 1116 R ant. 1118
C was. 1119 C undeadlichnesse. 1121 C was, R ant. 1122 C undeadlich.

inasmuch as he was God, might not suffer death, and yet died, but only in the flesh. For he assumed both bone and flesh of our nature, which is frail and mortal, that he might die therein; because he was immortal in his own (nature). nor might he in any wise die in it but only in ours. This true God, and God's son, who died as to our nature that he had, arose and raised himself from death; for though, inasmuch as he was man, he was mortal in regard to his human nature and died, as I said, he lost no life in regard that he was God, nor immortality in regard to his being Lord; but was ever, and is, the Lord immortal. Thus,

Mors itaque non christum sed in	pus ido dede,
se christus mortem occidit.	1124 deaŝ ne akaste nawt Crist, ah Crist ouercom deŝ, [1129] t sloh hire, in him seoluen."

Non est igitur tam¹ inops fidei nostre aut egena defensio. ut in² sui³ defensione externis tantum innitatur⁴ testimoniis. Tu autem si adhuc incredulus dubitas: audi immundos⁵ demoniorum spiritus⁶ quibus divinitatis numen attribuitis audi inquam sub hujus vocabuli invocatione conterritos christum dominum et dei filium non negare. ac⁷ velut reos cum tormenta seviunt questionum non quod placeat dicere sed quod extorquetur fateri. Igitur si fidei nostre credulitatem⁸ derogatis. diis saltem vestris credite: aut si ulterius (fol. 178b) pudor non est negent⁹ certe homines. quo¹⁰ demones etiam¹¹ confitentur.¹² Sed dicis michi. quia varia demonum commenta pro ratione et volubilem inmundorum¹³ spirituum sententiam pro fidei¹⁴ proponam experimento. Ego plane non ut christus spirituum inmundorum testimoniis indigeat hec intersero. sed quia invita demonum confessio non levi¹⁵ estimatione pensanda est quia nisi invisibilibus cruciatibus agerentur.¹⁶ Sed te miror formam tocius scientie preferentem christum deum esse non solum dubitare. sed mortis¹⁷ opprobrio majestatem¹⁸ ipsius derogando obscurare. cum tu ipse pernoscas vestrorum auctorum volumina testari ejus divinitatem. et crucem quam irrides¹⁹ proferre: ex quibus interim duorum tibi profero exempla. Plato enim²⁰ quem doctissimum ac sapientissimum perhibetis. cum de revelanda christi majestate loqueretur. his verbis etiam signum illius intimavit futurum astruens deum cujus signum circumdatum²¹ et deversatum²² est. Sibille perinde predivina ut asseritis carmina proprietatem sancti no-

1124 C acaste. 1125 C deaŝ. 1126 C seluen.

¹ omits *tam*. ² C *in* inserted from above. ³ *sui*. ⁴ C originally *innitatur*. ⁵ *immundicias* upon erasure. ⁶ omits *spiritus*. ⁷ *at*. ⁸ *credulitati*. ⁹ C originally *negit*. ¹⁰ *quod*. ¹¹ omits *etiam*. ¹² *faterentur*. ¹³ L *incertorum*, C originally *incunctorum*. ¹⁴ omits *pro fidei*. ¹⁵ C originally *le*. ¹⁶ inserts *libere utique pro se facilius dicerent quam semper contra se inentirentur*. ¹⁷ *mortem*. ¹⁸ *majestati*. ¹⁹ *irridetis*. ²⁰ omits *enim*. ²¹ *circumrotundatum*. ²² *decussatum*.

in reality, death overthrew not Christ, but Christ overthrew death, and slew him, in himself."

minis personarunt cum dignitate nature hec eadem deum postea uno versu crucemque signavit. quam vos erroneis disputationibus refutatis predictum poema ita ponens. felix ille deus ligno qui pendet ab alto. Vide disputantibus quidem verbis expressis¹ utriusque confessionem. Ille futurum designat quia manifestandum in homine designat. Hec felicem vocat. quia divinam previdet in hominis fragilitate virtutem et in ejusdem hominis morte victoriam. Quos tamen non iccirco sequi convenit. quia his velut per somnium veram sapientiam loqui aliquando permissum est. Neque ut gentilitas ex deo presentiam² meruisse videretur. sed ut christum deum ac dei filium etiam vestri loquerentur auctores. Qui cum pene in omnibus falsi sint in hoc probabilius erraverunt. Ecce tibi pauca de multis. Si te ad credendum non alliciunt audita et visu probata rerum miracula. vel invitam demonum (fol. 179a) animadvertite confessionem. Quod si nec his dignum consentire estimas. vel tuis crede auctoribus. Nam ne in hoc me prejudicare habes quod immundorum spirituum quos vos pro diis colitis. aut vestrorum testimoniis auctorum utimur pro approbatione fidei christiane. Poteram equidem tibi ex scriptura sacra que spiritu divinitatis est condita. poteram inquam tibi intemerata testimoniorum³ mille proferre signacula. sed est speciosa⁴ victoria adversarium telis suis velut propriis laqueis irretire.⁵ et auctorum suorum testimoniis confutare. quia quorum fidem aspnaris (!).⁶ eorum testimonia non recipis. Ecce me Christi fide munitam dii tui loquentem si aures habent ad audiendum audiant. et si possunt prohibeant. aut tu⁷ certe pro eis loquere. et ego respondeo.

His auditis. rethor respondit. Si
predicta miracula ut credi jubes
manens

Alle þe oðere herceneden
1128 mid swiðe open earen,
ah herto onswerede
an for ham alle :

1127 C oðre. 1128 C wið, opene.

¹ *expressam.* ² *prescientiam.* ³ *intemerata testimoniorum* transposed. ⁴ *pretiosa.*
⁵ C originally *inretire.* ⁶ *aspnaris.* ⁷ omits *tu.*

in homine deus prestitit. num-

quid suscipere et pati crucem de-

buit? Aut quam ob causam alios

erepturus¹ a morte. ipse etiam

morte non caruit?

Vel certe quomodo aliis proderit.

qui sibi prodesse non potuit. cum

in sua liberatione etiam aliis spem

liberationis contulisset?

Ad hec virgo respondit.

Et in hoc etiam estimatio tua fal-

litur. si in crucis affixione² inpas-

“ ȝef drihtin, ȝe darede
 1132 in ure menesse,
 wrahte ȝeos wundres,
 as ȝu wult ȝ we ileuen,
 hwi walde he ȝrowin as he dude,
 1136 ȝ ȝolien deð on rode? [1141]
 Hwen he com to arudden
 of deaðes rake oðre,
 hwi deide he him seoluen?
 1140 ȝ hu mei he helpen oðre
 ȝ beon biforen oðre,
 ȝe ȝurhferde deað as heo doð?
 Hefde he, lanhure,
 1144 him seoluen aleset, [1150]
 sum walde hopien
 ȝ habben bileau
 to his alesunge.”
 1148 ȝet cweð ȝis meiden,
 ȝ seide him toȝeines,
 “ Ich habbe uncnut summe
 of ȝeos cnotti cnotten,
 1152 ȝef ȝu wult icnawen.
 Ah her, ȝu wenest ȝet
 ȝ tu wenen ne ȝerf, [1160]
 ȝ godd, ȝe is unȝrowlich,

1131 C ȝif, ȝ, dearede. 1132 C monnesse. 1134 C al for as, R wult (t added from above), C ȝat, leuen. 1136 R ant, C ȝolie, deað, o. 1138 R raketechn, C oȝre. 1139 C seluen. 1140 R ant, C mihte for mei, omits oðre. 1141 R ant, biuoren. 1142 C ȝ, deað ase wel as heo doð. 1143 R he ȝ lanhure. 1144 C seluen, alesed. 1145 C hopen. 1146 R ant, C habbe. 1148 C qð. 1149 R ant, C toȝeines. 1151 C ȝeose omits cnotti; cnottes. 1152 C ȝif, ȝu hit wult. 1153 C ȝette. 1154 R wenen ne transposed, C wene, ȝarf. 1155 C ȝ for ȝe, vnȝrowlich.

¹ erecturus.

² C originally affixione.

who was hidden in our human nature, wrought these miracles, as thou wilt have us to believe, why did he wish to endure pain as he did, and suffer death on the cross? When he came to free others from the rule of death, why died he himself? and how can he, who passed through death as they do, be better than others and aid them? Had he, at least, delivered himself, one might hope and have faith in his power to deliver.” Yet quoth this maiden, and said to him in reply, “I have undone some of these knotty knots, if thou wilt be sensible of it. But here, thou supposest still that which thou needest not suppose, that God, who is

sibilem deum passionem doloris et	1156 þrowede, oðer þolede
mortis sustinuisse arbitraris.	pine oðer passium, o þe deore rode, onont þ he godd wes,
Non enim	1160 oðer deað drehde.
natura celestis	Ne mahte—þ wite þu—
crucis	his heouenliche cunde
sensit	o nanes cunnes wise
injuriam. sed	1164 felen nowðer sar [1170]
assumpta in	ne sorhe upo þe cruche ;
deum infirmitas	ah al þe weane
carnis.	ʒ te wa wente
	1168 upon þe unstrengðe
	of þ underuo flesch,
	þ he neodeles nom,
	wið al ure nowcin,
	1172 bute sunne ane,
	up on him seoluen.
	O godd, þe is al freo,
	ne mei nan uuel festnin ; [1180]
	1176 ne mahte me nowðer godd,
	onont þ he godd wes,
	beatin ne binden,
	ne halden ne neomen ʒet,
	1180 for godd is unneomelich ;
	ah þurh þe mon þ he wes

1156 C þrowde. 1157 R passium. 1158 C ðe. 1159 C was. 1160 *entirely omitted by R.* 1162 C heuenliche. 1164 C fele, R *omits* nowðer. 1165, 1166, 1167, *all the three lines are left out entirely by R.* 1168 R uppon, C upo, unstrengðe. 1169 C underue. 1170 C noðeles, nam. 1173 R upp. 1174 C þ. 1175 C mai, festnen. 1176 C mihte, man *for* me. 1177 C was. 1178 C beaten. 1179 R *writes* ne neomen ne halden ; C halde, nimen. 1180 C he *for* godd, vnneomelich. 1181 C was.

incapable of suffering, suffered, or endured pain or suffering, on the dear cross, or underwent death, in respect that he was God. His heavenly nature might not—know thou this—in any wise feel either sore or sorrow upon the cross ; but all the grief and the woe fell upon the weakness of that assumed flesh, which he voluntarily took upon himself, together with all our misery except sin only. On God, who is all-free, no evil can fasten ; nor might God, in that he was God, be beaten or bound, or held or even taken, for God cannot be taken. But through the man that he was shrouded

diabolo per assumptum	ischrudd ꝥ ihudd wið,
hominem egit triumphum.	he bicherde þene feont,
cum in ligno materiam	1184 ꝥ schrenchte þen alde deouel,
carnis inponens.	ꝥ teschrapet his heaued. [1190]
eum sine sui injuria	Nes nawt iteiet to þe treo
per hominem	þer he deide upon, to drahen
superavit.	1188 buten fleschtimber.
qui hominem	Ah swa he, wiðuten woh,
cum dei injuria	adweschte ꝥ adun warp
egerat in delictum.	þene wiðerwine of helle,
Homo ergo	1192 mon, i monnes cunde,
non divinitas	þe mid woh hefde
cruci affixus est	to deð idrahen moncun [1200]
et qui pecaverat	þurh dedlich sunne.
per lignum.	1196 þus wes, as ich munne, mon
fixus in ligno est.	ꝥ nawt godes drihtnesse,
	þurhdriuen upon þe rode ;
	þah he in þe ilke time
	1200 soð godd were.
	Ah mon, for mon þe misdude,
	þolede dom ꝥ deide ;
	ꝥgodd, imon, formonnes bruche,
	1204 bette ꝥ eode on bote, [1211]
	as his ahne goddlec
	lahede hit ꝥ lokede.

1182 C ischrud, ihud. 1183 C feond. 1184 R ant, C schrenchte (t altered from l or h). 1185 R teschrape, omits his, C hes (e expunged, i above it), R hefde for heaued. 1187 R uppon, C upon for to drehen eawt. 1188 C bute. 1189 C wiðuta. 1190 C adweschde, weorp. 1191 C þe. 1193 C þ, wið. 1194 C deað, R mon to for moncun. 1195 C deaðliche, R sunnen. 1196 R þat for þus, C was. 1198 R uppon, C o. 1199 C i, þat for þe, pine for time. 1201 C þ, misdide. 1202 R ant; between 1201 and 1202 R has the words bette ant eode on bote ꝥ. 1203 C And. 1204 R ant, C o. 1205 R ah for as, C godlee. 1206 R him for hit, ant.

and hidden within, he outwitted the fiend, and foiled the old devil, and shaved his head (*i.e.* put him to shame). There was nothing bound to the tree that he died upon, to suffer, but corporeal matter. But thus he, without wrong, as man, in human nature, overthrew and cast down the hellish adversary, who wrongfully had drawn mankind to death through mortal sin. Thus, as I said, was man, and not God's majesty, pierced through upon the cross; though he at the same time was true God. But (as) man, for man that transgressed, he suffered judgment and died; and (as) God, in man, for man's sin, made amends and did penance, as

Hec deo fuit assumendi hominem
precipue ratio vel voluntas. ut
peccatum ab homine contractum
per hominem tolleretur. et ab illo
fides resurrec-(fol. 179b)-tionis in-
ciperet.

quem primum resurgere

debuisset constaret

Potens equidem erat deus

per angelum

quemvis aut per aliquam

celestem virtutem prostrato

diabolo hominem eripere

si voluisset Sed omnia

cum ratione agens deus.

sic modum statuit victorie. ut qui

hominem subjugarat. per hominem

Low þis made him

1208 þ he underfeng mon,—

þ is, bicom mon,—

þ te bruchen þ mon

hefde ibroken aȝein him,

1212 weren ibet þurh mon,

ƿ þ he arise earest [1220]

from deaðe to liue

þ ne dredeð na deð,

1216 þurh hwam we mahten habben

sikere bileaue

to arisen alle efter him.

Eð were ure lauerd,

1220 liuende godes sune,

to awarpen his unwine,

ƿ reauin him his hondiwere,

þ he wið woh etheold, [1230]

1224 on euch wise in þe world

þ he eauer walde,—

wið an anlepi word,

ȝe, wið his an wil;

1228 ah þe witti weldent

ƿ te rihtwise

bireadde hit swa swiðe wel,

þ he þ ouercom mon,

1208 R underueng. 1210 C *writes* þ tat þe mon. 1211 C aȝain him ibroken. 1212 C were, R ibroken for ibet. 1213 R ant, C arisede, eft for earest. 1214 C fram, R *omits* to liue. 1215 C deað, R deð to liue. 1216 R *writes* þurh we mahten him habben *above* þurh and him *separately three lines, to be read therefore* þurh him we etc., C mahen, haue. 1218 C after, *omits* him. 1219 C Eað. 1222 C reauen, hondewere. 1223 C atheld. 1224 C ewc, i, R *omits* þe. 1225 C þat, R h for he. 1226 C *omits* an. 1227 C ȝea. 1228 C wealdent. 1229 R *writes* ant te rihtwise we (we *expunged*) godd. 1230 C biradde, se; R swide. 1231 C mon *added on the margin*.

his own majesty ordained and determined it. Behold this moved him to take upon him man,—that is, he became man,—that the sins which man had sinned against him, should be expiated through man, and that he arose the first from death to a life that dreadeth no death, through whom (which?) we might have sure belief that we all shall arise after him. Easy were it for our Lord, the son of the living God, to overthrow his adversary, and rescue from him his handiwork, which he wrongfully detained, in whatever way in the world he would,—with a single word, yea, with his mere will; but the wise and righteous ruler designed it so excellently well, that he who overcame man should be overthrown by man, with meekness and

ipse vinceretur;	1232 were akast þurh mon, wið meokelec ⁊ liste, [1240] nawt wið luðer strence; þ he ne mahte nanes weis
Hec et alia multa dum beatissima	1236 meanen him of wohe.” Hwil þis eadi meiden motede ⁊ mealde
virgo dissemeret. stupefactus rethor	þis ⁊ muchele mare, 1240 þe an modgeste of ham þ mealde toþein hire, warð swa awundret of hire wittie wordes, [1250]
et cuncti ora- tores. quid contra- hiscerent	1244 ⁊ swa offearet ⁊ offruht, ⁊ alle hise feren, þ nefde hare nan tunge to tauelin a tint wið.
nesciebant.	1248 Swa swiðe godes grace agaste ⁊ ageide ham, þ euch an biheold oðer as heo bidweolet weren :
sed turbati	1252 þ nan ne seide na wiht, ah seten stille ase stan, [1260] cwicw ne cweð þer neuer an.
atque confusi	þes keiser bicapede ham,
manifesta ¹	1256 ⁊, as mon þ bigon
dei virtute	
invicem	
se contuentes	
ommutuerunt.	
Quibus indignatus	
imperator. cum	

1233 C mekeleic, R ant, C luste. 1234 C strengðe. 1235 C mihte. 1237 C hwils, þeos. 1238 R motede þis ant. 1239 C þus. 1240 C þ, modieste. 1241 C toþain. 1242 C ward, awundred. 1243 C witti. 1244 R ant, C offeared. 1245 *entirely omitted* by R. 1246 R heore. 1247 C teulin, dint, *omits* wið. 1248 C se. 1249 C agide. 1250 C biheld. 1251 C *writes* as he bidweoled oðer (*oðer blotted out*) were. 1252 C þat, þing *for* wiht. 1253 R as þe *for* ase. 1254 R þ cwic, cwed, C neauer. 1255 B *re-commences with this line*, R þe, C bigapede. 1256 R ant, B ase, *omits* þ.

¹ C originally *manifesti*.

(wise) design, not with rude strength; that he might no wise bemoan himself of wrong.” While this blessed maiden reasoned and discoursed this and much more, the proudest one of those who spoke against her, became so filled with admiration at her wise words, and so amazed and awed, (he) and all his fellows, that none of them had tongue to object anything again. So greatly did God’s grace confound and awe them, that each one looked at the other as if they were bewitched: so that none of them said anything, but they sat still as stone, nor did one of them move or speak. This Emperor gazed at them, and, like a man that began to rave and to

furor nimio

sic ait.

Quid vos ignavi

et degeneres

hebetatis

sensibus

sic ommutescitis?

Sicceine vos

debilitatis

viribus

virtus femnea (*sic*)¹

perdomabit?

Num satis

superque esse non² poterat ad ig-

nominiam omnium philosophorum

si quinquagenae aut eo amplius

femine verbis unum e vobis evi-

cissent?

Nunc autem o

to weden t̃ to wurðen

ut of his ahne witte,

wodeliche ȝeide :

1260 "Hwet nu, unwreste men

t̃ waere þen eni wake!

of ded t̃ of dult wit!

nu is ower stunde!

1264 Hwi studgi ȝe nu, [1270]

t̃ steuentið se stille?

Nabbe ȝe teð ba

t̃ tunge to sturien?

1268 Is nu se storliche

unstrenget ower strengðe,

t̃ ower wit awealt,

swa þ̃ te mihte t̃ te mot

1272 of an se meoke meiden

schal meistren ow alle? [1280]

Me ȝef fifti wimmen,

t̃ tah þer ma weren,

1276 hefden mid wordes

ower an awarpen,

nere hit schendlae inoh,

t̃ schir scheome, to alle

1280 þ̃ ȝelpeð of lare?

·Nu is alre scheome meast;

1257 R ant. 1258 C B wit. 1259 R wodliche, C seide. 1260 C Hwat, unwreaste. 1261 R an *for* t̃, wacere, B ei. 1262 C B deað, R ant, C dul. 1263 C owre. 1264 C studiȝe, R omits nu. 1265 R ant, C steunteð, R so. 1266 R teð ba *transposed*. 1268 R swa, B steorliche. 1269 C unstrengðet, B unstreged (*sic*), R strençðe. 1270 R ant, aweld. 1272 B a, R so, C meke. 1274 C ȝif, R wummen. 1275 R ant, B þah. 1276 C B wið, C worde. 1277 R awarpen ower an. 1279 R ant, schir (*h inserted from above*), C schome, B to ow alle. 1280 R þ̃ al (*al blotted out*), ȝelpeð, B lore (*or lare*). 1281 C schome, B scheomene.

¹ feminea.

² C non added on margin, L omits non.

go out of his (own) reason, furiously said: "What now, ye worthless men, and weaker than any weak man! of dead and of dull wit! now is your time! Why leave ye off now, and stop still? Have not ye both teeth and tongue to move? Is your strength now so greatly enfeebled, and your wit so overpowered, that the energy and reasoning of so meek a maiden shall master you all? But if fifty women, and though there were more, had with (their) words overcome one of you, would it not be disgrace enough, and sheer shame, to all who boast of learning? Now is the greatest shame of all; that a single maiden, with her mouth

pudor quinquaginta	þ an anlepi meiden,	
robustissimos oratores ab extremis	wið hire anes muð,	[1290]
mundi partibus electos una puella	1284 haueð swa biteuelet,	
turbine verborum suorum eo usque	itemet, ⁊ iteiet,	
attonitos reddit. ¹ ut hi quid vel	1288 icudde ⁊ icorene,	
contra mutant prorsus non	⁊ of feorrene ifat,	
habeant. ²	þ al þe beoð blodles,	
	bikimet, of ow seoluen.	
	1292 Hwider is ower wit	
	⁊ ower wisdom iwent? [1300]	
	Breokeð on, for bismere,	
Hic unus quem sibi magistrum	⁊ biginneð sum hwet!"	
et ducem preesse ceteri fatebantur.	1296 Ondswerede þa	
	þe an þ te oðre	
	heolden for heste	
tiranno ita respondit.	⁊ heaued of ham alle,	
	1300 ⁊ cweð to þe kinge :	
Hoc unum tibi imperator dicam.	" An hwet ichulle þ tu wite,	
	þ we habbeð witnesse	
	of alle þe wise	[1310]
unde orientalium turba oratorum	1304 þ beoð in estlonde,	
testis nobis est constantissima:	þ neauer, aðet tes dei,	
quod usque in presenti auditorio ³	ne funde we nowher	

1282 C B omit an. 1284 R bitauelet ow, B biteuelit. 1285 C itemed, R ant, C iteied.
 1288 R ant, icorne. 1289 R ant, feorene, C ferrene. 1290 C beon. 1291 C ikimet,
 seluen. 1292 C Hwiðer, owre. 1293 R ant, iwend, B iwent (t written over d). 1294
 C brekeð, R bismere. 1295 R ant, C hwat. 1296 R Onswere (de added from above),
 B Ontswerede, omits þa. 1297 C þ for first þe, B þe þe for þ te, R oðere. 1298 C helden,
 hehste R B hest. 1299 R ant, heauet. 1300 B King. 1304 C hwat, B ich chulle.
 1302 B witnese. 1303 R þise for þe wise. 1304 B þe, C beon, R wunieð for beoð,
 C eastlonde. 1305 C aþet, þis, dai. 1306 B nohwer (h inserted from above).

¹ reddidit.² L habent, C originally the same.³ adjutorio.

alone, hath so confounded, tamed, and tied five times ten, all told by tale, celebrated and select (sages), and brought from afar, that ye are all powerless, stupefied, and out of your reason. Whither is your understanding and your wisdom gone? Proceed, for shame, and begin something!" He whom the others regarded as the principal and chief of them all then answered, and said to the King: "One thing I would that thou know, that we have the testimony of all the wise that are in the East, that never, until this day, have we anywhere

nullus se nobis ante hac in verbis
et mundi sapientia conferre pre-
sumpsit. Si autem jactantibus (*sic*)¹
conserere verba presumpsit. con-
tinuo victus et confusus recessit.
De puella vero ista longe alia ratio
est in qua ut vera tibi loquar. non
animalis homo loquitur.

sed divinus quidam spiritus. qui
sane haud mortale sonans nos in
stuporem et admirationem adeo
convertit: ut ad injuriam ipsius
christi de qua loquitur. aliquid
dicere aut penitus nesciamus: aut
omnino formidemus.

Nam ut christi nomen et divini-
tatis ejus potentiam simulque
crucis ipsius misterium² predicari

nan swa deope ilearet
1308 þ durste sputin wið us;
 ʒ ʒef he come in place,
 nere he neauer se prud,
 þ he ne talde him al tom
1312 ear he turnde from us.
 Ah nis nawt lihtliche [1320]
 of þis meidenes mot;
 for, ich soð schal seggen,
1316 in hire ne moteð na mon.
 For nawt nis hit monlich
 mot þ ha mealeð,
 ne nawt nis heo þ haueð mot;
1320 ah is an heouenlich gast
 in hire swa aʒein us,
 þ we ne cunnen
 (ʒ tah we cuðen, [1330]
1324 ne nullen ne ne duren)
 warpen na word aʒein
 to weorrin ne to wreððen
 him þ ha wreððeð on:
1328 for sone ʒe ha Crist cleopede,
 ʒ his nome nempnede,*
 ʒ te muchele mihtes
 of his hehnesse, ʒ schawde

1307 R so, C se, CB deop. 1308 B þe, CB sputi. 1309 R ant, C ʒif, R com, CB i.
1310 R neuer so. 1311 B acomen for al tom. 1312 R er, B turde, R turnde him from,
C fram. 1313 R omits nis, C nis hit nawt, lihtlich. 1315 R for ʒef ich. 1316 C motes.
1317 R monlich mot. 1318 R þ mot. 1319 C omits nawt, R nis hit heo, omits mot, B us
acomen for mot. 1320 C heuenlich. 1321 C aʒain. 1323 R ant, C ne for ʒ, þah. 1324
C we for first ne, R durren. 1325 C aʒain. 1326 C weorren, B weorri, te, C wraððen,
B wreaððin. 1327 R heo, C treoweð, R wreððeð hire on. 1328 R swa heo, C clepede.
1329 R ant. 1330 R ant, mihte. 1331 R ant, schawde (a inserted from above).

¹ jactantius.

² L ministerium, C originally the same.

found any one so deep learned that he dared to dispute with us; and, if he came in public, were he ever so proud, that he did not reckon himself quite tame ere he turned from us. But of this maiden's reasoning there is nothing to be despised; for, I shall speak the truth, in her reasoneth no (mere) man. For it is not human reasoning that she uttereth, nor is it she that holds (this) dispute; but there is a heavenly spirit in her so adverse to us, that we cannot (nor if we could, would we nor dare we) object a word again to contend with or to displease him whom she trusts in: for as soon as she called upon Christ, and named his name, and the great might of his majesty, and then showed manifestly the

ab ea audivimus. confusa sunt	1332	seoððen sutelliche	[1340]
viscera. corda nostra tremuerunt.		þe deopschipe ꝛ te derne run	
et omnes corporis sensus (fol.		of his deað on rode,	
180a) stupendo aufugerunt. Unde	1336	al wat awei ure worldliche wit,	
te diutius fallere imperator nolu-		of his drihtnesse ;	
mus. sed constanter fatemur : quia		ꝛ tat we kennið þe wel,	
		keiser, ꝛ cuðeð,	

nisi aliam sectam probabilioribus experimentis ventilatam de diis quos huc usque coluimus nobis ostenderis.

ecce omnes ¹ convertimur ad	1340	þ we leaueð þi lahe	
christum : quia ipsum vere deum		ꝛ al þine bileaue,	[1350]
et dei filium confitemur. per quem		ꝛ turneð alle to Criste ;	
tanta mortalibus beneficia pres-	1344	ꝛ her we cnawlecheð him	
tant : ²		soð godd, ꝛ godes sune ;	
que per virginem istam audivimus.		þ se mucche godlec	
		cudde us alle on eorðe,	
		þ woh haueð eni mon	
	1348	to weorrin him mare.	
		þis we schawið þe nu ;	
		sei þ tu wult nu."	
		þe keiser kaste his heaued,	

Audiens hec tyrannus. precipitibus	1352	as wod mon, of wreððe ;	[1361]
------------------------------------	------	-------------------------	--------

1332 C seoðen, sutelliche. 1333 R deopschpe (*sic; second p inserted from above*), B deopnesse, R ant, C dearne. 1334 C B o. 1335 C awai. 1336 B adrede. 1337 R rixlunge for drihtnesse. 1338 C And, B þ. 1339 R keiser (*r added from above*). 1341 C B þi. 1342 C turnen, C B crist. 1343 R ant, B cnawlechið. 1344 C goddes. 1345 R so, goddlec, C godleic. 1346 R in for on. 1348 C weorren. 1349 C schaweð. 1350 C wilt, omits nu, R þat. 1351 B keste, R heauet. 1352 R o for of, C wraððe.

¹ omits omnes.

² prestantur.

depth and the hidden mysteries of his death on the cross, all our worldly wit fled away, we were so in dread of his sovereignty; and this we make well known thee, O Emperor, and declare, that we leave thy religion, and all thy faith, and turn all to Christ. And here we acknowledge him true God, and the son of God; who showed us all so much goodness on earth, that it were wrong in any man longer to contend with him. This we declare to thee; say now what thou wilt." The Emperor threw up his head, as a madman, in wrath;

furiis agitatus accenso in medio	ƿ berninde as he wes of grome ƿ of teone, bed bringen o brune
civitatis ¹ vehementissimo igne.	1356 an ad amidden þe burh ; ƿ ba binden ham swa þe fet ƿ te honden þ ha wrungen aȝein ;
jussit omnes ² ligatis manibus et	1360 ƿ i þe reade leie, ƿ i þe leitinde fur, [1370] het warpen euch fot. As me droh ham to hare deað,
pedibus penalibus incendiis	1364 þa ȝeide þus þe an ƿ elnede þe oðre : “ O, leoue iferen, feire is us ifallen ;
cruciari. Qui dum traherentur ad	1368 ah ȝet we forȝeteð us : Nu þe deore drihtin areaw us, ƿ toc read of ure alde dusischipes, [1380]
ignem. unus eorum ceteroshorta-	1372 þ we driuen longe, ƿ haueð idiht us todei for to drehen þis deað, þurh his milde milce ;
batur dicens. O socii et commili-	1376 þ we forleten þis lif for his treowe luue
tones mei quid agimus? Postquam	
nostros deus longos miseratus er-	
rores ad hanc suam gratiam vocare	
dignatus est ut vel in fine fidei	
sacre privilegio et sancti nominis	

1353 R B ant, C bearninde al as, was. 1356 C a. fur for ad, C B amide. 1357 R ant.
1358 R uet. 1359 B þrunge, C aȝain. 1360 R ant, omits leie, B lei. 1361 B þet,
C leitende. 1363 C men, R deð. 1364 C þ for þe 1365 R ant, oðere. 1366 C leue,
feren. 1368 C forȝeteð. 1369 B deorre. 1370 B arew. 1371 C to for of, R omits ure,
alde (sic). 1372 B þe. 1373 R ah for ƿ. 1374 C omits for, B te for to, C B drehe,
R deð. 1376 C forleose, B forlete. 1377 R i þis for for his, C leue for treowe.

¹ omits civitatis.² inserts oratores.

and inflamed as he was with anger and vexation, bade that a fire be kindled in the midst of the city ; and so to bind both their feet and their hands that they ached again ; and into the red flame and blazing fire, commanded each man of them to be cast. As men dragged them to their death, one of them cried thus and comforted the others : “ O, my dear associates, fair hath it befallen us ; but yet we forget ourselves. Now the dear Lord hath pitied us, and had consideration for our old follies that we long practised, and hath appointed us to-day to suffer this death, through his mild mercy ; that we should lose this life for his

cognitione non fraudaremur.		in treowe bileaue, ƿ i þe cnawlechunges
cur non properamus ante vite exitum ipsius signaculo et sacro fontis	1380	of his kinewurðe nome, hwi ne hihe we for to beon ifulhet as he het his, [1391] ear we faren heonne."
utero ¹ innovari? Cum hec diceret ²	1384	As he iseid hefde bisohten, as ha stoden, alle in an steuene þ tes meiden moste,
rogabant unanimiter pretiosam virginem christi. ut lavacro salutifero perfunderentur.	1388	i þe wurðschipe of godd, wið halwende wettres bihealden ham alle. [1400] Ah heo ham onswerede,
Quibus electa dei ait.	1392	ƿ swoteliche seide, " Ne drede ȝe ow nawiht, cnihtes icorene; for ȝe schulen beon ifulhet,
Ne paveatis o fortissimi milites christi. constantes estote. et de baptismo solliciti ne ³ sitis. erit vobis salutare baptismum sanguinis vestri perfusio. et ignis iste cruciatorius flammeum spiritus sancti ignem vobis inferet.	1396	ƿ beten alle þe bruchen þ ȝe ibroken habbeð in ower blodes rune: ƿ tis ferliche fur [1410] 1400 schal lihten in ow þe halwende lei of þe hali gast,

1378 C B i, C trewe. 1379 C cnawlechinges. 1381 B hihi, R we nu for, B te for to. 1382 C ifulhtnet, hise. 1383 R fearen, honne, C henne. 1386 C B a, R stefne. 1387 B ȝet, R tis. 1388 R ine for i þe. 1389 R halwunde, C halewende, B weattres, C wattres. 1390 C biheolden. 1391 R ƿ for Ah, B onswerde. 1392 R swoteliche. 1394 R icorne. 1395 C ifulhtnet. 1396 R ant, C owre for þe. 1398 C owre. 1399 R ant, omits ferliche, B omits fur. 1401 R halwunde.

¹ lavacro for utero.² dicerent.³ solliciti ne transposed.

true love in true faith, and in the acknowledging of his supreme name, why do not we hasten to be baptized as he commanded his (followers), before we fare hence?" When he had said (this) they all, as they stood, with one voice besought that this maiden should, in the worship of God, with sanctifying waters sprinkle them all. But she answered, and sweetly said, "Dread ye not, chosen champions; for ye shall be baptized, and repair all the breaches that ye have broken in the flowing of your blood: and this fearful fire shall light up in you the sanctifying flame of the Holy Ghost, which, in fiery tongues, kindled the apostles." While

His dictis. assunt ministri. et¹
jussu imperatoris ligatis manibus
et pedibus sanctos dei martires
mediis flammis ingerunt.

et sic inter estuantis² flammis³
incendii dominum confitentes. fe-
lici martirio coronati ad dominum
migraverunt. tercio decimo die
mensis novembris.

In quibus illud comparuit insigne
miraculum ut indumenta eorum
aut capilli capitum eorum nullam
ab igne lesionem sustinerent.
Vultus autem illorum rosei coloris
decore emicabant.

ut dormientes potius quam ex-
tinctos putares. unde multi con-
versi ad dominum crediderunt.

þe, in furene tungen,
1404 ontende þe apostles.
Me weorp ham mid tis ilke word
amidde þe leie;
þer ha heuen up
1408 hare honden to heouene;
ʒ swa somet readliche, [1420]
þurh seli martirdom,
ferden, wið murðe,
1412 ierunet, to Criste,
o þe þreottuðe dei
of Nouembres moneð.
Ah þ wes miracle muchel,
1416 þ nowðer nes iwemmet
clað þ ha hefden,
ne her of hare heafden,
Ah mit se swiðe lufsume
1420 leores ha leien, [1431]
se rudie ʒ se reade
ilitet eauereuch leor
as lilie ileid to rose,
1424 þ nawiht ne þuhte hit
þ ha weren deade,
ah þ ha slepten
swoteliche a sweouete;

1403 C þ, C B i, R in þe furene, tunge. 1404 C ontendede. 1405 C [M]en (*space left for M*), warp, R mit; *tet for tis, omits word*. 1406 R amit, te. 1407 B þear. 1408 R toward *for to*, C heuene. 1409 R ant, C some, R somed ferder (sic) redliche. 1410 B martyrdom. 1411 R to heouene *for* ferden, B uerden, C murðe. 1413 C þrittuðe, B þreotuðe. 1415 R þet, C was, R muchel (*l written over r*). 1416 C þat, R nohwer *for* nowðer, iweommet, B iwemmet. 1417 C þat. 1418 C hear, B þha *blotted out after* her, R on *for of*, hefden, C heaued. 1419 C B wið, R so, *omits swiðe*; lufsum, B leufsume. 1421 R ant swiðe *for first se*; swa *for second se*. 1422 R ileitet, euereuch. 1424 R B nawt. 1426 C þat. 1427 R in an *for a*, C o, R sweouet.

¹ inserts ex.² estuantes.³ C originally flammis.

this was spoken, they were cast amid the flame. There they lifted up their hands to heaven; and so together readily, through blessed martyrdom, went, with joy, crowned to Christ, on the thirteenth day of the month of November. And this was a great miracle, that neither were the clothes injured that they had on, nor a hair of their heads. But with such lovely countenances they lay, so ruddy and so red-coloured every countenance, as lily laid to rose, that it did not seem that they were dead, but that they slept sweetly in a slumber; so that

- 1428 swa þ feole turnden
to treowe bileaue, [1440]
t þoleden anan deað
i þe nome of drihtin.
- Horum corpora christiani noctu 1432 Comen cristene a niht,
rapientes sepelierunt.
t nomen hare bodies,
t biburieden ham
deorliche, as hit deh
- His ita gestis. 1436 drihtines cnihtes.
þa þis wes idon þus,
het eft þe keiser
þ me schulde Katerine
- 1440 bringen biforen him ;
- tirannus videns sanctam virginem immutabiliter fidei tenere constantiam. nec minis aut ter-(fol. 180b)-roribus turbari. arte quadam temptat animum illius emollire. ut ad profana sacrificia vel promissis infractam¹ valeat inclinare.
- Dixit itaque illi. t þus to hire cleopede :
O virgo generosa " O mihti meiden !
O witti wummon !
- 1444 wurðmunt t alle
wurðschipe wurðe !
O schene nebschaft
t schape se swiðe semlich,
- o digna imperiali purpura facies. 1448 þ schulde beon se prudeliche
utinam advertat juvenilis prudentia tua. ischrud t iprud ba [1460]
wið pel t wið purple :

1428 C fele, B turden. 1430 R *omits* anan. 1432 B naht. 1434 R bibureden, C biburiden. 1435 R *omits* deorliche, C dearnliche, R *omits* deh. 1437 C was, B ido, R *omits* þus. 1439 C men, R sculde. 1440 B bringe, R B biuoren. 1441 R ant, C tus, clepede. 1444 C wurðmund. 1446 R nebscheft. 1447 R ant, *omits* se. 1448 R swa for þ, C B beo, R swa prudeliche (*sic*), C prudliche. 1449 R ischrud, iprud, C *omits* ba. 1450 R pal, ant.

¹ *fractam*.

many turned to true faith, and straightway suffered death in the name of the Lord. Christians came by night, and took their bodies, and buried them sumptuously, as was due to the Lord's champions. When this was thus done, the Emperor again commanded that they should bring Katherine before him ; and thus addressed her : " O mighty maiden, O wise woman ! worthy of honour and of all reverence ! O beauteous countenance and most seemly shape, which ought to be so magnificently decked and adorned with pall and with

quanto erga¹ te dolore sollicitor. quod immortalium deorum nostrorum culturam non solum aspernaris sed et spirituum inmundorum in eis maleficia² esse testificaris. quibus cultores suos fallendo decipiant. et subtilibus insidiis deceptos infernalibus penis obnoxios faciant. Unde te ab hac temeraria laceratione resipisci³ convenit ne et ipsi tanto magis injuriam sibi illatam ulcisci incipiant. quanto ipsi adhuc tui patientes meritos tibi non⁴ inferunt⁵ cruciatus.

Consule ergo juventuti tue

Nim ȝeme of ȝi ȝuheȝe,
1452 areow ȝi wlite ;

et sacrifica diis nostris et eris se-

ȝ tac read, seli
meiden, to ȝe seoluen.

cunda post reginam in palatio meo.

Ga ȝ gret ure godes,
1456 ȝ tu igremet hauest ;
ȝ tu schalt; efter ȝe cwen,
eauer ȝe oȝer beon

et ad nutum tuum cuncta regni

in halle ȝ i bure : [1470]
1460 ȝ al ichulle dihten

negotia spectabunt.

ȝe deden of mi kinedom
after ȝ tu demest.

ut quos dignos honore judicaveris. hii regiis donentur honoribus. quos autem in honore⁶ manere jusseris. illis sufficiat intra domorum suarum latibula vel manere inglorios. Intra regnum meum adhibeas quos velis. excludas quos decreveris.⁷ In aulicum ministerium recipiantur. quos recipis. abiciantur quos deicis. In hoc uno a te distet⁸ regina. quod regio thoro vineta legali matrimonio non fraudabitur. ceterum tu imperialibus consiliis. tu provincialibus edictis princeps et moderatrix eris.

1452 C arewe. 1453 C nim for tac. 1454 R wummon for meiden, B omits meiden ; R of for to ; ȝi, C seluen. 1455 R ant, igret. 1456 B ȝe ȝu, C igremed. 1457 C after. 1460 R omits al, C al ich wule, B al ich chulle, R dihtin. 1461 C domen for deden. 1462 C after.

¹ C originally ergo. ² maliciam. ³ resipiscere. ⁴ omits non. ⁵ inferent. ⁶ inhonoros for in honore. ⁷ C decreveris added on margin, for which L puts nolis. ⁸ C originally distat.

purple: consider thy youth; take pity on thy face; and have regard, lovely maiden, to thyself. Go and greet our gods, which thou hast angered; and thou shalt, after the queen, ever be the second in hall and in bower: and I shall constitute the decrees of my kingdom

Ne¹ hoc solum vacat² facio et ego

tibi sceptrifere imaginis³ statuam

in medio civitatis erigi. a cunctis

civibus salutandam ab omnibus

venerandam.

Ah zet i segge mare :

1464 ichulle leten makien þe

of gold an ymage,

as cwen icrunet ;

ƿ swa me schal, amid te burh,

1468 setten hit on heh up.

þrefter me schal beoden [1480]

ƿ bodien hit oueral,

þ alle þe þer bigað

1472 greten hit o þi nome,

ƿ buhen þertoward,

alle þe to wurðmunt,

burhmen ƿ oðre.

Reus mihi majestatis fuerit. qui insalutatam preteriet.⁴ Nulli quamlibet noxio venia negabitur. qui se hanc ad statuam⁵ pronior rogaturus inclinaverit.

Postremo in quo te altius⁶ beare

valeam. nisi intra deas templum

tibi de insigni⁷ marmore erigam ?

1476 On ende þu schalt hebben,

hehliche, as an of ure

heuenliche lefdis,

of marbrestan a temple,

1480 þ schal aa stonden, [1490]

hwil þ te world stont,

to witnesse of þi wurðschipe."

Katerine onswerede,

Hic⁸ virgo in risum paulo excitata

tiranno ait.

1484 smirkinde sum del,

1463 C ƿ for Ah, B ich. 1464 B Ich chulle, R leoten, CB lete, makie. 1465 B golt. 1467 R ant, C man for me, R amide, þe, B amit, R burh inserted from above in other hand and ink. 1469 B þer efter, C þrefter, men. 1470 R ant. 1471 C þ ter for þe þer. 1473 CB buhe, B þertoward. 1474 R wurdmunt, C wurðmund. 1475 R oðere. 1477 B heheeliche. 1478 B heuenliche, C lafdis, B leafdis. 1479 R marbre a stan a. 1480 C ai, B a. 1481 B worlt, R omits stont. 1482 C wurðmund. 1483 B onswerede. 1484 C smirkinde.

¹ originally the same, but altered by later hand to *nec*. ² C originally *vocat*. ³ C originally *imagnis*. ⁴ C letter erased between *i* and *e*; L *preterierit*. ⁵ *ad statuam hanc*. ⁶ *te altius* transposed. ⁷ C originally *insignum*. ⁸ *hinc*.

entirely as thou judgest. And, moreover, I say : I shall cause to be made an image of thee of gold, as a crowned queen ; and it shall be set up on high, in the middle of the city. And then it shall be commanded and proclaimed everywhere, that all who pass by shall salute it in thy name ; and all citizens and others shall bow toward it in reverence of thee. Finally, thou shalt have, as one of our celestial goddesses, a costly temple (raised to thee) of marble stone, that shall stand for ever, while the world standeth, to (bear) witness of thy worship." Katherine answered, smiling somewhat, and said to the king, "Fair flattereth (singeth?)

⁊ cweð to þe kinge,
 "Feire uleð þi muð,
 ⁊ murie þu makest hit.
 1488 Ah ich drede þ̅ tis dream
 me dreie toward deaðe,
 as deð mereminnes. [1500]

O me felicem¹ honoris privilegio. cui erigatur statua ab hominibus salutanda. ab hominibus veneranda. O me inquam felicem si vel hoc unum merear ut fiam aurea. (fol. 181a) Sed nec ex toto infelix ero. si vel argenteam esse contingat. Erit² inter trapezetis contentio. de estimatione ponderis et pretii. Quod si ne id fortuna presterit sim si ita³ necesse est⁴ quovis ignobili metallo aut certe expolita⁵ de marmore. dum salutationem a commeantibus venerationem a convi-antibus ut promittis inveniam. Verum cetera lineamenta statue mee quolibetecunque metalli genere in formam convenient. hoc unum a te imperator si fas est scire preopto que erit illa insignis materia. alens. vivificans. atque discernens. ex qua oculi ad videndum. aures ad audiendum.⁶ os lingua ad loquendum et cetera queque informantur. que sensu vigentia salutationes hominum audiant. videant. et intelligant. Nam si hec ista⁷ defuerint. quid refert michi⁸ feminei vultus decorem dari. an simie turpem imaginem aptari? Sed dicis michi. Non erit ignobilis memoria. cum pretereuntes formam hujus modi intuebuntur⁹ et dicent. Hec est illa¹⁰ egregia virgo katerina. que deum suum relinquens hoc tam felici commercio vitam suam. memori evo conservavit. O me tunc infelicem.¹¹ cum me inanibus fabulis vulgi honorabit insania. Veruntamen si sit hec interim inanis recordatio quantumlibet in honorem. dum regio metu pressus¹² hanc michi vulgus venerationem

1485 R ant. 1487 R ant. 1488 R omits ich. 1489 C omits me; drahe, B dreae; toward, C deað. 1490 B meareminnes, C writes as deð mare þ tu munnest.

¹ inserts *tanto*. ² inserts *enim*. ³ C originally *ta*. ⁴ inserts *de*. ⁵ C originally *expoliata*. ⁶ omits *aur. ad aud.* ⁷ C *ista*, scored out. ⁸ *refert michi* transposed. ⁹ C originally *intuebantur*. ¹⁰ omits *illa*. ¹¹ *felicem*. ¹² C originally *presus*.

thy mouth, and thou makest it seem inviting; but I dread that this music may draw me toward death, as doth the mermaid's. But thy flattery and thine anger both avail thee equally.

exibeat. sed aves celi haudquaquam istud verebuntur. dum milvus et corvus¹ undecunque avolantes sedem in me sibi usurpabunt. et immunda digesti cadaveris proluvie² faciem meam innotabunt. Quid interim pueri facturi sunt. qui divinum cause misterium venerari nescientes. huc simul egesturi convenient?³ O decus o michi expetendum⁴ apostasie merito⁵ privilegium.⁶ christum relinquere et demonum cultibus me jubet imperator inherere. Quid tu ad hec imperator? An in diebus meis hec statua insignis erigetur? Erit scilicet ex hac michi vita⁷ jocun-(fol. 181b)-dior. etas productior⁸ aura salubrior census opulentior? Si autem in morte⁹ resolutio corpore hoc decus forme michi instauratur. quero an michi hoc prestare valeat. ut caro mea non videat corruptionem. et libera a vermibus servetur ad resurrectionem? Que interea anime per hanc quam promittis statuam prestabitur beatitudinis corona?¹⁰

Desine ergo imperator. desine talia

jam suadere. que sit scelus etiam

cogitare. Stultum valde est te in

hoc elaborare.¹¹ in quo laboris

nullum poteris emolumentum ad-

Ah al þe helpeð an,

1492 þin olhnunge ⁊ tin eie.

Ful wel ichulle þ þu wite,

ne mahtu, wið na þing,

wenden min heorte

1496 from him þ ich heie,

⁊ aa wule herien.

Bihat al þ þu wult,

þreap þrefter inoh,

1500 ⁊ þreate þ þu beo weri: [1510]

ne mei me wunne ne weole,

ne nan worldes wurðschipe,

1492 R olhnung, C olhtnunge, B þing for þin, R eiei (last i expunged). 1493 B wel ich chulle, R tu hit wite. 1494 B writes ne maht tu wið na whit. 1495 C B wende, C herte. 1496 C fram. 1497 R ant, C ai (aa?) B aa omitted; wulle. 1499 R þreat, B þrep, C þrafter. 1500 R þreat. 1501 C wele. 1502 C B na, C weorlides, R wurdshipe, B wurðshipe.

¹ C originally *cornuus*. ² *pro pluvie*. ³ *convenient*; after this L inserts the words *Aut quid canes commincturos ego commemorem*. ⁴ C originally *expectendum*. ⁵ L *meritum*, C originally the same. ⁶ inserts *pro quo*. ⁷ *michi vita*, transposed. ⁸ C originally *productior*, for which L has *provecior*. ⁹ inserts *hoc*. ¹⁰ inserts *An in secreta quadum celi regione servabitur cum sanctis incorruptibilia premiorum munera perceptura?* ¹¹ C originally *elabore*.

I would have thee to know well, thou mayest not, by no means, turn my heart from Him whom I exalt, and will ever praise. Promise whatever thou wilt, argue as much as thou likest, and threaten till thou art weary: neither joy nor prosperity, nor any worldly honour,

quirere
 Christus me sibi
 sponsam adoptavit.
 ego me christo
 sponsam indisso-
 ciabili federe
 optavi.¹ Ille
 gloria mea.
 ille generositas
 mea: ille amor²
 meus. ille dulcedo
 et dilectio mea.
 Huic semel
 dicata.³
 non rerum
 blandimenta
 me. non
 exquisita
 tormenta

ne mei me nowðer teone
 1504 ne tintreohc turnen
 from mi leofmonnes lue,
 þ ich on leue.
 He haueð iweddeth him to
 1508 mi meiðhad mit tē ring
 of rihte bileaue, [1520]
 ⁊ ich habbe to him
 treoweliche itake me.
 1512 Swa wit beoð ifestnet
 ⁊ iteiet in an,
 ⁊ swa þe cnotte is icnut
 bituhhen unc tweisen,
 1516 þ ne mei hit liste
 ne luðer strengðe nowðer
 of na liuende mon
 leowsin ne leoðien. [1530]
 1520 He is mi lif ⁊ mi lue;
 he is þ gledeð me;
 mi soðe blisse buuen me,
 mi weole ⁊ mi wunne;
 1524 ne nawt ne wilni ich elles.
 Mi swete lif, se swoteliche

1503 C tene. 1504 R tintreo, C tintrehe. 1505 C fra, R leoue monnes, C lefmonnes, B leofmonnes. 1507 C iweddeth. 1508 R mei (e expunged), C meidenhad, R mitte te, C B wið þe. 1509 R treowe for rihte. 1510 R ant, C And. 1511 C treweliche, B treowliche. 1512 C we, R ifestnet (sic), C ifestned, B iuestnet. 1513 R writes ⁊ in an iteiet. 1514 R ant, C cnot for cnotte. 1515 R bitweonen, C B us, R twa. 1516 R me (i added from above), C luste. 1517 R strengeðe. 1518 R writes of na mon liuende. 1519 B lousin, C leosen, leðien. 1520 R ant. 1521 C gladieð, B gleadeð. 1522 R bunen, C buue, B bue. 1523 B omits first mi, C wele, R ant, B ⁊ al mi. 1524 R wiln, C wilne. 1525 R lue for lif, swa, C softeliche (o written over w, f over o).

¹ coaptavi.² amator.³ dicatam.

neither suffering nor torment, can turn me from the love of my beloved, in whom I believe. He has wedded himself to my virgin state with the ring of true belief, and I have truly devoted myself to him. So are we united and bound into one, and the knot is so knit betwixt us two, that neither craft nor cruel force of any living man may loosen or slacken it. He is my life and my love; and he it is that gladdeneth me; my true bliss (in the world) above me, my wealth and my joy; nor do I desire anything else. My sweet life, so sweetly doth

ab ejus	he smeccheð me ⁊ smealleð,
confessione ¹	þ al me þuncheð sauure
unquam	1528 ⁊ softe þ he sent me.
poterunt	Stute nu þenne, ⁊ stow þe,
exterrere.	⁊ stille þine wordes, [1541]
	for ha beoð me unwurð ;
	1532 þ wite þu to wisse."

Tunc maxentius ait. Consulere quidem juventuti tue si adquevisses virgo decreveram² sed quia non solum obstinata mente oblatos honores. sed et salutem et vitam te³ parvi pendere video: ecce ego austerioris judicii verbo consilium do.⁴ ut tu sane aut diis nostris sacrifices. aut crudeli morte intereas. Cui puella respondit. Cum ipse rex celorum deus et dominus meus jesus christus. pro me a diabolo temptari a udeis (*sic*)⁵ comprehendi. ab iniquo judice morti adjudicari non renuit.⁶ dignum est ut et ego pro ejus nomine non solum penas. sed si sic necesse est etiam mortem sustineam. Ipse se⁷ pro me domino patri sacrificium dedit. gaudium michi est.⁸ ut et ego illi⁹ me hostiam gratam offerre merear. Tu nunc gloriaris quod in me et in servis dei¹⁰ potestatem habeas. veniet tempus et prope est cum diabolus suam in te potestatem exerceat. et penas quas servis christi ad tempus ingeris. tu in eternis cruciatibus recipies. Ego autem tanto me gratiorem futuram esse confido. quanto pro ejus nomine momentanea. tormentorum genera sustineam. Tu nunc iniquo judicio me solam queris perdere. fateor sane quia sola ad christum non propero.¹¹ Nam de hoc (fol. 182a) palatio tuo. numerosa turba jam christo annumerata est.

1526 C smeccheð, R ant, C smelleð. 1528 R ant. 1529 C þu for nu, R ant. 1532 R þat.

¹ C originally *confessine*. ² C originally *decrueram*. ³ omits *te*. ⁴ C *do* added on margin, for which L has *inibo*. ⁵ iudeis. ⁶ *rennuit*. ⁷ *sese*. ⁸ *michi est* transposed. ⁹ C originally *ille*. ¹⁰ *tuis for dei*. ¹¹ *pergo*.

he taste and smell to me, that all seems to me delicious and soft that he sends me. Stop thou then, and desist, and silence thy words, for to me they are worthless; that know thou

Hic¹ tirannus ira et furore inebria-

þe king ne cuþe na wit,

ah bigon to cwakien,

ƿ nuste hwet seggen.

tus beatam virginem jussit a mi-

1536 Het on wode wise

strupen hire steortnaket,

ƿ beaten hire bare flesch

ƿ hire freoliche bodi [1550]

nistris comprehendi et expoliatam

scorpionibus cedi

1540 mit enottede schurgen ;

dehinc obscuro carceris ergastulo claudi. Ubi cum duceretur. constanter tiranno ait. Ego plane in ejus nomine libens flagellis cedi ego tenebrosi carceris ergastulo² angustiari non refugio.³ Tu michi tenebras ingeris. certum sit tibi quia per has lux perpetua michi paratur tibi autem tenebre eternelles succedunt.⁴ Tunc jussa tirannica⁵

ministri explentes ferreis virgis

ƿ swa me dude sone,

þ hire leoffliche lich

liþerede al o blode :

corpus tenerum lacerabant.

et dum verberando alii deficiebant: alii succedebant.

Manet interim virgo laudans⁶ in 1544 ah heo hit lihtliche aber,

verberibus

ƿ lahinde þolede.

et deo gratias agens. Sciscitatur tirannus an verberibus infracta regiis mandatis obediat. ut relaxetur a pena. Sed virgo feriente robustior. imperante sublimior. sciscitanti constanter respondit. O canis inpu-

1533 C [p]e (*space left for p*), R He for þe king, nawt for na wit. 1535 R ant, C hwat. 1536 CB o, B wodi. 1538 R ant, B beare, C flesch (*s inserted from above*). 1539 C freliche. 1540 CB wið, C enotte, R scurgen, C schurgen (*r inserted from above*). 1541 C And, B ant, C men, B swa me transposed, C dide. 1542 C leffliche. 1543 B a for o. 1544 R ant for ah, B hihtliche (*second h altered from t*). 1545 R ant, þuldeliche for lahinde.

¹ Sic. ² ergastulo in C supplied on margin. ³ instead of *erg. ang. non ref.* L has the words *horrorem amplecti gaudio qui corpus suum pro me dedit ad flagella qui mundum pugillo continens carceris angustia claustra non refugit.* ⁴ succedent. ⁵ C originally *tirannita.* ⁶ laudabil indistinct.

assuredly." The king did not know what to do nor what to say, but began so tremble. He commanded, in mad wise, to strip her stark naked, and beat her bare flesh and her fair body with knotty scourges. And this was done forthwith, so that her lovely body was all in a lather with blood; but she bore it lightly, and suffered it smiling. After this he com-

dentissime. fac quodcunque nequissima mens excogitare potest. ego per penas illi me reddere habeo. qui me per penas redimere dignatus est. Talibus cruciatibus quandoque¹ videbis me cum sanctis in gloria. tu vero eternis cruciatibus deditus dolebis tanta et talia in me et in ceteris famulis christi preualuisse.

Clauditur ex jussu² virgo regio³

Het hire þrefter
kasten in cwalmbhus,

in carcere tenebroso fame et siti

1548 ʒ bed halden hire þrin;
þ ha nowðer ne ete, [1560]
lesse ne mare,
tweolf dahes fulle.

bis senis diebus crucianda⁴

sub prefinito edicto. ne celi lumen⁵ videat. ne aliud quam tenebras horrentes⁶ inspiciat. Sed ne in his⁷ christus famulam suam deseruit. assunt illi angeli de celo confortantes eam et inestimabili claritatis fulgore locum penitus irradiantes. adeo ut custodes qui a⁸ foris excubias observabant pre timore in stuporem mentis converterentur. Nullus tamen horum. tiranno nuntiare quid viderat presumpsit pro feritate sua.

Accidit autem ut maxentius⁹ pro
causis instantibus extrema re-
gionis confinia adiret.

1552 Bicom to þ te king,
Maxence, moste fearen;
ʒ ferde into þe firreste
ende of Alixandre.

Pernotuit interea regine¹⁰ crudelissima viri sententia de beata katerina. qualiter innocentem virginem per sapientes seculi tractasset et quo-

1546 C þrafter. 1547 B kestten, C B i, R in a cwalmbhus. 1548 R ant, C het for bed. 1549 B nowder, R omits ne. 1550 C lasse, B leasse. 1551 C twelf daies. 1552 C [B]icom (space left for B), omits to. 1553 C faren, B fearren. 1554 R ant, omits þe, first, C ferreste.

¹ C originally *quanque*. ² inserts *imperatoris*. ³ *regia*. ⁴ C originally *cruciando*. ⁵ *celi lumen* transposed. ⁶ *tenebras* (sic) *horrendas* transposed. ⁷ *hic* for *in his*. ⁸ omits *a*. ⁹ *tirannus* for *maxentius*. ¹⁰ C originally *regne*.

manded that she should be cast into the torture-house, and kept therein; so that she should neither eat, less nor more, full twelve days. It happened that the king, Maxence, had to go on a journey; and (he) journeyed into the farthest end of Alexandria. The Queen, Augusta,

modo illi puellaribus verbis¹ evicti et ad fidem christi conversi. gloriosa (fol. 182*b*) passione de mundo emigrassent. De quo facto vir ejus indignatus. dum virgo diis libamina offerre noluisset (*sic*) diris cesam scorpionibus sub arta custodia carceris jussit recludi. ubi per duos denos² dies juxta crudelis regis sententiam puella innocens nullo cibi alimento frueretur. Audiens regina ferale conjugis edictum. licet gentili errore teneretur. tamen animi ingenita³ bonitate tenere etatis sortem miseratur iniquam.

Fit anxia videre faciem virginis 1556 þe ewen Auguste longede
et colloqui. for to seon þis meiden,

sed ne id persentiscat vir ejus vehementer formidat. Talia meditando. regiam domum solitaria deambulabat. Fit illi optato eventu obviam princeps militie quidam nomine porphirius. vir strenuus. quantum ad temporalem seculi dignitatem consilio prudens. fide promptus. amici secretum intra claustra⁴ silentii⁵ constantissime servans.

Hunc ad se evocans imperatrix ꝥ cleopede to hire Porphire,
augusta. enihtene prince, [1571]

aperit⁶ voluntatem suam simulque postulat. ut amotis aut placatis custodibus carceris. visu et colloquio virginis potiretur. Nam ut tibi inquit porphiri que me sollicitant. aperiā.

multa hac in nocte per visum 1560 ꝥ seide him a sweuen
passa sum. þ hire wes ischawet :

quorum ambigua revelatio me adeo suspensam reddit. ut quocunque se horum exitus sive in adversum sive in prosperum vertat. eorum sane eventum mature superventurum certissime cognoscam.

1557 B *te for to, seo, C meiden katerine.* 1558 R *ant, C cleopede, R porfirie.* 1560 R *ant.*
1561 C *þat, was, ischeawed.*

¹ *verbis* inserted by later hand after *evicti.* ² *duodenos.* ³ *ingenti.* ⁴ omits *claustra.*

⁵ altered by later hand into *silentium.* ⁶ inserts *ei.*

longed to see this maiden, and called to her Porphirius, the chief of the knights, and told

Videbam sane hanc de qua loquimur puellam intra septa domicilii sedentem inestimabili claritate circumfultam et viros dealbatos circumsedentes. quorum vultus inspicere pre claritate haud poteram. Illa autem me intuens jubet propius accedere. et de manu unius horum qui assistebant coronam auream accipiens capiti meo imponebat. dicens michi hec verba. Ecce tibi o imperatrix corona e celo mittitur. a domino meo jesu christo. Qua ex visione suspensa nec somnum capere. nec hore unius mo-(fol. 183a)-mento quiescere possum

þ ha seh sitten
þis meiden mid monie
1564 hwhite wurðliche men,
t meidnes inohe
al abuten biset;
t heo wes hire seolf þer
1568 imong, as hire þuhte, [1580]
t te an toc ane
guldene crune,
t sette on hire heauet,
1572 t seide to hire þus:
"Haue, cwen, ane crune
isent te of heouene."
t for þi, ha seide,
1576 hire luste swiðe Ʒeorne
speoken mit te meiden.

ita cor tremulum me ad videndam virginem¹ exagitat. Per te ergo michi viam ad puellam eundi et videndi facultatem dare precor o porphiri.

Cui porphirius respondit. Tuum est domina augusta imperare quod vis. michi perficere que jubeas animo constat.

Porphire Ʒettede hire [1590]
þal ha Ʒirnde;

Unde et me ad hoc ipsum promptum invenies famulum. licet imperatoris iram sciam pro certo me non posse vitare. si rescierit. Nam de

1562 B sitte. 1563 B Ʒeos, C wið. 1564 C writes hwhite meidnes inohe, B wurliche. 1565 R ant, meidenes, C writes wurðliche men. 1566 R ant al, C omits al, C B abute. 1567 B omits hire, C was, self. 1569 R ant, B t þ te, C B a for ane. 1571 C upon, heaued. 1573 C B a. 1574 C isend, R from for of. 1575 R ant, C And. 1577 C speke, B speoke, C B wið, C þis for te, B þe. 1578 R Porfirie, C omits hire. 1579 R heo, C Ʒernede, B Ʒirnde.

¹ *videndam virginem*, transposed.

him a dream that had appeared to her: that she saw this maiden sitting with many venerable men clothed in white, and maidens not a few placed all round; and she was herself among them, as she thought, and one took a crown of gold, and set it upon her head, and spoke to her thus: "Receive, O Queen, a crown sent to thee from heaven." And therefore she said she desired most earnestly to speak with the maiden. Porphirius granted all that she desired;

puella de qua loqueris crudeliter ab imperatore actum constat. quia et ego interfui. quando ab externis¹ finibus sapientes convocatos. disceptare adversus puellam constituit. et promissis muneribus si victam redderent. vehementer incitavit. Illi autem adversus eam stare nec hora una² prevaluerunt. sed ilico conversi. deum hunc quem puella predicabat publice fatebantur. Unde et indignatus imperator. omnes ignibus tradi imperavit³ In quibus illud mirabile contigisse vidi et ego. quod in his omnibus nec in capillis aut in vestimentis ulla ignis lesio comparuit. Qua⁴ re fateor o regina. ex illo die sic verba illius quibus ipsa deos nostros exprobravit. sic inquam cor meum titillando sollicitant.⁵ ut quidquid diis exhibemus totum frivolum reputem et inane. Unde nisi lex nostra christianorum sectam penitus abhorruisset facile quis poterat me ad cultum christi impellere. Sed tu quoniam⁶ opportune ut puto consilium meum preveniendo communes. quid restat nisi ut⁷ custodes carceris mercede ad consilium nostrum inflectamus. ut et ipsi celare hoc ipsum studeant? Nec mora. porphirius ad consensum custodes emollivit.

Igitur de prima vigilia noctis	1580	ƿ leadde hire anan, i ƿe niht,
regina et porphirius procedunt ad		to ƿe cwarterne.
carcerem. et introeuntes viderunt		Ah swuch leome ƿ liht
carcerem inestimabili claritate		leitede ƿrinne,
undique choruscare. cujus ex	1584	ƿ ne mahten ha nawt
fulgore perterriti corruerunt in		lokin ƿer aƿeines:
terram. (fol. 183b) Mox inestima-		ah feollen ba, for fearlac,
bilis odor suavitatis naribus ⁸ infu-	1588	dun duuelrihtes.
		Ah an se swiƿe swote sméal
		com anan ƿrefter, [1601]

1580 R ant, C iƿe niht anan. 1582 R ant. 1583 C ƿrin. 1584 C ƿat, mihten, R heo, omits nawt. 1585 C loken, B loki, ƿear, R toƿeines, C aƿeines. 1586 C felle, R farlac, B fearleac. 1587 R adun. 1588 R swa, omits swiƿe, C smal. 1589 B ƿer efter.

¹ extremis. ² hora una transposed. ³ precepit. ⁴ inserts ex. ⁵ C originally sollicitam. ⁶ tu quoniam transposed. ⁷ C ut inserted from above. ⁸ inserts eorum.

and conducted her in the night immediately to the prison. But such brightness and light shone therein, that they might not look toward it; but both fell, through fear, down headlong. But such an exquisitely sweet odour immediately succeeded, which chased away

sus. ad spem meliorem confortavit.	þ fleide awei þ fearlac ʒ frourede ham sone.
Surgite inquit virgo egregia. et	1592 " Ariseð," quoð Katerine,
ne paveatis. quia et vos vocat	" ne drede ʒe nawiht,
christus ¹ ad palmam. Surgentes	for þe deore drihtin haueð 1596 idiht ow ba þe blisfule crune of his icorene."
autem conteplati (<i>sic</i>) ² sunt puel-	þa ha weren iseten up, [1610] sehen as þe engles
lam sedentem. et angelos dei	wið smirles of aromaz 1600 smireden hire wunden,
plagas et carnis scissuras ³ aroma-	ʒ bieoden swa þe bruchen of hire bodi, al tobroken
tico unguine circumfoventes. qui-	of þe beatinge,
bus caro et cutis superficies in	1604 þ tet flesch ʒ te fel wurðen swa feire,
admirabilem decorem vertebantur.	þ ha awundreden ham swiðe of þ sihðe. [1620]

Vident etiam et seniores circumsedentes. quorum vultus inedicibili lucis candore emicabant. Horum ab uno qui astabat christi virgo coronam accepit velut aureo colore rutilantem. et regine capiti⁴ imposuit. Dixitque circumsedentibus senioribus.⁵ Hec est⁶ illa domini mei de qua postulaveram regina. quam milicie et corone nostre a deo consortem⁷ michi depoposceram. Sed et hunc qui assistit militem in nostre sortis numerum ascribi volumus. Ad hec illi inquirunt. O pretiosa christi margarita. super his preces tuas ille suscepit. pro

1590 R farlac. 1591 R ant. 1592 R B qð, C q. 1593 R omits ʒe. 1596 C hise. 1598 R writes isehen as an engel, C te. 1600 C smereden, wundes. 1601 R B ant, C bruches. 1602 B of hire of hire (*sic*). 1603 R beating, B beattunge. 1604 C þat, te for tet, B tet for te. 1605 B worðen, se, R swa swiðe feire. 1607 R þe, C þat.

¹ vocat christus transposed. ² contemplati. ³ carnis scissuras transposed. ⁴ regine capiti transposed. ⁵ C originally honoribus. ⁶ omits est. ⁷ C originally sortem.

the fear and comforted them forthwith. "Arise," said Katherine, "dread ye nothing, for the dear Lord has appointed for you both the blissful crown of his elect." When they were raised up, they saw how the angels with aromatic ointment anointed her wounds, and treated with such care the hurts of her body, all lacerated with the beating, that the flesh and the skin became so fair, that they wondered greatly at the sight. But this maiden

cujus amore flagella et carceris horrorem non timuisti. sed et eterno federe ab ipso collatum tibi esse constat. ut pro quibuscunque ipsius majestatem interpellaveris inpetratum reportes.¹ Hos interim qui visitationis² gratia tibi assistunt scito inter primicias laborum tuorum jam ascriptos³ quos triumphali passione ante te celica regna excipient⁴ coronatos. Mox milicie agone peracto. te ille immortalis sponsus intra vite eterne januam suscipiet. ubi tibi modulis dulce sonoris celica organa resonabunt. ubi clarissima virginum turba inter lilia⁵ roseis floribus vernantia sequuntur agnum quocunque ierit. His dictis.

beata virgo reginam consolari cepit dicens. Iam regina forti animo esto. quia post hoc triduum itura es ad deum. Ne ergo momentanea penarum genera formides. quia non sunt condigne passionες hujus temporis ad intermi-(fol. 184a)-nabilem gloriam que talibus pro christo penis emeretur.⁶ Ne ergo verearis regis temporalis aut mortalis sponsi.

1608 Ah þis meiden bigon
to bealden ham baðe,
ʒ to þe cwen seide,
“Cwen, icoren of Iesu Crist,
1612 beo nu stalewurðe,
for þu schalt stihen biforen me
to drihtin in heouene.
Ne beo þu nawiht offruht
1616 for pinen, þ̅ fareð forð [1630]
in an hondhwile;
for wið swucche þu schalt
buggen ʒ biȝeoten
1620 þe endelese blissen.
Ne dred tu nawt to leauen
þin eorðliche lauerd

qui hodie in sua superbit potentia.⁷ et cras putreda et vermis futurus est ne verearis inquam ejus consortium aspernari.

1608 C As for Ah; tis. 1609 R omits baðe. 1612 B stealewurðe. 1613 C stihe, R biuoren, C birefore, B biuore. 1614 C heuene. 1616 B þe feareð. 1617 B honthwile. 1618 C swuche. 1619 C biȝeten ʒ buggen, R ant, B biȝeote. 1620 R omits þe, B endelease. 1621 R leauen (last en expunged), C leosen for leauen.

¹ C originally *reportabis*. ² C originally *visitatonis*. ³ C originally *ascribatos*. ⁴ *accipient*. ⁵ C originally *lilia*. ⁶ L *emercatur*, C originally *emeratur*. ⁷ *superbit potentia* transposed.

began to encourage them both, and said to the Queen, “O Queen, chosen of Jesus Christ, be now steadfast, for thou shalt ascend before me to the Lord in heaven. Be thou no whit afraid for pain, that departeth in a little while; for with such thou shalt purchase and acquire

pro rege eterno et immortalī
sponso domino iesu christo. qui
pro caducis honoribus donat eterna
premia. pro transitoris largitur
sine fine mansura.

Ad hec verba beate virginis por-
phirius

quia prime cohortis prefecturam agebat. et magis¹ rerum posses-
sionibus pollebat

cepit rogando insistere. quenam
illa essent premia que suis christus
militibus pro dampnis
temporalibus recompensabit.

Cui virgo. Audi inquit porphiri.
et animadverte.

for Iesu Crist, þ is king
1624 of þ eche kinedom;
þe ȝelt for þe false
wurðschipe of þis world [1640]
heoueneriches wunne;
1628 for þing þ sone alið,
weole þ aa lesteð." *Feng þa Porphire*

to freinen þis meiden
1632 hwucche weren þe meden,
ʒ te endelese lif
þ godd haueð ileuet
his icorene, for þe luren
1636 ʒ tis worldliche lif, [1650]
þ ha leoseð for þe luue
of rihte bileaue.
Heo onswerede ʒ seide,
1640 "Beo nu þenne, Porphire,
stille ʒ understont me :

quia hominem mortalem quamlibet sit potens. quamlibet dives. quam-
libet incolumis. nulla unquam tanta vigilantia. tanta circumspectio
eum² prevenire³ valet. ut quacunq̃ sit conditione a statu suo haud

1623 R þe, B þet. 1624 R omits þ. 1625 C þ for first þe, ȝeld. 1626 R wurschipe, B wurdchipe. 1627 C heueneriches, B heoueriches. 1629 C wele, ai, B a, C lasteð. 1630 B Wende for Feng, R porfirie. 1631 R freinin. 1632 C B were. 1633 R writes ant tet endeles lif. 1634 R ilenet, C ileaued. 1635 C his leue icorene, R lure. 1636 R worldlich, B worldliche (*first l inserted from above*). 1637 R heo, 8e for þe. 1639 B onswerede, R ant. 1640-1641 *entirely omitted by R, C understood, B te for me.*

¹ *magnis.*² *circumspectio eum* transposed.³ *preunire.*

endless joys. Fear not to leave thy earthly lord for Jesus Christ, who is king of the everlasting kingdom; who giveth instead of the false honour of this world the joy of the kingdom of heaven; for a thing that soon falleth away, happiness that ever lasteth." Then began Porphirius to ask this maiden of what nature were the rewards and the endless life that God hath granted to his elect, for the loss of this worldly life, which they lose for the love of true faith. She answered and said, "Be now still then, Porphirius, and understand me :

quaquam immutetur. Intuere diligentius quam brevis est vita hominis. ipse rerum divicie quamlibet longo tempore et magno labore quesite. quam celeri lapsu effluunt. Quid enim forenses querimonie aliud clamant. nisi rerum patrimonia sublata? Animadvertite an ipse urbes ejusdem dignitatis statum adhuc retinent. quo primo tempore fundate constiterant. Quod si ita est immo quia ita est: nunc in adversum mentis defige intuitum. Et quia interrogando sciscitaris que sunt et quanta illa premia que suis christus pro transitoriis¹ rependit. sic accipe. Porro si hec que sub celo sunt tam fluxa atque fugitiva aliquo modo forent expetenda. cur non multo magis que super celos sunt firma et stabilia mentes humanas non oblectent. presertim cum illa nec ad votum possunt retineri. ista semel accepta (fol. 184b) ultra non possunt amitti? Mundus iste velut carcer est tenebrosus. in quo nullus ita nascitur. ut non moriatur. illa superna patria pro qua fit mundi contemptus.

velut civitas est

Constu bulden a burh,
inwið i þin heorte,
1644 al abuten bitrumet
wið a deorewurðe wal, [1660]
schininde, ⁊ schenre,
of ðimstanes steapre
1648 þen is eni steorre;
⁊ euch bold þrinwið
briht as hit bearnde,
⁊ leitinde al on leie;
1652 ⁊ al þ̅ terin is

1642 B [C]onstu (*space left for C*), R B bur. 1643 B omits i. 1644 R ah al, C B abute, C bituined. 1645 C derewurðe, B deorepurðe (*sic*). 1646 R schinin, C schinende, R B ant. 1647 R writes þen eni w (*w expunged*) ðimstanes steapre. 1648 C omits is, B ei for eni. 1649 R ant, B bolt. 1650 R bernde, C bearninde were for bearnde. 1651 B leitede, C B o. 1652 R ant, C And, þat.

¹ C originally *transtoriis*.

Canst thou, within thy heart, build (imagine) a city inclosed all round with a precious wall, shining, and brighter, of gems, more brilliant than any star is; and every mansion within it bright as if it were burning and blazing all in flame; and all that is within it

- glistinde ƿ gleaminde,
 as hit were seoluer
 oðer gold smeate; [1670]
 1656 istenet euch strete
 mid deorewurðe stanes,
 of misliche heowes,
 imenget togederes,
 1660 isliket ƿ ismaket
 as eni gles smeðest;
 bute sloh ƿ slec,
 eauer iliche sumerlich;
 1664 ƿ alle þe burhmen
 seouen siðes brihtre [1680]
 þen beo þe sunne,
 gleowinde of euch gleo,
 1668 ƿ a mare iliche glead?
 for nawiht ne derueð ham;
 ne nawiht ne wonteð ham
 of al þ ha wilneð
 1672 oðer mahen wilnin;
 alle singinde somet,
 ase lif leouie,
 euch an mid oðere; [1690]
 1676 alle pleinde somet,
- sole numquam indigens ubi nulla¹
- inquietant.² sed perhennis leticia.
- jocunditas eterna. felicitas regnat
- sempiterna.³

1653 C glistende, R ant. 1654 C seluer. 1655 C smeðe. 1656 C istanet, B Isteamet.
 1657 C B wið. 1658 C mislich. 1660 R ant; C writes ƿ isliket ƿ ismeðet. 1661 C glas.
 1662 C wiðute, B slech (c added from above) for slec. 1664 R ant. 1665 C seuen siðe,
 B seoue siðe. 1666 B omits þe. 1667 R gleowunge, C gleowinge, (second g expunged; d
 above it). 1668 R euer for a, C ai, glade. 1670 C omits first ne, B nawhit. 1671 R heo,
 B wulleð for wilneð. 1672 R oder, B mahe, C wilnen. 1673 C singende, somen. 1674
 R as, C leui, B leoui. 1675 C B wið, C oðer, B oder. 1676 B pleinde, C somen.

¹ inserts here the words *turbat adversitas nulla necessitas angustat molestia nulla.*

² *inquietat.*

³ *perpetua* for *sempiterna.*

glittering and gleaming, as if it were silver or pure gold; every street paved with precious stones, of various hues, mingled together, and polished and smoothed as the smoothest glass; without slough or mud, always equally summerlike; and all the citizens seven times brighter than the sun can be, rejoicing with every kind of music, and evermore alike glad? for nothing molests them; nothing is wanting to them of all that they wish or can desire; all singing together, like true lovers (?) each with other; all playing together, all rejoicing together, ever

- alle lahinde somet,
 eauer iliche lusti,
 bute linnunge ;
 1680 for þer is a liht,
 ⁊ leitinde leome.
 Ne niht nis ter neauer
 ne neauer na nowcin ;
 1684 ne eileð þer na mon
 nowðer sorhe ne sar, [1700]
 nowðer heate ne chele,
 nowðer hunger ne þurst,
 1688 ne nan ofþunchunge :
 for nis ter nawt bittres,
 ah is al batewil,
 swottre ⁊ swettre
 1692 þen eauer eni halewi,
 i þ heouenliche lond,
 i þ endelese lif,
 i þe wunnen ⁊ te weolen
 1696 þurhwuniende : [1711]
 ⁊ monie ma murhðen
 þen alle men mahten
 wið hare muð munnen,
 1700 ⁊ tellen wið tungen,
 þah ha aa talden ;

1677 C lahende, somen. 1678 R euer, ilich. 1679 R aa bute, linunge, C blinnunge,
 B lungunge. 1680 R aa liht *transposed*. 1681 R ant, C ⁊ a leitinde. 1682 B þer. 1683
 B newcin. 1684 R eilet, B eilleð, R omits na. 1687 R *between* hunger and ne, *the words*
ne chele scraped out but still legible, C þrust. 1688 C ofþunchinge. 1689 B þear,
 R omits nawt. 1690 R bate- or hate-wil, C swetewil, B bratewil. 1691 R swote ant,
 C swottre *for* swettre. 1692 R euer, B ei, C haliwei, B healewi. 1693 C þat, heuenliche.
 1694 R endeles. 1695 R ant. 1697 R murðen. 1698 C mihten. 1699 B munien.
 1700 B tunge. 1701 R a *for* ha, C ai, B a.

alike merry, without ceasing ; for there is always light, and shining brightness. It is never
 night there, nor is there ever any annoyance ; nor does there either sorrow or sore, heat or
 cold, hunger or thirst, or any remorse, afflict any man ; for there is nothing bitter there,
 but all is gratifying (?), sweeter and sweeter than ever any balm in that heavenly country,
 in that endless life, in the joy and the felicity that continueth for ever : and many more
 pleasures than all men could with their mouths mention, and with their tongues tell, though

- þe neauer ne linneð
 nowðer ne lesseð,
 1704 ah leasteð aa mare,
 se lengre se mare. [1720]
 þef þu þet witen wult
 hwucche wihtes þer beon,
 1708 þer as al þis blisse is,
 þef þer is orcost
 oðer eni ahte,
 ich þe onswerie :
 1712 Al þ̅ eauer oht is,
 al is þer ihwer ;
 ʒ hwetse noht wurð nis,
 þ̅ nis ter nohwer. [1730]
 1716 þef þu eskest : Hwet oht ?
 Nan eorðlich ehe
 ne mei hit seon, ich segge,
 ne nan eorðlich eare
 1720 herenin ne heren,
 ne heorte þenchen of mon,
 ʒ hure, meale wið muð,
 hwet te worldes wealdent
 1724 haueð iʒarket alle þeo [1740]
 þe him ariht luuieð."
- Si queris quid ibi sit ubi tanta et
 talis beatudo (!)¹ consistit. aliter
 dici non potest. nisi quicquid
 boni est ibi est et quicquid mali
 est nusquam est.
 Quod inquis bonum ?
 Illud est dico. quod oculus non
 uidit.² nec auris audivit.
 nec in cor hominis ascendit.
 que preparavit deus diligenti-
 bus se.

1702 C ne for þe, R þ, C blunneð, B limieð (?). 1703 B ne ne leassið, C lasseð. 1704 C lasteð, C ai, B a. 1705 R so—so. 1706 C ʒif, B get, C B wite. 1707 B þear, R bon. 1708 B þear, C omits al; tis, R writes þer as þis blisse is al. 1709 C ʒif, B þear. 1710 B ei. 1711 B onswerie. 1712 C god for oht. 1713 C ter, eihwer, B iwer. 1714 R ah for ʒ, C And, hwat, R so, R wurd, B omits wurð. 1715 R omits þ, B þer, C nowhwer. 1716 C writes ʒif þu askest hwat oht (*last letter expunged*). 1717 C þat nan, B eorðliche. 1718 R iseon. 1719 B eorðliche. 1720 C herenen. 1721 R of mon þenchen. 1722 R ant, ure. 1723 C hwat, R weldent. 1724 C to for alle. 1725 C þ, riht.

¹ beatitudo.

² non uidit oculus.

they spoke for ever; nor do they ever cease or diminish, but last for evermore, the longer the more. If thou wouldst further know what kind of beings there are, where all this happiness is, whether there is wealth or any possessions, I answer thee: All whatsoever is good, is there everywhere; and whatsoever is worthless, is nowhere there. If thou askest, what possessions? I say, that no earthly eye may see them, nor any earthly ear listen to or hear, nor may heart of man conceive, and, much less, speak with mouth, what the Ruler of the world has prepared for those who love him rightly." Porphirius and Augusta were

Ad hanc felicitatem quidam divitiis constipatus anhelabat. dicens. Usque quo me deus in hoc mundi¹ squalentis pulvere retines? Usque² adeo sitientem³ ad te spiritum intra carnis ergastulum reprimis? Usque quo prolongatur incolatus meus? Hec est illa desiderabilis patria. ubi non est luctus neque clamor. neque dolor. sed absterget deus omnem lacrimam ab oculis sanctorum. de qua dicit unus ex suis. satiabor dum manifestabitur gloria tua. Parva quidem sunt que dico ad ea que visu et rerum veritate experieris. si fidelis usque in finem perseveraveris.⁴

Iam leti de civium supernorum
presenti visione. et beate virginis
consolatione. regina simul et por-
phirius procedunt de carcere.

parati ad omnia que tortor insanus
poterit inferre pro christi nomine
sustinenda.

Fit questio a militibus quo in loco
porphirius cum regina pernoc-
tasset.⁵ Quibus ipse ait.

Quo ego pernoctassem? vos ne

Porphire ⁊ Auguste
wurðen, of þeos wordes,
1728 se swiðe wilcweme,
⁊ se hardi for þi
þ ha hefden isehen
sihðen of heouene,
1732 þ ha wenden from hire,
abuten þe midniht,
þarewe to alle þe wa [1750]
þ eni mon mahte ham þarkin
1736 to drehen for drihtin.
Freineden Porphire
alle his cnihtes
hwer he hefde, wið þe cwen,
1740 iwunet ⁊ iwiket,
swa longe of þe niht;

1726 R Porfirie, B [P]orphire (*space left for P*), RB ant. 1727 C iwarðen, B worðen
for wurðen, C þes. 1728 R so, C welcweme. 1729 R so. 1730 R omits ha. 1731
R sihen. 1732 C fram. 1733 CB abute, C omits þe. 1734 R þarew, B þarowe, al. þ.
1735 B ei, C mihte, R omits ham, C þarken, B þarki. 1736 B drehe. 1737 R porfirie,
1738 R writes þa his cnihtes alle, C hise. 1739 C hefden. 1740 R ant, C iwaket.
1741 C se.

¹ C originally *mundo*.

² inserts *quo*.

³ C originally *scientem*.

⁴ C originally *perseveraris*.

⁵ C originally *pernocassed*.

made, by these words, so well pleased, and were so emboldened, because that they had seen visions of heaven, that they returned from her, about midnight, ready to suffer for the Lord all the woe that any man might prepare for them. All his knights asked Porphirius where he had stopped and tarried, with the queen, so much of the night; and Porphirius

quesieritis. Etenim summum vobis

et utile bonum erit si in consiliis

meis adquiescitis. quod contigit

michi non terrenis sed divinis ex-

cubiis invigilasse¹ quibus michi

via vitae revelata est et vere deita-

tis cognitio reserata.

Quo circa si mei estis. et (fol.

185a) gaudere mecum² optatis.

idola vana que hucusque coluimus

relinquite.

† Porphire ham seide,

“Hwer ich habbe iwiket

1744 ich on wel þ þe witen, [1761]

for wel ow schal iwurðen,

þef þe me wulleð

lustnin † leuen;

1748 for nabbe ich nawt þeos niht

i worldliche wecchen,

ah habbe in heouenliche iwaket,

þer as me rihte mi bileaue,

1752 þer me unwreah me þe wei,

þ leadeð to liue, [1770]

þer as me liueð aa

in blisse buten euch bale,

1756 i wunne buten euch wa.

For þi, þef þe beoð mine,

as under me isette,

† wulleð alle wið me

1760 in eche murhðe wunien,

leaeuð to leuen lengre

on þes lease maumez,

þ merreð ow † alle þeo [1780]

1764 þ ham to luteð;

1742 R B ant, C And, R porfirie, C Porphire (P altered from p). 1743 R hwer so ich, C iwaket. 1745 C wurðen. 1746 C þif. 1747 R heren for leuen. 1748 R nabb, C þis, B teos. 1749 R omits i; iweccet. 1750 R omits in, C heuenliche. 1751 R mi for me, R B omit mi, B þear as me þear as me (sic), R bileaue schawde me, C writes þer is al mi rihte bileaue. 1752 B þear, C men for first me, R unwreh. 1753 B to þ lif, C lif. 1754 R B omit as, C men, ai, B a. 1755 C B i, B bute. 1756 C buten euch bale wa (euch bale blotted out), B omits euch. 1757 C þif, beon. 1758 R iset, B isete. 1759 R ant. 1761 R leaued, C leue. 1762 C B o, R þeos, C þes mix † lease, R mawmez. 1763 C þat, B þe, R merrið, B mearreð, R ow alle † þeo. 1764 B þe, R writes þ to heom lutið.

¹ C originally invigilassem.

² gaudere mecum transposed.

said to them, “Where I have stopped I grant gladly that ye should know, for it shall be well with you, if you will listen to me and believe; for I have not this night watched in worldly watchings, but (I) have (watched) in heavenly (ones), there where my faith was corrected, the way discovered to me, which leadeth to life, where men live for ever in blessedness without any evil, in joy without any sorrow. Therefore, if ye be my friends, as ye are placed under me, and wish all to dwell with me in everlasting joy, cease to believe longer on these false idols, which destroy you and all those who bow to them; and turn to the

et unum deum qui
omnia et nos inter omnia
creavit.
filiumque ejus
jesum christum
credentes
adorate.

quia ipse est deus et dominator
omnium seculorum. In cujus
potestate constat universalis
machina mundi.

qui credentes
eterna
beati-
tudine
remunerat.

ƿ wendeð to þe wealdent,
þ̅ al þe world wrahte,
godd heouenlich feader,
1768 euch godes ful ;
ƿ heieð ƿ herieð
his an deorewurðe sune,
Iesu Crist hatte ;
1772 ƿ te hali gast, hare beire luue,
þe lihteð of ham baðe, [1791]
ƿ limeð togederes,
swa þ̅ nan ne mei
1776 sundrin from oðere ;
alle þreo an godd,
almihtī ouer al !
for he halt in his hond—
1780 þ̅ is, wisseð ƿ wealt—
þe heouene ƿ te eorðe,
þe sea, ƿ te sunne, [1800]
ƿ alle ischepene þing,
1784 sehene ƿ unsehene.
þeo þ̅ leueð þis soð,
ƿ leaueð þ̅ lease,
ƿ buhsume ƿ beisume
1788 haldeð his heastes,
he haueð bihaten ham

1765 B Ant, R weldent. 1766 B þe. 1767 C heuenlich, fader. 1769 R ant *for first* ƿ,
C And; he *for* herieð. 1770 R *omits* an. 1771 RC ih̅u. 1772 RB ant, C baðre *for*
beire. 1773 C þ̅, RB ba. 1774 R ant. 1776 C sundren, B sundri, C fram, C B oðer.
1779 B hont. 1780 B wealt (*a inserted from above*). 1781 R te, C heuene, R ant, oðe.
1782 R see, ant. 1783 R *omits* alle; ischapene, C þinges. 1784 R sehne, ant. 1785
B þe *for* þ̅, R leaueð (*a expunged*), C leoueð. 1786 R ant, C þat, B þet. 1787 C And,
R buhsum, ant, beisum. 1788 B halðeð, R heasten.

Ruler, who made all the world, God (our) heavenly Father, full of all goodness ; and exalt
and praise his only and dear son, whose name is Jesus Christ ; and the Holy Ghost, the love
of them both, which proceedeth from them both, and uniteth them together, so that none of
them may be sundered from the other ; all three (being) one God, almighty, supreme ! for
he holds in his hand—that is, directs and rules—heaven and earth, the sea, and the sun, and
all created things, visible and invisible. To those who believe this truth, and reject that
falsehood, and compliant and obedient keep his commandments, he has promised that he will

incredulos

autem

suppli-

cio

damp-

nat

eter-

no.

Hic errores

nostros diu

ferens.

per beatam

katerinam nobis nunc

primum innotuit.

quam maxentius

imperator in carcere

vesano clausam tenet iudicio.

Erant ducenti

et eo amplius milites.

quibus a porphirio

talía referuntur.¹

qui mox idola vana

þ he ham wule lesten

þ is blisse buten ende,

1792 i þe riche of heouene; [1810]

ʒ hwa se is swa unseli

þ he þis schunie,

ne schal him neauer teone

1796 ne tintreohe trukien

in inwarde helle.

To longe we habbeð

idriuen ure dusischipes;

1800 ʒ he haueð iþolet us,

þe þolemode lauerd:

ne we nusten hwet we duden

aðet he undutte us, [1821]

1804 ʒ tahte us treowe bileaue,

þurh þ eadie meiden

Katerine, þ te king

pineð in cwalmhus

1808 ʒ þencheð to aewellen."

þus he taled e wel

wið twa hundred cnihtes,

ʒ wið ma ʒet, þ ʒeuen anan up

1812 hare ʒeomere bileaue, [1831]

ʒ wurpen alle awei

hare witlese lei,

1790 R *writes* þ wule ham ilesten, C wile, lasten, B lesten. 1791 B blissen (n *expunged*)
1792 R *murðe for* riche, C heuene. 1793 R ant, C And, R so *for* se, B se *for* swa.
1795 B *omits* schal, C tene. 1796 R tintreo, C tintrehe. 1798 R *longe* (t *expunged*),
C hauen. 1799 C driuen, R dusischipe, B dusichipes. 1800 B ant, C iþoled. 1801
R þolemode. 1802 C hwat, diden. 1803 C aðat. 1804 C trewe, B ileaue. 1805 R þe,
edie, C B eadi. 1807 R ine, B i. 1808 R ant. 1809 R talde. 1810 C hundreð. 1811
R ant, C þat, R ʒeue. 1813 C R al, C awai. 1814 R *writes* hare witlese bileaue of hare lei.

¹ *referabantur.*

bestow on them that which is bliss without end, in the kingdom of heaven; and whosoever is so unblest that he refuses this, pain and torment shall never cease to him in the inner hell. Too long have we practised our absurdities; and he, the long-suffering Lord, has had patience with us: nor knew we what we were doing until he unstopped our ears, and taught us true faith, through that blessed maiden Katherine, whom the king torments in torture-house, and purposes to kill." Thus well discoursed he with two hundred knights, and with still more, who straightway renounced their wretched faith, and cast all away their senseless

respuentes. ad christum
conversi sunt.
Servabatur interea virgo
christi in carcere juxta
dictum¹ imperatoris. et quia

bis senis diebus sine alimento eam
esse tirannus jusserat qui danielem
per prophetam in lacu leonum
pavit. ipse innocentem puellam
per hos dies missa de celo candida
columba fovere non destitit.

Expletis vero diebus apparuit ei
dominus cum multitudine ange-
lorum quem sequebatur innumera
turba virginum.

Cui dominus.

Agnosce inquit² filia agnosce auc-
torem tuum pro cujus nomine

ƿ wenden to Criste.

1816 Crist ne forȝet nawt

ƿ he ne nom ȝeme

to hire ƿ me heold ȝet

as ƿe keiser het, bute mete ƿ mel

1820 i ƿe cwarterne : [1840]

ah wiȝ fode of heouene,

ƿurh his ahne engel,

i culurene iliche,

1824 fedde hire al ƿe tweolf dahes;

as he dude Daniel,

ƿurh Abacuc ƿe prophete,

i ƿe liunes leohe,

1828 ƿer he in lutede.

Ure lauerd him seolf com

wiȝ engles, ƿ wiȝ monie

meidnes mid alle, [1851]

1832 wiȝ swuch dream ƿ drihtfare

as drihtin deah to cumene;

ƿ schawde him ƿ sutelede

him seolf to hire seoluen,

1836 ƿ spec wiȝ hire, ƿ seide :

“ Bihald me, deore dohter!

bihald tin hehe healent,

for hwas nome ƿu hauest al

1815 R ant. 1816 B [C]rist (*space left for C*). 1817 R *writes* to neomen ȝeme. 1818 C men, held. 1819 C te kaiser, R ant. 1821 R ant *for* ah, C heuene. 1823 C in, R culure. liche. 1824 R ant *for* al, C twelf. 1825 C dide, R *omits* Daniel. 1826 R *omits* ƿurh, abbauc. 1827 C lehe. 1829 C self. 1830 R B ant. 1831 R meidenes, C mednes, C B wiȝ. 1832 R ant, B drihtfere. 1833 C drihten (*e expunged, i above it*), R ah *for* deah, B deh, C cumen. 1834 C scheawde, R ant. 1835 C self, seluen. 1836 R ant *for* second ƿ. 1837 B Bihalt (*t written over d*). 1838 B bihalt, ƿin, R heh, C healend.

¹ *edictum*.

² C originally *inquit*.

law, and turned to Christ. Christ neither forgot nor was he unconcerned about her who was still detained, as the Emperor commanded, without meat and meal, in the prison: but fed her by his own angel, in likeness of a dove, with food of heaven, all the twelve days; as he did Daniel, through Habakkuk the prophet, in the den of the lions, wherein he lay. Our Lord himself came with angels, and with many maidens likewise, with such a melody and majestic approach as it became the Lord to come with; and appeared, and manifested himself to her; and spoke with her, and said, “ Behold me, dear daughter! Behold thy great Saviour, for

laboriosi certaminis cursum cepisti constans esto	1840 undernumen þis nowcin! [1860] Beo stalewurðe ⁊ stond wel. Ne þerf þu dreden na deð; for lo! wið hwucche ich habbe idiht 1844 to don þe i mi kinedom, þ̅ is þin, wið me imeane, as mi leofmon. Na þing ne dred tu, 1848 for ich am eauer wið þe, [1870] do þ̅ me do þe; ⁊ monie schulen þurh þe ȝet turnen to me.” 1852 Mid þis ilke steap up mit tet heouenlich hird, ⁊ steah in to þe heouene; ⁊ heo biheold efter 1856 hwil ha aa mahte, blisful ⁊ bliðe. [1879] Under þis, com þe þurs Maxence,
et ne paveas ¹ quia ego tecum sum nec te desero.	
Est etenim non parva turba ho- minum ² per te nomini meo credi- tura. Hec dicens. in celum sese recepit. quem virgo longo euntem intuitu sequebatur.	
At vero imperator	

expletis causis pro quibus ierat.

alexandrinorum redit ad urbem.	1860 aȝein to his kineburh.
Postera die	þe wed wulf, þe heaðene hund þeos meiden ine marhen

1840 B undernume, newcin. 1841 R ant, B stont. 1842 C þarf, B þearf, R tu. C B drede, C deað. 1843 R hwuch. 1844 C B do. 1845 R þe, C tin. 1846 R leouemon. 1847 B dret. 1849 C men. 1850 R ant. 1851 C B turne. 1852 R ant mit, C B wið, R tet for þis, C step. 1853 C wið al þ, B wið þ, C heouenliche. 1854 R ant, steh, C heuene. 1855 C biheld, B biheolt, C after. 1856 B a, C writes ai hwil ha mihte. 1857 R ant. 1858 R Vnder, C B [V]nder (*space left for V*). 1859 B wedde, C wode, R heðene, B hunt. 1860 C aȝain. 1861 C i þe for ine.

¹ C originally *pavearis*.² *turba hominum* transposed.

whose name thou hast undertaken all this hardship! Be courageous and stand firm. Thou needest not dread any death; for behold! with whom I have appointed to place thee in my kingdom, which is thine, in fellowship with me, as my beloved. Dread thou nothing, for I am ever with thee, whatever men do to thee; and through thee shall many yet turn to me.” With this he went up with that heavenly household, and ascended into heaven; and she continued looking after (them) as long as she could, blissful and blithe. Meanwhile, the demon Maxence, the mad wolf, the heathen hound, returned to his royal city. The maiden

sedente eo in solio suo. fit conventus magistratuum et tribunitie dignitatis. Tunc rex circumstan-(fol. 185*b*)-tibus. presentetur nobis inquit temeraria illa¹ puella. ut sciamus si vel fame urgente ad culturam deorum poterit incurvari.

Educitur itaque de carcere virgo

wes ibroht biforen him.

speciosa. tribunali regio presentanda. Que cum in ejus staret presentia. vultumque ejus² quem tanto dierum spatio attenuatum³ jejuno estimarat. multo formosior et splendidior esse videret. arbitrabatur (!)⁴ clandestino⁵ officio⁶ ei subministrata alimenta. Unde furore commotus. carcerarios jubet exercuari. nisi fateantur. a quo et per que⁷ virgo cibus in carcere fuisset sustentata. At christi virgo ne custodes sui causa innocenter cruciarentur. cogitur aperire quod clam esse hominibus malebat. Ait itaque tyranno. Tu imperator hunc locum inter homines tenere debueras. ut noxios corrigeres. non ut cruciaries innocentes.⁸ Veruntamen te locum iudicis indigne tenere ex hoc manifestum est quod homines ab hac si qua est culpa innoxios perire infando jubes iudicio. Ego plane cibum ab homine corporalem nullum accepi. sed qui suos milites in fame et tribulatione deserere nescit ipse me ancillam suam per angelum suum celestis cibi alimento nutrire dignatus est ipse deus meus. amator meus ipse pastor et sponsus unicus⁹ meus. Ad hec tyrannus dolos in pectore versans. ne a circumstantibus tamquam iniquus et implacabilis¹⁰ accusaretur

ait puelle.

† he bigon to fon on

1864 pisses weis towart hire :

Tedet me puellam regio sanguine¹¹ ortam. magicis depravatam consiliis ab ingenuis progenitoribus adeo degenerari ut immortalium deorum nostrorum culturam non solum abhorreat. sed etiam injuri-

1862 C was, R biuorem, B biuoren. 1863 RB ant, R omits he, Buon. 1864 C o pisse, R pisse, wise, omits towart hire, C toward.

¹ omits illa. ² illius. ³ C originally adtenuatum. ⁴ arbitrabatur. ⁵ C originally clandestino. ⁶ consilio for officio. ⁷ quem. ⁸ cruciaries innocentes transposed. ⁹ C originally uncus. ¹⁰ C originally placabilis. ¹¹ sanguine.

on the morrow, was brought before him, and he began to address her in this manner: "It

osis verbis derogando (fol. 186a) inmundorum spirituum fantasia ad illusionem hominum denotet.

Unde licet te servare quam per-
dere maluissem.

“Þis me were leouere,
þef þu wel waldest, [1889]
to habben t̃ to halden þe
1868 cwic, þen to acwellen þe.

aperi nobis quid tibi infra datas inducias consilium sequi decrevisti.

Necesse est enim presenti¹ delibe-
ratione quod vis unum² e duo-
bus eligere. aut diis sacrificare
ut vivas. aut exquisitis tormentis
corpus tenerum dilacerari ut per-
eas.

þu most nede, noðeles,
an of þes twa curen
t̃ cheosen ananriht :
1872 libben, þef þu leist lac
to ure liuiende godes ;
oðer, þef þu nult nawt,
dreoriliche deien.”

Cui caterina respondit.

1876 Þis meiden, sone anan,
onswerede t̃ seide : [1900]

Vivere sane opto. sed ut michi
vivere christus sit.

“Lef me for to libben, swa
þ ich ne leose nawt him

mori autem pro eo non timeo. sed
potius diligo. quia moriendo pro
eo interminabilis vite emolumen-
tum lucrari me confido.

1880 þ is mi lif t̃ mi leof,
Iesu Crist mi lauerd.
Ne nawiht ne drede ich
na deð þ ouergeað,
1884 for þ endelese lif,
þ he haueð ileuet me
ananriht þrefter.

1865 R þe for þis, C wilre for leouere. 1866 C þif. 1867 R ant. 1868 B acwelle,
R omits þe. 1870 R þeos. 1871 R B omit t̃. 1872 R libbe, C þif. 1874 C þif, B nult
nawt transposed, R no for nawt. 1875 B þu schalt dreoriliche, R dreorliche, C dreriliche.
1876 B [þ]is (space left for þ). 1877 B him onswerede, R ant. 1878 C let, omits for to,
B te libbe. 1879 C i. 1880 R þe, C leof t̃ mi lif. 1881 C ih'u, B ni for mi. 1883 C na
omitted ; deað, R ouergeað. 1884 R endeles. 1885 R ilenet, C ileaued. 1886 B þer efter.

¹ presente.

² omits unum.

were more to my wish, if thou indeed wouldst, to have and to hold thee living than to kill thee. Thou must needs, however, speedily elect and choose one of these two : to live, if thou offerest sacrifice to our living gods ; or, if thou wilt not, to die miserably.” This maiden, immediately, answered and said, “Let me live, so that I lose not him who is my life and my beloved, Jesus Christ my Lord. I nothing dread a death that soon passes over, for that endless life, which he hath granted to me straightway thereafter. Then bethink

Nam etsi tu tormentis corpus meum dilacerari facias. habeo sane deum¹ meum iesum christum. qui ex hoc mortali corpore corpus michi immortale restituet. et licet in corpus meum quod inevitabili lege nature in mortem resolvi expectat. licet inquam in eum seviendi ad tempus habeas potestatem: in animam meam nulla tibi data est² potestas. nisi hoc tuum esse mentiaris. quod corporeo per te destructo habitaculo.³ ipsa libero volatu ad auctorem suum gaudens redeat.

Tu ergo tiranne quecunque pen-
narium tormentorum machina-
menta⁴ potes excogitare ne
differas.
quia vocat me dominus meus iesus
christus

Ah þu biþenche me anan [1910]
1888 teonen ꝥ tintreohen
þe alre meast derue
þ̅eni deadlich flesch
mahe drehen ꝥ drahen,
1892 for mi longeð heonneward;
for me lauerd, Iesu Crist,
mi deorewurðe leofmon,
lutel ear me haueð ileaðet;

cui non tauros mugientes. non oves innocuas.

sed carnem et sanguinem meum
in sacrificium offerre desidero quia
et ipse semet ipsum pro me optulit
deo patri in holocaustum.

1896 ꝥ wel is me þ̅ich mot
ba mi flesch ꝥ mi blod [1920]
offrin him to lake,
þe offrede to his feder,
1900 for me ꝥ for al folc,
him seolf on þe rode."

1887 B bipench, C þe for me, R omits anan. 1888 R ant, tintreon, C tintrehen. 1889 R þ, measte, omits derue. 1890 R þ euer eni, B ei, R dedlich. 1891 R omits ꝥ drahen. 1892 R heonneward, B heonewart. 1893 R C ih'u. 1894 C derewurðe, R leouemon. 1895 R writes lutel er her to foren me he haueð ilaðet, C haueð ileaded me, B luttel, ileaðet (first e inserted from above). 1896 R ant. 1897 C baðe (a nearly invisible), R ant. 1899 C þ, fader, B feader. 1900 R ant, B uole. 1901 C self, R uppon for on, C B o.

¹ dominum for deum. ² omits est. ³ omits habitaculo. ⁴ C originally machinameta.

thee quickly of torments and tortures, the severest of all that any mortal flesh may endure or suffer, for I long to go hence: because my Lord, Jesus Christ, my dearly beloved, has recently invited me; and well is me that I may offer both my flesh and my blood as a sacrifice to him, who offered to his father, for me and for all people, himself upon the cross."

Veruntamen dico tibi et vere dico. quia in proximo superveniet tibi dies ultionis. quo christus suscitabit tibi adversarium de fide quam impugnare non cessas. qui ab hostili corpore caput infandum. gladio recidet ultore. et de sceleratissime sanguine¹ tuo dii tui id est manes infernales execranda sument libamina. Poteras tamen tante animadversionis iudicium eva-(fol. 186*b*)-dere si consilio meo adquiescens idola vana relinqueres. et fidei christiane culturam devotus arriperes. Ad hec tyrannus ut leo violentus dentibus frendens. in vocum hujus modi erupit. Quid ignavi talia sustinemus? Usque adeo deos nostros tam contemptibiliter ab ista malefica incantatrice² derogari patiemur. quin totum corpus membratim discerpi³ faciamus. ne et ceteri christiani adversus deos simili insultatione barbarizare⁴ presumant? Ergo agite omnes quibuscunque deorum injuria cure est apprehendite magam⁵ istam et diris suppliciis excruciatam morte crudelissima eam facite interire. tunc deum suum de cujus se jactat presidio si fas est provocet sibi ad auxilium. Factum est autem cum traheretur⁶ ad supplicium. quidam miserantes virginee forme decorem indigna morte perire. suadebant virgini ut imperatori potius obedire deberet. quam resistendo florentem amitteret juventam.⁷ O inquit o forma virginei decoris. o solaris species candoris. quenam tanta mentis obstinatio ista est ut generosi sanguinis puella cui divitie et honores gratis offeruntur. voluntarium mortis compendium eligat? O virgo digna imperio. consule florentissime juventuti tue. et ne negligas pulchritudinis tue vernantem speciem immatura morte perire. Quibus venerabilis virgo respondit. Deponite o viri planctus hujus inania lamenta. nec de pulchritudinis⁸ mee dispendio querelosas deperdite⁹ voces. quia caro mea que vobis florere videtur. velut fenum¹⁰ et gloria ejus tanquam flos feni dum¹¹ mox abeunte spiritu (fol. 187*a*) marcescit.¹² et consumpta vermibus reditura est in pulverem. unde primordialis essentie sumpsit originem. De meo igitur interitu nolite flere neque solliciti esse. quia michi talis¹³ cruciatus non est inte-

¹ sanguine. ² incantatrice. ³ C originally *discerpione*. ⁴ C originally *barbazare*.
⁵ C originally *magmam*. ⁶ inserts *beata virgo*. ⁷ *juventutem*. ⁸ omits *pulchritudinis*.
⁹ *disperdite*. ¹⁰ inserts *est*. ¹¹ C *dum* scored out and expunged. ¹² *marcessit*. ¹³ omits *tal*is.

ritus¹ ad consumptionem.² sed transitus ad vitam. non interitus ad erumpnam sed transitus ad gloriam. Super vos potius tales expendite gemitus. quia vobis non transitus manet ad spem reparationis. sed interitus ad erumpnam eterne perditionis. His verbis beate virginis quidam eorum compuncti. subtraxerunt se ab idolorum cultura et imperatoris.³ sed qualis de virginis passione fieret exitus attentius considerabant.

Superveniens autem vir quidam	Hwil þe king weol al
nomine chursates urbis prefectus.	inwið of wreððe,
et ipse vir belial. furientem regem	1904 com a burhreue,
ad novam accendit insaniam. et	as þe þ̅ wes þes deoules budel,
tormenta ⁴ tormentis accumulatur.	Belial of helle,
O magne inquit imperator.	Cursates hehte, [1930]
	1908 ƿ̅ tus on heh cleopede :
	“O kene king!
	O icudd keiser!

non⁵ pudet te tanto tempore unius femine obluctatione teneri? Audi ergo imperator.

Non videt adhuc caterina tale	ȝet ne seh Katerine
genus tormenti. quo exterreatur ⁶	1912 nanes cunnes pine
ut adquiescat tibi ad immolandum	þ̅ ha oht dredde.
diis magnis nostris; Iube ergo	Do ido dede,
	nu ha þus þ̅reateð
	1916 ƿ̅ þ̅reapeð aȝein þe.
	Hat hwil ha wed tus, [1940]

1902 B [H]wil (*space left for H*), wweol. 1903 C wraððe, B wreaððe. 1905 C was; te for þes; deoules, B deofles. 1908 R ant, C clepede. 1910 C icud. 1912 R pinen. 1913 R omits oht, C ah to for oht, R of for oht; dreddeð, C drede. 1914 C idon. 1916 R ant þ̅reateð, B þ̅repeð, C aȝein. 1917 R heo, C þus.

¹ C originally *intritus*. ² C originally *consumationem*. ³ inserts here the words *communione non tamen id palam esse volebant propter metum imperatoris*. ⁴ *tormentum*. ⁵ *num for non*. ⁶ C originally *exterereatur*.

While the King boiled all within with anger, there came a prefect of the city, as one that was the devil's herald, Belial's of hell, Chursates by name, and thus called up to him: "O valiant King! O renowned Emperor! Katherine has seen as yet no kind of pain that she had reason to dread. Use severity, now that she thus threatens and disputes against thee. Command while she is thus mad, that within three days four wheels be made, and then

ut infra triduum hoc sint facte
quattuor rote et sicut ego dicta-
vero. extremi rotarum orbes et
intimi circuli. clavis prominenti-
bus et accutis (!) prefigantur.

Radii vero articulares quibus al-
trinsecus¹ rotarum orbes juncti²
reguntur :³ serris preacutis
denso ordine et mordaci acumine
inbuantur.

Has juxta rotas caterina
exposita. volubilem inpetum se-
dens intueatur. ut vel sic volventis
machine stridor terrorem incutiat.
et incurvetur ad sacram deorum
culturam et vivat. Sin autem. mox
rotali incompacta machinamento. hinc

inwið þeos þreo dahes
ʒarkin fowr hweoles,
1920 ʒ let þurhdriuen þrefter
þe spaken ʒ te felien
mid irnene gadien ;
swa þ te pikes
1924 ʒ te irnene preones
se scharpe ʒ se starke
borien þurh ʒ beoren forð
feor on þ oðer half, [1950]
1928 þ al þe hweoles beon þurhspited
mid kenre pikes þen eni cnif,
rawe bi rawe.
Let þenne turnen hit
1932 tidliche abuten ;
swa þ Katherine,
mit tet grisliche rune,
hwen ha þer bisit
1936 ʒ bisið þer upon, [1960]
swike hire sotschipes,
ʒ ure wil wurchen ;
oðer, ʒef ha nule no,
1940 ha schal beon tohwiðeret,
wið þe hweoles swa,
in an hondhwile,

1918 B þe for þeos, C þre. 1919 C ʒarken, R hweol. 1920 R ant, omits let. 1921 C speaken, R ant, R B uelien. 1922 C B wið, B irnenne. 1924 R ant. 1925 R swa—swa, B sterke. 1926 R ant, B beore. 1927 R omits feor, C B o. 1928 R al omitted; te, C þ, hweol, beo, þurhspited. 1929 R mit, R B omit pikes, B ei. 1930 R rewe bireawe. 1931 R ant let, C tenne. 1932 C swiftliche for tidliche. 1933 B þet, R B Katherine schal. 1934 C B wið þ, R omits rune. 1936 R ant, C bihalt for bisið; ter, R uppon. 1937 R B swiken. 1938 R ant, R B wurchen. 1939 R ʒ for oðer, C ʒif, B ʒef þ ha. 1940 C B beo, C tohwiðered. 1941 R hwið. 1942 B hont hwile.

¹ *altrinsecus.*² *juncte.*³ *teguntur.*

that the spokes and fellows be pierced through with iron goads; so that the spikes and the iron nails, so sharp and so strong, pierce through and project far on the other side, so that all the wheels may be spiked thoroughly with keener spikes than any knife, row by row. Let it then be turned swiftly round; so that Katherine, with the dismal sound, when she sits by and looks thereupon, may cease her follies, and work our will; or, if she will not, she shall be whirled in pieces, by the wheels, in such a manner, in an instant, that all who

inde serris et clavis mordacibus	þ alle þ hit bihaldeð
discerpta ad terrorem christiano-	1944 schulen grure habben."
rum inaudito pereat exemplo.	þe king hercenede his read,
Nec mora. jubet fieri tyrannus.	ʒ wes sone, as he het, [1970]

quod suadet infandissimus doli architectus (fol. 187b).

Fiunt rote studiosius.¹ þeos heane ⁊ teos hatele

et ad perniciem gentilium maturius

apparantur. 1948 tintreohe itimbret;
Et jam dies tercius² illuxerat. 7 wes, be pridde dei, idrahen,

instat tyrannus accelerari rotarum penale tormentum. et virginem si ulterius restiterit illigari et implicari mediam ut impulsu rotali serre preacute corpus tenerum dilacerarent. ut ceteri christiani crudeli mortis exemplo conterrerentur.³

Parent ministri sevientis ⁴ belue	þider as þe reuen
mandatis et rote in medio pretorii	weren eauer iwunet;
exposite	1952 ⁊ te king heold ta, of þis eadi meiden, hise kinemotes.

terrorem circumspectantibus incutiebant. at virgo nullo penali⁵ apparatu terrebatur. Mens namque⁶ à christo fundata. nec blandimentis mulcêri poterat. nec minis absterreri.

1943 B þe *for* second þ. 1944 B schule. 1945 C reað. 1946 R ant, C was. 1947 C þis, B þes, R ant, C tis, B tes, heatele. 1948 R treon *for* tintreohe, B tintreoh, C itimbrett. 1949 R ant, *omits* wes, C was, te, dai. 1950 C te. 1951 R euer iwunet *transposed*, C wunet. 1952 R ant, C And, R þa. 1953 R *omits* eadi, B a *for* eadi. 1954 R þis.

¹ C originally *studiosus*. ² *tertia*. ³ C originally *contererentur*. ⁴ C originally *sevientes*. ⁵ C originally *penatu*. ⁶ *itaque* for *namque*.

behold it shall have horror." The king listened to his counsel, and soon, as he commanded, was this hateful and detestable instrument of torture constructed; and was, on the third day, drawn to the place where the prefects were ever wont (to be); and the king then held, concerning this blessed maiden, his royal council. This tormenting engine was devised in

Rotarum penalis machina hac	Dis pinfulē gin wes	[1980]
arte expolita erat. ut due uno	1956 o swuch wise iginet, þ te twa turnden eiðer wiðward oðer; ʒ anes weis baðe :	
ordine volverentur. due autem	1960 þe oðer twa turnden anes weis als wa, ah toʒein þe oðre ; swa þ hwen þe twa	
contrario inpetu agerentur. ut ille	1964 walden kasten upward þing þ ha kahten,	[1990]
deorsum lacerando contraherent.	þe oðre walden drahen hit ʒ dusten dunewardes :	
iste repugnantes ¹ sursum devo-	1968 se grisliche igreiðet, þ grure grap euch mon hwen he lokede þron.	
rando inpingerent.	Her, amid heapes,	
Has inter media christi famula.	1972 wes þis meiden iset, for to al torenden, ʒ reowðfulliche torondin	
exposita inter serras et		
tarincas ferreas ² ex motu rotarum membratim discerperetur. misero		
mortis genere.		
	þef ha nalde hare read	[2000]
	1976 heren ne herenin.	

1955 B [p]is (*space left for p*), R pinful, C was. 1956 R of *for* o, B swuhe, R iginet. 1957 C þat, B turden. 1958 B eider, R wið *for* wiðward. 1959 R ant, baðen. 1960 R *omits* twa, B turden. 1962 C toʒain, R oðere. 1963 R *omits* hwen, B hwenne, R te. 1964 B keasten, uppart. 1965 R kahten, B chahten. 1966 R oðer, B odre, R drahen þe drahen hit (*sic*). 1967 R ʒ dusten *omitted*; duneward. 1968 R so, igreðet. 1969 R þet. 1971 R amididen, B amidde, R B *omit* heapes. 1972 C was, tis. 1973 R al for to, B te, C toronden, R B torenden reowliche. 1974 R ant, C rewfulliche, torenden. 1975 C þif, rað. 1976 C herenen.

¹ *repugnando*.

² C originally *ferrea*.

such a manner, that two (of the wheels) turned either contrary to the other, and (yet) both one way: the other two turned one way also, but contrary to the former; so that when the first two would cast upward whatsoever thing they caught, the other two would draw it and dash it downwards: so frightfully (was it) contrived, that horror seized every one when he looked upon it. Here, into the centre of it, was this maiden placed, to be all torn and piteously rent, if she would not listen to their advice nor obey. But she lifted up her eyes,

Virgo interea erectis in celum
oculis. tacite orationis verba ad
deum fundebat.

Deus omnipotens

Ah heo kaste up hire ehnen,
ƿ̃ cleopede toward heouene,
ful heh mid hire heorte,

1980 ah wið stille steuene :

“Almihti godd,

qui te in periculis et necessitate invocantibus pia opitulatione sub-
venire non desinis exaudi me in hac necessitate ad te¹ clamantem.

et presta ut penalis hec fabrica

celestis ictu fulminis attrita dissol-

vatur. ut manifestam potentie tue

virtutem qui circumstant intuentes

glorificent nomen tuum sanctum.

cuð nu þine mihte;

ƿ̃ menske nu þin hehe nome,

1984 heouenliche lauerd! [2010]

ƿ̃, for to festnin ham

in treowe bileawe

þe beoð to þe iturnde,

1988 ƿ̃ Maxence ƿ̃ alle hise

halden ham mate,

smit se smertliche herto,

þ̃ alle þeos fowr hweoles

1992 tohwiðerin to stucchen.”

quod est bene dictum in secula. Tu seis domine quia non timore
passionis hec obsecro que sitienti corde quovis mortis genere ad
tê venire et tê vidêre desidero. sed ut hii qui per me² credituri
sunt. certiores de tuo adjutorio. et constantiores in confessione tui
nominis perseverent.

1977 C kast, B keaste, R hehnen, C ehne. 1978 R ant, B towart, C heuene. 1979
C hehe, C B wið. 1980 R ant for ah, B omits stille, R stefne. 1981 B Al mihte.
1982 C B þi, R mihtes. 1983 C menske (of m only one down stroke visible), B meske.
1985 B te, C festni. 1986 C B i. 1987 C þ, beon. 1988 R ant for second ƿ̃; his.
1990 R so, C omits se, B smeordtliche, C þerto. 1991 B al, C þise, B fower, R hweol.
1992 R tohwiderin, C tohwiðeren, C B stucches.

¹ omits ad te.

² inserts in te.

and cried to heaven, full loudly with her heart, but with still voice: “Almighty God,
manifest now thy power, and do honour to thy high name, heavenly Lord! and in order to
confirm those in true faith who are converted unto thee, and that Maxence and all his party
hold themselves confounded, smite so sharply upon it, that all the four wheels may fly
asunder in pieces.” This was hardly said, when an angel came, with wonderful flight

Necdum verba virgo finierat. et
 ecce angelus domini de celo de-
 scendens illam molem¹ vehementi
 turbinis îctu inpactam tanto (fol.
 188a) inpetu concussit. ut ruptis
 compagibus partes avulse super
 infusum populum tanta vî ex-
 cuterentur.² ut quattuor milia de
 ipsa turba gentilium una turbine
 necarentur.

pis wes uneaðe iseid,
 þ an engel ne com, [2020]
 wið ferliche aflluhte
 1996 fleoninde aduneward,
 7 draf þerto dunriht
 as an þunres dune;
 7 duste hit a swuch dunt,
 2000 þ hit bigon to claterin
 al 7 to cleouen;
 tobursten 7 tobreken,
 as þah hit were bruchel gles,
 2004 ba þe treo 7 te irn, [2030]
 7 ruten forð wið swuch rune
 þe stucchen of baðe
 bimong ham as ha stoden
 2008 7 seten þer abuten,
 þ ter weren isleine
 of þ awariede fole
 fowr þusent fulle.

illa nimirum non degenerata³ ulcione. quam de chaldeis babilonica
 fornax olim exegerat. Quid plura?

Dolor et
 confusio
 gentilium.
 et⁴ vox et

2012 þer me mahte iheren [2039]
 þe heaðene hundes 7ellen
 7 7eien 7 7uren on euch half,
 þe cristene kenchen

1993 C was, R unneðe, B unneaðe, iseit. 1995 C feorliche, B ferlich. 1996 R fleonninde, B aduneward. 1997 *entirely omitted by* R. 1998 CB a. 1999 R *omits* hit. 2000 C clateren, B cleaterin. 2001 R al 7 *transposed*, C cleuen. 2002 R bursten, C tobresten, R ant. 2003 C tah, gleas. 2004 C baðe *for* ba þe, þe treon, B tet *for* te. 2005 R ant. 2006 R stucchenes. 2008 R ant. 2009 R islein. 2010 R *omits* þ, B uole. 2011 C þusend. 2012 B þear, C men, mihte, heren. 2013 R heðene. 2014 R ant *for first* 7, C *omits* 7 7eien.

¹ *illam molem transposed.* ² C originally *excuteretur.* ³ C originally *degenerata.* ⁴ *omits et.*

flying downwards, and drove straight down towards it like a thunder-clap; and struck it such a blow, that it began to rattle and to cleave asunder; both the wood and the iron burst and broke asunder as if it had been brittle glass, and the fragments of both darted forth with such rapidity among them as they stood and sat around it, that there were slain of that accursed folk full four thousand. There one might have heard the heathen hounds yell and

exultatio christianorum.	2016	ƿ herien þen healent, þe helpeð hise oueral.
Ipse tirannus dentibus frendens.		þe keiser al acanget, hefde iloset mondream,
et mente turbatus quid agat excogitat.	2020	ƿ dearede al adeadet, drueninde ƿ dreori, ƿ drupest alre monne. [2050] þe cwen stod eauer stille
Erat dudum regina desuper spectans divine ultionis prodigiale signum. et que prius se occultabat propter metum viri sui. nunc arrepto itinere se in conspectu belue sevientis constanter inmersit.	2024	on heh, ƿ biheold al; hefde ihud hire aðet ta, ƿ hire bileaue iholen. þa, ȝet, ne mahte ha na mare; 2028 ah dude hire adun swiðe, ƿ forð, wiðuten fearlac, ouer þiderwardes; ƿ weorp hire biforen [2060] 2032 þen awariede wulf, ƿ ȝeide lude steuene, “ Wrecche mon þ̃ tu hit art! hwerto wultu wreastlin 2036 wið þe worldes wealdent? Hwet medschipe makeð þe, þu bittre balefule beast!
Quid tu inquiring miserande ¹ conjunx contra deum eluctaris?		
Que te insania ô crudelis belua		

2016 C B herie, R þe, B þene (*latter e expunged*), R healen, C healend. 2017 R his. 2018 R akanget wes. 2019 B hef (*sic*), C ilosed, B mondrem. 2020 R ant, darede, B adedet. 2021 R dureninde, C drupninde, dreri. 2022 R ant. 2023 B [p]e (*space left for p*), stot. 2024 B biheolt. 2025 R ihudd, C aðat, R þa, C tenne for ta. 2026 R ant, C ihel (*after 1 two letters covered by ink blot, the last of these letters the bottom part of which is still visible is most probably n, B ihole*). 2027 R B þe for þa, R ȝet ƿ ne; *omits* ha, B *omits* na. 2029 C B wiðute, R farlac. 2030 C o fot for ouer, B o uet for ouer, R B þiderwardes. 2031 R ant, R B biuoren, C bifore. 2032 R awariede wed wulf. 2033 C ludere, B lut, R stefne. 2034 B þet. 2035 B wulttu, C wrestlen. 2036 R weldent, B welalden. 2037 C hwat, madschipe, B meadschipe. 2038 R best.

¹ C originally *miserante*.

cry and scream on every side, the Christians laugh and praise the Saviour, who helpeth his people everywhere. The emperor, completely baffled, had lost the joy of human life, and hid himself mortified, downcast and gloomy, the most dispirited of men. The queen stood all this while on high, and beheld all in silence; she had concealed her (thoughts) until then, and kept her belief secret. Now, however, she might no longer; but quickly descended, and advanced, without fear, thitherward; and cast herself before the accursed wolf, and cried with a loud voice, “Wretched man that thou art, wherefore wilt thou wrestle with the world’s ruler? What madness maketh thee, thou bitter baleful beast! to war against him.

adversus¹ factorem tuum con-
surgere² cogit?

to weorrin him ꝥ wrahte þe
2040 ƿ alle worldliche þing?

An tu prospero exitu finire arbitraris certamen quod adversus deum
et famulos famulasque ipsius sumpsisti?

Agnosce vel nunc in presenti

Beo nu ken ƿ cnawes, [2070]

facto quam potens est christian-

of ꝥ ꝥ tu isehen hauest,
hu mihti ƿ hu meiful,

orum deus³ et quanta animad-

2044 hu heh ƿ hu hali,
is þes cristenes godd,
Crist, ꝥ ha herieð.

versione te ipsum per se dampna-

Hu wrakeliche, wenestu,

turus est qui uno ictu fûlminis tot

2048 wule he, al o wraððe,
wreken on þe, wrecche!
þe haueð todriuene wið a dunt,
ƿ fordon, for þe, todei [2080]

milia hominum hodie consumpsit.

2052 se feole þusent?

Porro multi gentilium qui⁴ ad

ƿ monie, mid alle,

hoc spectaculum convenerant.

of ꝥ heaðene folc
þ alle weren isihen hider

videntes magnalia dei conversi ad

2056 for to seon þis feorlich."

christum: publica voce clamabant

Sone se ha þis sehen,

ƿ herden swa þe ewen spoken,

alle somet turnden, [2090]

dicentes.

2060 ƿ token to þeien :

2039 C weorren, B weorri, þe for him; þet. 2040 B worldlich, C þinges. 2042 R omits
þ, C þat þ, B þ tet. 2043 R ant. 2047 R wrakefulliche, B wenest tu. 2048 C omits
he, R ant for al o, B omits o, R wreððe, B wraðe. 2049 R omits wreken, B wreoken,
R uppon for on, C B o. 2050 C þ. 2052 R so, C þusend. 2053 C ƿ omitted; wið.
2054 R hedene. 2055 B þe, R isehen, B isehene, þider. 2056 B te for to, R seon (*hole*
in MS.; o almost invisible), C B seo. 2057 R as for se; isehen. 2058 R ant, iherden,
C þe ewen swa, spoken. 2059 C somen. 2060 R ant.

¹ adversum.

² insurgere.

³ christianorum deus transposed.

⁴ C originally quia.

who created thee and all earthly things? Be now convinced and acknowledge, from what thou hast seen, how mighty, and how powerful, how high and how holy, is the God of this Christian, Christ, whom she worships. How vengefully, thinkest thou, will he, all incensed, avenge himself on thee, O wretch! who has scattered with a stroke, and destroyed, on thy account, to-day so many thousands? and many, moreover, of that heathen folk who had all journeyed hither to see this wonder." As soon as they saw this, and heard the queen speak thus, they all at once turned, and took to cry out, "Truly, very worthy, and deserving of all

Vere magnus est deus christianorum. ejus nos servos ab hodierno¹ die constanter profitemur. Nam dii tui idola vana sunt. que nec sibi nec cultoribus suis aliquid prestare possunt His auditis tyrannus collegit se in omnem furorem adversus eos. sed vehementius² adversus reginam. in vocem hujusmodi erūpit. Quid tū inquiring regina³ ita loqueris? Num te quoque magicis artibus seductam

“Witerliche, mūche wurð,
 7 wurðe alle wurðschipe
 is þes meidenes godd,
 2064 Crist, soð godes sune;
 7 to him we kennið
 7 cnaweð to lauerd
 7 to heh healent
 2068 heonne forðwardes,
 7 tine mix maumez [2100]
 alle beon amanset;
 for ha ne mahen nowðer
 2072 helpen ham seoluen,
 ne heom þ ham seruið.”
 þe king walde weden,
 swa him gromede wið ham,
 2076 ah wið þe cwen swiðest.
 Biheold hire heterliche;
 7 bigon to þreatin hire
 þus on þisse wise: [2110]
 2080 “Hu nu, dame, dotestu?
 Cwen, acangestu nu
 mid alle þes oðre?
 Hwi motestu se medliche?”

christianorum aliquis subvertit ut et tū quoque omnipotentes deos nostros (188b) relinqueres. per quos imperii nostri summa consistit?⁴

2062 R ant, C wurð, R wurdschipe, C wurðschipe. 2064 C godd for soð. 2065 B ant, C to (*both letters expunged*), R kennið (k *altered from h*), C kenneð. 2066 R ant. 2067 C healend. 2069 B ant, R mawmez. 2070 R awariet for amanset, C amanset. 2071 R B mahe. 2072 C seluen. 2073 C ham for heom, serueð. 2075 R so, C gremede. 2076 R 7 for ah; alre meast for swiðest. 2077 C Biheld, B biheolt, R hatterliche. 2078 R ant, þreaten. 2079 CB o. 2080 B [H]u (*space left for H*), C Nu for Hu, B dutest tu. 2081 R akangestu, omits nu, B a-cangest tu nu. 2082 C wið, R þeos, oðere. 2083 R so, C madliche, B meadliche.

¹ hodierna. ² omits vehementius. ³ C originally regna. ⁴ C originally consisti.

worship is the maiden's God, Christ, the very Son of God; and to him we take and acknowledge him as Lord, and (as) the great Saviour from henceforth; and thy vile idols may all be accused; for they can neither help themselves, nor those who serve them.” The king was about to grow frantic, so angry was he with them, but with the queen most. He looked upon her fiercely, and began to threaten her in this manner: “How now, dame, dost thou dote? Art thou too, queen, infatuated, with all the rest? Why reasonest thou so madly? I swear by the

Que mala¹ infelicitas mea. ut qui ad culturam deorum nostrorum alienos coartabam. jam pestiferum subversionis venenum familiarius² domui mee inserpere videam. et unicam lectuli mei consortem hujus morbi contagione vexari contuear? Porro si me ita amor conjugalis emolliverit. ut pro regine erronea mutabilitate deorum contumeliam ego negligam. quid restat. nisi ut cetera imperii romane matrone. hujus ejusdem erroris³ exemplum imitantes viros proprios a cultura deorum evertant.⁴ et ad fabulosam christianorum sectam totum regni corpus incurvare presumant?

Juro ⁵ ergo tibi per magnum	2084	Ich swerie bi þe mihtes
deorum imperium ô regina. quod		of ure godes muchele,
nisi maturius ab hac stulticia.		bute þef þu þe timlucker
resipiscens diis immolaveris. caput	2088	do þe i þe ȝeinturn,
tuum a cervice recisum et carnes		ȝ ure godes grete
feris et volatilibus dilacerandas		þ̃ tu gremest nuȝe, [2120]
hodie reiciam.		ich schal schawin hu mi sweord
		bite i þi swire;
Nec tamen tu celeri morte vitam	2092	ȝ leoten toluken þi flesch
		þe fuheles of þe lufte;
		ȝ ȝet, ne schaltu nower neh
		se lihtliche etsterten;
finisse letaberis quam ego extortis	2096	ah strengre þu schalt þolien:
		for ichulle leoten luken
primo mamillis longo faciam		ȝ teon þe tittes awei
		of þine bare breosten, [2130]
cruciatu	2100	ȝ þrefter don þe to deaȝe,

2084 B mahtes. 2086 C ȝif. 2088 R an for ȝ. 2089 B nuȝe. 2090 B Ic, C I, schawe, sword, B sweort. 2092 C lete, B leote, toluki. 2094 R ant, C And, B schalt (*first I expunged*). 2095 R so, C atsterten. 2096 R strengre. 2097 B for ich chulle, C B leote. 2098 C B teo. 2099 B beare. 2100 B ant, C B do, C deaȝ, B deȝ.

¹ L *malum*; C originally *malu*.

⁴ *avertant*.

² *familiaris*.

³ *ejusdem erroris* transposed.

⁵ C originally *Iure*.

might of our great gods, except thou the sooner put thyself in the way back again, and greet our gods whom thou now provokest, I shall show how my sword (can) bite in thy neck; and let the fowls of the air tear thy flesh. And yet, neither shalt thou by any means near so lightly escape; but thou shalt suffer severer pain: for I shall cause the teats to be torn and pulled away from thy bare breasts, and afterwards put thee to death, the direst thing

interire.

deruest þing to drehen."

"Alle þine þreates

ne drede ich," quoð ha, "riht
noht.

2104 Eauer se þu mare wa
ʒ mare weane dest me,
for mi neowe leofmon,
þe ich on wið luue leue,

2108 se þu wurchest mi wil
ʒ mi weole mare. [2140]
Do nu þenne hihendliche
þ̅ tu hauest on heorte,

2112 for of me ne schaltu
biȝeoten na wiht mare."
Sone se he understod wel
þ̅ he ne sturedre hire nawt,

Iubet igitur crudelis tyrannus mi-
nistris. contemptibiliter reginam
apprehendere matronam. et trans-
fixas clavis ferreis mamillas ab
imo pectore extorquēri.

2116 het, on hat heorte,
unhendeliche neomen hire ;
ʒ bute dom ananriht,
þurhdriuē hire tittes [2150]

Que cum ad locum supplicii
duceretur. respiciens ad beatam

2120 wið irnene neiles,
ʒ renden ham up hetterliche
wið þe breoste roten.
As þes deoules driueles
2124 drohen to fordon hire,

2101 *entirely omitted by R.* 2102 R þine þine (*second þine expunged*). 2103 R dred, *omits* quoð ha, B C qð, C nawt *for* noht. 2104 R so. 2105 R ant, C weane (*a partly covered by ink blot*), B wene, C dost. 2106 C newe, R leouemon, C lefmon. 2107 C þ̅, R leue *for* luue (*first e expunged and u above it*). 2108 R so, mi wi (*wi underlined*) wil, C wurches. 2109 R ant. 2110 R hientliche. 2112 B schalt tu. 2113 C biȝete, B biȝeote, R *omits* wiht. 2114 B B [S]one (*space left for S*), R as *for* se; under (*stod added from above*), B understot. 2116 C herte. 2117 C nimen. 2118 C wiðute *for* bute. 2120 B neilles. 2121 B rende, R hatterliche, C heterliche. 2122 B breost. 2123 C deoueles, B deofel (*sic*).

to undergo." "All thy threats I nothing dread," quoth she. "The more woe soever and the more suffering thou inflicteth on me, for my new beloved, on whom I with love believe, so much the more dost thou work my will and my welfare. Do therefore now quickly that which thou hast at heart, for of me thou shalt obtain nothing more." As soon as he understood well that he moved her not, he commanded, in hot heart, to seize her rudely; and immediately without judgement, to pierce through her nipples with iron nails, and rend them up cruelly with the breast-roots. As the devil's servants were dragging her to destroy

CATERINAM dixit. O veneranda
 christo virgo funde preces ad
 dominum pro cujus nomine cer-
 taminis hujus¹ luctamen appre-
 hendi. ut infra instantem² pas-
 sionis hujus articulum³ confirmet
 cor meum. ne caro infirma mentem
 cogat imbellem⁴ deficere. ne coro-
 nam quam militibus suis a christo
 promissam contestabaris.⁵
 ego metu passionis amittam.
 Ad quam pretiosa virgo. ne
 timeas inquit ô veneranda et
 deo dilecta regina. sed viriliter

ha biseh toward
 Katerine, ⁊ seide,
 "Eadi meiden! ernde me
 2128 to þi leoue lauerd,
 for hwas luue ich þolie
 þ me bilimeð me þus; [2160]
 þ he i þe tintreohe
 2132 þ ich am iturnd to,
 hardi min heorte,
 þ tet wake ules
 ne wursi neauer mi mod
 2136 swa þ ich slakie
 to ofseruin heouenriche;
 þ ich ne forga neauer,
 for fearlac of na pine,
 2140 þ beo fleschlich, [2170]
 þe crune þ Crist haueð,
 efter þ tu cwiddest,
 ileuet his icorene."
 2144 "Ne dred tu nawt," quoð
 Katerine,
 "deorewurðe cwen, ⁊ deore
 wið drihtin of heouene;

2125 B toward. 2126 RB ant. 2127 R erndi. 2128 C leue. 2129 B luue (*second u inserted from above*). 2130 C men *for first* me, B bilimieð, R þus bilimeð me. 2131 R tintreo, C tintrehe. 2132 R iham *for* ich am, B iturnd, C i turn *for* iturnd. 2133 B heardi, C omits heorte. 2134 C tes *for* tet, R flesch. 2136 C i, R B earni *for* slakie. 2137 C ofearnen *for* ofseruin, heuenriche, B heouerliche, R heoueneriches wunne. 2138 R ⁊ *for* þ. 2139 R farlac, C fearlaic. 2140 B fleschlich. 2141 B þe. 2142 C after. 2143 R ilenet, C hise, R icorne. 2144 B [N]e (*space left for N*), R dredd, C q, B qð, C Kat. 2145 C derewurðe, B deorew[u]rðe? (*hole in MS.*), R ant, C dere. 2146 C heuene.

¹ in C, here *articulum* blotted out. ² *instante*. ³ C originally *articulu*, which is altered to -i, and again, by another hand, on the margin to -um. ⁴ *imbecillem*. ⁵ C originally *contestaris*.

her, she looked toward Katherine, and said, "Blessed maiden! commend me to thy dear Lord, for whose love I suffer that men thus tear my limbs; that he in the torment that I am brought to, may put such resolution into my heart, that this weak flesh may never impair my courage so that I should fail to deserve the kingdom of heaven; (and) that I may never forego, through fear of any pain, that is corporeal, the crown which Christ hath, according to what thou sayest, bestowed upon his elect." "Dread nothing," quoth Katherine, "dearest queen, and dear to the Lord of heaven; for there is granted thee to-day, (in exchange) for

age: quia hodie tibi pro transi-

torio regno commutabitur eter-

num. (fol. 189a) pro mortali

sponso inmortalem tibi ad-

quires. pro penis requiem per-

manentem.

pro celeri obitu.

interminabilis

vite.

hodie

percipies

natale principium.

Ad hanc vocem venerabilis ma-

trona in agonía robustior effecta.

tortores sponte hortatur. ne ti-

rannica jussa ultra morentur.

for þe is ileuet todei,

2148 for an lutel eorðlich lond,

þ heouenliche kinedom ;

for a mon of lam, [2180]

þe þe is lauerd of lif ;

2152 for þis lutle pine,

þe alið in lute hwile,

endelese reste

in þe riche of heouene ;

2156 for þis swifte pine,

þ aswikeð se sone,

blissen buten ende,

¶ murhðen aa mare.

2160 Ne nawiht ne wen þu [2190]

þ tu nu forwurðe ;

for nu þu biginnest earst,

¶ art iboren, to libben

2164 i þ lif þ leasteð

aa buten linunge."

þe cwen, þurh þeos steuene,

wes swiðe istrenget ;

2168 ¶ se stalewurðe,

þ ha feng to cleopien

upon þe cwelleres, [2200]

¶ hihede ham to donne

2147 R ileuet, C ileued. 2148 C B a, B lont. 2149 R writes þe kinedom of heouene, C heuenlich. 2151 C him þ for þe þe ; lif (f altered from s). 2152 R þe for þis. 2153 C þ. C B i, R an for lute ; hondwile for hwile. 2155 C B i, C heuene. 2156 C ¶ for. 2157 C þat, B þe, R so. 2159 R ant, C ai, B a. 2160 C ¶ for Ne ; nawt, wene. 2161 C beo for nu (beo expunged). 2162 B nu inserted from above, R carest. 2163 B ibore. 2164 C lasteð. 2165 C ai, B a bute, C ende for linunge, B longunge. 2166 C þis, B þes, R steine. 2167 C was, B istreget. 2168 R ant so, B stealewurðe. 2169 R þet, C bigon for feng, B ueng, C clepien. 2170 R uppon, C B upo.

a little earthly land, the heavenly kingdom ; for a man of clay, he who is Lord of life ; for this little pain, which subsides in a little while, endless rest in the kingdom of heaven ; for this transitory suffering, that ceases so soon, joys without end, and gladness evermore. Do not thou think that now thou perishest ; for now thou first beginnest, and art born, to live in the life that lasteth ever without end." The queen, by these words, was greatly strengthened ; and so steadfast, that she began to call to the executioners, and urged them to do what they

Tunc ministri extra civitatem	2172	þ ham wes ihaten ; t heo duden ; drohen hire wiðuten þe burhþetes ; t tuhen hire tittes
eam ducentes. ferreis. hastilibus ¹		
regias mamillas traiciunt. et sic	2176	up of hire breosten, bi þe bare bane, wið eawles of irne ; t swipten of þrefter, [2210]
suspensas ab imo crudeliter pec-		
tore mammas evellunt. De hinc		
gladio percussa. felici martirio	2180	mid sweord, hire heaued ; t heo swarf to Criste upon þe þreo t twentuðe dei of Nouembres moneð ;
migravit ad christum. vicesima		
tercia die mensis novembris feria	2184	t þ wes on an Wodnesdei þ ha þus wende, martir, to þe murhðes þ neauer ne wonieð.
quarta.		
Porphirius vero noctu assumptos ²	2188	Porphire ananriht ferde þider i þe niht ! [2220] t swucche wið him of his men þ he wel truste on ;
secum quibus secretum suum	2192	t al þes lefdis licome leofliche smirede wið smirles of aromaz swote smellinde,
palam esse voluit. corpus regine		
et martiris conditum aromatibus	2196	t biburiede hire

2172 C was. 2173 B ant, C And, didn. 2174 CB wiðute, R burhþetes, C burhþates, B burhþeten. 2175 R ant, drohen for tuhen. 2176 C breoste. 2177 R biðe for bi þe, B beare. 2178 R ewles. 2179 R ant, spiteden for swipten, B þrefter. 2180 CB wið, C sword, B sweort, R heauet. 2181 R B ant, C swerf, B swearf. 2182 R uppon, CB upo, R a for t. 2184 B ant ; þ inserted from above, R tat, CB a, C wednesdei, B weodnesdei. 2185 C wente. 2186 R omits þe. 2187 B þe. 2188 R Porfirie. 2190 R ant, swuch, C hise. 2192 C þe, lafdies, B leafdis. 2193 C lefliche, smerede, R smireden. 2196 R biburieden.

¹ C originally *hostilibus*.

² in C two last letters on erasure, L *assumptis*.

were commanded. And they did so ; and drew her without the gates of the city ; and pulled off the paps from her breasts, by the bare bone, with iron awls ; and afterwards, with a sword, struck off her head : and she ascended to Christ upon the three-and-twentieth day of November's month ; and that was on a Wednesday that she thus went, as a martyr, to the joys that never wane. Porphirius immediately went thither in the night, and with him such of his men as he could firmly trust ; and affectionately anointed all the lady's body with sweet-smelling aromatic ointment, and buried her as became a martyr and a queen. Men

sepelivit.

Mane autem facto fit questio de

corpore regine. quis illud sustu-

lisset. De quo cum multos¹ suppli-

cium pertrahi vidêret porphirius.

constanter ante tribunal impera-

toris irruit dicens.

Quid tû homines innoxios punîri
mandasti imperator

as hit deh martir

ƿ cwen for to donne.

Me com i þe marhen, [2230]

2200 het witen hwa hefde,
aȝein þe kinges forbode,
þ̃ licome iled þeonne.

þa Porphire iseh feole,

2204 þ̃ me seide hit upon,

gultelese, leaden

ƿ dreien to deaȝe,

leop forð wiȝute fearlac,

2208 ƿ com biforen þe keiser,

ƿ keneliche cleopede, [2240]

“Sei, þu Sathanesses sune,

þu kinge forcūðest!

2212 hwet constu to þeos men

þ̃ tu þus ledest?

Lowr! icham her, þu hatelegast,

mid alle mine hirdmen,

2216 to ȝelden reisun for ham.

velut sacrilegii reos quos potius defensos esse oportuerat.² si te
nature religio³ humana corpora a feris et volatilibus tollenda esse
docuisset? Qua in re vesano te spiritu agitari manifestum est:
qui humanis corporibus nec etiam sepulturam indulges. Que etenim

2197 R omits deh, B Martyr. 2198 R ant, cwen deh for, B te. 2199 C Men, B [M]e
(space left for M), R ine for i þe. 2201 R aȝeines, C aȝain, B forbod. 2202 C ilad,
B ilead. 2203 R porfirie, C seh, fele. 2204 C þat, B þe, C men, R uppon.
2205 C gultlese. 2206 R ant, C draien, B dreaien. 2207 R buten, farlac. 2208 R B
biuoren, C tofore. 2210 C Sathanase, B sathanesse. 2211 B king. 2212 C hwat,
B const tu to, C þes. 2213 C leades. 2214 B heateliche. 2215 C B wið. 2216 B ȝelde,
R reaisun.

¹ C originally *multis*.

² *optaverat*.

³ C originally *religio*.

came on the morrow, and commanded inquiry to be made, who had, contrary to the king's
prohibition, taken the body thence. When Porphirius saw many guiltless men, who were
accused of it, led and dragged to death, he sprang forward without fear, and came before the
emperor, and boldly cried, "Say, thou son of Satan, thou most infamous of all kings! what
knowest thou against these men whom thou thus treatest? Lo! here am I, thou hateful
demon, with all my household, to answer for them. Condemn, then, me and mine, because

gens tam barbara hujusmodi iudicium edidit. ut vel cadaver exanime terre matris gremio sepeliri prohiberet? Veruntamen antequam innocentes perire consentiam. si reos esse iudicas qui christi martirem sepelierunt. reatum hujusmodi non formido.¹

Condempna certe si audes. quod
contra imperium tuum ancillam²
christi³ sepelivi.

Fordem, nu, me ʔ mine,
ʔ we, aʔeines ʔin heast, [2250]
ʔ licome awei ledden,
2220 ʔ leiden in eorðe.”

O expetendum cunctis fidelibus crimen sepulture humane. Utinam et hoc michi obicias. ut ceteri relaxentur. Certe hoc crimine (fol. 189b) solus ego periclitari desidero. Nam ego sum qui gloriosam christi martirem. et ego christi confessor. sepulture gremio accumulavi.

“Nu ʔu art,” quoð ʔe king,
“ken ʔ icnawen
ʔ tu hauest deað ofearned;
2224 ʔ ʔurh ʔe, alle ʔe oðre.

Hic⁴ tyrannus velut alto vulnere saucius. pro plantu rugitum velut amens altum emisit. quo tota regia peritonuit. O ô me miserum. ô omnibus miserandum. ut quid me in hanc erumpnosam vitam natura mater edidit. cum tollitur omne quod nostri imperii precipue summa requirit? Ecce porphirius qui erat unicus⁵ anime mee custos. et tocius laboris solatium. in quem ab omni cura et sollicitudine reclinabar velut singulare michi presidium. ecce hic nescio qua demonum infestatione supplantatus. deorum nostrorum culturam⁶ aspernatur. et illum iesum quem vesana turba christianorum pro

2217 R ant. 2218 R for for ʔ, C aʔain, R hest. 2219 B leadden. 2220 B eorde. 2221 B [N]u (space left for N), R writes Nu art tu iken qð ʔe king, C q, B qð. 2222 R ken omitted; ant, B icnawes. 2223 C haues, R deð, R B ofseruet for ofearned. 2224 R ant, oðere.

¹ reformido. ² omits ancillam. ³ C adds christi on the margin; L inserts famulam. ⁴ Hinc. ⁵ erat unicus transposed. ⁶ curam for culturam.

we, against thy commandment, took away the body, and laid it in earth.” “Now art thou known,” quoth the king, “and hast acknowledged that thou hast deserved death; and through thee, all the others. But because thou art a renowned knight, and the chief of them

deo colit. utpote mente captus publica voce confitatur. Hic nimirum reginam a lege patria et cultura deorum subvertit. nec aliàs querendus nobis est¹ conjugal²is dementie architectus. Et quamvis irreparabile michi dampnum de conjug³e abeo constet illatum. hoc potius eligo ut resipiscens ab hac stulticia. deos sibi placabiles reddat. et in nostra ut ceperat amicitia perduret. quam nostre³ animadversionis sententiam experiatur. His dictis. jussit omnes commilitones ipsius qui lateri ejus adherebant. coram se adduci. quibus seorsum advocatis. dum de porphirii conversione questionem faceret. omnes una voce se christianos esse protestabantur. nec metu mortis à fide christi et porphirii societate ullatenus dilapsuros. Hic tyrannus aliquos eorum putans terrore penarum a proposito posse revocari. jubet eos⁴ exquisitis cruciari suppliciis. Quos cum ad locum supplicii pertrahi porphirius intueretur: timens ne timore passionis mentes eorum turbarentur. dixit tyranno. Quid hoc imperator sibi⁵ vult. quod horum principem et caput dimittis me inquam dîco. et membra inferiora⁶ persêqueris? Nam nisi me victum primo reddideris. inanem in his laborem consûmis. Ab his ergo querere si quid habes: *ego pro eis tibi asto ratio-(fol. 190a)-nem redditurus.* Dicit ei tyrannus.

Tu caput et princeps horum es
ut asseris. oportunum est ut tû de
te istis prebeas exemplum. vide-
licet ut primus ab hac⁷ stulticia
resipiscas. et nobiscum gloriose

Ah for þu art icudd eniht,
⁊ heaued of ham alle,
cheos ⁊et of þeos twa :
2228 oðer chear ananriht, [2260]
þ te oðre chearren þurh þe,
⁊ tu schalt libben,
⁊ beon leof ⁊ wurð me ;
2232 oðer, ⁊ef þu nult no,

2225 C eud. 2228 R omits oðer, C per (*expunged*) for chear, which is added on the margin. 2229 R oðere. 2231 CB beo, B wurð wið me. 2232 C ⁊if, B ⁊ef þ tu, omits no.

¹ nobis est transposed. ² omits conjugal^{is}. ³ omits nostre. ⁴ omits eos. ⁵ C originally only s; L imperator sibi transposed. ⁶ C originally inferiora. ⁷ C originally hanc(?).

all, choose yet (one) of these two (things): either turn instantly, that the rest may turn through thee, and thou shalt live, and be beloved and honoured by me; or, if thou wilt not, stretch

vivas. aut certe¹ primus² gladio
intereas. Ita locutus.

jubet hunc cum³ ceteris commili-

tonibus suis extra civitatem trahi.

et amputatis capitibus corpora in-

humata canibus corrodenda emitti.⁴

Quod et factum est ;

strecche forð þine swire
scharp sweord to underfonne."

Porphire ⁊ alle hise

2236 heolden ham togederes,

⁊ wið se soðe gabbes

gremeden him se sare [2270]

þ he het hetterliche,

2240 anan wiðuten þe burh,

bihefden ham, euch fot ;

⁊ leauen hare bodies

unbiburiet alle,

2244 fode to wilde deor,

⁊ to luftfuhes.

His heaste wes iforðet,

⁊ alle clane bihefdet ;

2248 ah, for al his forbode, [2280]

nes hit þ te bodies

neren ifatte i þe niht

⁊ feire biburiet.

2252 Nalde nawt godd leoten

his martirs licomes

liggen to forleosen,

þ hefde bihaten

2256 þ an her of hare fax

ne schulde forwurðen.

2233 R uorð, CB þi. 2234 C sword, RB underuonne, C underfon. 2235 R porfirie, R his. 2236 C helden, B to jederes. 2237 R ant, swa. 2238 R so. 2239 R hatterliche, C heterliche. 2240 CB wiðute. 2242 C leafden. 2243 C unbiburied, B unburiet. 2244 B wilde. 2245 R ant. 2246 R heste, C heast, was, B iuorðet. 2247 R ant, C cleane, R bihefdeft, C bihefdeft. 2248 B forbod. 2250 C ifat. 2251 R ant. 2252 C leten. 2253 B Martyrs. 2254 R writes liggen for to leosen. 2255 R þe. 2256 R þet, C heaueð for fax. 2257 C forlosen for forwurðen, B forwurðen.

¹ C originally *conte*.

² omits *primus*.

³ C adds *cum* on the margin.

⁴ *dimitti*.

forth thy neck to receive the sharp sword." Porphirius and all his knights adhered to each other, and with such true taunts vexed him so sore that he furiously gave orders to behead them immediately, every man, without the city ; and to leave all their bodies unburied, as food to wild beasts, and to fowls of the air. His hest was performed, and they were every one beheaded ; but, notwithstanding his prohibition, it hindered not that the bodies were taken away in the night and honourably buried. God would not suffer his martyrs' corpses to lie to perish, who had promised that a hair of their heads (hair) should not perish. The king's

Consummata¹ itaque est² horum passio mense novembrio die vicesima quarta feria quinta. Postera autem die sedens pro tribunali

impiissimus tyrannus. nec dum
martirum sanguine satus, beat-
am CATERINAM jubet sibi pre-
sentari.

cui sic ait.³ Quamquam tu omnium
horum rea sis quos arte magica
depravatos mortis compendium
subire fecisti. si tamen ab er-
roris proposito animum revo-
cares. et diis omnipotentibus
thura offeres :⁴

poteras nobiscum feliciter regnare.

et prima in regno nostro nomi-
nari. Ne nos ergo⁵ diutius pro-

trahas. quod vis

þe ȝet nesnawt þes kinges þurst,
wið al þis blod, ikelet; [2291]

2260 ah het Katherine cumen
swiðe biforen him.

Ha wes sone ibroht forð,
ȝ he brec on to seggen,

2264 " þah þu beo schuldi
þe ane of alle clane;
þah þu wið þi wicchecreft
habbe imaket se monie

2268 to eornen toward hare deað,
as ha weren wode; [2301]

ȝet, ȝef þu wiðdreiest te,
ȝ wult greten ure godes

2272 ase forð as þu ham hauest
igremet ȝ igabbet,
þu maht, in alle murhðe,
longe libben wið me,

2276 ȝ meast schalt beon cuð icudd
in al mi kineriche.

Ne lead tu us na lengre;

ah loke nu, bliue, [2311]

2258 B [P]e (space left for þ), C[P] a for þe (space left for þ), C B þe for þes, B omits þurst. 2260 R katherine swiðe cumen, C Kater'cume. 2261 R omits swiðe, R B biuoren, C omits him. 2262 R ȝ heo, C was, R uorð. 2263 C bigon for brec on. 2265 B of ham alle, C cleane. 2266 B wicchecreff. 2267 C hauest, R so. 2268 C omits to, R toward, B towart, R deð. 2269 R as þah ha. 2270 C ȝif, wiðdraheste. 2271 R ant wule, B wulle, R ure godes igreten. 2272 R as. 2274 B murðe. 2275 B libbe. 2276 R ant, C B beo, C cud ȝ icud. 2279 R bliue.

¹ C originally *consumpta*.

² *itaque est* transposed.

³ *et dixit* for *cui sic ait*.

⁴ C originally *offeret*.

⁵ omits *ergo*.

thirst was not even yet, with all this blood, cooled; but he ordered Katherine to come speedily before him. She was soon brought forth, and he broke on to say, "Though thou art guilty of all the rest; though thou, with thy witchcraft, hast made so many to run towards their death, as if they were mad; yet, if thou retract and wilt salute our gods as well as thou hast grieved and mocked them, thou mayest, in all pleasure, live long time with me, and shalt be most celebrated and renowned in all my kingdom. Put us off no longer; but consider now, quickly, whether it is preferable for thee to do what I propose to

ex duobus unum elige.
aut maturius aris libamina inferas.
aut hodie à cervice gladio caput
avulsum miserabile prebebit¹ in-
tuentibus spectaculum.
Cui virgo respondens.²
Non est inquit miserabile spec-
taculum. cui de occasu ortus suc-
cedit gloriosus.
de morte immortalitas. de merore
jocunditas: de tristicia gaudia
mercantur³ eterna.
Te ergo protrahere diutius tiranne
non quero. Fac quecunque animo
concepisti. paratam me esse vide-
bis⁴ ad omnia sustinenda quemichi
inferre potueris dum dominum⁵

2280 hweðer þe beo leouere
don þ̅ ich þe leare,
ṽ libben ʒef þu swa dest;
oðer, þis ilke dei,
2284 se dreoriliche deien,
þ̅ ham schal agrisen
alle þ̅ hit bihaldeð." "
"Nai," quoð Katherine,
2288 "nis nawt grislich sihðe
to seon fallen þ̅ þing [2321]
þ̅ schal arisen, þurh þ̅ fal,
a þusentfalt te fehere,
2292 of deað to lif undeðlich;
ṽ to arisen from ream
to aa lestinde lahtre;
from bale to eche blisse;
2296 from wa to wunne, ṽ to weole
þurhwuniende.
Nawiht, king, ne kepe ich
þ̅ tu hit fir firsti; [2331]
2300 ah hat hihendliche
þ̅ tu hauest in heorte,
for ich am ʒarow to al þe wa
þ̅ tu const me ʒarkin,

2280 C leuere. 2281 C omits þe. 2282 R ant, C jif, R omits swa, C dost. 2283 R oðer
i þis. 2284 R omits se; dreoliche. 2285 C þ̅ alle ham. 2286 C omits alle, B þe, C
bihalden. 2287 B [N]ai (space left for N), qð, C q. 2288 C ladlich for grislich, 2289
C seo, B falle, C omits þ̅, R þ̅ þing fallen. 2290 B þe, arise. 2291 C þusendfalt, þe,
R schenre for fehere. 2292 R deð, R undedlich, B undeaðlich. 2293 B arise, C fram.
2294 C ai, B a, C lastende, B leahtre, R leahtre. 2295 C fram. 2296 C fram, winne,
R ant, C wele. 2298 R nawih, B Nawhit, R kep. 2299 C writes þ̅ tu lengre hit firsti.
2300 C writes ah hat tu hihendliche, R hihentliche. 2301 C on for in. 2302 R alle.
2303 R const me transposed, C ʒarken.

¹ C originally prebit. ² respondit. ³ succedunt for mercantur. ⁴ esse videbis transposed.

⁵ C dominum added on margin; L has regem.

thee, and to live if thou dost so; or, this very day, to die so dismally, that all who behold it shall shudder." "Nay," quoth Katherine, "it is not a loathly sight to see a thing fall that shall rise again, through that fall, a thousand times fairer,—from death to life immortal; and to rise from weeping to everlasting gladness; from misery to eternal bliss; from sorrow to joy, and to welfare that ever endureth. I care not at all, O king, that thou shouldst longer delay it; command then speedily what thou hast at heart, for I am prepared

meum videre et

virginalibus

choris

agnum sequentibus

interesse merear.

Sic effatam tirannus furiali spiritu
debriatus.

christi virginem a conspectu suo

abstractam jubet extra portam ci-

vitatis decollari. Que cum ad locum

passionis¹ prefixum properaret.

respiens vidit turbam multam

virorum et mulierum sequentium

se atque plan-(fol. 190b)-gentium.

inter quas precipue virgines et

2304 þ ich iseon mahe

mi lufsume leofmon,

ʒ beon ibroht se bliðe

bimong mine feolahe,

2308 þe folhið him oueral [2340]

i þe feire ferreden

of uirgines in heouene."

þe king, as þe þ wes fordrenct

2312 wið þes deoules puisun,

nuste hwet meanen :

ah het swiðe don hire ut

of his ehsihðe,

2316 ʒ bihefden hire utewið

þe barren of þe burhe.

Heo as me ledde hire, [2350]

lokedede aȝeinward,

2320 for ludinge þ ha herde,

ʒ seh sihen efter hire

heaðene monie,

wepmen ʒ wummen,

2324 mid wringinde honden

wepinde sare.

Ah þe meidenes alre meast,

wið sari mod ʒ sorhful,

2304 C swa þat, seo, B iseo. 2305 R leouemon. 2306 C beo, R so. 2307 R feolaes, C felahes. 2308 C þ folhen. 2309 B ferredene. 2310 B B uirgnes, C heuene. 2311 R þet for þ, B þe for þ, C was, R fordrenct. 2312 C i þe for wið þes, B deofles, puisun. 2313 B ʒ nuste, C hwat. 2314 R mid for don, B wið for don; omits ut. 2315 C sihðe, B hehsihðe. 2316 B biheafdin, omits hire. 2318 C men. 2319 C aȝainward, B aȝeinwart. 2320 R for þe ludinge, iherde. 2321 R B ant, B omits sihen, C after. 2322 R omits heaðene. 2323 R weopmen, C wimmen. 2324 CB wið, R grindinde, C wringende. 2325 C ʒ wepinde. 2326 R ant for Ah; te, B meidnes.

¹ *passioni.*

for all the pain that thou canst provide for me, so that I may see my beloved, who is so worthy of love, and joyfully be brought among my companions, that follow him everywhere in the fair company of virgins in heaven." The king, as one who was drunken with the devil's poison, wist not what to think: he commanded, however, to put her quickly out of his sight, and behead her without the barriers of the city. She, as they conducted her, looked back again, on account of the noise she heard, and saw many heathen, men and women, running after her, wringing their hands and weeping sore. But the maidens most of all, in sad and sorrowful mood, and the rich ladies, let tears trickle. And she turned again,

matrone nobiles lamentabantur. ¹	2328	¶ te riche lefdis, [2360] letten teares treondlin; ¶ heo biwende hire aȝein, sumdel iwreððet,
Conversa igitur ad ² illas. ³ dixit.		
O generose matrone ô virgines	2332	¶ etwat ham hare wop wið þulliche wordes: “ ȝe lefdis ¶ ȝe meidnes, ȝef ȝe weren wise,
clarissime nolite obsecro pas-	2336	nalde ȝe nawt bringen me forð toward blisse mid se bale bere; [2370] nalde ȝe neauer remen
sionem meam lamentabili planctu		
onerare sed si nature pietas vos	2340	ne makien reowðe for me, þe fare to eche reste, into þe riche of heouene. Beoð bliðe, ich biseche ow,
ulla erga me incitat ad misera-	2344	ȝef ȝe me blisse unnen; for ich iseo Iesu Crist, þe cleopeð me ¶ copneð; þe is mi lauerd ¶ mi luue,
tionem. congaudente precor michi ⁴	2348	mi lif ¶ mi leofmon, [2380] mi wunne ¶ me iweddēt, mi murhðe ¶ mi mede ¶ meidene crune.
potius quia video christum me		
vocantem qui est amor meus.		
rex et sponsus meus. qui est		
merces ⁵ copiosa sanctorum. decus		
et decor ⁶ virginum.		
Vos vero ⁷ planctum ⁸ istum lacri-	2352	Ower wop wendeð

2328 B ant, C lafdis, B leaſdis. 2329 R leoten, C trendlen, B trondlin. 2330 R ant, C And, aȝain. 2331 R iwreðet, B iwreaðet, C writes sumhwat iwraððet. 2332 R ant, C etwat (second t written over d), B eadwat. 2334 C lafdis, B leaſdis, R ant, meidenes. 2335 C ȝif. 2336 CB bringe. 2337 B toward. 2338 CB wið, R so. 2340 CB makie, B reoðe. 2341 C þ, B feare. 2342 C heuene. 2343 B bliþe. 2344 C ȝif, CB unneð. 2345 C seo, RC ih'u. 2346 C þ; after cleopeð the word after expunged, R writes þe copneð ant cleopeð me. 2347 C þ. 2348 R ¶ mi; leouemon. 2350 R ant.

¹ C originally *lamentatur*. ² omits *igitur ad*. ³ *illa*. ⁴ *precor michi* transposed. ⁵ C originally *mer*. ⁶ C originally *decora*: L has *corona*. ⁷ *ergo* for *vero*. ⁸ C originally *plactum*.

somewhat angered, and chid them for their weeping in words like these: "Ye ladies and ye maidens, if ye were wise, ye would not conduct me forth toward bliss with such doleful faces (features); ye would never lament nor make sorrow for me, who go to eternal rest, into the kingdom of heaven. Be cheerful, I beseech you, if ye wish me joy; for I see Jesus Christ, who calleth me and waiteth for me; who is my Lord and my love, my life and my beloved, my joy and my betrothed, my rejoicing and my reward, and the crown of virgins. Turn all

mabilem quem inaniter in me
deperditis in vos ipsas¹ conver-
tite. ne vos in hoc gentilitatis
errore dies suprema deprehendat.
pro quo fletus eternos subeatis.

Hec locuta a² percussore orandi

spatium indulgêri sibi poposcit.

Quod cum spiculator annueret.³

ipsa elevatis in celum oculis⁴

oravit dicens.

O decus et salus

al on ow seoluen,
leste ȝe eft wepen
echeliche in helle,
2356 for þ heaðene lif
þ ȝe in liggeð ;
as ȝe schullen alle, [2390]
buten ȝef ȝe forleten,
2360 hwil ȝe beoð o liue,
ower misbileauē.”
As ha hefde iseid tus,
bisohte þ wið þe brond,
2364 as hit blikede buuen hire,
t schulde hire bone beon,
þ he for his freolec,
firstede hire, t fremede,
2368 þe hwile þ ha buhe hire,
t bede ane bone. [2401]
He ȝettede hire t ȝef
bliðeliche leauē ;
2372 t heo biheold upward,
wið upaheuen heorte ;
t cneolinde duneward,
þus to Criste cleopede :
2376 “Lauerd, leome t lif
of alle riht bileafde ; [2410]

2353 C seluen. 2354 B lest, R eft wepen *transposed*. 2356 R heðene, B headene. 2357 C ligen. 2359 CB bute, C omits ȝef, B forleoten. 2360 C beon. 2362 R iseid þus *transposed*. 2363 C him for þ, B þe, bront. 2365 B schulde, C bane. 2366 C freolaic. 2367 R friðede for firstede, ant. 2368 R þeo for þe, C hwil, R heo, C buhde. 2370 R ant he, ant, C wið for ȝef, R ȝef hire. 2372 R ant, C And, B biheolt, upwart. 2374 R omits t, B duneward. 2375 CB crist. 2376 C [L]auerd (*space left for L*), R ant. 2377 R rihte, RB bileauē.

¹ omits *ipsas*. ² C a supplied on margin. ³ C second e altered from i. ⁴ oculis in celum.

your weeping upon yourselves, lest ye once more weep eternally in hell, for that heathen life in which ye lie ; as ye shall all, except ye leave off your unbelief whilst ye are in life.” When she had thus spoken, she requested him who had the sword, as it gleamed above her, and was to be her slayer, that he of his liberality, would delay for her, and indulge her, while she bowed herself and prayed a prayer. He granted and gave her permission cheerfully ; and she looked upwards, with uplifted heart ; and kneeling down, she thus called upon Christ : “ Lord, light and life of all true believers ; mild Jesu, who art thyself the reward

credentium. ô spes et gloria vir-
ginum jesu bone.

gratias tibi âgo:⁹ qui me intra col-
legium ancillarum tuarum con-
numerare dignatus es.

Fac ergo hanc cum ancilla tua
obsecro¹ misericordiam. ut qui-
cunque in laudam et gloriam²
tuam passionis mee memoriam
egerint. sive in exitu anime sue

aut etiam in quacunque angustia
me invocaverint: celerem pro-
pitiatiōis tue obtineant effectum.

Fugiat ab eis pestilentia et fames.
morbus et clades: et universa
aurarum intemperies.

milde Iesu, þ art te seolf
meidene mede;

2380 ihered t̃ iheiet
beo þu, hehe healent!

t̃ þe ich þonki, lauerd,
þ̃ tu hauest ileuet me,

2384 t̃ waldest þ̃ ich were
i þe tale of þ̃ine wummen.

Lauerd, milce me nu,
t̃ ȝette me þ̃ ich ȝirne: [2420]

2388 ich bidde þe þeos bone,—

þ̃ alle þeo þ̃ munneð
mi pine t̃ mi passiun,
þe to luue, lauerd,

2392 t̃ cleopieð to me hwen ha
schulen

þe derf of deað drehen,
oðer hwen se ha hit eauer doð,
in neode t̃ in nowcin,

2396 hihentliche iher ham,
heouenliche healent! [2430]

Aflei from ham al uuel,
weorre t̃ weane baðe,

2400 t̃ untidi wederes;
hunger t̃ euch hete

þe heaneð ham t̃ harmið!

2378 C ih'u, B þe for þ, C þe self. 2380 B iheret, R ant, C iheied. 2381 C healend.
2382 R al for t̃, C And, te. 2383 R ilenet, C ileuuet, B ileueð. 2385 R B omit þe,
C wimmen. 2387 R ant, ȝirni, C ȝerne. 2389 C þoa for þeo; þat, B þe for second þ.
R munnið. 2391 C to þe; leue for luue. 2392 C clepien. 2393 R þ. deð. 2394
R so heo. 2395 B i, R oðer for t̃, B i, R neowcin. 2396 C hihendliche. 2397 R
heouenlice, C heuenliche (*hole in MS.: 1 and part of i wanting*), R lauerd for healent,
C healend. 2398 C fram, B alle. 2399 R worre, ant, C wone, B weone. 2401 R ant,
heate. 2402 C þ, R heanið, ant, C harmeð, B hearmið.

¹ omits obsecro.

² gloriam et laudem.

of maidens; praised and exalted be thou, great saviour! And I thank thee, Lord, that thou hast permitted me, and wouldst that I should be in the number of thy women. Lord, be gracious to me now, and grant me what I desire: I request of thee this boon,—that all those who mention my pain and my passion, for love of thee, Lord, and invoke me when they are about to endure the tribulation of death, or whensoever they do this, in need or in trouble, thou listen to them speedily, O heavenly Saviour! Make to flee from them all evil, both war and trouble, and unseasonable storms; hunger and every hatred that depresses and harms

Fiat in finibus eorum terre fecunda messio. âer salubrior.¹ et secunda² elementorum gratia³ jocunda fructuum ubertas.

Ecce

Lowr! her ich abide

jam expleto certaminis⁴ agone domine jesu christe ferientis gladium expecto.

Tu quod carnifex tollere non

2404 þe bite of sweordes egge.

potest precor suscipe spiritum

þe þ me to deaðe deð,

do al þ he mei don,

neome þ he neomen mei,—

meum: et per manus sanctorum

2408 þ lif of mi licome; [2441]

angelorum in eterne⁵ quietis⁶

mi sawle ich sende to þe,

healent, in heouene;

sede⁷ cum sanctis virginibus con-

hat þ ha beo iset,

fovêri jubeas.

2412 þurh þine hali engles,

i þ heouenliche hird

bimong þine meidnes."

Necdum orationem compleverat:

Nefde ha buten iseid swa,

et ecce vox hujusmodi de sullimi⁸

2416 þ ter ne com a steuene

sihinde from heouene: [2450]

nube emissa ad eam redditur.

"Cum, mi leoue leofmon;

cum nu, min iweddet,

Veni dilecta mea. speciosa mea:

2420 leouest an wummon!

Low, þe þete of eche lif

ecce tibi beatitudinis jânua aperi-

abit te al iopenet!

2403 R hwer for her, C ich abide her. 2404 C swordes. 2405 C deade doð, R writes þe þ tis deð me deð to, B writes þe þ deð me to deað. 2406 C omits don. 2407 C nime, nime, B neome for neomen. 2408 C þe. 2409 R ihc, C i, R senden. 2410 R hehe healent, C healend, heuene. 2413 C heuenliche, B hird. 2414 R meides. 2415 B [N]efde (space left for N), C B bute, B ibede for iseid, C tus for swa. 2416 R stefne. 2417 C stihende fram. 2418 R leouemon. 2419 C þu for nu. 2420 C a. 2421 R þet, C þate. 2422 C abid, iopened.

¹ C originally *solubrior*. ² *secundam*. ³ *gratiam*. ⁴ inserts *mei*. ⁵ *eterna*. ⁶ *quiete*. ⁷ omits *sede*. ⁸ *sublimi*.

them! Lo! I abide here the bite of the sword's edge. Let him that puts me to death, do all that he may, let him take what he can take,—the life of my body; I send my soul to thee, O Saviour, in heaven; command that it be placed, by thy holy angels, in that heavenly household among thy maidens." She had no sooner spoken thus, than there came a voice descending from heaven: "Come, my dearly beloved: come now, my spouse, most beloved of women! Behold, the gate of eternal life awaits thee fully opened! The abode of every joy

tur. ecce (fol. 191a) quietis eterne
mansio tibi parata adventum tuum
expectat. jam in occursum tuum
chorus ille virgineus¹ sanctorum
exultantibus animis cum trium-
phali adventat corona. Veni ergo.
et ne sollicitêris² de donis que
postulas: nam et his qui pas-
sionem tuam devotis mentibus
celebraverint. et qui in periculis
et necessitatibus tē invocaverint.
presidia optata. et opem celerem
de celo promitto.

Facta ergo hac voce: christi
virgo lacteam cervicem proten-
dens speculatori ait.

Ecce³ vocor a domino meo jesu
christo. tû⁴ jam impiger age: et

þe wununge of euch wunne
2424 kepeð ʒ copneð þi cume.
Lo! al þ meidene mot
ʒ tet hird of heouene,
cumeð her aȝein þe, [2460]
2428 mid kempene crune!
Cum nu, ʒ ne beo þu
na þing o dute
of al þ tu ibeden hauest;
2432 alle þeo þ munneð
þe ʒ ti passiun,—
hu þu deað drohe,—
wið inwarde heorte,—
2436 in eauer euch time
þ heo to þe cleopien [2470]
wið luue ʒ rihte bileaue,
ich bihate ham hihentliche
2440 help of heoueneriche.”
Heo, wið þeos steuene, strahte
forð swiftliche
þe snawhwhite swire,
2444 ʒ cweð to þe cwellere:
“Mi lif, ʒ mi leofmon,
Iesu Crist, mi lauerd,
haueð nu icleopet me. [2480]

2423 R wunnunge, B euhc. 2424 R ant, C come. 2425 R low, B þe. 2426 C þat, heuene.
2427 B kimeð, C aȝain, B aȝein. 2428 C B wið. 2429 R ant. 2430 R ofdutet for o dute.
2431 R omits tu. 2432 R þet for þ, B þe for þ, R munnið. 2433 R ant. 2434 R deð.
2435 R wið in wið inwarde (sic), C inwarde (hole in MS.: lower part of e wanting). 2436
R euer. 2437 C clepieð. 2438 R ʒ wið rihte, B riht. 2439 R help for hihentliche, C
hihendeliche. 2440 R hihentliche for help, C heuene for heoueneriche, B heoueriche.
2441 C þis, R stefne. 2442 R B uorð. 2443 B snawhwhite. 2445 R leouemon. 2446
R C ih'u. 2447 C omits nu; iclepet, me to him.

¹ C originally *virgines*. ² C originally *solicitêris*. ³ inserts *ego*. ⁴ inserts *autem*.

expecteth and longeth for thy coming. Lo! all the assembly of virgins and the company of heaven, are coming to meet thee, with the crown of conquerors! Come now, and doubt nothing in regard to all that thou hast prayed for. All those who mention thee and thy passion—how thou enduredst death,—with sincere heart,—at every time they shall invoke thee with love and true faith, I promise them help speedily from the kingdom of heaven.” She, at these words, stretched forth quickly her snow-white neck, and said to the executioner: “Jesus Christ, my life, my beloved, and my Lord, hath now called me to him. Now then

redde expletum quod â tiranno	2448	Do nu þenne hihentliche þ te is ihaten."
accepisti mandatum.		þ he, as ha het him, hef þ hatele sweord up,
Mox ille insurgens. decollavit eam.	2452	þ swipte hire of þ heaued. I þ ilke stude, anan, iwurðen twa wundres. þe an of þe twa wes,
Quo ex facto: due rês memoria	2456	þ ter sprong ut, mid te dunt, milk imenget wið blod, [2490] to beoren hire witnesse of hire hwhite meiðhad.
digne ¹ apparuerunt. una quia lac	2460	þe oðer wes, þ te engles lihten of heuene, þ heuen hire on heh up, þ beren forð hire bodi,
pro sanguine in testimonium virgi-	2464	þ biburieden hit i þe munt of Sýnai, þer Moyses fatte þe lahe et ure lauwerd, [2500]
nalis innocentie de corpore ejus	2468	from þeonne as ha deide twenty dahene ʒong, þ ʒet ma, as pilgrimes, þ wel witen, seggeð.
effusum terram uberius irrigavit:		
altera quia mox angeli acces-	2472	þer ure lauwerd wurcheð
serunt. et assumptum corpus per		
altum aerea ² subvehentes in monte		
Sýnai deposuerunt:		
qui mons â loco occisionis ejus ³		
distat itinere viginti et eo amplius		
dierum.		
quo in loco innumera ad laudem		

2448 C hihendliche. 2450 C And. 2451 B heatele, C sword. 2452 C þat, R heauet.
2453 C þat, stede. 2454 B iworðen. 2455 C omits of þe twa. 2456 C sprang, R mit,
C wið, R omits te, C þe. 2457 R omits wið. 2458 R iwtinesse, B wittnesse. 2459
R hwhite (h added from above), C meidenhad. 2460 C þat for þe; was, R engels (s added
from above). 2461 R from for of, B heuene. 2462 R ant, up on heh. 2463 R sýnay.
2466 R moises. 2467 C at. 2468 C fram, R heo. 2469 C gong. 2470 R ant,
C And, B þette, C mare. 2471 B þe, C writes seggen þ wel witen. 2472 B þear.

¹ memoria digne transposed. ² aera. ³ C ejus supplied on margin; L omits ejus.

quickly perform that which is commanded thee." And, as she bade him, he lifted up the hateful sword, and struck off her head. In the same place, instantly two miracles were done. One of them was, that there sprang out, with the stroke, milk mingled with blood, to bear her witness of her pure virginity. The other was, that angels descended from heaven, and carried her up on high and bore away her body, and buried it in the mountain of Sinai, where Moses received the law from our Lord, twenty days' journey from the place where she died, and still more, as pilgrims say, who have sure intelligence. There our Lord

domini fiunt miracula.

Inter que et hoc unum insigne

constat miraculum. quod de se-

pulchro ipsius rivus olei inde-

ficienter manare videtur.

Nam et de minutis ossibus que

de sarcôfago cum oleo effluunt.

ubicunque asportantur. salutaris

olei liquor stillare non desinit.

ex quo peruncta debilium corpora

celeris medicine opem reportant.

Passa est ergo beata KATERINA

mensenovembrio.¹ vicesima quinta

die. feria sexta. hora tercia

servans videlicet diem et horam

qua christus pro mundi re-

se feole wundres for hire,
as na muð ne mei munnen.

Ah bimong ham alle,

2476 þis is an of þe heste,— [2510]

þ̅ ter rinneð aa mare

eoile iliche riue,

ƿ̅ strikeð a stream ut

2480 of þ̅ stanene þ̅ruh

þ̅ ha in resteð.

Ʒet of þe lutle banes,

þe floweð ut wið þe eoile,

2484 floweð oðer eoile ut; [2519]

hwider se me eauer bereð ham,

ƿ̅ hwer se ha beoð ihalden,

þ̅ healeð alle uueles,

2488 ƿ̅ botneð men of euch bale,

þ̅ rihte bileaue habbeð.

þus wende þe eadie

meiden Katerine,

2492 icrunet, to Criste,

from eorðliche pinen,

i Nouembres maneð,

þe fif ƿ̅ twentuðe dei, [2530]

2496 ƿ̅ Fridai, onont te under :

i þe dei ƿ̅ i þe time

2473 R swa. 2475 R bimong (g added from above). 2476 R is inserted from above, C hehste. 2477 C renneð ai, B a. 2478 R eoli, B eoile (i inserted from above), R riuet. 2480 R þe, C þ̅ruh. 2481 R heo. 2482 R omits þe. 2483 C þ̅, flowen. R eoli, B eoille. 2484 R eoli. 2485 R þ̅ hwider, so, C men, R before bereð the syllable be blotted out and expunged. 2486 R ant, so heo, C beon. 2487 C heales. 2488 B ant. 2489 B þe, C riht, habben. 2490 R þis for þe; edi, C eadi. 2493 C fram. 2494 C nouembris. 2495 R a for ƿ̅, C dai. 2496 R ant, C fridai, R omits te. 2497 C dai.

¹ novembri.

worketh so many miracles, on her account, as no mouth may recount. But, among them all, this is one of the greatest,—that there runneth oil evermore alike abundantly, and a stream rushes out of the stone coffin, in which she rests. Also, from the small bones, which flow out with the oil, other oil floweth out, (which) whithersoever they are carried, and wheresoever they are kept, heals all diseases, and relieveth men, who have true faith, and every distress. Thus went the blessed maiden Katherine, crowned, to Christ, from earthly pain, in the month of November, the twenty-fifth day, and on Friday, about the Undern : in the

demptione ad passionem	ƿ hire deore leofmon
	Iesu, ure lauerd,
properavit :	2500 leafde lif on rode
	for hire ƿ for us alle.
cui honor et laus et gloria. et	Beo he, as healent,
	iheret ƿ iheiet,
potestas est per immortalia secula	2504 in alre worlde world, [2540]
	a on ecnesse !
AMEN. ¹	Amen !

Explicit vita et passio Sancte KATHERINE virginis et MARTIRIS.

2498 R *pet*, omits deore ; leouemon. 2499 R ih'u crist ure, C ih'u. 2500 R lefde, C B o.
 2501 R ant. 2502 C ase, healend. 2503 C ihered, R *writes* in heihunge ant in herunge.
 2504 R worldene *for* worlde, B worlt *for* world. 2505 R aa.

¹ *seculorum* for AMEN.

day and at the time that her dearly beloved Jesus, our Lord, gave up his life upon the cross for her and for us all. May he, as Saviour, be praised and exalted, in the world of all worlds, ever to eternity ! Amen !

NOTES.

4. The same verse St. Jul. p. 9.
11. Cf. Jul. p. 13, *þe refschiþe of rome*.
15. R þes; the scribe took the *wén* of his original for a þorn.
23. C by an erroneous separation of letters forms a word derived from O.E. *earh* = cowardly. This is one of the numerous alterations by which, however clever, C spoiled our text.
- 27-28. Cf. Jul. 13, *of alle þe londes þ þerto liggeð*.
- 29-30. One of our poet's historical reminiscences.
57. Aelfric, Hom. i. 582, renders the same idea by: *be his agenre hæfene*; *hafen*, *hæfen* meaning *property*. See also i. 880 *be ðæs mannes hæfene*, translated by Thorpe: *according to a man's property*. As it is impossible to prove *æfen* to have been used in O.E. in a similar expression, it is not improbable that our *euene* became the heir of, that is, received the functions and partly the meaning of *hafen*, when the latter came to be disused.
62. The sense demands *brohten*, as referring to the plurals *þe riche þe poure*. In Z *brohte* seems to refer to *hwa* 61. This construction, however, would deprive the principal sentence of its verb.
68. Cf. St. Jul. 7, *feir t freoliche zuheðe*.
69. Cf. St. Marg. p. 2, *of white t of wastum*.
83. *herd* from O.E. *heord* = *custodia*, quite distinct from *hird* (81 and elsewhere), from O.E. *hired* = *familia*. In consequence of the similarity of these words in our dialect, they must have been often confounded with each other; already in O.E. we have a by-form of *heord* spelt *hyrd*, and *hired* very often appears contracted to *hird*.
- 117, 122. In these verses we have *underneomen* in two distinct meanings. Stratmann only gives as its meaning *suscipere*, *reprehendere*, which would suit 117, but not 122. Here the context requires a meaning like to *try*, *tempt*. And indeed, in the Latin text, we find *experiri*, or rather *attemptare*, answering to it.
125. Cf. St. Jul. 35, *wið his crefti crokes*. See l. 256 *crokinde creftes*.
- 124-126. Cf. St. Jul. 43, *wrenchen sum rihtwis ut of þe weie*; St. Marg. 4, *wrenchen ut of þe weie*.
138. B *burh*: a similar mistake occurs in line 1642.

140. The Latin text with *sonus* demands *nurð* = *noise*, as B has it. It seems to me beyond doubt that R and C here mutually, though independently, altered the text. Evidently they did not know the word, which in the time of our legend was already very rare and obsolete.

145. Cf. l. 1667, with various readings. The difference between the terminations of *-unge* and those of *-inde* is rapidly disappearing. It is known that the first instance of their being confounded occurs in the older text of *Lazamon's Brut*.

149. The clumsy-looking insertion of this verse was necessary, as in ll. 146-47 the cause of the noise had already been stated.

155. Cf. Jul. 67, (þ) *wod he walde iwurðen*; Marg. 7, þ *forneh wod he walde iwurðen*.

162. The same verse is used in *Juliana* 7.

168. R *hire* is either the possessive pronoun referring to the following *heorte*, or it is the so-called absolute pronoun. Cf. l. 2151 C *him*.

169 = wounded in heart. *heorte* = O.E. *heortȝ-ē* Instr.—a case which in the documents of the time is very scarce. The same construction might have been applied in ll. 608-9: *mode imenget inwið*.

181-2. Cf. Marg. 5, *ahēf hire heorte heaued uppward to þe heouene*.

186. *iwald* might be = *in walde*, in power. But then the passage would give no sense, and, even apart from this, C seems to hint at *i(-wald)* not being the preposition, but the prefix *ȝe-*. A similarly-worded passage in Marg. p. 5, *al þ̅ ich iwald ah̅ t̅ am of lauerd*, does not throw much light on our case. There likewise the word in question can, by assuming a suitable punctuation, be taken for a form of the O.E. verb *ȝewealdan*. The apocope is nothing unusual in our dialect. A few verses below we find it in *ne dred ich*.

204. C. This excessive hardening of the old Germanic tie-vowel *i* (remnant of tie-syllable *-aia-*) is only to be seen in one other place—and this curiously enough in the same word *bibladeke*—in MS. T of the *Anceren Riwle*.

232. For reading C, see note on l. 1176.

238-39. Cf. Old Engl. Hom. i. 97, *summe iscead godra gast and ufele*, and Hali M. 25, *as tah ha nefden wit in ham ne tweire schead as mon haueð ba of god t̅ of uuel*; Sawles W. 255, *schad bituhhe god ant uuel*.

243. B *þur* see ll. 138, 281, 1642.

245. *witlese*. Z in correcting the verse destroys the sense.

252. *heoren* as genit. is co-ordinated to *his* and *alre þinge*. For the vowel see l. 872. The concluding consonant might suggest the idea that, like other Germanic dialects, Middle English was about to develop a poss. pron. out of the genit. of the personal pronoun. Still, it is more likely that we have here a case of the so-called nunnation. Cf. the modern prov. *ourn*, *yourn*, *theirn*. That it was C who altered the text, we may infer from the inconsistency of this alteration. By dropping *t̅*, he tries to make *heren* infinitive, without thinking of the tie-vowel, which everywhere else he has faithfully preserved.

255. Cf. Jul. 43, *he* (*þe deouel*) *ifint euch uuel*. I might have put the form of R in the text, seeing that many more contractions of this kind are preserved, not only in R, but often in C and B as well.

256. *B hise*. See ll. 1382, 1738, 1954, 1988, 2017, 2235. The form is very common in our dialect as it is in several others. Does the concluding *-e*, like the *-n* mentioned in the preceding note, mean an inflection? We find the oldest specimen of the form in the Saxon Chron. under the year 1123.

258. See note on l. 2018.

263. Cf. Jul. 21. *iboren* & *ibroht forð*.

276. *þ* is not final, but heads a substantival sentence. *þunche* is no doubt an alteration. C *bote* (see l. 280 C) is a very late form, showing that the vowel was already shortened.

282-3. According to the Latin text, we ought to have *iwrakte of nawiht*. The corruption, if such it is, reaches back as far as X. Very likely the poet intended the following division: *há álle wérén | iwráhte of náwih̄t | † i þis wórlð iséttē* (cf. *iwrakte*) *ús fór to fróurin* | etc.

288. The Latin original with *consequentur* requires *schulen* (C), but the conditional sentence in l. 290 requires *schulden*.

290. R *walden*, no nunnation, but a plural, referring to *ha*.

298. *eche* employed as a substantive, as in Jul. p. 35.

311. *swiðere*. B has the right form of the adverb, if judged by the rules of O.E. grammar.

316. For *hit* see the various readings of l. 273.

319. As *lake* (l. 2467), O.E. *laȝa*, is never found with 'umlaut,' it is obvious that *lei* is of Norman origin, and derived from the Latin *legem*.

320. To judge by the Latin *rationalis*, it is not improbable that *lake* is miscopied from *lahede*, past part. (indic. l. 1206). Another suggestion would be to derive it from O.E. *lāh*.

328-9. The author of St. Marg. translated the same words *quem Judei crucifixerunt* with the same verses. See my disquisition, *Anglia*, v, 101.

360. *þu* omitted or mutilated to *t*.

366. *schafte*, old plural *gesceafta*? or sing. with anomalous *-e*, as it occurs some pages before.

371-2. Cf. Aelfred's *Metra*, iv. 25, *ealla gesceafta hȝrað þínre haese . . . bútan men anum*, and Marg. 9, & *halt tine hestes bute mon ane*. In Marg., as here, the passage has no equivalent in the Latin original.

374. *Stewen* is literally *to stow*. *Stow that* is still the common thieves' slang for *hold your tongue*.

385-90. This phrase is meaningless. Evidently the elaborator intended to avoid antiquarian matters. See Latin text.

387. *þeronont* is still preserved in Lowland Scotch *thereanent*, which means *concerning that matter*.

396. *motild* is only once more to be found, in Old Engl. Hom. i. 205. There it means mediator, defender: *þet tu beo mi*

motild azeines mine soule fon. Here it seems to have the meaning of *tattler*.

416. Perhaps I should have left out *ham* in accordance with C, and on account of the metre, *ham* in l. 414 being conspicuous enough to serve as object to both verbs (*medien* and *makien*). Cf. ll. 866-7, where moreover the place of the object is not nearly so conspicuous as it is here. B's attempt to repeat the pronoun is rather suggestive as to the reading of our passage. At the same time we are reminded of the contraction *hest* for *hehest*, rather common on the following pages (see for inst. l. 536). But even assuming liberties such as these, the verse remains bad. In B, by following the Latin text too closely, the words of ll. 417-430 are somewhat clumsily arranged. R tries to correct, but destroys the sense entirely.

423, *iken t icnawen beon* or *ken t enawes beon* (l. 2041)=*to be or feel conscious or convinced*. Cf. Aelfric's Hom. i. 510, *Ʒecnæwe his mænes=conscious of and acknowledging his crime*. See *ibid.* 168, 378. Floriz and Blanche-flur (ed. Lumby) 189-90: *Ʒo Floriz bigan his consail schewe And to Daris beon iknewe=began to get known to, etc.*; see *ibid.* 401-2.

447-8. Cf. St. Marg. 4, *and of Ʒi semli schape ant of Ʒi schene nebschaft*.

451. *swuti* (not in Stratmann) might be derived from O.E. *sweót*, *swýt*=*troop band*, cf. *swátol*, *sweótol*. Still we have this adjct. already in the form of *sutel* (l. 381). More probable is the derivation from *swéte*, cf. *swýtnis*. R *sputi* reminds us of the foreign word (*de*) *sputien*=*to argue*, which occurs several times in the poem.

467. On account of the Latin text, I decided on choosing the reading of C.

476. *Ah* is out of place here. *for* would be better, answering to *enim* of the Latin text.

477. *hali* answers better to *sanctioris* than *soðe* does. Still the copyist may accidentally have hit upon the right word.

480. *me*; dativus ethicus.

484-7. 1 Corinthians i. 19.

490-502. Psalm cxv. 3-8.

507. Even now *for why* is used besides *why*; the latter is considered to be the more fashionable of the two.

513. A good idea, which, as it appears, had no little influence upon the poet's elaborating the speeches of our Saint.

514. *polen* employed transitively means *to tolerate*, but *to wait* when employed absolutely. The transitive verb *abiden* we have in l. 2403.

531. *foreseide*, *forewende*, neither of these compounds is to be found in Stratmann.

538. M.E. *clergie*=*knowledge*, very common in *Piers Plowman*, and quite distinct from modern English *clergy*. The former is derived from O.Fr. *clergie*, Low Latin *clericia*, the latter from O.Fr. *clergié*,

Low Latin *clericatus*. Owing to their derivation, the French forms had a different accent. In M.E. presumably this difference was lost. Still, in our passage the accentuation is quite in accordance with the history of the word. We are forced to read *of allè clergie*. Worth noticing is the rhyme *clergy: felecetè* in John Audelay's poems, ed. Wright, p. 33. As to examples of *clergie*=mod. *clergy*, we may cite Rob. of Glouc., p. 563; and Rob. of Brunne, Langt. Chron., pp. 283, 286.

545. The Latin text has *juvenis*. Still, nowhere else can we find the word *zungling* applied to women; it is doubtless an alteration of C's. *zeonglic*, on the contrary, we find twice in the Anglo-Saxon Glosses published by Bouterweck in Haupt's Zeitschrift, ix. 485, 490. In each place it is the translation of *pubescens*. In M.E., so far as I know, the word is only found in one other place, namely, in St. Brandan, ed. Th. Wright, p. 33, meaning *young* or *rather young*. For B putting *on* instead of *of*, cf. ll. 547, 819, and note on l. 1100.

547. C *hise* for *hire* must be explained either as relating to the grammatic gender of *meiden*, or as the form which we find later on so frequently used for the acc. of *ha* in the writings of Southern authors, as Dan Michel and Shoreham. To regard this form as an archaism and direct descendant from Gothic, we have a better right than Morris (Reader, 1864, May 26, p. 689), as only the genit. *izos* (or dat. *izai*) of the Gothic pers. pron.; but never could such a form as *ija* the Acc. case explain and be the ancestor of our *hise* (*h*)ys. It goes without saying that in this case *s* must have had the vibrating, buzzing sound. Cf. Sievers, Gram. p. 67. For *on* see end of preceding note.

551–2. Cf. Hali M. 17, *† tukeð hire al to wundre=and throws (draws) her entirely into destruction*.

558. Cf. Jul. 29, for *luðer eie*; Hali M. 43, *godes luðere eie*; further, two more passages in this legend, ll. 1234 and 1516, where *luðer strence* is contrasted with *liste*. These passages—together with the frequent use in Marg. and Jul. of the word in connection with the names of the heathen tyrant, as *Olibrius þe luðere*, *Elewsius þe luðere*,—will give us a fair notion of the meaning of the word. It is *rude*, *cruel*, *relentless*, rather than *appalling*.

593. *wuneð*, better would be *wunieð*, as on account of the Latin *omnes*, *þe alre wiseste* must be taken as plural. The conjecture would at the same time correct the verse. See 1304 R *þ wunieð in estlonde*. Interesting is the close resemblance of a passage in Laȝ. Brut, iii. p. 122.

*þu art þe riccheſte mon
þe rixleoð on londen
and þe alre wiſeſte
þe wuneð under weolcne.*

597–98. Cf. Romaunt of the Rose 692,

*That I was neuer erſt er that day
So jolyf nor ſo wel bigoo.*

601-2. Cf. Marg. 4, *into cwarterne ant into cwalmkus*, and Brut. i. 31
vt of þon quarcerne
of þan qualehuse.

Ibid. 160, *Heo duden heo in quarterne in ane qualehuse*. Judging by the two last-quoted passages, the *quarterne* seems to have been nothing but a cell in a *qualehuse* = *prison* or *death-house* rather (both *quale* and *qualm* meaning *nex*, *mors*). In our legend and in St. Margaret this difference is effaced.

617. Cf. Marg. *swotest to smeallen*.

630. *men*, I consider to be no more than a dialectal peculiarity of C's, especially as it governs the singular. See note on l. 1176. It is not quite plain what kind of relationship exists between our *me*, the old *man*, and *men*; *man* and *me* govern the sing., *men* the plural. The first specimen of *me* we meet with, is in the Saxon Chron. under the year 1124.

632. The regular preterit forms of *drehen*, O.E. *dreozan*, are very rare in M.E. This may have been the reason why R and C altered the text, the latter replacing *drehen* by a word of similar spelling and meaning, the former using a weak form, another specimen of which we have in l. 1160. But as the plur. pret. only appears as *drohen*, *drozen*, *drowen*, and (so far as I know) suffers no 'umlaut,' the form in question might as well be a mistake occasioned by B's eyes straying to the foregoing line. As my chapter on the dialect will show, the relationship between the two verbs *drahen* and *drehen* is anything but clear in our text. Their meaning is in many points the same, and their forms display almost every shade of the O.E. vocalism.

635-43. St. Matthew x. 18, 19.

654. The Latin text seems to require R *awed*. Still it is unlikely that C and B independently departed from their originals in exactly the same point; not to mention that the words *þurh þi wisdom* do not well agree with the meaning of *aweden*. But above all it must be remembered that there is scarcely an instance of *aweden* being used as a transitive verb. In Aelfric's Hom. ii. 510, *His ƿeow-cnapena an wearð pearle awed*, where Leo translates *awed* with *wuethend gemacht*, the word is simply to be taken as adjective, as in many cases it plainly stands for *wod*. In M.E. the construction is the same. The first and only exception dates from a comparatively late period, and leaves no doubt concerning its construction. It occurs in the Owl and Nightingale 509, *A sumere cheorles awedeþ*. However, several lines of our poem (such as l. 556, and still more graphically, l. 1270,) speak for the wording of the verse.

659. C with *iwente* = *conversi* is doubtlessly right; its auxiliary verb is *beon* in l. 657. This infinitive is co-ordinated to *wurðgin* l. 660. The translation is too literal and clumsy.

663-4. The usual conclusion of prayers. Cf. Grein, Bibl. der Ags. Prosa, p. 1, *on worulda woruldum*; *ibid.* p. 265, *on ecnissa Amen*. Also in M.E. in frequent use. See Hali M. pp. 17 and 29; Marg. pp. 7, 8 and 22; and Jul. pp. 65 and 69.

665. See ll. 1993, 2415. Cf. Jul. 69, [*N*]efde ha bute iseid swa þat an engel ne com; and Marg. 19, Nefde ha bute iseid swa þ̅ al þe eorðe ne bigon to cwakien.

672. Cf. Jul. 13 *i leitinde leie*; and Marg. 9, *ant leitede al o leie*.

705. In *meidnes*, in accordance with the old grammatical law (after a long root syllable), the intermediate vowel is omitted. In our time the law is more frequently broken than observed. The common spelling is *meidenes*, *deoueles*, etc.

709-12. This passage, like many others, has been made use of by the author of *Juliana*. On p. 37 he writes:

*Ich hit am quoð þe unwiht
godes heh engel
for te segge þe þis
isent te from heouene.*

See my inquiry, Ueber den Verfasser der Ags. Legende von Katherina, *Anglia* v, 103.

715. Cf. Jul. 5, þeos meiden ⁊ teos martyr þat ich munne; and Marg. 2, þes meiden þe we munnid.

729. Cf. Marg. 2, þeos feondes an foster.

732-4. Cf. Marg. 17, striken men þiderward þeaꝛ of eauereuch strete for to seo þe seorhe, etc. *striken*=to run, rush, flow, stream (cf. 'a stream of people'). The same expression occurs l. 2479.

757. Cf. The Gest Hyst. of the Destr. of Troy, 9571, *We might holly the herre hond haue now for ay*. Similar is Sal. & Sat. 500, oð þat he gewendeð on þā wyrsa hand.

767. *an hwet*=some or one thing or what (in the expression *I tell you what or one thing*). It is a kind of indefinite pronoun; *sumhwet* is formed in the same manner. It occurs once more in l. 1301. Cf. Marg. 5, *ah an hwet wite þu*.

782. *naue þu* is the indicative mood. The concluding *st*, or *s* rather, has been dropped, because of the succeeding dental fricative. Worthy of notice is the construction in *nawt to donne habben of*, etc.=to have nothing to do with, etc., which is nowhere else to be met with.

786. See Maetzner, Gram. under Inversion of prepositions, ii. 2. Same construction ll. 810, 857, etc.

791. Cf. Ancren R. 96, *leteð hine iwurðen*=let him be, leave him alone.

792. *ontaken*=to begin. Rather common in this sense. See Strattmann, s.v. *taken*.

795. *alles*, O.E. *ealles*, of similar meaning to *mid alle* or *wið alle*=altogether, quite.

797. *igreten*=to honour, distinguish. See ll. 207 and 220. Cf. Beow. *sceal manig oðerne godum gegrétan*.

800. *utcumene*=come from afar, or experts. A compound found nowhere else, as yet.

801. *kepen* must be=to care, be anxious, curious, as in l. 2298, *Nawiht king ne kepe ich*,=I do not care at all, O king, etc. For the phrase see l. 2424.

806 = of þ (C) [ʒe] *leoteð se lutel* ? = *which you prize so little* ? There is hardly any construction in this and the following sentences.

817. This line, rendering the words *quod animo concepit*, has, in an awkward and sense-obscurer way, been appended to a break which gave a translation already amply sufficient of the contents of the Latin passage. To judge by the wording of the latter, it is best to take the verse as co-ordinated with *þ meast con*. Still, according to the original, it ought to be subject to *þrof* (l. 816) and read *þ of þ he haueð*, etc. Another addition patched in a similarly clumsy manner on to a preceding sentence, we have in *þ te deopnesse*, l. 979, which syntactically is co-ordinated with *derfshippe*, l. 977. Still worse is l. 1160, *oðer deað drehde*, which verse, taken strictly, ought to follow closely l. 1157.—ll. 818-19 are parenthetic, and l. 820 is co-ordinated with *cume cuðe þrof*. The word *cume(n)* just mentioned, in the sense of the usual *becumen* = *to become*, is nowhere else to be met with.

824. *flutten* (Stratm. *flutte* = *migratio*) = *to travel, toil*, is, in the form *to flit*, still applied to birds of passage. In Scotland the same word means *to move, change lodging*. Cf. Sawle W. 251, *ha flutteð from þe heate into þe cheale*.

835. In this and the succeeding lines the reader will easily perceive the influence of the Latin style.

831. Probably here the poet wrote *godlic*, which was misunderstood by X already, so that here we should have a nice antithesis. There are many traces of this *c* unchanged, as the various readings will show.

853. *grapes* = *tricks*. This word is nowhere else to be found in M.E. In O.E. it is not uncommon.—*Galien* is no doubt the old *Galen*. The insertion of *i* is a common mistake throughout the Middle Ages. Chaucer also has *Galien*.

854. *flit* O.H.G. *fliz* = *zeal, diligence, artifice*.

857. See note on l. 1327.

860. *navt feole* is redundant. I fancy the poet forgot to blot out these words.

864. It is pretty certain that Z is wrong here. At any rate, and without regard to the alliteration, C *eadi* answers better to *beatitudine* than *hali* does.

866-7. See note on l. 416.

870. The division of the verse, which is here particularly distinct, makes it pretty certain that the poet wrote *anè* or rather *annè*.

872. C, by cleverly inserting *of*, changes the pronoun *heore* into a substantive, O.E. *heorra*. In this way, however, the accessory sentence loses its connection with the rest of the break. See note on l. 252.

873. See l. 951. I think I ought to have translated: *that rightly trust, (have confidence) in him*. Cf. Met. 2699, *þe þisum drȳcraftum long lyfdon*. *To believe in* is *onleuen* in our dialect. There are two more prepositions to be found in connection with O.E. *gelyfan*, namely, *tō* and *in*. They are not preserved in our legend. *gelyfan* with simple dat. or acc. c. = *to believe*. See l. 1785.

879. *weorldmen* (so I ought to have printed) is already in use in O.E. *weoruldmen* = *worldlings, laymen*.

882. Cf. Marg. 11, *alre schefte schuppent*.

891. *onden*, old acc. sing.

892-3. Nearly the same words are used by the Devil in Jul. 39:

*Ich hit am þ̅ warp ut
adam ⁊ eue
of paraise selhðe.*

893. To judge by the Latin *deliciis, selhðen* is no doubt original. Comp. *strengðen* Sawles W. 255.

900-1. Though the words *þah he [us] luðere ahte [to luvien]* (for a similar ellipsis see l. 247) even without the ellipses do not give a satisfactory sense, still I believe them to come closer to the original reading than C, whose alteration, though clever as usual, is clearly shown as such by the senseless *þah* which he forgot to change for *þat*. As to the wording of the passage, a friend has suggested that we might translate it as it stands, viz. *though he found* (lit. *possessed or had*) *[us] wicked; to find wicked or perverse* being still a common idiom. But this translation seems to me too much forced even for our poet's style. My idea is that the poet wrote *lutel* instead of *luðere*; in this way we should get a sensible meaning (see my translation). Another and perhaps better suggestion would be to put *þe* for *he*, and to translate *þe luðere* like *þe cweade* in the Ancren R. by 'the Evil One.' The meaning of the passage would then be: *Though the devil aught*.

901-2. Cf. Jul. 63, *lihtest hider to us of heouenliche leomen*. See my inquiry, Anglia, v. 103.

908-9. Cf. Jul. 63, *⁊ nome blod ⁊ ban of þat meare meiden*.

914-5. Cf. Marg. 1, *þe wunede hwil his wille wes bimong worldliche men*.

916-7. See note on l. 1137.

933-4. Cf. Marg. 9, *þu wrahtest ant weldest alle worldliche þing*.

946. Singular case of the simple particle *ne* employed in a concessive sentence. The common construction will be found in l. 1310.

951. See note on l. 873.

969-70. Wrongly translated. We ought to have

*þ̅ he an were
soð godd oðer soð mon*

979. See note on l. 817.

984. *goddnesse* is nowhere else to be found in the meaning of *divinity*; for this reason I preferred the reading of C. Aelfric too opposes *godeundnys* to *menniscnys*; see Hom. ii. 6.

985. *mennesse* is either a corruption of *menniscnys* (see foregoing note), or is a formation of our poet's own invention, like *unþrowlich* l. 1155, compared to the old *unþrowigendlic*. (Comp. Sawle W. 25, *untalelich* and *unþolelich*.) There is no doubt as to its meaning: in l. 1132 it plainly renders *homine*. Though the terminations *-nesse*, *-had* do

certainly lend a different shade to the words, we need not trouble ourselves about a tautology. Our text is full of them. It is very tempting to think of the modern *meanness*. But if it was this, we should expect *meanness* in B (here unfortunately wanting), and *man-nesse* in C (see my Remarks on the Sound-Laws). C, it is true, has *mannesse*, but that *a* here is short, is evident from l. 1132, where C has *monnesse*. In C, the short *a* before *n* fluctuates between *a* and *o*.

990. *ȝe*, O.E. *ȝeð*, generally answering to *truly! verily!* here only adds intensity to the question=*modern Why?*

994. O.E. *wendan* has, besides the usual meaning, those of *to change, transform*. Here the word appears to mean *to form (after)*. For the construction, cf. Andreas 586-8, *he gehalgode win of wätere and wendan hêt . . . on þā beteran gecynd*.

998. For the omission of the pers. pronoun either as subject or as object, either relating to a word or a sentence, compare ll. 458, 1057, 1319-20, 1367, 1689-90, and the passage quoted from the Brut in note on l. 1291.

1000. One of the poet's phrases awkwardly inserted. It is frequently met with in the writings of the period.

1015. R is no doubt original: *nan monnes mihte* means *not the power of man*. C *na monnes* is pronoun=*nobody's*.

1018-20. *mult(u)* is an auxiliary verb to *heanin*, governing l. 1019, as an objectival sentence.

1025. O.F. *saluer* or (with *l* vocalized) *sauuer*=*to save, redeem*.

1042. This and the four following lines belong closely to the words *þis an þing*, which they substantiate. C *þat* may be original perhaps. Still the accessory sentence referred to can also be considered as causative.

1054. *unweote* = *fool*, is a masc. subst. of the weak declension. Besides here, Stratm. finds it only in Ancren R. 8, and Marg. 6. See Grein, Gloss. *unwita* plur. *unwitan*.

1056. *bereð*=*it penetrates, enters*. Cf. l. 1926 *forð beoren*=*to penetrate, project*. We might literally translate, *as it enters their eye*. See Maetzner, Glossary, s.v. *beoren*.

1060. Subject wanting; see note on l. 998. There would be no difficulty if, instead of the first *wes* (l. 1057), we had *he*. Still, the poet evidently intended to introduce ll. 1060 ff. with *þ he*.

1061-2. C, by transposing these lines, destroys the sense.

1063. *healde* R (Z?), the more archaic form. See note on l. 705.

1060-4. Cf. Marg. 1, *ȝ botnede blinde þe dumbe ȝ te deaue ant te deade arearde to lif ant to leomen*; ibid. 20, *nowðer halt ne houeret noðer dumbe ne deaf*; and Jul. 63, *þu healdeð alle unheale ȝ te deade of deaðe*.

1065. See note on l. 655.

1074. That R (Z?) altered here, appears from the past. part. *maket* which it preserved. This oversight of R's is of greater weight than the more literal consonance of *his men* with *ab hominibus*, the sense of which, moreover, is sufficiently rendered by C. As to *ȝette*, R (Z?)

was compelled to use this anomalous form as, in consequence of his alteration, the division of the verse was changed, and one more accent required.

1078. Cf. Hali M. 25, and Jul. 55. Maetzner, in his Glossary, supposes *enawes* to be the genit. of a subst. **enaw*, with the meaning of *knowledge, witness* (?). The meaning is plain enough from the passages referred to=*confess, be candid*. See note on l. 423.

1088. *C derfulliche*: this compound is nowhere else to be met with. The succeeding lines show how little the poet understood the syntactical structure of his original.

1100. In our legend the prep. *on* is not seldom used for *of*, e.g. in l. 819. This reminds us of similar cases in modern dialects, as those of Wiltshire and Middlesex. See note on l. 545.

1106. R (Z ?), as it supplies the pron. *he*, apparently did not catch the sense of this passage. The sentence in question is co-ordinated to the one commencing with l. 1103. Anyhow, C here makes the impression of being original.

1120. *drihtnesse*: this form is not to be met with in O.E., except in a very doubtful passage of the Genesis. See Grein's Gloss. s.v. q. In M.E. the word is only found thrice elsewhere; twice in our legend, ll. 1197 and 1337, and once in O.E.Hom. i. 101, in a document which may be some thirty years older than our Kath.

1122. *ido dede* is another instrumental=*after the accomplishing of the deed, in deed, in reality*.

1132. See note on l. 985.

1137. See ll. 916-7. Cf. Marg. 11, *þe arrudde me so redlich of his reowliche rake*; *rake*=*path, power, reach*.

1145. In good O.E. *hopian* is the only recognized form.

1155. *unþrowlich* is, I presume, a compound of our poet's own invention. Aelfric renders *passibilis* with *þrowigendlic*; see Hom. i. 120, ii. 6.

1156. Here, as often before, R (Z ?) is formally older than C.

1157. The native word for *passium* is the almost forgotten *þrowung*. See Crist 1130 and 1188. O.H.G. *druunga*.

1156-58. Cf. Jul. 63, *þoledest pine t passium þurh giwes read o rode*.

1160. The line shows us a very late form, *drehde*. We might suspect the genuineness of the line. Still it is sufficiently warranted by the Latin *mortis*. For the construction, see note on l. 817.

1169-70. Though just here R shows us many proofs of its writer's carelessness, I have no doubt but that in some points it is more original than C. The words *underuo flesch* is the literal translation of *assumptæ carnis*. Compare ll. 1099-1100 and 1208 with the corresponding passages of the Latin text. C's alteration is clever, as usual. Still the compound *underue* is unique and of doubtful meaning. This (by the way) is one of the few instances in which the use of *u* for *f* in 'anlaut' can be traced back as far as to X. See note on l. 2134. As to *neoðeles*, C does not appear to like this word. Whenever it

occurs, he alters it to *noðeles*. Here the alteration produces a kind of antithesis. But in l. 1023 it is altogether unjustifiable.

1171. *nowein*, a word of doubtful derivation, meaning *misery* (?).

1176. The usual form of the indefinite pers. pron. in C is *men*. See note on l. 630. From the form *man* I infer that C believed he had here the antithesis of God and man, so frequent in the preceding pages. The same mistake occurs in l. 232.

1180. *unneomelich* (*incomprehensibilis*) is, I suppose, like *unþrowlich* (l. 1155), one of our poet's own formations. It is nowhere else to be met with.

1185. The wording of this passage is very uncertain. I preferred C, not as if I thought it more consonant with the Latin text, but because it is at least intelligible. For there are several doubts as to its trustworthiness. Nowhere but here does the suffix *to* appear with its vowel weakened to *e*. The apocope as applied to the termination of the ind. pret. is equally strange, and quite unparalleled in our text and various readings. Lastly, the miswritten *hes* (for *his*) gives an impression that C was already about to copy a word beginning with *he* [*-ide*?]. Against accepting the reading of R, there is only one doubt, but a grave one. What is the meaning of *schrape*? The word is nowhere else to be found. To suggest its identity with the subst. *schrap*=*trap*, *gin*, cited by Halliwell in his Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words, and, by way of corollary, to suggest *hefte*, to stand for *hefte*=*tied*, *fastened*, I had better leave to bolder emendators.

1186-8. Here no doubt R represents the reading of the original. And indeed the meaning of the Latin passage is here so awkwardly rendered that alterations were foreseen. Misled by the preceding sentence, C believed a pers. pron. *he*, suppressed as usual, to be the subject of the capital sentence. Accordingly, *fleschtimber* could only appear to him as an object governed by *drahen*. The supply of *eawt* was a natural consequence of the mistake. C, however, was not aware that the passage lost in logical sense what it gained in syntactical lucidity. The construction which our poet intended is quite a different one. *Fleschtimber* is not object, but subject; and *to drahen* (for *drahenne*) is employed absolutely like the gerund in Latin. Morton, with good taste, follows R, and not C.

1194. Here apparently R (Z?) made a mistake (by hearing wrong?). Still, after all, his reading does not seem unacceptable if we take the first *to* to be the preposition representing the dat. c., and the second to be the adverb separated from the verb (*drahen*) it belongs to.

1197. See note on l. 1120.

1205. Z *divinity*, C *goodness*. Either may be right.

1206. *loken*=to decide, determine, a meaning not mentioned by Stratmann. In the sister legends the word is frequently used in this sense.

1213. *arise*, like *were*, is opt. pret. The defective form *ariseðe* (C) does not seem to occur except here. A similar form is *buhde*, l. 2368, for which Z writes *buhe*.

1247. *tint* no doubt stands for *tind* (see my Sound-Laws), O.E. the same = *splinter, chip, bit*. C with *dint* is wrong, as we find the undisputed form of this word to be in our text without 'umlaut'; see ll. 1999 and 2050. Compare moreover the alliteration.—*wīð* for *þerwīð* = *against it*, Latin text: *contra*. Morton in a note explains the meaning of *tauelin a dint* as *to make a move*, adding that it is an allusion to the game at tables or backgammon. He does not say where he found this explanation.

1249. *ageide*. Maetzner (who knows no other specimen of this word), and Stratmann (who from Wright's Polit. Song of Engl. and Handlyng Synne, cites *awes* and *awe* as forms of a verb of similar meaning) both of them derive the word from Goth. (*af-, in-, us-*) *agjan*. The Sound-Laws show that this derivation is faulty. As is obvious from the fact that *g* was here preserved, and from its alliterating with *a-gāste, godes* and *grace*, the O.E. form of it would be *a-gēien* or *a-gien*. The meaning seems to be similar to that of *a-gaste*. I mention, however, Goth (*ga-*) *geigan* = *to gain, win (over?)*, which from its form might well be the ancestor of our *a-gien*. As in *ageide*, *ei* changes with *i* in *halewei*, l. 1692.

1251. R is right with *weren*; see *seten*, l. 1253.

1254. The form *cwich* is remarkable for the loss of its inflectional consonant, or rather its dissolution in the preceding guttural. In *cweð* this loss is quite common. The root-vowel of *cwich* makes it probable that the form is derived from O.E. *cwician* and not *cweccan*. *cweð* like *cwich* is hist. pres.; the preterit form of the same person is *quoð*.

1255. *bigapede* derived from O.E. *gipan* = *to open the mouth, yawn*, is not to be met with elsewhere. A very near relative of it, we have in our M.H.G. (*an-*) *-kapfen*, see Nib. (ed. Bartsch), 75 and 1700. As the derivation cannot be doubted, I might have put *bigapede* in the text.

1262. *dul* (C) and *dult* (Z) part. pret. of *dullen* = *to blunt, dull*, are, like their modern equivalents *dull* and *dulled*, used both properly and metaphorically. So the text of the Ancren Riwe, 292, writes *dulle neiles*; one of the readings however, is *dulle neiles*; and Lydgate, Minor Poems, p. 19, writes, *þi brain is dul*; but in the Towneley Myst. 98, we find *i am ner hande dold, so longe haue i nappid*.

1265. *steuenten*—a word which is not to be met with elsewhere in M.E.—answers to O.E. *stemnettan*, as our *steuene* (l. 1386) to O.E. *stēmn(e)*. Grein renders *stemnettan* (Byrhtnoð 122) by *to withstand, resist*. Here it seems to have the more general meaning of *to stop (short)*.

1268. *storlich* (like its simple form) meaning *strong, heavy*, is, besides here, only to be found in Laȝ. Brut. 10647. The adv. here is best rendered by *much*.

1284. *biteuelet*. This compound is not mentioned in Stratm. It evidently means *to overcome, overreach*, and was, I suppose, originally used in playing the game at tables.

1286. Cf. Jul. 71, *all italde bi tale seoue siðe tene*. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 103. Similar is Laž. Brut. iii. 100, *fiþ bi tale*. The expression *all told* is still in common use.

1291. *bikimet*. Halliwell, in his Dict., mentions a modern provincial word *kimed*=*cross*, *awry*, *silly*, which is most probably however of Celtic derivation. We have the root in Shakspeare's *kam*; cf. *kim-kam*, *kam*=*awry* from Welsh *cam*, of which *kim* seems to be a weakened form. From M.H.G., Lexer quotes the doubtful form *erkumen*, which would pretty well answer to our word. Its meaning is supposed to be *to become weak, ill, miserable*. That the meaning of the M.E. forms is a similar one, is evident from Laž. Brut. iii. 47, *aset þe kaisere! swulc he akimed* (v. a. *dumbe!*) *weore, answeore nauer nan! no aʒef þissen corlen*. The syntactical structure is, I think, satisfactorily explained by Maetzner (see his Gloss. s.v. *bikimet*). He considers the auxiliary verb *beoð* as relating separately and equally to *blodles*, *bikimet*, and of *ow seoluen*.

1294. *onbreken*. This compound is nowhere else to be found. Its meaning is no doubt that of *to begin*; see l. 2263, where Z has *brec on* and C *bigon*. The same word *anbrechen* is used in German for the beginning of day or night.

1301. See note on l. 767.

1309. *in place*=*present*, Schmidt, Shak. Lexicon. We also find *in presence*; *in public* is the nearest modern phrase.

1311. *tom* either means *tame*, and is here used ironically, or it is derived from O.E. *tóm* (O.N. *tómr*, O.L.G. *tómi*, O.H.G. [*widar-*] *zuomer*)=empty. B replaces *tom* by *acomen* (the same B l. 1319), the meaning of which can be inferred from Bouterweck's *Angels. Glossen*, Haupt's *Zeitschr.* ix. 438, where *certavi* is rendered by *acomen* † *campede*, and still better from Aelfric's Hom. i. 4, *ða toweardan costnunga acumen*.

1313. For the omission of the pers. pron. see note on l. 998.

1315. R *ʒef* is in perfect accordance with the Latin *ut*. It is very tempting to put it in the text, the more so as we should thus improve the verse. Still, the coincidence of C with B weighs too heavily to be ignored.

1316. C *motes*, Midlandism.

1319. For reading B, see note on l. 1311.

1323-4. Here C seems to have misunderstood the grammatical structure of his original. I should not much object to his replacing *þ* by *ne*; but by putting *we* for *ne*, he marred the sense.

1327. *wreoðien*, O.E. *wreðian* in its proper sense means *to support*. One would therefore expect the same construction as that used in l. 857. R makes use of a refl. pron., but connects it with a verb which it does not suit.

1335. *wat*, O.E. *witan*=*to go*.

1337. See note on l. 1120.

1338. See note on l. 2065.

1348-9. Here again Z, in the terminations, is older than C.

1359. O.E. *wringan*=to torture, also to suffer pain, ache: to ache again is still said. In our text we find the word employed in both senses. Here it is intransitive, in l. 2324 transitive, as *mid wringinde honden* obviously stands for *mid iwrungene honden* (compare *wið upaheuen heorte* l. 2373) or *wringinde hare honden*, (cf. King Horn ed. Wissmann l. 114: *wringinde here honde*), and is a contraction of both.

1362. Cf. Jul. 67, *he ham het euch fot heafides bicoruen*; *euch fot*, doubtless, means *each man*, and is the common metaphor (*pars pro toto*).

1369-70. Already in O.E. the construction of (*a*)*hreowan* is very uncertain: Ps. Ben. 40⁴, *me hreoweð nu, þæt ic*, etc.; Gen. 1276, *hreaw hine swiðe þæt he*, etc. In M.E. the confusion is greater still: Orm. 5566, *Himm reoweþþ of his aþken woh*. Ancren R. 66, *him areowe ou*=*he be merciful to you*; and here we even have the nom. of the person, and the acc. or dat. of the matter.

1370-1. Compare l. 1453, where B reads *to* instead of *of*.

1367. An adverb in connection with *fallen* (with dat.=to happen) is nowhere else to be met with. But substantives are. As for instance, Will. of Pal. 324, *Swiche grace may þe falle*; and Alis. Fragm. 490, *grace you falle* (opt.). Hence it is probable that our *feire* is a substantive, O.E. **fāgru* derived from *fāger*, as *brædu*, *strengu*, are formed from their respective adjectives. This suggestion is borne out by a passage in Jul., *þ hire utnunne feire*=*her extraordinary beauty*, where *feire* cannot possibly be an adjective.

1409-12. Cf. Jul. 67, *þ ferden alle martyrs wið murhðe to heouene*, and Marg. 19, *ant stihen alle martyrs wið murhðen to heouene*.

1419-23. The same image we have in Jul. 21, *hire lufsume leor lilies ilicnesse þ rudi ase rose*.—*ilitet*=coloured from O.N. *lit*=colour. R we suppose thought of *leiten*=to blaze, O.H.G. *lougezen*.

1435. We prefer B to C, because *deh* agrees better with *deorliche*=*pretiose*, and can be found elsewhere in connection with it; so in l. 2197 and Jul. 77, where the adverb is quite a similar one. The Latin only in appearance supports C. *dearnliche* is quite superfluous, as *noctu rapientes* is already represented in *aniht* and *nomen*.

1453. See ll. 1370-1 with various readings.

1484. O.E. *smercian*=*subridere*. Seeing that *to smirk* is still in common use, it is certainly strange that, except here, the word is nowhere else to be found in M.E.—so far as we at present know.

1486. *ulen*=to flatter (?) is not to be met with except here and in Hali M. 3, *as ti muð uleð*. Stratm. takes it to be a corruption of O.E. *oleccan*. But as the later forms of this word, here and in the sister-legends, are *olhnen* or *olhtnen*, this derivation must be rejected. Our verse, as well as that in H.M., speaks for its being accented *uléð*. Still, as there do occur defective verses both here and in the homily, I mention an idea suggested to me, according to which our word is related to the Dutch *Vleyden*, *vleyen*, *vleewwen*, *ofte* [or] *vleysterten*=to flatter, to soothe or to entice with faire; given in Hexham's Dutch Dictionary, 1658. Cf. note on l. 2134.

1490. C does not seem to have understood the word *meremannes*. His reading is another proof of his conjectural abilities.

1491-2. Cf. Marg. 5, *for al me is an þin olnnunge ant tin eie*.

1493. Cf. Jul. 15, *ich chulle þ he wite hit ful wel*. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 103.

1503-6. Cf. Jul. 29, *for nulle ich leauen his luue þ ich on leue ne for luue ne for luðer eie*.

1514. The same image we find in H.M. 33, *beo þe cnut icnute anes of wedlac*, etc. A similar phrase is still used.

1515. *twa* and *tweien* are both grammatically wrong. I preferred the latter form, as it is hard to believe that both B and C mutually changed the modern form *twa* for the older *tweien*. With the foregoing *uno* it is just the reverse. B and C were only too likely to drop this nearly obsolete form.

1525. A similar effusion occurs in Marg. 4, *he is leoflukest lif for to lokin upon ant swotest to smeallen ne his swote saur*, etc.

1530-2. Cf. Marg. 4, *for unwurð þet wite þu wel me beoð þine wordes*. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 101.

1533. *cuðe nawit*, literally = *knew nothing*, that is, *was at his wits' end*. See l. 868, and note on l. 2212.

1535. See l. 2313.

1536-43. The same phrase is used in Marg. 5, and Jul. 17, 27, 29, 57. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 101. This scene appears to have been very attractive to the author of Jul. and Marg.

1546-7. Cf. Marg. 4, *ant het him kasten into cwarterne ant into cwalnhus*.

1560-1. For the Latin cf. *multa enim passa sum hodie per visum propter eum*, Matt. xxvii. 19.

1569. An apparent mistake on the part of the elaborator: *te an* can only relate to one of the old men, but not to the Saint, as would be expected from the wording of the Latin original.

1576. *lusten* with the simple infinitive is in accordance with the old grammatical practice. Beow. 1792, *Geat ungemetes wel rôfne randwigan restan lyste*. Laȝ. iii. 153, *ne lusten* (nunnation) *heom hider uaren*. Already, in Rob. of Gloc., however, we find a specimen exemplifying the construction which came into general use later on. Chron. p. 582, App. *As whoso list to looke may find in hire legion*.

1587. The compound *duwelrihtes* is nowhere else to be found. Of similar formation and meaning is *duwelunge*, Marg. 20.

1590. *fleide* = *fugavit*, from O.E. *flégan*, O.N. *fleyja*, O.H.G. (ar-)*flaigan*. The compound *a-flaien* occurs l. 2398.

1602. *bigan(gan)*, with the meaning of *to attend to*, is common in O.E. So Aelfric, in his Hom. ii. 74, speaks of a *begangan*, relating to a vineyard. So far as we can see, this is the only passage where the word refers to a disease.

1617. *hondhwile* (see l. 1942) = *moment*. See P. Plowman, B. 19. 267. To the examples of Stratm. add l. 7346 of Troy-book (E.E.T.S.).

1642. The succeeding description of Paradise is an insertion of the elaborator's. This insertion agrees in so many points with the first part of the O.H.G. poem called *Himmel und Helle* (Müllenhoff and Scherer, *Denkmäler*, xxx.), that it is worth while here to transcribe from that poem those passages which most illustrate this curious fact. Compare ll. 1642–55 with H. u. H. ll. 13–19.

*Diu burg ist gestiftet
mit aller tiuride meist
ediler geistgimmôn,
der himelmergriezzôn.
der burge fundamenta
die portae joch die mûre
daz sint die tiuren steina;*

ll. 1656–62 with H. u. H. ll. 35–44:

*Siu ist in iro strâzzon
daz rôtlohezônte golt;

Siu ist in golde scônî
samo daz durhliechte glas
alliu durhsouwig
joh durhlâter.*

ll. 1664–79 with ll. 45–66:

*Dâ wîzzen al ein anderen
unvertougenlîcho
die himilîgen erben
die die burg büent
in durhskônen tugindan
ân aller missetâte pflega.
Dâ rîchisôt diu minna
mit aller miltfrowida.*

*Dâne habet restî
der engilo vrôsank
daz suozze gotes wunnelob
diu geistliche mendi
der wundertiuro bîmentstank
aller gotes wolôno
dâ ist daz zieriste here
allez in einhel.*

ll. 1682–90 with ll. 81–96:

*Da ist alles quotes ubergenuht
mit sichermo habenne,
der durnohteste trôst,
diu meiste sigêra.
dâ nist forehtône nîcht
nîchein missehebeda.
dâ ist einmuoti,*

*aller mamminde meist,
 der stilliste lust,
 diu sichere rāwa.
 da ist der gotes friundo
 sundergibiuwe.
 dā nist sundōne stat,
 sorgōno wizede.
 dā nist ungesundes nieht.
 heile meist ist dār.*

ll. 1723-5 with ll. 109-113 :

*Daz ist daz hēreste guot
 daz der vore gegarawet ist
 gotes trātfriunden
 mit imo ze niezzenne
 iemēr in ēwa.*

I should not fail to mention that there are some passages of the Apocalypse (they are easily found in the Notes to the above-mentioned edition of 'H. und H.,' and the rest of the shorter O.H.G. documents) which are used in both poems. Still, these few passages can in no way explain the great number, and, what is more important, the succession, of the coinciding passages, and we are thus compelled to assume the existence of one and the same (presumably Latin) original, of which the parts in question of the German and English poems are elaborations. For, though the use of a German writing by an English author in those early days would not be unprecedented, there is no sign in the wording of the legend which proves this to be the fact. As striking as the wording, is the similarity with regard to the metre. But though up to the present 'H. u. H.' is the only German poem in which the so-called Otfriedic metre is employed unrhymed, still we are far from considering this as a proof of plagiarism. The fate of early German literature has been such, that it is but too likely that our 'H. u. H.' is the only poem of its kind lucky enough to have escaped the frequent wholesale destructions which, as we have no reason to doubt, robbed us of the best part of our early literary documents.

1642. Cf. 'H. u. H.' *burg*; *bur* is an alteration of Z. See note on l. 243.

1647-8. Cf. Marg. 9, *steappre þene steorren ant þene zīnstanes*.

1655. *smeate*=*purified*, *pure*. Cf. Vidsið 91, *smaetes goldes*. The same phrase in El. 1309, and Sal. and Sat. 15. In M.E. the word, besides here, only occurs in Marg. 11, *alre gold smeatest*. C *smeðe*=*smooth* less befits the situation.

1656. O.E. *stēnan*=*to set with stones*, as swords, rings, and the like. Here it means *to pave*.

1660. *ismaket* is nowhere else to be met with in M.E. It is the past part. of O.E. *smacigan*, which in Bouterweck's Glossen (Haupt, 476) answers to *demulcere*=*to smooth, make plain*. The same word apparently we have in the slang *smock-face*=*beardless, effeminate face*. C *ismeðet*; because of the preceding and succeeding *smeðe*, *smeðest* can scarcely be

considered as original, though in a metrical respect it would be preferable.

1662. *slec*=*mud*, *dirt* (?), is, except here, only to be found in Palladius on Husb. 2, 152.

1665-6. This phrase is in great favour with the authors of the period. See for inst. Marg. 23, *þer ha schineð seouneald sehenre þen þe sunne*. It is likewise made use of by the authors of Hali M. Ancren R. and Sawle W. (263).

1667. Cf. note on l. 145.

1674. A singular compound, which reminds us of O.E. *leof-lif*, translated by Grein by *beloved*, *amiable*; *leouie*=*loving*, *lover* (modern *lovy* ?), wanting in our dictionaries, is nowhere else to be found than here and in Hali M. 27, *moni þing ham schal twinnen t̃ tweinen þat læses leouie men*=*many a thing that lovers loathe shall separate and disunite them*.

1690. I do not know what to do with reading Z, though it evidently comes nearer to the original (alliteration) than that of C, who, as he did once before, replaces the word unknown to him by one picked at random from the surrounding lines. Cf. note on l. 1655. I now feel quite sure that R writes *batewil* and not *hatewil*. What is the meaning? Does it mean that which *bates* or *abates* the will or wish? Still, it is an adjective and not a substantive. There is no such word or form as *brate*.

1691. B no doubt is right. Similar grammatical alliterations, as we might call them, were in great favour already in O.E. times. We find the word *sweet* rhymed in each degree of comparison. Ancren R 102, *swote* t̃ *swete*; ibid. 398, and Marg. 11, *swotest* t̃ *swetest*.

1699. The same old and favourite phrase we find in l. 2474. Cf. Marg. 5, *mare þen eni muð hit cuðe munnen*.

1709. *orcost*, O.N. *orkostr*, a word imported by the Danes.

1712. *oht* not derived from *dwiht*, but O.E. *akt*=*dignus*, *worthy*, *good* (Lat. text *boni*), in contrast with *noht wurð*=*nothing worth* (Lat. text *mali*). This *a*, notwithstanding its shortness, is, as here, often found with 'umlaut' *o*.

1722. *hure*, O.E. *huru*=*still less*.

1724. C makes use of the modern analytic dative.

1728. *wilcweme*=*cheerful*.

1740. *icunet* here must have the meaning of *to stop*, *stay*, *remain*, the same as in l. 573, where *wunien* is opposed to *æzin wulleð*. *iwiket* from O.E. *wician*=*to dwell*, *remain*. C's emendation was not only superfluous, it even spoiled the metre.

1743. Objectival sentence governed by *witen*.

1749-50. R's alterations are clever. Still, the use of the transitive is meaningless.

1751. This is one of those passages proving that even X was not the poet's own copy. Following both the Latin original and the undisputed words of the English text as closely as possible, I have done my best to render the line intelligible.

1770-2. Cf. Jul. 55, *ƿ his sulliche sune ihesu crist hatte ƿ te hali gast*, etc.

1773. Cf. Jul., *ƿe of ham ba glideð* and Marg. 2, *ƿ glit of inc baðen*.

1779 ff. Cf. Old Engl. Hom. i. 219.

*he hält mid his mihte
hefene and eorðe
and alle ƿescefte
buten ƿescwince*

1785. See note on l. 873.

1798. *haueð* is one of those late forms which are so frequent in C.

1803. From O.E. *dyttan*=to stop, close, O.H.G. *duzzan* (Otrf.), M.H.G. *tützen*. The simple form occurs Ancren R. 82.

1827. *leohe(e)*, from O.E. *lôh*, O.H.G. *luog*=*specus, cubile*? The derivation is very doubtful. Still we have reason to believe that our *liunes leohe* is literally, *lake of lions*, because the Vulgate of Daniel vi. 7 has *in lacum leonum*. See *laze*=*lake*, in Stratm., and cf. Coventry Mysteries, ed. Halliwell, p. 387, *into the lake of lyonys to Danyel the prophete*. This derivation would give us another *eo* for O.E. *ð*. *laze*=*lake*, it is true, occurs nowhere else as *leohe*! The usual forms are *laie*, *leie*.

1832. The compound *drihtfare* occurs nowhere but here.

1841. *wel standen*=to resist, stand firm.

1850-51. Cf. Marg. 21, *ant tu art eadi . . . ant alle ƿeo ƿ þurh ƿe schulen turnen to me*.

1852-54. Cf. ll. 713-14.

1865. *wilre*, on account of the initial, might be right, though in this very passage the alliteration leaves much to be desired. Still I preferred Z, as the word does not occur except in compounds such as *selfwil*, *wilcweme*, etc. We may add that Leo regards this syllable *-wil-* as an old substantive no longer used in the simple form.

1870. Z or C, either may be right. To *cure*, Maetzner attributes the meaning of *choice, decision*. The latter, or rather *resolution*, would be the meaning required in our case. C shows *curen* as a verb (Inf.), the past part. of which we find in l. 75. Tautology we have in one reading as in the other.

1887. C shows the ethic dative. The ordinary dative however is to be preferred, as the description of the torments without any indication as to their object must seem strange.

1901-2, page 94, line 27 ff., see Esaias xl. 6: *Omnis caro foenum et gloria ejus sicut flos agri*.

1908. *on heh* when connected with verbs of motion=*up to* (the emperor's seat, throne). Cf. l. 2462 and Jul. 37, *on heh in hire hearte [ha] cleopede to criste*. In ll. 1977 and 8 it is replaced by *up* and *up toward*. When connected with verbs of rest, it is to be translated =*above*, as in ll. 2023-4, *ƿe ewen stod eauer stille on heh*=*on her elevated seat, throne*. Cf. *adun*, l. 2028.

1913. B agrees better with the Lat. text than C does. Even the blunder in R hints at B being original. C, which does not seem to

understand the meaning of *oht*, is as before (see ll. 1712 and 1716) forced to make an alteration.

1917 ff. This passage offers the strongest proof that the author of Jul. knew and pirated our legend. Cf. Jul. 57 f.:

ƿ lette o wodi wise
a swiðe wunderlich hweol
meten ƿ makien
ant þurhspitien hit al
wið spaken ƿ felien
þicke ƿ þreofalt
wið irnene gadien
kene to keoruen
al þat ha rinen to
ase neilcnines
. . . ƿ het o lif ƿ o leomen
swingen hit swiftliche
ƿ turnen hit abuten, etc.

See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 104. The Latin passage corresponding to this minute description consists of only a few words.

1919. R *hweol*, an old plural, which only metrical considerations prevented me from putting in the text. See l. 1991 R; in l. 1928 the poet evidently wrote *þe hweol* and *beon*. Z here did nothing but render the plural more discernible. But C, considering *hweol* to be sing., altered both article and verb.

1921. *gadie(n)* is nowhere else to be found except here and Jul. 57. A form fully answering to it does not occur in O.E. It best agrees however with O.E. *gáð*, the modern forms of which are *goad*, *gad*.

1924. *preones*. Cf. Gen. and Ex. 1872, *Gold prenes ƿ ringes*. O.E. *preón*, O.N. *prjón* = *point*.

1933–4. Here C agrees better with the Latin text than Z does.

1940. *tohwíðeret* is more literally *forcibly whirled in pieces*. *To whither* is to *hurl with a whizzing sound, to whiz*. See *guhedirand* in Barbour's Bruce, ed. Skeat, 17. 684; where Hart's edition has *whiddering*. The word refers to the rapid whir and whirl of the swiftly revolving wheel; it is onomatopoeic and very expressive.

1942. For *hondhwile* see note on l. 1617.

1948. Cf. Jul. 19, *ne for tintreohe þat ƿe me make timbrin*.

1951. *iwunet* scil. *to ganne* or *cumenne*. A liberty, which as a rule is restricted to auxiliaries, is here conferred upon a simple verb. *reue* commonly answers to the Lat. *prefectus* (comp. legends of Jul. and Marg.); here it renders *pretor*. The whole passage is very carelessly translated.

1954. *kinemote(s)* occurs nowhere else. Here the old *witenazemot* would be in its place.

1955. The position of the wheels is evident from the Latin passage, which upon the whole is happily rendered. I except line 1958, which mars the sense of the whole, and had better have been left out.

1968. *igreiðet* refers to *gin*, l. 1955.

1971. *amidheapes*. The rule that O.E. *y* is *u* or *i* in Kath. appears to be broken here. The latter part of the compound is not derived from O.E. *heap* = modern *heap* as should be expected, but from O.E. *hype* = *hip*. Decisive as to the shortness of the vowel, is Jul. 69, *amidheppes*, and decisive both as to vowel and meaning, Marg. 10, *swa þ his (þes draken) bodi tobarst omidheppes*. Here the word cannot possibly be translated other than *in the middle (centre) of the body*. For the formation, compare the modern *amidships*.

1973–4. This is another of the so-called grammatical rhymes. It occurs once more in Marg. 6, *rondin t rendin*.

1974. *reowðfulliche* occurs only once more in Marg. 4. Its descendant *ruthfully* is still in use.

1977–80. Cf. Jul. 37, *stille bute steauene on heh in hire heorte cleopede to criste*, and Marg. 18, *ant heo biheold up on heh ant cleopede toward heouene*. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 104.

1981–2. Cf. Marg. 7, *ant cuð þi mahte on me almihti godd*.

1989. *mate* adj. or past part. of *maten*, O.F. *mater-ir* = *to overthrow, conquer*. Cf. Ancr. R. *maten t ouercumen*.

1990. Cf. Marg. 22. *smat smertliche adun*.

1992. Here, as often before, R is good and old.

1995. The compound *afluhte* = *flight* is nowhere else to be met with.

1996. *fleonin(de)* is unique likewise.

1998. Cf. Marg. 20, *as þah a þunre dunede*.

2018. *acangien* (see l. 2081), which occurs nowhere but in our legend, is derived from the more frequent adj. *cang* (l. 258) = *foolish, mad*.

2021. My reading, I hope, comes nearest that of the original. C, I am afraid, made use of his old expedient (see *drupest* l. 2022); and *dureninde*, though Stratm. shows that *dearnien* sometimes appears in this form, cannot be right, as the vowel would not at all agree with the changes *ea* underwent in other words of the legend. *druenin*, as well as *druenin*, mean *to be cast down, to be dejected*. For the vowel *ui* for *u*, see l. 1644 C.

2019. The compound *mondream* is nowhere to be found but here and in *Laz. Brut*. 23945.

2022. Cf. Marg. 16, *drupest alre þinge*.

2025. The subject must be supplied from l. 2023.

2027. *þe zet* is probably a mistake of Z. See ll. 2258 and 2094. There is, however, some reason to believe that the sentence introduced by *þe zet* was meant by the elaborator to be relational, similarly to the construction in the Latin. It is certainly suspicious that *ha* in R, and *na* in B, are wanting. The fullness of C's reading would then be another proof of his sagacity.

2028. *don* with refl. pron. = *to betake one's self*. Cf. Ancr. R. *Etstondeð one aȝean þe uonde t he deð him o flukte* translation of *Resistite diabolo et fugiet a vobis*, *Gaw.* 1305 *Ho dos hire forth at þe dore*. Still in use; cf. Mark Twain, *A Tramp Abroad*, ii. 7 (Tauchnitz

ed.), *he did himself away*, etc. For *adun* see on *hek* l. 2024. See note on l. 1908.

2030. This line contains the greatest puzzle in the whole text. How came C and B in *o uot, uet* to agree with each other? Did R guess, or preserve the true reading? That it is true, seems doubtless. Even now *over* is in common use in connection with *there* and *here*, and, though in this case it is necessary to change the adverb of repose into one of motion, its presence here, as in many similar cases of tautology, may be easily accounted for by its emphasizing the following *piderwardes*. At any rate there was no occasion whatever for the poet assuring us that the queen went to her husband on foot, and not (let us say) on horseback.

2033. Here C probably gives the original form of the word. The phrase is typical already in O.E. See l. 601 *hludre stefne*. Cf. however Marg. 22, *zeide lude stefne* and Jul. 65, *zeiden lud steuene*.

2038. Cf. Marg. 11, *þ balefulle wurm ant þ bittre best*.

2041. See note on l. 423.

2045. Notwithstanding the Latin *christianorum*, *christenes* is certainly not plural,—the gen. of which would be *christene* in our dialect,—but the gen. sing. of the fem. gender, and relates to the saint. For more examples, see my Introduction. From other documents I quote Ancren R. 70, *Summes kurteisie is noðeleas iturnd hire to uuele*.

2056. *feorlich* adject. employed as subst.=*wonderful, horrible sight, wonder*. Cf. Will. of Pal. 3280, *Moche folc him folowed that ferli to behold*.

2065. The shortest way to get out of the difficulty would be to omit *to*. As, however, both MSS. (Z) agree, and as, moreover, a construction of *kennen* very similar to this (namely, with acc. and the prep. *til*, cf. Maetzner Gloss.) can be found, I abstain from any alteration whatever. C took the easiest course in omitting *to*, and so producing the more common construction, in which, for instance, we find the word in l. 1338. That *enaweð* wants an object (it is to be supplied from *to him*) is nothing out of the way, considering the loose syntactical structure of the poem; in l. 1774, for instance, *ham* must be supplied from *of ham* l. 1773. There are many more examples of this kind.

2092. *ich schal* must be supplied from l. 2090. See l. 2097. C and B dropped the termination of the infinitive, as they do in ll. 2098 and 2100.

2092-3. Cf. Jul. 13, *ich schal leote wilde deor to lukan* † *to teore þe* † *zeous þi flesch fode to fuheles of the lufts*.

2094. See note on l. 2027.

2130. R and B, each in his own way, try to bring order into the metre, R by displacing the words, B by considering the indefinite pron. *me* as implying a plural, and so bringing the verb up to three syllables.

2134. *ules* for *flesch*, as the common spelling is. For *u* instead of *f* in 'auslaut,' see note on ll. 1169-70; *s* is often put for *sch* in 'auslaut' in MS. T of the Ancren Riwle, and is the rule in Kentish. Both peculiarities of spelling are traceable back to X.

2150-1. Cf. Hali M. 5, *ƿ trukie for a mon of lam þe heuenliche lauerd*.

2151. C *him*, the abs. pron. so common in modern dialects.

2178. Cf. Aelfric's Hom. i. 450, and *hine ufan mid isenum geafum ƿydon*, etc. The iron fork seems to have been a favourite instrument of torture. It is likewise referred to in Marg. 6, and in Sawle W. 253.

2180. *sweoruen* = *to swerve, ascend*, nowhere else to be found in this sense.

2196. As the Lat. text has *sepelivit*, and the concluding *n* of the pret. plur. is preserved in our text without exception, *biburieden* must be wrong. The mistake is easily explained by the context.

2204. There is a phrase in German similar to this; we might almost literally translate *denen man es auf den kopf zusagte*.

2205. *leaden* (like *dreien* in the following line) refers to *deaðe*. See notes on ll. 2213 and 2278.

2211. *kinge* old gen. plur. The usual form in the writings of our period and dialect is *kingene*.

2213. *leaden* here and in 2318 must have the meaning of *to lead away prisoner*. I do not know if this ellipsis occurs anywhere else. See notes on ll. 2205 and 2278.

2214. *Lour*. Derivation unknown. Stratmann's explanation is too hazardous. See however l. 2403, where R writes *low hwer*. *Lour* occurs once more in Ancren R. 152, *Ich bere goldhord; lour hit her!*

2214-6. These lines are the translation of the Latin words printed in italics on page 111. This is the only important transposition occurring in the elaboration. There is throughout the whole, no other evidence compelling us to assume that the poet read the Latin text over before he began to translate it.

2223. We prefer C on account of the alliteration.

2243-4. Cf. Marg. 19, *strecche forð þi swire scharp sword to underfonne*.

2247. *alle clane*; see l. 2265, and Old Engl. Hom. i. 231 *alle clone = all of them, all without exception*. We have a similar phrase in German *rein alle* based upon the same idea: *rein* = *clean* = *clane*.

2258. See note on l. 2027.

2263. See note on l. 1294.

2273. *gabben*, O.E. *gabban*, O.N. *gabba* = *to scoff, deride, taunt*, very frequent in M.E. *from gabbe* (see l. 2237) = *insult, boastful word, taunt, irony*.

2276. *cuð icudd*. These words are, especially in later writings, often confounded with each other. The literal meaning of the phrase is *known as famous*. Cf. Ancren R. 342, *alle cudd ƿ cuðe sunnen*.

2278. The meaning of *leaden* we can easily infer from the saint's answer, ll. 2298-9. It is, *to keep in suspense*. For aught I know, the word is nowhere else to be found in this sense. See notes on ll. 2205 and 2213.

2288. That C altered the text here, is evident from *agrisen*, l. 2285.

2292. Already in O.E. (*un*)*deaðlich* and (*un*)*deadlich* are used as synonyms. Cf. Aelfric Hom. ii. 186, *Ðæt án deadlic man mihte ealne middaneard oferseon*, and King Alfred's Anglo-S. version of Boethius, ed. by Fox, 80, 30, *Ealle deaplice men*. I suppose the original difference to have been the same as that between German *toedlich* and *sterblich*.

2298. For *open* see note on l. 801.

2299. *fir*. Comparative of *feor*. O.E. *feor* and *fȳr*; *firsten*, which is employed here in the sense of *to delay*, occurs once more in l. 2367, where it appears to have the same meaning with O.H.G. *nerjan*=*to spare, show indulgence*.

2304. C *swa* is superfluous; þ by itself can imply a final or consecutive relation. Cf. ll. 344-5, þ *alle ower leasunges beoð unlefliche*.

2314. Z is meaningless, unless we have here one of our modern ellipses. As however, if such were the case, the direct speech should have been used in l. 2315 as well, the reading of C must be considered as original. Cf. Jul. 31, *Ah hehte swiðe don hire ut of his ehsikðe*. This passage, whether pirated or no, throws sufficient light upon the difficulty.

2316-7. *utewið*, standing for the usual *wiðuten*. *barre(n)*=*bar, turnpike*, is a very free translation of *porta*.

2318. See note on l. 2213.

2324. See note on l. 1359.

2329. *treondlin*, a very scarce derivative from O.E. *trendel*=*circle, ball, top*, meaning *to turn, to fall in turning*. Cf. Owl and Night. 135, þeȝ *appel trendli from þon treowe*. See Nares's Glossary, by Halliwell and Wright: *to trend*, v.n. *To turn in an oblique direction*: a nautical term chiefly applied to the direction of a coast, which occurs still in the journals of seamen. 'to *trundle* a hoop' is common everywhere.

2330. *biwende* for *biwente*=*turned round, back*.

2338. *bale bere*=*lamentabilis planctus*. *bere* might surely be the same word which we find in William of Pal. (see Gloss.), and which there means noise. But, not to mention the possibility that our *bere*, meaning here and elsewhere *doleful features*, may later on have developed the meaning of *noise*, I think it wrong to give up our word, the extraction and meaning of which is so certain and well testified, for a word the derivation of which is wholly unknown up to the present.

2349. *mi* refers to *wunne*, as much as to *me iweddet*. The construction cannot be imitated in modern English. In German it would be: *mein mir verlobter*.

2391. Here again C largely altered the text. See Latin original.

2398. For *aflei*, see note on l. 1590.

2401. To judge by its form, *hete* might be O.E., either the same or *hæto*; fortunately for us the same phrase is used in Laȝ. Brut. ii. 446; and as here *hete* rhymes with *mete*=*meat, food*, it is plain that our *hete* means *hatred*.

2403. See note on l. 2214.

2416-7. Cf. Jul. 37, *com sihinde adun softe from heouene a steuene þat seide*, etc.

2424. Same phrase l. 801.

2448-9. Cf. Marg. 22, *do nu broȝer hihentliche þet te is ihaten*. See my inquiry, *Anglia*, v. 102.

2474. See note on l. 1699.

2478. *riue*=largely, derived from O.E. *rif*, O.N. *rifr*. The adj. *rife*=general, universal, is still in use.

Interesting, though somewhat less enthusiastic, is Mandevil's description of this miracle. He writes: *And besyde the highe Awtiere, 3 degrees of heighte, is the Fertre of Alabastre, where the bones of Seynte Kateryne lizn. And the Prelate of the Monkes schewethe the Relykes to the Pilgrymes. And with an Instrument of Sylver, he frotethe the Bones; and thanne ther gothe out a lytylle Oyle, as though it were a maner swetunge, that is nouthur lyche to Oyle ne to Bawme; but it is fulle swete of smelle: And of that thei ȝeven a litylle to the Pilgrymes; for there gothe out but litylle quantitee of the Likour*. See *Voyage and Travaile of Sir John M.* edited by J. O. Halliwell, page 60.

2479. See note on 732-4.

2496. *under*, O.E. *undern*, O.L.G. *undorn*, *undern*, Goth. *undaurns*, O.H.G. *untarn*, the time from nine to twelve o'clock in the morning (*Stratm.*). Still, according to the Gospel, our Lord died between the 6th and the 9th hour, *i.e.* between 12 and 3 in the afternoon.

GLOSSARY.

The current English meanings are printed in *italics*. The asterisk (*) represents words and forms not occurring in the text. The asterisked key-words are taken from the various readings.

- a, *a*, *an*, *one*, 65, etc.; *an*, 21, etc.;
ane 2, 99, etc.; *anes*, 73, 548,
 591, 1048, 1283, 1959, 1961.
- a. *See on.*
- a, *always*, (*for ever*), 277, 664,
 1668, 1680, 2505; aa, 136,
 1480, 1497, 1629, 1701, 1704,
 1754, 1856, 2159, 2165, 2294,
 2477.
- aa. *See a.*
- Abacuc, *noun proper*, 1826.
- abad. *See abide.*
- aber, pret. sing., *from* *abeoren,
to tolerate, 1544.
- abide, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *abiden,
to abide, await, 2403; abad,
 pret. sing., 718; abit, 3 p. sing.
 pres., 2422.
- abuten, *about, round*, 1566, 1644,
 1733, 1932, 2008.
- acangestu, 2 p. sing. pres., *from*
 *acangien, *to get mad*, 2081;
 acanget, pp. 2018.
- acomen, *overcome*, 1311.
- acwellen, *to kill*, 1808, 1868.
- ad, *fire, pyre*, 1356.
- Adam, 884.
- adeadet, pp. *from* *adeaden, *to*
mortify, 2020.
- adredde, pp. *from* *adreden, *to be*
afraid, 1336.
- adun, *down*, 772, 983, 1190, 2028.
- aduneward, *downwards*, 1996.
- adweschen, inf., *to annihilate*, 948;
 adweschte, pret. sing., 1190.
- afellen, inf., *to overthrow*, 690.
- aflei, imp., *from* *afleien, *to drive*
away, 2398.
- afluhte, *flight, rapidity*, 1995.
- agaste, pret. sing., *from* *agasten,
to amaze, 1249.
- ageide, pret. sing., *from* *ageien,
to awe (?), 1249.
- aȝein, *against, back*, 152, 172, 178,
 401, 564, 571, 606, 643, 730,
 941, 945, 961, 962, etc.
- aȝeines, *against*, 651, 761, 1585,
 2218.
- aȝeinward, *backwards*, 2319.
- agrisen, *to shudder*, 2285.
- ah, 3 p. *to have, be obliged to*, 352,
 523, etc.; ahest, 2 p. sing. pres.,
 540; ahte, pret. sing., 247, 900;
 ahten, pl., 261, 293.
- ah, *but*, 5, 19, etc.
- ahest. *See ah.*
- ahne, *own*, 408, 905, 1104, 1205,
 1258, 1822.
- ahongeden, *from* *ahongien, *to*
hang up, 329.
- ahte, ahten. *See ah.*
- ahte, *cattle, wealth*, 143, 199, 231,
 1710.
- akaste, pret. sing., *from* *akasten,
to overthrow, 1124; akast, pp.
 1232.

- akennet, pp. *from* *akennen, *to bear*, 330.
- al, *all*, 101, 131, etc.; alle, 29, 35, etc.; alre, 253, 302, 422, etc.
- alde, *old*, 1184, 1371.
- aldren, *parents*, 883; aldrene, 81; ealdrene, 100.
- aleset, pp. *from* *alesen, *to redeem*, 1144.
- alesunge, *redemption*, 1147.
- alið, *from* *aliggen, *to decay, cease*, 1628, 2153.
- Alixandre, *Alexandria*, 16, 1555; Alixandres, 47, 586.
- alle. *See* al.
- alles, *entirely*, 795.
- almihti, *almighty*, 986, 1094, 1778, 1981.
- alre. *See* al.
- alswa, *just so*, 286, 288, 1961.
- alwealdende, *omnipotent*, 618; alweldende, 1067; alweldinde, 504.
- am. *See* beon.
- amanset, pp., *from* *amansien, *to excrete*, 2070.
- amid, *in the middle, centre*, 1467, 1971; amidde, 1406; amidden, 1356.
- an, *sole, mere, allone, only*, 1227; ane, 222, 372, 606, 842, 1172, 2265.
- an. *See* first a.
- anan, *anon*, 31, 440, 1430, 1580, 1589, 1811, 1876, 1887, 2240, 2453.
- ananriht, *quickly, rapidly*, 976, 1871, 1886, 2118, 2188, 2228.
- ane. *See* a.
- ane. *See* an.
- anes. *See* first a.
- anhad, *unity*, 931.
- anlepi, *unique, only*, 74, 1226, 1282.
- ant (†), *and*, 1, 8, etc.
- apostles, 1404.
- aras. *See* arisen.
- arearde, pret. sing., *from* *arearen, *to rear up*, 1060; arerde, 1111.
- areaw. *See* areow.
- areow, imp., *from* *areowen, *to pity*, 1452; areaw, pret. sing., 1370.
- arerde. *See* arearde.
- ariht, *rightly*, 1725.
- arise. *See* arisen.
- arisen, inf., *to arise*, 1218, 2290, 2293; ariseð, imp. plur., 1592, arise, pret. opt., 1213; aras, pret. sing., 337, 1111.
- Aristotles, *Aristotle*, 851.
- aromaz, *aromatic ointment*, 1599, 2194.
- art. *See* beon.
- arudden, inf., *to rid, free*, 1137; arudd, pp. 916.
- as, *as*, 3, 29, etc.
- ase, *like*, 31, 1674.
- astearde, pret. sing., *from* *astearen, *to resuscitate*, 1043.
- aswikeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *aswiken, *to cease*, 2157.
- aðet, *till that*, 719, 1305, 1803, 2025.
- atstutte, 3 p. pret. sing., *from* *atstutten, *to remain*, 23.
- Auguste, *Augusta*, 1556, 1726.
- awahte, pret. sing., *from* *awakien, *to awake v.a.*, 1044.
- awariede, pp., *from* *awarien, *to curse*, 141, 243, 1066, 2010, 2032.
- awarpen, inf., *to lay low*, 486, 591, 880, 1221; aweorp, pret. sing., 835; awarpen, pp. 1277.
- awealt. *See* aweld.
- *awed, imp., *from* *aweden, *to render insane*, 654; awedde, pp., 1065.
- awei, *away*, 746, 829, 1335, 1590, 1813, 2098, 2219.
- aweld, imp., *from* *awealden, *to conquer, tame*, 654; aweld, pp., 556; awealt, pp., 1270.

awcorp. *See* awarpen.

awundrede, pret. sing., *from*
*awundrien, *to wonder*, 309;
awundreden, plur., 1606; awun-
dret, pp., 1242.

ba, *both*, 50, 90, 113, etc.; baðe,
77, 212; beire, 1772.

baldeliche, *boldly*, 718, 728.

bale, *miserable*, 2338.

bale, *misery*, 1755, 2295, 2488;
balewe, 552.

balefule, *baleful*, 203, 2038.

balewe. *See* bale.

ban, *bone*, 230, 908, 1099; bane,
2177; banes, 2482.

banles, *boneless*, 250.

bare, *bare*, 845, 1538, 2099, 2177.

barren, plur., *from* *barre, *bar*,
2317.

batewil, ??? 1690.

baðe. *See* ba.

bealden, *to comfort*, 1609.

bearnde, pret. sing., *from* *beor-
nen, *to burn*, 1650; berninde,
pres. part., 1353.

beast, *beast*, 2038.

beaten, *to beat*, 1538; beatin, 1178.

beatinge, *beating*, 1603.

bed. *See* beoden.

bede. *See* bidden.

beire. *See* ba.

Belial, 1906.

beisume, *obedient, obeysome*, 1787.

beo. *See* beon.

beoden, *to command*, 1469; bed,
pret. sing., 440, 723, 1355,
1548.

beon, inf., *to be*, 501, 508, 574, etc.;
am, 1 p., 462, 464, 1848, 2214,
2302; art, 2 p., 387, 449, 2034,
2163, 2281, 2225, 2378; is, 3 p.,
219, 222, 313, 322, etc.; beoð,
pres. ind. plur., 262, 297, 345,
etc.; beð, 1074; beo, pres. opt.
sing., 511, 560, 594, 781, 858,
946, 1008, 1500, 1666, 2140,

2264, 2280, 2411; 2429, 2502;
beon, pres. opt. plur., 507, 658,
1707, 1928, 2070; beo, imp.
sing., 373, 675, 1078, 1615,
1640, 1841, 2041, 2381; beoð,
imp. plur., 2343; wes, pret.
sing., 15, 139, etc.; were, 2
pers., 383; weren, pret. plur.,
2, 35, 163, etc.; were, opt.
sing., 80, 151, 969, 998, 1200,
1219, 1232, 1654, 1865, 2003,
2384; weren, opt. plur., 1212,
1251, 1275, 1632, 2269, 2335.

beoren, inf., *to bear, carry*, 453,
2458; beoren, pres. opt., 1926,
beren, pret. plur., 2463; bereð,
1 p. sing. pres., 1056, 2485;
iboren, pp., 333, 2163; iborene,
pp., 263.

beoð. *See* beon.

bere, *face, mien*, 2338.

beren. *See* beoren.

bereð. *See* beoren.

berninde. *See* bearnde.

beten, inf., *to expiate*, 1396; bette,
pret. sing., 1204; ibet, pp.,
1212.

betere, *better*, 559.

beð. *See* beon.

bette. *See* beten.

bi, *by, according to*, 57, 2084, 2177.

biblodeget, pp. *from* *biblodegen,
to bloody, 204.

biburiede, pret. sing., *from* *bibu-
rien, *to bury*, 2196; biburieden,
plur., 1434, 2464; biburiet, pp.,
2251.

bicapede, pret. sing., *from* *biga-
pen, *to stare at*, 1255.

bicherde, pret. sing., *from* *biche-
aren, *to outwit*, 1183.

bicluset, pp., *from* *biclusen, *to*
inclose, 600.

bicom. *See* bicumen.

bicumen, inf., *to become, happen*,
208; bicom, pret. sing., 1209,
1552.

- bidden, inf., *to pray*, 614; bidde, 1 p. sing. pres., 2388; bede, pret. opt., 2369; ibeden, pp., 2431.
- bidweolet, pp., *from* *bedweolien, *to bewitch*, 1251.
- bieoden, pret. plur., *from* *bigán, *to nurse*, 1601.
- biforen, *before*, 51, 58, 1141, 1440, 1613, 1862, 2031, 2208, 2261.
- bigað, pres. plur., *from* *bigán, *to pass by*, 1471.
- biȝeoten, inf., *to beget, obtain*, 1619, 2113; biȝetene, pp., 262.
- biȝete, *gain, possession*, 471.
- biȝetene. *See* biȝeoten.
- biginnen, inf., *to begin*, 279; biginnest, 2 p. sing. pres., 2162; biginneð, imp. plur., 1295; bigon, pret. sing., 31, 205, 305, 613, 745, 749, 1256, 1534, 1608, 1863, 2000, 2078; bigunnen, pret. plur., 292; bigunnen, pp., 395, 678.
- biginnunge, *beginning*, 287.
- bigon. *See* biginnen.
- biȝulið, pres. plur., *from* *biȝulin, *to beguile*, 1054.
- bigunnen. *See* biginnen.
- bihaldeð, pres. plur., *from* *bihalden, *to behold*, 1943, 2286; bihald, imp. sing., 1837, 1838; biheold, pret. sing., 743, 1250, 1855, 2024, 2077, 2372; biheolden, pret. plur., 740.
- bihat. *See* bihate.
- bihate, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *bihaten, *to promise*, 2439; bihat, 3 p., 685; bihat, imp., 1498; bihete, 2 pers. pret. sing., 645; bihet, 3 p., 414; bihaten, pp., 755, 887, 1789, 2255.
- bihefden, inf., *to behead*, 2241, 2316; bihefdet, pp., 2247.
- bihealden, *to pour upon*, 1390.
- biheold. *See* bihaldeð.
- bihet, bihete. *See* bihate.
- bikimet ???, *bent, crooked from one's right self or mind* ? 1291.
- bileauē, *belief*, 72, etc.
- bilimeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *bilimien, *to dismember*, 2130.
- bilieue, *quickly, at once*, 2279.
- bimong, *among(st)*, 198, 256, 915, 2007, 2307, 2414, 2475.
- binden, *to bind*, 1178, 1357.
- bireadde, pret. sing., *from* *bi-readen, *to design*, 1230.
- biseche, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *bisechen, *to beseech*, 2343; bisohte, pret. sing., 184, 2363; bisohten, plur., 1385.
- bisēh, pret. sing., *from* *biseon, *to look, glance*, 2125; bisīð, 3 p. sing. pres., 1936.
- biset, pp., *from* *bisētten, *to beset, surround*, 1566.
- bisīt, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *bī-sitten, *to sit by*, 1935.
- bisīð. *See* bisēh.
- bismere, *disgrace, shame*, 552, 1294.
- bisohte, bisohten. *See* biseche.
- bistarede, pret. sing., *from* *bi-starien, *to stare at*, 306.
- bitahte, pret. sing., *from* *bitechen, *to commit*, 611.
- bite, *bite*, 2404.
- bite, pres. opt., *from* *biten, *to bite*, 2091.
- biteuelet, pp., *from* *biteuelen, *to gull*, 1284.
- bipenche, imp. sing., *from* *bipenchen, *to invent*, 1887.
- bitrumet, pp., *from* *bitrumien, *to inclose*, 1644.
- bittre, *bitter*, 2038; bittres, 1689.
- bituhhen, *bitwixt*, 1515.
- *bituined, pp., *from* *bitunen, *to inclose*, 1644.
- bitweonen, *between*, 13.
- biwende, pret. sing., *from* *bi-wenden, *to turn*, 2330.

- blikede, pret. sing., from *blikien, to gleam, 2364.
 blinde, the blind, 1061.
 blisful, blissful, 1857; blisfule, 1595.
 blisse, bliss, 845, 1522, 1708, 1755, 1791, 2295, 2337, 2344; blissen, plur., 1620, 2158.
 blissen, pres. opt. plur., from *blissien, to be glad, 846.
 blissen. See blisse.
 bliše, blithe, 1857, 2306, 2343.
 blišeliche, gladly, 2371.
 blod, blood, 204, 230, 908, 1897, 2259, 2457; blode, 1543; blodes, 1398.
 blodles, bloodless, strengthless, 250, 1290.
 *blunneš, pres. plur., from *blunnen, to get blunt or dull, to decrease?, 1702.
 bode, command, 48, 56.
 bodi, body, 333, 909, 1539, 1603, 2463; bodies, plur., 1433, 2242, 2249.
 bodien, to command, 1470.
 bodies. See bodi.
 bokes, plur. of *bok, book, 837, 855.
 bold, building, 1649.
 bone, prayer, boon, 614, 2369, 2388.
 bone, bearer of death, murderer, 2365.
 borien, pres. opt. plur., from *borien, to pierce, 1926.
 bote, penance, 1204.
 botnede. See botneš.
 botneš, 3 p. pres. sing. or plur., from *botnien, to cure, 2488; botnede, pret. sing., 1061.
 bree. See breokeš.
 breokeš, imp. plur., from *breoken, to break; (*onbreoken, to begin), 1294; bree, pret. sing., 2263; ibroken, pp., 1211, 1397.
 breoste, dat. sing., from *breost, breast, 190; breosten, dat. plur., 2099, 2176; breoste, gen. plur., 2122.
 briddes, plur. of *brid, bird, 63.
 briht, bright, 1650; brihtre, comp., 1665.
 bringen, inf., to bring, 394, 440, 595, 723, 1440, 2336; brohte, pret. sing., 520; brohten, plur., 62; ibroht, pp., 263, 275, 1862, 2262, 2306.
 brond, sword, brand, 2363.
 bruche, sin, wound, 334, 1203; bruchen, plur., 1210, 1396, 1601.
 bruchel, frail, 1101, 2003.
 bruchen. See bruche.
 brune, fire; o brune, on fire, burning, 1355.
 budel, herald, beadle, 1905.
 buggen, to buy, 1619.
 buhe. See buheš.
 buheš, pres. plur., from *buhen, to bow, stoop, 365; buhe, opt. sing., 2368; buhen, opt. plur., 1473.
 buhsume, buxom(ly), 1787.
 bulden, to build, 1642.
 bale, plur., from *bule, bull, ox, 61.
 *bunen ??? 1522.
 bur, room, chamber, bower, 138; bure, 1459.
 burde, birth, 84.
 burdeboldest, plur., from *burdebald, hereditary mansion, 139.
 burh, city, borough, 64; 1356, 1467, 1642, 2240; burhe, 2317; burhes, gen. sing., 9.
 burhȝetes, plur., from *burhȝet, town-gate, 2174.
 burhmen, plur., from *burhmon, citizen, 1475, 1664; burhmenne, gen. plur., 6.
 burhreue, prefect of a city, 1904.
 buriboldes, plur., from *burhbold, townhall, palace, castle? 439.

bute, *but, without, except*, 276, etc.; buten, 251, 280, etc.
bunen, *above*, 1522, 2364.

cahten. *See* keccheŝ.

cang, *dull, foolish*, 258.

carles, *without anxiety*, 26.

chear. *See* chearren.

chearren, pres. opt., *from* *chearren, *to turn*, 2229; chear, imp., 2228.

chele, *cold, frost*, 1686.

cheosen, inf., *to choose*, 1871;

cheos, imp. sing., 2227; icheosen, pp., 834.

childhade, dat. of *childhad, *childhood*, 79.

chirche, *church*, 32, 833.

clane, *clean*, 2247, 2265.

claŝ, plur. of *claŝ, *cloth*, 1417.

claterin, *to crack*, 2000.

cleopien, inf., *to call*, 2169;

cleopie, 1 p., 1028; cleopest,

2 p., 360; cleopeŝ, 3 p., 2346;

cleopieŝ, plur., 2392; clepien,

opt., plur., 2437; cleopede,

pret. sing., 405, 1328, 1558,

1908, 1978, 2209, 2375; icle-

opet, pp., 88, 462, 2447.

cleouen, *to split*, 2001.

clerc, *scholar*, 523; clerkes, plur., 410, 583.

clergesse, *female or lady scholar*, 75.

clergies, plur. of *clergie, *science*, 538, 585.

clerkes. *See* clerc.

cnaue. *See* cnawen.

cnawen, inf., *to know, learn*, 463;

cnawe, 1 p. sing. pres., 444,

869; cnaweŝ, pres. plur., 2066;

icnawen, pp., 423.

cnawes, *witness*? 1078, 2041.

cnaweŝ. *See* cnawen.

cnawlecheŝ, pres. plur., *from* *cnawlechin, *to acknowledge*, 1343.

cnawlechunge, *acknowledgment*, 1379.

cneolinde, pres. part., *from* *cneolin, *to kneel*, 2374.

cnif, *knife*, 1929.

cniht, *knight, warrior*, 2225;

cnihates, n. a. d. plur., 1394,

1436, 1738, 1810; cnihtene,

gen. plur., 1559.

cnotte, nom. sing., *knot*, 1514;

cnotten, plur., 1151.

cnottede, pp., *from* *cnottien, *to knot*, 1540.

cnotten. *See* cnotte.

cnotti, *knotty*, 1151.

com, come, comen. *See* cumen.

con, const. *See* cunnen.

Constantin, noun pr., 1, 5, 17.

constu. *See* cunnen.

copneŝ, 3. p. sing. pres., *from*

*copnien, *to long for*, 2346,

2424; copniŝ, pres. plur., 801.

Cost, noun pr., 73, 465.

crauant, *craven*, 132.

creap, pret. sing., *from* *creopen, *to creep*, 906.

creft, *craft*, 814, 869; creftes, plur., 256, 522, 852.

crefti, *crafty*, 125, 584.

creftiluker, comp. of *creftilich, *craftily*, 258.

Crist, *Christ*, 389, 615, 707, 874,

1124, 1125, 1328, 1611, 1623,

1771, 1816, 1881, 1893, 2046,

2064, 2141, 2345, 2446; Criste,

694, 1342, 1412, 1815, 2181,

2492; Cristes, gen., 726.

cristene, *Christian*, 33, 163, 1432,

2015; cristenes, gen. sing.,

2045.

crokes, plur. of *crok, *trick*, 125.

crokinde, part. pres., *from* *crokin, *to bend, curve*, 256.

cross, *cross*, 726.

cruche, *cross*, 1165.

cruchede, pret. sing., *from* *cruchien, *to cross*, 727.

crune, *crown*, 1570, 1573, 1596, 2141, 2351, 2428.

cudde. *See* cuḑen.

cuddeste, sup. of *cud, *renowned*, 821.

culurene, gen. plur., from *culure, *dove*, 1823.

cum. *See* cumen.

cume, pres., *coming*, 26, 412, 671, 2424.

cume. *See* cumen.

cumen, inf. to *come*, 340, 397, 604, 695, etc.; cumene, 542, 583, 1833; cumeḑ, pres. sing., 2427; cume, pres. opt., 816; cum, imp., 2418, 2419, 2429; com, pret. sing., 84, 152, 194, 520, 603, 666, etc.; comen, pret. plur., 14, 51, 56, 732, 1432; come, pret. opt., 719, 1309; icumene, pp., 650.

cumene, cumeḑ. *See* cumen.

cun, *family, lineage, manner, wise*, 444, 463; cunnes, gen. sing., 1163, 1912.

cunde, *kind, nature*, 294, 905, 1001, 1004, 1058, 1100, 1110, 1162, 1192; cundes, plur. 988.

cundelich, *natural*, 963.

cundeliche, adv. in a *natural manner*, 1029.

cundes. *See* cunde.

cunnen, inf., to *know, be able to*, 523; con, 1 3 p. sing. pres., 816, 868; const, 2 p. sing. pres., 2303; constu=const þu, 1642, 2212; cunnen, pres. plur., 944, 1322; cuḑe, pret. sing. 1533; cuḑen, plur., 1323.

cunnes. *See* cun.

curen, to *choose, or plur. of *cure, choice*, 1870; icuret, pp., 75.

Cursates, noun pr. 1907.

curt, *court*, 397.

cuḑ. *See* cuḑen.

cuḑ, adj., *renowned*, 2276; cuḑe, 599, 816.

cuḑe, cuḑen. *See* cunnen.

cuḑen, inf., to *announce, make known*, 540; cuḑeḑ, pres. plur., 1339; cuḑ, imp., 1982; cudde, pret. sing., 1346; icud, pp., 537, 541, 813; icudd, 581, 1910, 2225, 2276; icudde, 410, 1288.

cuḑeḑ. *See* cuḑen.

cwakien, to *tremble, quake*, 1534.

cwalmhus, *death-house, prison*, 1547, 1807; cwalmhuse, 602.

cwarterne, *cell, prison*, 601, 671, 1581, 1820.

cwellere, *executioner*, 2444; cwelleres, plur., 2170.

cwen, *queen*, 1457, 1466, 1556, 1573, 1610, 1611, 1739, 2023, 2058, 2076, 2081, 2145, 2166, 2198.

cweḑe, 1 p. sing. pres., from *cweḑen, to *say, speak*, 867; cweḑ, 3 p., 379, 1148, 1254, 1300, 1484, 2444; quoḑ, pret. sing., 512, 750, 776, 821, 828, 1592, 2103, 2144, 2221, 2287; cweḑen, pret. plur., 133, 539.

cwic, *living, alive*, 1868; cwike, 63, 341.

cwich, 3 p. sing. pres., from *cwikien, to *move, stir*, 1254.

cwiddest, 2 p. sing. pres., from *cwiddien, to *tell, make known*, 2142.

cwike. *See* cwic.

dahene, dahes. *See* dei.

dale, *part*, 99.

dame, *lady*, 2080.

Daniel, noun pr., 1825.

darede. *See* dearieḑ.

deade, *dead*, 341, 1060, 1085, 1425; ded, 1262.

deadlich, *deadly, mortal*, 966, 1890; dedlich, 927, 1048, 1101, 1113, 1195.

- deah, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *duhen, *to become, suit*, 1833; deh, 1435, 2197.
- dearieð, pres. plur., *from* *dearien, *to lurk, hide oneself*, 554; dearede, pret. sing., 2020; darede, pret. sing., 1131.
- dearne, *dark, hidden*, 575, 576; derne, 1333.
- dearnliche, *privately*, 406.
- deað, *death*, 165, 337, 566, 959, 1092, 1124, 1142, 1160, 1334, 1363, 1374, 1430, 2223, 2268, 2292, 2393, 2434; deð, 702, 926, 965, 967, 1006, 1097, 1125, 1136, 1194, 1215, 1842, 1883; deaðe, 1112, 1214, 1489, 2100, 2206, 2405; deaðes, gen., 1138.
- deane, *the deaf*, 1062.
- ded. *See* deade.
- dede, *deed*, 1123, 1914; deden, plur., 576, 1461.
- dedlich. *See* deadlich.
- deh. *See* deah.
- dei, *day*, 436, 598, 746, 787, 848, 1305, 1413, 1949, 2182, 2283, 2495, 2497; deies, gen. sing., 1077; dahes, plur., 1551, 1824, 1918; dahene, gen. plur., 2469.
- deien, inf., *to die*, 957, 1088, 1102, 1106, 1875, 2284; deide, pret. sing., 335, 1098, 1109, 1116, 1139, 1187, 1202, 2468.
- deies. *See* dei.
- demen, inf., *to deem, judge*, 340, 567; demest, 2 sing. pres., 1462; demden, pret. plur., 328.
- deope, *deeply*, 388, 1307.
- deopnesse, *depth*, 979.
- deopschipe, *depth*, 1333.
- deor, plur., *deer*, 2244.
- deore, *dear*, 632, 651, 1158, 1369, 1594, 1837, 2145, 2498.
- deorewurðe, *precious*, 633, 680, 1076, 1645, 1657, 1770, 1894, 2145.
- deorliche, *sumptuously*, 1435.
- deouel, acc. sing., *devil*, 1184; deouele; dat., 200; deoueles, gen., 166; deoules, 1905, 2123, 2312; deoulen, nom. plur., 553; deouelen, dat. plur., 211.
- derf, *pain, painful, cruel*, 2393; derue, 1889; derure, comp., 947; deruest, sup., 2101; derueste, 566.
- derfliche, *painfully, miserably*, 957, 1088.
- derfischepe, *baseness, vileness*, 977.
- derne. *See* dearne.
- derue, deruest, derueste. *See* derf.
- derueð, 3 sing. pres., *from* *deruen, *to grieve, afflict*, 1669.
- derure. *See* derf.
- desputinge, *argument*, 561.
- dest, deð. *See* don and deað.
- dihten, *to arrange, constitute*, 1460; idiht, pp., 1373, 1595, 1843.
- diuerin, *to tremble*, 622.
- do. *See* don.
- dohter, *daughter*, 74, 464, 676, 1837.
- dom, *judgment*, 1202, 2118.
- domesdei, *doomsday*, 339.
- don, inf., *to do*, 565, 783, 973, 995, 998, 1844, 2100, 2281, 2406; donne, 782, 2171, 2198; do, 1 pers., 505; dest, 2 pers., 211, 753, 2105, 2282; deð, 3 pers., 1490, 2405; doð, pres. plur., 458, 1142, 2394; do, opt., 1849, 2087, 2406; do, imp., 783, 1914, 2110, 2448; dude, pret. sing., 630, 1047, 1135, 1541, 1825, 2028; duden, plur., 29, 166, 167, etc.; ido, pp., 1123, 1914; idon, 437, 1437.
- donne. *See* don.
- dotestu, 2 sing. pres., = dotest þu, *from* *dotien, *to rave*, 2080.
- doð. *See* don.
- draf. *See* driueð.

- drahen, inf., *to suffer, draw*, 1187, 1891, 1966; droh, pret. sing., 1087, 1363; drohe, 2 pers., 2434; drohen, pret. plur., 2124, 2173; idrahen, pp., 1194, 1949.
- dream, *music, joy*, 1488, 1832.
- dred. *See* dreden.
- dred, *fear*, 165.
- dredde, dredē. *See* dreden.
- dreden, inf., *to dread, fear*, 622, 1842; drede, 1 pers. sing. pres., 762, 1488, 1882, 2103; dredē, 3 pers., 1215; drede, pres. plur., 1393, 1593; dred, imp., 1621, 1847, 2144; dredde, pret. opt. sing., 1913.
- dredē. *See* dreden.
- drehde. *See* drehen.
- drehen, inf., *to suffer, draw*, 629, 965, 1087, 1097, 1374, 1736, 1891, 2101, 2393; dreien, 33, 2206; dreie, opt. sing., 1489; drehde, pret. sing., 1160; drehen (C. druhen), pret. plur., 631.
- dreori, *gloomy, miserable*, 2021.
- dreoriliche, *miserably*, 1875, 2284.
- drihtfare, *glorious procession*, 1832.
- drihtin, *the Lord*, 696, 1093, 1122, 1131, 1369, 1431, 1594, 1614, 1736, 1833, 2146; drihtines, gen., 676, 1436.
- drihtnesse, *glory, splendour*, 1120, 1197, 1337.
- driuēles, plur. of *drinēl, *slave, servant*, 2123.
- driuen. *See* driuē.
- driuē, 3 p. sing. pres., *to do, drive, rush*, 425; pres. plur., 214; draf, pret. sing., 1065, 1997; driuen, pret. plur., 1372; idriuen, pp., 1799.
- droh, drohe, drohen. *See* drahen.
- druēninde, part. pres., *from* *druc-nin, *to stun, be stunned*, 2021.
- drupest, sup. of *drup, *dejected*, 2022.
- *drupninde, part. pres., *from* *drupnin, *to be dejected*, 2021.
- dude, duden. *See* don.
- duhti, *good, worthy, doughty*, 781.
- dult, pp. of *dullen, *to blunt, dull*, 1262.
- dumbe, *the dumb*, 1062.
- dun, adv. *down*, 1587.
- dune, *din*, 1998.
- dunewardes, *downwards*, 1967; duneward, 2374.
- dunriht, *right down*, 1997.
- dunt, *blow, stroke*, 1999, 2050, 2456.
- *dureninde, part. pres. of *dearenien? *to hide oneself*, 2021.
- duren, pres. plur. *from* *durren, *to dare*, 1324; durste, pret. sing., 1308.
- dusi, *foolish*, 781, 978; dusie, 599.
- dusilec, *folly*, 424.
- dusischipes, plur. of *dusischipe, *folly*, 1799.
- duste. *See* dusten.
- dusten, inf., *to throw, strike, dash*, 1967; dustest, 2 p. sing. pres., 983; duste, pret. sing., 1092, 1999.
- dute, *doubt*, 2430.
- duēlrihtes, *vertically*, 1587. Halliwell gives 'develing' a similar form, = *laying flat*, and quotes Arthur and Merlin 287 and Bevis of Hampton 27.
- eadi, *blessed, blissful, holy*, 864, 1237, 1953, 2127; eadie, 748, 1805, 2490.
- caldrene. *See* aldren.
- eanes, *once*, 124.
- ear, *before, first, ere*, 509, 560, 598, 876, 1312, 1383, 1895.
- eare, ear, 1719; earen, plur., 497, 1128.
- earest, *first*, 1213; eareste, 883; earst, 422, 2162.
- earliche, *early*, 115, 859.

earst. . See earest.
 eauer, *ever, always*, 111, 594, 734,
 1121, 1225, 1458, 1663, 1678,
 1692, 1712, 1848, 1951, 2023,
 2104, 2394, 2436, 2485.
 eauerouch, *every*, 1422.
 eauerihwer, *everywhere*, 682.
 eawles, plur. of *eawel, *awl*, 2178.
 ec, *also*, 928.
 eche, *eternal, eternity*, 298, 300,
 474, 478, 872, 1624, 1760,
 2295, 2341, 2421.
 echeliche, *eternally*, 2355.
 ecnesse, *eternity*, 664, 2505.
 eft, *again, further*, 339, 488, 925,
 1438, 2354.
 efter, *after, according to*, 17, 743,
 935, 971, 1218, 1457, 1462,
 1855, 2142, 2321.
 egge, *edge*, 2404.
 ehe, *eye*, 1056, 1719; ehnen, plur.,
 112, 307, 496, 1977.
 ehsihðe, (*eye*)-*sight*, 2315.
 eie, *terror*, 558, 1492.
 eileð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *eilen,
to molest, 1684.
 eisle, *awful*, 40.
 eiðer, *either*, 1958.
 elles, *else*, 1524.
 elnede, 3 p. sing. pret., *from*
 *elnien, *to strengthen, comfort*,
 673, 1365; elnedest, 2 p., 628.
 empti, *empty, void*, 392, 839, 864.
 ende, *end, part, district*, 298, 394,
 587, 706, 1476, 1555, 1791,
 2158.
 endelese, *endless*, 1620, 1633, 1694,
 1884, 2154.
 endin, *to end*, 294.
 endunge, *end, termination*, 289.
 engel, *angel*, 666, 673, 1822, 1994;
 engles, plur., 291, 1598, 1830,
 2412, 2460.
 eni, *any*, 1347, 1648, 1661, 1692,
 1710, 1735, 1921.
 eode. See gað.
 eoile, *oil*, 2478, 2484.

eorles, plur. of *eorl, *noble, earl*,
 636.
 eornen, inf., *to run*, 2268; rinneð,
 3 p. sing. pres., 2477; ron,
 pret. sing., 203.
 eorðe, *earth*, 352, 1017, 1346,
 1781, 2220.
 eorðlich, *earthly*, 1717, 1719,
 2148; eorðliche, 1622, 2493.
 ernde, imp., *from* *erndien, *to*
commend, 2127.
 erueð, *difficult*, 998.
 Esculapies, gen. of *Esculapie,
Esculapius, 852.
 eskest, 2 p. sing. pres., *from*
 *eskien, *to ask*, 1716.
 estlonde, dat. of *estlond, *eastern*
land, East, 535, 1304.
 eð, *easy*, 1219.
 ete, pret. or pres. opt. sing., *from*
 *eten, *to eat*, 1549.
 etheold, pret. sing., *from* *ethal-
 den, *to retain, detain*, 99, 1223.
 eðsene, *easily seen, plain*, 381,
 1033.
 etsterten, *to escape*, 700, 2095.
 etwat, pret. sing., *from* *etwiten,
to reproach, 2332.
 euch, *each, every*, 20, 201, 255,
 286, etc.
 euchan, *every one*, 54, 57.
 Eue, *Eve*, 884.
 euene, *condition, property*, 57.
 euening, *equal*, 118, 300, 861.
 ewt, *ought, anything*, 996.
 fal, *fall*, 2290.
 fallen, inf., *to fall, belong*, 2289;
 falleð, 3 p. sing. pres., 471;
 feollen, pret. plur., 1586; ifallen,
 pp., 1367.
 false, *false*, 317, 1625.
 fan, plur. of *fa, *foe*, 689.
 fare, *fares, fareð*. See fearen.
 fatte, pret. sing., *from* *faten, *to*
fetch, 719, 2466; ifat, pp., 1289;
 ifatte, 2250.

fax, *the hair of the head*, 2256.
 feader, *father*, 929, 1767; feder, 114, 264, 465, 1899; federes, gen. sing., 619.
 fearen, inf., *to fare, travel, go*, 1553; fare, 1 pers., 2341; fareð, pres. plur., 1616; faren, opt. plur., 1383.
 fearlac, *fear*, 39, 610, 1586, 1590, 2029, 2139, 2207.
 fedde, pret. sing., *from* *feden, *to feed*, 1824.
 feder. *See* feader.
 federles, *fatherless*, 78.
 fehere. *See* feier.
 feht, acc., *fight*, 611; fehte, dat., 14.
 fehten, *to fight*, 605, 766
 feier, *fair, beautiful*, 68; feire, 704, 1367, 1486, 1605, 2251, 2309; fehere, comp., 2291.
 fel, *skin*, 1604.
 felen, *to feel*, 1164.
 felien, plur. of *felie, *felloe, felly*, 1921.
 felunge, *feeling*, 498.
 feng. *See* fon.
 feolahes, plur. of *fellahe, *companion, fellow*, 2307.
 feole, *many*, 89, 119, 121, 799, 860, 947, 1428, 2052, 2203, 2473.
 feollen. *See* fallen.
 feondes. *See* feont.
 feont, *fiend, devil*, 246, 255, 890, 1183; feondes, gen. sing., 729, 917.
 feor, *far, remote*, 823, 1927; fir, comp., 2299; firreste, sup., 1554.
 feorlich, *fearful, wonderful, wonder*, 2056; ferliche, 731, 1399, 1995.
 feorrene, *far, from afar*, 1289.
 ferde, pret. sing., *from* *fêren, *to travel, go*, 5, 1554, 2189; ferden, pret. plur., 1411.
 feren, plur. of *fere, *companion*, 1245.

ferliche. *See* feorlich.
 ferreden, *company*, 704, 2309.
 festnin, *to fasten, confirm*, 1175, 1985; ifestnet, pp., 1512.
 fet. *See* fot.
 fewe, *few*, 949.
 fif, *five*, 43, 793, 1287, 2495.
 fifti, *fifty*, 521, 606, 720, 730, 753, 1274.
 findeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *finden, *to find, invent*, 255; font, pret. sing., 860; funde, pret. plur., 1306.
 fir, firreste. *See* feor.
 firstede. *See* firsti.
 firsti, sing. opt. pres., *from* *firstien, *to delay*, 2299; firstede, pret. sing., 2367.
 fleah, pret. sing., *from* *fleon, *to fly, flee*, 16.
 fleide, pret. sing., *from* *fleien, *to drive*, 1590.
 fleoninde, pres. part., of ??? 1996.
 flesch, *flesh*, 1100, 1538, 1604, 1890, 1897, 2092; ules, 2134.
 fleschlich, *fleshly, corporeal*, 2140; fleschliche, 912, 1098.
 fleschtimber, *corporeal matter*, 1188.
 flit, *argument*, 689; flites, plur., 854.
 fliten, *to argue*, 720.
 floweð, 3 pres. sing., *from* *flowen, *to flow*, 2483; floweð, pres. plur., 2484; flowinde, part. pres., 687.
 fode, *food*, 1821, 2244.
 folc, *folk, people*, 1900, 2010, 2054.
 folhið, 1 pres. plur., *from* *folhin, *to follow*, 2308.
 fon, inf., *to take, begin*; (*onfon, *to begin*.) 1863; feng, pret. sing., 312, 1630, 2169.
 fondeden, pret. plur., *from* *fondien, *to try*, 120.
 for, *for*, 9, etc.

- forbisne, *example*, 699.
 forbode, *prohibition*, 2201, 2248.
 forcuðest, sup., of *forcuð, *depraved*, 2211.
 forcwæðest, 2 p. sing. pres., from *foroweðen, *to blaspheme*, 389.
 fordern, imp., from *fordemen, *to condemn*, 2217; *fordemed*, pp., 427.
 fordon, inf., *to undo, ruin*, 484, 878, 2124; *fordeð*, 3 p. sing. pres., 212; *fordon*, pp., 427, 2051.
 fordrenct, pp., from *fordrenchen, *to make drunk*, 2311.
 foreseide, pret. sing., from *foreseggen, *to foretell*, 531.
 *forewende, pret. sing., from *forewenen, *to forethink*, 531.
 forga, 1 p. sing. pres., from *forgan, *to forgo*, 2138.
 forȝeoteð, pres. plur., from *forȝeoten, *to forget*, 1368; *forȝet*, pret. sing., 1816.
 forhohien, *to disdain*, 992.
 forleosen, *to lose, perish*, 347, 896, 2254.
 forleten, pres. opt. plur., from *forleten, *to leave*, 1376, 2359.
 forsake, 1 p. sing. pres., from *forsaken, *to forsake*, 866.
 forð, *forth, away*, 194, 241, 263, 431, 595, 604, 811, 825, 1616, 1926, 2005, 2029, 2207, 2233, 2262, 2272, 2337, 2442, 2463.
 forðfederes, *forefathers*, 94.
 forðwardes, adv., *forward*, 2068.
 forwurðen, inf., *to perish*, 2257; *forwurðe*, pres. opt. sing., 2161.
 foster, (*foster-*)*child*, 450, 729.
 fot, *foot, man?*, 1362, 2241; *fet*, 499, 1358.
 fowr, *four*, 1919, 1991, 2011.
 freinen, inf., *to ask*, 1631; *freinden*, pret. plur., 1737.
 freken, plur., of *freke, *champion, bold man*, 731.
 fremien, *to promote, indulge*, 285; *fremede*, pret. sing., 2367.
 freo, *free, noble*, 450, 1174.
 freolec, *liberality, nobleness*, 2366.
 freolich, *noble*, 68; *freoliche*, 1539.
 Fridei, *Friday*, 2496.
 *friðede, pret. sing., from *friðien, *to leave undisturbed*, 2367.
 from, *from*, 1312, etc.
 Fronclonde, *France*, 7.
 frourede. *See* frourin.
 frourin, inf., *to console*, 284; *frourede*, pret. sing., 1591.
 fuheles, plur. of *fuhel, *bird*, 2093.
 ful, *full*, 863, 1493, 1979; *fulle*, 1551, 2011.
 fule, *foul*, 40.
 fulle. *See* ful.
 funde. *See* findeð.
 fur, *fire*, 1361, 1399.
 furene, *fiery*, 1403.
 ga. *See* gað.
 gabbes, plur. of *gabbe, *taunt*, 2237.
 gadien, plur. of *gadie, *goad*, 1922.
 Galienes, gen. of Galien, *Galen*, 853.
 ȝarewe. *See* ȝarow.
 ȝarkin, inf., *to prepare*, 1735, 1919, 2303; *iȝarket*, pp., 1724.
 ȝarow, *ready*, 2302; *ȝarewe*, 1724.
 gast, *Ghost*, 116, 196, 243, 662, 1320, 1402, 1772, 2214.
 gað, pres. plur., 347; *ga*, imp., 1445; *eode*, pret. sing., 746, 1204.
 ȝe, *yea, nay even*, 290.
 ȝe, *ye, you*, 278.
 ȝeald. *See* ȝelden.
 gederin, *to gather, collect*, 989.
 ȝef. *See* ȝeouen.
 ȝef, *if*, 92, 210, 215, etc.
 ȝeide. *See* ȝeien.
 ȝeien, inf., *to exclaim, scream*, 205, 2014, 2060; *ȝeide*, pret. sing.,

- 1260, 1364, 2033; *jeinde*, pres. part., 160.
- jeinceppes*, plur. of **jeincelep*, *counterstroke*, 128.
- jeinde*. See *jeien*.
- jeinen*, to profit, help, 176.
- jeinturn*, *counterturn*, 2087.
- zeld*, tribute, offer, money, 210.
- zelden*, inf., to repay, 569, 764, 2216; *zelt*, 3 p. sing. pres., 244, 1625; *zeald*, 3 p. pret. sing., 127; *zulde*, pret. opt. sing., 215.
- zellen*, to yell, 2013.
- zelp*, vain-glory, 470, 863.
- zelpe*, 1 p. sing. pres., from **zelpen*, to boast, 475; *zelpeð*, pres. plur., 1280.
- zelt*. See *zelden*.
- zeme*, care, attention, 1451, 1817.
- zeomere*, miserable, 1812.
- zeont*, over, 409.
- zeorne*, very much, 1576.
- zeouen*, plur. of **zeoue*, gift, 37; *zeoues*, 568.
- zeouen*, inf., to give, 269, 639; *zef*, imp., 648; *zef*, 3 p. pret. sing., 238, 357, 2370; *zeuen*, pret. pl., 1811; *zeue*, pret. opt. sing., 216.
- zeoues*. See *zeouen*.
- zer*, year, 43; *zeres*, pl. 66, 545.
- gersum*, treasure, 798.
- zet*, yet, again, now, 70, 149, 346, etc.
- zete*, gate, door, 2421.
- zette*, imp., from **zetten*, to permit, 767, 2387; *zettede*, pret. sing., 1578, 2370.
- zeue*, *zeuen*. See *zeouen*.
- zimstanes*, plur. of **zimstan*, gem, 1647.
- zin*, engine, 1955.
- zirne*, 1 pers. pres. sing., from **zirn*, to yearn, wish for, 2387; *zirnede*, pret. sing., 1579.
- Giw*s, plur. of **Giw*, Jew, 328.
- glead*, glad, 1668.
- gleaminde*, pres. part., from **gleamin*, to gleam, 1653.
- gledeð*, 3 p. sing. pres., from **gledien*, to gladden, 1521.
- gleo*, play, music, 145, 1667.
- gleowinde*, pres. part., from **gleowien*, to amuse oneself, play, 1667.
- gleowinge*, playing, music, 145.
- gles*, glass, 1661, 2003.
- glistinde*, pres. part., from **glisten*, to glitter, 836, 1653.
- god*, good, property, 86, 100, 233, 1000; *gode*, 392; *godes*, gen., 1768.
- godcundnesse*, divine nature, 984.
- godd*, god, 247, 254, 280, etc.; *godes*, gen. sing., 164, 172, etc.; *godes*, plur., 53, 147, 273, etc.
- goddlec*, divinity, majesty, 1205.
- gode*, *godes*. See *god* and *godd*.
- godlec*, goodness, 287, 897, 1345.
- godleic*, goodness? ?, 838.
- godlese*, godless, 844.
- gold*, gold, 268, 493, 797, 1465, 1655.
- zong*, way, walking, 570, 2469; *zonge*, 499.
- grace*, mercy, 1248.
- grap*, 3 p. sing. pret., from **gripen*, to seize, 1969.
- grapes*, plur. of **grap*, art, trick, 853.
- greate*, great, 843.
- gremeden*. See *gremest*.
- gremest*, 2 p. sing. pres., from **gremien*, to anger, 2089; *gremieð*, pres. plur., 301; *gremeden*, pret. plur., 2238; *igremet*, pp., 1456, 2273.
- gret*, *grete*. See *greten*.
- greten*, inf., to salute, honour, 220, 2271; *gret*, imp., 1455; *grete*, opt., 2088; *greten*, opt. plur., 1472; *igrette*, pp., 798.
- gretunge*, honour, 207.

- grislich, *loathly*, 2288; grisliche, 1934, 1968.
 grome, *anger*, 1354.
 gromede, pret. sing., *from* *gromien, *to be angry with*, 2075.
 grure, *horror*, 1944, 1969.
 žuheče, *youth, youthful age*, 1451.
 žulde. *See* želden.
 guldene, *golden*, 1570.
 gultlese, *guiltless*, 2205.
 žung, *young*, 66, 80, 175, 383.
 žunglich, *youngish*, 545.
 *žungling, *youngling*, 545.
 žuren, inf., *to groan*, 2014; žurinde, pres. part., 160.
 ha, *she, they*, 80, 131, etc.
 habbe. *See* hebben.
 hebben, inf., *to have*, 87, 289, 474, 556, 757, 1146, 1216, 1476, 1867, 1944; habbe, 1 p. sing. pres., 466, 834, 1150, 1510, 1743, 1750, 1843; hauest, 2 p., 386, 445, 513, 678, 755, 1456, 1839, 2042, 2111, 2223, 2272, 2391, 2383, 2431; haueč, 3 p., 817, 1284, 1373, 1507, 1594, 1634, 1724, 1789, 1800, 1885, 1895, 2050, 2141, 2447; habbeč, pres. plur., 395, 1397, 1798, 2489; habbe, opt. sing., 2267; haue, imp., 1573; hefde, pret. sing., 111, 114, etc.; hefden, pl., 95, 1276, 1417, 1730; ihaued, pp., 445; ihauet, 466.
 habbeč. *See* hebben.
 hald, halde. *See* halden.
 halden, inf., *to hold*, 1179, 1548, 1867, 1989; halt, 3 p. sing. pres., 1779; haldeč, pres. plur., 1788; hald, imp., 645, 677; halde, opt. sing., 232; heold, pret. sing., 81, 433, 1818, 1952; heolden, pret. plur., 888, 1298, 2236; ihalden, pp., 2486.
 haldeč. *See* halden.
 halewi, *balm*, 1692.
 halewunde, *sanctifying*, 233; halwende, 1389, 1401; halwunde, 886.
 half, *half, side, manner*, 736, 739, 790, 982, 1927, 2014; halue, 20, 121.
 hali, *holy*, 32, 111, etc.
 halle, *hall*, 416, 1459.
 halt. *See* halden.
 halte, *the lame*, 1063.
 halue. *See* half.
 halwende, halwunde. *See* halewunde.
 ham, *them*, 13, etc.
 hap, *luck, success*, 184.
 hardi, *hardy*, 1729.
 hardi, pres. opt. sing., *from* *hardin, *to harden, make hardy*, 2133.
 hardiliche, *hardily*, 677.
 hare, *their*, 98, 302, etc.
 harmič, pres. sing.?, *from* *harmin, *to harm*, 2402.
 hat, *hot*, 2116.
 hat, 3 sing. pres., *to command, cause, be called*, 364; hat, imp., 1917, 2300, 2411; hete, 2 p. sing. pret., 542; het, 3 p. pret. sing., 156, 411, 1362, 1382, 1438, 1536, 1546, 1819, 1946, 2116, 2200, 2239, 2260, 2314, 2450; ihaten, pp. 2172, 2449; hatte, med. sing., 22, 1771; hehte, 73, 432, 465, 1907.
 haue, hauest, haueč. *See* hebben.
 he, *he*, 23, etc.
 heafden. *See* heaued.
 healde. *See* healeč.
 healden, *to pour*, 686.
 heale, *salvation*, 872.
 healendes. *See* healent.
 healent, *saviour*, 182, 1838, 2016, 2067, 2381, 2397, 2410, 2502; healendes, gen., 612.
 healeč, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *healen, *to heal, cure*, 2487; healde, pret. sing., 1063.
 heane, *hateful*, 1947.

heaneð. *See* heanin.
 heanin, inf., *to hate, despise*, 1020;
 heaneð, pres. sing. ? , 2402.
 heapes, gen. sing., *of* *heape, *hip*,
 1971.
 heaste, *command, commandment*, 48,
 2246; heast, 886, 2218; heastes,
 plur., 233, 1788.
 heate, *heat*, 1686.
 heaðendom, *heathendom*, 35.
 heaðene, *heathen, heathens*, 36, 53,
 1859, 2013, 2054, 2322, 2356.
 heaured, *head, chief*, 421, 535, 1185,
 1299, 1351, 2180, 2226, 2452;
 heauret, 1571; heafden, plur.,
 1418.
 hef, pret. sing., *from* *hebben, *to*
 heave, lift, 181, 2451; heuen,
 pret. plur., 1407, 2462.
 hefde, hefden. *See* habben.
 heh, *high, great*, 415, 1468, 1908,
 1979, 2024, 2044, 2067, 2462;
 hehe, 182, 363, 467, 1838,
 1983, 2381; herre, comp., 757;
 hehest, sup., 4, 416; heste,
 536, 1298, 2476.
 hehengel, *archangel*, 710.
 hehest. *See* heh.
 hehfeder, *High Father* (elsewhere
 =*patriarch*), 661.
 hehliche, *highly, costly*, 569, 1477.
 hehnesse, *majesty*, 109, 997, 1331.
 hehte. *See* hat.
 hei, *Oh!*, 580.
 heien, inf., *to revere*, 459, 510,
 1019, 1041; heie, 1 pers. sing.
 pres., 1496; heieð, imp. pl.,
 1769; heie, opt. sing., 232;
 iheiet, pp., 2380, 2503.
 helle, *hell*, 336, 1191, 1797, 1906,
 2355.
 help, *help*, 184, 743, 2440.
 helpen, inf., *to help*, 1140, 2072;
 helpeð, 3 p. sing. pres., 473,
 1491, 2017.
 heo, *she, they*, 106, 365, etc.
 heold, heolden. *See* halden.

heom, *them*, 2073.
 heonne, *hence*, 1383, 2068.
 heonneward, *hence*, 1892.
 heore, *their*, 872.
 heoren, *theirs*, 252.
 heorte, *heart*, 86, 112, 817, 1495,
 1643, 1721, 1979, 2111, 2116,
 2133, 2301, 2373, 2435.
 heouene, *heaven*, 183, 338, 490,
 668, 696, 708, 711, 744, etc.;
 heuene, 364, 2461.
 heoueneliche, *heavenly, celestial*,
 889; heouenlich, 1320, 1767,
 1853; heouenliche, 228, 264,
 902, 1162, 1693, 1750, 1984,
 2149, 2397, 2413; heuenliche,
 1478.
 heoueneriche, *heavenly kingdom*,
 2440; heouenriche, 2137;
 heoueneriches, gen., 1627.
 heowes, plur. *of* *heo, *colour, hue*,
 1658.
 her, *here*, 544, 866, 1153, 1343,
 1971, 2214, 2403, 2427.
 her, *hair*, 1418, 2256.
 hercnede. *See* hercnin.
 hercnende. *See* hercnin.
 hercnin, inf., *to hear, listen to*,
 1720, 1976; hercnende, pres.
 part., 742; hercnede, pret.
 sing., 1945.
 herd, *herd, flock*, 83.
 herde, herden. *See* heren.
 heren, inf., *to hear*, 735, 1720,
 1976; hereð, 3 p. sing. pres.,
 248; herde, pret. sing., 488,
 2320; herden, pret. plur., 2058.
 hereð. *See* heren.
 herfore, *on that account*, 608.
 herhede, pret. sing., *from* *her-
 hien, *to harrow*, 336.
 herien, inf., *to glorify, celebrate*,
 146, 222, 353, 433, 459, 510,
 1041, 1497, 2016; herieð, 3 p.
 sing., 2046; herieð, imp. pl.,
 1769; ihered, pp., 2380; iheret,
 183, 2503.

- herieŝ. *See* herien.
 heritage, *heritage*, 83.
 herre. *See* heh.
 hersumin, inf., *to adore, reverence*, 146, 352; hersumeŝ, 3 p. pres. sing., 248; plur., 272.
 herto, *hereto, to it, on it*, 1129, 1990.
 herunge, *hearing*, 497.
 heste. *See* heh.
 het. *See* hat.
 hete, *hatred*, 2401.
 heterliche, *fiercely, cruelly*, 2077; heterliche, 776, 1212, 2239.
 heuen. *See* hef.
 heuene. *See* heouene.
 heuenliche. *See* heoueneliche.
 hider, *hither*, 542, 570, 2055; hidere, 796, 824.
 hiderto, *hitherto*, 446, 466.
 hihe, hihede. *See* hihin.
 hihendliche, *quickly*, 2110, 2300; hihentliche, 2396, 2439, 2448.
 hihin, inf., *to hasten, urge*, 411; hihe, pres. plur., 1381; hihede, pret. sing., 2171.
 him, *him*, 18, etc.
 hird, *family, household*, 81, 1853, 2413, 2426.
 hirdmen, plur. of *hirdmon, *servant, follower*, 2215.
 hire, *her*, 81, etc.
 his, *his*, 44, etc.; hise, 1245, 1954, 1988, 2235.
 hit, *it*, 149, etc.
 hoker, *mockery*, 777; hokeres, plur., 419.
 hokerest, 2 p. sing. pres., *from* *hokerien, *to mock*, 457.
 hokerliche, *mockingly*, 741.
 Homeres, gen. of *Homer, 850.
 hond, *hand*, 612, 757, 1779; honden, plur., 494, 498, 1358, 1408, 2324.
 hondhwele, *moment*, 1617, 1942.
 hondiwerce, *handiwork*, 1222.
 hopen, *to hope*, 1145.
 *houere, *hump*, 1063.
 houerede, *the humpbacked*, 1063.
 hu, *how, why*, 638, 785, 956, 959, 1087, 1140, 2043, 2044, 2047, 2434.
 hudde, pret. sing., *from* *huden, *to hide*, 910; ihud, pp., 2025; ihudd, 1182.
 hund, *hound, dog*, 1859; hundes, plur., 2013.
 hundret, *hundred*, 1810.
 hunger, *hunger*, 1687, 2401.
 hure, *much less*, 1722.
 hwa, *who*, 61, 342, 516, 1793, 2200.
 hwam, *whom*, 223, 281, 1216.
 hwas, *whose*, 680, 765, 1839, 2129.
 hwen, *when*, 389, 635, 995, 1006, 1137, 1935, 1963, 1970, 2392, 2394.
 hweoles, plur. of *hweol, *wheel*, 1919, 1928, 1941, 1991.
 hwer, *where*, 1741, 1743, 2486.
 hwerþurh, *by which*, 234.
 hwerto, *wherefore*, 2035.
 hwet, *what, thing*, 149, 151, 393, 1301, etc.
 hweŝer, *whether*, 2280.
 hwi, *why, how*, 507, 992, 998, 1135, 1139, 1264, 1381, 2083.
 hwider, *whither*, 1292, 2485.
 hwil, *whilst*, 308, 914, 1237, 1481, 1856, 1902, 2359.
 hwile, subs., *while*, 8, 12, 180, 514, 601, 764, 2153, 2368.
 hwite, *white*, 1564, 2459.
 hwuch, *which*, 157, 511, 580, 594, etc.; hwucche, 445, 1632, 1707, 1843.
 i, *for ich*, 1463. etc.
 i, 4, etc. *See* in.
 ibeden. *See* bidden.
 ibet. *See* beten.
 iboren, iborene. *See* beoren.
 ibroht. *See* bringen.

ibroken. *See* broekeð.
 iburiēt, pp. of *burien, to bury, 335.
 ich, *I*, 368, etc.
 ichosen. *See* cheosen.
 ichulle. *See* wule.
 icleopet. *See* cleopien.
 icnawen, inf., to know, experience, 1152; icneowen, pret. pl., 131.
 icnut, pp., from *cnutten, to knit, 1514.
 icoren, elected, 1611; icorene, 1288, 1394, 1596, 1635, 2143.
 ierunet, pp., from *crunen, to crown, 1412, 1466, 2492.
 icudd, icudde. *See* cuðen.
 icumene. *See* cumen.
 icuplet, pp., from *cuplen, to tie, couple, 1059.
 icuret. *See* curen.
 iewemet, pp., from *cwemen, to please, 528.
 idealet, pp., from *dealen, to deal, divide, 752.
 idel, idle, vain, void, 470, 863; idele, 391.
 idiht. *See* dihten.
 ido, idon. *See* don.
 idrahen. *See* drahen.
 idriuen. *See* driueð.
 Iesu, *Jesus*, 616, 646, 707, 874, 1611, 1623, 1771, 1881, 1893, 2345, 2378, 2446, 2499.
 ifallen. *See* fallen.
 ifat, ifatte. *See* fatte.
 iferen, plur. of *ifere, companion, fellow, 1366.
 ifestnet. *See* festnin.
 ifinden, inf., to find, 515; ifont, 3 p. pret. sing., 159.
 iflut, pp., from *fluttien, to travel, flit, 824.
 ifont. *See* ifinden.
 iforðet, pp., from *forðien, to effect, execute, 2246.
 ifostret, pp., from *fostrien, to rear, nourish, 95.

ifulhet, pp., from *fulhen, to baptize, 1382, 1395.
 igabbet, pp., from *gabbien, to mock, 2273.
 iȝarket. *See* ȝarkin.
 iginet, pp., from *ginnen, to devise, 1956.
 igreiðet, pp., from greiðen, to prepare, 1968.
 igremet. *See* gremest.
 igrette. *See* greten.
 ihalden. *See* halden.
 ihaten. *See* hat.
 ihaued, ihauet. *See* habben.
 iheiet. *See* heien.
 iher, iherde. *See* iheren.
 ihered. *See* herien.
 iheren, inf., to hear, listen to, 2012; iher, imp., 2396; iherde, pret. sing., 24, 140, 148.
 iheret. *See* herien.
 iholen, pp., from *helen, to conceal, 2026.
 ihud, ihudd. *See* hudde.
 ihwer, everywhere, 1713.
 ikelet, pp., from *kelen, to cool, 2259.
 iken, knowing, sensible, conscious, 423.
 ikepen, inf., to receive, 398.
 ilearet. *See* leare.
 ileaðet, pp., from *leaðien, to call, invite, 1895.
 iled. *See* leaden.
 ileid. *See* leggen.
 ileornet. *See* leornin.
 ileuen, inf., to believe, 342; pres. opt. plur., 1134.
 ileuet, pp., from *leuen, to allow, grant, 770, 1634, 1885, 2143, 2147, 2383.
 ilich, like to, 501; iliche, alike, 1663, 1668, 1678, 2478.
 iliche, body, figure, likeness, 1823.
 ilicnesse, likeness, 991.
 ilitet, pp., from *litin, to colour, 1422.

- ilke, *same, very*, 64, 210, 1095, 1199, 1405, 2283, 2453; *very moment*, 713, 789, 1852.
- iloset. *See* losede.
- imaket. *See* makien.
- imeane, *in common*, 1846.
- imenget, pp., *from* *mengen, *to mix, trouble*, 608, 1659, 2457.
- imong, *among*, 1568.
- i, in, in, 3, 4, 43, etc.; ine, *in the*, 1861.
- inempnet. *See* nempnede.
- inoch, *enough*, 346, 555, 972, 1036, 1278, 1499; inohe, 513, 1565.
- into, *in to*, 2342.
- inwarde, *inner, sincere*, 1797, 2435.
- inwið, *within*, 169, 609, 1643, 1903, 1918.
- iopenet, pp., *from* *openien, *to open*, 2422.
- iprud, pp., *from* *pruden, *to pride, here=to dress showily, proudly*, 1449.
- irn, *iron*, 2004; irne, dat., 2178.
- irnene, adj., *iron*, 1922, 1924, 2120.
- ischapen. *See* scheop.
- ischawet. *See* schawin.
- ischepene. *See* scheop.
- ischrud, ischrud. *See* schrudde.
- iseeledede, pp., *from* *seelin, *to seal*, 407.
- iseh, isehen. *See* iseon.
- iseid. *See* seggen.
- isend, isent. *See* sende.
- iseo. *See* iseon.
- iseon, inf., *to see, perceive*, 2304; isist, 2 sing. pres., 1073; iseh, pret. sing., 2203; isehen, pp., 907, 1002, 1730, 2042.
- iset. *See* setten.
- iseten. *See* sitten.
- isette. *See* setten.
- isihen. *See* sihen.
- isist. *See* iseon.
- islein, isleine. *See* sloh.
- isliket, pp., *from* *slikien, *to slick, polish*, 1660.
- ismaket, pp., *from* *smakien, *to smoothe*, 1660.
- *ismeðet, pp., *from* *smeðien, *to smoothe*, 1660.
- istenet, pp., *from* *stenen, *to lay out with stones, to pave*, 1656.
- istewet. *See* stew.
- istrenget. *See* strenge.
- isturet. *See* sturien.
- itake. *See* take.
- italde. *See* tellen.
- iteiet, pp., *from* *teien, *to tie*, 1186, 1285, 1513.
- itemet, pp., *from* *temien, *to tame*, 1285.
- itend, pp., *from* *tenden, *to kindle*, 154, 195.
- itimbret, pp., *from* *timbrien, *to build*, 1948.
- iturnd, iturnde. *See* turnen.
- ipolet. *See* polien.
- iwaket, pp., *from* *wakien, *to wake*, 1750.
- iwald. *See* wealt.
- iweddet, pp., *from* *weddien, *to wed, marry*, 1507, 2349, 2419.
- iwemmet, pp., *from* *wemmen, *to soil*, 1416.
- iwend. *See* wenden.
- iwenden, inf., *to turn, ply, bend*, 400.
- iwent, iwente. *See* wenden.
- iwiket, pp., *from* *wikien, *to dwell, stay*, 1740, 1743.
- iwrahte. *See* wurchen.
- iwreððet. *See* wreððen.
- iwundet, pp., *from* *wundien, *to wound*, 169.
- iwunet. *See* wunien.
- iwurðen, inf., *to become, get, be*, 791, 1745; pret. plur., 2454.
- iwurðget. *See* wurðgin.
- kasten, inf., *to cast, throw*, 945, 1547, 1964; kaste, pret. sing., 1351, 1977.
- Katerine, Katherine, 76, etc.

- keeccheš, 3 p. sing. pres., *from*
 *keechen, *to catch* 257; cahten,
 pret. plur., 1965.
 keiser, *emperor*, 197, 207, 306,
 377, etc.; keisere, 178; kei-
 seres, gen. sing., 3.
 kempe, *champion, victor*, 802, 813;
 kempene, gen. plur., 2428.
 ken, *knowing, sensible*, 2041, 2222.
 kenchen, *to laugh*, 2015.
 kene, *hardy, strong, sharp*, 171,
 1909; kenre, comp., 1929;
 kenest, sup., 814.
 keneliche, *boldly*, 2209.
 kenest. *See* kene.
 kenniš, pres. plur., *from* *kennen,
to profess, announce, 1338,
 2063.
 kenre. *See* kene.
 kepe, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *kepin,
to care, be anxious for, 2298;
 kepeš, 3 p. pres. sing., 2424;
 kepeš, pres. plur., 801; kepte,
 pret. sing., 96.
 kepeš, kepte. *See* kepe.
 kineburh, *royal palace, castle*, 1860.
 kinedom, *kingdom*, 1461, 1624,
 1844, 2149.
 kinemedē, *royal meed*, 398.
 kinemotes, plur. of kinemot, *royal*
council, 1954.
 kineriche, *kingdom*, 179, 409,
 2277.
 kinering, *royal ring*, 408.
 kineseotle, *throne*, 45, 722.
 kinewurde, *royal, noble*, 568, 758,
 1380.
 king, *king*, 27, 220, 363, 432,
 510, etc.; kinge, dat. sing.,
 1300, 1485; kinges, gen. sing.,
 73, 464, 2201, 2258; kinges,
 nom. pl., 224, 636; kinge, gen.
 pl., 2211.
 lac, *offering, present*, 54, 166,
 1872; lake, 62, 200, 1898;
 lakes, plur., 435.
 *ladlich, *loathly*, 2288.
 lahe, *law*, 430, 779, 963, 1340,
 2467.
 lahe, adj., *low, ancient*? 320.
 lahede, pret. sing., *from* *lahien,
to make a law, ordain, 1206.
 lahinde, pres. part., *from* *lahhen,
to laugh, 1545, 1677.
 lahtre, *laughter*, 2294.
 lake. *See* lac.
 lam, *clay*, 991, 2150.
 lan, *reward*, 805.
 lanhure, *at least*, 558, 774, 1073,
 1143.
 lare, *learning, doctrine*, 115, 384,
 468, 477, 865, 938, 1011, 1280.
 larspel, *doctrine*, 385.
 lastelese, *blameless*, 105.
 late, *lately, recently*, 901.
 lates, plur. of *late, *look, face*,
 105.
 lauerd, *Lord*, 228, 480, 633, 644,
 679, 707, etc.
 lead, leadde. *See* leaden.
 leaden, inf., *to lead, treat*, 627,
 2205; leadest, 2 p. sing. pres.,
 2213; leadeš, 3 p. sing. pres.,
 259, 478, 1038, 1753; lead,
 imp., 2278; leadde, pret. sing.,
 1580; ledde, 2318; ledden,
 pret. plur., 2219; iled, pp.,
 2202.
 leaf, *belief*, 115, 384; leaue, 386,
 832, 962.
 leaf, leafde. *See* leauen.
 leafful, *faithful*, 1038; leaffule,
 164.
 leapinde, pres. part., *from* *leapen,
to bound, 194; leap, pret. sing.,
 2207.
 leare, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *learen,
to teach, 2281; lerdē, pret.
 plur. 489; ilearet, pp., 388,
 859, 1307.
 lease, *loose, false*, 1009, 1762,
 1786.
 least, *last*, 41; leste, 587.

- leasten, inf., *to last*, 277; lesteð, 3 p. sing. pres., 1629; leasteð, 2164; leasteð, pres. plur., 1704; lestinde, pres. part., 2294.
 leasunges, plur. of *leasung, *leasung*, 344, 788.
 leaue, *leave, permission*, 2371.
 leauen, inf., *to leave, desert*, 428, 1621, 2242; leaueð, pres. plur., 1340, 1786; leaf, imp. sing., 1009; leaueð, imp. plur., 1761; lef, imp., *allow*, 1878; leafde, pret. sing., 479, 2500.
 lefdi, *lady*, 88, 104, etc.; lefdis, gen. sing., 2192; lefdis, plur., 1478, 2328, 2334.
 leggen, inf., *to lay, put*, 772, 779; leist, 2 p. sing. pres., 1872; leiden, pret. plur., 2220; ileid, pp., 1424.
 lei. *See* ligen.
 lei, *law, religion*, 164, 319, 830, 1814.
 lei, *fire, flame*, 195, 1401; leie, 672, 1360, 1406, 1651.
 leiden. *See* leggen.
 leie. *See* lei.
 leien. *See* ligen.
 leist. *See* leggen.
 leitede, pret. sing., *from* *leiten, *to flame, glow*, 672, 1583; leitinde, pres. part., 1361, 1651, 1681.
 lenen, *to bestow, lend*, 1084.
 lengre. *See* long.
 leof, *dear, beloved*, 2231; leoue, 771, 1040, 1366, 2128, 2418; leouere, comp., 1865, 2280; leouest, sup., 2420.
 leof, subs., *sweetheart*, 785, 1880.
 leofliche, *lovely*, 1542; *affectionately*, 2193.
 leofmon, *sweetheart*, 481, 679, 708, 875, 1846, 1894, 2106, 2305, 2348, 2418, 2445, 2498; leofmonnes, gen. sing., 1505.
 leohe, *den*, 1827.
 leome, *light, gleam*, 476, 668, 1582, 1681, 2376; leomen, plur., 902, 1046.
 leomen, plur., of *leom, *limb*, 251.
 leop. *See* leapinde.
 leor, *leer, face*, 313, 1422; leores, plur., 1420.
 leornede. *See* leornin.
 leornin, 110; leorni, 1 p. sing. pres., 940; leornede, pret. sing., 831; ileornet, pp., 386.
 leose. *See* leosen.
 leosen, inf., *to lose*, 804, 996; leose, 1 p. sing. pres., 1879; leoseð, pres. plur., 1637.
 leoten, inf., *to let, cause, permit, value*, 2092, 2097, 2252; leten, 943, 1464; leoteð, pres. plur., 806; lete, pres. opt. sing., 774; let, pret. sing., 595, 812, 1920, 1932; lette, 354, 791; letten, pret. plur., 2329.
 leoue, leouere, leouest. *See* leof.
 leoðien, *to slacken*, 1519.
 leowsin, *to loosen*, 1519.
 lerden. *See* leare.
 lesse. *See* lutel.
 lesseð, pres. plur., *from* *lessen, *to diminish*, 1703.
 leste. *See* least.
 leste, conj., *lest*, 2354.
 lesten, *to give*, 1790.
 lesteð, lestinde. *See* leasten.
 let. *See* leoten.
 leue. *See* leuen.
 leuen, inf., *to believe*, 326, 1747, 1761; leue, 1 p. sing. pres., 937, 1506, 2107; leueð, pres. plur., 873, 951, 1785; lef, imp. sing., 1073; lefde, pret. sing., 429.
 libben, inf., *to live*, 706, 1872, 1878, 2163, 2230, 2275, 2282; liueð, 3 p. sing. pres., 1754; liuiende, pres. part., 1220, 1518, 1873.

lich, *body*, 1542; liches, plur., 1045.

licome, *corpse, body*, 213, 2192, 2202, 2219, 2408; licomes, plur., 2253.

licomliche, *bodily*, 42.

lif, *life, joy*, 474, 478, 885, 894, 1046, 1085, 1117, 1376, 1520, 1633, 1636, 1694, 1880, 1884, 2151, 2164, 2292, 2348, 2356, 2376, 2408, 2421, 2445, 2500; liue, dat., 251, 1214, 1753, 2360; liues, gen. sing., 706.

liffule, *full of life, life-giving*, 832, 865.

lifleouie, plur. of *lifleoui? *life-long or true lover?* 1674.

liflese, *lifeless*, 894, 1045.

liggen, inf., *to lie, belong, become*, 2254; lið, 3 p. sing. pres., 778; liggeð, pres. plur., 2357; lei, pret. sing., 28; leien, pret. plur., 1420.

liht, subs., *light*, 1582, 1680.

liht. See lihteð.

lihte, adj., *light, frivolous*, 106.

lihten, *to kindle*, 1400.

lihteð, 3 p. sing., *to alight, descend*, 1773; lihte, pres. opt., 775; liht, imp., 1011; lihtinde, pres. part., 667; lihte, pret. sing., 901; lihten, pret. plur., 2461.

lihtliche, *lightly*, 943, 1544, 2095.

lihtliche, adj. *common, usual*, 1313.

lilie, *lily*, 1423.

limeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from *limen, to lime, glue*, 1774.

limpeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from *limpen, to belong, tend*, 470.

linneð, 3 p. pres. sing., *from *linnen, to cease*, 1702.

linnunge, *end, ceasing*, 1679; linunge, 2165.

listo, *design, craft*, 1233, 1516.

lið. See liggen.

liðerede, pret. sing., *from *liðe-rien, to foam, froth*, 1543.

liue, liues. See lif.

liueð, liuiende. See libben.

liunes, gen. plur., of *liun, *lion*, 1827.

lo, lo! *look! behold!* 98, 1843, 2425; low, 847, 1207, 2421; lowr, 2214, 2403.

loke. See lokin.

lokede, pret. sing., *from *loken, to lock, resolve, determine*, 1206.

lokin, inf., *to look, consider*, 1585; loke, imp. sing., 2279; lokede, pret. sing., 790, 1970, 2319.

lond, *land, country*, 49, 518, 586, 1693, 2148.

long, *long*, 436, 517; longe, 1372, 1741, 1798, 2275; lengre, comp., 809, 1761, 2278.

longede. See longeð.

longeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from *longien, to long for, desire*, 1892; longede, pret. sing., 1556.

losede, pret. sing., *from *losien, to lose*, 1117; iloset, pp., 2019.

low. See lo.

lowinge, *lowing*, 143.

lowr. See lo.

lude, *loud*, 2033; ludere, dat., 206.

ludinge, *noise*, 144, 2320.

lufsum, *lovely*, 313; lufsume, 104, 1419, 2305.

lufte, dat., *from *luft, air*, 2093.

luftfueles, plur. of *luftfuhel, *bird of the air*, 2245.

luken, *to draw, pull, tear*, 2097.

*lungunge, *longing? desire?* 1679. *Perhaps miswritten from linnunge, end, ceasing.*

lure, *loss*, 804; luren, plur., 1635.

luste, pret. sing., *from *lusten, to desire*, 1576.

lusti, *merry*, 1678.

lustnen. See lustnin.

lustnin, *to hear, listen to*, 784, 1747; lustnen, 110.

lut, *few, little*, 35; lute, dat., 2153.

- lutede, pret. sing., *from* *lutien, *to be hidden*, 1828.
- lutel, *little*, 354, 806, 1895, 2148; lutle, 2152, 2482; lesse, comp., 1550.
- lušer, *rude, cruel, relentless*, 558, 1234, 1517; lušere, 900.
- luteš, pres. plur., *from* *luten, *to bow*, 1764.
- lutle. *See* lutel.
- luue, *love*, 557, 632, 1377, 1505, 1520, 1637, 1772, 2107, 2129, 2347, 2391, 2438.
- luuede. *See* luuien.
- luuerunes, plur. of *luuerun, *love talk*, 109.
- luuien, inf., *to love*, 430; luueš, 3 p. sing. pres., 228; luuieš, pres. plur., 951, 1725; luuede, pret. sing., 106, 831, 999.
- ma. *See* muche.
- madschipe. *See* medschipe.
- mahe, mahen, maht, mahte, mah-ten, mahtu. *See* mei and mihte.
- makede, makest, maket, makeš. *See* makien.
- makien, inf., *to make*, 265, 416, 582, 1026, 1464, 2340; makest, 2 p. sing., 1487; makeš, 3 p. sing., 260, 297, 2037; makieš, pres. plur., 500; makede, pret. sing., 481, 990, 1207; maket, pp. 1074; imaket, 492, 2267.
- makieš. *See* makien.
- man, *connexion, communion*, 332.
- marbrestan, *marble stone*, 1479.
- mare. *See* muche.
- marhen, *morrow, morning*, 603, 647, 721, 1861, 2199.
- Marie, *Mary*, 331.
- martir, *martyr*, 2186, 2197; martirs, gen. pl., 2253.
- martirdom, *martyrdom*, 695, 1410.
- mate, *done, vanquished*, 1989.
- maumez, plur. of *maumet, *idol*, 59, 202, 265, 434, 455, 492, 1762, 2069; maumetes, gen. plur., 142.
- Maxence, noun pr., 1, 10, 15, 24, etc.
- me, *Now! Why! but*, 325, 589, 1274.
- me, *one (they, you)*, 238, 567, 626, 719, 1176, 1405, 1751, 1752, 2012, 2130, 2199, 2204, 2485.
- mealde. *See* meale.
- meale, inf., *to speak*, 1722; mealde, pret. sing., 1238, 1241.
- meanen, *to moan, mean, think*, 1236, 2313.
- meast. *See* muche.
- mede, *meed, reward*, 415, 2350, 2379; meden, plur., 38, 758, 889, 1632.
- medin, *to reward*, 414.
- medliche, *madly*, 2083.
- medschipe, *madness*, 267, 325, 2037; madschipe, 236.
- mei, 1 and 3 p. sing. pres., of *muhen, *to may, can, be able of*, 225, 567, 1140, 1175, 1501, 1503, 1516, 1718, 1775, 2406, 2407, 2474; maht, 2 p., 768, 2274; mahtu=maht þu, 1494; mahen, pres. plur., 361, 756, 1672, 2071; mahe, opt. sing., 965, 966, 1012, 1891, 2304; mahte, pret. sing., 123, 176, 555, etc.; mihte, 1080; mahten, pret. plur., 293, 418, 1216, 1584, 1698.
- meiden, *maiden*, 65, 77, etc.; meidenes, gen. sing., 909, 1314, 2063; meidenes, plur., 2326; meidnes, 705, 1565, 1831, 2334, 2414; meidene, gen. plur., 2351, 2379, 2425.
- meiful, *powerful*, 1094, 2043.
- meistren, inf., *to master*, 590, 1273; mestreš, 3 p. sing., 549; mestre, imp., 657
- meistres, plur., of *meister, *master*, 119, 446, 467, 534, 737, 753.

meistrie, *mastery*, 133.
 meiṣhad, *maidenhood*, 137, 1508, 2459.
 mel, *meal*, 1819.
 men. *See* mon.
 menesse, *human nature*, 985, 1115, 1132.
 menske, *glory*, 134.
 menske, imp., *from* *mensken, *to dignify*, 1983.
 meoke, *meek*, 103, 1272.
 meokelec, *meekness*, 1233.
 mereminnes, gen. sing., *of* *mereminne, *mermaid*, 1490.
 merreṣ, pres. plur., *from* *merren, *to mar, destroy*, 1763.
 mest. *See* muche.
 mete, *meat, eatables*, 1819.
 mi, *my, mine*, 647, etc.; min, 1495, etc.; mine, 575, etc.
 Michaël, 709.
 mid, *with*, 105, 125, etc.; mit, 662, etc.
 midalle, *too, in addition, withal*, 1831. *See* wiṣalle.
 midniht, *midnight*, 1733.
 mihte, subs., *might, power*, 656, 1015, 1049, 1271, 1982; mahte, 648; mihtes, plur. 1330, 2084.
 mihti, *mighty, powerful*, 1442, 2043.
 milc, *milk*, 2457.
 milce, *mercy*, 295, 1375.
 milce, imp., *from* *milcien, *to be gracious*, 2386.
 milde, *mild*, 103, 1375, 2378.
 min, mine. *See* mi.
 miracle, *miracle*, 1415; miracles, plur., 1074.
 misbileau, *unbelief*, 348, 773, 2361.
 misdude, pret. sing., *from* *misdon, *to transgress*, 1201.
 misferden, pret. plur., *from* *misfearen, *to go wrong*, 93.
 misliche, *various, divers*, 38, 269, 436, 988, 1658.

misnome, pret. opt. sing., *from* *misneomen, *to mistake*, 454.
 misseist, 2 p. sing. pres., *from* *misseggen, *to slander*, 456.
 missen, *to fail, miss*, 653.
 mispunchēṣ, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *mispunchen, *to seem wrong*, 981.
 mit. *See* mid.
 mix, *dirt=dirty, vile*, 200, 2069.
 mod, *mood, mind, courage*, 609, 2135, 2327.
 moder, *mother*, 930.
 moderburh, *capital, principal town*, 46.
 moderless, *motherless*, 28.
 modi, *hardy, brave*, 417, 724, 738; modie, 119; modgeste, sup., 1240.
 mon, *man*, 237, 323, 352, etc.; monnes, gen. sing., 235, 332, 494, 1001, etc.; men, plur., 33, 144, 258, 260, etc.; monne, gen. plur., 450, 2022.
 moncun, *mankind*, 1194.
 mondream, *joy of human life*, 2019.
 mone, *moon*, 270, 351.
 moneṣ, *month*, 1414, 2183, 2494.
 monhad, *the being a man, humanity*, 985.
 monie, *many*, 87, 582, 697, 737, 1563, 1697, 1830, 1850, 2053, 2267, 2322.
 monlich, *human*, 1317.
 monne. *See* mon.
 most. *See* mot.
 mot, *argument, reasoning, moot, assembly*, 548, 590, 1271, 1314, 1318, 1319, 2425; motes, plur., 850.
 mot, 1 p., *to must, may*, 1896; most, 2 p., 1869; moten, pres. plur., 501, 653; moste, pret. sing., 1387, 1553.
 motede. *See* motin.
 moten. *See* mot.

moteres, plur. of *motere, *mooter*, *disputator*, 724.

notes. *See* mot.

motestu, moteŝ, moti. *See* motin.

motild, *female disputator*, 396, 417.

motin, inf., *to moot, argue*, 588, 754; moti, 1 p. pres. sing., 760; motestu = motest þu, 2 p., 2083; moteŝ, 3 p., 1316; motede, pret. sing., 1238.

Moyŝes, *Moses*, 2466.

muče, *much*, 227, 413, 989, 1345, 2061; mučel, *much, great*, 456, 1415; mučele, *great (much)*, 37, 235, 656, 1014, 1239, 1330, 2085; ma, comp., *more*, 1811; mare, 70, 236, 267, 550, 898, 1020, 1239, 1348, 1463, 1550, 1668, 1704, 2027, 2104, 2105, 2109, 2159, 2477; meast, sup., *most, greatest*, 813, 816, 1281, 1889, 2276, 2326; mest, 537; meast, *almost*, 29.

munne. *See* munnen.

munnen, inf., *to say, mention, recount*, 1699, 2474; munne, 1 p. pres. sing., 715, 1196; munnest, 2 p. 971; munneŝ, pres. plur., 2389, 2432.

munt, *mountain*, 2465.

murhŝe, *mirth, joy*, 1760, 2274, 2350; murŝe, 1411; murhŝen, plur., 1697, 2159; murhŝes, 2186.

murie, *merry, joyful*, 314, 705, 1487.

muŝ, *mouth*, 192, 314, 495, 647, 686, 1486, 1699, 1722, 2474.

na, *no, none*, 225, 234, etc.; nan, 118, 123, 624, etc.; nane, 106, 107, etc.; nanes, gen., 974, 1070, 1106, 1163, 1235, 1912.

nabbe, 1 p. pres. sing., *from* *nabben, *to be in want of, not to have*, 1748; nauest, 2 p.,

751; naueŝ, 3 p., 274; nabbe, pres. plur., 1266; naue, imp., 782; nefde, pret. sing., 665, 1246, 2415.

nai, *Nay!* 776, 821, 2287.

nakede, *the naked*, 102.

nalde. *See* nullich.

nan, nane. *See* na.

nat, 1 p., *from* *nuten, *to ignore, not to know*, 443, 511; nuste, pret. sing., 149, 1535, 2313; nusten, pret. plur., 1802.

naue. *See* nabbe.

nawiht, *nothing, not*, 283, 473, 475, 607, 675, 747, 759, 762, etc.; nawit, 1533.

nawt, *not*, 85, 346, 751, 768, 778, etc.

ne, *not, nor*, 109, etc.

neauer, *never*, 124, 257, 279, etc.; neuer, 1254.

nebschaft, *face*, 447, 1446; nebscheft, 913.

nede (inst. of *ned, *necessity*), *needs*, 1869.

nefde. *See* nabbe.

neh, *nigh, near*, 2094.

neiles, plur. of *neil, *nail*, 2120.

nempnede, pret. sing., *from* *nempnen, *to name, call*, 1329; inempnet, pp., 76.

neode, *desire, want, need*, 9, 2395.

neodeles, *unconstrained(ly)*, 1023, 1170.

neodfule, *the needy*, 102.

neomen, inf., *to take, assume*, 1001, 1179, 2117, 2407; neome, pres.

opt. sing., 2407; nom, pret. sing., 908, 1023, 1170, 1817; nomen, pret. plur., 1433.

neowe, *new*, 2106.

nere, neren, nes. *See* nis.

neuer. *See* neauer.

niht, *night*, 1432, 1580, 1682, 1748, 1741, 2189, 2250; nihtes, gen., 1077.

nis, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *ne

beon, *not to be*, 234, 280, 299, etc.; nes, pret. ind. sing., 118, 123, 304, etc.; nere, pret. opt. sing., 898, 1050, 1082, 1086, 1278, 1310; neren, pret. ind. plur., 2250; pret. opt. plur., 317. no, *not*, 1939, 2232.

noht, *nothing*, 343, 1714, 2103.

nohwer, *nowhere*, 1715; nower, 2094; nowhwer, 1306.

nom. *See* neomen.

nome, *name*, 443, 461, 651, 660, 680, 765, 942, 1040, 1076, 1329, 1380, 1431, 1472, 1839, 1983; nomen, plur., 269.

nomecuðe, *renowned*, 537; nome-cuðest, comp., 815.

nomeliche, *especially*, 21.

nomen. *See* neomen.

nomen. *See* nome.

noðeles, *not the less, in spite of all*, 1869.

Nouembres, gen. of *Notiembre*, *November*, 1414, 2183, 2494.

nowcin, *misery?* 1171, 1683, 1840, 2395.

nower. *See* nohwer.

nowðer, *neither*, 230, 361, 443, 509, 621, 1164, 1176, 1416, 1503, 1517, 1549, 1685, 1686, 1687, 1703, 2071.

nu, *now*, 393, 503, 514, 795, 818, 823, 968, 977, 1078, 1260, etc.

nullich=*nulle ich*, 1 pres. sing., from *nullen, *not to will*, 509; nult, 2 p., 1070, 1874, 2232; nultu=*nult þu*, 1018; nule, 3 p., 763, 1939; nullen, pres. opt. (ind. ?) plur., 1324; nalde, pret. sing., 108, 428, 557, 1975, 2252, 2336, 2339.

nurð, *noise*, 140.

nuste, nusten. *See* nat.

nuðe, *now*, 2089.

O, interj., *O!* 1366.

o. *See* on.

of, *of, from*, 79, etc.

*ofcumen, pp., from *ofcumen, *to conquer?* 560.

ofdred, pp., from *ofdreden, *to fear*, 675.

*ofdutet, pp., from *ofduten, *to doubt*, 2430.

ofearned, pp., from *ofearnen, *to earn, deserve*, 2223.

offearet, pp., from *offearen, *to frighten*, 90, 670, 1244.

offrin, *to offer*, 1898; offrede, pret. sing., 1899.

offruht, pp., from *offurhten, *to frighten*, 670, 1244, 1615.

ofhungret, pp., from *ofhungren, *to hunger, famish?* 1030.

ofseruin, *to deserve*, 2137.

ofte, *often*, 120; oftest, sup., 113.

ofþunchunge, *displeasure*, 1688.

oht, *good, worthy, genuine*, 1712, 1716.

oht, *ought, anything*, 1913.

olhnunge, *flattery*, 1492.

on, *on, in*, 2, 20, etc.; o, 41, 45, etc.

on, 1 p. sing. pres., from *unnen, *not to grudge, to allow*, 1744; unnen, pres. plur., 2344.

onden, acc. sing. ? of *onde, *envy*, 891.

onont, *concerning, in regard to, about*, 455, 1096, 1109, 1115, 1118, 1120, 1159, 1177, 2496.

onsware, *answer*, 978; onswere, 357.

onswerede. *See* onswerien.

onswerien, inf., *to answer*, 812; onswerie, 1 p., 1711; onswerie, pres. opt. sing., 516; onswerede, pret. sing., 460, 543, 577, 953, 1129, 1296, 1391, 1483, 1639, 1877.

ontende, pret. sing., from *ontenden, *to kindle*, 1404.

open, *open*, 1128.

orcoast, *wealth*, 1709.

- oðer, *or*, 93, 112, etc.
 oðer, *other, others*, 101, 274, 479, 489, 739, 790, 803, etc.; oðere, 983, 1127, 1675, 1776; oðre, 30, 1051, 1138, 1140, 1141, 1297, 1365, 1475, 1962, 1966, 2082, 2224, 2229.
 ouer, *over*, 2030.
 oueral, *everywhere, all over*, 727, 1470, 1778, 2017, 2308.
 ouercom. *See* ouercumen.
 ouercumen, *inf.*, *to overcome*, 418, 803, 959, 967; ouercom, *pret. sing.*, 1125, 1231; ouercumen, *pp.*, 15, 132, 560.
 ouergeað, 3 *p. sing. pres.*, *from* *ouergan, *to traverse, go over, pass over*, 1883; ouergan, *pp.*, 519.
 ow, *you, yours*, 275, 276, 346, etc.
 ower, *your, of you, yours*, 344, 570, 642, 805, 807, 830, etc.
 paraises, *gen. of* *parais, *Paradise*, 893.
 passiun, *passion*, 1157, 2390, 2433.
 pel, *pall*, 1450.
 Philistiones, *gen. of* *Philistion, *Philistio*, 854.
 pikes, *plur. of* *pic, *pike, spike*, 1923, 1929.
 pilgrimes, *plur. of* *pilegrim, *pilgrim*, 2470.
 pine, *pain*, 1157, 1912, 2139, 2152, 2156, 2390; pinen, *plur.*, 42, 1031, 1616, 2493.
 pineð, 3 *p. sing. pres.*, *from* *pinen, *to torment*, 1807.
 pinfule, *tormenting*, 1955.
 place, *place, presence*, 1309.
 Platunes, *gen. of* *Platun, *Plato*, 855.
 pleiende, *pres. part.*, *from* *pleien, *to play*, 1676.
 plohen, *plur. of* *plohe, *play*, 106.
 Porphire, *Porphirius*, 1558, 1578, 1640, etc.
 poure, *poor*, 50, 63.
 preones, *plur. of* *preon, *nail, point*, 1924.
 prince, *prince, chief*, 579, 1559.
 prophete, *prophet*, 1826.
 prud, *proud*, 1310; prude, 579.
 prudeliche, *proudly, gorgeously*, 578, 1448.
 puisun, *poison*, 2312.
 purple, *purple*, 1450.
 quoð. *See* cweðe.
 rake, *maw, jaws*, 917, 1138.
 raketeheh, *plur. of* *raketeie, *chain*, 917.
 raðe, *quickly, readily*, 555, 972.
 rawe, *row, line*, 1930.
 read, *advice, counsel, regard*, 6, 580, 1370, 1453, 1945, 1975.
 reade, *adj.*, *red*, 1360, 1421.
 readesmen, *plur. of* *readesmon, *counsellor*, 574.
 readliche, *readily*, 1409.
 ream, *weeping, lamentation*, 2293; reames, *pl.* 162.
 reauin, *to rob, bereave*, 1222.
 refschiþe, *government*, 11.
 reisun, *account*, 2216.
 remen, *to weep, lament*, 2339.
 renden, *inf.*, *to rend, lacerate*, 2121.
 reoðeren, *plur. of* *reoðer, *rother, ox*, 60.
 reowfule, *rueful*, 162.
 reowðe, *sorrow*, 2340.
 reowðfulliche, *piteously*, 1974.
 reste, *rest*, 2154, 2341.
 resteð, 3 *p. sing. pres.*, *from* *resten, *to rest*, 2481.
 reuen, *plur. of* *reue, *prefect*, 1950.
 riche, *subs.*, *kingdom*, 47, 1792, 2155, 2342.
 riche, *rich, noble*, 50, 60, 2328.
 riht, *right*, 873, 950, 961, 1079, 2103; rihte, 769, 1509, 1638, 2438, 2489.

rihtbileafde, *those who have the true faith, true believers*, 2377.

rihte, pret. sing., *from* *rihten, *to direct, correct*, 1751.

rihtwise, *righteous*, 1229.

rihtwisliche, *honestly, fairly*, 752.

ring, *ring*, 1508.

rinneð. *See* eornen.

riue, *abundantly*, 2478.

rixleð, pres. plur., *from* *rixlien, *to rule*, 224.

rixlinge, *reign*, 44.

rode, *cross, road*, 193, 926, 1136, 1158, 1198, 1334, 1901, 2500.

Rome, *Rome*, 4, 11, 28.

ron. *See* eornen.

ronnes, plur. of *ron, *love poem*, 108.

rose, *rose*, 1423.

roten, plur. of *rote, *root*, 2122.

rudie, *ruddy*, 1421.

run, *secret, mystery*, 1333; runes, plur., 575.

rune, *stream, flow, course*, 1398, 1934, 2005.

ruten, pret. plur., *from* *ruten, *to dart*, 2005.

sahen, plur. of *sahe, *expression, saying*, 358, 382, 646.

sake, *sake*, 98.

saluin, *to save*, 1025.

sar, *sore, ache*, 1164, 1685.

sare, adv., *sore, bitterly*, 2238, 2325.

sari, *sad*, 2327.

Sathanesses, gen. of *Sathanes, *Satan*, 2210.

sauure, *savoury, delicious*, 1527.

sawle, *soul*, 213, 2409; sawlen, plur., 291.

schad, *faculty of distinction*, 238.

schafte, *creature, product*, 237, 366, 882; schaftes, plur., 249.

schal, 1, 3 p., *to owe, be obliged, (shall, ought) to be or have to (do)*, 241, 339, 402, etc.; sehalt, 2 p., 396, 515, 783, 1457, 1476, 1613,

1618, 2230, 2276; schaltu=shalt þu, 2094, 2112; schulen, pres. plur., 277, 394, 574, 638, 689, 697, 784, 810, etc.; schullen, 2358; schuldest, 2 p. pret. sing., 468, 1019; schulde, 3 p. 252, 604, 896, 992, 1439, 1448, 2257, 2365; schulden, pret. plur., 288, 621.

schape, *shape, figure*, 448, 1447.

scharp, *sharp*, 2234; scharpe, 1925.

schaw, schawde, schaweð. *See* schawin.

schawin, inf., *to show*, 2090;

schaweð, 3 p. sing. pres., 449;

schawið, pres. plur., 1349;

schaw, imp., 506; schawde,

pret. sing., 883, 913, 1036,

1331, 1834; ischawet, pp., 1561.

schelde, dat. of *scheld, *shield*, 809.

schendlac, *shame, disgrace*, 1278.

schene, *beautiful, bright*, 447, 1446; schenre, comp., 1646.

scheome, *shame*, 91, 349, 1279, 1281; schome, 808.

scheop, pret. sing., *from* *scheapen, *to create, shape*, 217, 303;

schop, 238; ischapen, pp., 219;

ischapene, pp., 1783.

scheoteð, imp. plur., *from* *scheoten, *to shoot*, 811.

schep, plur. of *schep, *sheep*, 60.

schininde, pres. part., *from* *schinen, *to shine*, 1646.

schir, *sheer, mere*, 1279.

schome. *See* scheome.

schop. *See* scheop.

schrenchte, pret. sing., *from* *schrenchen, *to cheat*, 1184.

schrud, *clothing, shroud*, 912.

schrudde, pret. sing., *from* *schruden, *to shroud*, 910; ischrud, pp., 1449; ischrud, 1182.

schulde, schulden, schuldest, schulen, schullen. *See* schal.

schuldi, *guilty*, 2264.

- schunien, inf., *to refuse, shun*, 810;
 schunie, pres. opt. sing., 1794.
 schuppent, *creator*, 253, 302, 366,
 882, 911.
 schurgen, plur. of *schurge, *scourge*,
 1540.
 scolmeistres, plur. of *scolmeister,
schoolmaster, 521.
 se. *See swa*.
 sea, *sea*, 1782.
 segge. *See seggen*.
 seggen, inf., *to say*, 327, 638, 712,
 749, 826, 877, 1315, 1535,
 2263, 2471; segge, 1 p. sing.
 pres., 868, 1008, 1079, 1090,
 1463, 1718; seist, 2 p. sing.
 pres., 391, 503, 954, 1080;
 seið, 3 p. sing. pres., 486,
 553; seggeð, pres. plur., 321,
 349; sei, imp., 1350, 2210;
 seide, 1, 3 p. pret. sing., 153,
 355, 442, 460, 482, 603, etc.;
 seidest, 2 p. pret. sing., 634;
 seiden, pret. plur., 532; iseid,
 pp., 404, 665, 1384, 1993, 2362,
 2415.
 seh. *See seon*.
 seheliche, *visible*, 249.
 sei. *See seggen*.
 sehene, pp., *visible*, 1784.
 seide, seist, seið. *See seggen*.
 selhðen, plur. of *selhðe, *joy*,
bliss, 893.
 seli, *blissful*, 1410, 1453.
 semlich, *seemly, pleasant*, 1447;
 semliche, 448.
 sende, 1 p. sing. pres., of *senden
to send, 2409; sent, 3 p. pres.
 sing., 1528; sende, pret. sing.,
 84, 150, 407; isend, pp., 711;
 isent, 1574.
 seolf, *self*, 58, 96, 1083, 1091,
 1095, 1567, 1829, 1835, 1901,
 2378; seoluen, 130, 362, 634,
 1024, 1112, 1126, 1139, 1144,
 1173, 1291, 1454, 1835, 2072,
 2353.
 seoluer, *silver*, 268, 493, 1654.
 seon, inf., *to see*, 1557, 1718,
 2056, 2289; seh, pret. sing.,
 170, 476, 1562, 1911, 2321;
 sehen, pret. plur., 278, 1598,
 2057. *See iseon*.
 seoðen, *then, afterwards*, 397;
 seoððen, 827, 1332.
 seouen, *seven*, 1665.
 seruið, pres. plur., *from* *seruin,
to serve, 2073.
 set, seten. *See sitten*.
 setten, inf., *to set, put*, 825, 1468;
 sete, imp., 646; sette, pret.
 sing., 1571; iset, pp., 114, 284,
 383, 1972, 2411; isette, 359,
 1758.
 sihen, *to go, walk, run*, 2321;
 sihinde, pres. part., 2417;
 isihen, pp., 2055.
 sihðe, *sight, vision*, 496, 904,
 1607, 2288; sihðen, plur.,
 1731.
 sikel, *sickle*, 825.
 siker, *sure, certain*, 25, 1007;
 sikere, 1217.
 singinde, pres. part. of *singen,
to sing, 1673.
 siðe, *times (as in four, five, times)*,
 793, 1287; siðes, 1665.
 sitten, *to sit*, 1562; set, pret.
 sing., 45, 138, 722; seten, pret.
 plur., 1253, 2008; iseten, pp.,
 1597.
 sker, adv., *clean, quite, entirely*, 867.
 slaht, *slaughter*, 198.
 slakie, 1 p. sing. pres., *from*
 *slakien, *to slack, relax*, 2136.
 slec, *mud*, 1662.
 slepten, pret. plur., *from* *slepen,
to sleep, 1426.
 sloh, *slough*, 1662.
 sloh, pret. sing., *from* *slean, *to*
slay, 1126; islein, pp., 199;
 isleine, 2009.
 smeal, *smell*, 1588; smelle, gen.
 plur., 617.

smealleð, 3 pers. sing. pres. *from* *smellen, *to smell*, 1526; smellinde, pres. part., 2195.
 smeate, *pure, purified*, 1655.
 smecheð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *smecchen, *to taste*, 1526.
 smelle. *See* smeal.
 smellinde. *See* smealleð.
 smertliche, *smartly, sharply*, 1990.
 smeðest, sup. of *smeðe, *smooth*, 1655, 1661.
 smeðeliche, *smoothly, lightly*, 356.
 smirede, pret. sing., *from* *smirien, *to smear, anoint*, 2193; smireden, pret. plur., 1600.
 smirkinde, pres. part., *from* *smirien, *to smirk, smile*, 356, 1484.
 smirles, *ointment*, 1599, 2194.
 smit, imp., *from* *smiten, *to smite*, 1990.
 snawhwhite, *snow-white*, 2443.
 softe, *soft, mild*, 616, 1528.
 sohte, pret. sing., *from* *sechen, *to seek*, 975.
 somet, *together*, 532, 931, 974, 1409, 1673, 1676, 1677, 2059.
 sonde, *messenger*, 152, 431, 603.
 sondesmon, *messenger*, 517.
 sone, *soon*, 107, 476, 700, 829, 892, 1328, 1541, 1591, 1628, 1876, 1946, 2057, 2114, 2157, 2262.
 songses, plur. of *song, *song*, 107.
 sorhe, *sorrow*, 1165, 1685.
 sorhful, *sorrowful*, 2327.
 soð, *sooth, true, right*, 871, 924, 929, 930, 932, 955, 958, 970, 1002, 1005, etc.; soðe, 153, 189, 477, 1108, 1522, 2237.
 sotliche, *foolishly*, 359.
 sotschipe, *folly*, 322; sotschipes, 1937.
 sotte, *foolish*, 107.
 spaken, plur. of *spake, *spoke*, 1921.
 sparieð, pres. plur., *from* *sparien, *to spare*, 807.

spec. *See* speoken.
 speche, *speech*, 451, 495, 807.
 spek. *See* speoken.
 spende, pret. sing., *from* *spenden, *to spend*, 101.
 speoken, inf., *to speak*, 1577, 2058; speokene, 312; spec, pret. sing., 1836; spek, 308.
 sprong, pret. sing., *from* *springen, *to spring*, 2456.
 sprung, *origin*, 320.
 sputin, *to argue, dispute*, 1308.
 stalewurðe, *steadfast, brave*, 702, 1612, 1841, 2168.
 stalle, dat. of *stal, *stand, post, station*, 683.
 stan, *stone*, 266, 1253; stanes, plur., 1657.
 stanene, *of stone, stony*, 2480.
 starliche, *mightily*, 717.
 starke, *strong*, 1925.
 steah. *See* stihen.
 steap, pret. sing., *from* *stapen, *to step, go*, 1852; step, 713.
 steape, *shining*, 307; steapre, comp., 1647.
 steoren, inf. *to steer, govern*, 362; steorede, pret. sing., 10.
 steorre, *star*, 1648; steorren, plur., 714.
 steortnaket, *stark-naked*, 1537.
 steðelfest, *constant, steadfast*, 71.
 steuene, *voice*, 206, 716, 1042, 1386, 1980, 2033, 2166, 2416, 2441.
 steuentið, pres. plur., *from* *steuerten, *to stop*, 1265.
 stew, imp., *from* *stewien, *to stow, stop, desert*, 374, 1529; istewet, pp. 658.
 stihen, inf., *to ascend*, 1012, 1613; steah, pret. sing., 338, 714, 1854.
 stille, *still, silent*, 180, 373, 658, 1253, 1265, 1641, 1980, 2023.
 stille, imp., *from* *stillen, *to stop*, v.a., 1530.

stod. *See* stonden.

stonden, inf., *to stand*, 1480;
stont, 3 p. sing. pres., 1481;
stondeð, pres. plur., 635; stond,
imp., 1841; stod, pret. sing.,
180, 197, 596, 716, 742, 2023;
stoden, pret. plur., 736, 1385,
2007.

storliche, *greatly*, 1268.

storuene, pp. *from* *steoruen, *to die*, 1043.

strahte. *See* streche.

stream, *stream*, 2479.

streche, imp. sing., *from* *strecchen,
to stretch, hold, 2233; strahte,
pret. sing., 2441.

strencðe. *See* strengðe.

strengen, *to fortify, strengthen*,
941; istrenget, pp., 717, 2167.

strengest. *See* stronge.

strengðe, *strength*, 649, 701,
1517; strence, 1014, 1234,
1269.

strete, *street*, 734, 1656.

strif, *strife, fight, quarrel*, 681,
701, 735, 751, 795, 940.

strikeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from*
*striken, *to run, rush*, 2479;
strikinde, pres. part., 732.

stronge, *strong*, 41, 1026; strengre,
comp., 2096; strengest, sup.,
733.

strupen, *to strip*, 1537.

stucchen, plur. of *stucche, *piece, fragment, stick*, 1992, 2006.

stude, *stead, place*, 3, 683,
2453.

studgi, pres. plur., *from* *studgin,
to stop, cease, 1264.

stunde, *time*, 1263.

sturede. *See* sturien.

sturien, inf., *to stir, move*, 361,
1267; sturede, pret. sing.,
2115; isturete, pp., 796.

stute, imp. sing., *from* *stutten,
to leave off, desist, 1529.

sulliche, *strange, mysterious*, 382.

sum, *some*, 303, 811, 1145; summe,
8, 37, etc.

sumdel, *somewhat, a little*, 669,
1448, 2331.

sumerlich, *summerlike*, 1663.

sumhwet, *something*, 506, 1295.

summe. *See* sum.

sundrin, *to separate, be separated, sundered*, 1776.

sune, *son*, 327, 615, 955, 1095,
1108, 1220, 1344, 1770, 2064,
2210.

sunful, *sinful*, 198.

sunne, *sin*, 91, 1172, 1195.

sunne, *sun*, 270, 351, 1666, 1782.

sutel, *plain, evident*, 322, 381,
1033.

sutelede. *See* suteleð.

suteleð, 3 pers. sing. pres., *to be shown, manifested, to show, manifest*, 1089; sutelede, pret. sing.,
1036, 1834.

suteliche, *manifestly*, 1332.

swa, *so, thus, when, as*, 154, 171, 628,
657, 665, 921, etc.; se, 49, etc.

swarf, pret. sing., *from* *sweoruen,
to float, wave, 2181.

sweord, *sword*, 2090, 2180, 2234,
2451; sweordes, gen. sing.,
2404.

sweouete, dat. of *sweouet,
slumber, 1427.

swerie, 1 p. sing. pres., *from*
*swerien, *to swear*, 2084.

swete, *sweet*, 616, 1525; swettre,
comp., 1691. *See* swote.

sweteliche, *sweetly*, 674.

*swetwil, *so sweet as you may wish*?, 1690.

swettre. *See* swete.

sweuen, *dream, swoon*, 1560.

swifte, *swift, transitory, short*,
2156.

swiftliche, *swiftly, quickly*, 690,
2442.

swike, pres. opt. sing., *from*
*swiken, *to stop*, 1937.

swinkes, gen. sing. of **swinc*,
labour, pain, 805.

swipte, pret. sing., from **swippen*,
to strike, 2452; swipten, pret.
plur., 2179.

swire, *neck*, 2091, 2233, 2443.

swiðe, *very, quickly, very much*,
much, 66, 121, 150, 307,
309, etc.; swiðere, comp., 311,
413; swiðest, sup., 733, 2076.

swote, *sweet*, 1588, 2195; swottre,
comp., 1691; swotest, sup., 617.
See swete.

swoteliche, *sweetly*, 1392, 1427,
1525. *See sweteliche*.

swuch, *suck*, 140, 385, 648, 667,
691, 1582, 1832, 1956, 1999,
2005; swucche, 128, 265, 374,
etc.

Synai, *Sinai*, 2465.

ta. *See pa*.

tac. *See take*.

tah. *See pah*.

tahtest, 2 p. pret. sing., from
**techen, to teach*, 602; tahte,
3 p. sing. pret., 1804.

take, inf., *to take, begin*, 818; tac,
imp., 1453; toc, pret. sing.,
480, 792, 1370, 1569; token,
pret. plur., 2160; itake, pp.,
1511.

taken, *token, sign*, 193.

talden. *See tellen*.

tale, *number*, 640, 1286, 2385.

talien, inf., *to speak, preach*,
speechify, 794, 818; taledē,
pret. sing., 1311.

tat. *See þet*.

tauelin, *to speak playingly*, 1247;
teueli, pres. opt. sing., 820.

te. *See þe*.

þi. *See þi*.

tear. *See þear*.

teares, plur. of **tear, tear*, 2329.

ter. *See þer*.

tellen, inf., *to tell, speak, count*,
1700; telleð, pres. plur., 89;
talde, pret. sing., 1311; talden,
pret. plur., 1701; italde, pp.,
1286.

temple, *temple*, 52, 142, 1479.

tene, *ten*, 793, 1287.

tenne. *See þenne*.

teon, inf., *to draw, pull*, 2098;
tuhen, pret. plur., 2175.

teone, *pain, grief*, 402, 623, 1354,
1503, 1795; teonen, plur., 1888.

teoneð, 3 p. sing., from **teonen*,
to grieve, 550.

terin. *See þerin*.

tes. *See þes*.

teschrapet, pret. sing., from **to-*
schrapien?, *to shave*?, *scrape*?,
1185.

tet. *See þet*.

teð, plur. of **toð, tooth*, 191,
1266.

teueli. *See tauelin*.

ti. *See þi*.

tidliche, *swiftly*, 1932.

time, *time, hour*, 2, 303, 304,
436, 1199, 2436, 2497.

timluker, comp. of **timlich, early*,
quick, 2086.

tine. *See þine*.

tint, *splinter, bit*, 1247.

tintreohē, *pain, torture*, 403, 623,
1504, 1796, 1948, 2131; tin-
treohen, plur., 41, 1888.

tis. *See þis*.

tittes, plur. of **titte, tit, teat*,
2098, 2119, 2175.

to, *to*, 7, 14, 56, etc.

tobreken, pret. plur., from **to-*
breoken, to break, tear in pieces,
2002; tobroken, pp. 1602.

tobursten, pret. plur., from **to-*
bersten, to burst asunder, 2002.

toc. *See take*.

todei, *to-day*, 1373, 2051, 2147.

todreauet, pp., from **todreauen*,
to disperse, 92.

todriuen, pp., from *todriuen, *to disperse*, 2050.

*toforen, *before, in the presence of*, 51.

togederes, *together*, 113, 989, 1659, 1774, 2236.

tojein, *against, contrary to*, 1241, 1962.

tojeines, *against*, 1149.

tohwīḡerin, pres. opt. pl., from *tohwīḡerin, *to whirl, bewhirl*, 1992; tohwīḡeret, pp., 1940.

token. *See take*.

toluken, *to tear in pieces*, 2092.

tom, *tame*, 1311.

torenden, *to rend in pieces*, 1973; torondin, 1974.

toswollen, pp., from *toswellen, *to swell to excess*, 840.

toward, *to, towards*, 411, 439, 744, 792, 1489, 1978, 2125, 2268, 2337; toward, 141, 1864.

tree, *wood, tree*, 266, 1186, 2004.

treondlin, *to roll, trickle*, 2329.

treowe, *true, right*, 72, 229, 698, 1039, 1377, 1378, 1429, 1804, 1986.

treoweliche, *truly*, 1511.

trukien, *to fail*, 403, 1796.

trusteḡ, pres. plur., *to trust*, 502; truste, pret. sing., 2191.

tu. *See þu*.

tukeḡ, 3 p. sing. pres., from *tukien, *to draw, pull*, 551.

tun, *town*, 52.

tunge, *tongue*, 192, 640, 819, 1246, 1267; tungen, plur., 1403, 1700.

turnde. *See turnen*.

turnen, inf., *to turn, go*, 697, 1504, 1851, 1931; turneḡ, pres. plur., 1342; turnde, pret. sing., 1312; turnden, pret. plur., 1428, 1957, 1959, 2059; iturnd, pp., 2132; iturnde, 1987.

turnes, plur. of *turn, *wile, artifice*, 851.

turneḡ. *See turnen*.

tus. *See þus*.

twa, *two*, 67, 995, 973, 987, 1810, 1870, 1957, 1960, 1963, 2227, 2454, 2455; tweien, 1515.

tweien. *See twa*.

twenti, *twenty*, 67, 2469.

twentuḡe, *twentieth*, 2182, 2495.

twoelf, *twelve*, 1551, 1824.

þa, *when, then, there*, 24, 404, etc.; ta, 1952, 2025; þe for þa, 562.

þah, *though*, 80, etc.; tah, 1275, 1323.

þe, *the*, 6, etc.; te, 134, etc.

þe. *See þa, þi*.

þe, *thee*, 208, etc.

þear. *See þer*.

þen, *when*, 563.

þen, acc. dat. of þe, *the, to the*, 116, etc.; þene, 1183, 1191, etc.

þen, *than*, 168, 237, 326, etc.; þene, 598.

þenche. *See þenchen*.

þenchen, inf., *to think*, 1721;

þencheḡ, 3 p. pres. sing., 1808;

þencheḡ, pres. plur., 848;

þenche, imp., 637; þohte, pret. sing., 136, 173.

þene. *See þen*.

þenne, *then*, 373, 426, 703, 774, etc.; tenne, 1018.

þeo, *those*, 92, 360, 500, 1650.

þeonne, *thence*, 18, 2202, 2468.

þeos, *this, these*, 103, 104, 354, etc.; þeose, 487.

þeotinde, pres. part., from *þeoten, *to cry, yell*, 161.

þer, *there*, 35, 51, etc.; ter, 159, etc.; þear, 8; tear, 23, etc.

þerf, 2 p. sing. pres., from *þuruen, *to need*, 1154, 1842.

þerin (terin), *therein*, 1652.

þerfore, *therefore*, 299.

þeronont, *in that respect*, 387.

þerto, *towards it*, 1997.

þertoward, *towards it*, 1473.

berupon, *thereupon*, 1936.
 pes, *this, these*, 228, etc.; tes, 1305.
 pes, gen. of *pe*, of *the*, 2045.
 pet (þ), *that, the*, 23, etc.; tet 1853, 1934; tat (*pat*), 1091, 1338, etc.
 pi, instr. of *pe*, *the, that, by the*, 82, etc.; ti, 2291, etc.; þe, 413, 2068; te 2291.
 pi, *thy, thine*, 313, etc.; ti, 314, etc.; þin, 109, etc.; þine, 620, etc.; tine, 2069.
 pider, *thither*, 1950, 2189.
 piderward, *thitherward*, 158; piderwardes, plur., 2030.
 pin, *pine*. See *pi*.
 þing, *thing*, 175, 225, etc.; þing, plur., 973, 999, 1783, 2040; þinges, 360, 370; þinge, gen. plur., 253, 911.
 þis, *this*, 24, etc.; tis, 1488.
 þisse, dat. of *þis*, *to this*, 2079.
 þisses, adverbial gen. of *þis*, in *this*, 1864.
 þoht, *thought*, 511.
 þohte. See *þenchen*.
 þole, *poled*, *poleden*. See *þolien*.
 þolemod, *long-suffering, mild*, 174; þolemode, 1801.
 þolie. See *þolien*.
 þolien, *to suffer, wait*, 1005, 1031, 1136, 2096; þolie, 1 p. sing. pres., 2129; þolie, opt. sing., 227; þole, imp. sing. 514; þolede, pret. sing., 926, 1156, 1202, 1545; þoleden, pret. plur., 1430; ipolet, pp., 1800.
 þonki, 1 p. sing. pres., *from* *þonkien, *to thank*, 2382.
 þreapeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *þreapien, *to argue, quarrel*, 1916; þreap, imp., 1499.
 þreate. See *þreatin*.
 þreates, plur. of *þreat, *threat, menace*, 40, 2102.
 þreatin, inf., *to threaten*, 626,

2078; þreateð, 3 p. sing. pres., 1915; þreate, imp., 1500.
 þrefter, *thereafter, after*, 188, 426, 1469, 1499, 1546, 1589, 1886, 1920, 2100, 2179.
 þreo, *three*, 1777, 1918, 2182.
 þreottuðe, *thirtieth*, 1413; þrittuðe, 43.
 þridde, *third*, 1949.
 þrin, *therein*, 907, 1548; þrinne, 1583.
 þrinwið, *therein, within it*, 1649.
 þrittuðe. See *þreottuðe*.
 þrof, *thereof*, 475, 653, 816, 846.
 þron, *thereon, on it*, 1970.
 þrowin, inf., *to suffer*, 1135; þrowede, pret. sing., 925, 1156.
 þruh, *coffin, trough*, 2480.
 þu, 210, etc.; tu, 515, etc.
 þuhte. See *þunchen*.
 þuldi, *patient*, 174.
 þulli, *such, suchlike*, 348; þullich, 357, 847; þulliche, 1072, 2333.
 þunchen, inf., *to seem*, 692; þunch-eð, 3 p. sing. pres., 276, 346, 559, 843, 1527; þuhte, pret. sing., 85, 777, 1006, 1424, 1568.
 þunres, gen. sing. of *þuner, *thunder*, 1998.
 þurh, *through, by*, 6, 116, etc.
 þurhdriuen, inf., *to pierce*, 1920, 2119; þurhdriuen, pp., 1198.
 þurhferde, pret. sing., *from* *þurhferen, *to pass through*, 1142.
 þurhsot, pp., *from* *þurhsechen, *to seek through*, 519.
 þurhspitet, pp., *from* *þurhspitien, *to pierce*, 1928.
 þurhwunest, *from* *þurhwunien, *to stay or live for ever*, 663; þurhwuniende, part. pres., 1696, 2297.
 þurs, *devil, giant*, 1858.
 þurst, *thirst*, 1687, 2258.
 þus, *thus*, 98, 135, 308, 312, 343, etc.; tus, 1908, 1917, 2362.

þusent, *thousand*, 2011, 2052.
þusentfalt, *thousand times*, 2291.

uirgines, plur. of *uirgine, *virgin*, 2310.

ules. *See* flesch.

uleð, 3 p. sing. pres., from *ulen or *flen? to *flatter*, 1486.

umbe, *after*, 12, 517.

unbiburiet, *unburied*, 2243.

unbileaue, *unbelief*, 259.

unc, *us*, *us two*, 1515.

uncenut, pp., from *uncnuten, to *undo*, 1150.

undeadlich, *immortal*, 1083; undeadliche, 350; undedlich, 964, 1104, 1122; undedliche, 390.

undedlichnesse, *immortality*, 1119.

under, *under*, 17, 223, 759, 809, 1092, 1758, 1858.

under, subs., *Undern*, *midday*, 2496.

underfeng. *See* underfonne.

underfest. *See* underfonne.

underfonne, inf., to *take*, *accept*, *receive*, *assume*, 2234; underfest, 2 p. sing. pres., 982; underfeng, pret. sing., 1099, 1208; underfon, pp., 703; underuo, pp., 1169.

underneomen, inf., to *catch*, *undertake*, 122; underneomene, 652; underneome, 1 p. pres. sing., 765; undernome, 2 p. pret. sing., 681; undernom, 3 p. pret. sing., 117; undernumen, pp., 1840.

understonden, inf., to *understand*, *perceive*, *imagine*, 1013; understonde, opt. sing., 596; understont, imp., 1641; understod, pret. sing., 2114; understode, pret. opt. sing., 221.

undeðlich, *immortal*, 2292.

undutte, pret. sing., from *undutten, to *unstop*, *open*, 1803.

uneaðe, *scarcely*, *hardly*, lit., not *easily*, 1993.

unforgult, *innocent*, *not guilty*, 231.
unheale, *disease*, 1064.

unhendeliche, *rudely*, 2117.

unimete, *immoderately*, 738.

unlaheliche, *unlawfully*, 627.

unleffiche, *incredible*, 345.

unmihte, *infirmity*, 1022.

unnen. *See* on.

unneomelich, *impalpable*, *not seizable*, 1180.

unsehlich, *invisible*, 254, 904; unsehlich, 1003.

unsehene, *invisible*, 1784.

unseli, *unblest*, *unhappy*, 1793.

unstrencðe, *infirmity*, *weakness*, 1027, 1028, 1168.

unstrenget, pp. of *unstrengen to *bereave of strength*, *weaken*, 1269.

unþrowlich, *incapable of suffering*, 1155.

unþuldeliche, *impatiently*, 161.

untidi, *unseasonable*, 2400.

unweoten, plur., of *unweote, *fool*, 1054.

unwine, *enemy*, 1221.

*unwitlese, *not senseless*, 245.

unwreah, pret. sing., from *unwreon, to *reveal*, 1752.

unwreste, *impotent*, *worthless*, 1260.

unwurð, *unworthy*, 1531.

up, *up*, 134, etc.

upaheuen, pp. from *upahebben, to *heave*, *lift up*, 2373.

upon, *upon*, 130, etc.; upo, 1165.

upward, *upward(s)*, 1964, 2372.

ure, *our*, *ours*, 318, 319, etc.

us, *us*, 284, 401, etc.

ut, *out*, 126, etc.

utcumene, pp. from *utcumen, to *come out*, to *come from afar*? 800.

utewið, *without*, 2316.

uuel, *evil*, *disease*, 239, 255, 1175, 2398; uueles, plur., 2487.

wa, *grief, woe, sorrow*, 1167, 1734, 1756, 2104, 2296, 2302.

wake, *weak, silly, miserable*, 1261, 2134; *wacre*, comp., 1261.

wal, *wall*, 1645.

walde, walden, waldest. *See* wule.

walt. *See* wealt.

wari, *wretch, scoundrel*, 438.

waried, pp., *from* *warien, *to curse, damn*, 201.

warliche, *carefully, warily*, 82.

warnedest, 2 p. sing. pret., *from* *warnien, *to warn, admonish*, 625.

warpen, inf., *to throw, overthrow*, 18, 1325, 1362; *warpe*. pres. sing. opt., 643; *warp*, pret. sing, 829, 1190; *weorp*, 892, 1405, 2031; *wurpen*, pret. plur., 1813.

warð. *See* wurðen.

wastu. *See* witen.

wat, pret. sing., *from* *witen, *to go*, 1335.

wat. *See* witen.

wealdent, *ruler*, 1723, 1765, 2036; *weldent*, 1228.

wealt, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *wealden, *to have in one's power, to rule*, 1780; *walt*, 218; *weldinde*, pres. part., 933; *iwald*, pp., 186.

weane, *woe, grief*, 1166, 2105, 2399.

wearnen, *to deny*, 769.

wecchen, plur. of *wecche, *watch, guard*, 1749.

wed. *See* weden.

wed, *mad*, 31, 1859.

weden, inf., *to rave*, 1257, 2074; *wed*, 3 p. sing. pres., 1917; *wedinde*, pres. part., 379.

wederes, plur. of *weder, *weather, storm*, 2400.

wedinde. *See* weden.

wei, *way*, 885, 1752; *weie*, dat., 126; *weis*, gen., 974, 1070, 1106, 1235, 1864, 1959, 1961.

wel, *well*, 177, 208, 261, etc.

*welcweme, *satisfied, pleased, content*, 1728.

weldent. *See* wealdent.

weldinde. *See* wealt.

wen. *See* wenen.

wende. *See* wenden.

wenden, inf., *to go, turn*, 419, 694, 1495; *went*, 3 p. sing. pres., 401; *wendeð*, imp. plur., 1765, 2352; *wende*, pret. sing., 129, 158, 431, 438, 918, 2185, 2490; *wente*, 1167; *wenden*, pret. plur., 1732, 1815; *iwend*, pp., 994; *iwent*, 1293; *iwente*, 659.

wenen, inf., *to think, suppose*, 1154; *wenest*, 2 p. sing. pres., 1153; *wenestu*=*wenest þu*, 2047; *weneð*, pres. plur., 324, 1055; *wen*, imp. sing., 2160.

went, wente. *See* wenden.

weol, pret. sing., *from* *wallen, *to boil, foam*, 1902.

weole, pret. sing., *from* *walken, *to go, walk*, 914.

weole, *bliss, happiness*, 1501, 1523, 1629, 2109, 2296; *weolen*, 1034, 1695.

weorp. *See* warpen.

weorre, *war*, 20, 2399.

weorin, *to war, fight against, quarrel with*, 32, 849, 1326, 1348, 2039.

weoued, *altar*, 201.

weox, pret. sing., *from* *waxen, *to grow, originate*, 12, 19.

wepen, pres. opt. plur., *from* *wepen, *to weep*, 2354; *wepinde*, pres. part., 2325.

wepmen, plur. of *wepmon, *man*, 2323.

wepnede, pret. plur., *from* *wepnien, *to arm*, 188.

were, weren. *See* beon.

weri, *weary*, 1030, 1500.

werien, *to protect, defend*, 787.

- werkes, plur. of *werk, *work*, 171, 1016.
- wes. *See* beon.
- westen, *West, Occident*, 593.
- westum, *figure, stature*, 69, 310.
- wettres, plur. of *wetter, *water, river*, 271, 687, 1389.
- wicchecreft, *witchcraft, charm*, 2266; wicchecreftes, plur., 1052.
- wihes, plur. of *wihel, *socery, deceit*, 129, 1051; wiles, 891.
- wiht, *being, wight, thing, bit*, 1252; wihtes, plur., 1707.
- wil, *will*, 371, 399, 914, 1227, 1938, 2108; wille, dat., 172, 226, 935.
- wileweme, *content, pleased, satisfied*, 1728.
- wilde, *wild*, 2244.
- wiles. *See* wihes.
- wille. *See* wil.
- wilneð. *See* wilnin.
- wilnin, inf., *to wish, long for*, 1672; wilni, 1 p. pres. sing., 1524; wilneð, pres. plur., 1671.
- wilre, comp. of *wil, *agreeable, desirable*, 572.
- wimmen. *See* wummon.
- wind, *wind*, 271, 841.
- windi, *full of wind, empty*, 376.
- winnen, *to win, gain*, 474.
- wis, adj. *wise*, 323, 547, 580; wise, 315, 485, 530, 879, 960, 1303, 2335; wisest, sup., 526; wiseste, 592.
- wisdom, *wisdom, science*, 185, 218, 240, etc.; wisdomes, pl., 525.
- wise, subs., *wise, way, manner*, 766, 794, 1163, 1224, 1536, 1956, 2079.
- wise, wisest, wiseste. *See* wis.
- wisliche, *wisely, prudently*, 82.
- wisse, *certain*, 1532.
- wisseð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from* *wissien, *to direct, rule*, 1780; wissinde, pres. part., 933.
- wiste. *See* witen.
- wið, *with, against*, 41, etc.
- wiðalle, *too, in addition, withal*, 835. *See* midalle.
- wit, pron., *we two*, 1512.
- wit, *wit, sense, wisdom, science*, 240, 452, 486, 591, 655, 841, 871, 880, 885, 1009, etc.; witte, dat., 242, 1258; wittes, plur., 524.
- wiðdreiest, 2 p. sing. pres., *from* *wiðdrehen, *to withdraw, retract*, 2270.
- wite. *See* witen.
- witege, *prophet*, 489; witeȝen, plur., 483.
- witen, inf., *to protect, guard*, 136, 684; wiste, pret. sing., 135.
- witen, inf., *to know*, 150, 261, 461, 529, 642, 1071, etc.; wastu, 2 p. sing. pres. = wast þu, 393; wat, 3 p. sing. pres., 563; witen, pres. plur., 318, 921, 960, 1744, 2471; wite, opt. sing., 1161, 1301, 1493, 1532.
- witerliche, *truly, assuredly*, 281, 2061.
- wiðerwine, *enemy*, 1191; wiðerwines, plur., 642.
- wiðinnen, *within*, 71, 839.
- witlese, *senseless, foolish, fool*, 245, 324, 375, 830, 1814.
- witnesse, *witness, testimony*, 453, 1302, 1482, 2458.
- wiðstonden, *to resist, withstand*, 226, 564.
- witte, wittes. *See* wit.
- witti, *wise, intelligent, prudent*, 315, 487, 530, 546, 881, 1228, 1443; wittie, 688, 1243; wittiist, sup., 533.
- wiðute, *without*, 2207; wiðuten, 838, 920, 1189, 2029, 2174, 2240.
- wiðward, *against, contrary to*, 1958.
- wlenchest, 2 sing. pres., *from*

- *wlenchen, *to pride in, boast of*, 1010.
- wlite, *face, beautiful face*, 69, 1452.
- wliti, *beautiful*, 310.
- wlonke, *bright, showy, proud*, 842.
- wod, *insane, mad, furious*, 155, 1352; wode, 1536, 2269.
- wodeliche, *furiously*, 1259.
- Wodnesdei, *Wednesday*, 2184.
- woh, *wrong, injustice*, 563, 1189, 1193, 1223, 1347; wohe, *dat.*, 1236.
- wondreaðe, *pain, tribulation*, 624.
- wone, *wanting, deficient*, 67.
- wonieð, *pres. plur., from *wonien, to fail, become deficient*, 2187.
- wonteð, 3 p. sing. pres., *to be wanting*, 1670.
- wonunge, *want, deficiency*, 920.
- wop, *weeping*, 2332, 2352.
- word, *word, saying*, 643, 811, 1226, 1325, 1405; word, *plur.*, 482, 488; wordes, 311, 316, 374, 378, 513, 547, etc.
- world, *world*, 186, 217, 283, 396, 487, 663, 881, 1032, 1224, 1481, 1626, 1766; worlde, *dat. sing.*, 30, 97, 472, 526, 1068; worldes, *gen. sing.*, 1502, 1723, 2036; worlde, *gen. plur.*, 663, 2504.
- worldlich, *worldly*, 624; worldliche, 370, 525, 655, 915, 934, 1335, 1636, 1749, 2040.
- worldmen, *plur. of *worldmon, layman, working*, 485, 879.
- wrahte, *See wurchen*.
- *wrakefulliche, *vengefully*, 2047.
- wrakeliche, *vengefully*, 2047.
- wrat, *pret. sing., from *writen, to write*, 190.
- wraðe, *miserable, evil*, 171.
- wraððe. *See wreððe*.
- wreastlin, *to wrestle*, 2035.
- wrecche, *wretched, wretch*, 2034, 2049; wrecches, *plur.*, 170.
- wreken, *to avenge oneself*, 2049.
- wrenchen, *to entice, wrench, draw*, 124.
- wrenchfule, *deceitful, artful*, 890.
- wreoðeð, 3 p. sing. pres., *from *wreoðien, to lean (on), trust (in)*, 1327; wreoðieð, *pres. plur.*, 857.
- wreððe, *anger, ire*, 13, 154, 1903, 1352; wraððe, 2048.
- wreððen, *inf., to anger*, 745, 1326.
- wreððeð, 3 p. sing. pres., 236; iwreððet, *pp.*, 2331.
- wringinde, *pres. part., from *wringen, to wring, press*, 2324; wrungen, *pret. plur.*, 1359.
- writ, *writ, writing*, 111; writes, *plur.*, 407, 856.
- writes, *gen. plur. of *writer, writer*, 856.
- writes. *See writ*.
- wringen. *See wringinde*.
- wude, *wood, forest*, 271.
- wule, 1 p. sing. pres., *from *wullen, to will, shall*, 565, 877, 1497; ichulle=ich wulle, 484, 639, 878, 1460, 1464, 1493, 2097; wult, 2 p. sing. pres., 399, 461, 463, 505, etc.; wultu=wult þu, 2035; wule, 3 p. 491, 562, 684, 685, 787, 1000, 1790, 2048; wulleð, *pres. plur.*, 571, 693, 919, 1746, 1759; walde, 1, 3 p. pret. sing., 17, 155, 157, etc.; waldest, 2 p. pret. sing., 1866, 2384; walden, *pret. sing.*, 1964, 1966.
- wulf, *wolf*, 31, 1859, 2031.
- wulleð, wult, wultu. *See wule*.
- wummon, *woman*, 1443, 2420; wummen, *plur.*, 2323, 2385; wimmen, 1274.
- wunden, *plur. of *wunde, wound*, 1600.
- wunder, *wonder, miracle*, 151, 691; wundres, *plur.*, 922, 1072, 1133, 2454, 2473.

wundrede, pret. sing., *from* *wundrien, *to wonder*, 377.

wundri, *wonderful*, 1016.

wune, wunede, wuneð. *See* wunien.

wunien, inf., *to live, dwell, stay, use to*, 573, 919, 1760; wuneð, 3 p. sing. pres., 246, 919; wuneð, plur., 593; wune, imp. sing., 644; wuniende, pres. part., 65; wunede, pret. sing., 8; iwunet, pp., 1740, 1951.

wunne, *joy, happiness*, 1501, 1523, 1627, 1756, 2296, 2349, 2423; wunnen, plur., 1695.

wununge, *dwelling-place*, 2423.

wurche. *See* wurchen.

wurchen, inf., *to work, effect, do*, 171; wurchest, 2 p. sing. pres., 2108; wurcheð, 3 p. sing. pres., 371, 491, 2472; wurchið, pres. plur., 1053; wurche, pres. opt., 1938; wrahte, pret. sing., 369, 922, 1068, 1071, 1133, 1766, 2039; iwrahte, pp., 282.

wurgið. *See* wurðgin.

wurpen. *See* warpen.

wurse, *worse*, 168.

wursi, pres. opt. sing., *from* *wursien, *to impair*, 2135.

wurð, *worth, worthy*, 70, 343, 1714, 2061, 2231; wurðe, 507, 1445, 2062.

wurðen, inf., *to grow, become, originate*, 241, 993, 1257; warð, pret. sing., 27, 1242; wurðen, pret. plur., 1605, 1727.

wurðful, *worthy, honourable*, 1017.

wurðgin, inf., *to revere, worship*, 55; wurgið, pres. plur., 272; wurðgin, opt. plur., 660; wurðgede, pret. sing., 59; iwurðget, pp., 508.

wurðliche, *venerable*, 1564.

wurðmunt, *honour, reverence*, 216, 244, 1444, 1474.

wurðschipe, *worship, reverence*, 472, 505, 1388, 1445, 1482, 1502, 1626, 2062.

Ylirie, *Illyria*, 22.

ymage, *image, statue*, 1465.

The Life of St. Katharine.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 100.

1893.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLDT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Life of
St. Katharine of Alexandria.

BY

JOHN CAPGRAVE, D.D.,

PRIOR OF THE AUSTIN FRIARY AT LYNN, NORFOLK,
AND PROVINCIAL OF HIS ORDER.

EDITED BY

CARL HORSTMANN,

WITH FOREWORDS BY

F. J. FURNIVALL,

AND NOTES ON THE SOUNDING OF *gh* IN CHAUCER'S DAY,
AND OF LONG *i* IN SHAKSPERE'S.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1893.

DEDICATED TO
Walter Rye
AND THE ANTIQUARIES OF NORFOLK.

F. J. F.

Original Series,
100.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

FOREWORDS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| § 1. <i>Capgrave's Life</i> , p. v. | § 4. <i>St. Katharine</i> , p. xxii. |
| § 2. <i>Capgrave's Works</i> , p. xiii. | § 5. <i>Apology for the Text</i> , p. xxiv. |
| § 3. <i>Capgrave's Character</i> , p. xv. | § 6. <i>Miscellaneous</i> , p. xxxi. |

§ 1. *Capgrave's Life*.—In his *Chronicle of England*, John Capgrave tells us under the 17th year of King Richard II (22 June 1393 to 21 June 1394), "In þis ȝere, in þe xxj day of aprile [in Easter week, 1394], was þat frere bore wech mad þese anotaciones"¹; and in the present text he tells us, p. 16, l. 240, "Myn cuntre is Northfolke, of the town of Lynne." Of his parentage we know nothing, though if we construe his word "faderes," p. 17, l. 243 below, strictly, we shall have to hold him one priest's bastard son and another's grandson:

"God yeue me grace neuere for to blynne
To folwe the steppes of *my faderis* before,
Wiche to the reule of Austyn were swore."

But he doubtless meant only by "faderis before" the spiritual fathers or Austin Friars who had gone before him. In 1400 the boy, with his playfellows and townsmen, must have felt proud of the Lynn fishermen:

"In that same ȝere, the schippis of Lennes, which fischid at Aberden, took certeyn schippis of Scotlond, with her amyrel, Sir Robert Logan, knyte, and broute hem to Lennes."—*Chronicle*, p. 266-7. (Note the absence of *gh* in *knyte* and *broute*.)

And in 1401 he must have wonderd at the comet:

"In this same ȝere . . . appered a sterre, wech thei clepe cometa, betwix the west and the north, in the monthe of March, with a hie bem, wech ben bowed into the North. It betokened, as men seid, the blod that schuld be spilt at Schrouisburi."—*Chronicle*, p. 278. [The battle of Shrewsbury was on July 22, 1403.]

¹ Facsimile of leaf 175 of the Cambridge University MS Gg. 4. 12 in Hingeston's edition of the *Chronicle* in the Rolls Series; also p. 259 of the print.

In 1406 he was still in his birth-town, for he tells us in his *Latin Book of the Illustrious Henries*, as englisht by Mr. Hingeston in the Rolls Series, 1858, p. 117 :

“I saw [Princess Philippa] the only daughter of this most excellent king [Henry IV] in the town of Lynn, where she went on board the ship in which she left England, and went to be married to [Eric XIII] the king of Norway . . . She indeed is the offspring of this king [Henry IV], and I saw her with my own eyes.”¹

And it was no doubt in Lynn that he experienst the hard winter of 1407 :

“In the IX 3ere of this Kyng was a gret wyntir, that dured both Decembir, Januari, Februari, and March, that the most part of smale birdis were ded.”—*Chronicle*, p. 295 :

and the floods of 1413—*Henries*, p. 125 :

Now he [Hen. V] was crowned at Westminster on the ninth day of the month of April, in the year of our Lord 1413. In the winter of the same year there were great floods of snow and rain, and in the summer several fires,² from which signs some men foretold that he would be a warlike king, and would experience many dangers in war. —*Chronicle*, p. 303 :

as well as heard of the stealing of three Lynn children in 1416, and the later recovery of them :

“In the same 3ere [A.D. 1416] III. beggeres stole III. childyr at Lenne ; and of on, thei put oute his eyne ; the othir, thei broke his bak ; and the thirde, thei cut of his handis and his feet, that men schuld of pite gyve hem food. Long aftir, the fadir of on of hem, wech was a marchaund, cam to London, and the child knew him, and cryed loude, ‘This is my fadir.’ The fadir tok his child fro the

¹ No doubt Capgrave saw the rest of the Court too, for he says in his *Chronicle*, p. 292 (but under 1404), “In this 3ere were sent embassiatouris fro the Kyng of Denmark for to have the Kyngis doutir Philip to be joyned in wedlok to her Kyng. The Kyng broute hir to Lenne, for to take schip there. And in that towne he lay nyne daies, the too qwenes, thre sones of the Kyng—Herri, Thomas, and Umfrey—and many othir lordes and ladies.” Capgrave also notes on p. 291 before the visit of the King to Lynn, that after Henry IV’s forbiddal of pilgrimages to the place where the Archbp. of York and the Earl of Nottingham were beheaded, “The Kyng . . . lost the beute of his face. For, as the comoune opinion went, fro that tyme onto his deth he was a lepir, and evyr fowlere and fowlere. For in his deth, as thei recorded that sey him, he was so contracte, that his body was scarce a cubite of length.”

² As one of these, Mr. Hingeston (*Henries*, p. 125 n.) reckons the Norwich fire of 1414.

beggeris, and mad hem to be arested. The childirn told alle the processe, and the beggaris were hangen, ful wel worthy."—*Chronicle*, p. 316.

In this year, 1416, Capgrave also notes the tremendous thunderstorms on June 14 :—*Chronicle*, p. 314 :

"In the XVIII. kalend of Julij were the moost horribil thunderes and litynnnyngis that evyr only man herd." (No *gh* again.)

When and where Capgrave went to school he does not tell us, but as the Augustine Friars settled at Lynn in the beginning of Edward I's reign, A.D. 1293, and had their Monastery in the northern part of the town, in Hogman's Lane, alias Hopman's way,¹ and as they had a Professor of Sacred Theology, one John de Beston, in 1382 (p. xi, note 1), Capgrave may have gone to their school, assuming that they had one.² If not, there were in Lynn, a Benedictine Priory, a House of Black Friars or Preachers, and Convents of Franciscan or Grey Friars, and Carmelite or White Friars, at the school of such of which as had one, Capgrave could have got his education. Leland says that he went to Cambridge,³ but Pamphilus, Bale, and others assign him to Oxford. He tells us himself that he knew William Millington, the first Provost of King's College, Cambridge.⁴ The probability is that he went first to Cambridge, the University nearest to him, and then took his degree of D.D.⁵ at Oxford⁶; but nothing is known about this for certain.

¹ Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vi. 1594, col. 2, quoting the Continuator of Blomefield's *Hist. of Norfolk*.

² If they'd had a school in 1446, Capgrave 'ud surely have put the fact into his *Illustrious Henries*, p. xi below. I doubt whether his "youthful offshoots" mean a general school.

³ "Granta, fecunda eruditorum parens, quæ illum, ut ego conjectura colligo, juvenem docuit, idem testabitur."—*Com. de Script. Brit.* (1709), p. 453.

⁴ "Over these colleges [Eton, and King's Coll. Camb.] he set two influential men as provosts; one of them—Master William Millington [of Clare Hall]—I know personally. He presides over the college at Cambridge, and in the questionings of the schools, as well as in profound literature and in the perfection of his morals, surpasses many who had gone before him."—*Book of the Illustrious Henries*, p. 154.

⁵ In his Dedication of his "Book of the Illustrious Henries" to K. Henry VI, he calls himself "Brother John Capgrave, the laast of Doctors, and the meanest of the pore Brathren of Saint Augustin," p. 1 and 226.

⁶ Pamphilus (Works, 1581, Rome, fol. 139) says: "Joannes Capgrave,

In 1416 or 1417, when 23 or 24, that is, four or five years before the birth of Henry VI on Dec. 6, 1421, Capgrave tells us that he was ordaind Priest, and that in Dec. 1421 he was studying in London :—*Book of the Illustrious Henries*, p. 146 :—

“I heard the voice of the churches, and the ringing of the bells, when the birth of our king [Henry VI] was made known in London, for I was then studying there, in the fourth or fifth year after I was raised to the priesthood ; and the rejoicing of the people has not yet faded from my memory. For I deem that that praise and that rejoicing were omens of the peace which a great company of wise men expect to come in your days, my king . . . I deem that those voices and rejoicings will in time be fulfilled, that, as the people wishes and the devout pray, there may come to be one heart in the two kingdoms [England and France], as they have both of them already one God, one Faith, one Baptism [*Ephesians* iv. 5].”

In 1422 he preacht at least 7 Sermons at Cambridge, p. xiv below.

I suppose that after this, and before he settled down to write his Annals, his Legends of Saints, and his Commentaries on the books of the Bible, Capgrave went to Rome, was taken ill there, was helpt by Bp. Grey, and had to stay some time in that city. In the Dedicatory Letter to William Grey, Bishop of Ely, set before his Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles, Capgrave says :

“Reminiscor, sancte Antistes, quanta pia visitatione vestra in me, miserum peregrinum atque Romae infirmum, dilectionis exenia tribuistis ; et nunc, a sollicitudine officii mei penitus absolutus, licet tarde veniens, munus possibilitatis meae vobis decrevi mittendum.” —*Liber de illustribus Henricis* (1858), p. 221.

On coming home, Capgrave may well have settled down at the Austin Friary at Lynn to write his Biblical Commentaries, &c. That on the Book of Genesis he tells us he began on 6 Sept. (or Oct.) 1437, and finisht on 21 Sept. 1438, while Humfrey, Duke of Gloster, says it was in the same year presented to him at Penshurst. The MS is now at Oriel, is in Capgrave's writing, and has the Duke's inscription on its fly-leaf :—

“Feliciter per Capgrave. Incipit Frater Johannes Capgrave hoc

Anglus, Oxonii publice Divinas Litteras docuit, et Vetus et Novum Testamentum interpretatus est ;” and in his “Chronicon Ordinis Fratrum Eremitarum Sancti Augustini,” he includes Capgrave in his List of “Viri qui in publicis Scholis functi sunt docendi munere.”—*Chronicle*, p. x.

opus in Translatione Sancti Augustini Doctoris, quae occurrit mense Octobris [*really Sept. 6*], anno Domini M. CCCCXXXVII; et fecit finem ejusdem in festo Mathei, Apostoli et Evangelistae, anno Domini M. CCCCXXXVIII.”¹

“Cest liure est a moy, Humfrey duc de Gloucestre, du don de Frere Johan Capgrave, quy le me fist presenter a mon manoyr de Pensherst, le jour de l’an M. CCCCXXXVIII.” [This must mean Jan. 1, 1439.]

Before this time, Capgrave had either written part of his *Chronicle or Annals of England*, or had got together some materials for it. In the Dedictory Epistle to the Duke, Capgrave says, that while

“turning over *my Annals* . . I found written in them that A.D. M. CCXLVIII the Order of Hermits of St. Augustine in England was founded by Richard of Clare, the son of Gilbert of Clare, and Earl of Gloster.”²

As Capgrave’s Commentaries on Exodus, and the first and third Books of his Commentaries on the Books of Kings (I *Samuel* and I *Kings*) were given to Oxford early in 1444—see last note—we may legitimately suppose that Capgrave had by that date workt consecutively through the books of the Bible, and finisht his Commentaries on Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, and Ruth. And as he would give the Duke only those MSS which he dedicated to him, Capgrave may well have written by Feb. 1444 several more Commentaries, as well as other books; but the dates of his other Biblical Commentaries and his Latin Lives of Saints—

¹ The vellum MS is a large folio of 181 leaves in double columns. In its first fine initial is a figure of the Duke seated and hatted, while Capgrave, in his friar’s dress, kneels before him and offers his MS. The first initial of the Prolog contains a figure of the author seated at a desk, with four books bound in red before him, and several in the cupboard beneath.—*Lib. de illustr. Henricis*, p. 225. The Duke gave the MS to the University of Oxford by Indenture dated 25 Feb. 1444, with three other of Capgrave’s Commentaries, no doubt also presents from him to the Duke, as witness this extract from the Schedule to the Deed—*Chronicle*, p. xv:

“Item, Capgrave super Regum Primum	...	2 ^o fo. sint viv.
Item, Capgrave super Regum 3	...	2 ^o fo. fulgorem.
Item, Capgrave super <i>Genesis</i>	...	2 ^o fo. arduum.
Item, Capgrave super Exodus	...	2 ^o fo. et beatitudinem.”

² “Sed et *Annualia mea* revolvens, aliud inveni quod me monet. Scriptum enim in iis reperi, quod anno Domini M. CCXXXVIII. fundatus fuerat Ordo Heremitarum Sancti Augustini in Anglia per Ricardum de Clara, filium Gilberti de Clara, comitemque Gloverniae.”—*Lib. de illust. Henricis*, p. 230-1.

printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1516 as *Nova Legenda Anglie*—are not yet known, and his English Life of St. Katharine in the present volume is undated. So is the fragment of his Guide to the Antiquities of Rome, while the MS of his English Life of St. Gilbert of Sempringham was burnt in the Cotton fire.

On August 1, 1446, Henry VI visited Lynn, and Capgrave gave him information about the first founding of the Austin Friars¹ there. Capgrave was no doubt then Prior of his monastery, if not also Provincial or Controller of all the Friaries in the Eastern province, or whatever the limits of his jurisdiction were. In his *Book of the Illustrious Henries*, as englisht by Hingeston, p. 158—160, Capgrave says, under the year 1446 :

“In the twenty-fourth year of his reign,² this most devout king [Henry VI], in the course of the solemn pilgrimage which he made to the Holy Places, received into his favour the place of the Hermit Friars of S. Augustin in the town of Lynn, promising to his priests who dwelt there, by his (p. 159) own mouth, that from thenceforth that place should be regarded as closely connected with himself, and also with his successors lawfully begotten of his body. That he himself, also, and his successors, as before, should be regarded as its founder, or founders, not in name only, but in deed and in truth. These events occurred in the feast of S. Peter ad Vincula [Aug. 1], in the year of our Lord 1446, and in the twenty-fourth year of the reign of our illustrious lord king, as we said above.

“And forasmuch as many lying and double-tongued men have, as I have heard, taken occasion to say, after the departure of our king,³ that the place had had a founder from its very earliest days,—whose name, however, they know not how to insinuate,—on that account *the writer of the present work, who also gave his lord information*

¹ It seems that when Henry VII visited Lynn with a large retinue on Aug. 25, 1498 (14 Hen. VII), he too stayd at the Austin Friary, for, says the entry in Hall Book 3, p. 17 : “which King was met at the Green At [this] half Witton [or Wootton] Gapp, with the foresaid Mayor and the Commons of Lynn, which King was presented at the Friars Augustines with ten great pikes, ten tenches, three couple of breams, twelve swans, two oxen, twenty sheep, a ton of wine, thirty dozen bread, two tons of ale, two tons of beer, two loads of wood ; and a pipe of wine was given to the Mayor for his guests.” The next Monday the King hunted with the Mayor, and went off on Tuesday.—Harrod's *Report on King's Lynn Records*, p. 112. I saw the folio entries at Lynn last August.

² In the autograph MS the words “Data compilatoris” are written in the margin opposite this passage.—Hingeston.

³ The Privy Seals of the 24 Henry VI show that on the 6th of August the King was at Colchester.—Hingeston.

concerning this matter, seeing that his character has been partially injured by the imputation that *the information which he gave his lord the king* was false, here clearly sets forth the whole truth of this matter, as collected from ancient charters and sealed instruments:—

“Be it known then that the said Hermit Friars of S. Augustin¹ first entered the town of Lynn, with the intention of making their abode there, in the twenty-second year of the reign of the second [that is, first] king Edward [A.D. 1293], counting from the Conquest. This is found to be capable of proof from the licence of the king (who wrote that he was the son of king Henry, and marks this as the number of the years of his reign) in his charter to a certain widow of good conversation, whose name was Margaret Southmere. Now the land which was granted first by this lady to the Friars measured a hundred feet in length, and twenty-four in breadth. Our place thus begun in a narrow spot, increased by the presentation of many parcels of land, as is set forth in divers royal charters. For we have another charter granted to Humphrey de Wykyn [3 Edw. III. A.D. 1329], concerning his land; and another to Robert de Wykyn [12 Edw. III. A.D. 1338] for his messuage²; also yet another to Thomas de Lexham [13 Edw. I. A.D. 1304-5] for his messuage. Also another,³ of a larger benefaction to certain inhabitants of Lynn [38 Edw. III. A.D. 1364], for five messuages.

“See, then, most dear lord, thy little plot, composed of many small parcels of ground, and united into one; and impress on thy heart that there are there *thirty priests*, besides deacons, subdeacons, and youthful offshoots⁴ of the inferior order, to the number of sixteen; and consider that these hold thee in special remembrance.

¹ For a full account of this Friary, see Capgrave's *Chronicle*, ed. Hingeston, Appendix V, p. 368.

² In the Appendix to the 11th Report of the Historical MSS. Commission, 1887, Mr. J. C. Jeafferson notes (p. 231) that “On the eleventh of the kalends of May, 1352, Margaret Frenghe, widow, left vis. viiid. to the Friars of the order of St. Augustine tarrying in Lenn,” and (p. 232) “all that tenement with its edifices and appurtenances in the town of Lenn, *opposite to the Friars of the order of St. Augustine of Lenn*,” to be sold for the payment of her debts and the fulfilment of her will. On p. 245 is the entry:—

“26 August 1382. Acknowledgment and Bond of the Prior and convent of the Friars of St. Augustine of Lenn, for fifty marks of gold received by them for the said convent's use, of John de Beston, Professor of sacred Theology of the same order and convent, under conditions set forth in the instrument.”

On p. 246 is this further entry:—

“20 October, 5 Henry VI and 1426 A.D. Bond of the Prior and Convent of the Friars of the Order of St. Augustine of Norwich for payment of twenty marks to the Convent of Augustine Friars of Leune.”

³ There were still more, see *Chronicle*, p. 368-9, notes.

⁴ Namely, acolytes, and others of the inferior orders.—II.

"If, however, thou dost desire any more minute information, let thy Majesty command, and thy servants will obey.

"May thy royal Majesty live long to the honour of God, the support of the Church, and the settlement of the realm!"¹

In this same year 1446, Capgrave no doubt finisht Part II of his *Liber de Illustribus Henricis*; and before Oct. 13, 1453, when Henry VI's only son Edward—kild at Tewkesbury, May 4, 1471—was born, Capgrave must have finisht his Third Part and ended his book. For, in his last paragraph he says, p. 218 of the englisning—

"So also may my lord ever preserve the Faith inviolate, may he nourish up *his children, when any shall be born to him*, faithfully for God; that so his enemies may be frightened by his sword, and he may depart this life pure both in body and in soul," &c.

In 1456 we find Capgrave with the titles of Prior, and Provincial of his order of Friars Hermit of St. Augustine, and with jurisdiction extending at least as far as the city of Oxford. Kennet's *Parochial Antiquities* (ed. Bandinel, ii. 399-401; reprinted in *Chronicle*, p. 328-333) contains two deeds dated 1456, of which the first witnesses that the Prior and Brethren of the Convent of Augustin Friars at Oxford, which stood near the present site of Wadham College, accept as their Founder and Patron, Edmund Rede of Borsall. And their venerable Master John Capgrave, Prior Provincial, approves this, and testifies it by his letters.² By the second Deed, on the same day, the said Oxford Austin Prior and Brethren grant to the said Edmund Rede, and William his eldest son, some chambers within their house, and some part of their garden, for lodging and other accommodation whenever they shall visit the said Convent, or reside in Oxford. And they do this "*licentiâ Fratris Magistri Johannis Capgrave, nostri Provincialis.*"

¹ Capgrave evidently intended to have added something more . . . and left a whole leaf of the vellum bare for the purpose in his autograph copy. He altered his mind, however, and wrote at the bottom of the page (for the direction of his scribe)—"Make no space, but writh forth—INVOCATO," *i. e.* the first word of the Third Part.—H.

² Et ad preces eorum [the Oxford Prior and Convent], venerabilis Magister Johannes Capgrave, Prior Provincialis, summo studio incitatus est, ut huic receptioni et recognitioni dicti Fundatoris nostri præsens esset, ut ad perpetuam rei memoriam suis literis testificaret, ne filii sine patris consensu aliquid novum conderent, nec labor filiorum sine patris consensu frustraretur.

In an Indenture of June 12, 1461, between the Prior of the Austin Friars of Lynn and the Executors of Richard Cosyn, printed in Blomefield's *History of Norfolk*, iv. 616, and in Capgrave's *Chronicle*, p. 370, note, the seal of the Venerable Prior Provincial is appended; and we may fairly assume that he was Capgrave.


Bale tells us in his *Scriptores Illustres*, 1548, that Capgrave died at Lynn on the 12th of August, 1464, and was buried there among the Austins in the reign of Edward IV.

§ 2. *Capgrave's works.* The only English works of Capgrave which have survived are, 1. his *Life of St. Katherine* here printed, and which exists in three Arundel MSS, nos. 20, 168, 396 in the Brit. Mus., and in the Rawlinson MS. 116 in the Bodleian. The Prolog is printed in *Chronicle*, p. 335.

2. *Chronicle of England*, autograph MS in the University Library, Cambridge, Gg iv. 12; a copy, MS CLXVII in Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge, edited by Hingeston for the Rolls Series, 1858. It runs from the Creation to A.D. 1417; contains at first, short notices from the Bible, Isidore, St. Jerome, Eusebius, and of events all over the world; gets its early history of England from the Brute, Higden, &c., and, as it nears the writer's own time, confines itself almost to England, and gives accounts of Wat Tyler's rebellion, Oldcastle, the resignation of Richard II and the accession of Henry IV, &c.

3. *Guide to the Antiquities of Rome*: fragments of this were found in the fly-leaves of the two MSS of Capgrave's Latin treatise on the Creeds—? autograph MS, All Souls' Coll. Oxford, no. 17 (wherein he latinises his name as "Johannes de Monumento Pileato"¹), and Balliol Coll. Oxford, no. 190. Mr. Hingeston claims that these Fragments (which he prints *Chron.*, p. 357-66) are in Capgrave's own handwriting; but I do not believe they are,² because they have the gutturals which Capgrave avoided in his *Chronicle*: *hight* was *cald*, *Chron.* p. 359, 361, *promist* 362 (*hite*, *Chron.* p. 5, 264, 316); *might* p. 362, *myght* p. 365 (*myte*, *Chron.* p. 188, 190, 191, 222, 225, 226, &c.); *monslaught* p. 362 (*Chron. manslawth* p. 185, 218); *mydnyght* p. 365 (*Chron. midnyte* 276); *knyghtes* p. 366

¹ *Monumentum*, a grave; *pileatum*, a pileo, a cap, i. e. Capgrave. Note in margin of All Souls' MS.—*Bk. Ill. Henries*, p. 226 n. ² See p. xxxiv below.

(*knyte*, Chron. p. 186, 187, 217, 227, 230, 232, 234, 235, 237, 239, 249, 258, &c.); *knyghode* p. 357; but Capgrave's form *knyt* is kept on p. 357, and *heyth* (height) on p. 359. Moreover, Capgrave's *ſ* monogram, , is not on these MS Rome-Guide leaves, and Mr. Hingeston was such a freshman at his work when he started, that I decline to accept his opinion on the fragments being written in Capgrave's hand.

4. *Life of St. Gilbert of Sempringham*: this existed in the Cotton MS Vitellius D xv, but was burnt in the fire of 1731, and only a few fragments remain. A note by Thomas Gybbons of the contents of the MS is in Harl. MS 980, p. 231 (*Chron.*, p. xviii). And the same MS gives an extract naming the twelve Orders of Augustinians, taken from "Joh. Capgrave in vii sermon at Cambridg. ann. 1422" (*Chron.*, p. 324 n.), when, or after, he was studying in London (p. viii above). Osbern Bokenham alludes to this 'Life' in his 'Lyvys of Seyntys,' Roxb. Club, 1835, p. 183, re-edited by Horstmann, "My fadrys book, Mastyr Joon Capgrave," Arundel MS, Brit. Mus., 327, ff. 118. (See p. xxxiii below.)

Capgrave's Latin works now known in MS are:—

1. His autograph MS of his *Commentary on Genesis* (A.D. 1437-8), Oriel Coll. Oxford, no. 32: see p. viii above.

2. His autograph MS of his *Commentary on the Acts*, Balliol Coll. MS, 189, given to the College by Bp. Grey of Ely (1454-78), to whom it was dedicated. (See p. viii above, and *De Ill. Hen.* 219—224.)

3. His *Commentary on the Creeds*: autograph MS, All Souls' Coll. Oxford, no. 17 (*De Ill. Hen.* 211—17); a copy, Balliol Coll., Oxford, 190.

4. *Nova Legenda Angliae* (Legendary Lives of Saints); MS in the York Minster Library; another in the Bodleian, Tanner MS 15; and a third, much damaged by fire, in the Cotton MS, Tiberius E 1. Printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1516, when Pynson also printed a shortend englisning of it. It was compiled from the *Hist. Aurea* of John of Tinmouth (*De Ill. Hen.* xlix n). The Prolog is printed in *De Illustr. Henricis*, p. 195—209. Dr. Horstmann is now re-editing the book, with very large additions, for the Clarendon Press. It is to be some 2000 pages long.

5. His autograph MS of *De Ill. Hen.*, ed. Hingeston in Rolls Series.

Capgrave's lost Latin works—or those not now known to exist—are 14 theological, and one historical :

1. His Commentaries on Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, Ruth, Samuel, Kings, Psalms, Ecclesiastes, Isaiah, Daniel, the twelve Minor Prophets (Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zachariah, Malachi), the 21 Pauline and Canonical Epistles, and on the Apocalypse (dedicated to Wm. Grey, Bp. of Ely, 1454-78). 2. 'Manipulus Doctrinæ Christianæ.' 3. 'De Fidei Symbolis.' 4. 'Super Sententias Petri Lombardi.' 5. 'Determinaciones Theologice.' 6. 'Ad Positiones erroneas.' 7. 'Orationes ad Clerum.' 8. 'Sermoines per Annum.' 9. 'Lecture Scholasticæ.' 10. 'Ordinarie Disputationes.' 11. 'Epistolæ ad diversos.' 12. 'Vita S. Augustini.' 13. 'De sequacibus S. Augustini'; and (the same work or a continuation) 14. 'De illustribus viris Ordinis S. Augustini.' The lost historical work was 'Vita Humfredi Ducis Glocestrie.'

§ 3. *Capgrave's character.* Capgrave, being an Englishman, was of course by race and nature a flunkie, and had an inordinate reverence for kings and rank. This vice or quality is ingrained in the nation. While Henry VI was alive, Capgrave was his profound admirer, and "wholly devoted to his service" (*Henriex*, p. 144); and his grandfather Henry IV, "gained the crown *by the providence*, as we believe, *of God*, who is mighty to put down the mighty from their seat, and to exalt the humble" (*Henriex*, p. 115, quoting Luke i. 52). But as soon as York has turned-out Lancaster, and Edward IV is on the throne, Capgrave dedicates his *Chronicle* to him, and then—

"He that entered be intrusion was Herry the Fourte. He that entered *by Goddis provicion* is Edward the Fourt . . . We trow loveres of this lond desire this of oure Lord God, that al the erreure which was browte in be Herry the Fourte may be redressed be Edward the Fourte. This is the desire of many good men here in erde, and, as I suppose, it is the desire of the everlasting hillis that dwelle above."—p. 40. (No *gh* in *broute*.)

And this "erreure" must be deduced from the facts stated by Capgrave (*Henriex*, p. 116), that

"the said king Henry [IV] observed the ways of justice, honoured with all his power the servants of God, and, drinking from the

fountains of the Scriptures went not thirsting away . . . he was mindful of that prayer of the most glorious Solomon, in which he asked, not for riches and honour, but for the assisting wisdom of God ;”

that his son Henry V, the hero of Agincourt (Capgrave's *Henries*, p. 143),

“was felicitous in all things; felicitous in endowing the church, felicitous in ordering more clearly the divine offices, felicitous in the administration of justice, and in fine, felicitous in all his life. And as the blessed Felix laid low the statues by the breath of his most strong faith, so did this king shatter the statues of the heretics with the hammer of his justice, and burn them to ashes, lest the crop of the church should be spotted with their doctrines, and the company of the faithful be destroyed by the false-hearted.

“May the Lord grant unto him for the unbroken faith he kept with Him a ring of everlasting blessedness; for his defence of the church militant, the glory of the church triumphant; and in exchange for his earthly kingdom, whose laws he kept inviolate, an eternal kingdom with God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, for ever and ever. Amen;”

and that his grandson, Henry VI, was Capgrave's “desirable lord, the king,” “to whose service I have wholly devoted myself” (*Henries*, p. 144). But as the Vicar of Bray had afterwards “still to be Vicar of Bray, Sir,” so Capgrave had still to be Prior of Lynn, and Provincial of his province. He felt but as almost all Englishmen felt in his day; as almost all Englishmen would feel under like circumstances now. In the matter of kings, dukes &c., we are a poor lot.

And as Capgrave shared the social weakness of his nation, so he shared the hates and prejudices of his Papal Church and Order. This is how he spoke of the noble Reformer Wyclif, who lasht the abuses of the Romish hierarchy, and double-thongd the hypocrisy, the vice and corruptions of the Friars¹ :—

“In the IX. 3ere of this kyng [Richard II, A.D. 1384], John Wiclef—the organ of the devel, the enmy of the Cherch, the confusion of men, the ydol of heresie, the meroure of ypocrisie, the norischer of scisme—be the rithful dome of God, was smet with a horibil paralsie thorw-oute his body. And this veniauns fell upon

¹ See his *English Works*, ed. Matthew, E. E. Text Soc., and his *Latin Works* issued by the Wyclif Society.

him on Seynt Thomas [a Beket's] day in Cristmasse [Dec. 29]; but he deyed not til Seynt Silvestir day [Dec. 31]. And worthily was he smet on Seynt Thomas Day, ageyn whom he had gretely offendid, letting men of that pilgrimage [to his Shrine at Canterbury]; and conveniently deied he in Silvestir fest, ageyn whom he had venemously berkid for dotacion of the Church."—*Chronicle*, p. 240-1.¹

Here is Capgrave's wind-up of Oldcastle,—*Henries*, p. 141-2, A.D. 1417. (Compare Hoccleve's Poem on him: *Minor Poems*, p. 8—24.)

"It was in the fifth year of the glorious king Henry [V] that *Oldcastle, that satellite of the devil*, was taken by the servants of Lord Powis, and adjudged to death.

"For their sakes into whose hands these writings may come, I will declare some of his errors to posterity, that they may not think he was put to so shameful a death except for a just cause.

"First, he declared that none ought to worship the Mother of Christ, or the other Saints.

"Also, that confession ought to be made to God alone, and not to man.

"Also, that in the Sacrament of the Altar, after consecration, the bread remains unchanged.

"He condemned civil property; and hated [Papal] priests and churches as abominations.

"He also was for destroying marriage, as far as in him lay.

"He is said to have inflicted severe injuries on his captors when they took him, for he was very strong. But a certain woman struck him on the shin with a footstool, and he presently fell to the ground. He was brought to London, hung, and burnt. He had pretended that he was Elias, sent for the conversion of the whole world; and

¹ See also p. 231: "In this tyme [1376], on, Jon Wiclef, Maystir of Oxenforth, held many straunge opiniones:—That the Chereh of Rome is not hed of alle Cherehis. That Petir had no more auctorite thanne the othir Aposteles; ne the Pope no more power than anothir prest. And that temporal lordes may take away the godes fro the Chereh, whan the persones trespasin. And that no reules mad be Augustin, Benet, and Fraunceys, adde no more perfeccion over the Gospel than doth lym-whiting onto a wal. And that bishoppis schuld have no prisiones; and many othir thingis."—*Chronicle*, p. 231.

Again, at p. 236: "In the V. 3ere of Richard [1381], Jon Wiclef resumed the eld dampned opinion of Berengari, that seide,—Afir the consecracion of Cristis body, bred remayned as it was before. Mani foul errouris multiplied Wiclef more than Berengari:—That Crist was there, as he is in othir places, but sumwhat more specially; That this bred was no bettir than othir bred, save only for the prestis blessing; and, if Cristis body was there, it was possible to a man for [to] breke Cristis nek. He said eke it was lasse synne to worchip a tode than the Sacrament; for the tode hath lyf, and the Sacrament non." (See also the references to 'Lollards' in the *Chronicle Index*.)

his prophecy was fulfilled, as some say, while he was being taken to the fire sitting in the cart, since the one was borne off in a chariot to Heaven, the other to hell. The duke of Bedford and those who were present at his death, urged him to make faithful and lowly confession of his sins, offering him time, and his choice from among many priests. But he said that though Peter and Paul were present he would not confess to them; and so, as a blasphemer, and abandoned abetter of heretics, he suffered the disgrace of death as he deserved. He was first dragged to the place of execution and hung; then he was dismembered and disembowelled, and lastly his body was burned to ashes in the flame.

"These are the acts of this illustrious, noble, and most Christian king, Henry the Fifth, in the first lustrum of his reign."

Capgrave evidently approved of the burning of heretics: see *Chronicle*, p. 277, 297, 316, &c.

"In the third ȝere of this Herry [IV. A.D. 1401] was a Parlement at London, wher was mad a statute ageyn Lollardis,¹ that where evyr thei were founde preching her evel doctrine, thei schuld be take, and presentid to the bischop; and if they maynten here opinionones, thei schuld be committed to seculere hand, and thei schuld brenne hem and her bokes. This statute was practized in a prest [William Sautre], that sone aftir was brent at Smythfeld."—p. 277.

A.D. 1409. "In this ȝere was a Parlement at London in tyme of Lenton, where a smyth was appechid for heresie.² He held this conclusion, that the Sacrament of the Auter is not Cristes Body, but a thing without soule, wers than a tode, or a creyne, which have lyf. And whan he wold not renouns his opinion, he was take to the seculere hand, for to be spered in a tunne in Smythfeld, and to be brent. The Prince Herry had pite on the man, and counseled him to forsake this fals opinion; but he wold not. Werfor he was put in the tunne; and when the fer brent, he cried horribly. The Prince comaunded to withdrawe the fire, came to him, and behite him grete;³ but it wold not be. Werfor he suffered him to be brent into ashes."—*Chron.* p. 297.

A.D. 1416. "In this tyme, on Benedict Wolleman, a citeceyn of London, a gret Lollard, which had set up billes of grete errouris, was takyn, hanged, and drawe, on Myhilnesse day."—*Chron.* p. 316.

¹ A.D. 1400. Cicetir. "The erl of Salesbury was ded [beheaded?]; and worthi, for he was a gret favorere of the Lollardis, a despiser of sacramentis, for he wold not be confessid when he schuld deie."

² "This was John Badby, who was burnt in Smithfield in March 1410. See Foxe's *Actes and Monuments*, iii. 235, ed. S. R. Cuttley, 8vo. 1844."—T. Wright. Also see Hocceleve's long verses about him in *De Regimine*, p. 11—12, Roxb. Club, 1860.

³ *him grete*] grete thyngs to him. Corpus MS.

But—subject always to the Pope—Capgrave loved England, and desired its weal. In the Prolog to his *Lives of Saints—Nova Legenda Angliæ*—reprinted in *Lib. de illust. Henricis*, p. 195—209, he praises his country,—in the bit englisht by Hingeston, *Henries*, p. 223-4 :—

“For England (*Anglia*), according to the definition of some, is (so) called from *En*, which is ‘In,’ and *Cleos*, which is ‘glory,’ as though (she were) ‘all-glorious within,’ nor indeed undeservedly. For although outwardly she rejoices in many and great prerogatives, as may be easily seen, for instance, in her fertile fields and abundant crops; in the vast weight of her wood-produce; in the loveliness of her meadows, streams and fountains; in the endless variety and beauty of her cities and towns, her castles and public buildings; and, finally, in the wonderful and angelic splendour and loveliness of the nation, both in countenance and in costume, in courage and vigour of mind, as well as in other countless worldly goods, in all of which, exclusive of that which lies concealed within, her beauty and her glory are resplendent.

“But, still more nobly and gloriously does her excellence and majesty of spirit shine forth from the virtues and examples of the Saints who have flourished in her, who all, like glowing constellations, lighted up the darkening world with their rays, while all men, in their clear light, could see that ‘God is no respecter of persons, but that in every nation he that feareth God and worketh righteousness is accepted of Him’ (*Acts* x. 35).”

He hoped to see England happy. He writes thus of the wise foreseers of evils to come under the weak child, Henry VI, who succeeded the hero of Agincourt (*Henries*, p. 148, 149-50) :—

“Many persons of a malignant disposition, interpreting amiss this coronation of our king [A.D. 1431], continue to sow among the people such murmuring words as these,—‘Alas for thee, O land, whose king is a boy, and whose princes eat in the morning’¹ (*Ecclesiastes* x. 16).

“May the Lord take away from our realm these pestilent murmurers, who delight to prophesy evil things; for I trust in the Lord that I shall see our borders in peace and prosperity, and our days happy, before the day of my death!”

And as a mean to this end, Capgrave, like Chaucer’s Merchant,

¹ And fyrste I remembred an olde prouerbe worthy of memorye, that “often ruithe the realme, where chyl dren rule, and women gouerne.” Halle’s *Chronicle*, 1809, p. 386 : the Duke of Buckingham is explaining to Morton Bishop of Ely, why he took Richard III’s side.

wisht to see our then-scornd Navy strong, that England might keep the sea (*Henries*, p. 155-6):—

"it is the opinion of many that, if the sea were kept by our navy,¹ many good results would follow: it would give a safe conduct to merchants, secure access to fishers, the quiet of peace to the inhabitants of the kingdom, to our king himself a large measure of glory. Our enemies laugh at us, and say—

"Take the *ship* off from your precious money, and stamp a *sheep* upon it, showing thereby your own cowardice,"—since we who used to be the conquerors of all nations, are now being conquered by all nations. The men of old used to call the sea 'the wall of England'; and what think you that our enemies, now that they are upon the wall, will do to the inhabitants who are unprepared to receive them? Forasmuch as this matter has already for the space of many years been neglected, on that account it has happened that already our ships are scanty, our sailors few in number, and those unskilled in seamanship, from want of practice. May the Lord take away this our reproach, and raise up the spirit of bravery in our nation! May He strip off the false and feigned friendships of nations, lest on a sudden, when we dread them not, they come upon us!"

Capgrave was not much moved by Agincourt (*Chron.* p. 312, *Ill. Hen.* p. 132—4), but he notes in his *Chronicle*, p. 313, the characteristic English answer of the Earl of Dorset in 1416 to the Comte d'Armagnac's summons to surrender:—

"Then sent to the erl of Dorcet this message, the erl Armenak,—
'Now art thou so streytid, that the se is on thin o side, and we on the othir. Therefor, be my councele, zeld thee; for ellis schalt thou deye.' The erl of Dorcet sent this answer ageyn,—
'It was nevyr the maner of Englischmen to zelde hem, whan thei myte fite.' And thouz the Englisch host had no mo men but XV. hundred, yet had thei bettir of XV. thousand, God and good prayeris hem helpyng." (No *gh* in *myte fite*.)

He evidently tried to be impartial where no church-doctrinal question was concern'd. At p. 107 of his englisht *Henries* he says:

"Now forasmuch as different writers have given different accounts of the deposition of king Richard [II] and the elevation of king Henry [IV] to the throne,—and no wonder, since in so great a struggle one took one side, and one the other,—I, who stand as it were in the middle between the two parties, consider that I hold a

¹ A.D. 1522. Halle's *Chronicle* (1809), p. 634: "and still the kynges great nauie kepte the narrowe seas, for then was neither peace betwene Englonde and Fraunce, nor open warre, as you have hard."

better and a safer path, since, having investigated both sides of the question, I set myself diligently to elucidate the truth alone, not indeed to the prejudice of any one who may write of these things after me, if he shall undertake to discuss this matter with more accuracy and clearness."

Capgrave's biographers, says Dr. Thompson, in *Dict. Nat. Biogr.*, "eulogise his character in the highest terms. The most learned of English Augustinians whom the soil of Britain ever produced, he was distinguished as a philosopher and theologian, practically rejecting in his writings the dreams of sophists, which lead only to strife and useless discussions. Fulfilling the mission of his order, 'it was his wont to thunder against the wanton and arbitrary acts of prelates, who enlarge the borders of their garments beyond measure, catching at the favour of the ignorant herd; not shepherds, but hirelings, who leave the sheep to the wolves, caring only for the milk and fleece; robbers of their country, and evil workers, to whom truth is a burden, justice a thing of scorn, and cruelty a delight.'—BALE."

If Bale saw Capgrave's MSS in which this "thunder" was contained, I regret that they have been lost. To me the thunder sounds like the volleys of abuse which Wyclif and his followers fired against the Papal officials in religious England, and specially against the Friars, among whom Capgrave was a chief. Can Bale have mistaken a Lollard treatise for one of Capgrave's? But however this may be, our Friar made a very (a too) favourable impression on his Rolls-editor, Mr. Hingeston, who says—*Chron.* p. xxiv:—

"it is impossible not to be struck with the singular honesty and straight-forwardness of character which must have belonged to the writer . . . The appeal of Robert Grosteste, Bishop of Lincoln . . . from the authority of the Pope 'to the High King of Heaven' is mentioned without a syllable of disapprobation¹ . . . He also men-

¹ *Chron.* p. 156, A.D. 1251: "In the XXXVI ȝere of hir [his] regne deied Robert Grostede, born in Suffolk, and bischop of Lincolne. He beqwathe al his bokes to the Frere Menouris of Oxenforth. He had be at Rome, and pleted for the rite of the Cherch of Ynglond undir the Pope Innocent. For that same Pope reised many new thingis of this lond, and gaf the benefices without consent of the Kyng, or patrones, or any othir. And this same bischop Robert wrot and seid ageyn the Pope; and at Rome, in his presens, appeled fro him to the hy Kinge of Hevene. So came he hom, and deied. And in his deth he appered to the Pope, and smet him on the side with the pike of his crosse staf, and seid thus: 'Rise, wrech, and com to the dom.' This wordis herd the cubiculeris, and the strok was seyn in his side, for he deyed anon aftir that." (*No gh in nite.*)

Capgrave's entry as to Thomas a Becket is on p. 140: "Aftir that fel gret strif

tions the several instances of attempted aggression by the Pope on the prerogative of the King, and the liberties of English subjects, in the true spirit of an Englishman, and it is impossible to doubt that he heartily approved of the false claims of the See of Rome being disputed, although he does not venture to say so in as many words. The general impression left on the mind, after a careful review of the contents of the Chronicle, is favourable alike to the head and heart of the writer, and calculated to inspire us with the greatest confidence in his accuracy and credibility."¹ [Not, I hope, when he tells the absurd religious stories of miracles, &c., that he sometimes does.]

§ 4. *St. Katharine.* Of the heroine of the present volume, "St. Catherine, Virgin and Martyr, whose day of commemoration recurs on the 25th of November, and who is the person intended when the Roman Church speaks of St. Catherine without any additional designation," Mr. T. A. Trollope gives the following account in the 9th edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, V. 229/2 (1876):—

"History has exceedingly little to tell of this saint; history, more properly so called, indeed has nothing at all. She is said to have been of royal parentage, and her life is referred to the early part of the 4th century. She was martyred at Alexandria. She was especially celebrated for her learning and philosophical culture, and has always been considered the especial patron of philosophical schools. But in proportion to the scantiness of authenticated fact, legendary fable has been abundant in furnishing forth lives of the saint. And it is to one of these legends that the well-known presentiment of the saint—which alone is likely to cause modern readers to feel any interest in her name—is due. It is said that in revenge for the discomfiture of a company of heathen philosophers, with whom she had been compelled to dispute, the holy and learned lady was bound to a wheel armed with spikes, in such sort that every turn of the machine would cause the spikes to pierce her body. But the cords were miraculously broken, and the malice of her enemies foiled. Hence St. Catherine, virgin and martyr, is always repre-

betwix him and the Kyng, for liberty of the Cherch; for which first was the bischop exiled, and many wrongis do to him and to his kyn. Thanne cam he hom ageyn, and was killid." Not much in this Becket bit, and the Saint's holy-ol story at p. 273, to bear out Mr. Hingeston's statement.

¹ A.D. 1402. In this tyme cam oute a bulle fro the Court, which revokid alle the graces that had be graunted many 3eres before; of which ros mech slaundir and obliqui ageyn the Cherch; for thei seide pleynly that it was no more trost to the Pope writing than to a dogge tail; for as ofte as he wold gader mony, so oftyen wold he anullen eld graces, and graunt newe.—*Chronicle*, p. 281.

sented with a wheel [see Raphael's picture in the National Gallery¹], and the extreme popularity of this saint, and consequent commonness of the pictures of her, is indicated by the fact that a wheel of a certain construction and appearance is to the present day called a Catherine wheel.

"The lover of mediæval painting may be warned against mistaking the pictures which he so constantly meets with, of St. Catherine with her wheel, for representations of St. Catherine of Siena, or of any of the other saints Catherine, who all of them lived a thousand years or more later than the first and original saint of the name."²

Capgrave says that he englisht the present *Life of St. Katharine* from a Latin translation of St. Athanasius's Greek 'Life' of her, made by Arrek, who died in Lynn many years before, and who had been "parson of Seynt Pancras in the Cyte of London a ful grete while," p. 14, 15. This St. Pancras must have been that in Soperslane, Cheapside, which was burnt in the Great Fire of London in 1666, and was never rebuilt, the parish being joind to that of St. Mary-le-Bow. The name Arrek does not occur in Newcourt's *Repertorium*; ³ and I don't know where else to look for him. The

¹ It is in Room VI, No. 168. Ruskin says that it was printed about 1507, in Raphael's second or Florentine period.—P. F.

² The other 5 Saint Catherine's are given by Mr. Trollope, in col. 1, as—"2. *St. Catherine of Sweden*, who died abbess of Watzen, on the 24th March, 1381, and is commemorated on the 21st of that month; 3. *St. Catherine of Siena*, born in 1347, whose festal day is observed on the 30th of April; 4. *St. Catherine of Bologna*, whose family name was Vigri, and who died abbess of the Convent of St. Clairs in that city on the 9th of March, 1463; 5. *St. Catherine of Genoa*, who belonged to the noble family of Fieschi, was born about 1448, spent her life and her means in succouring and attending on the sick, especially in the time of the plague which ravaged Genoa in 1497 and 1501, died in that city in 1510, was canonized by Clement XII in 1737, and had her name placed in the calendar on the 22nd of July by Benedict XIV; and 6. *St. Catherine de' Ricci*, of Florence, born of that noble family in 1522, who became a nun in the convent of the Dominicans at Prato, died in 1589, and was canonized by Benedict XIV in 1746, who fixed her festal day on the 13th February."

³ An Ecclesiastical Parochial History of the Diocese of London, A.D. 1708. *St. Pancras Soperlane*, Rectory:—This Church of S. Pancras Soperlane (so called, because near a Street formerly known by that name, but now, since the Fire [1666] call'd *Queen-street*) was a small Church, and stood in Needlers-lane, in Cheap-Ward. It is a Rectory, and one of the 13 Peculiars in this City, subject to the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Canterbury. vol. i. p. 517. . . . vol. i. p. 518. But being burnt down in the late dreadful Fire, it is since annexed to the Church of S. Mary-le-Bow (as is also that of Alhallowes, Honey-

story of St. Katharine's Life being told in the side-notes, I will not trouble the reader with a sketch of it here. The author's appeal to the Holy Ghost for help, in the Prolog to Bk. III, p. 171, should be noted.

§ 5. *Apology for the text.* The Author and his subject having been dealt with, I turn now to his text in the present volume, and must start with an apology to our Members for the waste of some of their money in it, money that would have printed 130 pages of another MS. The material before Dr. Horstmann to enable him to

lane), which Church of S. Mary-le-Bow is made the Parochial-Church for all these Three Parishes. And the Site of this remains only as a Burying-place for the Inhabitants of this Parish. . .

<i>Reg. Cant.</i>	<i>Rectores.</i>	<i>Patroni.</i>
Reynolds	25 Rob. de Sandwico, 2 Kal. Jul. 1319	Prior & Capitulum Eccles. Christi Cant.
	26 Joh. de Hertford, prid. Id. Oct. 1320 per res[ignationem] Roberti	
	263 Ric. fil. Basil de Sudbury, 4 Id. Sept. 1326. Adam de Branketre	
Islep.	287 Tho. Forster, cl. 6 Jul. 1361 per mort. Branketre	
	307 Will. de Drayton, 4 Kal. Mar. 1363 per res. Forster	
	Will. Gysors.	
Sudbury.	133 Rob. Martin, pr. 5 Oct. 1380. per res.	
	Gysors	
Courtney	135 David Michell, 19 Maii 1381. per res. Martin	
	277 Joh. Parker, cap. 12 Junii 1390 Joh. Wykyngston	
Arundel 2. P.	67 Joh. Prata, 26 Maii 1413, per res. Wykyng- ston	Archiep. Can.
	69 Joh. Hody, 20 Dec. 1415. per res. Prata	
	77 Ric. Lofthouse, cl. 18 Oct. 1416, per res. Hody.	
	82 Ric. Grange, 31 Dec. 1416, per res. Loft- house.	
Stafford.	106 Joh. Kirkby, A.M. 12 Nov. 1450. per mort. Grange	
Bourchier	74 Will. King, al. Holben, cap. 1 Maii 1459. per res. Bromh. Tho. Marks	

(A Robert Pratta was Vicar of East Winch in Norfolk in 1349.—Blomefield ix. 154, ed. 1808. I don't think *Prata* above can be a latining of *Akker*, acre, field. In the list of Prebendaries of St. Pancras, Kentish Town, Middx. in Newcourt i. 193-5, there is no name like Arrek.)

pick the best MS for his text was, the autograph *Chronicle* printed in 1858, and its Appendix III, p. 335-354, containing the Prolog of the *St. Katharine* from the Arundel MS 396, collated with the Rawlinson MS Poet. 116, and Arundel 168; and the Editor's business was to see which of these MSS had spellings and forms most like those of the autograph *Chronicle*. Now even an eye so careless of peculiarities as mine was caught at once by one most prominent characteristic of Capgrave's spelling, his avoidance of the guttural *gh*. It is shown in the first page of his *Chronicle* (after the Dedication), "the man *hite* Cayn"; it is in the last page but one (316), "he *hite* the emperoure that he schuld withdrawe his obediens fro that same Petir"; and it occurs all through the work. See the *myte fite*, might fight, on p. xx, and other instances above. Take a few more samples :

aute (aughte, owed) 167, 171	knythod 287
boute (bought) 186, 257, 314, 315	litynnings (lightnings) 314
broute (brought), 126, 127, 130,	midnyte 276
131, 134, 135, 186, 219, 226,	myte (might), 126, 188, 190, 191,
271, 280	222, 225, 226, 236, 248
caute (caught) 189	myty (mighty) 223, 238, 283
dowtir (daughter) 126, 133, 134,	not (naught) 268
219, 221, 314	nowt (naught) 104
faut (fought) 136, 221, 260	nyte 132, 284
fite (fight) 136, 184, 185, 189,	ny (nigh) 159, 229
216, 230, 239, 256, 281, 313	rite, ryte (right) 128, 129, 131,
fytyng (fighting) men 270	153, 156, 225, 226, 228, 276
hey (high) 44; heyer (higher) 220	say (saw) 191
hite (1. was cald, 2. promist) 5,	sey (saw), 89, 191, 363
133, 158, 264, 265, 316; be-	sowte (sought) 147
hite 297	streite, streith (straightway) 202
knites-mete (providing for knights)	thorow, thorw (through) 78
293	thorow oute (throughout) 186,
knyte, knite (knight) 133, 134,	271
135, 186, 187, 217, 227, 230,	thoute (thought) 245, 266
233, 234, 235, 237, 239, 249,	
258, 276, 307, 313 &c	

The only exception I have noticed in turning over some of the pages is *wright*, p. 240, and the footnote to it says that it is "written in a later hand" upon an erasure.¹ The other way of avoiding the

¹ Cherborgh, p. 257, for Cherbourg in France, has justifiably the final *gh*, though the Corpus MS reads 'Cherborow.'

guttural *gh*, which Capgrave occasionally has recourse to, is by using *th*: *brithnesse* 58, *manslawth* manslaughter, 185, 218; *rith* right 81, 131, *rithful* 132, 312, *rithfully* 40, *onrithfully* 209.

Having thus Capgrave's autograph forms, Dr. Horstmann would turn to Mr. Hingeston's print of the Prolog to *St. Katherine* from Arundel 396; and what would he find in it? For Capgrave's *rite* (once *rith*), 'ryght' 337, 339 (twice), 340 (twice), 345, 351; for Capgrave's *knite* or *knyte*, 'knyght, knyghtes,' 345; for Capgrave's *hey* high, 'heygh' 338 (though 'hey' 349/1); for Capgrave's *brith*, 'bryght' 341; for Capgrave's *say* or *sey* saw, 'saugh' 343, 347, 348; for Capgrave's *thorow*, 'thurgh' 347, 354; for Capgrave's *not*, 'nought' 350; for Capgrave's *broute* and *soute* p. t., 'isought' and 'brought' pp. 351. And that, to emphasize his love of *gh*, the Arundel man spelt *how* 'hough' 347.

On turning to Mr. Hingeston's foot-note collations, Dr. Horstmann would find, for the non-Capgrave forms *ryght*¹ 337, 339, 'rith Ar. 168, ryth Rawl.'; 340, 'ryth' Rawl. (righte Ar.); for the non-Capgrave *bryght* 341, 'brith' Ar. bryght Rawl. (bad); for the non-C. *saugh* 343, 348, the Capgrave 'sey' or 'saw' (347, 348) Ar. Rawl.; for the non-C. *knyghtes* 345, 'knythis' Ar., 'knyte' Rawl.; for the non-C. *thurgh* 347, 354, the Capgrave 'thorow' (through 354), Ar. 'thorw' (thorow 354) Rawl.; for the non-C. *hough* the Capgrave 'how' Rawl. ('who' Ar., both 'who' in 349); for the non-C. *nought* (350), the Capgrave 'not' Rawl. (noght Ar.); for the non-C. *Isought* 351, the Capgrave 'soute' Rawl. (sought Ar.). And the conclusion, before turning to the MSS themselves, would be, that of the three dealt with by Hingeston, the Rawlinson MS had most of Capgrave's forms, Arundel 168 rather fewer, and Arundel 396 least of all. This conclusion would be strongly confirmed by the rest of Arundel 396, for tho in 53/597-600 its *hyght*, *ryght*, *nyght* are the same in Rawl.², yet in 61/737-40 its *whyght*, *nyght*, *dyght*

¹ Ar. 168 and Rawl. have the bad 'ryght' or 'righte' in 351; and in 345 Rawl. has the bad 'rygh.'

² In 65/814-17 Ar. has *spyryt*, *nyght*, *lyght*, and Rawl. badly *spyryght*, *nyght*, *lyght*; in 185/225-7 Ar. has *fyghte*, *lyghte*, and Rawl. *fyght*, *lyght*; in 211/664-5 both have wrongly *plyght*, *nyght*, as they have *syght*, *bryght* in 225/888-9, and 229/953-5, and *bryght*, *lyght* in 251/1345-7.

are *wyte*, *nyth*, *dyth* in Rawl. ; in 73/939-41, its *fyte*, *hyghte* are *fyte*, *hyte* in Rawl. ; in 79/1-3 its *bryght*, *ryght* are *bryth*, *ryth* in Rawl. ; in 91/191 its *vogh* is *vow* in Rawl. ; in 93/237-8 its *thought*, *aboeght* are *pouth*, *abowth* in Rawl. ; in 117/615-16 its *nought*, *Ibought* are *nouth*, *Iboute* in Rawl. ; in 123/722-4, 205/568-70 its *nought*, *thought* are *nowte*, *thowte* in Rawl. ; in 127/783-4 its *whygt*, *disspyght* are *wyght*, *dispyte* in Rawl. ; in 141/1024-7, and 227/919-22 its *thought*, *nought*, *brought* are *thowte*, *nowte*, *brovte* in Rawl. ; in 163/1373-5 its *whygt*, *endyght* are *wyght*, *endyth* in Rawl. ; in 177/106-8 its *myght*, *sight* are *myght*, *syte* in Rawl. ; in 179/149-52 its *whight*, *ryght*, *bryght* are *whyte*, *ryght*, *bryte* in Rawl. ; in 217/751-4 its *nought*, *thought*, *bought* are *nouth*, *thowth*, *bouth* in Rawl. ; in 247/1266-7 its *nought*, *bought* are *noght*, *bowte* in Rawl. Moreover, these non-Capgrave forms continue in Arundel 396, as *hight* 264/81 ; *right*, *fight*, *might* 264/93-6 ; *myght*, *nyght*, *right* 266/135-8, &c. &c. *rightes* (= rites), *knyghtes*, *ryghtes* 271/324-7 ; *nought*, *bought*, *sought* 286/786-9, though in 267/163-5 the correct *wryte*, *kryte* occur, as doubtless elsewhere. And besides the wrong form in the rymes, Arundel 396 has them in the body of the lines : *sovght*, *novght* 13/193-5 (*soute*, *not*, Rawl.), *thorgh-orte*, *purgh-orte* 47/495, 508 (*thorow-oute*, *porw-out*, Rawl.), *movght* 53/588 (mouth, Rawl.), *thought* 195/400 (*pouth*, Rawl.), &c. &c.

In the face of this large number of gutturals in the Arundel MS 396, it is clear that any moderately careful editor would not have adopted it as the basis of his text before he had examined the Rawlinson MS, of which Hingeston's collation had—or ought to have—warned him that it was nearer Capgrave's forms.¹ Nevertheless, Dr. Horstmann copied the Arundel 396, sent it to press, authorised the setting of the whole of it—tho' he knew of the existence of the Rawlinson MS;—and not until the whole of the Arundel MS had been in type for several months did Dr. H. go to Oxford and collate the Rawlinson MS (of which he had not told me), and then found of course that it was a better MS than the Arundel one, independently

¹ Of course other forms in the Arundel MS differ from Capgrave's in the *Chronicle* ; for *dreynt* drown, *Kath.* 206/592, the *Chron.* has *drouch* 133, *dronchin* 74, and so on.

of the *gh*, which I knew nothing of till I took up the *Chronicle* some three weeks ago. I was savage about it,—as a testing collation could have been made at any time by Miss Parker at slight expense—but would not authorise the cost of setting the whole of the Rawlinson MS, as the text is poor, both in language and subject, and of little worth beside Capgrave's autograph *Chronicle*. I could not help telling Dr. Horstmann that his edition was a 'mess;' and I think his feeling that it is so, must have been one of the reasons that made him throw it up. I don't pretend to set myself over him as a person who hasn't made as bad or worse messes; no doubt I've made plenty more. The only thing is to confess the blunder, and beg our members to excuse it. All our workers can't be of the first class; we must often put up with some of the third and fifth; they show their good will, and we take the will for the deed. No very great harm has been done. (Some day we ought to have an edition of the *Chronicle* and this *St. Katharine* by a real language Editor.)

As to the gutturals, I feel sure that they had gone or were going in many parts of England much earlier than is generally supposed,¹ and I think that an occasional miswritten ryme like *white* (for *wight* active), *lizte*, *myzte*, in my *Parliament of Devils* volume, E. E. T. S. 1867, no. 24, p. 72/450-4—besides the like ones in the Text below—shows how the gutturals were pronounst even when they were written *ȝ* or *gh*. And as, according to my friend Mr. Walter Rye, all the good things and men in England come from Norfolk—or if they don't, ought to—I conclude that our standard English owes to Norfolk its exemption from harsh gutturals.

Thus far had I written (and printed) when a comment from our good friend Prof. Skeat came in, which makes me hope that fonetic folk will some day allow that Chaucer didn't guggle his *gh* as most, if not all, of the teachers of pronunciation have hitherto made him do. If any one in his England was subject to French influence, and was 'educated,' he was that man.

"I entirely deny your point about the loss of guttural coming from Norfolk! For it certainly came from France. It was the

¹ Compare the later 'slitingly,' 1654, *Nicholas Papers*, ii. 51 (1892); 'slitly,' *ibid.* 136; 'slited,' *ibid.* 212 (A.D. 1655).

natural result of Frenchmen learning English; and of Englishmen (peasants) copying their superiors. The guttural *gh* became 'vulgar,' and was purposely got rid of. More's the pity. *gh* becomes *st* in *Domesday Book*! Such a change began first in the South, in Sussex and Kent,¹ &c., where French words most abounded. Then it attacked Mercian, and lastly Northumbrian; and to this day the guttural lingers in Scotland. That's the geography, and the facts. For all you know, Capgrave may have had a French-speaking father or grandfather. Or even being in the church would have helped. The educated classes sided, in *this* respect, with the nobles.

As for *th*, as *rith* for *right*, it would occur anywhere where the scribe was well up in Anglo-French. Why, it occurs in Havelok (and in *Domesday Book*, I believe) over and over again: all it proves is that the scribe was better up in writing out Anglo-French than in writing English: a *very* common thing. So much so that our modern spelling is wholly Anglo-French. See my *Principles of Etymology*, Series I, p. 304.

The Arundel MS 396 is a vellum one of about 1440, with red initials. At the end of its last treatise, one on the Mass, leaf 130 back, is:—

"Iste liber est ex dono domine Kateryne Babyngton, quondam subpriorisse de Campseye²; & si quis illum alienauerit sine licencia

¹ I don't recollect any MS that avoids *gh* like Capgrave's *Chronicle* does.—F.

² The nunnery of "Campes, Campess, or Campsey Priory, in Suffolk,"—Dugdale's *Monasticon*, ed. Caley, Ellis and Bandinel, 1830, vol. vi, Part I, p. 583—7. "An Austin nunnery for the Nuns of the Order of Fontevault" (Taylor, *Index Monasticus*, p. 99). "The Nunnery was six miles from Woodbridge, lying on the right of the high road." Its "ruins are now inconsiderable." "Previous to the dissolution there were nineteen Nuns of this house, besides the Prioress." "Before Ric. I, Theobald de Valoines gave all his estate in this place to his two sisters, Joan and Agnes, with design that they should build a Monastery to the honour of the blessed Virgin Mary, wherein they and other religious women might live to the service of God. Accordingly they founded here a Nunnery of the Order of St. Austin, of which the foresaid Joan was the first Prioress." K. John confirmed the founder's design by Charter; John de Framlingham, clerk, gave the nuns the manor and advowson of the Church of Karleton, and their third charter "relates to the foundation of a chantry at" Campsey Ashe "by Maud de Lancaster, Countess of Ulster, which in 1354 was removed to Rokehall in Brusyard." As to this, see also Dugdale, vol. vi, Part III, p. 1468.

"Campsey-Ash, a parish in the hundred of Loes in the county of Suffolk, 2½ miles to the E. of Wickham Market, its post town, which is a station on the Framlingham Junction of the East Suffolk railway. The par. lies on the E. side of the river Deben, and was the site of a nunnery of the order of St. Clare, founded in the latter part of the 12th century by Theobald de Valoines, and to

vna cum consensu dictarum [sanctimonialium?] conuentus, maledictionem dei omnipotentis incurrat, & anathema sit!"

The Arundel MS 168 is of paper, with a vellum wrapper to each sheet, and is a thin folio written in double columns, about 1440—50 A.D. Forty-six pages of collations of it are on p. 405—450 below.

The Arundel MS 20 is a paper MS in double columns, ab. 1450—60, and has the *gh*. It has also the *xal*, *xulde* of the Lynn Gilds in the Society's *Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, and other East-Midland texts. I copy, as a sample of Arundel 20, four stanzas that have *gh* rymes:—

lf. 23, bk., col. 1. (Bk. IV, Prol., p. 264 below.)

- ¶ But *theis* same ij For very werynes 92
left *their* honour & resynyd *their* ryzt.
Fut grete excusse had *thei* in sykernes;
Thei seyð *theyr* grete labur & *their* syzt
A-vaylle *them* ryzt nouzt nor yt myzt; 96
for y^e more *thei* dyd, y^e more *thei* had to do:
wherfor in sykernes *thus thei* twoo 98
¶ Resynyd *theyr* ryzt vnto *this* same man . . .

lf. 23, bk., col. 2. (Bk. IV, Ch. 2, p. 267 below.)

- T**han) y^e romayns with a cummyn assent 162
letters prevyly off grete sentence wryzt,
And in-to brytan) to constantyne *them* sent,
In whyche *thei* preyð hym), os he was knyzt,
That he cum helpe *them* ageyns *this* tyrant to fyzt;¹ 166
Thei wolde be-tray hym), *thei* seyð, he xulde not spede;
Thys was *theyr* ende: "*cum* helpe vs at oure nede." 168

lf. 26, bk., col. 1. (Bk. IV, Ch. 12, p. 286 below.)

- Ryzt *thus* yt semys by oure creatore, 785
god off hevyn), *that* aft made off nouzt,—
3e take a-wey From) hym *that* dew honore
That he xulde hathe, *that* he Fut dere bouzt,
when *that* in erthe byselye oure helthe he souzte: 789
• *This* same honor gyue 3e to dewls ymagys
Whyche 3e haue set here solely off stagys. 791

which a chantry was attached by Mand de Lancaster. The nunnery, of which there are some remains, had a revenue at the Dissolution of £182 9s., and was given to Sir William Willoughby." Hamilton's *National Gazetteer*, 1868, vol. i, p. 470, col. 1. *Campsie* in Stirlingshire is out of the question.

¹ Note that Dr. Horstmann prints in brackets the wrongly-spelt '*fyght*,' when he supplies the ryme-word to Capgrave's '*wryte . . knyte*,' which the Arundel scribe has, in this instance, rightly kept.

Arundel MS 20, lf. 28, bk., col. 1, at foot. (Bk. IV, Ch. 18, p. 301 below.)

¶ Thus was she confortyd, & lefte aft that nyght	1247
In presone stytt, in suche oryson alone ;	
The savowre abode, & sum-what of y ^e lyght,	
After y ^e tyme the Aungeth was gone :	
He hathe made hyr hardy & stable as y ^e stone :	1251
Ther xatt no peyn hyr now remeue	
Fro y ^e Feythe nor From hyr be-leue.	1253

Gh rymes occur again, like *nouzt*, *wrouzt*, lf. 26, col. 1 ; *nouzte*, *thouzt*, lf. 27, col. 1 ; *nouzt*, *brought*, lf. 27, bk., col. 2 ; *thouzt*, *nouzt*, col. 1, &c. &c.

§ 6. *Miscellaneous.* Mr. Thomas Austin has made the Index of Names and Glossary to the Text ; I put the side-notes and headlines ; and as our subscribers expect forewords of some kind to their volumes, I have knockt the present ones together, almost wholly from Mr. Hingeston's editions¹ of the *Chronicle* and *Illustrious Henries* in the Rolls Series. It has been a bore to do this, as other pressing work had to be set aside for it ; but no one else could be got. I cannot give time to hunt out the sources of the fictionary Life or write notes on the text. Dr. Schick's faithful work on his equally worthless *Temple of Glas* by Lydgate, shames me and makes me admire his thoroughness and zeal. He could not have workt more diligently and ably, had his author been Cynewulf, Chaucer, or Shakspeare. I salute and honour him, and those of his nation and of mine² who edit in his spirit. At 67, and with five years' work in arrear, I am content to shirk ; and now I am off to bed.—F. J. F.

3, *St. George's Square, London, N.W., Feb. 9, 1892, 1 a.m.*

P. S.—Capgrave's *De Illustribus Henricis*, says its author, "prides itself on its brevity in its humble panegyrics on the men

¹ There is much research and good honest work in the volumes, for which I feel grateful to their Editor, whom I have so plunderd.—He is now the Rev. F. C. Hingeston-Randolph of Ringmore Rectory, near Kingsbridge, Devon, and has, since his *Capgrave*, edited several old texts, Exeter Bishops' Registers.

² In 'mine' I include Dr. Mary N. Colvin and her fellow-countrymen. Many of the Old French Text Society's men are of the right sort too ; above all, its Founders, Prof. Paul Meyer and Prof. Gaston Paris, who are an honour to their country.

who bear this name" (p. 100-1: Hen. IV of England). It is divided into three Parts. Part I contains the Lives of the 6 Emperors, Henry I—Henry VI,¹ A.D. 918—1198; Part II, the Lives of the 6 Kings, Henry I—VI of England,² A.D. 1100—1446; Part III, shorter Lives of twelve other Henries, A.D. 1031—1406: 1. Henry, King of the Dacians, that is, Eric VI of Denmark (A.D. 1241—1250); 2. Henry I, King of France (1031—59); 3. Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans (1216—71); 4. Henry, Count of Champagne, made King of Jerusalem in 1192; 5. Henry, Archbishop of Sens (1122); 6. Henry, Duke of Lancaster, grandfather of Hen. IV, died March 13, 1361; 7. Henry Bohun, Earl of Hereford in 1199, died 1220; 8. Henry de Beaumont, died 1340; 9. Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, the suppressor of Litster's Norfolk rebellion 1381, died Aug. 23, 1406; 10. Henry of Huntingdon, the Chronicler, 1108—1135; 11. Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent, A.D. 1279; 12. Henry de Urimaria, of the Order of the Hermits of St. Augustine, A.D. 1340, D.D. of Paris, a writer of several theological works.

On Henry de Beaumont (1309—33), of the family who had large estates in Norfolk (Dugdale, *Baronage*, ii. 54), Capgrave says, *Ill. Henries*, p. 196:

"I have undertaken to commemorate the memory of the Illustrious Henries; and chief among these it delights me to leave a

¹ A compilation chiefly from the Chronicles of Martinus Polonus and Godfrey of Viterbo, less from Vincent of Beauvais, Matthew of Westminster and Henry of Huntingdon, with an anecdote of St. Jerome.—Hingeston, *De Ill. Hen.*, xx.

² From Henry of Huntingdon, Walsingham, Higden's *Polychronicon*, and Giraldus Cambrensis.

As to the dates of Part II, Mr. Hingeston says, *De Ill. Hen.* xxv:—"The fourth and two following Chapters were certainly composed not later than the year 1446, in which Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, died, as the Author speaks of him in the first of them as still surviving. The 4th and 5th Chapters were probably written not long after the accession of Henry VI in 1421, as there are evident marks in the autograph MS. at the end of the latter of them, that the work was broken off there abruptly, and afterwards resumed with the sixth Chapter; and it is likely that this Chapter was finished between the date last mentioned in it, August 1, 1446, and February 1447, when the Duke of Gloucester died, or Capgrave would certainly have alluded to the death of his great friend and patron."

(On the household of Duke Humphrey, see his major-domo John Russell's *Boke of Nourture* in my edition of *The Babees Book*, or *Early English Manners and Meals*, E. E. T. Soc.)

record of those of the name of Beaumont, since I am their servant, and bound to this race by special affection."

Capgrave's Chronicle, tho begun before 1438, p. ix. above, was, I suppose, wound up and sent off, with its Dedication, to Edward IV, directly after his accession to the throne on 4 March, 1461. Like Chaucer's humorous appeal for money to Henry IV—his "*Purse*,"—the work would go to the new King at once; for fresh Sovereigns who bundle old ones out, are soothd by writers' assurances that God and the Right are on the winner's side. They generally do work with the big battalions.

With regard to the silence of *gh*, Mr. Gollancz instances the fact that in stanza 26 of the 13th-century *Pearl*—edited by him in his Series of early Texts, 1891, and by Dr. R. Morris in E. E. T. Soc., 1864—the scribe writes the disyllabic *-ie* as *yghe*: *yghe* eye, *lyghe* lie, to *dyghe* die, *syghe* saw, to *tryghe* try. In stanza 38 he rymes the adverb *hyghe* (meaning *hye*) high, with *cortaysye*; in 85 the past participle *tyght* with *crysolyt*, *quyt*, and *plyt* (n. plight, which rymes with *lyght*, *nyght*, *myghte* n., in st. 90, and, spelt *plyt*, with *delyt* in st. 93). Prof. Napier also reminds me that Chaucer rymes *plite* plight, with *appetit* in the Merchant's Tale, 473/2335-6 Six-Text;¹ but this is the O. Fr. *plite* condition, not the A. Sax. *pliht* peril. The author of the *Pearl* uses the two indifferently:—Gollancz, *Pearl*, 128. I wait for more MS evidence as to Prof. Skeat's theory.

In 1547, Salesbury says that *gh* is not guttural, and that Englishmen do not like the sound:

"*Gh* has the same sound as our [Welsh] *ch*, except that they sound *gh* softly, not in the neck, and we sound *ch* from the depth of our throats, and more harshly (p. 210); and as it is disagreeable to the English to hear the grating sound of this letter, so Welshmen in the South of Wales avoid it as much as possible."—Ellis, *E. E. Pron.* 779.

¹ Though the Minor-Poems Ryme-Index by Miss Marshall and Miss Porter shows other like rymes, they arise only from scribes' bad spelling. Robert of Brunne, Lincolnshire, in 1338 rymes a *lite* little, with to *fyghte*, Chron. 113/3180, and *sight*, with *desconfit*, ib. 36/1018.

If then, both West and East, the neglect of the guttural had spread far north in the Midlands before Chaucer's time, and was not used by Capgrave in Lynn some thirty years after Chaucer's death, we may fairly assume that "the Father of English Poetry" either didn't sound his *gh* at all,—or if he did, yet so slightly as to avoid all tone of harshness.

In 1569 John Hart writes 'higher' *heier*, tho' he has *riht*, *rihtli*, *liht*. In 1599, Minshew evidently hears no guttural in *gh*:

"Gue, Gui, ^{like} Ghe, Ghi." "But if, after *u*, follow *e* or *i*, pronounce as the French *Guerre*, *Guide*: as in English *Guest*, *guide*: so in Spanish *Guerra* war, *Guía* a guide: sound *Gherra*, *Ghia*,—except these wordes following" . . .—*Spanish Grammar*, p. 6.

"The Compendious Schoolmaster," 1687, says, p. 14:

"*Gh* in the middle of a Syllable are but softly pronounced, as in *light*, *bright*, *might*, *night*, *right*, as also in *thought*, *straight*, *strength*, *slaughter*; and in *high*, *thigh*, *nigh*, *gh* are not sounded at all."

(As Capgrave was a Norfolk man,¹ we may note this book's "Essex stiles, Kentish miles, Norfolk wiles, many Men beguiles," p. 80. Misyn of Lincoln, in his *Fire of Love*, 1435, has *hily* for 'highly'.)

The entry on p. xiv from Gibbons's MS, Harl. 980, p. 231, lf. 120, gives "Houeden fo 649" as its authority for its account of St. Gilbert, and says also "Vid Joh Capgrauē in Vit S^{ti} Gilberti manu-
sc[r]ipt ex Museo Rob Kemp milit d Gissing"; and then, after a list of 11 of the 12 orders of Augustines, adds—

"The 12 An order onely in Norff which had 4 house[s], one of them is faln into the Kings hand, and he gaue it to Walsingham, hite Peterston [in Norfolk, see Dugdale. N. B. the *gh* is left out of *hight* cald].

"per Joh Capgrauē in vii sermon at Cambridg Ann. 1422, et ex museo supradieto."

The doubt exprest on p. xiii as to the MS "Guide to the Antiquities of Rome" being in Capgrave's hand, is settled by the following letter from Prof. Napier:

"Southfield, Cowley, Oxford.


"Wednesday, March 16, 1892.

"MY DEAR FURNIVALL,

"I was in All Souls' Library this afternoon, and looked carefully at MS 17. The result of my examination confirms your supposition. The handwriting of the flyleaves is *entirely different* from that of the body of the MS, and cannot be by the same scribe.

"Then I looked at the facsimile of the Cambridge MS of the Chronicle (given in *Hingeston's* ed. of the Chronicle), and I found

¹ The book contains, says the Author to the Reader (A 6 back), "some Raptures of Poetry on the Commandments, and on the Dolorous Ruins, and Glorious Resurrection [May 29, 1683] of the most Renowned City of *London*, from the devouring Flames [Sept. 4, 1666]," p. 104-6.

that that is again in a different hand, *i. e.* that neither the flyleaves in MS 17 (All Souls'), nor the body of the MS No. 17, are in the same handwriting as the Camb. Univ. MS of the Chronicle. All three are different. Thence follows, that if the Cambr. Univ. Lib. MS of the Chronicle is really Capgrave's Autograph, that MS 17 (All Souls' = the Latin treatise on the Creeds) was not written by him. It is true that the sign  occurs twice in MS 17 (on p. 44, and on the last page), but that might have been copied from the MS from which MS 17 was copied.

"After examining the MS myself, I got Macray to come over with me to the All Souls' Library, and he looked at it, and came to precisely the same conclusion that I had formed.

"Yours ever, A. S. NAPIER."

18 March, 1892. Prebendary Hingeston-Randolph kindly sends me

"A word about Friend Arrek and Newcourt's List of the Rectors of St. Pancras', City (p. xxiii-iv). Some of the Canterbury Registers having been lost, the record of his Institution is no doubt lost with one of them. I suspect he came in between Rich. de Sudbury, instituted in 1326, and Adam de Branketre (who survived till Islip's time, but was instituted by a Bishop whose Register has perished). The Registers of Simon de Mepham, John de Stratford, John de Ufford, and Thomas de Bradewardin (1328—1349) have perished. As Islip became Archbishop late in 1349, and Branketre was, therefore, instituted before the end of that year, I think it very likely that Arrek was instituted, and either died or resigned, between the years 1327 and 1350. He died, it seems, at Lynn, probably of the 'Black Death,' which desolated England in 1349, and was especially destructive in Norfolk."

CORRIGENDA.

p. 14, v. 224,	read rewardc	instead of rewar
p. 40, v. 388,	" y ^t	" " pat
p. 40, v. 394,	" knew	" " know
p. 78, v. 1043,	" a rest	" " a-rest
p. 81, v. 28,	" wedded nedys,	" " wedded, nedys
p. 148, v. 1156,	" neybour	" " neybour[s]
p. 172, v. 54,	" baptym	" " baytym
p. 230, v. 1003,	" to	" " te
p. 263, note v. 68,	" trost	" " trust
p. 276, v. 467,	" am ful	" " amful
p. 287, note, add 804	Wherfor	
p. 316, add note:	1685 Rawl. hym instead of hem	
p. 354, v. 507, read No[n]	instead of N[o]n	
p. 372, v. 1036, add to brent:	¹ ul. rent; and so in the notes: Rawl. rent	

As there's an empty page, and I've long been exercised about the pronunciation of *i* in Shakspeare's time, I note that when some fonetic friends told me that Shakspeare pronounst *i* like our *ee* in *meet*, I quoted his Quartos in which *ay*, *aye*, yes, is, as a rule printed *I*,¹ and I took this as proof that Shakspeare's long *i* was the same, or nearly the same, as ours. But seeing that Shakspeare didn't correct his Quartos himself, my fonetic folk at first poohpoohd this *I* as a compo's vulgarism. Now, however, one repeats the late A. J. Ellis, and says that both *aye* and *I* were sounded as our *ai*, *ei*, *a*, in *vain*, *vein*, *vane*. I cannot away with this, further than to admit that the flat and dull long *a* may have existed alongside of our strong and sharp *i*. Scotchmen, I believe, still call *my* 'ma' (*a* in *father*), but then a Scotchman is capable of anything. As Andrew Borde says, "Trust yow no Skot" 59, 326 (E. E. T. Soc.).

In 1586, Baret's *Alvearie* clearly gives the diphthongal sound to *Ride*, *Hide* :—

"**I** Which standeth in the place of the third vowell, and hath bene taken for a single sound, is now so much doubted upon, that it is called in question both of his place and also of his name. It should be sounded (they say) like *ee*, as *Rid*, *Legere*, *Hide*, *Cauere*, to be pronounced as we corruptlie spell, *Reed*, *Heed*. And *Ride*, *Equitare*, *Hide*, *Abdere* (which commonly is written with *I*), as they say, should be written *Raid*, *Heid*, sounding *I* like the Greekes *ei diphthongus impropria*. But of this matter I said before, I would not here determine, leauing it to higher iudges Wherein you may be better resolued, if ye will consult with Maister H. Chesters booke, which he hath diligentlie written of Orthographie, after long and painfull trauell (as it well appeareth) in sundrie languages."

As Mr. Ellis has not (so far as I can see) quoted Minsheu's *Spanish Grammar*, 1599, on the point, I extract the passage here, for I think it makes for my side :

Definition of Orthopœia. "Orthographie . . Heereto belongeth *Orthopœia*, which is a right rule of true speaking, of *ὀρθός* right, and *ἑπὶ* word, that in speaking men pronounce not more grosse or smal, then the nature of language will allow, or otherwise then the accustomed

¹ As the derivation of *ay*, *aye* is unknown, Mr. Hy. Bradley, the President of our Philological Society, suggests that it is *I* itself. In Plato's Dialogs *ἔγωγε* is often used for Yes ; and in some English dialects *Nich* ('Not I,' as we say) is used for No.

maner of pronounciation vsually permitted therein, as *Vino*, wine, not to pronounce it as Englishmen doe, *Veino*, but smaller, as they pronounce the double *ee*, *Veeno*; *Dios*, God, not *Deios*, but *Dheeos*. But of this hereafter in the letters more at large."—p. 5.

I three kinds. "I There be three kindes of I in the Spanish, that is, small *i*, Greeke *y*, and *j Jota*, or consonant. These two, *i*, *y* with a very small slender sounde, as the French and Italians doe, which is as the double *ee* in English, 'wee, shee, fee, decree': so in Spanish, *Tiráno*, a tirant, *Teerano*: *Vida*, life, *Veeda*, and not as Englishmen pronounce *Teyrano*, *veila*, which all other nations mislike in hearing them speaking Latine; saying *Propino tibi*, they pronounce *Propeino tibi*,¹ which I would wish they woulde but marke, and take notice thereof: for the French, Italian, and Spaniard, do learne and are taught by their Schoolemaisters to pronounce the Latine different from their owne toong, otherwise one nation shoulde not vnderstand another speaking the Latine. But in this toong as in the Italian and French, they must obserue except they will fal into the vice of *Iotacismus* and be laughed at, and not be vnderstood by strangers when they speake or reade."

I think Minsheu meant that the Elizabethans pronounst long *i* as we do, as Mulcaster did in 1582, and not as long *a* in *wane*, tho' I admit that his words are consistent with his *ey* being our *ei*, *a*, in *vein*, *vane*. And he gives the Spanish diphthong "*ei* and *ey*, where *e* is more sounded than *i*, as *Réy* a king, *Léy* a law."

But Baret's acceptance of "Maister H. Chester" as the leading authority of his time, set me to find out who "H. Chester" was. His name, as given by Baret, was not in any Catalog in the British Museum; but a reference to the Bodleian Librarian, Mr. E. B. Nicholson, brought from one of his Assistants, Mr. W. H. Allnutt (an oarsman, and a fellow-member of mine in the National Amateur Rowing Association), the explanation that "Maister H. Chester" was no other than the well-known John Hart, the author of the English *Orthographie*, in MS 17 Reg. C. 7, Brit. Mus., A.D. 1551; in print, revised and with a fonetic appendix, 1569. The mistake as to his

¹ This confirms what the Dutchman, Justus Lipsius, said in 1586: "Pronunciant etiam nunc (ita accepi) recte soli pene omnium Europæorum Britanni: quorum est *Regoína*, *Ameicus*, *Veita*. Recte, dico, quia non aliud insonuit hæc longa quam EI diphthongum."—*De recte Pron. Lat. Ling.*, p. 23. (Weymouth, *E. E. Pron.*, 1874, p. 18.) So too, Salesbury in 1550—67 blames those who "with their Iotacisme corrupting the pronounciation, make a diphthong of it (I), saying: *veidei*, *teidei*, for *vidi*, *tibi*."

name arose from his title-page saying his book was by "*I. H. Chester Heralt,*"

and was made by more folk than John Baret; at least by Bullokar in 1580, and Gill in 1619.—*Ellis*, i. 35.

Well, I lookt thro' Hart's MS, and workt thro' his book, and I do not hesitate to say that every honest man not blinded by a theory *must* admit that Hart and his followers sounded his long *i* (or *ei*) much as we do, or at any rate made a markt difference between the sounds of our '*vein, vane,*' and '*vine.*' The evidence from his lists below is incontestable. I quote first from his autograph MS.¹

MS Reg. 17 C 7, p. 101 or lf. 53, foot, by Jn. Hart, 1551.

"the same *e* lengthned (p. 102 or leaf 53 bk.) will serve for the commune abused diphthongs *ea, ai* or *ay*, & *ei* or *ey*, the powers of which voels we now myx together confuzibli, making the sound of the same long *e*, and not of any parfait *ea*. diphthong; as in theis examples of the *ea* in *feare*, which we pronounce, sounding no part of the *a*.

ai, or And for the *ai* or *ay*, as in this word *faire*, pronouncinge nether the *a*,
ay. or *i*, or *y*: also in *saieth*, where we abuse a thriphthong.

ei, or Also *ei* or *ey* we pronounce not in theis wordes *cheine* and *theym*, and
ey. such lyke; where we sound the *e* long, as in all the others.

ee. Now for the *ee* we abuse in the sound of (p. 103, lf. 54), the *i* long;
as in this sentence, "Take heed the birdes doo not feed on our seed"; also

ie. for the *ie* in *chief* and *priest*; in likewise for the *eo*, as in *people*, we onli

eo. sound the *i* long. We also abuse the *eo* in the sound of the *u* voel, as in
ieoperdi, which we pronounce *iuperdi*.

oo. The *oo* we have abused as afore is said.

Thus now knowing the power of the voels, and considering the nature and office of diphthongs, we see how theis foresaid doo us not onli no pleasure, but great displeasure. Now lett us understand how part of theis foresaid, and others, shall serve us, and doo (p. 104) us great pleasure: even as coulours necessari for us lyvely to contrefait the image of our pronounciation.

au. First the *au*, is rightly used as in *paul* and *law*, but not *law*.

ua. Then the *ua*, is wel used in *uarre*, for *warre*, and in *hual*, for *what*.

ei. Further the *ei*, is wel and properli used in *bei*, for *by*; in *leif*, for *lyfe*;
and in *seid*, for *syde*.

eu. Also *eu*, we use properli in *feu*, for *few*; in *deu*, for *dew*, and such lyke.

ue. The *ue* as in *question*; in *huen*, for *when*; in *uel* for *well*.

iu. Also the *iu* as in *triuth*, for *trueth*; in *rebiuk*, for *rebuke*; and in
riule for *rule*.

¹ Both the MS and book are in course of copying, and will be edited for the Early English Text Society. Will any open-minded fonetic man volunteer for the work?

ui. And the *ui* alone for our (p. 105, lf. 55) false sounding of *we*; and as in *huich*, for *which*; *uitnes*, for *witnesse*, and such like . . ."

That Hart in 1551 pronounced *by*, *life*, *side*, much as we do, is clear. Let us take next his revised and printed book of 1569:—

Hart's *Orthographie*, 1569, fol. 43, p. 2.

"Now wil I shew you examples of the Diphthongs made of two short vowels, and of others of one short and of another long. And then of *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, triphthongs. With short vowels, as thus (*ui wil reid bei ionder vi, ie, iu, ou. uel, huer de uat was uelner taken bei de iung hound*) which is written for (we wyll ride by yonder well where the Wat [hare] was wel neare taken by the yong hound) which doe come very often in our speach.

Of diphthongs whereof one vowell is short, and the other long as (*iu ua, ue, uer uaking in de fourt^t tour, huer az de bue¹ did pour uater upon de huet iu, ou. flour.*) which I write for (you were waking in the fowerth tower, when as the boye did poure water vppon the wheate flower) which also doe *uei.* come verie often. And for triphthongs as (*bi ueiz ov de huez buei*) for *ieu.* 'be wise of the hoyes bowy.' And (*hark de kat dyt^t mieu hucitz iu milke de ieu*), for 'hark the Cat doth mewe, whiles you milke the yowe.' And *eau.* a Basin and *caur*, for 'eawer,' and certaine others as will be seene hereafter. And for three vowels comming together, and making (lf. 44, pa. 1) *iue.* two sillables, as in example (*de viuèr set^t, siuèr it is puèr*) for (the vewer sayth, sure it is pure) & as in these wordes (*dis beier iz heièr ov pouèr den de deièr bei hiz feièr*), For (this bier [buyer] is higher of power, than the dier by his fire)."

Hart's book, then, is consistent with his MS. He pronounced *ride*, *by*, *wise*, *whiles*, *buyer*, *higher*, *dyer*, *fire*, much as we do.

Now look thro' the lists of words that I have taken from the italic fonetic part of Hart's book. Let us start with the flat *ā* sound of "vane, vein, vain, wain, wane, may," &c., which one of my fonetic friends says that all the English, American and German authorities agree in holding to have been the pronunciation of long *i* in Shakspeare's time, when John Hart livd and wrote.

Hart's *e* = *ay* or *ā*, in *may*, *wane*.

akuëntans (acquaintance)

aluez (always)

a-ue (away)

ber (bear vb.)

brøk

brødd (breath'd)

brëding

brëds (breaths)

²cher (chair)

dël (deal)

dëz (days)

ech² (each)

¹ Hart's *e* has a curl or tail under it.

² As the printers havnt Hart's symbol for *ch*, they print *ch*.

er (ear), Fr. *est le regne, et le renah*
 eðer (either)
 extreñ
 ezili (easily)
 fer (fear) fer (fair)
 greť (great)
 hebru (Hebrew)
 huę (where)
 konstren (constrain)
 leing (laying)
 lern (learn)
 ley (leave) leyng (leaving)
 mainteñer (maintainer)
 me (may)
 mening (meaning)
 ner (near)
 obe (obey)
 per (pair)
 persev (perceive)
 perz (pairs)

pented (painted)
 plenli (plainly)
 Fr. *pain* (bread) pen
 L. *quæ*, Fr. *kę*
 ređi (ready)
 reseving (receiving)
 rezonable (reasonable)
 se (say) seđ (said)
 seing (saying)
 serten (certain)
 set' (saith)
 seven (seven)
 sez (says)
 spek (speak) speking (speaking)
 stęđ and steid (stayed)
¹teching (teaching)
 ðe (they)
 ðe wer (they were)
 ðer (their)
 ðerin (therein) ðez (these)

Hart's *ei*, our long *i* in *life, thine, &c.*

bei (by)
 boldlei
 defeind (defined)
 deivers (divers *adj.*), *deiverslei*
 deveided
 deuicid
 dezeir, dezeiring
 diskreibd ei (I)
 enterpreiz
 especialei (especiaulei, 56 bk.)
 feind (find) feindet' (findeth)
 feiv (five, 5)
 fitlei (and by error? fitli)
 Florenteins
 hierbei (hereby)
 hui (why)
 huolei (wholly)
 indifrentlei
 komodiuzelei
 komonlei
 krusefeing (crucifying)
 leif (life) leik (like)
 leivli vois (living voice)
 mei (my) mein (mine)

meind
 partlei pasteim
 peip (pipe)
 perfetlei
 perseited (? meaning, 57 bk.)
 prezentlei (now)
 satisfei satisfeid
 seifring (cyphering)
 sertenlei
 signifieing
 signifieiet' (signifieth)
 singulerlei
 sufisientlei
 teul (tied)
 teim (time)
 ðerbei (thereby)
 treiflz (trifles)
 triulei
 uniformlei
 ureit (write)
 ureiter ureiting
 verelei
 weiz or uaiiz (-wise:) kontrari-, such-,
 ðis-, uðer-

¹ *ch* is printed because we havn't Hart's single letter for it.

Hart's *i*, our *ee* in *teeth*, &c.

apir (appear)	mīter (metre)
aspir (aspirate)	nīdful
aspird (aspirated)	nīds (needs)
bī (be)	prosiðeth (proceedeth)
bīing (being)	L. <i>qui</i> , Fr. <i>kī</i>
bīlīy (believe)	rīd (read)
bīis (bless)	rīding (reading)
bīfli (briefly)	sī (see)
¹ chīfest (chiefest)	sīk (seek)
¹ chīz (cheese)	sīmd (seemd)
derīvd (derived)	spīch ¹ (speech)
exercīz	spīdi (speedy)
exercīsing	striķ (the French have) 'litl striķs
gīv (give)	under ðer konsonants.'
griķ (Greek)	tīth (teeth) ²
griķs (Greeks)	tītl (title)
hī (he) 'ui mā sī, hī' (we may see, he)	tīri (three)
in stīd (instead)	to wīt (to wit)
īvn (even)	undiskriķ
kīp (keep)	(<i>hīh, līht, resitet¹ (reciteth) riht, rīhli,</i>
līkt of (liked of)	Hart sounded with short <i>i</i> .)
mīt (meet)	

Hart's *a* was our *a* in father. He has *ages*, *blām*, *deklār*, *frām*, *frāming*, *gāv* (gave), *grās* (grace), *hāv*, *hāvīng*, *imitāt*, *lāburs*, *lādi*, *mād* (made), *māket¹*, *nāms* (names), *plased*, *plāces*, *sām* (same), *tu separat*, ³*shāmfast* (shamefast), ³*shaps* (shapes), *spāk*, *tabl*, *tāk* (take), *thāms* (Thames), *wrāt az ðe spāk*. Hart gives fonetic transcriptions of French, &c. On leaf 57, he says—

"iu mē sī bei ðiz litl treatiz, ei hāv bin a traveler bi-iond ðe seas, emong vulgar tungs, ov huich, ðat smaul knōlē; ei hāv, hat¹ bin ðe kauz of ðis mein enterpreiz."

From the above lists and extracts it is abundantly clear that Hart and his followers did *not* sound the *i* in *mine*, &c., like the *ei*, *a* in our *vein*, *vane*. What other folk didn't? At least Mulcaster, I think; also Bullokar⁴ (next page).

In his *Elementaire*, 1582, Mulcaster says (Ellis, *E. E. Pron.*, 912)—

"I . . . soundeth now sharp, as *giue* [gyve], *thriue*, *altue*, *vriue*, *tittle*, *bible*; now quik, as *giue*, *lruue*, *siue*, *tittle*, *bible*, which sounds ar to be distinguished by accent, if acquaintance will not serue in much reading."

Ben Jonson in 1640 (*Ellis* 116), and when our long *i* was well establisht, shows us how to interpret Mulcaster's 'sharp' above. He says—

¹ *ch* is printed because we havn't Hart's single letter for it.

² *ē* *ī* in *tīth*, huich ðe kómon man, and mani lernd, dū sound in *ē* diphthongs *ei* and *iu*. leaf 47, p. 2.

³ *sh* is printed because we haven't Hart's single symbol for it.

⁴ See his fonetic writing in *Ellis* 838—45, and make your own lists from it.

"I . . . is a Letter of a double power. As a Vowell in the former or single Syllables, it hath sometimes the sharpe accent; as in *binding. minding. pining. whining. wiving. thriving. mine. thine.* Or, all words of one Syllable qualified by *e.* But, the flat in more, as in these—*bill. bitter. giddy. tittle.* incident. and the like . . . In Syllables, and words compos'd of the same Elements, it varieth the sound, now sharpe, now flat; as in *give, give. alive, live. drive, driven. tittle, tittle."*

And Gil in 1621 says of our long *i* :

"retinebimus antiquum illum et masculium sonum, atque unâ etiam laudem quam Justissimus Lips[i]us nobis detulit in Reginâ, in amicâ, vitâ," &c.—Weymouth, p. 18.

How ancient this long *i* (as we sound it) is, I must leave others to find out. That it existed in Shakspeare's time is certain; and we need not believe that he said 'ā want mā wān' when he needed a cup of sack, or call'd a girl 'mā lāf' when he meant 'my life.' Our late and lamented friend, A. J. Ellis, tho' he inclined far too much to the *i = a* theory, thus sum'd up his views (*E. E. Pron.* i. 116):—

"If the hypothesis here adopted for the pronunciation of long *i* by Palsgrave and Bullokar; Salesbury, Smith and Hart; and Gill, namely (*ii, ei, øi*) be correct, we have the phenomenon of the co-existence of two extreme sounds (*ii, øi*) with their link (*ei*), during the greater part of the *xv*th century, bringing the pronunciation of the *xv*th and *xviii*th centuries almost together upon one point."

Bullokar, in "Bullokar's Booke at large, for the Amendment of Orthographie for English speech," 1580, tho' he gives only one vowel and one consonant sound to *i* and to *y* (p. 5), yet practically distinguishes between the short and long sounds of the vowel, and writes with his accented *y* for long *i*.¹ His short sound is *i* or *y*: *thing, lyk = lick*; he contrasts 'too *wīn*, or get,' with *wīn*, *wfnd*, and 'too *pyn, thyn*' and *wynd* with *thin*. Here are some of his long *i* words :

besyð	lyf	rýnd	wryt
být (bite)	lyk	rýp	wryten (long)
declýnatiuz	lýuz	rýping	wryting
declýning	merchandýz	stryf	wrytor
derýnatiuz	mislyk	stryk	wýld
despyéz ¹	mýnd	suffýciently ²	wýli
deuýd	paradye' (-ise)	sýn (sign)	wýn
exercýz ²	prouýded	thýn	wýnd
fýl (file)	prýe' (price)	týn	wýndi
fýnd	pýl (pile)	výl	wýuz (wives)
gýd	pýn (pine)	whýt	wýz
kýnd			

¹ Compare "a manz nám (name); a he'l of the foot, an elm-tre', a heern (Heron); onesti, stónen, stóni, stón-lyk,"—p. 28.

² These are short *i* in B's *Æsopz Fablez*, 1585.

To the list above, Bullokar's *Æsopz Fablez* of 1585 adds, among other words :

abydden	deserfeth	mycez	stryningz
abydeth	despyzed	myñ	strykn
adyfedly	despyzory	outsydz	sydz
alyñ' (alive)	dezýr	prýc' (price)	sýnz (signs)
a-sýd	dezýred	prýd	týlz
behýnd	dezýring	pýn-tre'	výcez
bird-lým	dezýrous	recone'yf	whýf
blýnd	dryueth	reqýreth	whýfst
brýdl	empýr	reqýt	whýten
brýn	enqýreth	rýndz	wýld
býld (build)	fýnnes	rýp	wýldnes
býlded	grýnd	rýzn	wýzdom
býlding	hýdd	shýning	wýzly
býttñ	hýding	smýling	ýdl'
chýding	hýred	stryf	ýdl'nes
chýld	knýf	strypz	ýl'-land
chýlddern	lýknes	stryu' (strive)	ýrn (iron)
chýn (chine)	lým-twigz	stryuorz	

Bullokar's *ei* or *ay* sound was flat, as shown by his 'leizur, their, rein (reign), eight, plain, paier (pair), they, disdain, vain,' &c. 'Fire, desire,' he spells 'fyer, desyer' in 1580, but in *Æsopz Fablez*, 1585, they are 'fier, dezýr.'

Every one acknowledges that in 1621 Alexander Gil, Headmaster of St. Paul's School, sounded our long *i*; see his table in his *Logonomia Anglica*, p. 12, contrasting "*kin*, kinne; *kñn*, keene; *kjn*, kyne," &c. &c.

Pynson's englisht abridgment (1516) of Capgrave's *Nova Legenda Angliæ* starts with "Here begynneth the Kalendre of the newe Legende of Englande," above a woodblock of the Crucifixion, and then begins

¶ The Prologe.



He firste treatyce of this present boke is taken out of the newe Legende of the sayntys of Englande / Irelande / Scotlande / and Wales, for theym that vnderstande not the Laten tonge / that they atte theyr pleasure may be occuppyed therwith / and be therby y^e more apte to lerne the resydue when they shall here the whole Legende / And it is to vnderstande, that not oonly those sayntes wer borne in theyse Countreys be in the sayde Legende and in this lytell treatyse / But also dyuerse other blessyd sayntes that were borne beyonde the see / and that came into any of theyse countreys, Englande / Irelande /

Scotlande / and Wales, doying there ony notable thyng to the honour of god / and to the profyte of the people—as to preche to theym the Faythe of oure Lorde / and to sette the peop'le in good ordre / Or that haue lyued a blessyd lyfe in any of theyse Countreys, to gyue the people example of good luyunge /— Be also in the sayde Legende and in this present treatyse, & be accompted to be of that countrey that they so came into / As seynt Augustyne, the appostell of Englande, whom blessyd seynt Gregorye, then beyng pope, sent fro Rome with seynt Paulyn / seynt Laurence the confessoire, and dyuerse other in his company, to preche the faythe of our Lorde to the people of this Realme, then beyng Idolatroures and clerely alenyatyd fro trueth"

(The Life of St. Katharine of Alexandria is naturally not in Capgrave's or Pynson's book.)

Capgrave's metrical Life of St. Norbert, A.D. 1440.

Owing to my not having lookt before to my notes in the copy of Ritson's Bibliography which Henry Bradshaw gave me, I mist till now (28 April, 1892) an autograph (?) English poem of Capgrave's in 7-line stanzas (*ababb, cc*). At Sotheby's Sale of the Savile and other MSS on Feb. 6, 1861, was sold for £150 to "Powis":

'80. CAPGRAVE (John). The Life, Miracles, and Visions of Saint Norbert, with the Rules of Saint Austin, written in English Verse.


'The original Autograph Manuscript of an hitherto unmentioned English Poem, on 59 Leaves of vellum, in the old oak covers, folio.

'That this is the original Manuscript there can be little doubt, as its writer, on the reverse of the last leaf informs us of it, stating also the very interesting facts of the date of its composition and for whom composed, viz.:

"Go, litil book, to hem þat wil þe rede;
Say you were made to þe Abbot of Derham;¹
Fast be Stoke it stant witz-uten drede.

¹ West Dereham in Norfolk, 1 mile S.E. of Downham, and 3½ miles N.W. of Stoke Ferry. It was the birthplace of Hubert, Dean of York, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, who founded an abbey here about 1188 for Premonstratensian canons from Welbeck. The site was granted to the Dereham family, and the ruins of the abbey were removed in the beginning of the (19th) century.—Hamilton, *Gazetteer*.

It is to Lords and Gentylis alle in sam,
 And eke to poor men a very pittance¹ hane.
 The Abbotes name was called at þatt tyde,
 The good Jon Wygnale,² þat never wold him hade
 For no gestis, but rather he wold them seke.
 The Freris name þat translate þis story
 Thei called Jon Capgrave,³ which, in assumpcion weke,
 Made a[n] ende of alle his rymyng cry,
 The 3er of Crist our lord, writ-outen by,
 A thousand four hundred & fourty yere.
 Aftyr þis lyfe, I pray god send us heveme.⁴

 feliciter.]⁵

'The first leaf of the volume has an illuminated Capital Letter, in which the author is represented as delivering his work to his patron, whom in the prohemie he addresses as follows:—

"Joye, grace & pees, love, faith & charite,
 Eyr rest up-on *your* goodly religious breest,
 To whom þet I, with moost humylyte,
 Eyr recomende⁶ lowly as þour preest;
 And þou; I be of rymoris now þe leest,
 Yet wil I now, obeying *your* comandment,
 Put me in danger in þis Werk possent."⁷—Catalog, p. 22.

Now "Powis" who bought the Norbert MS spells "Sir Thos. Phillipps," says Mr. F. S. Ellis; and Sir F. Madden signs "T. P." to "Powis" too. The MS proves to be in the Phillipps Collection at Cheltenham, tho I can't see it in Sir Thomas's Catalog of his MSS, in or near his "Sotheby MSS 1861," p. 301. I have askt Mr. Fenwick's leave to have the MS copied and edited for the E. E. Text Society; but he says it "is one of the MSS that we are not intending at present to allow being copied,"—more's the pity! Let us hope that it has no *gh*, and that its other forms match those of the Gg *Chronicle* (once Moore 40) at Cambridge.

In 1524 Thomas Mosseingham, in his *Florilegium*, or Lives and Deeds of the Saints of Ireland, reprinted from Capgrave's *Legenda*

¹ John Sadresson, *alias* Wygnhale, occurs 1429.—Dugdale vi. 899.

² ! 'Was J. C.' The line has now six feet instead of five.

³ 'Feliciter per Capgrave' reads the Corpus MS of his *Liber de Illustr. Henricis*, ed. Hingeston, p. 186 n.

⁴ ! comende me. I've put, above, þ for y, and ȝ for z, and have expanded the contractions.

Scotlande / and Wales, doying there ony notable thyng to the honour of god / and to the profyte of the people—as to preche to theym the Faythe of oure Lorde / and to sette the people in good ordre / Or that haue lyued a blessyd lyfe in any of theyse Countreys, to gyue the people example of good lynyng /— Be also in the sayde Legende and in this present treatyse, & be accompted to be of that countrey that they so came into / As seynt Augustyne, the appostell of Englande, whom blessyd seynt Gregorye, then beyng pope, sent fro Rome with seynt Paulyn / seynt Laurence the confessoure, and dyuerse other in his company, to preche the faythe of our Lorde to the people of this Realme, then beyng Idolatroures and clerely alyenatyed fro trueth”

(The Life of St. Katharine of Alexandria is naturally not in Capgrave's or Pynson's book.)

Capgrave's metrical Life of St. Norbert, A.D. 1440.

Owing to my not having lookt before to my notes in the copy of Ritson's Bibliography which Henry Bradshaw gave me, I mist till now (28 April, 1892) an autograph (?) English poem of Capgrave's in 7-line stanzas (*ababb, cc*). At Sotheby's Sale of the Savile and other MSS on Feb. 6, 1861, was sold for £150 to "Powis":

'80. CAPGRAVE (John). The Life, Miracles, and Visions of Saint Norbert, wth the Rules of Saint Austin, written in English Verse.


'The original Autograph Manuscript of an hitherto unmentioned English Poem, on 59 Leaves of vellum, in the old oak covers, folio.

'That this is the original Manuscript there can be little doubt, as its writer, on the reverse of the last leaf informs us of it, stating also the very interesting facts of the date of its composition and for whom composed, viz.:

"Go, litil book, to hem þat wil þe rede;
Say you were made to þe Abbot of Derham;¹
Fast be Stoke it stant witz-onten drede.

¹ West Dereham in Norfolk, 1 mile S.E. of Downham, and 3½ miles N.W. of Stoke Ferry. It was the birthplace of Hubert, Dean of York, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, who founded an abbey here about 1188 for Premonstratensian canons from Welbeck. The site was granted to the Dereham family, and the ruins of the abbey were removed in the beginning of the (19th) century.—Hamilton, *Gazetteer*.

It is to Lords and Gentyls alle in sam,
 And eke to pore men a very piliance (? pittance) ham.
 The Abbotes name was called at þatt tyde,
 The good Jon Wygnaile,¹ þat never wold him hide
 For no gestis, but rather he wold them seke.
 The Freris namē þat translate þis story
 Thei called Jon Capgrauē,² which, in assumpeion weke,
 Made a[n] ende of alle his rymyng cry,
 The 3er of Crist our lord, witȝ-ouȝten ly,
 A thousand four hundred & fourty evenē.
 Aftyr þis lyfe, I pray god send us hevene.”

 felicite[er.]³

‘The first leaf of the volume has an Illuminated Capital Letter, in which the author is represented as delivering his work to his patron, whom in the prohome he addresses as follows:—

“Joye, grace & pees, love, faith & charite,
 Evyr rest up-on ȝour goodly religious breest,
 To whom þat I, with moost humylite,
 Evyr recomende⁴ lowly as ȝour preest;
 And þouȝ I be of rymeris now þe leest,
 Yet wil I now, obeying ȝour comandment,
 Put me in danger in þis Werk present.”—Catalog, p. 22.

Now “Powis” who bought the Norbert MS spells “Sir Thos. Phillipps,” says Mr. F. S. Ellis; and Sir F. Madden signs “T. P.” to “Powis” too. The MS proves to be in the Phillipps Collection at Cheltenham, tho I can’t see it in Sir Thomas’s Catalog of his MSS, in or near his “Sotheby MSS 1861,” p. 301. I have askt Mr. Fenwick’s leave to have the MS copied and edited for the E. E. Text Society; but he says it “is one of the MSS that we are not intending at present to allow being copied,”—more’s the pity! Let us hope that it has no *gh*, and that its other forms match those of the *Gg Chronicle* (once Moore 40) at Cambridge.

In 1524 Thomas Messingham, in his *Florilegium*, or *Lives and Deeds of the Saints of Ireland*, reprinted from Capgrave’s *Legenda*

¹ John Sadresson, *alias* Wygenhale, occurs 1429.—Dugdale vi. 899.

² ? ‘Was J. C.’ The line has now six feet instead of five.

³ ‘Feliciter per Capgrave’ reads the Corpus MS of his *Liber de Illustr. Henricis*, ed. Hingeston, p. 186 n.

⁴ ? comende me. I’ve put, above, þ for y, and ȝ for z, and have expanded the contractions.

Angliæ the Lives of St. Brigit (Brigida), virgin (p. 202-6), St. Fiacre (p. 390-2), and St. Fursey (p. 393-6). In 1625 at St. Omer was publisht "The Life of St. Patricke [abridgd from the Latin of Jocelinus, Monk of Furness] . . . Together with the lives of . . . St. Bridgit (translated . . . partly out of Cogitosus . . . and partly out of Capgrave) and of Saint Columba." The translator's dedication is signed "Fr. B. B., one of the Irish Franciscan Friars at Louvain."—Brit. Mus. Catalog.

In 1874 Bp. Stubbs reprinted Capgrave's Life and Miracles of St. Dunstan, from the Bodley Tanner MS 15, collated with the Rawlinson MS A. 294, & Wynkyn de Worde's edition of 1516: *Memorials of St. Dunstan*, Rolls Series, p. 325-353. In 1886 Canon Raine printed Capgrave's Life of St. Oswald, attributed to John of Tynmouth, from the Tanner MS 15, collated with MS A 16 C 1 of the Dean and Chapter of York, in *The Historians of the Church of York and its Archbishops*, Rolls Series, vol. ii. p. 502-512.

The Life of St. Katharine.

BY JOHN CAPGRAVE.

THE LIFE OF ST. KATHARINE.

BY JOHN CAPGRAVE.

[*MS. Rawlinson Poetry 118.*][fol. 1]
[1st hand]

PROLOGUS.

Iesu cryst,¹ crowne of maydenys alle, ^{1 MS. cr̄pat} 1
 A mayde bar' þe, a mayde ʒaue þe soke;
 A-mong' þe lilies that may not fade ne falle
 Thou ledyst þese¹ folk, ryth so seyth our' boke, ^{1 MS. yese}
 Wyth all her' hert euer on þe thei loke; 5
 here loue, her plesauns so sore is on þe sette,
 To sewe þe, lord, & folow þei can nott lette. 7

 Ryth þus be ordyr we wene þou ledyst þe daunce: 8
 Thi moder folowyth þe next, as reson is,
 And after othir, þei goo rith as her chaunce
 Is schap to hem of ioye that may not mys;
 But next that lady a-boue alle othir in blys 12
 ffolowyth þis mayde weche we clepe kateryne.
 Thus wene we, lord, be-cause þat þou and thyne 14

 haue ʒoue to hir' of grace so grete plente, 15
 þat alle þe priuileges weche be in othir found
 Ar sett in hyr as in souereyne hye degre,
 ffor in alle þese rychely doth she habound—
 loke alle þese seyntis þat on þis world¹ so round 19
 leuyd her sumtyme, & in sum spyce or kynde <sup>1 MS. werd world,
werd crossed out</sup>
 here uertues shal we in þis same mayde fynde. 21

THE LIFE OF ST. KATHARINE.

BY JOHN CAPGRAVE.

[MS. Arundel 396.]

PROLOGUS.

- A** ihesu criste, crowne of maydenes alle, 1 Christ, the
Crown of
Maidens,
 A mayde bare the, a mayde gave þe sook ;
 A-mongis the lylies that may not fade ne falle
 Thov ledest these folk, ryght so seythe the book,
 With al her hert euere on the thei look ; 5
 her love, her plesavns so sore is on the sette,
 To sewe the, lord, and folwe thei can not lette. 7
- Right thus be ordre we wene thov ledest the davnce : 8 comes first ;
 Thy moder folweth the nexte, as resoun is, next, His
Mother ;
 And after other, thei go ryght as her chavnce
 Is shape to hem of ioie that may not mys ;
 But next that lady a-bove alle other in blys 12
 ffolweth this mayde whiche we clepe kataryne. third, St.
Katharine,
 Thus wene we, lord, be-cavse that thov and thynne 14
- have þove to hir of grace so greet plente, 15
 That alle thy pryvileges whiche been in other fownde
 Arn sette in hir as in souereyn of (!) heygh de-gree
 ffor in alle these rychely dooth she abounde—
 Looke alle these seyntis that in this world so rounde 19 who had the
virtues of all
the Saints.
 Leved here sumtyme, and in som spyce or kynde
 here vertues shal we in this same mayde fynde. 21

<i>Prolog.</i>	Thou 3aue to ion, lord, þe grete euangelyste,	22
	Thin owne presens whan he hens shuld wende :	
	That same presens rithe euene, as þou lyste,	
	Thou 3aue þis mayde at hyr' lyuys ende.	
	A welles of oyle eke þou wold hyr' sende	26
	Out of hyr' graue, as had seynt nycholas ;	¹ orig. her'
	And for her' clennesses þou graunted hyr' ¹ þat grace	28
	Wheche seynt Paule had : mylke ryth at his throte	29
	Ran owt wyth bloode, men sey in tokenyng ¹	¹ MS. tokenyngis
	þat martyrdom & maydenhode ryth in o cote	
	Wer' medelede to-gydyr. þou douter on-to þe kynge, ¹	32
	So had þou fully as these holy þingis. ²	¹ corr. to kingis ² r. þing
[fol. 1, b.]	To a-rye þi graue hese aungellys eke godd sent	
[2nd hand]	Ryth as he dyd sumtyme for seynt clement.	35
	And as seynt margarete had her' petycyon	36
	At her' last ende graunted of godd allmyth :	
	What-manner man or woman þat wyth deuocyon	
	Askyth a bone of here, he hath it ryth	
	As he wyl haue, if he ask but ryth—	40
	ffor ellys fayleth he, it is not to hys be-houe ;	
	The same grace hast þow of godd, þi loue,	42
	Purchasyd, lady, on-to þi loueris alle.	43
	Therfor wyl I þe serue so as I can,	
	And make þi lyffe, þat mor' openly it schalle	
	Be know a-bowte of woman & of man.	
	Ther was a preste, of flesch he was ful wan	47
	ffor grete labour he had in hys lyue	
	To seke þi liffe 3erys thyrtene & fyue.	49
	3et at þe last he fond it to hys gret ioye	50
	ffer up in grece I-beryed in þe grownde ;	
	Was neuyr no knyth in rome ne eke in troye	
	Mor glad of swerde or basnett bryght & rownde	
	Than was þis preste whan he had it fownde !	54
	he blyssed þe ofte, & seyde all hys laboure	
	Was turned to solace, to ioye & socowr.	56

Thov yave to Iohn, lord, the greet evangelist,	22	<i>Prolog.</i>
þin owyn presens whan he hens shuld weende :		
That same presens ryght evene, as þov lyst,		Christ was with St. Katharine at her death ;
þov yave this mayde at hir lyves eende.		
A welle of oyle eke þov wulde hir sende	26	
Ovte of hir grave, as had seynt Nicholas ;		
And for hir clennessen þou gravnted hir þat graas	28	
Whiche seynt pavle had : mylk ryght at his throte	29	
Ran ovte wyth blood, men seyne in tookenyng		
That martirdam and maydenhod ryght in on cote		
Were medeled to-gedyr. þou dovter on-to the kyng,		
So had þou fully alle these hooly thyng.	33	
To araye thi grave his aungellis ¹ eke god sent	¹ MS. aunge	and His Angels made her grave.
Ryght as he dede for seynt Clement.	35	
And as seynt Margarete had hir petycyon	36	
At hir laste eende gravnted of god almyght :		
What-maner man or woman that wyth devocyon		
Asketh a bone of hir, he hath it ryght		
As he wyl have, if he aske but ryght—	40	
ffor ellys fayleth he, it is not to his be-hove ;		
The same grace hast þou of god, thi love,	42	
Purchased, lady, on-to thi lovers alle.	43	
Therefore wil I the serve so as I kan,		
And make thi lyef, that more openly it shalle		I will make known her life.
Be knowe a-bovte of woman and of man).		
Ther was a preest, of flessch he was ful wan,	47	A Priest
ffor grete labovr he had in his lyva		
To seke thi lyef yeerys threttene and fyve.	49	
Yet at þe laste he foonde it to his grete ioie	50	found that Life in the ground, in Grece.
ffer vp in grece beryed in the grovnd ;		
Was neuer knyght in rome ne eke in Troye		
More glad of swerd or basenet bryght and rovd		
Than was this preest whan he had it fovnd !	54	
he blysshed it ofte, and seyde al hys labour		
Was turned to solace, ioie and sokour.	56	

<i>Prolog.</i>	he mad þi lyff in englysch tunge ful well.	57
	But ȝet he deyed or he had fully doo :	
	Thy passyon, lady, & aȝ þat scharp whele	
	he left be-hynd, it is ȝet for to doo ;	
	And þat he mad it is ful hard þer-too,	61
	Ryth for straungenesse of hys derk langage.	
	he is now ded, þou hast ȝoue hym hys wage.	63
	Now wyl I, lady, mor' openly mak þi lyffe	64
	Owt of hys werk, if þou wylt help þer-too ;	
	It schall be know of man, mayde & of wyffe	
	What þou hast suffrede & eke qwat þou hast doo.	
	Pray godd, our' lorde, he wyll þe dor' on-doo,	68
	Enspire our' wyttys wyth hys priuy grace,	
	To preyse hyme & þe þat we may haue space !	70
	Thys preeste of qwome I spake not longe ere,	71
	In hys prologe telleth all hys desyre,	
	Who ¹ þat he trauayled many a londe, to lere	¹ = how
[fol. 2]	The byrth, þe cuntre, þe langage of þis martere, ¹	¹ MS. martire ?
	Who was her' moder & eke who was hyr' syre ;	75
	A-boute þis mater he laboured ȝerys eytene,	
	Wyth prayer, fastyng, cold & mekyll tene.	77
	So at þe last had he a reuelacyoun,	78
	All mysty & derk, hyd all undyr clowde :	
	he thowte he sey þoo in hys avysyon	
	A persone honest, clothed in precyous schrowde,	
	Whech euer cryed vp-on þe preest ful lowde :	82
	"Be-holde," he seyth, "þou man qwat þat I am,	
	What thyng I schew & eke qwhy I cam"—	84
	ffor in hys hand he held a boke ful elde	85
	Wyth bredys rotyn, leuys dusty & rent ;	
	And euyr he cryed vp-on þe preest, "be-helde,	
	here is þi labour, her' is all þin entente !	
	I wote ful welle what þou hast sowte & ment ;	89
	Ope þi mouth, þis book muste þou ete ;	
	But if þou doo, þi wyll schall þou not gete."	91

he made this ¹ lyf en englyssh tunge ful weel.	¹ r. thi	57	<i>Prolog.</i>
But yet he deyed er he had fully doo :			This Priest who found St. Katharine's Life, englisht it.
Thi passyon, lady, and al that sharpe wheel			
he lefte be-hynde, it is yet not doo too (!) ;			
and that he made it is ful hard alsoo,		61	fol. 2.
Right for straungenesse of his dyrke langage.			
he is now ded, þou hast youe hym his wage. ¹	¹ last words on erasure.	63	
Now wil I, lady, more opynly make thi lyf		64	I will re-tell it from his work.
Oute of his werke, if þou wilt help ther-too ;			
It shal be knowe of man, of mayde, of wyf			
What þou hast suffred and eke what þou hast doo.			
Prey god, ovre lord, he wyl it may be soo, ²	² it m. b. soo on erasure.	68	
Enspyre ovre wyttis wyth his prevy grace,			
To preyse hym and the that we may have space !		70	
This preest of whom I spak not longe ere,		71	This Priest
In his prolog telleth al his desyre,			
hov that he travayled many lond, to lere			
The berthe, the contre, the langage of þis martire,			
ho was hir moder and eke hoo was hir syre ;		75	works for 18 years to find out the facts of St. Katha- rine's life,
A-bovte this mater he labovred yerys eightene,			
Wyth preyeris, fastynge, coold and mekel teene.		77	
So at þe laste hadde he a revelacyon),		78	and then he has a revel- ation.
Al mysti and deerk, hyd vnder clowde :			
he thovte he saugh tho in a vysyon)			
A persone honest, clothed in a precyovs shrowde,			
Wiche euere cryed on þe preest ful lovde :		82	
"Be-hold," he seyth, "þov man), what þat I am,			In a Vision
What þing I shewe and eke why I cam"—		84	
ffor in his hand he held a book ful eelde		85	
With bredys rotyn, leues dusty and rent ;			
And euere he cryed vp-on þe preest, "be-helde,			
here is thin labour, here is ¹ al thin entent !	¹ overlined.		
I wot ful weel what þou hast sovght and ment ;		89	
Ope thi mowth, this book muste þou ete ;			
but if þou doo, thi wil shalt þou not gete."		91	he is bidden to eat an old book.

8 *Vision of the Author of St. Katharine's Life.* [MS. Rawl.

<i>Prolog.</i>	"A, mercy, lorde," seyð þis preeste to hyme,	92
	"Spare me now! who schulde I þis book ete?	
	The roten bredys, þese leuys derk & dyme	
	I may in noo wyse in to my mouth hem gete.	
	My mouth is small, & eke þei be so grete,	96
	Thei wyll brek my chaules & my throte;	
	þis mete to me is lykly to do noo note."	98
	"Ȝys," seyð he, "þou mote nede ete þis book,	99
	þou schalt ellys repente. ope þi mowth wyde,	
	Receyue it boldly, it hath no clospe ne hook,	
	let it goo down & in þi wombe it hyde,	
	It schal not greue þe neyther in bake ne syde;	103
	In þi mowth bytter, in þi wombe it wyll be swete—	
	So was it sume-tyme to ezechyell þe prophete."	105
	The preeste þo toke it in to hys mowth a-non,	106
	It semed swete, ryth as it hony wer'.	
	þe other man is passed & I-gon,	
	þe preest is stoynd as thow he turned wer'.	
	New ioie, new thowte had he than þere!	110
	he a-woke & was ful glad & blythe,	
[fol. 2, b.]	Off þis dreame he blyssyd god ofte-sythe.	112
[3rd hand]	Aftyr þis not long depe in a felde	113
	I-clad wyth flowris & herbys grete & smale,	
	He dalf, & fond þis boke whych he be-helde	
	Be-fore in slepe, rygth as I told my tale.	
	þere had he salue to aȝ his byttyr bale!	117
	It was leyd þere be a knyte þat men calle	
	Amylion fyt, amarak, of cristen knytis alle	119
	Most deuoute as on-to þis mayde.	120
	He fond it a-mong old tresour in cipire-londe.	
	In kyng petris tyme, as þe cronycle sayde	
	Of þat same cipse where he þis boke fond,	
	And in pope ¹ vrbane tyme, as I vnderstond ^{1 crossed out.}	124
	þe fyfte of rome, felt aȝ þis matere ^{2 MS. hane}	
	whiche þe haue ² herd and ȝet þe schalt more clere.	126

MS. Arundel.] *Vision of the Author of St. Katharine's Life.* 9

"A, mercy, lord," seyde this preest to hym,	92	<i>Prolog.</i>
"Spare me ¹ nov ! hov shuld I this book ete ?	1 overlined.	
The rotyn bredes, the leves derke and dym		
I may in no wyse in to my movth hem gete.		He protests that he can't.
My movth is smal, and eke thei be so grete,	96	
Thei wil breke my chaueles and my throte ;		
This mete to me is lykly to doo no note."	98	
"Yes," seyde he, "þou muste nedes ete this book,	99	But, being ordered to,
Thou shalt ellis repente. ope thi movth wyde,		
Receyve it boldly, it hath no clospe ne hook,		
Lete it go down and in thi woombe it hyde,		
It shal not greve the neyther in bak ne syde ;	103	
In thi movthe bytter, in thi woombe it wil be sweet—		
So was it somtyme to Ezechiel the prophet."	105	
The preest tho took it in his movth a-noon,	106	he eats the book,
It semed sweet, ryght as it hony were.		
The other man is passed and I-goon,		
The preest is stoynd, as thou he turned were.		
Newe ioye, newe thought had he thanne there !	110	
he a-wook and was ful glad and blythe,		awakes rejoicing,
Of his dreem he blyssed god ofte-sythe.	112	
After this not longe depe in a feeld	113	
I-clad wyth flovres and heerbes grete and smale,		
he dalf, and fond þis book wiche he be-held		and finds the book (see l. 50—1)
Be-fore in slep, ryght as I told my tale.		
There had he salve to aft his bytter bale !	117	
It was leyd there be a knyght þat men calle		
Amylyon fitz amarak, of crysten knyghtis alle	119	
Most devoute as on-to this mayde.	120	
he fonde it a-mong old tresovr in Cypre lond.		in Cyprus (far up in Grece, l. 51),
In kyng petrys tyme, as the cronycle sayde		
Of þat same Cypre where he his ¹ book foond,	1 r. þis	
And in pope Vrban tyme, I vndirstond	124	in the time of Urban V (A.D. 1362-70).
The fyfte of rome, fel al this matere	1 MS. hane	
Wiche ye haue ¹ herd and yet ye shal more clere.	126	

Prolog.

- þere was a clerk wyth þis same kateryne, 127
whos name we clepe in latyne athanas;
He tawte here þe reules as he cowde dyuyne
Off god of hevyn, of Ioye & of grace,
And sche hym also, for be here he was 131
I-turnyd on-to crist & to oure feythe;
He was here leder, as þe story seythe. 133
He wrote þe lyfe eke of þis same mayde; 134
He was with here at here last ende,
He say here martyryd, as hym-selue sayde,
He mote nede haue here lyfe in mynde!
He was a seruauunt on-to here, ryth kynde— 138
What schuld I lenger in his preysyng tary?
He was here chauncelere & here secretary. 140
He gate here maisterys thorw-owt þe partes 141
Off aȝ grete grece, her' fadyrs empyre,
To lerne here be rowe aȝ þe seuene artes;
þis same man payd hem aȝ here hyre.
He was as in þat courte fully lord & syre, 145
He knew here kynne & here counseȝ also,
Her' fadyr, here modyr, & aȝ þe line þerto; 147
Here holy life he knew, here conuersacioun, 148
Aȝ here holy customys qwyȝ sche levyd here,
[fol. 3] He stode be here in here¹ grete passioun, ¹ overlined.
He say þe awngelis how þei here body bere
ffer vp in to synay and leyde it down þere, 152
He saw þe weniaunce eke how it was take
On many a thousand eke for here deth¹ sake; ¹ MS. ded deth;
ded crossed out.
[2nd hand] he sey eke maxense who he was slayn), 155
Dropped from a bregge downn in a reuer',
Deyd so ful sodeynly in ful byttyr payn),
fforthe was he draw in to hell-feer';
Aungellys bar' her', þe deuelys bar' hys beer'— 159
Be-hold þe sundry reward of vertu & of syne!
On is in heuene, þe other' is hell wyth-inne. 161

There was a clerke with pis same kataryne,	127	<i>Prolog.</i>
Whos name we clepe in latyn Athanas ;		St. Athanasius (when a heathen) taught St. Katharine,
he taughte hir the revles, as he covde dyuyne,		
Of god of heuene, of ioie and of gras,		
And she hym also, for be hir he was	131	was then converted by her,
I-turned on-to cryst and on-to oure feyth ;		
he was hir ledere, as the story seyth.	133	
he wrote the lyf eke of this same mayde ;	134	wrote her Life,
he was with hir at hir last ende,		
he sav hir martird, as hym-self sayde,		
he must nede hir lyf haue in meende ! ¹		¹ h. l. m. on erasure.
he was a servant on-to hir, ryght keende—	138	
What shuld I lengere in this preysyng tary ?		
he was hir chavnceler and hir secretary.	140	and was her Secretary.
he gate hir maystrys thurgh-ovte the partes	141	
Of alle gret grece, hir faderys empyre,		
To leerne hir be rowe alle the .vij. artes ;		
This same man payed hem alle her hyre.		
he was as in þat covrt fully lord and syre,	145	
he knewe hir kyn and hir covnsel also,		
hir fadir, hir moder, and all the lyne ther-to ;	147	
hir holy lyf he knew, hir conuersacyon),	148	
Alle hir holy customes whil she leved here,		
he stood by hir in hir grete passyon,		
he savgh the avngell's hovgh thei hir body bere		St. Athanasius saw St. Katharine's body borne to Sinai.
ffer vp on-to synay and leyde it down there,	152	
he savgh þe vengavnce eke hovgh it was take		
On many a thovsende for hir dethes sake ;	154	
he saugh eke maxcence hovgh he was slayn),	155	
Dropped fro a brygge down in a rever,		
Deyed so ful sodeynly in a bitter payn),		
fforth was he drawe in to helle-feer ;		
Avngell's bar hir, the deuell's bar his beer—	159	
Be-hold þe sondry reward of vertu and of synne !		
On is in heuene, þe tother is helle with-Inne.	161	

Prolog.

long after þe deth of þis maxencyus 162
 Byschop in alysaunder', caterynes cete,
 Was þis sam mane, þis athanasius;
 In wech he suffred ful mech aduersyte.
 I wot not veryly 3ef it wer' he 166
 þat made þe psalme qwech we clepe þe crede,
 Wech we at pryme oft-tyme syng & rede. 168
 he deyð euyñ ther' &¹ holy confessour'. ^{1 r. an} 169
 And after hys deth myth vnneth be knowe
 þe lyuyng, þe lernyng of þis swete flou'r
 And martyr kateryne, of hy ne of lowe;
 Tyl on Arrek dyd it new I-sowe : 173
 ffor owt of grew he hath it fyrst runge,
 þis holy lyff, in to latyne tunge. 175
 Thys clerk herd speke oft-tyme of þis mayde, 176
 Bothe of her' lyffe & also of her' heende,
 Who sche for lofe her' lyffe hath þus layde
 Off our' lorde cryste, our' gostly spouse kende :
 þis made hym seker' in to þat londe to wende, 180
 To know of þis bothe þe spryng & þe welle,
 If any man coude it any pleyner' telle. 182
 Twelue 3er' in þat londe he dwelt & mor', 183
 To know her' langage qwat it myght mene,
 Tyl he of her' vsages had fully þe lore,
 Wȝth ful mech stody, tary & tene.
 [fol. 3, b.] fful longe it was or he myght it sene, 187
 þe lyff þat Athanas made of þis mayde;
 But at þe last he cam, as it is sayde, 189
 Ther as he fonde it from mynde all I-ded. 190
 ffor heretykys þat wer' thoo in þat londe
 had brent þe bokys, boþe þe leffe & þe brede,
 As many as þei soute & þat tyme ffonde;
 But, blyssyd be godd of hys hye sonde, 194
 þis boke founde þei not in no-maner' wyse—
 Godd wolde not þat þe nobyll seruyse 196

Longe after the deth of this Maxcencius	162	<i>Prolog.</i>
Bysshop in alysavndre, katarynes Cyte,		St. Athanasius was afterwards Bishop in Alexandria.
Was þis same man, þis Athanasius ;		
In whiche he suffred ful meche aduersyte.		
I wot not verely yet if it were he	166	
þat made þe salme wiche we clepe þe crede,		
Wiche we at prime often-tyme synge and rede.	168	
he deyed euene there an holy confessoer.	169	
And after his deth myght vnnethe be knowe		
The lyf, the lernyng of this swete flou		His Greek Life of St. Katharine was turnd into Latin by Arrek,
And martyr kataryne, of hey ne of lowe ;		
Til oon arrek dede it newe I-sowe :	173	
ffor ovte of grev he hath it first runge,		
This holy lyf, in to latyn tunge.	175	
This clerk herd spekyng ofte-tymes of þis mayde,	176	
Bothe of hir lyf and of hir eende,		
hovgh she for love hir lyf had thus layde		
Of oure lord cryst, hir goostily spovse keende :		
This made hym seker in to þat lond to weende,	180	
To knowe of þis bothe þe sprynge and þe welle,		
If ony man kovde it ony pleynere telle.	182	
Twelue yeer in þat lond he dwelled and more,	183	who dwelt in Alexandria 12 years to learn Greek.
To knowe her langage what it myght mene,		
Til he of her vsage had fully þe lore,		
Wyth ful moche stodye, tary and tene.		
fful longe it was er he myghte it sene,	187	
The lyf þat athanas made of þis mayde ;		
But at the laste he cam, as it is sayde,	189	
There as he fonde it from mynde al I-deed.	190	(See l. 121 & 50.)
ffor heretykes þat were tho in þat londe		
hadden brent the bookys, bothe þe leef and þe breed,		
As many as þei sovght and þat tyme fonde ;		
But, blyssed be god of that hey sonde,	194	
This book fovnde thei novght in no-maner wyse—		
God wolde not þat the noble seruyse	196	

14 *The first Englisher of St. Katharine's Life died at [Rawl.*

<u>Prolog.</u>	Off hys own mayde schulde be þus for-ȝete.	197
	A hundred ȝer' aftyr' it was & mor', þat þis arrek þis new werk had gete, ffro þe tyme of Athanas—for so mech be-for' Was he hens pased, I-ded & for-lore	201
	As from euery tunge, bothe hys boke & he, Off euery man & woman in þat cuntre.	203
	And be þis preste was it on-to englichmen I-soute & founde, & broute vn-to londe. hyd in aH counseyH a-mong nyne or ten, It cam but seldom on-to any mannes honde ; Eke qwan it cam, it was noght vndyrstonde,	204 208
	Be-cause, as i seyde, ryght for þe derk langage. þus was þi lyffe, lady, kept all in cage.	210
	Neuyrthelasse he dyd mych thyng þer-too, þis noble preste, þis very good man : he hath led vs þe wey & þe door' on-doo, þat mech þe bettyr we may & we can ffollow hys steppes. for thowte he sor' rane,	211 215
	We may hym ouyr-take, wyth help & wyth grace Qwech þat þis lady schaff vs purchasse.	217
	he is now ded, þis goodeman, þis preste ; he deyid at lynne many ȝer' a-goo ; he is ny from mynde wyth mor' & wyth leeste. ȝet in hys deying & in hys grett woo	218
	þis lady, as þei sey, appered hym vn-to, Sche bad hym be gladde in most goodely wyse, Sche wold rewar hym, sche sayd, hys seruyce.	222 224
[fol. 4]	Of þe west cuntre it semeth þat he was, Be hys maner spech & be hys style ; he was sumtyme parson of sent pancras In þe cete of london a full grete qwyle.	225
	he is now a-boue vs ful many a myle ; he be a mene to kateryne for vs, And sche for vs alle on-to our' lorde ihesus.	229 231

Of his ovne mayde shuld be thus for-yete.	197	<i>Prolog.</i>
An hundyr yeer after it was and more,		Arrek
þat this arrek this newe werk had gete,		found St.
firo þe tyme of athanas—for so moche be-fore		Athanasius's
Was he hens passed, I-ded and for-lore	201	Life of St.
As fro euery tunge, bothe his book and he,		Katharine
Of euery man and woman in þat cuntre.	203	(A.D.1362-70),
And be þis preest was it on-to english men	204	brought it to
I-sovght and fovnde, and brovght on-to londe.		England, and
hid al in covnseyH a-mong nyne or ten,		translated it
It cam but seeldom on-to ony mannes honde ;		(see l. 50, 57),
Eke whan it kam, it was not vndirstonde,	208	
Be-cavse, as I seyde, ryght for þe derk lang[ag]e.		tho' in hard
Thus was thy lyf, lady, kepte in cage.	210	words,
Neuerethelasse he did moche þing ther-too,	211	
This noble preest, this very good man :		
he hath led vs the weye and the dore on-doo,		
That meche the beter we may and we can		
ffolwe the steppys, for thov he sore ran,	215	
We may hym ouer-take, wyth help and grace		
Whiche þat þis lady shal vs purchase.	217	
he is novgh ded, þis good man, this preest ;	218	
he deyed at lynne many yeer a-goo ;		and died at
he is ny fro meende wyth more and wyth leest.		Lynn, long
Yet in his deyng and in his grete woo		ago.
This lady, as þei seye, appered hym on-too,	222	
She bad hym be glad in most goodly wyse,		
She wolde reward hym, she seyde, his seruyse.	224	
Of the west cuntre it-semeth þat he was,	225	He was a
Be his maner of ¹ speche and be his style ;	¹ overlined.	west-country
he was somtyme parson of seynt pancras		man,
In the Cyte of london a ful grete while.		and also
he is nov a-bove vs ful many myle ;	229	Rector of
he be a mene to kataryne for vs,		St. Pancras,
And she for vs on-to ovre lord ihesus.	231	in London.

16 *Capgrave was of Lynn, and of the Austin Rule.* [MS. Rawl.

<i>Prolog.</i>	Aftyꝛ hyme nexte I take vp-on me	232
	To translate þis story & set it moꝝ pleyñ,	
	Trostyng on other' men þat her' charyte	
	Schall help me in þis caas to wryght & to seyn	
	Godd send me part of þat heuynly reyne	236
	þat apollo bar' a-bowte, & eke sent poule ;	
	It maketh vertu to growe in mannes soule.	238
	If ȝe wyll wete qwat þat I am :	239
	My cuntre is northfolke, of þe town of lynne ;	
	Owt of þe world to my profyte I cam	
	On-to þe brotherhode qwech I am Inne—	
	Godd ȝeue me <i>grace</i> neuyr for to blynne	243
	To folow þe steppes of my faders be-for',	
	Whech to þe rewle of Austen wer' swore.	245
	þus endyth þe prologe of þis holy mayde,	246
	ȝe þat rede it, pray for hem alle	
	þat to þis werk eyther' trauayled or payde,	
	þat from her' synnes <i>wyth grace</i> þei may falle,	
	To be redy to godd whan he wyll calle,	250
	<i>Wyth hym</i> in heuyn to drynke & to dyne,	
	Thorow þe prayer' of þis mayde kateryne.	252

Bk. I. *Ch.* 1.

Ca^m. 1^m.

S Vmetyme þer was a grete kyng in grees	1
Of surre & cypre boþe lord & syre,	
As clerkes tel vs in elde storyes ;	
All thyng was rewlyd at hys desyr',	
he gouerned full sadly þat ilk empire,	5
Costus men called þis kyng þoo be name ;	
A losyd lorde was he & of ful grete fame,	7
A lombe to þe meke, a leoun to þe prowde,	8
þus was he noted, if ȝe lyst to lere.	
he was so wel I-know boþe styll & lowde,	
All dede hym homage bothe fer & ner' ;	
kyng, duke, erle, baron, & bachilere	12

After hym next I take vp-on me 232 *Bk. I. Ch. 1.*
 To translate this story and set it more pleyñ,
 Trostyng on other men þat her charyte
 Shal helpe me in this cas to wryte and to seyn.
 God sende me part of þat Heuenly reyn 236
 That apollo bar a-bovte, and eke seynt poule ;
 It maket vertu to growe in mannys sovlē. 238

If ye wil wete what þat I am : 239 *I, Capgrave, am of Lynn in Norfolck,*
 Myn cuntre is Northfolk, of þe tovn of lynne ;
 Ovtē of the world to my profite I cam
 On-to þe brotherhod wiche I am Inne—
 God yeve me grace neuere for to blynne 243
 To folwe þe steppes of my faderis be-fore,
 Wiche to the revle of Austyn were swore. 245 *an Austin friar.*

Thus endeth þe prolog of þis holy mayde. 246
 Ye that reed it, pray for hem alle
 That to this werk either travayled or payde,
 þat from her synnes wyth grace thei may falle,
 To be redy to god whan þat he wil calle, 250
 With hem¹ in heuene to drynke and to dyne, ¹ r. him
 Thurgh þe preyer of þis mayde kataryne. 252

Liber primus. Cam. primum.

SOmtyme ther was a grete kyng in Grece,
 Of surre and Cypre bothe lord and syre,
 As clerkys telle vs in olde storyce ;
 Alle þing was revled at his desyre,
 he gouerned ful sadly þat ilke empyre, 5
 Costus men called þat kyng tho be name ;
 A losed lord was he, and of ful grete fame, 7
 A lomb to þe meke, a leon to þe provde, 8
 þus was he noted, if ye liste to lere.
 he was so weel I-knowe bothe stille and lovde,
 Alle dede hym homage bothe fer and nere ;
 Kyng, Duke, Erl, Baron, and Bachelere 12

18 *K. Costus of Greece, St. Katharine's father.* [MS. Rawlinson.

[fol. 4, b.] [1st hand]	ffor her be-houe to his presens soute, And to his help eke whan hem nedyd oute. 14
	Many yldes longed þoo on-to his grete lande, 15 And aße wer' þat ¹ buxum at his request; ^{1 orig. þan?}
	þe grete see holy had he in his hande, And aß þe hauenes both est & west, He welded hem alle ryth as hym lest; 19
	Wer' þei marchauntis, wer' þei marineris, Alle wer' þei than to hym as omageris. 21
	þis kyng ^t in pees regned many ȝeres. 22 And be-cause he was fayr ^t & strong ^t of bones,
	he was wele be-loued of aß his omageres; A noble man, þei sayde, he was for þe nones, Gracious in feld, peisible in wones, 26
	ffre of his speche, large of his expens, fful gladly wyth peynes wold he dispens. 28
	Was no lorde be-syde þat hym wold do wrake, 29 ffor w ^h ath man þat dede he shuld it sone wayle, Whan þat he gan veniaunce to take—
	Preyer as þan wold not a-vayle; To many a kyngdom made he a-sayle, 33
	And many a casteß beet he ryth down Whan þat to his lawes wold not be bown. 35
	A goode man was he, þis is þe grounde: 36 Meke as a mayde, manful at nede,
	Stable & stedfast euyr-mor ^t I-fownde, strong ^t man of hand, douty man of dede, helper of hem þat to hym hade nede; 40
	Wrong ^t þinges þo wroute he neuer, Petous of spirynt & mercyful was he euer ^t . 42
	Pees wold he put debate euer a-boue— 43 þat uertew cleymyd he only to hym-selue;
	Alle hys noble werkys on-to pees & loue Wer' mad as mete as ex on-to helue. 47
[fol. 5] [2nd hand]	A-mong all þe lordes þat men dyd þoo delue

ffor her be-hove to his presens lovte,¹ ^{1 r. sorte} Bk. I. Ch. 1.
And to helpe eke whan hem neded ovte. 14

Many Ildes¹ longed tho on-to his² grete londe, ^{1 orig. yldes} ^{2 overlined.} Many isles
And alle were thei buxum at his request ; belonged to
The grete see hadde he holy in his honde, King Costus.
And alle the hauenes bothe est and west,
he welded hem alle ryght as hym lest ; 19
Were thei marchavntis, were thei maryneres,
Alle were thei thanne to hym as homageres. 21

This kyng in pees regned many yeers. 22
And be-cavse he was fayr and strong of boones,
he was weel belouyd of al his homageers ;
A noble man, þei seyde, he was for the nones,
Gracyovs in feeld, peesible¹ in wones, ^{1 orig. peisible ?} 26
ffree of his speche, large of his expens,
fful gladly with peynes wolde he dispens. 28

Was no lord be-syde þat wold do hym wrake, 29
ffor what man that dede, he shulde it sone wayle ;
Whan he gan veng^eavns to take,
Prayer as þan wolde non a-vayle ;
To many a kyngdam made he asayle, 33
And many a castell beet he ryght down
Whan thei to his lawes wolde not be boun. 35

A good man was he, this is the grovnd : 36 was good,
Meke as a mayde, manful at nede,
Stable and ste[d]fast euer-more I-fovnd,
Strong man of hand, dovty man of dede, ^{doughty,}
helpere of hem þat to hym had hede¹ ; ^{1 orig. nede} 40
Wronge þingys tho wrovght he neuere,
Pytous of spyryt and mercyful was he euere. 42 and merciful.

Pees wolde he putte debate euere a-bove— 43
That vertu cleymed he oonly to hym-selve ;
Al his noble werkys on-to pees and love
Were made as mete as ex on-to helve. ^{1 were—twelve on erasure.}
A-mongis alle the lordys, were there ten or twelve,¹ 47

Bk. I. Ch. 1. he was most worthy & eke most wys ;
 Synne hated he hertly, harlatrye & vyis. 49
 fful grete pyte on-to our' thowt it is 50
 þat swech a trew man schuld hethen be.
 But ryght þus, wrote þei þat wer' full wys,
 Oute of þe harde thorn[y] brymbyl-tree
 Growyth þe ffresch rose, as men may see ; 54
 So sprong our' lady oute of þe Iewys,
 And kateryne of hethen, þis tale ful trew is. 56

Bk. I. Ch. 2.

Cam. 2m.

TOo cytes had þis kyng a-mong all other', 57
 largest & grettest a-boue hem alle ;
 þe on cost of gold ful many a fother'
 Or he had made it *wyth* tour' & *wyth* walle ;
 þe other' was made, as bokes sey alle, 61
 A full longe tyme er he was bore,
 In whech all kynges þoo crowned wore. 63
 The fyrst hyt3 Amalech—in cypre it stant, 64
 þe other' hyt3 Alysaunder—in egypt it is.
 þe same lond of cypre no-thing doth waunt,
 But is ful of plente & full of blys,
 Off gold, syluyr, frute & men, I-wys, 68
 A grete lond closyd *wyth* þe see a-bowte,
 On þe northwest syde of surre, it is no doute. 70
 Therfor' þis kyng ryght as for a keye 71
 Of all hys kyngdame set hys town þer' ;
 [1st hand] Who come to surre, mote come þat weye,
 þer may no shyp¹ þis cours forbere, ¹ MS. shyhp
 Wer' it in¹ pees or ellis in wer'. ¹ overlined. 75
 It had a hauene ful huge & ful grete,
 And castelle strong¹ *wyth* turrettis feete, 77
 Open on¹-to marchauntis, to alle þat wille come, ¹ overlined.
 Be-cause her' fredomys wer' large & fayr', 79
 Both oute of hethnes & of cristyndome ;

he was most worthi and most wys ;		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 1.</i>
Synne hated he hertely, harlotry and vys.	49	
ful gret pyte on-to ovre thought it is	50	King Costus
That swiche a man trewe shuld hethen be.		
but ryght thus, wrot thei þat were ful wys,		
Ovte of the hard, thorny brymbyl-tre		
Groveth the fresh rose, as men may see ;	54	
So sprong oure lady ovte of þe iewys,		was St. Katharine's father.
And kataryne of hethen, this ful trewe is.	56	

*Cam. Secundum.**Bk. I. Ch. 2.*

T oo cytes had þis kyng a-mongis alle other,	57	His 2 chief cities were
laargest and grettest a-boven hem alle ;		
The oon cost of gold many a fother		
Eer he hadde made it wyth tovr and wyth walle ;		
The other was maad, as bookis seyn alle,	61	
A ful longe tyme eer he was bore,		
In wiche alle kyngis tho crowned wore.	63	
The firste hight Amalek—in Cypre it stant,	64	Amalek and Alexandria.
The other hight Alysavndre—in egypt it is.		
The same lond of Cypre no-þing dooth it want,		
But is ful of ¹ plente and ful of blys,	¹ overlined.	
Of gold, of siluer, frute and men, I-wys,	68	
A grete lond closed wyth þe see a-bovte,		
On the North-west syde of surre it is, no dovte.	70	
Therefore this kyng ryght as for a keye	71	
Of all his kyngdam set his tovn there ;		
ho com to surre, mot come þat weye,		Amalek was the port of Syria.
There may no shyp this cours for-bere,		
Were it in pees or ellis in werre.	75	
It had an havene ful huge and ful gret,		
And castel strong wyth turrettis feet,	77	
Open on-to marchavntys, to alle þat wil come,	78	Amalek was a free port.
Be-cause her fredames were large and fayre,		
Bothe oute of hethenesse and of cristendome ;		

Ek. I. Ch. 2.

	It was a place of ful grete repayr.	
	Vnder hym þer þe kyng ^t made a mayer,	82
	To kepe his lawes þei shuld not fayle,	
	Too stuf it wyth men & eke wyth vytayle.	84
[fol. 5, b.] [2nd hand]	þus myght þis lord from Alisaunder ^t ryde,	85
	In schyppes I mene, to þis grete cetee	
	And euyr on hys owe lordchippe a-byde—	
	ffor on ¹ alle cuntres principale lorde was hee,	¹ r. of
	Wer ^t it of felde, of town or of see	89
	Whech stode be-twyx þe grete cytees too,	
	All was it do þer ^t as he bad it doo.	91.
	The other ^t cytee, Alysaunder ^t be name,	92
	On þe bordyr ^t of egypt it stant ful fayr ^t ,	
	A gret place, a large & of hye fame.	
	þei of egypt mote nedys repayr	
	On-to þis cyte, thorow wey & thorow wayr ^t ,	96
	If þei to affryk or to cartage goo;	
	And þei of affryk þe same mote alsoo,	98
	If þei in egypte wyll bye or selle.	99
	þedyr was seynt mark þe euangelyste	
	Sent be seynt petyr þer for to dwelle,	
	To prech ^t hem þe gospell of our ^t lord cryste;	
	he prechyd so ther ^t þat hem ¹ alle twyst	¹ r. he hem
	ffro all her ^t maumentrye & fals be-leue,	103
	he mad hem in cryst for to be-leue.	105
	he þat wyll know þis mor ^t plat & pleyn,	106
	Rede Philo in hys book whech he dyd calle	
	‘De uita theor[et]ica’: þer schall he seyn	
	þat thorow-oute þe cyte in towr ^t & in walle	
	It was þoo fulfyllyd wyth hermytes alle,	110
	Monkys & prestys & swech holy men,	
	her ^t xxx ^{ti} , her ^t xx ^{ti} , her ^t ix., her ^t ten.	112
	The cuntre all-abowte was full of þese men,	113
	And ful of martires, ful of confessoures,	
	Of maydenes, wydowys & chast women—	

It was a place of ful gret rapayre.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</i>
Vndir hym there the kyng made a mayre,	82	Amalek was ruled by a Mayor, under K. Costus.
To kepe his lawes thei shuld not fayle,		
To stuffe it wyth men and eke wyth batayle (!).	84	
Thus myght this kyng from alysavndre ryde	85	
In shippes wyth mene to this grete Cytee		
And euere on his owe lordship a-byde—		
ffor ouer alle contres pryncypal lord was hee,		
Were it of feeld, of tovn or of see	89	
Whiche stood be-twyxe þe grete Cytees too,		
Al was it wrought there as he had it doo. ¹	91	¹ wrought—doo on erasure.
The other Cyte, Alysavndre be name,	92	Alexandria
On the bordour of Egypt it stant ful fayre,		
A grete place, a large and of hey fame.		
Thei of Egipte it ¹ mote nedes repayre		¹ overlined.
On-to þis Cytee, þurgh weyes & thurgh wayre,	96	was the port
If þei to affryke or to Cartage goo;		
And thei of affrike the same mote alsoo,	98	
If thei in Egipte wil bye or selle.	99	and mart of Egypt.
Theder was seynt Mark the Evangelyste		
Sent be seynt petir there for to dwelle,		
To preche hem þe gospelt of oure lord cryste;		
he preched so there þat hem alle twyste	103	St. Mark preacht there.
ffro alle here mavnmentrie and her fals lawe,		
he made hem in crist her ¹ hertys for to drawe.		¹ on erasure.
he that wil knowe this more plat and pleyn,	106	
Rede philo in his book whiche he ded calle		
'De vita theoretica:' there shal he seyn		See Philo, De vita theoretica.
That þorgh-oute the Cyte in tovr and in walle		
It was tho fulfilled wyth hermytes alle,	110	
Monkes and preestys and swiche hooly men,		
here thretty, here twenty, here nyne, here ten.	112	
The contre al abovte was ful of these men,	113	
Al ful of martirs and ful of Confessoovrs,		
Of maydenes, wedewys and chaast women—		Alexandria was full of Martyrs.

<u>Bl. I. Ch. 2.</u>	Who coude noumbyr all þe fayr' floures	
	þat growe in þe mede aftyr swete schowres,	117
	þan myght he noumbyr hem—I trow not he may!	
	þer' wer' þei putte in full scharp asay,	119
	These vessells of gold, martires I mene,	120
	Wyth fyr' & wyth yryn I-slayn & I-brent,	
	In furnes of sorowe wer' þei mad clene;	
	Was non þat scaped, but or þat he went	
[fol. 6]	he schuld be dede or turn hys entent.	124
	þer was þe fyrst exercyse of dyuyn' scole,	
	Whech is a scyens þat longeth to noo foole.	126
	ffor on pathenus, as seyth our' book,	127
	ffull many a 3er' red ther' wyth besy entent,	
	And aftyr hym clement þe scole vp toke,	
	Orygene was þe þirde aftyr þat clement—	
	Not clement of rome, but a-nother' þat us lent	131
	Many a good coment & many a holy exhortacyon),	
	Most specyali in þat book whech is called stromatum.	133
	Thys same Alysaunder whech I spak of now,	134
	Was large, ryche, ful of puple eke;	
	ffor þat fame euery man þedyr drow,	
	Euery knyght & marchaunt gune it than seke.	
	þei thowt it was enow, qwan þei schuld speke,	138
	A kyng to be lorde ouyr thys a-lone,	
	Thow he had not ellys longyng to hys trone;	140
	Eke for þe grete welth þat was in þat wonis,	141
	þei called her' kyng none other' name;	
	“Kyng of alysaundyr,” þei seyd, “a-lone he is,	
	he is a lord, he is worthy swech fame.	
	Mote euery tunge be doum & euery kne lame	145
	þat our' noble lord neyther' loue ne drede;	
	And þei þat do it, well mote þei spede!”	147
	Too hundred & fourty 3er' aftyr crystys byrthe	148
	Was euen & no mor' to þese gynges ¹ dayes.	¹ r. þis kynges
	he leuyth þus in ioye & in mekyll myrthe,	

- hoo covde novnbre alle the fayre flovrs *Bk. I. Ch. 2.*
- That growe in medewe after swete shovrs, 117
- Than myght he nombre hem—I trowe not he may!
- There where¹ thei put in ful sharp assay, ^{1 read were} 119
- These vessell's of gold, martyrs I mene, 120 The Martyrs
in Alexandria
were slain
and burnt.
- Wyth feer and wytȝ yern I-slayn and I-brent,
- In furneys of sorwe were þei made clene;
- Was non þat skaped, but er than he went
- he shuld be ded or turne his entent. 124
- There was the fyrste excersyse of dyuyne scole,
- Whiche is a seyens that longeth to no foole. 126 It had a
School of
Divinity,
- ffor on phatenus, as seyth oure book, 127 under Pan-
taenus,
- fful many a yeer red there wytȝ besy entent,
- And after hym Clement þe scole vp took,
- Orygene was the thredde after þat Clement— Clement,
- Not Clement of Rome, but an other þat vs lent 131 and Origen.
- Many a good coment an many an holy exortacyon, ^{1 om. in MS.}
- Most specialy in that book [whech is called stromatum].¹
- This same alysavndre wiche I spak of nov, 134
- Was large, ryche, ful of peple eke;
- ffor that fame euery man theder drov,
- Euery knyght and marchavnt gvnne it thanne seke.
- They thought it was I-novgh, whan þei shuld speke, 138
- A kyng to be lord ouere this allone, It had also
a King, cald
- Though he had not ellis longynge to his trone; 140
- Eke for the grete welthe þat was¹ in þat wonys, 141
- Thei called her kyng non other name; ^{1 MS. he was}
- “Kyng of Alysavndre,” þei seyde, “allone he is, The King of
Alexandria.
- he is a lord, he is worthi suyche fame.
- Mote euery tovnge be dovm and euery kne lame 145
- That ovre noble lord neyther love ne drede;
- And thei þat doo it, weel mote þei spede.” 147
- Too hundyrth and fovrty yeer after crystis berthe 148 A.D. 240.
- Was evene and [no] more to this kyngys dayes.
- he lyueth thus in ioye and mekel merthe,

Bk. I. Ch. 2. And honourde sweeth goddess as longed to hys layes ;
 [1st hand] Or he wan his land he had sharpe a-sayes. 152
 But to othir þing^t we wyl go now playn,
 To telle forth our^t tale as þe cronycles seyn. 154

Bk. I. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3^m.

Almyty god þat althing^t makyth growe, 155
 Doth many mor^t mervayles þan we can cast ;
 ffor who-so-euer men heryn¹ or ellis sowe, ^{1 MS. herþ}
 It is sumtyme fyrst we wene shuld be last.
 Our^t witte on-to his witte is but a gnast^t, 159
 It mote nede be þus whan he wil haue it so ;
 [fol. 6, b.] All hys wyll only mote nede be do. 161
 [2nd hand]
 Whan thyng is ferthest from our^t opynyon, 162
 þane werkyth he hys wondres ryth at hys wyll :
 Be-holde now þe spede & þe sauacyoun
 Of þe chyldryn of israel ; god wold hem not spylle,
 But to kepe hem in daunger^t & miserye stille, 166
 In whech þei wer^t falle only for synne ;
 he halpe hem owte qwan þat þei cowde blyne. 168
 If he had soner^t help hem, þei myth a went 169
 It had not be goddys myght but her^t owne dede.
 þer-for chaunged he all her^t entent,
 he wold not help hem tyl þat þei had nede ;
 Whan þei wer^t in dyspeyr^t & myght noght spede, 173
 þan sent he hys help & hys socour—
 þus doth our^t lord, þus doth our^t sauour^t. 175
 Ryght in þis wyse wrowt our^t lorde her^t : 176
 he wold send a chyld ful on-lych to other^t
 To þese elde folk, whech lyued all in dwer^t
 To hafe any chyld, most specyaly þe modyr ;
 þe kyng had leuer^t þan of gold a fothyr^t 180
 he myght be sekyr of [s]wyc^t a new chaunce.
 zacharye & Elysabeth stode in þis traunce ; 182

And honovred suyche goddys as longed to his layes ;		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</i>
Er he wan his lond he hadde sharp assayes.	152	K. Costus was a Heathen.
But to other þing we wil go nov playn,		
To telle fourth ovre tale as the cronycles sayn.	154	

Ca^m. tercium.

Bk. I. Ch. 3.

A lmyghty god þat alle þing maketh growe,	155	Almyghty God
Dooth many mo mervayles than we can cast ;		
ffor what-so-euere men ereeth or ellys sowe,		
It is somtyme first þat we wende shuld be last.		
Ovre wyt on-to his wyt is but a knast,	159	
It mote nede be thus whan he wil haue it soo ;		does what He will.
Al his wil oonly mote nede be doo.	161	

Whan þing is ferthest fro ovre oppynyon,	162	
Than werketh he his wondrys ryght at his wille :		
Be-hold nov the speed and the saluacyon		He saved the Children of Israel.
Of the children of israel ; god wolde hem not spyllē,		
But to kepe hem in davnger and myserye stille,	166	
In whiche thei were falle oonly for synne ;		
he halp hem ovte whan þei covde blynne.	168	

If he had sonnere holpyn hem, thei myght a went	169	
It had not be goddys myght, but her owen dede.		
Therefore chavnged he al here entent,		
he wolde not helpe them tyl thei had nede ;		
Whan thei wer' in dispeyre and myght not spede,	173	
Thanne sent he his helpe and his sokovr—		
Thus dooth ovre lord, thus dooth ovre sauour.	175	

Ryght in þis wise wrought oure lord here :	176	
he wolde sende a chyeld ful on-liche to other		
To þese olde folk, wiche leveden alle in dwere		He resolvd to send a child to old folk, like K. Costus and his wife.
To haue ony chyeld, most specyally þe moder ;		
The kyng had levere than of gold a fother	180	
he myght be sekyr of suche a newe chavns.		
ʒakarye and Elyzabeth stoodyn in the same travns ;	182	

28 *God sends Katharine's old Parents a Child.* [MS. Rawlinson.

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 3.</u>	So dede abraham wyth sarra, hys wyff—	183
	sche conceyuyd not tyll sche was in age ;	
	Ioachym & Anne had þe same lyff,	
	Maryes forth-bryngers, & þe same wage.	
	God can ful well make of swech a rage	187
	A ful fayr' floode, blessed mote he be.	
	So kateryne is not a-lone in þis degre.	189
	ffor god to hym-selfe þis mayden had I-chose	190
	As for hys owyn spouse & for hys wyffe der' ;	
	Of swech ¹ spek all crysten, as I suppose : ^{1 r. wech}	
	“God send vs part of her' good prayer' ;	
	Of all saue on sche is hym most nere ;	194
	Sche may & sche can, & sche wyll alsoo	
	Pray to our' lord þat we may cume hym too.”	196

Bk. I. Ch. 4.

Cam. 4m.

	Q wan godd, our' lord, wold þe seson schuld be	197
	þat þis fayr' lady to lyth schuld be born, ¹ ^{1 MS. forn)}	
[fol. 7]	he ordeynd & sett it in swech a degre	
	þat of too folkes whech lustes had lorn),	
	Schuld þis mayde spryng as rose oute of thorn).	201
	þis world wondred þat þis þing myght be soo,	
	who so elde a lady wyth chyld schuld now goo.	203
	Many a man & woman at þis thyng low,	204
	Sume of hem sayd, “it is but a lye,	
	þe kyng is ful febyll, þe qwen ful eld now :	
	Schall sche now grone, schal sche now crye ?	
	schal sche in þis age in chyldebede lye ?	208
	þis thyng is not lykly,” þus seyde þei alle,	
	ladyes in þe chaumbyr' & lordys in þe halle.	210
	But þe tyme is come, sche be-gynnyth to grone,	211
	Cryeth & wayleth as do alle women—	
	ffor of þat penaunce was mary a-lone	
	Excused, & no moo, þus our' bokes ken)	
	Whech þat wer' wretyn of ful holy men).	215

So dede abraham wyth sara, his wyef—	183	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 8.</i>
She conceyved not tyl she was in age ;		God sent a
Ioachym and Anna hadden þe same lyef,		child to aged
Maryes foorth-bryngeris, and the same wage.		Sara, and to
God can ful weel make of swiche a rage	187	Joachim and
A ful fayre flood, blissed mote he be.		Anna.
So kataryne is not alone in this degre.	189	

ffor god to hym-self this mayde hath ¹ I-chose	¹ r. had	He chose
As for his owe spovse and for his wyf dere ;	191	St. Katharine
Of wiche spekyñ alle crysten), as I suppose,		for His wife.
“ God sende vs part of her good prayere ;		
Of alle saue of on) she is most hym nere ;	194	
She may and she can, and she wil also		
Pray to our lord that we may come hym to.”	196	

Ca^m. *quantum*.

Bk. I. Ch. 4.

Whanne god, oure lord, wolde þe seson) shuld be 197

That this fayre lady to lyght shuld be boorn),
he ordeyned it, and sette it in swiche a degre

That of tho ¹ folkes wiche lustys had lorn),	¹ corrected ; r. too	When her
Shulde this mayde sprynge as Rose ovte of thorn).	201	parents are
The world wondred that þis thyng myght be soo,		old,
hov so old) a lady wyth chyeld shuld) now goo.	203	

Many man and woman) at this þing lough,	204
Som of hem sayde, “ it is but a lyze,	
The kyng is ful febel, the qveen ful olde nov ;	
Shal she nov grone, shal she nov crye ?	
Shal she in þis age in chyeldbed nov lye ?	208
This þinge is not likly,” thus seyde þei alle,	
ladyes in the chavnbre and lordys in þe halle.	210

But the tyme is come, she be-gynneth to grone,	211	St. Katharine
Cryeth and waileth as doo alle women—		is born.
ffor of þat penavnce was Mary allone		
Excused, and no mo, thus ovre bookis ken		
Whiche þat were wretyn) of ful hooly men.	215	

<i>Bk. I. Ch. 4.</i>	Kateryne þei named þat fayr' mayd ȝinge.	
	her' fader' men called costus þe kyng,	217
	her' moder' þei seye sche hyght meliades—	218
	þe kynges dowter' sche was of ermenye,	
	Off bewte ¹ sche had prys in euery prees	¹ MS. brewte
	Thorow-owte þe londe of alle sarcynrye.	
	Me lyst not in her' preysyng lenger' to tarye,	222
	Sche was full fayr' & full goode eke—	
	It is schewyd in hyr' dowter', þat men now seke	224
	To be her' help in myschefe & in nede.	225
	But whan thre dayes wer' pased & I-gon),	
	þis chyld for to hylle, to lulle & to lede	
	Too worthy ladyes wer' ordeynd a-non),	
	And not only þei to trauayle þer' a-lone,	229
	But of other' women a ful grete rowte,	
	Ryght for þis cause: to ber' it a-bowte,	231
	To kepe it, to wasch it & for to clothe,	232
	To lyft it, to lull it & to fede it eke,	
	To bathe it, to wyp it & to rokke it bothe;	
	þei had her' labur' newly be þe weke.	
	þus is it kept, it schuld not be seke.	236
[fol. 7, b.]	þe kyng had of it a comfort ful hye,	
	þe qwen coude not þer-fro kepe now her' hye.	238
	þus was it norched, þis nobyl goodly chylde,	239
	þis gracyous lady, tyll sche cowde goo.	
	Sche was fro hyr' byrth boþe mek & mylde,	
	Mercy fro þe tetys grew wyth hyr al-soo,	
	And lested wyth her' all her' lyffe þer-too.	243
	Sche was fulsone plesyd whan sche made mone,	
	No wondyr it is—þei hafe but hyr' a-lone.	245

Thus prouyd þis princesse euyr mor' & mor'. 246
 Sche was set to book, & be-gan to ler'
 All þe letters þat wer' leyd hyr be-for'.

Kataryne þei named that fayre mayde yinge.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 4.</i>
hir fadir men) calle Costus the kyngre,	217	Katharine's father is
hir modir þei seyde she hyghte meliades—	218	King Costus; her mother, Queen Meliades.
The kyngys dovter she was of ¹ Ermenye,	¹ overlined.	
Of bevre she had preys in euery pres		
Thurgh-oute þe lond of al sarsynrye.		
Me leste not in hir preysynge lengere to tarye,	222	
She was ful fayr and ful good eke—		
It shewed in hir dovghter, þat men nov seke	224	
To be her helpe in myschef and in nede.	225	
but whan thre dayes were passed and I-gon),		
The chyeld for to hille, to lulle and to leede		
Too worthy ladyes were ordeyned a-non),		The babe has 2 Nurses, &c.
And not oonly thei to ¹ travayle there allon),	¹ orig. too	229
But of othere women) a ful gret rovte,		
Right for this cause: to bere it a-bovre,	231	
To kepe it, to wash it and for to clothe,	232	to wash, feed,
To lyfte it, to lulle it and to fede it eke,		
To bathe it, to wype it and to rokke it bothe;		and rock her, each for a week,
Thei had her labour newly be the weke.		
Thus is it kepte, it shuld not be seeke.	236	
The kyng hadde of it a confort ful heye,		
The qveen coude not ther-fro kepe nov hir ey3e.	238	
Thus was it norysshed, this noble goodly chield,	239	
This gracyous lady, til she covde goo.		till she can walk.
She was fro hir byrthe bothe meke and myeld,		
Mercy fro the tetys grewe wyth hir also,		
And lefte ¹ w yt h hir al hir lyef ther-too.	¹ orig. lested?	243
She was ful sone plesed whan she made mone,		
No wonder it is—thei have but hir allone.	245	

Ca^m. qvintum.*Bk. I. Ch. 5.*

Thus proued this pryncesse eue more and more. 246

She was set to book, and be-gan to lere

Alle the letter's þat were leyde hir be-fore.

Katharine is set to her books,

Bk. I. Ch. 5.

ffor of all þe scoleris þat ar now or wer',
 Sche is hem a-boue ; for neyther' loue ne feer' 250
 Mad hyr to stynt whan sche be-gan to ken
 þe lettyris & þe wordys þat sche spelled then. 252
 Sche had maystyres fro ferre þat wer' full wyse, 253
 To tech her' of rethoryk & gramer' þe scole ;
 þe cases, þe nounbres & swych-maner' gyse :
 þe modes, þe uerbes, wech long to no fole,—
 Sche lerned hem swetly wyth-owte any dole, 257
 Bothe þe fygyres & þe consequence,
 þe declynacyons, þe persones, þe modes, þe tens. 259
 Among all oper a wyse man þer' was, 260
 And ful sad þer-to, he was her' chaunsler',
 Men called hym be name Mayster' Athanas ;
 he was suruyour' to all þat þer wer',
 And as I seyde ere,¹ he payed her' hyer'. 264
 he was an hye clerk & a souereyn), ¹ MS. her ere ; her crossed out.
 All þe vij artes coude he ful pleyne. 266
 And ouyr' þis lady was hys most cure, 267
 þat sche schuld be occupyed all þe long day
 In doctrine & stodye, saue in mesure
 Sume-tyme a-mong had sche hyr play.
 Sume-tyme to hyr mayster' wold sche sey nay : 271
 Whan he bad hyr pley, sche wold sit styll ;
 To stody & goodenes inclined was her' wyll. 273
 Sche lerned þe greke, sche lernyd þe latyn tunge, 274
 sche lerned of natur' þe preuy weys alle
 þat any philosophyr' be hys doctrine had runge,
 sche knew þe effectis as þei schuld falle
 Of all þe bodyes whech we þe planetes calle ; 278
 þis was thorow besynes of Athanas þe clerk,
 Wech tended on-to hyr' & set hyr thus on werk. 280
 God of hys grace, as seyth þe story, 281
 Azens alle heretykys þat reygned þoo ther'
 Wold all hys conquest & hys victory

[fol. 8]

- for of¹ alle the scoleris þat arn nov or were, ¹ overlined. *Bk. I. Ch. 5.*
- She is hem a-bove; for neyther love ne fere 250
- Made hir to stynt whan she gan to ken
- The letteris and wordes þat she spelled then. 252
- She hadde maystres fro fer þat were ful wise, 253 and has
masters in
Grammar, &c.
- To teeche hir of retoryk and gramer the scole;
- The cases, the novmbres and suche-manner gyse,
- The modes, the verbez, wiche longe to no foole,
- She lerned hem sweetly wyth-ovte ony doole, 257
- Bothe the figures and the consequens,
- The declynacions, þe personys, the modys, þe tens. 259
- Among alle other a wysman ther was, 260
- And ful sad ther-to, he was hir chavncelere,
- Men called hym a name Mayster athanas;
- he was surveour to alle þat there were,
- And as I seyde er, he payed hem her heere. 264 Her Chan-
cellor is
Athanas,

who oversees
all her teach-
ers.
- he was an hygh clerk and a sovereyn,
- Alle the .vij. artes covde he ful pleyen. 266
- And on this lady was his most cure, 267
- That she shulde be occupyed al the long day
- In doctryne and studie, save in mesure
- Somtyme a-monge had she hir play.
- Somtyme to hir mayster wolde she sey nay 271
- Whan he bad hir pleye, she wolde sytte stille,
- To stody and goo[d]nes inclyned was hir wille. 273
- She lerned the greek, she lerned the latyn tunge, 274 She learns
Greek and
Latin,
- She lerned of nature the prevy weyes alle
- That ony phylisophre be his doctryne had rvnge,
- She knewe the effectes as þei shul falle
- Of alle þe bodyes wiche we planetes calle; 278
- This was thurgh besynes of athanas þe cleerk, ¹ on overlined.
- Wiche tended on¹ to hir and set hir thus on weerk. 280
- God of his grace, as seyth þe story, 281 that she may
get the vic-
tory over
heretics.
- A-yens alle the heretykes þat regned tho there
- Wold aȝ his conquest and his victory

Bk. I. Ch. 5.

Schuld be a-rered only be hyr'.

þerfor lern sor', þou ʒong goddys scoler' ! 285

þou schall ouercome heresy & blaspheme

Thorow-owte all grek, thorow-owte all þi reme. 287

Ryght as [be]¹.xij. ydyotis, seynt Austyn seyth— ¹ om.

he meneth þe Aposteles, for þei not lerned wer'— 289

Thorow-owte þe werd was sowyn' our' feyth,

þat euery man may know & euery man ler'

Godd wold not wynn vs wyth wysdam ne feer', 292

But wyth holy boystysnesse, if I schuld sey soo :

Ryght þus, as me thynkyth, in þis caas hath he doo ; 294

ffor whan þat hys chyrch was at gret neede, 295

he ordeynd þis lady for to ʒeue batayle

Ageyn all þe werd ; þei schall hyr not ouyr' lede,

Ne alle her' argumentis schall not a-vayle ;

Sche schal so be lerned þat all her' asayle 299

Schall fayl, & falle boþe cunnyng & bost,

Sche schall be myty wyth strenght of goost. 301

Bk. I. Ch. 6.

Cam. 6m.

HEr' fader', þat sche schuld lern' þese artes alle, 302
þis nobyll lady, hys owyn' douter' der',

Ded mak a paleyse large & ryalle,

In whech he wold þat sche schuld ler'.

Boþe knytes & clerkes, all dwelt þei þer' 306

Whech wer' ordeynd to her' owyn' seruyse,

Now to make hyr rest, now for to make hyr ryse, 308

And eke new norture to tell hyr' & to tech. 309

Many maysters þer-for þethyr wer' fett ;

'As fer' as her' cunnyng myght stretch & rech,

þei lerned þis lady wyth-owte any lett ;

Alle her' wyttys wer' only on hyr sett. 313

[fol. 8, b.]

ʒe may well suppose in ʒour' owne dome

Euer as sche grew, þe gretter' mayster' come. 315

Shuld been arrered onoly be here.

Bk. I. Ch. 5.

Therefore lerne sore, þou yov[n]ge goddys scolere! 285

þou shalt ouercome heresy and blaspheme

Thurgh-ovte aȝ grece, þurgh-ovte al þi reme. 287

Ryght as be twelue ydiotes, sent Austyn seyth— 288

he meneth the apostell^{is}, for thei¹ not lerned were—

As 12 Idiots,
the Apostles,
founded the
Faith,

Thurgh-ovte þe world¹ was sown ov^r feyth, ^{1 overlined.}

That euery man may knowe, and euery man may lere

God wulde not wynne vs wyth wysdam ne fere, 292

But wyth holy boistonesse, if I shulde sey soo :

Ryght thus, as me thynketh, in this cas hath he doo ; 294

ffor whan þat his cherche was at gret nede, 295

he ordeyned þis lady for to yeve batayle

A-geyn al the world ; þei shal hir not ouere lede,

so God or-
dained Katha-
rine to do
battle for the
Church.

Ne alle her argumentys shal not a-vayle ;

She shal so be lerned þat alle her assayle 299

Shal fayle, and falle bothe connyng and bost,

She shal be myghty wyth the strengthe of þe gost. 301

Cam. sextum.

Bk. I. Ch. 6.

HIr fadir, that she shuld lerne these Artes alle, 302

This noble lady, his ovne daughter dere,

Katharine's
Father builds
her a Palace,

Dede make a paleys large and royaȝ,

In wiche he wolde þat she shuld lere.

Bothe knyghtes and clerkys, alle dwelt þei there 306

Wiche were ordeyned to hir owne seruyse,

where her
Teachers
dwell.

Nov to make hir reste, now for to make hir to ryse, 308

And eke newe norture to telle here and to teche. 309

Many maystris therefore theder were fette ;

As fer as her connyng myght stretche and reche,

Thei lerned this lady wyth-ovten ony lette ;

Alle here wittes were onoly on her sette. 313

Ye may weel suppose in yovre owen dome,

Euere as she grev the grettere mayster come. 315

Bk. I. Ch. 6.

her stodyes *per* full craftily wer' I-pyght, 316
Wyth deskys & chayeres & mech *oper* ger'
 Arayed on *pe* best wyse, & glased full bryght,
 Euery faculte be hym-selue : for *pei* of *gramer*' wer'
 Sett on *pe* west syde, & eke *pei* *pat* ler' 320
 Astronomye on *pe* est, ryght for *pei* schuld loke
 Sumtyme on *pe* heuyn), sumtyme on her boke ; 322
 All *pe* other' artes be-twix hem stode a-rowe, 323
 Ryght aftyr her' age & aftyr' her' dygnyte—
 Euery man *pat* cam *per*' myght well I-knowe
 Whech was worthyer' & hye[r] of degre.
 her' fadyr *pe* kyng seldom wold her' se, 327
 On-to *pese* clerkes he hath hyr' thus take
 As thow he had hyr only now newly forsake— 329
 ffor lettyng of hyr lernyng dyd he *pan* soo. 330
 Sche wex fast in body, & lerned eke sore ;
 Whan o mayster' was goo, a-nopir cam hyr too.
 Thus chaungyng of maystirys & eke of lore
 had *pis* noble mayde, sche lerned mych *pe* mor'— 334
3e may wete natur' louth variaunce,
 Sumtyme men stody, sumtyme *pei* daunce. 336
pe kyng dyd make *per* for' her' a-lone 337
 A paleyse wallyd, ryght on *pe* sowth-syde
 Open to *pe* sune : *per* was her' trone—
per is no swych now in *pis* werde wyde.
 It was made for katelyne *per* to a-byde 341
 Whan sche wold stody be hyr-selue sole.
 In *pe* grete garden was most hyr' scole : 343
 It was fer a-wey fro euery-maner' wyght, 344
 It was made & ordeynd at hyr' owyn deuyse.
per wold sche ly sumtyme, stody & wryght ;
 It was sett full of trees, & *pat* in straunge wyse ;
per' wold sche sytte, & *per* wold sche ryse, 348
per was hyr walkyng & all hyr dysporte—
 Solitary lyff to stodyers is comfort. 350

hir stodyes there ful craftely were I-pyght,	316	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 6.</i>
Wyth deskes and chayeris and moche other gere		The Studies of Katharine and her Teachers are well fitted up.
A-rayed on the best wyse, and glased ful bryght,		
Euery faculte be the selue : for þei of gramer were		
Sette on the west syde, and eke þei that lere	320	
Astronomye on the Est, ryght for þei shuld loke		
Somtyme on heuene, somtyme on her booke ;	322	
Alle the other artes be-twyxe hem stood on rowe,	323	
Ryght after her age and after her dignyte—		
Euery man that cam ther myght weel I-knowe		
Wiche was wurthier and heyere of degre.		
hir fadyr the kyng seeldom wolde hir see,	327	
On-to these clerkys he hath hir thus I-take,		
As þough he had hir oonly now newly for-sake—	329	
ffor lettyng of hir lernyng dede he than soo.	330	
She wex faste in body, and lerned eke soore ;		
Whan on maystir was goo, a-nother cam hir too.		Katharine grows and learns, often changing her Masters and studies.
Thus chavngyng of maystres and eke of loore		
had this noble mayden, she leerned moche þe moore—	334	
Ye may wete weel nature lovyth varyaunce,		
Somtyme men stodye, sumtyme thei davnce.	336	
The kyng ded make there for hir allone	337	A Palace is built for her alone
A paleys ryght weel walled, on the south syde		
Open to the sonne : there was hir trone—		
There is non suche now in this world wyde.		
It was made for kataryne there to a-byde	341	
Whan she wolde stodyen be hir-self soole.		to work in.
The grete gardeyn was þe most hir scoole :	343	
It was fer a-way from euery-maner wyght,	344	
It was made and ordeyned at hir owne devyse.		
There wolde she lye somtyme, stody and wryght ;		She studies in the Garden.
It was set ful of trees, and that in strong wyse ;		
There wolde she sitte, there wolde she ryse,	348	
There was hir walkyng and alle hir disport—		
Solitary lief to stodieres is confort.	350	

38 *Katharine learns the seven Liberal Arts.* [MS. Rawlinson.

Bk. I. Ch. 6. Sche bar þe key of þis gardeyn—þer had it no moo; 351
 Whan sche went in, sche schett it full fast;
 It was speryd ful treuly went sche to or froo,
 ffor of many thynges was sche sor' a-gast,
 But most of iniquitude—stody may not last 355
 Wyth werdly besynesse ne wyth hys cure,
 þe olde wyse sey þus, I ȝow ensure. 357
 þe walles & þe toures wer' mad nye so hye, 358
 fful couertly wyth arches & sotelly I-cast:
 þer myght not cume in but foul þat doth flye;
 þe ȝatis, as I seyð, wer' schett full fast,
 And euer-mor' her'selue wold be þe last; 362
 þe key eke sche bar', for sche wolde soo.
 þus leuyd þis lady in her' stody þoo. 364

Bk. I. Ch. 7.

Ca^m. 7^m.

Sche lerned þan þe liberall artes seuen). 365
 Gramer' is þe fyrst & þe most lyte;
 he tellyth þe weye full fayr' & full euen
 who men schall speke, & who þei schall wryte.
 Retoryk þe secunde is sett in þis plyte: 369
 he doth ny þe same, saue þat he arayeth
 hys maters wyth colourys & wyth termes dysplayeth. 371
 þe thyrde sciens call þei dialetyk; 372
 he lerneth men wyth-in a lythyll throwe,
 If he be stodied þer is non to hym lyke,
 þe trewth fro þe falshed þat techeth for to know.
 Aftyr hym þan folowyth ryght be rowe 376
 Arsmetryk, in whech þe cumnyng so stant:
 Nowmbres schall þou know, þou schall not whant. 378
 Thei tawt¹ her' also þe scyens of musyk, ^{1 MS. tawter} 379
 fful wel grownded was sche in þis melodye;
 Sche had a mayster, þer' was none hym lyke,
 he departyd þis scyens in thre wyth-uten lye:
 In-to metyr, to ryme, & to armonye; 383

She baar the keye of þis gardeyn)—þer had it no moo; *Bk. I. Ch. 6.*
 Whan she wente in she shet it ful fast; 352
 It was sperd ful truly went she too or froo,
 ffor of many thyngis was she sore a-gast,
 But most of inquietude—stody may not last 355
 With wordly besynesse ne with his cure,
 The olde wyse sey thus, I yov ensure. 357
 . The walles and þe tovr's were made vp so hyghe, 358 *Katharine's
Garden is
walled round.*
 fful couertly wyth arches arn sotylly I-cast:
 There myght not come in but foul that doth flighe;
 The gates, as I seyde, were shet ful fast,
 And euere-more hir-selue wold be the last; 362
 The keye eke she baar, for she wold do soo.
 Thus lerned this lady in hir stody thoo. 364

Cam. septimum.

Bk. I. Ch. 7.

She lerned thanne the liberal artes seuene. 365 *She learns
1. Grammar,*
 Gramer is the firste and the most lyght;
 he telleth the weye ful fayr and ful euene
 hov men shal speke, and hov thei shal wryght.
 Rethorik the secunde is sette in this plyght: 369 *2. Rhetoric,*
 he dooth ny the same, saue that he arayeth
 his mater's with colovr's and wyth termes displayeth. 371
 The thredde scyens calle þei dialetike; 372 *3. Dialectic,*
 he lerneth men wyth-inne a lytil throwe—
 If he be stodied, there is non to hym like—
 Truthe¹ fro falshed that teecheth he for to knowe. ¹ on erasure.
 After hym thanne folweth ryght be rowe 376
 Arsmetryk, in wiche the connyng soo stant:
 Nombres shalt þou knowe, thou shalt not want. 378 *4. Arithme-
tic,*
 Thei taught hir also the scyens of musyk, 379 *5. Music,*
 fful weel grovnded was she in this melodie;
 She had a mayster, there was non hym lyke,
 he departed this scyens in thre, wythovte lye:
 In to metir, to ryme, and to armonye; 383

<i>Bk. I. Ch. 7.</i>	Armonye is in voyse, in smytyng or wynde, Symphonie & euphonye arn of hys kynde.	385
[fol. 9, b.] [1st hand]	In geometrye was þis lady lernyd also, In euclidis bokys wyth his portaturys ; þat is a sciens—mech stody longeth þer-too— ffor to know þe letterys & þe figures ; Yf I speke þerof, I xall make forfeitures Agayn þis sciens, I can not of þat arte But swech as he can þat makyth a carte.	386 390 392
	In astronomye þis lady eke so hye steye, Sche know þe strenght & þe stondyng ¹ styH Of alle þe planetis þat regnen vp-on hey ; Whech ar of goode wyth & whech ar of iHe, Whech wyll help a mater & whech will it spille.	393 397
	And þeis she lernyd both mor' & lesse, Sche mowled not, I trow, in no ydylnes.	399
	þus for her' lernyng ¹ had sche swech fame, þat her' fader dede gader þorow-oute þe lond All þe grete clerkys þat wer' of any name, Ryth to þis entent, as I vnderstande, ¹ ^{1 MS. stonde?} To wete yf his douter dar' take it vnhand ¹ ^{1 r. on hand}	400 404
	To be apposyd of so many wyse men. þei wer' gadred in þat place CCC. & ten.	406
[2nd hand]	Eche of hem schall now do all hys myght To schew hys cunnyng—if any straung thyng hath he lernyd hys lyue, he wyll now ful ryght Vttyr hit, for hys name therby schall spryng; But þer was ryght nowt but katern þe 3yng vndyrstod all þyng & answerd þer-too ; her' problemes all sche hath sone on-doo.	407 411 413
	“O good godd,” seyde þeis ¹ clerkes thane, ^{1 MS. þeis} “þis mayd hath lerned mor' thyng in her' lyue Than we supposyd, for mor' than we sche canne. We woundyr who sche may our argumentis dryue, ffor hyr conclusyon now in 3erys fyue.	414 418

Armonye is in voys, in smytynge or wynde, Symphonie and Euphonie am ^d of his kynde.	385	Bk. I. Ch. 7.
In gemetrie was þis lady lerned also, In ecydys book ^{is} wyth his portratures; It is a seyens—moche stody longeth ther-too— ffor to knowe the letter ^{is} and the fygures; If I speke of it, I shal make forfeitures	386 390	6. Geometry, Euclid,
A-geyns þis sciens, I can not of that art but suche as he kan þat maket a cart.	392	
In astronomye þis lady eke so hey stey, She knewe the strengthe and the stondyng stille Of alle the planetes þat regnen vp-on hey; Wiche are of good wil and wiche are of ille, Wiche wil helpe a mater and wiche wil it spille. And these she lerned bothe more and lesse, She mused not, I trowe, in non Idelnesse.	393 397 399	7. Astrono- my.
Thus for hir lernyng had she suche fame, That hir fadyr dede gaderyn þvrgh-ovte the lond Alle the grete clerkys that were of ony name, Ryght to this entent, as I vnderstonde, To wete if his doughter dar take it on honde To be apposed of so many wyse men. Thei were gadered in þat place thre hundred and ten.	400 404	The girl Katharine is so learned
Eche of hem shal now doo al his myght To shewe his connyng—if ony stravnge thing hath he lerned hys lyve, he wil nov ful ryght Vtter it, for his name thereby shal spryng. but there was ryght novght but kataryn þe ying ¹ Vndirstood alle þing and answerde ther-too; her problemes alle she hath soone on-doo.	406 407 411 413	that when 310 Examiners question her, she answers them all.
“O good god,” seyden ^d these clerkys than, “This mayde hath lerned more þing in hir lyue Than we supposed, for more þan ^d we, she kan. we wunder ¹ hov she may oure argumentis dryve ffor her conclusyon, for in yeer ^{is} fyve	414 418	The 310 Wise Men

¹ MS. þing.

¹ MS. wunder

Ek. I. Ch. 7. Cune we not lerne þat sche doth in one"—

Thus seyð þeis wysmen be row euerychon. 420

Thei tok þan her' leue at þe kyng alle, 421

[fol. 10] home to her' cuntre, certeyn, will þei goo;

"þis mayd 3our' doghtyr, lord," þei seyð, "sche schall

Be a woundyr woman, & sche may leue þer-too.

Of vs nedyth sche noght, we haue not her' to doo, * 425

Sche can þat we can, & þer-to mech more"—

þus seyð þei, certeyn, þe wyse þat ther' wore. 427

Thys noble kyng hath reward hem full weele, 428

3oue hem grete 3yftys & grete liberte;

Lordes dede so þanne, clerkes had euery deel,

All þat þei spent, of þe liberalyte

And of þe bountyfnesse of swech lordes fre. 432

þus are þei rewardyd, & home euerych oone,

And kateryne in stody is left þus a-lone. 434

Ek. I. Ch. 8.

Cam. 8m.

Qwan all was welle & sekyr, as sche wende, 435
þan cam deth to hows & dyd hys dute,

Of all her' ioye he made sone an ende:

ffor he hath take a-way hyr owyn' fadyr fre

And owte of þis werld hath ledd hym wher' he 439

Is in swech place as longyth on-to hym,

he is logged þer' wyth lordys of hys kyne 441

Whech deyð wyth-uten feyth, wyth-owt crystendome—

Kateryn is swech on, 3et sche schall not be long. 443

Owte of all grece þe grete lordes come—

But þei had dō soo, þei had do grete wrong;

All her' grete worchep oonly dyd honge 446

Vp-on þe noble kyng—he lyght þer' now ded;

þei closyd hym in clothe & after-ward in lede, 448

Thei led hym to þe temple wyth solennite, 449

If wepyng & waylyng schuld be called soo.

þer' was noon oþer noyse than in þat cete

kvn we not lerne þat [s]he hath¹ dooth (!) in oon"— 419 *Bk. I. Ch. 7.*
 Thus seyde these wys^men be rowe euerychon. ¹ overlined.

Thei took þanne her leue at the kyng alle, 421
 hom to her contre, certeyn, wil þei goo; *go back home,*
 "This mayde yovre doughter, lord," þei seyde, "she shalle
 Be a wunder¹ woman, and she may leue ther-too. ¹ MS. wurder
 Of vs nedeth she nought, we haue here nought to doo, 425 *as they can*
 She can þat we can, and there-to moche more"— *teach Katharine nothing.*
 Thus seyde thei, certeyn, þe wise þat there wore. 427

This noble kyng hath rewarded hem ful weel, 428 *They are well paid.*
 yeve hem grete ȝeftes and grete liberte;
 lordes dede also¹ þanne, the² clerkis had euery deel ¹ corrected. ² overlined.
 Al þat þei spente, of there lyberalyte
 And of there bovntyffulnesse—of the wiche lordys free 432
 Thus are þei rewarded, and hom euery-choon,
 And kataryne in stody is lefte thus allon. 434

Ca^m. octauum.*Bk. I. Ch. 8.*

Whanne al was weel and sekyr, as she wende, 435
 Thanne cam deth to hovse and dede his dute,
 Of al hir ioye he maad soone an ende:
 ffor he hath take a-wey hir owen fadir fre
 And ovte of this world hath ledde hym where he 439
 Is in swiche place as longyn on-to hym,
 he is lodged there wyth lordes of his kyn 441

Katharine's Father, Costus, dies.

Whiche deyden wyth-ovte feith, wyt^k-ovten crysten-
 Kataryne is swiche on, yet she shal not longe. [dom—
 Ovte of al grece the gret lordys coom—
 But thei had do soo, þei had doon grete wronge;
 Al her grete wurshep oonly dede honge 446
 Vp-on þe noble kyng—he lith nov there deed;
 Thei closyn hym in clooth and afterward in leed, 448

The Lords of Greece come.

Thei led hym to þe temple wyth solennyte, 449
 If wepyng and waylyng shuld be called soo.
 Ther was non other noyse thanne in þat Cite

Katharine's Father is coffind, taken to the Temple,

Bk. I. Ch. 8. But "welaway, alas! qwat schul we doo?
 Our lord is now gon), we gete hym no moo, 453
 Who schall ber þe crown), now he is deed?
 he left vs non eyre for to be our heed, 455
 "But a 3ong mayde; what schal sche doo? 456
 Sche is but a woman! 3et, had sce weddyd be
 Or tyme þat hyr fadyr went þus vs froo,
 [fol. 10, b.] It had be mor' sekynnesse & mor' felicyte.
 þer is no mor' to sey, but sekyrly we 460
 Are likely to be subiect on-to oþer londys;
 We bounde sumtyme, now mote we suffyr bondys." 462
 The noble qween eke, qwat sorow þat sche made 463
 It is pyte to her', to telle & to rede;
 þer cowde no solace hyr hert þat tyme glade,
 þe teeres fell down) euer as sche 3ede.
 þe 3ung lady kateryne hath chaunged her' wede, 467
 And hyr' colour' eke is now full pale.
 What schuld I of her' sorow make lenger' tale? 469
 The kyng was leyd in a tounge, made of golde & stones
 fful ryaly, 3e may wete, for he was her' kyng, 471
 A-noynted eke wyth baume, þat neyþer flesch ne bones
 Schuld rote ne stynke—swech was þe beryyng
 In þat tyme to lordes; & mych other' thyng 474
 Was seyð & do, whech nedyth not to rehers,
 ffor happyly sume folk myght than be þe wers 476
 To her' swech maummentrye & swych-maner rytes. 477
 þe lordes a-bode þer styll in þat same place,
 Both dukys & erlys, byschoppys & knytes,
 Thrytty dayes euyn—for so vsage was.
 þe dayes rone fast & be-gune to pace. 481
 þe lordes þat þer wer', þei seyð þat her' kyng
 Mote hafe a memoryall for any-maner thyng, 483
 And þat of swech lestyng whech schuld not fayle, 484
 þus seyð þei aȝt ryght wyth oon entent;
 Pey[n]tyng & wrytyng & grauyng in entayle

- but "weelaway, allas! what shal we doo?
 Oure lord is now goo, we gete hym no moo. 453 *Bk. I. Ch. 8.*
 ho shal bere the crowne, now he is deed?
 he lefte vs non other for to be oure heed, 455
 "But a yovnge mayde; what shal she doo? 456
 She is but a woman! yet, had she wedded be
 Or tyme þat hir fader went thus vs froo, *His folk wish*
 It had be more sekyrnesse and more felicite. *Katharine*
 There is no more to seye, but sekirly we 460 *was married.*
 Arn lykly to ben subietty on-to other londes;
 We bounde somtyme, nov mote we suffre bondes." 462
 The noble qveen eke, what sorwe þat she made, 463 *The Queen*
 It is pete of hir to telle and to¹ reede; *sorrows.*
 There coude no solas þat tyme hir hert glade,
 The teeres fel doun euere as she yeede.
 The yov[n]ge lady kataryn hath chavnged hir wede 467 *So does*
 And hir colovr, and eke is now ful pale; *Katharine.*
 What shuld I of hir sorwe make a lengere tale? 469
 The kyng was leyd in a tounge, made of gold and stoness
 fful ryally, ye may wete, for he was her kyng, 471
 A-noynted eke with bavme, þat neyther flesh ne bones
 Shulde not rote ne styne—swiche was the beryng
 In þat tyme to lordys; and moche other thyng 474 *The body of*
 Was þanne seyde and doo, wiche nedeth not to be (!) rehers, *Katharine's*
 ffor happily som folk myght thanne be the wers 476 *Father is*
embalmd.
 To heere swiche maumentrye and suche-manner rygthes.
 The lordes a-bode there stille in þat same plaas, 478
 Bothe dukys and erlys, bysshoppys and knytes,
 Thretty dayes euene—for soo vsage waas.
 The dayes ronne faste and be-gonne to paas. 481
 The lordes þat þer were, þei seyde þat her kyng
 Mote haue a memorial for ony-manner thyng; 483 *As a lasting*
Memorial to
him,
 And þat of swiche lestyng the Cite (!) shuld not faile,
 þus seyde þei alle ryght wyth on entent; 485
 Peyntyng and wrytyng and gravynge in entayle

- Bk. I. Ch. 8. It wyll wanyse & wast, roten & be brent.
 þer-for to pis ende are þei all consent : 488
 þe grete cyte, wech her lord dyd make,
 Schall chaunge now hys name for her lordes sake ; 490
 It schall no lenger hyght þus : þe gret amaleek, 491
 hese name wyll þei turn thorow-oute all þe cost ;
 Who-so-euer þedyr come, wyth cart or wyth sek,
 þei mote calle it now þe cetee famagost.
 þus mad þei crye þan thorow-oute al þe hoost 495
 þat all men of grece mote hafe it in mowthe,
 [fol. 11] Dwelle he est^r or west, dwell he north^r or sowthe. 497
 And þis is her cause, for þat cyte he made, 498
 In þe same dwelt he most, þus seyde þei alle,
 In þis cyte mych myrth & mych ioie he had,
 In þis cyte to deth eke he down dede falle ;
 ffor þeis same causes hys name ber it schaff, 502
 Euer whyll it on grounde stant, it schall neuer be lost,
 But euer be in knowlech þe cyte of famagost. 504
 þus it is called now & euer-mor schall be, 505
 Wyth a g. sett þer þe c. schuld stande ;
 þe grete noble famagost þat stant on þe see
 [1st hand] þus it is named þorw-out euery lande ;
 þer walkyth many a foote, & werkyth many hande. 509
 þus shal þe name of wordy men sprede,
 And shrewes shul sterue nameles, swech is her mede. 511

The qwen sett a parlement at her owe coste 512
 Att alisaunder þe grete, to wech she wolde
 Euery lorde þat held of her husbond¹ coste, ¹ MS. husbondis
 To þis parlement nedis goo or ryde shold—
 But he come wylfully, he may be ful bold, 516
 he schal be compelled. sche sent ferre & nye
 ffor alle þe lordis, & no man wyst why. 518

It wil whanse and waste, roten and be brent. *Bk. I. Ch. 8.*
 Therefore to this ende arn they alle consent : 488
 The grete Cite, wiche her lord dede make,
 Shal chavnge nov his name for her lordis sake ; 490 the name of
the city
Amalek is

It shal no lengere hatte thus : the grete Amalek, 491
 Is name wil þei turne thorgh-ovte al þe coost ;
 ho-so-euer come thedyr, wyth carte or wyth sek,
 Thei mote nov calle the Cite ffamagoost. changed to
Famagost,
 Thus made thei cry thanne þurgh-ovte alle the oost 495
 That alle men of Grece mote haue [it] in movthe,
 Dwelle he Est or west, dwelle he north or sovthe. 497

And this is her cavse, for that Cite he made, 498
 In þat same dwelled he most, thus seyde þei alle,
 In this Cite meche merthe and meche ioye he hade,
 In this Cite to deth eke down ded falle ; for he dwelt
most there,
 ffor these same cavses his name bere it shalle, 502 and died
there.
 Euer whil it on grovnde stant, it shal neuer be lost,
 But euer be in knowleche the Cite famagost. 504

Thus is it called now and euere-more shal bee, 505
 Wyth a G. set there C. shuld stond ;
 The grete noble famagost þat stondyth on þe see
 þus is it named þurgh-ovte euery lond ; The C of
Costus is
changed to
G, in Fama-
gost.
 There walketh many a foot, and werketh many an hond. 509
 Thus shal þe name of wurthy men sprede,
 And shrewes shul sterve nameles, suche is her mede. 511

Cam. noum.

Bk. I. Ch. 9.

The qveen sette a parlement at hir ovne cost 512 Katharine's
Mother sum-
mons a Par-
liament at
Alexandria,
 At Alisavndre the grete, to wiche she wolde
 Euery lord þat held of hir hovsbonde Cooste,
 To þis parlement nedes goo or ryde sholde—
 But he come wilfully, he may be ful bolde, 516
 he shal be compelled. she sente fer and ny
 ffor alle the lordes, and no man wyste why. 518

- Bk. I. Ch. 9. But why þat sche sette þe parlement in þat place? 519
 O cause þer was, for in þat same cite
 Alle kynges of þat lond, as vsage was,
 hadd receyued þe crowne wyth soleynnye;
 And for a costom long' hold may nott brokyn be, 523
 But yf it turbel many men, þerfor' she held it þer.
 Many lord & lady att þat parlement wer'. 525
 Anoper cause þer was, for þe kynrode of her'
 had founded þis cete & refounded eke—
 Be whom & be whos dayes, 3e shal sone her',
 Yf ye wyl be style & no man now speke
 But I my-selue. 3e shal not nede to seke 530
 Mo cronycles or storyes; 3e schal ler' of me
 Alle þe lyne & þe lordes aftyr her' degre. 532
- [fol. 11, b.]
 [2nd hand] Ther was a lord sumty[m]e þat þe soudon was 533
 Of surre & of egipt, babel was hys name;
 he beldyd alysaunder in þat same place,
 he called it babilon, in haunsyng of hys fame,
 þat it schuld not falle ne neuyr be lame— 537
 þis was hys wyll; & aftyr many a day
 It was called babilon, sothly for to say, 539
 Not babilon a-lone, but babilon þe lasse, 540
 ffor differens of þe other' þat stant in þe est.
 Who wyll owte egypt in to affryk passe,
 Goo or ryd wheyder he wyll, þis wey is þe best.
 þis was an othyr cause why þis gret fest 544
 Was hold in þat place: for her' ryall kyn.
 Owt of þis babell cam, bope þe mor' & þe myn. 546
 The þird cause was þis, as seyth Athanas, 547
 Grettest of hem alle, as semyth on-to me:
 þis same cyte in þe londe of egipt was,
 In whech þer' reygned an-other' kyng þan he:
 So was he called þan for diuersyte 551
 Kyng of alysaundyr a-lone, ryght for differens
 Of þe kyng of egypt—þis is þe sentens. 553

But why that she sette the parlement in þat place? 519 *Bk. I. Ch. 9.*

Oo cavse there was, for in that same Cite

Alle kyngis of that lond, as vsage was,

had receyved the crowne with solennyte;

where the
Kings of the
Land were
crownd,

And, for a custom longe holde may not broken be, 523

But if it turbe many men, therefore she helde it þere.

Many lord and lady at that parlement were. 525

A-nother cavse ther was, for the kynhod of hir

526 and which
her kindred
had founded.

had fovnded this Cite and refovnded it eke—

Be hom and in whos dayes, ye shal sone here,

yf ye wil be styлле and no man now speke

But I my-self. 3e shal not nede to seke 530

Mo cronycles or storyes; ye shal lerne of me

Alle the lyne and þe lordes after her degre. 532

There was a lord somtyme þat þe sovdon was

533 Sultan Babel
built Alex-
andria,

Of surre and of Egypte, babel was his name;

he byelded alisavndre in that same plas,

he called it Babilon, in haunsynge of his fame,

and cald it
'Babylon the

That it shuld not falle ne neuer be lame— 537

This was his wil; and after many a day

It was called babylon, soothly to say, 539

Not babylon allone, but babylon the lasse,

540 Less.'

ffor differens of other þat stant in the Est.

ho wil ovte of Egypte into affryke passe,

Goo or ryde wheder he wil, this w[e]ye is the best.

This was a-nother cavse why this grete fest 544

Was holde in that plaas: for hir ryal kyn

Ovte of þis babel cam, bothe the more and þe myn. 546

The thredde cause was this, as seyth athanas,

547

Grettest of hem alle, as semyth on-to me:

This same Cite, in the lond of Egypte was,

It was in
Egypt.

In whiche there regned a-nother kyng þan he:

So was he called thanne for diuersite

551 The king was
cald 'King of
Alexandria.'

kyng of Alysavndre allone, rygh[t] for differens

Of þe kyng of Egypte—this is þe sentens.

553

Bk. I. Ch. 9. Thys wote I well of Athanases reson, 554
 Whech þat he makyth of þe fundacyon)
 Of þis same Alysandyr, whech oft wyth treson
 Was nye disceyuyd of many straunge nacyon).
 But now wyll we leue all þat declaracyon, 558
 And tell forthe of babel & of oþer men)
 Whech long to þe kynred, mo þan .ix. o[r] ten. 560

Bk. I. Ch. 10.Ca^m. x^m.

Thys same babell had a sone aftyr hym, 561
 Madagdalus he hyght, he was lord alsoo
 Of þis babilon many 3er. & forth þe same kyn)
 Reygned in þat same place mo þan on or too :
 ffor hys sone hyght antiochus, þe story seyth soo, 565
 Not antiochus þe grete of whech spekyth machabe,
 But an-other be-fore, as 3e schall sone se. 567
 Thys antiochus had a son) men cleped gorgalus, 568
 A worpi man he was, of surre lord & syre.
 [fol. 12] he be-gate a sone, men clepyd antiochus ;
 And aftyr antiochus reyned in þat empyre
 hys sone seleucus—he sett ryght in a myr³ ; 572
 þe cyte men clepe seleuce for hys owyn) fame,
 And antyoche he beldyd in hys faderes name. 574
 þis is þe fyrst lyne of þis ych gorgalus— 575
 ffor we mota turn) a-geyn, if we truly telle.
 þis same gorgale¹ 3onger³ son) hyght mardemius, ¹ r. gorgalis
 a manly man he was & of hert felle ;
 Gret alysaundyr sprong of hym as strem owt of welle : 579
 ffor vn-to þis mardemy wedded was þis¹ fayr³ ¹ r. þe
 Melior³, þe noble mayde, of macedonye þe ayr³, 581
 And of þis mardemye & meliore þe mayde 582
 kam kyng phylyppe, fadyr to alysaunder³ þe grete.
 þus went þe secund lyne, as our³ auctour sayde,
 Oute of gorgales yong¹ son)—þe fyrst hat² we lete 585
 But for a lytyll whyle ; for we wyll now trete ¹ r. 3onger³
² r. haf

This wote I weel of athanas reson,	554	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 9.</i>
whiche that he maketh of fundacyon		Athanas
Of this same Alysandre, whiche ofte wyth treson		writes of the
Was ny disseyued of many stravnge nacyon.		founding of
But nov wil we leue al that declaracyon,	558	Alexandria.
And telle foorth of Babel and of other men		
Wiche longe to the kynrede, mo than nyne or ten.	560	

Cam. decimum.

T his same babel had a sone after hym,	561	
Madagdalaus he hyght, he was lord also		Babel's son
Of þis babilon many a yeer. and foorth þe same kyn		Madagdalaus
Regned in the same place mo thanne on or too :		succeeded
ffor his sone hyght Antiochus, the story seyth soo,	565	him.
Not antiochus the grete of whiche speketh Machabe,		
But a-nother be-fore, as ye shal sone see.	567	

This antiochus had a sone men cleped gorgalus,	568	Gorgalus,
A worthi man he was, of surre lord and syre.		
he be-gate a son men cleped antiochus ;		Antiochus II,
And after þat antiochus regned in þat empyre		
his sone seleucus—he set ryght in a myre ;	572	and Seleucus.
The cyte men clepen seleuce for his owe fame,		
And Antioche he byl[d]ed in his faderis name.	574	

This is þe firste lyne of þis iche gargalus—	575	
ffor we mote turne a-geyn, if we trewly telle.		
This same gorgale yovnger sone hight Mardemius,		Gorgalus's
A manly man ¹ he was and of hert felle ;	578	2nd son Mar-
Grete alisavndre sprange of hym as strem ovte of welle :		demius
ffor on-to this Mardemye wedded was þe fayre		
Meliore, the noble mayde, of Macedony þe ayre,	581	

And of this Mardemye and Meliore the mayde	582	bezat Philip,
Kam kyng philip, fader to Alysavndre the grete.		and he Alex-
Thus wente the secunde lyne, as oure avtour sayde,		ander the
Ovte of gorgalus yovnge sone—þe firste haue we lete		Great,
but a lytil while ; for I wyl nov trete	586	

Bk. I. Ch. 10. Off þe woundres þat þis Alysaundyr^s sowte in hys lyffe—
 All hys labur^s 3et in euery mouth is ryffe. 588
 he conquered þe kyng of pers whych dary hyght, 589
 he toke arabe & fenice, & eke hys owynⁿ cosyn
 Antiochus, gorgalys sone, he ouyr-came be myght, ^{1 = wan}
 he whan¹ þis babylonⁿ from hym wyth gune & engyne.
 þer cessed þe name of babylonⁿ & for euyr gan lyne: 593
 ffor he chaungyd it to hys, & þus he called it þan
 “Alysaundyr” aftyr hyme, be-cause he it wanne. 595
 Ten cytes mad þis lord euen oute of þe grounde, 596
 All .x. þei hafe is name, alysaundyr þei hyght;
 Too cytes he chaunged & kept hem hole & sounde,
 Alysaundyr^s he wolde þei schulde hyght be ryght.
 In xij. 3er^s he wan þis worlde wyth ful grete myght. 600
 Whan he schuld dey, he partyd hys londe on twelue,
 Whech he had gouernd a-lone sumtyme hym-self. 602
 To hys lordes 3aue he hys londes for to holde; 603
 Surry & Alysaundir^s, ffenice & Palestyne
 þat 3afe he to seleucus, myghty man & bolde—
 [fol. 12, b.] he was to þis alysaundyr of kyn ryght cosyn,
 Of gorgalus bloode, as i seyde, of þe fyrst lyn, 607
 At whech I þan left & now be-gynne a-geyn—
 Alle þing may not be seyde at ones, as clerkys seyn. 609

Bk. I. Ch. 11.

Cam. xjm.

TOo & þirty 3er^s reigned seleucus þer^s. 610
 he had an eyr^s, aftyr hym kyng of þat place,
 A noble man, þei called antiochus sother^s;
 Twenty wyntyry^s euene a-mong hem he was.
 And aftyr had þe crownⁿ, þe sceptyr, & þe mace 614
 hys sone, whech þei calle antiochus theos;
 he reygued .xv. 3er^s. & aftyr hym þan roos 616
 A man þei call be name seleucus galericus; 617
 þer^s reygued he .xx. wynter^s. & þan seleucus garanne
 Thre 3er^s bar^s þe crownⁿ. & eft antiochus

Of þe wondres þat this alysavndre soovght in his lyef— *Bk. I. Ch. 10.*
 Al his labour ȝet in euery movght is ryef. 588

he conquered the kyng of perce whiche Dary hight, 589 *who conquered Persia, Arabia, Phœnicia;*
 he took arabe and fenice, and eke his owne cosyn
 Antyocheus, gorgalus soone, he ouere-cam be myght, ¹ r. wan
 he whan¹ this babilon from hym with gvnne and engyn. *took Babylon, and changed its name to Alexandria.*
 There cecyd the name of babilon and for euer gan lyn : 593
 ffor he chavnged it to his name, & þus he called it þanne
 “Alysavndre” after hym, be-cause that he it wanne. 595

Ten citees made þis lord euene ovte of the grovnd, 596 *Alexander had 12 cities calld Alexandria.*
 Alle ten þei haue his name, Alysaunder thei hyght ;
 Too Cytees he chaunged and kepte hem hool and sovnd,
 Alisaundre he wold thei shulde hatte be ryght. ¹ MS. lord
 In xij. yeer he wan this word¹ wyth ful grete myght. 600
 Whanne he shuld deye, he parted his lond on twelue, *On his death*
 Whiche he had gouerned a-lone somtyme hym-selue. 602

To these lordes yaue he his londys for to holde ; 603
 Surry and alysaundre, fenyce and palestyn
 That ȝave [he] to seleucus, myghty man and bolde— *he gave Syria, Alexandria, &c., to his cousin Seleucus,*
 he was to þis Alisavndre of kyn ryght cosyn,
 Of gorgalus blood, as I seyde, of the first lyn, 607
 At wiche I thanne left and nov be-gynne a-geyn—
 Alle þing may not be seyde at ones, as clerkys seyn. 609

Cam. vndecimum.

Bk. I. Ch. 11.

Too and thretty ȝeer regned seleucus there. 610
 he had an Eyr, after hym kyng of þat plas,
 A noble man, thei called Antiocheus sothere ; *whose heir was Antiocheus Sother :*
 Twenty wynter euene a-mong hem he was.
 And after had þe crowne, the sceptre, and the mas 614
 his sone, wiche thei calle antiocheus theos ;
 he regned there fyftene ȝeer. And after hym þan roos 616 *and his son was Antiocheus Theos.*

A man thei calle be name seleuchus galericus ; 617 *Then came Seleuchus Callinicus, Seleucus Ceraunus,*
 There regned he xx wynter. and þanne seleucus garanne
 Thre ȝeer bar the crown. and eft antiocheus

- Bk. I. Ch. 11. Wech is called þe grete; he reigned þanne
 Sex & þirty wynter'—iewes 3et' hym banne 621
 ffor þe sorow þat he dede on-to her lond & hem
 Whan he robbed þe temple at iherusalem. 623
- The noble book of machabe wryghtyþh hys dedys, 624
 hys cruelnesse, hys¹ ire & hys treson eke, ¹ MS. hyr
 hys feyned repentauns—þer-for hys mede is
 Sorow for synne: for qwan he was seke,
 he askyd mercy, but not worth a leke. 628
 he left a sone nye of þat same plyte,
 Seleucus philophator men seyn þat he hyght; 630
 he synnyd be hys doghtyr ful on-kyndely, 631
 þer-for was he brent wyth þe bryght leuene;
 In appollony of tyr' 3e may rede þe storye
 who many lordes wer' dede be vj. & be seunþ
 ffor þei coude not gesse hys problemes euyn. 635
 he reigned þer' xj. 3er' wyth-owten any lees.
 hys sone aftyr hym hyght antiochus epiphanes; 637
- hys 3eres wer' xj. & hys son hyght þus 638
 Antiochus eupater'; he leued 3er's too.
 And aftyr hym sekyrly reigned demetrius;
 Thre 3er' he bar' þe crown, þe story seyth soo.
 Antiochus sedites kyng was þer' þoo 642
- [fol. 13] Nyne 3er' euyn; & aftyr hym reigned þer'
 A-nopir kyng þei calle demetrius sother'. 644

- I**N hys tyme þe romaynes whon fro hym 645
 Mech of hys londe, & eke þat gret cyte
 Whech þat he helde, & so had all hys kyn,
 I mene alysaundyr'; þei set þer' her' see.
 þe romaynes dyd so, for he was fayn to flec 649
 fforth in-to egypt; he held hym ryght þer'—
 þus led he hys lyffe in sorow & in feer'. 651

Whiche is called the grete ; he regned thanne
 Sex and thretty wyntyre—iewes 3et hym banne 621 *Bk. I. Ch. 11.*
 ffor the sorwe þat he dede on-to her lond and hem
 Whan he robbed the temple at Ierusalem. 623 and Antiochus the Great, who plundered Jerusalem.

The noble book of Machabe wrytheth his dedys, 624
 his cruelnesse, his ire and his treson eke,
 his feyned repentavns—þer-for his mede is
 Sorwe for synne : for whanne he was seeke,
 he asked mercy, but not wurth a leeke. 628
 he lefte a sone ny of the same plyght,
 Seleucus philopator men seyn þat he hight ; 630 Followd, Seleucus Philopator,

he synned be his doughter ful onkeendely, 631
 Therefore was he brent wyth the lyght of¹ leuene ;
 In appolony of Tyre 3e may rede the story ¹ overlined.
 hov many lordys were ded be sexe and be seuene
 ffor thei covde not gesse his problemes euene. 635
 he regned there xj yeer wyth-ovtyn ony lees.
 his sone after hym hight Antiochus epiphanes ; 637 Antiochus Epiphanes,

his 3eeris were eleuene. And his sone hight thus 638 Antiochus Eupator,
 Antiochus eupater ; he leued 3eeris too.
 And after hym sekerly regned Demetrius ; Demetrius,
 Thre yeer he bar the crowne, þe story seyth soo.
 Antiochus sedites kyng was there thoo 642 Antiochus Sidetes,
 Nyne yeer evene ; and after hym regned there
 An other kyng þei called Demetrius sothere. 644 Demetrius Sother.

Ca^m. duodecimum.*Bk. I. Ch. 12.*

IN his tyme þe Romaynys wonne fro hym 645 The Romans then took Alexandria,
 Meche of his lonnd, and eke the grete Citee
 Wiche þat he held, and so had al his kyn,
 I mene Alisavndre ; thei sette þere here see.
 The romaynis dede soo, for he was fayne to flee 649
 fforth in to Egypte ; he held hym ryght there—
 Thus led he his lyf in sorwe and in fere. 651

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 12.</u>	he lost all þe londes whych hys faderes wonne.	652
	ffour'skore 3er' euen) reyned þe romaynes þer',	
	And in þis seruage newly þus be-gunne	
	Reyned þe same kyng þe tyme of xij. 3er'.	
	Alysaundyr', hys sone, þan dede þe crown) ber'	656
	Nyne 3er' eyn. & þan demetrye, hys brother';	
	he reyned iiij. 3er'. & after hym an-opir,	658
	Men calle hym in bokes antiochus griphus;	659
	he gouerned xij. 3er' all þis forsaid londe.	
	In þis iiij kynges tyme, myne auctour seyth þus,	
	All þis ilke cuntre to þe romaynes was bonde,	
	Tyll þat fortune turned so hyr honde,	663
	Whan helyus adrianus emperour' was of rome,	
	Whych weddyd hys doghtyr to on þei call phalone.	665
	þis phalon was sone on-to þe seyd demetrius :	666
	Be hym cam surry to ryght hold a-geyn),	
	And all her' subieccyon) to rome cessed þus.	
	Solaber was þe name of þe mayd, þei seyn),	
	Ryght soo hyght sche, þei þat hyr' þer' seyn)	670
	Seyn neuer swych an-opir, þus seyd þei alle.	
	þis same phalon, summe men so hym calle,	672
	had a fulfayr' sune be þis same solaber',	673
	3ozimus he hyght, kyng after hys fadyr' he was.	
	And archenon, & archibelon reyned also þer' ;	
	þan after antigonus, & þan cam claudace—	
	Sune after fadyr', all reyned in þat place.	677
	þan after borus, ryght þus haf I founde.	
[fol. 13, b.]	And panne a-geyn claudace called þe secunde.	679
[4th hand]	þis same claudace, costus fadyr was,	680
	And þis same costus fadyr to kateryne.	
	Here may 3e se of what men & of what place	
	Cam þis woman, þis lady, þis virgyne ;	
	Here is ¹ it schewyd hooly aft þe lyne—	684
	þus I be-hyte 3ou þat I schuld doo.	
	In þis reknyng myne auctour & I are too :	686

¹ overlined.

- he loste alle þe londes wiche hys fader's wonne. 652 *Bk. I. Ch. 12.*
 ffovre-skore þeer evene regned the romaynys there,
 And [in] þis servage þus newly be-gonne
 Regned þe same kyng the tyme of xij. þeere.
 Alysavndre, hys sone, thanne dede þe crovne bere 656 Its kings
 Nyne þeer euene. And thanne demetrie, his brother ; were Alex-
 he regned iiij. þeer. And after hym a-nother, 658 ander,
 Demetrius,
 Men calle hym in book's Antiochus Griphus ; 659 Antiochus
 he gouer[n]ed xij. þeer al this forseyd lond. Grypus,
 In this .iiij. kyng's tyme, myn Auctour seyth thus,
 Alle þis eke contre to þe romaynis was bond,
 Til þat fortune turned soo her hond, 663
 Whan helyus Adryanus emperour was of rome,
 Wiche weddyd his doughter to oon þei calle phalone. 665 Phalon,
 This phalon was sone on-to þe seyð demetrius : 666
 Be hym cam surry to ryght hold a-geyn,
 And alle her subiectyon to rome cesyd thus.
 Solaber was þe name of the mayde, þei seyn,
 Right soo hyght she, þei that her þer seen 670
 Seen neuer swiche a-nother, thus seyde thei alle.
 This same phalon, svm men soo hym calle, 672
 had a ful fayr sone be this same solaber, 673
 Zozyumus he hyght, kyng after his fader he was. Zozyumus,
 And Archenon, and Archibelon regned also ther ;
 Thanne after Antygonus, and þanne¹ cam claudas—
 Sone after fadyr, alle regned in that plas. ¹ MS. þanned 677
 Thanne after borus, ryght þus haue I founde. Borus,
 And thanne a-geyn claudas called the secunde. 679 Claudas II,
 This same claudas, Costus fadir was, 680
 And this same Costus fadyr to Kataryne. and then
 here may ye see of what men and of what plas Costus,
 Cam this woman, þis lady, this virgyne ; Katharine's
 heere is shewyd holy al the lyne— 684 In this line
 Thus I be-hyght þou þat I shuld doo. of kings I
 In this reknyng, myn auctour and I am too : 686 from my
 author.

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 12.</u>	ffor he acordeth not wyt; cronicles þat þen olde,	687
	But diuersyth from hem, & þat in many thyngis.	
	þere he acordyth, þer I hym hold;	
	And where he diuersyth in ordre of þeis kyngis,	
	I leue hym, & to oder mennys rekenyngis	691
	I ȝeue more credens which be-fore hym & me	
	Sette alle þese men in ordre & degre.	693
	Butte men wyȝ sey now & happely reþlye :	694
	“ what menyth þis lyne & þis rehersayle,	
	To rekene so many men, & to multiþlye	
	Noumbres and ȝerys, which may not a-vaile?	
	And eke us thynkyth, it doth sumwhat fayle,	698
	ffor, þow þei wer' men of grete lordschype,	
	þe kynrod of schrewys to godd is no worchepe.”	700
	I answe're here-to as do[th] seynt Ierome :	701
	“ Crist cam of schrewys,” he seyth, “ for þis skylle,	
	þe principaȝt cause qwy to þis werlde he come :	
	To corect synneris, þat was his wyȝle—”	
	ffor many men þat synfuȝt wer' & ille	705
	Are in his genelogie, ȝe may hem þer' fynde.	
	My lady Kateryne stante in þis ¹ same kynde. ^{1 r. þe}	707

Bk. I. Ch. 13.

Cam. 13m.

	N ow to telle forth euen as I fyrst sayde,	708
	þe lordys are come which clepyd were.	
	Aȝens þe parlement þe cite is arayd	
	With plente of vitayle and aȝt odyr gere ;	
	Men lakked ryth nowt þat wer' logged þere,	712
	Gret chepe had þei, aȝt-maner vitayle—	
	It is stuffyd so be reson it may not fayle.	714
	þe riaȝt lordys wyt; baron & bachelor	715
	Are com now þedyr to do here servyse,	
(fol. 14)	Byschopis & clerkys to-gedyr in-fere,	
	þei wyȝ now schew here wyttys wyse—	
	þei schaȝt haue nede or þat þei ryse ;	719

ffor he a-cordeth not wyth cronyclys tho ben olde, 687 *Bk. I. Ch. 12.*
 But diuerseth fro hem, and þat in many thyngis.

There he a-cordeth, ther I hym holde ;
 And where he diuerseth in ordre of these kyngis,
 I leve hem,¹ and to other mennes rekenyngis ^{1 r. him} 691
 I ȝeve more credens whiche be-fore hym and me
 Sette alle these men in ordre and degre. 693

But men wil sey nowe, and haply replye : 694
 "What meneth this lyne in this rehersayle,
 To rekne so many men, and to multiplie
 Nombres and ȝeerys, whiche may not a-vayle ?
 And eke thenketh vs, it dooth sumwhat fayle, 698
 ffor, thou thei where men of grete lordshep,
 The kynred of shrewys to god is no wurshep." 700

I answe're her-to as dooth seynt Ierom : 701
 "Crist cam of shrewes," he seyth, "for this skyl,
 The pryncypal cawse whi to this world he com :
 To correcte synneris, þat was his wyll—" ^{to show you that as Christ came from shrews,}
 ffor many men that synful were and ih 705
 Arn in his genealogie, ye may hem þere¹ fynde. ^{1 MS. þerre}
 My lady Kataryn stant in þe same kynde. 707 ^{so did St. Katharine.}

Cam. 13m.

Bk. I. Ch. 13.

N ow to telle foorth euene as I first sayde, 708
 The lordes arn come wiche cleped where.
 Aȝens the parlement the Cite is arayde
 With plente of vitail and alle other gere ;
 Men lakked ryght nought þat were lodged there, 712
 Grete chepe had þei, aȝ maner of vitaille—
 It is stuffed so be reson þat it may not fayle. 714

The ryal lordes with Barouns and Bachelere 715
 Arn come nov thedir to don hir seruyse,
 Bysshoppys and clerkys to-gedere in-fere,
 Thei wil nov shewe her wyttys wyse—
 Thei shal haue nede or than þei ryse ; 719

Alexandria is
 well victuald
 for the Parlia-
 ment.

Bk. I. Ch. 13. Summe lordys are come eke homage to make,

And ladys many ryth for þe qwenys sake. 721

þis mayde is crownyd, wyth aH þe observawns 722

Which servyd þat tyme in stede of þe masse ;

þei prayd to iupiter he schuld here аваuns,

And to aH þe goddys, both more an lasse—

þer was no god which þei lete þoo passe ; 726

þe lordys swore aH who þat þei schuld

Here servyse eyr sewe & here sutes holde. 728

þanne be-gunne þe festes, I trow, gret I-now, 729

As in þat cuntre custome was þanne.

To lord & to lady, & to pouert lowe,

ffuH foyson was þere, to eueri man, 732

Many mo deyntys þan I rehers can ; ^{1 om. ; but so in MSS. Ar. 396 and 168. hale = tent.}Euery man had plente in hale [& in halle] ;¹

þoo men þat seruyd it, nedyd not hem to calle. 735

Swech rewle & ordinauns was þere I-had, 736

þere was no 3ate warnyd to no-maner wyte,

But, þat euery man schuld be ryth glad,

þei were kept opyn both day & nyth,

þe bordes euer cured & þe mete dyth ; 740

whan on had his mele, in cam an-odyr ;

Of syluyr wesseH þer was many a fothir. 742

No place was voyd, neydyr parlour nor chaumbyr, 743

But aH wer' þei fuH of women or of¹ men ; ^{1 overlied.}

þe grete paleys þat stante at Alisaundyr ;

It was fuH of puple, no man seyde "go hen !" "

Saue reuerens was had ; lordes here ix her' ten 747

þus kept here astate ; þe cete eke aH-a-bowte

Was ffuH of gentylys wyth-inne & wyth-owte. 749

Lordes & ladyes þat wer' þer of here kynne, 750

On-to þat feste come both on & odyr

And aH wer' þei loggyd in fuH riaH Ine—

Sume wer' of here fadyrs syde, summe wer' of her' modyr.

Of curtesye & gentylnesse, game & non othyr 754

Some lordes arn come eke homage to make,
And ladyes many ryght for the qvenes sake.

Bk. I. Ch. 13.

721

This mayde is corovned, wyth alle the observaunce
whic[h]e serued at þat tyme in stede of the masse;

722

Katharine is
crownd.

Thei preyden to Iubiter he shulde hir avaunce,
And to alle the goddes, bothe more and lasse—

Ther was non god wiche thei do lete passe;

726

The lordes sworn alle how þat thei shulde
hir seruyse euer sewe and hir sevtes holde.

728

Thanne be-govvne the festis, I trowe, grete I-nowe,
As in þat contre custom was thanne.

Feasts are
held.

To lord and to lady, and to povert lowe,¹
fful foyson was there, on-to euery manne,

¹ MS. bowe

Many mo deyntes þan I rehers canne;

733

Euery man had plente in hale and in halle;

Tho men þat sewed¹ it, neded not hem to calle.

¹ r. served

Swiche reule and ordynavnce was there I-hadde,

736

There was no yate warned to ony maner of whyght,

All the gates
are open.

But, that euery man shulde be ryght gladde,

Thei were kepte open bothe day and nyght,

The boordes euere cured and the mete dyght;

740

Whanne oon had his meel, in cam an other;

Of siluer vessel ther was many a fother.

742

No place was¹ voide, neyther parlovre ne chavnbre,

743

but alle were þei ful of men and women;

¹ overlined.

The grete paleys þat stant at Alysavndre,

The Palace is
full of folk.

It was ful of peple, no man seyde "go hen!"

Save reverens was had of lordes; here ix. here .x.

747

Thus kepte her astate; þe Cytee eke al a-bovte

Was ful of gentyllis wyth-inne and wyht-ovte.

749

Lordes and ladyes þat were there of hir kyn

750

Katharine's
kin are
royally lodgd.

And to þat feste com bothe oon and other,

Also were thei lodged in ful ryaft In—

Some were of hir faderis syde, some were of hir moder.

Of curtesye and gentilnesse, game and noon other

754

[fol. 14, b.]
[2nd hand]

Was þan her' carpyng^r, saue summe spoke of loue ;
 Euery man spak of þing wech was to hys be-houe. 756
 Iustys wer' þer', & þoo wyth þe best ; 757
 Sume had þe bettyr & sume had þe werr' ;
 þe grete theatyr þer' had ful lytyll rest :
 Euyr was þer fytynge, but þer was no werre ;
 Many noble men wech wer' come fro ferre, 761
 In þat same place wer' asayd ych oon
 As well in wrestyllynge as puttyng at þe ston. 763
 And aftyr all þis is endyd & eke I-don, 764
 Iustis, reuell[is] & festes gune to slake,
 þei toke her' leue homward for to goon.
 But 3et or þei fully had her leue I-take,
 Ech lord wech had þer' any lady & make, 768
 Was 3oue to courser's, of wech þe on
 Was blak as cole, þe other' wythe as bon, 770
 Wyth sadyH & brydyH of gold & of sylke ; 771
 Many moo rewardes eke þan I can now seye ;
 Sume wer' 3oue mantell's wyght as þe mylk,
 On wech wer' many a broche & many a beye.
 þus ryd þei homwarde forth in her' wey ; 775
 þer' is¹ noght ellys now but "farweH & goo ! 1 MS. it
 I pray god be wyth 3ow." þus is þe parlement doo. 777

Bk. I. Ch. 14.

Cam. 14^m.

THys lady, as þe story euen forth telketh, 778
 kepyth her' chambyr' & holdyth hyr' þus inne,
 Wyth hyr' modyr þe qwen as 3et sche dwellyth ;
 her' bokes for to loke on can sche noght blyne—
 Who-so-euyr lett hyr, he dothe full gret synne ! 782
 To offende hys lady, what wene 3e it is ?
 þer was no man þat tyme þat durst do thys. 784
 It was oonly hyr' ioye [&] all hyr' entent, 785
 ffor hyr' hert þat tyme was set to nowt elles—
 fful hye honour þer'-by aftyrward sche hente !

- Was þanne her carpynge, saue some spoke of love ; *Bk. I. Ch. 13.*
 Euery manⁿ spak of thyng wiche was to his be-oue. 756
- Iustes were there, and tho with the beste ; 757 Jousts are held,
 Some hadde the bether and some were of herre (!) ;¹
 The grete Theatre ther had ful lytel reste : ¹ w. o. h. on erasure.
 Euere was there fytynge, but there was no werre !
 Many noble menⁿ whyche were come fro ferre, 761
 In that same place were a-sayde iche oonⁿ
 As weel in wrestlyng as puttyng at the stoon. 763 and wrestlings.
- And after¹ al thys is ended and eke I-doon, ¹ overlined.
 Iustes, reuelle and festes gonne to slake,
 Thei take her leve homward for to goon.
 But ȝet er thei fully [had] her leve I-take,
 Eche lord wiche had there ony lady or make, 768
 Was yove too courseris, of wiche the oonⁿ Coursers are given to the guests,
 Was blak as cole, the other whyt as boon, 770
- Wyth sadeH and brydeH of gold and of silk ; 771 with other presents.
 Many mo rewardys eke þanⁿ I can now seye ;
 Some were yove Mantyllis white as the mylk,
 On whiche were many a broche and many a beye.
 Thus ryde thei homward forthe in her wey ; 775
 There is not ellis now but "fare wel and goo !
 I prey god be withȝ yov !" thus his the parlement doo. 777

Ca. 14.

Bk. I. Ch. 14.

- T**his lady, as þe story euene foorth telleth, 778
 Kept hir chavnbre and holdyth hir thus Inne,
 Wyth hir moder the qveen as ȝet she dwelleth ;
 hir bookes for to looke on can¹ she not blynne— ¹ MS. canse Katharine lives with her Mother,
 ho-so-euere lette hir, he dooth grete synne ! 782
 To offende his lady, what wene ye he is ?
 Ther was no manⁿ þat tyme that durste doo this. 784
- It was oonly hir ioeye and alle hir entent, 785
 ffor hir herte þat tyme was sette to novght ellis—
 fful high honour therby afterward she hent !

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 14.</u>	Bothe wyght & wysdome owte of hyr hert welles, Euyz as þe streme rennyth fro þe welles.	789
	Swych fayr frute in stodye dyd sche fynde, Wyth besy conceytes whech sche had of kynde.	791
	Ther was noo wyght þat in hyr presence	792
[fol. 15]	Durst onys touch of ony ille dede ; And if he dyd, he had hyr offens, ffor euyr-mor he coude not aftyr spede ; As for to be hyr seruaunde, þat is no drede, Sche hated not þe persone, but only þe synne ; Of uertuous spech coude sche not blynne.	796 798
	Ther was neuer wrong founde in þat may, þe cors of hyr couernauns ¹ was euer so clene, ^{1 r. gouernauns}	799
	Boþe pryuy & aperte, at euery a-say, Stedfast & stable was euer þis qwene ; Sche was a very seynt, truly, as I wene, þow sche wer' not baptized—so was cornelius ; hys prayer was herde, scriptur seyth þus,	803 805
	Of our lorde godd, or he baptized wer', And þer-for was Petyr sent vnt-to hym þe articles of þe feyth hym for to ler' ; he had feyth be-for, but it was dyme, he was made to cryst a ful ryght lyme ;	806 810
	hys feyth was not cause of hys good werkes, But hys werkes causyd feyth, þus seye þese clerkes.	812
	Thys same lady eke, thow sche not baptized wer', Sche haundyd holy werkys be steryng of þe spryght, Whech made hyr of synne for to hafe fere And to loue vertu, boþe day & nyght.	813
	þe soule nedyth uertu as mech as yze lyght— þis wote þei well þat feel experyens.	817
	þis was þe cause þat her noble presence	819
	Was noryscher of vertu & qwencher of vyce. ffor whan sche coud a-spye any mysdrawte Of man or of woman, þat þei wer' nyce,	820

- Bothe wit and wysdam oute of hir hert swelles (!),
 Euene as [þe] strem renneth fro the welles. 789
- Swiche fayr frute in stody dede she fynde,
 Wyth besy conseytis wiche she hadde of kynde. 791
- There was no wyght that in hir presens 792
 Durste oones tovche of ony ille dede ;
 And if he dede, he had hir offens,
 ffor euere-more he covde not after speede ;
 As for to be hir seruauant, þat is no drede, 796
 She hated not the persone, but oonly the synne ;
 Of vertuous speche covde she not blynne. 798
- There was neuere wrong fovnde in þat may, 799
 The cors of hir gouernavns was euere so clene,
 Bothe preuy and apert, at euery assay,
 Stedefast and stable was euere þis qveene ;
 She was a very seynt, trewely, as I weene, 803
 Thov she were not baptysed—so was Cornelius ;
 his preyere was herd, scripture seith thus, 805
- Of oure lord god, er he baptised were, 806
 And þerfore was petir sent on-to hym
 The Articles of the feyth hym for to lere ;
 he had feyth be-fore, but it was dym),
 he was made to cryst a ful ryght lym) ; 810
 his feyth was not cavse of his good werkys,
 but his werkys caused feith, thus seyn these clerkys. 812
- This same lady eke, þovgh she not baptised were, 813
 She havnted hooly werkys be strengthe (!) of þe spyryt,
 Wiche made hir of synne for to haue fere
 And to love vertu, bothe daye and nyght.
 The sove nedeth vertu as moche as the hyze lyght— 817
 This wote þei weel that feele experiens.
 This was the cavse that hir noble presens 819
- Was norrysshore of vertu and quencher of vice. 820
 ffor whanne she covde aspye ony mysdraught
 Of man) or of woman), that thei were nyce,

Bk. I. Ch. 14.

and studies.

No ill deed is
spoken of to
her.No wrong is
ever found in
her.Katharine
does holy
works, and
fears sin.

- Bk. I. Ch. 14.* ffor fer' or for lofe wold sche leue nawte,
 But soone schuld þei fulwysyly be tawte; 824
 "It may not be þus," sche sayd, "it is not honest;
 A man, but he be reulyde, he is but a beest. 826
 "What wene 3e now whan 3e trespace? 827
 þow I not a-spye 3ow, I sey 3ow trulye,
 þer is oon a-boue þat loketh on our' face,
 And on all þe membrys of our' bodye;
 Iff he ony fowle dede may in vs aspye, 831
 He deynyth¹ our' seruyse—þis is my preue; ^{1 = dedeynyth}
 Sey clerkys qwat þei wyH, þus I be-leue. 833
 "ffor wele I wote, a-boue Iupiter and alle 834
 Is a mayster-rewler, & eterne he is; ^{1 euyr on the margin.}
 Vp-on þis werld qwat-so-euyr¹ schaff be-falle,² ^{2 r. falle}
 ffalle qwan-it schaffe, he is euyr in blysse.
 And þei þat loue vertu, schall not want, I-wysse, 838
 Neuyr his gode lordschep; he may, as it is skylle,
 Make goddes of men, qwan þat euyr he wyllle." 840
 þus wold sche sey, þat noble lady dere, 841
 On-to her' servauntes, and hem aH exhorte;
 Sche was homly as þow sche wer' here fere.
 þe dredfuH & sekely wold sche coumfort;
 Mery & glad was sche at eueri disport, 845
 Sad eke þer-to qwan sche schuld sad be,
 Godely of her' spech, of here expens fre. 847

*Bk. I. Ch. 15.*Ca^m. 15^m.

- W**hat is a lond qwan it hath non' hed? 848
 þe lawes are not kept, þe lond desolate,
 þe hertes hangyng and heuy as lede,
 þe comonys grutchyng & euer at þe bate,¹ ^{1 r. debate}
 þere is kept non rewle, kept non' astate. 852
 þus seyde þe puple of surry alle-about, e,
 "Our' kyng is now ded, oure lyth is nye owte. 854

- ffor feer or for loue wulde she leue nawght,
 But sone shuld þei ful wysly be taught; 824 *Bk. I. Ch. 14.*
- "It may not be þus," she seyde, "it is nought honeste;
 A man, but he be reuled, he is but a beeste. 826 *She corrects all misdoing,*
- "What wene 3e now whan 3e trespace? 827
- Though I not aspye 3ov, I sey yow trewelye,
 There is oon¹ a-bove þat looketh in oure face, ¹ overlined.
- And on alle the membris of oure bodye;
 If he ony fowlhed may in vs aspye, 831
- he deyneth oure seruyse—this is my preue;
 Sey clerkys what they wof, thus I be-leue. 833
- "ffor weel I wot, a-bove Iubiter and alle 834 *saying that above Jupiter is a Ruler in eternal bliss.*
- Is a mayster-revlere, and eterne he is;
 Vp-on this world what-so-euere shal falle,
 ffalle whan it shal, he is euere in blys.
- And þei þat loue vertu shul not wante, I-wys, 838
- Sithe of¹ his good lordshipe he may, as it is skyl, ¹ overl.
- Make goddys of men, whanne-so-euere he wyl." 840
- Thus wolde she seyn, that noble lady deere, 841
- On-to hir servantes, and hem alle exorte;
 She was homly as þough she were her feere.
- The dredful and seekly wolde she conforte,
 Mery and glad was she at euery disporte, 845 *Katharine comforts the humble and sick.*
- Sad eke þer-to whan she shuld sad be,
 Goodly of hir speche, of hyr expens fre. 847

Cam. 15m.

Bk. I. Ch. 15.

- What is a lond whan it hath non hed? 848
- The lawes arn not kepte, the lond is desolate,
 The hertys hangyng as heuy as leed,
 The commouns grutchynge and euere at debate, 851
- There is kepte no revle,¹ ne kepte noon astate. ¹ orig. rewle
- Thus seyde the peple of surry al a-bovte,
 "Oure kyng is now ded, oure lyght is ny ovte. 854 *The Syrian folk*

Bk. I. Ch. 15.

"Opir londys spoyle vs, & þat wyth-oute mercy, 855

We mote nede suffyr, we may non odyr doo ;

þow we speke & calle and for help cry,

þer is no man gladly wyth cum vs to.

We haue aHewey thout; þat it schuld be so— 859

Wyth-owte a kyng how schuld a cuntre stand ?

We haue lost for eyr oure name & oure land. 861

"We haue a qwen, sche comyth among no men, 862

Sche loneth not ellys but bokys & scole ;

late aH our' enmys in lond ryde or ren,

Sche is euer in stody and euermore sole.

þis wille turne vs aH to wrake & to dole ! 866

But had sche a lord, 3it aH mythe be wele.

O þou blynd fortune, how turnyst þow þi wheel ! 868

[fol. 16]
[2nd hand]

"Now hye, now lowe ; now he þat was a-boue 869

lyght low be-nethe, in car' & myschef eke,

And he þat supposyd to conqwer' now hys¹ loue, ^{1 = ys}

he schall noght haf hyr' of all þis next weke ;

Sumtyme be we heyle, sume-tyme be we seke. 873

O very onsekynnesse, o chaungand & variable !

þou werdly lyffe, for eyr art þou vn-stable ! 875

"Who schall þis londe wyth-oute kyng now stande ? 876

It was neuyr seyn 3et þat þe sarsynrye

Was left a-lone vn-to a wommanes hande.

Sche must be weddyd, þis mayd, & þat in hye,

On-to sume kyng—our' lond may þus not lye. 880

ffy vp-on rychesse, but if þei worchep doo

To man þat weldyth hem—for þei ar mad þer-too. 882

"We schall far' ellys as þeise negardes doo, 883

ley vp her' gold & eyr wyll þei spare,

In all her' lyffe þei may not tend þer-too

To hafe any myrthe or ony welfare ;

Ryght euyr þus now are we lyke to fare, 887

We schul haf rychesse & it schal do noo goode.

Godd forbede eke þat þis ryath blode 889

- " Other londis spoyle vs, and that wyth-ovte mercy, 855 *Bk. I. Ch. 15.*
 We mote nedes suffer, we may non other doo ;
 Though we speke, and calle, and for help cry,
 Ther is no man gladly wil come vs too.
 We haue alwey thought þat it shuld be soo— 859
 Wythoute¹ a kyng hov shulde a contre stonde ? ¹ oute overl. grumble at
 We haue lost for euere the name of oure londe. 861 *having no King.*
 " We haue a qveen, she cometh a-mong no men, 862 *but only a Queen, who loves books.*
 She loveth not ellis but bookys and scole ;
 Lete alle oure enemys in londe ryde or ren,
 She is euere in stody and euere-more soole.
 This wil turne vs alle to wrake and to doole ! 866
 But had she a lord, yet al myght be wel. *She ought to marry.*
 O þou blynde fortune, how turnest þou þi¹ whel ! ¹ MS. þe
 " Now hy, now lowe ; now he þat was a-bove 869
 Lyeth low be-nethe, in care and myschef eke,
 And he þat supposed to conquere now is loue,
 he shal not haue here of al þis nexte weke ; *The Syrian folk say*
 Somtyme we be heyl, somtyme we be seeke. 873
 O very onsekernesse, o chaunged (!) and varyable !
 Thou worldly lyf, for euere art þou onstable ! 875
 " how shal þis lond wyth-ovte kyng now stande ? 876
 It was neuere seen zet þat þe sarsynrye
 Was left allone on-to womans hande.
 She must be wedded, þis mayde, and þat in hie, *that Katharine must wed some King.*
 On-to som kyng—oure lond may þus not lye. 880
 ffy vp-on rychesse, but if þei wurshep doo
 To man þat weldeth hem—for þei arn made þer-too. 882
 " We shul fare elles as these nygardes doo, 883
 ley vp here gold and [euyr] whil¹ thei spare, ¹ r. wil
 In al her lyue þei may not tende þer-too 885
 To haue oo myrthe or ony weelfare ; ¹ a word (nov ?) erased before arn
 Ryght euene thus arn¹ we lykly to be brought in care (!),
 We shul haue rychesse and it shal do no good.
 God forbede eke þat this ryal blood 889

Bk. I. Ch. 15.

"Of our' noble kyng schuld cesse þus in þis mayde! 890
 We wyll require hyr on all-maner' wyse
 ffor to be wedded"—þus þe puple sayd;
 "þer' is noo reule in lorde ne in iustyse,
 þei sett þe schyer', þe cessyons & þe cyse 894
 Ryght as hem lyst; will for reson' goth now—
 þis gouernauns is no-thing vn-to our' prowē. 896
 "And if we to batayle schuld vs enbrace, 897
 Who schuld lede vs, who schall be our' gyde?
 A woman-kende neuyr zet able was
 To reule a puple þat is so grete & wyde,
 To sette þe standard þe wengys on' þe syde; 901
 And if we chese to captayn any oþer¹ lorde, ^{1 to be om.}
 Enuye & rancur' wyll cause sone dyscorde." 903
 Thys was her' lay thorow-owte all þe londe, 904
 "Why is our' qwen' þus long wyth-owte a kyng?"
 Boþe hye & lowe all had þis on honde,
 "Why is sce vn-weddyd, þis zung, þis fayr' thyng?"
 Sche is full wyse, sche is full lykyng, 908
 Sche is ful able a husbond for to haue:
 Sche mote so nedys, yf sche wyllē us saue." 910
 Vp-on þis mater', euene wyth a comon asent, 911
 Thei made a gaderyng' wyth-oute autorite.
 ffor serteyn lordes ryth sone haue þei sent',
 That þei shal come þe common¹ profyth to se. ^{1 MS. comōn}
 Among' hem alle þis was þan her' decre: 915
 Vp-on þis mater' a lettir wyllē þei wryte,
 In most goodly wyse þei wyH þat lettir endyte, 917
 In which þei shal on-to her' lady þe qwen 918
 And to her moder, which is her' lady eke,
 Wryte & pray þat þei wyl to hem seen,
 As þei be ladies both merciful & meke,
 Thei suffyr no mor' þe lordes þus of greke 922
 Ouyr-ryde hem so, it was not þe old gyse.
 The lettir, certeyn, was wrytyn in þis wyse: 924

[fol. 16, b.]
[1st hand]

- "Of oure noble kyng shuld cece¹ thus in pis mayde! 890 *Bk. I. Ch. 15.*
- We wyl requyre hir on aȝ-maner wyse ^{1 orig. cese}
- ffor to be wedded,"—thus þe peple sayde ;
- "Ther is no revle in lord ne in Iustyse,
- They sette the shire, þe cessayons and the Cyse 894
- Ryght as hem lest ; wiȝt for resoun gooth now—
- This gouernaunce is no-thing to oure prow. 896
- "And if we to batayle shulde vs enbraas, 897
- ho shal lede vs, ho shal be oure gyde ? *and a Chief to lead them in battle.*
- A woman-keende neuere ȝet able waas
- To reule a peple that is [so] gret and wyde,
- To sette þe standard the wyng's on the syde ; 901
- And if we chese to oure captayn ony lord,
- Envye and rancovr wil cause sone discord." 903
- This was her lay thurgh-oute al the land, 904 *The Syrians*
- "Whi his oure qveen thus longe wyȝt-ovten a kyng ?"
- Bothe hey and lowe al had pis on hand, ^{1 MS. yovnge}
- "Why is she on-wedded, pis yovnge,¹ this fayre thyng ? *say that Katharine must get a Husband.*
- She is ful wys, she is ful lykyng, 908
- She is ful able an housbond for to haue :
- She mote so nedes, if she wil vs saue." 910
- Vp-on this mater, euene wyȝt a comon assent, 911
- Thei made a gaderyng wyȝt-ovten autorite.
- ffor certeyn lordes ryght soone haue þei sent,
- That þei shul come the comon profyte to see.
- A-mong hem alle pis was thanne her decree : 915 *They resolve to write a Letter about*
- Vp-on this mateer a lettere wil thei wryte,
- In moost goodly wyse þei wil þat lettere endyte, 917
- In whiche þei shal on-to her lady the qveen 918 *it to her and her Mother.*
- And to hir moder, whiche is her lady eke,
- Wryte and pray þat þei wil to hem seen,
- As thei be ladyes mercyful and meke,
- Thei suffre no more the lordis thus of greke 922
- Ouere-ride hem soo, it was not the olde gyse.
- The lettere, certeyn, was wreten in this wise : 924

- “ On-to our’ ladyes, þe elder & þe 3onge, 925
 Be it now knowe þat þorow aH surry-lond
 Yt is seyð & spoke ny of euery tonge,
 þat þei wer’ neuer so lykly to be bonde
 To oþer londes wheche haue þe hyer hond, 929
 As þei ar’ now. wherfor’ to-gyder’ þei crye
 On-to yow, ladyes, þat 3e wyH haue mercye 931
 “ Vp-on 3our’ men, vp-on 3our’ lordes eke : 932
 þei maynot lyue but þei defended be.
 3our’ hertys be so petouse & so meke,
 3e wyl not lete þis mater’ slyde, parde.
 What is a lord but yf’ he haue mene ? 936
 What is a puple but yf’ þei haue a lord ?
 loke euery kyngdam þorow-out aH þis world,¹ 1 r. word 938
 “ But yf’ þei haue a man þat dar’ wele fyte, 939
 Thei ar’ put vnder. it was not sene or¹ now 1 orig. er
 That surre & cypre, & þat ylde þat hyte
 Cande þe rych, wech hath a see ful rowe,
 Shuld be þus kyngles. to god we make a vowe, 943
 We may not lyue þus long in rest & pes.
 Of clamoure & cry wyH we neuer I-ses, 945
 “ But euer be-seke 3ou, as oure ladyes dere, 946
 3e wyl be gouernyd & werk be counsayle ;
 Thynk’ 3e be to vs both leef & dere, 1 overlined.
 And þink’ our’ seruyse may 3et¹ sumwhat a-vayle ;
 Lete sum pete owt of 3our’ hertys hayle, 950
 Suffyr 3our’ puple haue sum of her’ desyre !
 This was þe losse certayn) of men of tyre, 952
 “ Thei had no kyng, þerfor þei had no grace ; 953
 Whan appolony was ded, fro hem passed & goo,
 Euery man as þer his owe mayster was.
 God forbede for euyr þat it were so
 In surre-lond ! for þan were it vn-do. 957

[fol. 17]
[4th hand]

Ca^m. 16^m.Bk. I. Ch. 16.

- “On-to oure ladies, the oldere and the yov[n]ge, 925 *The Letter.*
 be it now knowe þat thurgh al surry-lond
 It is seyð and spoke ny of euery tovnge,
 That thei were neuere so lykly to be bond
 To other londes whiche han the heyere hond, 929
 As thei am now. wherefore to-gedir þei crye
 On-to yov, ladyes, that ye wil haue mercye 931
- “Vp-on ȝour men, vp-on ȝour lordes eke : 932 *We Syrians*
 Thei may not lyve but þei defended be.
 Yovre hertes ben so pytous and so meke,
 Ye wil not lete þis mater slyd, hope we (!).
 What is a lord but if he haue mene? 936 *want a Lord*
 What is a peple but if he haue a lord?
 Loke euery kyngdam thurgh-ovte al þe word, 938
- “But if thei haue a man that dar weel fyte, 939 *to fight for us.*
 Thei am put vnder. it was not seen er now
 That surry and Cypre, and þat ylde¹ þat hyghte ^{1 orig. hylde} *Syria, Cy-*
 Cande the ryche, þat hath a see ful row, *prus, and*
 Shulde be thus kynges. to god we make a vow, 943 *Candia are*
 We may not lyve thus longe in reste and pees. *kingless.*
 Off clamour and Cry wil not we sees, 945
- “But euere be-seeke you, as oure ladyes, now heere (!),
 ȝe wil be gouerned and werke be counsaile ; 947
 Thenketh ye be to vs bothe leef and dere,
 And thenketh oure seruyse may yet somewhat awayle ;
 Lete som pyte ovte of ȝour hertys hayle, 950
 Suffre yovre peple to haue somewhat of her desyre !
 This was the losse certeyn of men of Tyre, 952
- “Thei had no kyng, therefore thei had no grace ; 953 *When Tyre*
 Whan appolony was ded, fro hem passed and goo, *lost Appo-*
 Euery man as there his owne mayster wace. *lonius, the*
 God forbeede that euere it were soo *land was in*
 In surre-lond ! for thanne were it vndoo. 957 *anarchy.*

Bk. I. Ch. 16. It was neuer sene forsoth, ne neuyr schaff be ;
 And if it wer', far'-wele þan¹ felice! ^{1 overlined.} 959
 "This we desyre now, schortly for to telle, 960
 And þus desyrith aff þe lond be-dene,
 þis is conclusion of aff our' gret counselle :
 That oure 3ong lady mote nede weddyd bene.
 Late here haue choys, sche is wyse, we wene ; 964
 Chois hath sche, for many on wold her' haue.
 Deliuier þis mater, so god 3our' soulys saue. 966
 "This thing is aff þat we wylle sey as now. 967
 We aske a answey, and þat in hasty wyse.
 We pray to god, to whom we alle mote bowe,
 He sette 3ow soo and lede in swech a gyse,
 That ryth to-morow, or 3e owt of bed ryse, 971
 And er¹ 3e come owte in-to þe halle, ^{1 corr. to or ?}
 That 3e desyre as we desyre now alle." 973

Bk. I. Ch. 17.

Cam. 17m.

The qwenе answeyrd & wrot ryght¹ þus ageyn, ^{1 overl.}
 Sche seyð, þis thyng aff-gatys moste be do ; 975
 To lyue a-lone in stody, it was neuer seyn
 That ony lady ony tyme dyd so.
 Therfor her' wylle is fully sette þer-to 978
 That her' dowter, qwen of þat empyre,
 Schaff be weddyd hastyly to sum syre. 980
 And vp-on þis her' letter hath she sent 981
 Ryth in þis forme & in þis-maner style : ^{1 MS. style}
 "The qween of surry, of cypre þat was brent,
 Of candy eke lady & of many a myle,
 Wyffe on-to costus whech but a lytyle whyle 985
 Is passyd & ded, on-to her' puple she seyth :
 She a-lowet3 ful wele her' manhode & her' feyth ; 987
 "Sche wyl as þei wyff, & hath do many a day, 988
 þat her' douter on-to sum kyng' shuld be
 Maryed or wedded ; she seyð 3et neuer nay,

[fol. 17, b.]
[1st hand]

It was neuere seen for sooth, ne neuere shal bee ; [fol. 18] *Bk. I. Ch. 16.*

And if it were, farwel felycyte ! 959

“ This we desyre now, shortly for to telle, 960

And thus desyreth al the lond be-dene,

This is the conclusyon of oure grete counselle :

That oure 3ounge lady mote nede wedded bene.

lete her haue choys, she is wis, we wene ; 964

We want'
our Queen'
Katharine
to wed.'

Chois hath she, for many on wolde hir haue.

Delyuere this mater, so god 3oure sovlys saue. 966

“ This pyng is al¹ that we wil sey now. ¹ orig now al 967

We aske an answeere, and that in hasty wyse.

We pray to god, to whom we alle mote bow,

he sette 3ow soo and lede in swiche a gyse,

That right to-morwe, er 3e ovte of your bed ryse, 971

And er 3e come ovte in to þe halle,

That ye desyre as¹ we desire nov alle.” ¹ overlined. 973

Cam. 17m.

Bk. I. Ch. 17.

The qveen answerde and wrot ryght þus ageyn, 974

She seyde, “ this pyng algates mote be doo ;

To leue allone in stody, it was neuer seyn

That ony lady ony tyme dede soo.”

Therefore hir wil is fully seet þere-too 978

That hir dovghter, qveen of that empyre,

Shal be wedded hastyly to som grete syre. 980

And vp-on this hir letter hath she sent 981

Ryght in this foorme and in this-maner-stile :

“ The qveen of surry, of Cypre þat was brent,

Of Candy eke lady and of many a myle,

Wyf on-to Costus whiche but a lytyl while 985

Is passed and ded, on-to hir peple seyth :

She alloweth ful weel her manhod and her feyth ; 987

“ She wil as thei wil, and hath doo many a day. 988

That hir dovghter on-to som kyng shuld bee

Maryed or wedded ; she seyde 3et neuere nay,

and writes to
tell them so.

Katharine
ought to
marry some
King.

- Bk. I. Ch. 17. But euer her' wylle hath be in to þis degre,
 loke wher' 3e wyH & whanne, for so wyl sche. 992
 Sche wold ful fayn þat þis þing' wer' I-doo;
 Yt had be fynyschyd ful long' tyme a-goo, 994
 " Yf it had ley in her' or in her' wylle. 995
 Sche thynkyth certeyn reson þat þei sey :
 To haue a kyng' it is ful goode skylle,
 Be-cause a woman neithir can ne may
 Do liche a man ne sey, it is no nay, 999
 Go loke 3our-selue, for 3e be wyse men alle.
 My doutir, I trowe, on-to your' wyH shal falle. 1001
 " She was neuer 3ete a-sayed in no degre 1002
 Of 3ow ne me ne of no-manner with ;
 As in þis mater' sche seyð neuer nay ne 3ee,
 We may not blame her' in no-manner plyth ;
 She doth to vs as 3et no-thing' but ryght, 1006
 Ne non she east, truly, as I suppose.
 We wyll ful sone her' of þis þing' appose. 1008
 " Yf she consent, þan haue we al I-doo. 1009
 But þis same þing', certayn, touchith vs aH,
 It longyth nowt, only to on or too,
 But all our' reme herto must we calle,
 ffor grete pereH ellys þerof myth faH ; 1013
 Yt longyth to þe ferthest' as wele as to hem
 þat dwelle her' ny. 3e wote ful wele, her' em, 1015
 [fol. 18] " The duke of tyre, mote nede know þis þing', 1016
 The duke of antioche eke, her' owne cosyn ;
 If we shul haue a lord or ellys a kyng',
 þei mote consent, þei mote make þe fyn.
 lete þis mater' no lenger slepe ne lyne ! 1020
 We wyll send oute now in aH hastily wyse
 þat euery man shal com in hese best gyse 1022
 " On-to þis alisaundre, þer we dwelle as now ; 1023
 þei shal sey & her' alle þat euer þei wylle,

- But euere hir wil hath be in this degree, Bk. I. Ch. 17.
 Looke where thei wil and whanne, for soo wil shee. 992
 She wuld ful fayn that this thyng were I-doo; Katharine's
Mother
agrees that
 It hadde be fynyshed ful longe tyme a-goo, 994
 "If it had leyn in hir or in hir wille. 995
 She thenkyth¹ certeyn resoun that þei say : ^{1 MS. thenkytel}
 To haue a kyng it is ful good skylle, the Syrians
ought to have
a King,
 be-cause a woman neyther can ne may
 Doo lyche a man ne seye, it is no nay, 999
 Soo¹ loke youre-selue, for ye be wise men alle. ^{1 r. Go}
 My dovter, I trowe, on-to *your* wil shal falle. 1001
 "She was neuere yet assayed in no degree 1002
 Of yow, ne me, ne of no-manner wyght;
 As in this mater she seyde neuere nay ne 3e,
 We may not blame hir in no-manner plyght;
 She dooth to vs as yet no thyng but ryght, 1006 and thinks
her Daughter
will marry, if
askt;
 Ne non she casteth, trewly, as I suppose.
 We wiln ful sone hir of this þing appose. 1008
 "If [s]he consente, than haue we alle I-doo. <sup>[fol. 19 b. The
next passages
are out of order
in the MS.;
II. 36—105 pre-
cede v. 1009.]</sup>
 But þis same þing, certeyn, toucheth vs alle,
 It longeth not oonly to oon or too,
 but alle oure reem herto must we calle,
 ffor gret pereH [ellys] ther-of myght falle; 1013 but the whole
Realm is con-
cerned in the
matter,
 It longeth to the ferthest as [wel as] to hem
 That dwellyn here ny. ye wote ful weel, here hem, 1015
 "The duke of Tyre, muste nede knowe this thing, 1016
 The duke of Antyoche eke, hir owyn cosyn;
 If we shul haue a lord or ellis a kyng,
 Thei mote conscente, thei mote make þe fyn.
 lete þis mater no lenger slepe ne lyn! 1020
 She wil sende oute now in hasty wyse
 That euery man shal come in his beste gyse 1022 so she will
summon its
chief men
 "On-to þis Alysavndre, there we dwelle as now; 1023 to Alexandria
 Thei shal sey and here aft þat [euer] thei wille,

<i>Bk. I. Ch. 17.</i>	Ther' shaft no man, to god I make a vowe, Be lettyd for vs, speke he loude or styll."	
	This was þe sentense of þe qwenes bille.	1027
	The puple red it & was ful wele a-payde, "God saue our lady," wyth o voys þus þei seyde.	1029
	Thus endeth þis boke of þis clene uirgine, In which her' byrth, her' kynrod & her' countre Is declared, so as she wold enclyne hir' gracious help to send on-to me.	1030
	Now ferthermor' a newe boke be-gynne wyl we, In which we shall on-to hyr' worchep wryte, So as we can in our' langage endyte,	1034
	The grete conflicte be-twyx þe lordes & her' Ryth in þe parlement, which was ful realy hold At grete alysaunder—many a ful stout syre On-to þat cite at þat tyme cam ful bold. It wyl be long' or þat þis tale be told ; þerfor I counseil þat we make her' a pause And eke a-rest ryth euene at þis clause.	1036 1037 1041 1043

*Bk. II. Prol.**liber secundus. Prologus.*

	L oke whanne 3e see þe sparkes fayr' & bryth Spryng' fro þe fyre & vpward fast to goo, 3e may suppose be reson & be ryth Summe fyre is nye, experiens telleth you soo ; þer go no sparkes neithir to ner' fro But þer as fyr' is, þis se we ryth at eye. In þis same maner of þis same lady I sey : þeis holy wordes, þeis holy dedes eke Whech sche spake & vsed here lyuande, Alle þoo were tokenys þat her' hert gan seke Here gostly spouse, sche lefte not tyll sche fond That blyssyd lord. sche knowyth not 3it hys hand As sche schaff aftyr, but sche haue ¹ tokenys gode ; And aH ² of god sche knowyth not 3it þe rode ;	1 5 7 8 12
--	---	------------------------

[fol. 18, b.]
[4th hand]

¹ r. hath
² r. als ?

- There shal no man, to oure god I make a vow,
 Be letted for vs, speke he loude or styлле.”
 This was þe sentens of the qveenes bille. 1027
 The peple redde it, and was ful weel a-payede,
 “God saue oure lady” with oo voys thus thei sayde. 1029
- Thus endeth þis book of this clene virgine, 1030
 In whiche hir byrthe, hir kynred and hyr contre
 Is declared, soo as she wolde enclyne
 hyr gracyovs helpe to sende on-to me.
 Now ferthere-more a newe book begynne wil we, 1034
 In whiche we shal on-to hir wurshyppe wryte,
 So as we kan in oure langage endyte, 1036
- The grete conflicte be-twyxe the lordes and hir 1037
 Ryght in þe parlemente, whiche was ful ryaly holde
 At grete Alysavndre—many a ful stoute sir
 On-to þat Cytee at þat tyme cam ful boolde.
 It wil be long er þat this tale be toolde; 1041
 Therfore I counseyþ þat we make here a pavse
 And eke a reste ryght euene at this clause. 1043

*Bk. I. Ch. 17.*to discuss
Katharine's
marriage.But as there's
to be a dis-
pute over it,we'll end
Book I. here.¹ MS. Cam.
1m.*Bk. II. Prol.***Liber secundus. Prologus.¹**

- L**oke, whan ye see þe sparkes fayre and bryght 1
 Sprynge fro the fyre and vpward faste to goo,
 Ye may suppose be reson and be ryght
 Som fyre is ny, experyens telleth yow soo;
 There go no sparkes neyther too ne froo 5
 But there as fyre is, þis see we ryght at eyze.
 In this same maner of this lady I seye: 7
- These hooly woordys, these hooly deedes eke 8
 Whiche she¹ spak² and vsed here lyuande,
 Alle tho were tookenes þat hir herte gan seke
 hir goostly spovse, she lefte not tyl she fand 1
 That blyssed lord¹. she knoweth not yet his hande 12
 As shal she afterward, but she hath tookenes goode;
 And alle-soo¹ of god she knoweth not yet the roode; 14

¹ overlined.
² MS. spark¹ overlined. that she is
seeking
Christ,¹ soo overlined.

- Bk. II. Prol.* Sche knowyth not crist, sche hath not herd his lore, 15
 But ȝit þe fyre of charite & of loue
 Brennyth in here, so þat euer more & more
 Here hert is sette on oon þat sytte a-boue. ^{1 MS. dewe}
^{2 overlined.}
 I trowe þat dowe¹ þe qwech vp²-on crist dide houe 19
 Whanne he was baptized, had mad in hyr hys nest.
 This wote I wele, sche can not now haue rest, 21
 But aȝ hyr spech is now to comend 22
 þe grete vertu qwech we virginite
 A-mongys [vs]¹ name. who coude þanne a wende ^{1 omitted.}
 That on þis vertu so dewly thynk' wold sche?
 ffor swech examplis want in þat cuntre; 26
 Ther is no man desyryth sche be a mayde,
 Sche mote be weddyd nedys, þus þei sayde. 28
 And as we see, þe more is leyde to brenne 29
 þe gretter fyre þer is, it is no dowte;
 ffor drawe away þe schydys fro it þen,
 Sone wyȝ þe fyre be qwenchyd & be owte:—
 þe more þis lady vertues is a-bowte 33
 þe more þei grow, þei haue a fuȝ gode grownde.
 Here cours, þei sey, as sercle it is rownd, 35
 ffor eueri vertu folowyth ryth aftyr odyr: 36
 Whan on is come, he callyth ine his felaw;
 þei loue to-geder as syster or as þe brothyȝ,
 Ech of hem aȝ his besynesse doth to draw,
 Tyȝ aȝ be come—ryth swech, lo,¹ is her lawe, ^{1 orig. so} 40
 Be-gynne ageyn whan þou hast vsed þe last;
 here serculed cours ryth þus, lo, haue þei cast. 42
 Thys made here hate þese fleschly lustys alle, 43
 ffor in þis sercle sche is so farre I-paste
 þat from þat whele sche cast here not to falle;
 here hert & þei be teyd so wondyr fast,
 Of hem it hath take so swetly þe tast, 47
 Thei are mette and mates, now & euer-more,
 Thei are now bownd to-gedyr wondyr sore. 49

- She knoweth not cryst, she hath not herd his lore, 15 *Bk. II. Prol.*
 But yet þe fyre of charyte and of love
 Brenneth in hir, soo þat euere more and more
 hir herte is sette on oon that sitteth a-bove.
 I trowe þat dowe whiche vp-on cryst dede houe 19
 Whan he was baptysed, had made in hir his nest.
 This wote I weel, she can not now haue rest, 21
- But al hir speche is now to comende 22 *She talks much of Virginity.*
 The grete vertu whiche is vyrgynyte,
 A-mong vs namely—who cowde thanne a wende
 That on þis vertu so dewly thenke wulde she?
 ffor swwhyche exaunplys wante¹ in þat contre; ^{1 MS. wente} 26
 There is no man desyreth she be a mayde,
 She mote be wedded, nedys thus, þei sayde. 28
- And as we see, þe more is leyd to brenne 29
 The grettere fyre þer is, it is no dowte;
 ffor drawe a-wei þe shides fro it thenne,
 Soone wil þe fyre be quenched and be ovte:
 The more this lady vertues is aboute 33
 The more thei growe, þei haue a ful good grounde.
 her cours the seyde sercle (!) it is rounde, 35 *Her virtues grow:*
- ffor euery vertu folweth right after other: [fol. is b] 36
 Whan on is come, he calleth in his felawe;
 Thei loue to-gedir as sister or as the brother,
 Eche of hem alle his besynesse dooth to drawe,
 Til alle be come—right swiche lo is her lawe, 40
 Be-gynne a-geyn whan thou hast vsed the last;
 her sercle cours right thus loo haue þei cast. 42
- This made hir hate these fleshly lustys alle, 43 *Katharine hates fleshly lusts.*
 ffor in þis sercle she is soo ferre I-paste
 That from that wil (!) she casteth hir not to falle;
 hir herte and thei be teyed so wunder faste,
 Of hem she hath soo sweetly take þe taste, 47
 They am mette and mates now and euere-more,
 Thei am¹ now bounde to-gedere wonder sore. ^{1 overlined.} 49

<u>Bk. II. Prof.</u>	It acordeth full weel, me thynk, to here name	50
	That vicyous lyfe in here schuld haue no place ;	
	þeis latyn bokys, I suppose, sey þis same,	
	Here name, þei seyn, it is so full of grace	
	That synfull lyfe it can distroy & race ;	54
	ffor þus it menyth, certeyn ¹ , it is no nay :	¹ orig. forsoth
	Cata in grew, in englysch is þus to say	56
	“Ouyr aH” or “aH,” & ryne in oure langage	57
	Sownd “fallyngi,” as who schuld sey, in here	
	Of synne & schame aH þe sory rage	
	Destroyd was, it neyhyd her’ not nere.	
	þeis holy vertues were to here so dere,	61
	þei putte a-wey of synne[s] aH þe flok ^t ;	
	þei are schyt owt & sche speryd þe lok ^t .	63
	O noble lady, þat art now us aboue,	64
	Suffyr oure tungys, þow þei vn-worthy be,	
	To telle þi lyfe, þi ¹ langoure & þi ¹ loue	¹ r. þe
	þat þou had here in þi denoute secre,	
	To telle þe sorowe eke & þat aduersite	68
	Whech wyth þi lordys þou suffyrd as a clerk ^t !	
	We wyH now streyte dresse vs to þat werk ^t .	70

Bk. II. Ch. 1.Ca^m. 1^m.

N ow is not ellys but ryde, go & ren,	71
Messangerys are oute on hasty wyse	
To calle to parlement alle-maner menne,	
That þei come alle now in her’ best gyse ;	
Clerkes must come, for þei be so wyse,	75
And lordes eke, be-cawse þei be strong ^t .	
This gaderyng hardely was not taryd long ^t .	77
ffor, as I rede, wyth-inne wekys three	78
Thei be come thydir, & þat wyth gret pryde :	
The prince of capadoce wytȝ a gret mene,	
The erl of ioppen cam ryth be his syde—	
þer’ myght men se who can best sytte & ryde ;	82

It accordeth ful weel, me thenketh, to hir name	50	<i>Bk. II. Pro'.</i>
That vyciouse lyf in hir shuld haue no place :		Her name
These latyn bookes, I suppose, seyn the same,		implies this :
hir name, þei seye, it is soo ful of grace		
þat synful lyef it can distroye and race ;	54	
ffor thus it meneth, certayn, it is no nay :		
Catha in greu, in englyssh is to say	56	<i>Catha means</i>
“ Ouere alle,” or “ alle,” And ryne in oure langage	57	‘over all,’
Soundeth “ fallyng,” as we ¹ shulde sey, in heer	¹ r. who	<i>Ryne means</i>
Of synne and shame al the sory rage	[fol. 19]	‘falling.’
Destroyed was, it neyhed hir not neer.		
These holy vertues were to hir soo deer,	61	
Thei put a-wey of synne[s] al the flook,		
Thei arn shet oute and she spered the look.	63	
O noble lady, þat art now vs a-bove,	64	Sainted Lady,
Suffre oure tounge, þhough thei onworthi be,		let me tell thy
To telle thi lyef, the langure and the love		Life and
That þou hadest in thi devoute secree,		Love,
To telle the sorwe eke and that aduersite	68	thy Sorrow
Whiche wyth thi lordes þou suffered as a clerk !		and Distress !
We wil now streit dresse vs to þat werk.	70	

Cap. 1.¹¹ MS. Cap. 18*Bk. II. Ch. 1.*

N OW is not ellis but ryde, goo and renne,	71	
Massagerys arn oute on hasty wyse		
To calle to parlement alle maner men,		
That thei alle come now in her beste gyse ;		
Clerkys muste come, for þei ben so wyse,	75	The Parlia-
And lordes eke, be-cause thei be stronge.		ment
This gaderyng hardyly was not taryed longe.	77	
ffor, as I reede, wyth-inne wekes thre	78	
Thei be come theder, and that wyth grete pryde :		meets in
The prynce of Capadoce with a grete mene,		Alexandria.
The Erlle of ioppen cam rydyng be his syde—		
There myght men see who can best sytte and ryde ;	82	To it come
		the Earl of
		Joppa,

- Bk. II. Ch. 1. þe prince of paphon is come þedyr allsoo, ^{1 MS. &}
 þe duke of damask, wyth many [an]¹ oper¹ moo ; 84
- The duke of salence, þe duke of garacen, 85
 þei wer¹ ther¹ reall, & eke so was he
 þe erle of lymason—ful many strong men
 had þei wyth hem, þese reall lordes thre.
 þe amerell of Alysaudyr¹, wyth solennite 89
 he hath receyuyd hem, he was a full strong syr.
 he is come also, þe noble duke of tyre. 91
- Last of all þedyr¹ gan aproche 92
 A worthy man, hyr owyn¹ ny cosyn,
 þei call hym þer¹ þe duke of Antioch ;
 All þis mater¹ he schall now determyn,
 þus wene þei alle, for owte of o lyne 96
 Ar¹ þei come bothe ; he may ryght nowt wante,
 hys wyll in her¹ hert ful sone schall he plante. 98
- The day is come now wech assygned was ; 99
 þe lordes are gadred to-gedyr all in-fer¹.
 þe lenghe of þe halle fully too hundyrd pace
 So was it, certen, in wech þei gadered wer¹,
 Syttyng in her¹ counsell—þoo men þat wer¹ þer¹ 103
 þei mett it hem-self, þei seyde it was soo—
 Swech howses in þis werld ar not many moo. 105
- A grete lorde was chose þer a-mongis hem alle 106
 To tell hyr¹ wylle—"speker", he² sey, he was, ^{1 r. her}
 I wot not veryly what þat men hym calle. ^{2 r. þei}
 he went ful eslyly forth a ful soft pas
 Tyll he was come ryght be-for þe face 110
 Of þis meke lady, & þan þus he seyde :
 "Myn souereyn lady, 3e schull not be dysmayde, 112
 "3e schall for3eue, & þat I pray 3ow her¹, 113
 Thow I to 3ow sey tr^euth, as I must nede.
 I am a seruaunt, for I hafe take wage & hyr¹

The prynce of paphon is com ^þ thedir also,		<i>Be. II. Ch. 1.</i>
The duke of Damaske, wyth many other mo ;	84	the Duke of Damasus, &c.,
The duke of salence, the duke of Garaencen,	85	
Thei were there ryal, and eke so was he,		
The Erle of Iymason, with ful many strong men		
had thei with hem, [þese] ryal lordes thre.		
The amyraht of Alysandre, with solennyte	89	
he hath receyued hem, he was a ful straunge syre.		
he is come also, the noble duke of Tyre.	91	
Laste of alle theder gan ^þ approche	92	
A worthi man, hir owne ny Cosyn,		
Thei calle hym there the duke of Antioche ;		the Duke of Antioch, &c.
Al this mater he shal now determyn,		
Thus wene thei alle, for ovt ^e of oo lyn ^þ	96	
Are thei come bothe, he may ryght novght whant,		
his wyl in [her] herte ful sone shal he plant.	98	
The day is come now whiche assigned was ;	99	
The lordes arn ^þ gadered to-gedyr alle in-feere.		
The lengthe of the halle fully too hundir paas		The Hall is 200 paces long.
So was it, certeyn, in whiche thei gadered were,		
Sittyng ^e in her counseyl—tho men ^þ þat were there	103	
Thei mette it hem-selue, þei seyde it was soo—		
Swhiche hovses in þis world arn ^þ not many moo.	105	
A grete lord was chose there a-mong hem alle		[fol. 216. In the MS. vv. 176— 245 preceede 106 --175.]
To telle her wil—"spekere," þei seyn, he was,		A Speaker is chosen.
I wot not veryly what þat men ^þ hym calle.		
he went ful esyly foorth a ful soft paas		
Til he was come ryght be-foorn ^þ þe faas	110	
Of þis meke lady, and þanne thus he sayde :		
"My souereyn ^e lady, ye shul not be dismayde,	112	He addresses Katharine.
"Ye shal foryeue, and þat I prey yow here,	113	
Thow I to yow sey treuthe, as I muste nede.		
I am a seruant, and haue take wage in fere ¹		¹ MS. orig. for I h. t. w. and here

- Bl. II. Ch. 1.* Of yow, my lady, & þat in many stede ;
 I am chose eke þe nedys for to bede 117
 Of all your' reume, of lordys & of othyr—
 I except ryght noon, for certainly 3our' modyr 119
 "As in þis case is ryght on of heme. 120
 Sche wyll & þei, þat 3e, my lady der',—
 So wyll my lord þe duk of tyr', 3our' hem,
 I sey not fals, for he is present her'—
 What schuld I lenger hyde now my mater', 124
 3e must now leue your' stody & 3our' bokys
 And tak your' solace be feldys & be brokys. 126
 "T[h]ynk on your' kyn, thynk on your' hye lynce ; 127
 If 3e lef þus, þe elde auncetrye
 Schall fayle in 3ow. þer is no dyuyn
 Ne phylysopfre her' wyll sey þat I lye,
 ffor I sey þus : on-to our' goddys hardylle 131
 It is not plesaunce þat 3e schuld þus doo ;
 It pleseth hem bettyr, & 3e consent þer'-too— 133
 "And eke 3our' puple—þat 3e a husbond haue, 134
 A real lorde, wher may us alle defende.
 þe goddys ffrenchep if 3e wyll kepe & saue,
 On-to þis purpose 3e mote nede condescende ;
 3our' puple gretly þer'-by schuld 3e mende. 138
 Excuseth not þat wyll nocht be excusede,
 Ther' is swech choys, it may not be refusede. 140
 "What lord is þat, if onys he myght yow see, 141
 But he wold hafe 3ow? mech mor', dar' I sey,
 If he knew your' cunnyng, as now do we,
 he wold desyr' 3ow in all-maner' weye ;
 hys crown, hys kyngdam wold he rather' leye 145
 þan he schuld want your' noble wyse presence—
 Who se yow onys, desyryth not 3our' absence. 147
 "Ther'-for, lady, 3our' seruau'tis are now her' 148
 Be-sekyng [yow]¹ þat 3e wyll of 3our' grace ^{1 om.}

- Of yow, my lady, and that in many stede ; Bk. II. Ch. 1.
 I am chose eke the nedes for to bede 117
 Of alle youre reem, of lordes and of othir—
 I excepte ryght non, for certeynly your modir 119 All her lords,
and her
Mother
- “As in þis caas is ryght oon of hem. 120
 She wil and thei, þat ye, my lady deere,—
 Soo wil my lord the duke of Tire, your eem, and Uncle,
 I sey not fals, for he is present heere—
 What shuld I lengere now hyde my matere, 124
 Ye must now leue your stody and your bookes want her to
leave her
books,
 And take yowre solace be feeldes and be brookes. 126
- “Thenke on yovre kyn, thenke on your hei lyne ; 127
 If ye leue thus, the old auncetrye
 Shal fayle in yow. ther is no dyuyne
 Ner philysophere here wil sey þat I now lyze,
 ffor I sey thus : on-to ovre goddys hardylle 131
 It is non plesauns that ye shuld thus doo ;
 It pleseth hem better, and ye consente ther-too— 133
- “And [eke] your puple—that ye an husbond haue, 134 and take a
Husband.
 A ryal lord, whiche may us alle defende.
 The goddys frenshepe if ye wil kepe and saue,
 On-to this purpos ye mote nede condescende ;
 Youre puple getly therby shul ye mende. 138
 Excuseth not that wil be not excused,
 There is swyche choys, it may not be refused. 140
- “What lord is that, if ones he myght yow see, 141
 But he wold haue yow? moche more, dar I seye,
 If he knewe your connyng, as doo we,
 he wolde desyre yow in al-maner weye ; [fol. 22]
 his crowne, his kyngdam wolde he rather leye 145
 Than he shulde whante your noble wyis presens—
 Ho see yow ones, desyreth not your absens. 147
- “Therefore, lady, yovre seruauuntys arn now here 148
 Be-sekyng that ye wil of yovre grace

Bk. II. Ch. 1. Ope 3our' eres & lyst to our' prayere—
 ffor þis cause only came we to þis place
 Ryght all in-feer'. 3e may vs graunte solace, 152
 Or payne & sorow, ryght as 3e lyst to chese;
 3our' answer', lady, schall cause on of pese." 154

Bk. II. Ch. 2.

Ca^m. 2^m.

Fvl a-stoynd & all a-basched sore 155
 was þis lady, whan sche herd hym than.
 "O noble godd," thowt sche, "þat I now wore
 No qwen, ne lady! for I ne wote ne can
 Voyde þe sentens of þis ilke wyse man; 159
 My priuy counsell whech I hafe bor' long,
 Now must it owte, & þat thynkyth me wrong. 161
 "ffor if I schewe þat I so long hafe bor', 162
 þe priuyest poynt of my perfeccoun,
 Me thynkyth swyrly þan þat I hafe lore
 þe hye degre of my deuocoun).
 Whan veynglorye comth, uertu is þan gon'; 166
 Vertu serueth to plese godd only,
 And not þe puple—ryght þus redd hafe I. 168
 "If I concelle my counsell, þan schall I falle
 In indignacyon of all my puple her';
 If I denye her' askyng in þis halle
 And tell no cause, I put hem mor' in dwer'.
 Whech þing I do, I fall euyr in dawngere. 173
 3et wondyr I sore þat my hert is sett
 On swech a poynte, þat I can not lett, 175
 "And 3et it is ageyns myne owyn lawe, 176
 Whech I am swor' to kepe & to defende!
 My mynd it faryth ryght as on þe wawe
 A grete schyppe doth: for [whan]¹ he best wende 1 om.
 To be escaped, þan comth þe wawys ende, 180
 he fyllyth þe schyppe & forth a-non is goo.
 On-to þis poynt I drede I am browte too. 182

Open your eris and leste to oure prayere—		<i>Bk. II. Ch. I.</i>
ffor þis causse oonly com) we to þis place		Will she not grant their wish?
Right alle in-fere. ye may graunte vs solace,	152	
Or peyne or ¹ sorwe, ryght as ye leste to chese;	¹ r. &	
Youre answe're, lady, shal ben) oon) of these."	154	

Ca^m. secundum.¹¹ MS. tercium *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*

F vH astoynd and al abashed soore	155	Katharine is abasht.
was þis lady, whan) she herde him ¹ þan).	¹ MS. hem)	
"O noble god," thought she, "that I now whore		
No qveen) ne lady! for I ne wot ne can)		She wishes she wasn't a Queen.
Voyde the sentens of þis ilke wyse man);	159	
My preuy counseyH whiche I haue bore longe,		
Now muste it ovte, and that thengeth me wronge.	161	
"ffor if I shewe þat I soo longe haue bore,	162	
The preuyest poynt of my perfectyon),		
Me thenketh suerly þanne þat I haue lore		
The hey degree of my deuocyon).		
Whan) veynglory cometh, vertu is þan) goon);	166	
Vertu seruyth to plesse god oonly,		
And not the puple—oonly ryght thus red haue I.	168	
"If I consele my counseyH, than) shal I falle	169	Katharine thinks she must answer her people's request,
Into ¹ the indignacyon) of alle my puple here;	¹ to overlined.	
If I denye her askynge in this halle		
And telle no cause, I putte hem more in dwere.		
Whiche þing I doo, I falle euere in daungere.	173	
Yet wondre I sore þat myn) hert is so ¹ sette	¹ overlined.	
On swiche a poynt, that I can) not lette,	175	
"And yet it is ageyn) my owne lawe,	[fol. 20 b.] 176	
Whiche I am swore to kepe and to defende!		
Myn) mende it fareth ryght as on þe wawe		
A grete shyp dooth: for whan) he best wende		
To be skaped, than) cometh the waves ende,	180	
he filleth the ship and forth anon) is goo.		
On-to this poynt I drede I am) brought too.	182	

- Bk. II. Ch. 2.* " I supposed ful welle to leue now at myn) ese : 183
 Now must I leue my stody & my desyre,
 My modyr, my kyn, my puple if I wyll plesse ;
 I most leue stody- & wasch my boke in myre,
 Ryde owte on huntyng, vse all new a-tyre ! 187
 Godd, þou knowyst my preuy confessyon),
 I hafe made aH a-nothyr professyon) ! 189
 " If I myght kepe it, I schall 3et, & I may, 190
 Contynue þe same, to godd I make a vowe.
 Schuld I now chaunge my lyffe & myn aray,
 And trace þe wodes a-bowte undyr þe bow ?
 I loued it neuyr, who schuld I loue it now ?" 194
 þus thowt þis mayde be hyr-self a-lone,
 And aftyr softly wyth syhyng gan sche grone. 196
 Sche spak þan lowde, þei myght her' at onys : 197
 " Gramercy, lordes," sche seyde, " of your' good wyll !
 3e sey, 3our' feldys & your' wonys
 Are in poynt for me to scatyr & spylle,
 But if I take a lorde now me vn-tylle 201
 Whech may put all þis in gouernaunce ;
 þan schuld 3e hafe boþe rest & abundaunce. 203
 " I suppose weele þat it schulde be soo. 204
 3et wyll 3e graunte, parde, of curtesye
 þat syth þis þing muste nedys goo þer-too,
 þat I my-selfe, in whom) all þis doth lye,
 May hafe a-vysement. I am not schape to flye, 208
 Ne to fle neyther ! me pinkyth, 3e euerychon)
 haue ful gret hast, & I haf ryght noon. 210
 " I am but 3unge, I may full weell a-byde, 211
 þus schuld 3e sey to me if I had hast.
 lete aH þis mater' as for a whyle now slyde,
 Tyll mo 3erys of myn age be past ;
 þer'-whyles wyll I boþe lok & tast¹ 1 r. cast? 215
 Wher' I wyll sett me, & telle yow myn a-vys.
 I wold noght men seyde I wer' hasty or nyce. 217

- "I supposed ful wel to leue now at myn eese : 183 *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*
 Now must¹ I leue my stody and myn desyre, ¹ MS. musty I tho' she
 My modir, my kyn, my peple if I wil plesse ; doesn't want
 I muste leue stody and wash myn book in myre, to give up
 Ryde ovte on huntynge, vse al newe a-tyre ! 187 and take to
 God, þou knowest my preuy confession, hunting.
 I haue made al a-nother professyon ! 189
 "If I myght kepe it, I shal yet, and I may, 190
 Contynue the same, to god I make a vovgh.
 Shulde I now chaunge my lyf and myn aray,
 And trace þe wodes abovte vndir the bow ?
 I loued it neuere, how shuld I loue it now ?" 194 She never
 Thus thought this mayde be hir-selue allone, liked hunt-
 And after softly with syhyng gan she grone. 196 ing.
 She spak than loude, þei myght here at oones : 197
 "Gromerey, lordes," she seyde, "of your good wil !
 Ye seye, youre feeldes and your wones
 Arn in poynt for me to scatyr and spyl,
 But I take a lord now me on-tyl 201 Katharine
 Whiche may putte al þis in gouernaunce ;
 Thanne shuld ye haue bothe rest and abundaunce. 203
 "I suppose weel þat it shuld be soo. 204
 Yet wil ye gravnte me of your curtesye
 That, sith þis thyng muste nedes goo ther-too,
 That I my-self, in whom al þis dooth lye,
 May haue avisement. I am not shape to flye, 208
 Ne to flee neyther ! me thenketh, ye euerychon [fol. 21]
 haue ful grete hast, and I haue ryght noon. 210
 "I am but yovng, I may ful wel a-byde, 211 She is quite
 Thus shuld ye seye to me if I had hast. young.
 let al this mater as for a whyle now slyde,
 Til mo jeerys of myn age been past ;
 There-whiles wil I bothe loken and tast 215
 Where I wil sette me, and telle yow myn avys.
 I wolde not men seyde I were hasty or nys. 217

- Bk. II. Ch. 2. "ffor hasty schall I nocht be in þis mater'; 218
 I sewyr' 3ow her', I wyll noo husbond take
 But if I telle my frendys whech be her',
 lest þat I renne in daunger' & in wrake.
 What schuld I lenger' to 3ow tale now make? 222
 Tyme goth fast, it is full lyght of lope,
 And in a-bydyng men seyn þer lyghte hope. 224
 "Thus schall we bope wyth a-vysement werk; 225
 Best it is, me pinkyt, þat we do soo.
 late þe puple for a whylle iangyll & berk,
 Spek at her' lust—so are þei won' to doo;
 þe choys is myne, I mote consent þer-too. 229
 [f. A. 21, b.] Tyme of a-vysement to haue I pray yow—
 [1st hand] Thys is aH & sum þat I wyH sey as nowe." 231

Bk. II. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

- T**han ros a lord, a man of' gret statur', 232
 A rych man eke þei sey þat he was;
 hys wordes wer' taut hym wyth ful besy cur'
 Of' a clerke þere, þe mor' & eke þe lasse—
 hys wytte was not sufficient as in þis cas 236
 To speke in þis mater', ryth þus he þouth.
 "Myn owe lady," he seyde, "it is ful der' a-bowth 238
 "The absens of' your' fader now in þis land: 239
 I haue lost my-selue, & so haue opir' moo,
 A þousand pownd þat was þoo in my hand,
 Whan þat he deyed & went vs þus froo;
 The same haue opir men, I am sekyr it is soo. 243
 We ar' come heder to her' now your' entent
 In þis mater', & 3e haske a-vysement! 245
 "3e myth a be vysyd, lady, wele I-now 246
 long' or þis tyme, if' 3e had lyste;
 In long' a-bydyng' is ful lytyl pröwe—
 AH þat euer I mene I wold þat 3e wyste.
 It is mor' sykry a bryd in 3our' fyste 250

- "ffor hasty shal I not be in this matere ; 218 *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*
 I sewer you heere, I wyl non housbond take
 But if I telle my freendes whiche be here,
 lest þat I renne in daunger and in wrake.
 What shuld I to yow lengere tale now make ? 222
 Tyme gooth faste, it is ful lyght of lope,
 And in a-bydyng men seyn there lyeth hope. 224
 "Thus shal we bothe wyth avysement werke ; 225
 Best it is, me thenketh, þat we doon soo.
 late þe peple for a while iangle and beerke,
 Speke at her lust—soo arn thei wont to doo ;
 The chois is myn, I mote consente ther-too. 229
 Tyme of avysement to have I pray yow—
 This is al and sum þat I wil sey as now." 231

She won't
marry with-
out advice.

She begs for
delay.

Ca^m. tercium.

Bk. II. Ch. 3.

- T**hanne ros a lord, a man of gret stature, 232 A rich lord
 A ryche man eke þei seyn that he was ;
 his wordes were taught hym wyth ful besy cure
 Of a clerk there, the more and eke the las—
 his wyt was not sufficient as in þat cas 236
 To speke in this mater, ryght thus he thought.
 "Myn owne lady," he seyde, "it is ful deere abought, 238
 "The absens of *your* fadir now in this land : 239 tells Katharine he's lost
 I haue lost my-self, and soo haue other moo, £1000 since
 A thousand povnd þat was tho in myn hand, her Father
 Whan þat he deyed &¹ wente vs thus froo ; ¹ overlined. died.
 The same haue other men, I am seeker it is soo. 243 So have
 We arn come now heder to here youre entent others.
 In this mater, and ye aske avysement ! 245
 "Ye myght a be avysed, lady, weel I-now [fol. 22] 246
 longe er þis tyme, if ye had lest ;
 In longe a-bydyng is ful litel prow—
 Al þat euere I meene I wolde þat ye west.
 It is more sekyr a byrd in *your* fest 250 A bird in the
 hand is worth

- Bk. II. Ch. 3. Than to haue iij. in þe sky a-boue,
 And mor' profetabyl to your' be-houe. 252
- "The gray hors, whyl his gras growyth, 253
 May sterue for hunger, þus seyth þe prouerbe.
 Euery wyse man as weele as I now knowyth
 The sore may swelle long, or þe herbe
 Is growe or rype—a grete clerke of viterbe 257
 Seyd so sumtyme & wroot it in hys boke.
 We haue ful grete nede to spy^e & to loke 259
- "That we may¹ haue a kyng^t to rewle us & yow, 260
 To gouerne þe lawe þat it^t shuld not erre, ¹ mow expunged.
 To be to traytourys both cruel & row,
 To lede þe lordys whan þei go to werre.
 ffro your' kend þis gouernauns is full ferre, 264
 Your' blod is not so myty for to abyde
 To se man be slayn be your' owyn¹ syde, ¹ overlined. 266
- [fol. 22.]
 [2nd hand] "To se þe boweles cut oute of hys wombe 267
 And brent be-for' hym, whyll he is on lyue,
 To se man¹ serued as þei serue a lombe, ¹ MS. men corr.?
 Thorow-oute hys guttys boþe rende & ryue,
 To se hem draw oute be four' & be fyue. 271
 Your' pytous hert myght not se þis chaunce,
 ffor it wold mak yow to fall in a trauns. 273
- "Ther-for' it is best to 3ow, þus we pink, 274
 To take a lord þat may suffyr all thys,
 Whech may se men flete & also se hem synk,
 Suffyr hem to smert whan þei do a-mys,
 Whan þei do weell to hafe reward & blys. 278
 Ryght þus I mene, I mak no lenger' tale;
 But 3e do þus, gretter' growyth our' bale." 280

Thys lady answerd on-to þis lord a-geyn: 281
 "My faderes absence is moi' greuous to me

Than to haue three in þe sky a-bove,		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 3.</i>
And more profytable to youre be-hove.	[fol. 22 b.] 252	three in the sky.
“The grey hors, whil his gres groweth,	253	
May sterue for hunger, thus seyth the prouerbe.		
Euery wysman as wel as I now knoweth		
The soor may swelle longe er the herbe		
Is growe or rype—a grete clerk of viterbe	257	
Seyde soo somtyme and wrote it in his booke.		
We haue ful grete nede to spye and to looke	259	
“That we may haue a kyng to revle vs and yow,	260	The Syrians want a King.
To gouerne the ¹ lawe that it shuld not erre,	¹ overlined.	
To be to traytouris bothe cruel and row,		
To lede þe lordis whan thei goo to werre.		
ffro youre kende this gouernauns is ful ferre,	264	
Your blood is not so myghty for to a-byde		Katharine
To see men ¹ slayn be youre owen syde,	¹ r. man 266	
“To see þe bowailles cutte oute of his wombe	267	cannot see men boweld like a lamb.
And brent be-fore hym, whil he is on lyve,		
To see men be serued as thei serue a lombe,		
Thurgh-oute his guttes bothe rende and ryue,		
To see hem drawe oute be foure and be fyue.	271	
Your pytous herte myght not see þis chaunce,		
ffor it wolde make you to falle in a traunce.	273	
“Therefore it is best to yow, thus we thenke,	274	
To take a lord that may suffre al þis,		
Whiche may see men fleete and also hem synke,		She must have a Husband to punish offenders.
Suffre hem to smerte whan þei doo a-mys,		
Whan þei doo wel to haue reward and blys.	278	
Ryght thus I mene, I make no lengere tale;		
But ye doo thus, grettere groweth oure bale.”	280	

Cam. quartum.

Bk. II. Ch. 4.

This lady answerde on-to þis [lord] ageyn: 281
 “My faderis absens is more grevous to me

Bk. II. Ch. 4. þan to 3ow alle, þis dar' I sauely seyn).

And thow he leuyd, he wer' no mor', parde,

But o man—wyth-oute men what myght he 285

Doo or sey but as o man a-lone?

What nedyth 3ow now for to make swech mone 287

“ffor losse of o man? 3e coude, whyll he was here, 288

Defende 3our'-self, thow he wyth 3ow not zede :

3our' enemyes alle 3e put in full greté dwere,

þan wer' þei kept full low, in full grete drede.

My lord my ffadyr whan dyd he 3ow lede? 292

Not many 3erys be-for þat he went hens.

As 3e¹ dyd þan, dothe now in hys absence! ^{1 MS. 3ed} 294

“3e chose a capteyn þoo, so may 3e now, 295

To whom obeyd as in þat iornay

Euery lord, loked he neuyr so row,

þei durst not onys to hym þan sey nay.

Goode serys aH, of pacyens I 3ow pray; 299

Why may 3e not do now as 3e dyd þanne?

What nedyth 3ow þus to gruch & to banne? 301

“3e sey it is lost, aH þat was sume-tyme 302

Wonne wyth swerde. I wote as weell as 3e,

þat many a theft & many a gret cryme

Was hyd fro hym be craft & sotelte,

And sume wer' punychyd—he wold it schuld so be— 306

And 3et of¹ þis punchyng oft he knew ryght nowt.May it not now in þe same case be wrowte? ^{1 MS. of of} 308

“I vouch-saue, 3e ryd & eke 3e renne 309

To seke 3our' enmyes whech do 3ow þis wrong,

Distroye her' cuntre, her' howses down 3e brenne,

þe traytours eke be þe nek 3e hem hong—

What word seyð I euyr, eyther' schort or long, 313

Schuld let 3our' corage? I pray 3ow tell me now.

Be good to me ryght as I am to 3ow.” 315

Than to yow alle, this dar I sauely seyn !
 And thow he leued he were no more, weel kenne ye,
 But oo man. wyth-oute men, what myght he 285
 Doo or seye, but as oo man allone ?
 What nedeth yow now for to make swiche mone 287

Bk. II. Ch. 4.

Katharine
urges that
her Father
was only one
man.

“ ffor losse of oo man ? ye covude, whil he was heere, 288
 Defende your-selue, though he wyth yow not yede ;
 Your enmyes alle ye putte in ful grete dwere,
 Thanne were thei kepte ful lowe in ful grete drede.
 My lord my fadir whanne dede he¹ yow leede ? ¹ overl. 292
 Not many yeeres be-fore that he wente hens.
 As ye dede thanne, dooth now in his absens ! 294

His people
fought with-
out him,

“ Ye chose a captayn tho, so may ye doo now, 295
 To whom obeyed as in that iornay
 Euery lord, looked he neuere soo row,
 Thei durst not oonys to hym panne sey nay.
 Good sirs alle, of pacyens I yow pray, 299
 Whi may 3e not doo now as 3e did panne ?
 What nedeth yow thus to grotche and banne ? 301

under a
chosen Cap-
tain,

“ Ye seye it is lost, al that was sumtyme 302
 Wonne with swerd. I wot as weel as ye,
 That many a theft and many a grete cryme
 Was hid fro hym be crafte and sotylte,
 And somme were punyshed—he wolde it shulde so bee—
 And yet of this punyshyng ofte he knew ryght nought.
 May it not now in this same wyse be wrought ? 308

and punisht
criminals,
without him.

“ I vowche-saf, ye ryde and eke ye renne 309
 To seeke youre enmys whiche doo yow þis wrong,
 Destroye her contres, her houses doo ye brenne,
 The traytours eke be nekke þat ye hem hong.
 What woord seyde I euere, eyther short or long, 313
 Shulde lette yowre corage ? I pray yow telle me now.
 Beeth good to me, ryght as I am to yow.” 315

Why cannot
they do so
now ?

- T**han ros a reall, a rygh lord *per-wyth*-alle, 316
þei called hym clarus, prince of capados ;
 Vp-on hys knees a-noon he gan down falle,
 “Madame,” he seyð, “*þour* *conseytes* are full clos ;
þour name is spronge, *þour* *cunnyng* & *þour* los— 320
 All *þeis* are know, *þei* may not now be hyd ;
 And *þet* *þe* may neyther doo ne byd 322
 “As may a man. *þour* fadyr—godd hafe hys sawle¹— 323
 As seyð *þis* lord, is ded & go vs froo ; ¹ orig. sowle
 What-so-euyr men crye or elles gaule,² ² calle expunged.
 We are full lykly to falle in care & woo.
 Come now who schall, he is I-pased & goo, 327
 And *þe* be left for to be our qween.
 It lykyght vs weel *þat* it schuld so been), 329
 “But *þet* *þe* chaunge is wondyr-full, me think : 330
 ffor a man, a woman now we haue,
 And *þat* a mayde ! it may in no wey synk
 In our hertys *þat* *þe* myght vs saue—
 I schall sey truthe, thow *þe* pink I raue. 334
þe wyll wepe, & *þe* *þour* fyngyr kytte :
 Who schuld it *þan* setyll in our wytte 336
 “*þe* myght redresse all *þat* was now spoke ? 337
 A kyng is ordeynd ryght to *þis* entent :
 To kepe hys castelys, *þat* *þei* be not broke,
 To kepe hys puple, *þat* it be not schent.
 Now is *þis* werk all othyr-wyse I-went ; 341
 To kepe all *þis*, a woman is not strong enow,
 We must enforce us *per*-for to kep *þow*. 343
 “And thow *þe* be *þe* fayrest *þat* beryth lyffe— 344
 ffor so wene I, & so wene many moo—
 It wyll be-come *þow* full welle to be a wyffe,
 Myn owne lady, & *þe* wold enclyne *per*-too,
 To bryng forthe frute, eyther on or too— 348

Ca^m. quintum.

Bk. II. Ch. 5.

- T**hanne ros a rial, a ryche lorde eke wyth-alle, 316 Clarus,
 Thei called hym Clarus, prynce of Capados; Prince of
 Vp-on his knees a-noon he gan down falle, Cappadocia,
 "Madame," he seyde, "*your* conseytes arn ful cloos;
 Youre name is spronge, youre connyng and *your* loos— 320
 Alle these arn knowen, thei may not now be hid;
 Yet may ye neyther doo ne bid 322
 "As may a man. *your* fadir—god haue his saule— 323 tells Katha-
 As seyde þis lord, he is ded and goon vs fro; rine
 What-so-euere men crye or ellys gaule,
 We arn ful lykly to falle in care and woo.
 Come now hoo shal, he is passed and goo, 327
 And ye be left for to ben oure queen.
 It liketh us weel þat it shuld so ben, 329
 "But yet the chaunge is wundirful, we thenke : 330
 ffor a man, a woman now we haue, that she is
 And þat a mayde ! it may in no weye senke only a
 In oure hertis þat ye myght vs saue— Maiden,
 I shal sey yow treuthe, thow ye thenke I raue. 334
 Ye wil wepe, and ye *your* fynger kytte : and 'll cry
 how shulde it thanne satel in oure witte 336 if she cuts
 her finger.
 "Ye myght redresse al that was now spoke ? 337
 A kyng is ordeyned ryght to þis entent :
 To kepe his Castellis, þat þei be not broke,
 To kepe his puple, that þei be not shent.
 Now is this werke al other-wyse I-went ; 341
 To kepe all this, a woman is not strong I-now,
 We muste enforce vs therfore to kepe you. 343 She can't
 guard her
 people.
 "And though ye be the fayrest þat bereth lyf— 344
 ffor soo wene I, and soo wene many moo—
 It wil be-come yow ful weel to be a wyf,
 Myn owen lady, and ye wolde enclyne þer-too,
 To brynge foorth frute eyther oon or too— 348 Moreover,
 they want
 her to have
 Children :
 H 2

Bk. II. Ch. 5.

It schuld plese vs thow þat 3e had twelue !
 It schuld plese 3our modyr & eke 3our-selue. 350
 "All 3our' rychesse, what schall it vs a-vayle 351
 hyd in 3our' cophyr & kept now þus clos ?
 3e may¹ *per-wyth* make plate & mayle. ¹ r. myght
 I dar' well sey, þe lond of capadoos,
 If 3e had on whech myght ber' up 3our loos, 355
 Wold pay a raunson wyth full good entent,
 So þat 3e wold on-to þis þing consent. 357
 "And thow 3e be þe wysest of þis worlde, 358
 3et haue 3e not o pink¹ þat 3e waunte— ¹ r. þing
 Ther-of 3our-self wyll ber' me recorde :
 Natur' can not ne wyll not, parde, plante
 Myght & strength in women, for þei it waunt ; 362
 In stede of strength, of natur' þei hafe beute.
 Thow 3e be fayr' & wyse, 3et want 3e 364
 "Bodyly strength wer-wyth 3e schuld oppresse 365
 Thoo wykkyd dedys whech reygne now ful ryue ;
 Wyth deth & vengeaunce schuld 3e þoo so¹ dresse, ¹ overl.
 Wer' it in man, in mayden or [in] wyffe.
 I tell 3ow sekyr, þis is a kyngys lyffe ; 369
 he may not hafe hys worchepe all wyth ese,
 Sume of hys puple oft he must dysplese. 371
 "Theyse þingis fall not, vs þinkyth, to 3our' persone. 372
 Wherfor we wyll, & 3e consent *per-too*,
 Ordeyn a meen) : 3e schall not lyue a-lone,
 Spowseles I mene, as 3e 3et euyr hafe doo.
 þis is our' erand, my tale is fully doo. 376
 Sped þis mater', hold vs not long suspens !
 þan is it weele wared, bope labur' & our' expens." 378

Bk. II. Ch. 6.Cam. 6^m.

"G Ramercy, syr," to hym þan seyð þe qween) ; 379
 "Be þe tendyrnesse þat 3e to me haue

It shulde plesse vs though þat ye had twelue! *Bk. II. Ch. 5.*
 It shulde plesse your moder and eke your owne selue. 350 twelve, if she likes.

“AH your rychesse, what shal it vs avayle, 351
 hyd in your Cofer and kept now thus clos?
 Ye myght ther-wyth make plate and mayle.
 I dar weel seyn, the lond of Capados,
 If ye had oon swiche myght bere vp your loos, 355
 Wolde paye a raunsom with ful good entent,
 So þat ye wolde on-to this thyng consent. 357

“And thow ye be the wysest of this world, 358 Tho’
Katharine
is wise,
 Yet haue ye not oon thyng that ye wante—
 There-of your-selue wil bere me record :
 Nature can not ne wil not trewely plante
 Myght and strengthe in women, for thei it wante ; 362 she has no
bodily
strength
 In stede of strengthe, of nature þei haue bewte.
 Thow ye be fayr and wys, yet wante ye [fol. 26] 364

“Bodyly strengthe wherwyth ye shulde oppresse 365
 Tho wykked dedes whiche regne now ful ryff ; to punish ill
deeds with
death.
 With deth and vengauce shulde ye tho soo dresse,
 Were it in man, [in] mayden or in wyf.
 I telle yow sekyr, this is a kynges lyf ; 369 A King is
wanted.
 he may not haue his worshyp al with ese,
 Some of his puple ofte he muste displese. 371

“These thyngis falleth not, vs thenketh, to your persone.
 Wherfore we wil and consente ther-too,
 Ordeyne a mene ye shal not leue allone, Her people
desire her
marriage.
 Spousele (!) I mene, as ye yet euere haue doo.
 This is oure erande, my tale concludeth soo. 376
 Spedeth this mater, holdeth vs not longe suspens !
 Thanne is it weel wared, bothe labour and expens.” 378

Ca^m. sextum.

Bk. II. Ch. 6.

“G Romeracy, sere,” to hym than seyde the qveene, 379
 “ffor the tendernesse þat ye to me haue.

- Bk. II. Ch. 6. 3e loue me weell, & þat is now I-sene,
 3e loue my worchep, my londys wold 3e saue.
 I thank 3ow, syr; I sey not þat 3e raue, 383
 But wysely spek aȝ þat 3e haue told,
 And for þis talkyng I am to 3ow behold. 385
- “But euyr me thynkyth, whan I a-vyse me weell: 386
 If it so streyt wer, as 3e sey, wyth 3ow—
 Whech dyssese wold lek me neuyr a deell:
 ffor if it wer þus as 3e pretendyn now,
 3e schuld not hafe neyther feld ne plow 390
 In no pes, if it wer all as 3e sey.
 þerfor me thynkyth 3e walk no trew wey. 392
- “And as for conquest, seres, car’ 3e ryght nowte! 393
 3our lordchepys frely wune wer to 3our handys
 Or 3e coude goo & or þat 3e wer’ wrowte;
 3e fawte neuyr 3et for tounnes ne for no landys.
 Wher ar 3our prisoneres whech 3e led in bandys? 397
 þer was no werr’ syth þat I was bore,
 But on our borderes, & 3e car’ not þer-fore— 399
- “ffor we fynde þe sowdyoures þat be ther’ 400
 3e pay ryght not, ne nowte I coueyte 3e doo.
 Pluk vp 3our hertes, & be no-þing in fere!
 Arme 3ow not, but if we send 3ow too;
 3e dwelle in pees, & so do many moo. 404
 Pleynd 3ow nowte on-tyll 3e fynd greuaunce!
 3e sey al-so þat I wold falle in traüns 406
- “If domys wer’ kepte euene as þei schuld be, 407
 And peynes 3oue to hem þat schuld be ded;
 I am a woman, þerfor’ it semyth not me
 Ouyr swech bochery for to hold my hed,
 Myn hert wold drupe heuy as any led 411
 ffor very pyte—þus 3e gune replye,
 Ryght for 3e wold I schuld be wedded in hye. 413

Ye loue me well, and that is now I-seene		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 6.</i>
My loue, my londes, my worshyp if ye wolde saue.		Katharine thanks Prince
I thanke yow, sir; I sey not [þat] ye raue,	383	Clarus of Cappadocia.
But wysely speke al that ye haue toold,		
And for this talkyng I am to yow be-hoold.	385	
“But euere me thenketh, whan I vise me weel:	386	Katharine says Prince
If it so streyt were, as ye seyn, wyth you—		Clarus has
Whiche disese wolde lyke me neuere a deel.		
ffor if it were thus, as ye pretende now,		
Ye shulde haue neyther feelde ne plow	390	
In no ¹ pees, if it were al as ye say.	¹ no expunged	
Therefore me thenketh ye walke no trewe way.	392	exaggerated.
“And as for conqvest, seres, care ye ryght noght;	393	
Yours lordshipes freely wonne were to your handes		
Eer that ye cowde goo, eer thanne ye were wrought;		
Ye faute neuere yet for townes ne for landes.		
Where arn your presoneris whiche ye leyde in bandes?	397	
There was no werre syth that I was bore,		No war has come in her
But on ovre bordouris, and ye care not perfore—	399	life.
“ffor we fynde the sowdyouris tho been there	400	She pays the
Ye paye ryght nought, ne nought I coveyte þat ye doo.		Soldiers.
Pluk vp your hertis, and be no-thing in fere!		
Arme yow nought, but if we sende yow too;		
Ye dwelle in pees, and so doo many moo.	404	Her people live in peace.
Pleyne yow nought vn-til ye fynde grevaunce!		
Ye sey also þat I wolde falle in travnce	406	
“If domes were kepte euene as they shuld bee,	407	
And peynes youe to hem þat shulde ben deed;		
I am a woman, therefore it semeth not mee		And as to her not being able
Ouere swiche bocherye for to holde myn heed,		to punish ill-doers,
Myn herte wolde droupe heuy as ony leed	411	
ffor very pyte—thus ye gunne replye,		
Ryght for ye wolde I shulde be wedded in hye.	413	

- Bk. II. Ch. 6.* "her-to I answer' as 3e mote nede sey alle : 414
 A kyng, 3e wote weell, hath so gret power'
 Ouyr hys puple, þat whom he wyll he schall
 To mak hem fre or-make hem prysoner';
 he may graunt lyffe to hem þat be in dwer' 418
 And ek in hope for to be hang & drawe—
 þus may he doo, he is a-boue þe lawe. 420
 "Than I my-selue, rather' þan I schuld swoune, 421
 Myght graunt hem lyffe, thow þei not worthy wer';
 þus dyd my fadyr full often in þis town—
 loke wel a-bowte, for sune of hem be her'
 Whech wer' þus saued, I am no-þing in dwer', 425
 I a-lowe 3our' motyues whan þat þei be owte.
 I meruayle also þat 3e consydyr nowte 427
 "That for be-cause a kyngys gentyll hert 428
 hath swech fredam growyng ryght wyth-Inne
 Whan he may not se men blede or smert,
 þerfor hys deputees, þe mor' & ek þe mynne, 431
 Schuld punysch þoo schrewys þat can not cese ne blynne
 Of her' euyl dedys—ilk day 3e may þis se ;
 It nedyth not herfor' to legge auctorite. 434
 "Swech deputees, ser', hafe we many & fele 435
 þat of swech materys nedys most hem melle ;
 What man þat sle, fyght, robbe or stele,
 Our' offyceres full sekyrly schull hem qwelle,
 Nay not þei, but þe lawe þat is so felle, 439
 he sleth þis meny—þei ar in þis cas
 Seruuantys to lawe, þe mor' & ek þe las. 441
 "All her' power', 3e wote weell, of us þei haue, 442
 As þei had euyr in my fadyres lyffe.
 let hem deme, lette hem spyll & saue,
 þis longyth to hem, I kepe not of þis stryffe ;
 Be it to man, be it to mayde or wyffe 446
 þat do a-mys, be hem þei dampned bene :
 I schall be to iuges boþe kyng & qween." 448

- “her-to I answere as ye mote nedes sey alle : 414 *Bk. II. Ch. 6.*
- A kyng, ye wote weel, hath so grete powere
 Ouere his puple, that whom he wil he shalle
 To make hem free or make hem presonere ;
 he may graunte lyf to hem þat be in dwere 418
 And eke in hope for to be hange and drawe—
 Thus may he doo, he is a-bove the lawe. 420
- “Than I my-self, rathere than I shulde swowne, 421
 Myght graunte hem lyf, though þei not worthi were ;
 Thus dede my fadir ful often in this towne—
 looke weel abowte, for somme of hem ben here
 Whiche were thus saued, I am no-thing in dwere, 425
 I allowe *your* motyues whan that thei ben ought.
 I merueyle also that ye conceyue nowt 427
- “That for be-cause a kyngis gentil herte 428 *why, his*
 hath suche fredam growyng ryght wyth-Inne
 That he myght not see men blede or smerte,
 Therefore his deputies, the more and eke the mynne,
 Shulde punyshe the shrewes þat can not cece ne blynne
 Of her euele dedys—ilke day ye may this see ;
 It nedeth not hyrfore to allege auctoryte. 434
- “Swiche deputies, syr, haue we many and feele 435 *and so can
 hers.*
 That of suche materis nedes muste hem melle ;
 What man that slee, fyghte, robbe or steele,
 Oure offyceris ful sekerly shul hem quelle,
 Nay not thei, but the lawe that is soo felle, 439
 he sleth this meny that (!) are in this cas.
 Seruauntes to lawe, the more and eke þe las, 441
- “Al her power, 3e wote weel, of vs thei haue, 442
 As thei had euere in my faderis lyf.
 lete hem deme, lete hem spylle and saue,
 This longeth to hem, I kepe not of þis stryf ;
 Be it to men, be it to mayde or wyf 446
 That doo a-mys, be hem þei damned bene :
 I shal ben to iuges bothe kyng and queene.” 448
- which a King
 could do,*
- Deputies
 would do the
 punishing,*
- Her Officers*
- judge,
 and kill or
 spare.*

- T**he erle of Iaff, was called syr ananye, 449
 he stode up þan & to þis lady sayde,
 Aȝens hyr answer' he gan ryght þus reþlye :
 "It is full perlyous," he seyð, "to be a mayde
 And eke a qween) : ȝe may be full sone a-frayde 453
 If any rysyng or ony scisme wer' sterde.
 ffor of a kyng men wold be more ferde 455
 "Than þei of ȝow ar', it is no dowte. 456
 þe puple erryth—be-hold ȝe not who fele
 Thorow-owte ȝour' londe in euery town a-bowte
 Renn as woodemen? ȝe may it not consele,
 þei fyght, þei flyght, þei robbe & þei stele. 460
 All þis aray, me thynkyth, ȝe sett at nowte,
 It faryth as ȝe of all þis þink¹ ne rowte. ^{1 r. þing} 462
 "ȝe sett mor', be godd þat sytt a-boue, 463
 Be on old boke, & eke mor' deynte haue,
 þan be werr' or iustys, lust or elles loue.
 Men sey, þei schall bryng ȝow to ȝour graue!
 What do ȝour bokys? parde, þei wyll not saue 467
 Neyther man ne best; þei dull a manny[s] mende,
 Apeyr' hys body, hys eyne þei make blynde. 469
 "he þat taute [yow] fyrst þis scole, I pray 470
 he mote be hangyd, I trow he is worthy!
 he hath ȝow browte & put in swech aray
 þat myrth & ioie ȝe late hym¹ slyde forby; ^{1 r. hem}
 Euyr at bokes ȝe sytte, knele & lye. 474
 Alas, madame, who lese ȝe ȝour' tyme!
 I wepe so sor', I may no lenger' ryme. 476
 "ffor goddys lofe, & for ȝour' puples sake, 477
 Chaunge now ȝour' lyff & let ȝour bok be styлле,
 loke no lenger' vp-on þoo letteres blake!
 ffor, be my trowth, stody schall ȝow spylle.
 Tend on-to myrth, tak a lord ȝow tylle! 481

Ca^m. septimum.Bk. II. Ch. 7.

- T**he Erl of Iaf, was called ananye, 449
 he stood vp thanne and to this lady sayde,
 A-yens hir answeye he gan ryght thus repleye :
 "It is ful perillous," he seyde, "to be a mayde
 And eke a qveen ; 3e may be ful sone afrayde 453
 If ony rysynge or ony sisme be sterde.
 ffor of a kyng men wolde be more a-ferde 455
 "Than) þei of yow are, it is no dowte. 456
 The puple erreth—be-hoold ye not how fele
 Thurgh-ovte youre lond in euery¹ toun a-bowte 1 MS. eue'y
 Renne as wode men) ? ye may it not consele,
 Thei fyght, þei flyght, thei robbe and þei stele. 460
 Al this aray, me thenketh, ye sette at nowt,
 It fareth as ye of al this þing ne rowt. 462
 "Ye sette more, be god þat sytteth a-boue, 463
 Be an olde book, and eke more deynte haue,
 Than) be iustes or werre, lust or ellis loue.
 Men) seyn, thei shal brynge you to *your* graue !
 What doo *your* bookys ? sekirly thei wil not saue 467
 Neither man) ne beeste ; thei dulle a mannys mende,
 A-peyre his body, his eyne thei make blynde. 469
 "he þat taught yow first þis scole, I pray 470
 he mote be hanged, I trowe he is worthy !
 he hath you browght and put in suche aray
 That myrthe and ioye ye late hem) slyde forby ;
 Euere at bookys ye sitte, knele and ly. 474
 Allas, madame, how lese ye *your* tyme !
 I wepe so sore, I may no lengere ryme. 476
 "ffor goddys loue, and for youre puples sake, 477
 Chaunge now *your* lyf and lete youre book be stille,
 Looke no lengere vp-on tho letterys blake !
 ffor, be my wytte, stody shal yow spylle.
 Tende on-to myrthe, take a lord yow tille ! 481

Earl Ananias
of Joppa tells
Katharinethat her
peoplefight, rob and
steal, and she
disregards it.She cares
more for an
old book
than for war
or love.She's always
at her books.

Let 'em be !

Marry, and

Bk. II. Ch. 7. þan schal ʒour body be full heyll & qwert,
And mech mor' ese schull ʒe haf at hert." 483

Bk. II. Ch. 8.

Ca^m. 8^m.

“ ʒE wold allgate þat I schuld wedded be, 484
 Ryght for þis skylle, ʒe sey, men drede me nowte ;
 If any seysme wer' reysyd in þis cuntre,
 It wer' not likly be me for to be browt'
 [fol. 25] To ony good end, men sett at me ryth nowt ; 488
 [1st hand] ʒe shuld drede mor' a man þan ʒe do me.
 And I sey þus : I knowe as wele as ʒe, 490
 “ A man a-lone, be he neuer so wyse 491
 Ne eke so strong', he may no mor', I-wys,
 But euyn as I may ; hys puple shal be nyse
 And eke euele tetched ; þe power' is not his
 To amend a-lone aȝ þat is a-mys : 495
 his lordes must help to his gouernayle,
 And elles his labour' it wil lytyl a-vayle. 497
 “ help ʒe on your' syde as I shal on myn ! 498
 loke ʒe be trew on-to my crowne & me,
 lete no treson in ʒour' hertys lyn :
 Than schal þis lond ful wele demened be.
 O noble god, who grete felicite 502
 Shuld be wyth vs, if we wer' in þis plyth !
 We myth sey þan, our' leuyng' wer' ful ryght. 504
 “ Wyl ʒe¹ now her' who puple may make her' kyng' 505
 To erre sumtyme & sumtyme to do a-mys ? 1 MS. we
 Ryth be ensauple shal I proue þis þing'.
 Ther' was a kyng' her'-be-syde, I-wys,
 ffer' in þe est', þat lyued in ioy & blys, 509
 In babilony euene,¹ nabugodonosor he hyth. 1 r. I mene ?
 his puple made hym to do a-gayn þe ryth. 511
 “ ffor he had with hym in maner of a preest 512
 A ful goode man & of grete abstinense—
 fful preuy þingis bar' he in his breest,

Thanne shal youre body ben ful heil and qvert,
 And moche more eese shul ye haue at hert." 483 *Bk. II. Ch. 7.*
 be healthy
 and happy!

Cam. octauum.

Bk. II. Ch. 8.

"YE wolde algate þat I shulde wedded be, 484 *Katharine*
 Ryght for this skyl, ye sey, men drede me nought ;
 answers
 the Earl of
 Joppa.

If ony sisme were reysed in this contre,
 It were not lykly be me for to be brought
 To ony good ende, men sette me at ryght nought ; 488
 Ye shulde drede more a man þan ye doo me.
 And I seye thus : I knowe as weel as yee, 490

"A man alone, be he neuere so wys 1 as ff. till 493 as I, on *A King alone*
 Ne eke so strong as¹ euer was ony in world þis, ^{erasure; orig. he may} no more I-wys

What may he doo but as I? hys puple shal be nys
 And eke euel tetched ; the power is not his
 To amende allone al that is a-mys : 495 *can't mend*
all that's
amiss.

his lordis muste helpe to his gouernayle,
 And ellys his labour it wil lytyl avayle. 497

"helpe ye on youre syde as I shal on myn ! 498
 Looke ye be truue on-to my crowne and me,
 lete no treson in yowre hertys lyn : *If her Lords*
'll be true
to her,

Than shal this lond ful weel demened be.
 O noble god, how gret felicyte 502 *all will go*
 Shuld be wyth vs, if we were in this plyght ! *well.*

We myght sey þanne, oure leuyng were ful ryght. 504

"Wyl ye now here how puple may make her kyng 505 *People often*
 To erre somtyme and somtyme to doo a-mys ? *make Kings*
err.

Ryght be exaample shal I proue this thyng.
 There was a kyng heere-be-syde, I-wis,
 ffer in the Est, that leued in ioye and blys, 509

In babylon euene, Nabuchodonosor he hyght.
 his puple made hym to doo a-geyn the ryght. 511 *Nebuchad-*
nezzar

"ffor he had wyth hym in maner of a preest 512
 A ful good man and of grete abstynence,
 fful preuy thyngis bar he in his breest,

- Bk. II. Ch. 8. he coude tell aH of derth &¹ of pestilence. ¹ overlined.
 O þing! þer was in which he dede offence: 516
 he worchiped not swech goddes as we doo—
 Danyel he hyth. but a-mong lyones too 518
 “ Was he putt, ryth for þe puple so wolde; 519
 The kyng! durst not wythstand hem in þat cas,
 he must do soo, þow he wold or nolde.
 fful sor^r repentaunt aftyr-ward he was :
 ffor danyell was saued ryth be goddys grace, 523
 [fol. 25, b.]
 [2nd hand] Which god he seruyd—god wold I myght hym know,
 þat noble godd þat made hys myght so growe 525
 “ In swech lowe puple ! her^r may 3e see & ken : 526
 ffor puples crying a kyng may oftyr erre ;
 þe woode opynyonⁿ of swech fonned men
 Makyth a lord oft-tyme to do þe werr^r,
 To make hym meuyd, to sett him¹ oute of herr^r— 530
 ffy on her^r cry, qwan þei no resonⁿ hafe ! : MS. hem
 3e sey alsoo, for þat 3e wold me saue, 532
 “ I must leue book, I must leue stody eke. 533
 My bokes, seres, godd help, what greue þei 3ow ?
 þis werdly gouernaunce wer^r not worth a leke,
 Ne wer^r þeis bokes ; þei ar^r to mannes prow
 ffull necessarye, for our^r myndys ar^r swech now : 537
 It slydyth forby all þat euer þei know,
 And be our^r bokes a-geynⁿ full fast þei grow. 539
 “ Who schuld we wete þat þe fyrst man of aH 540
 had hyght Adam, & eke hys wyff eue,
 Saue þat in a booke, wher^r genesis þei calle,
 I sey it onys wrete, & red it on a eue ?
 3et is þat book not of our^r be-leue 544
 Receyued as 3et—me þinkyth it mut nede,
 Be-cause he tellyth þe be-gynnyng & þe dede 546
 “ Of our^r olde ffaderes. who schuld eke know 547
 þe worthy conquestys of elderys þat wer^r her^r,

Bk. II. Ch. 8. If bokes told hem not only be rowe ?

We can for-gete þat we dyd þis 3er !

Wherfor' our' bookes tell to vs ful cler' 551

Swech-maner' þinges as we had for-3ete.

3our' opynyon þer-for', ser', now must 3e lette. 553

"ffor goddys lawe ne maznys schuld not be know, 554

Ne wer' our' bokes, þis dar' I sauely say ;

Our' preestes arn fayn' to loke hem be row

A-geyn a feest, a-geyn an holyday,

Whan þei wyll preche of any swech aray, 558

[fol. 26] Eyther' of Iubiter, or neptune, hys brothyr.

leue we þan þis mater' & carp of sume othyr ! 560

"Blame not swech þing þat stant in full grete stede ; 561

Curse not my mayster', for þan wyll I be wroth !

[5th hand] It semyth 3ou bettir for to bydde 3our' bede

Thań to sey swech wordes ! eke it is ful lothe

To me, to sey þus, but only for myn' othe 565

Whech þat I made to meynteyn' al-maner þing

Whech longe to our goddis and to her offring." 567

*Bk. II. Ch. 9.*Ca^m. 9^m.

Thań spake a lord, þei called ser hercules, 568

The prince of paphon', of þat gret cuntre—

Euery man satt' stille and held his pees

To her þe speche, þe tale whech þat he

Be-gan to telle ; for his auctorite 572

Was þoo ful gret, in special for his age.

his wordes wer acordyng to his visage. 574

Thus he be-gan : "it is bettir, my lady dere, 575

In swech a caas, whań it mote nedis be doo,

To do it at onys, þan for to lyue in dwere

And for to a-byde eythir 3er or too.

Take 3e no heed, consyder 3e not þer-too 579

Who ouyde seyde & wrote it in his booke :

'Whań þing is newe, be war be tyme and looke 581

If bookys tolde hem not oonly be rowe? Bk. II. Ch. 8.

We can forgete þat we dede this yere ;

Wherefore oure bookys telle to us ful clere 551

Swiche-maner þingis as we had for-yeet.

Youre oppynyon therefore, sere, now must ye leet. 553

“ffor goddis lawe ne mannys shuld not be knowe, 554 of God's law,
and man's.

Ne were oure bookys, this dar I sauely say ;

Oure preestes arm fayn to looke hem be rowe

A-geyn a feste, a-geyn an holy day,

Whan thei wil preche of ony suche aray, 558

Eyther of Iupiter, or Neptune, his brother.

leue we thanne þis mater and carpe of som other ! 560

“ Blameth not suche þing þat stant in ful gret stede ; 561 Do not blame
books.

Curse not my mayster, for þanne wil I be wroth !

It semeth yow better for to bydde yowre bede

Thanne seye swiche wordys !—eke it is ful looth

Soo (!) me to sey thus, but oonly for myn ooth 565

Whiche þat I made to maynteyn all-maner thyng

Whiche longen to oure goddis and to her offeryng.” 567

Cam. nonum.

Bk. II. Ch. 9.

Thanne spak a lord, þei calle sir hercules, 568

The prynce of paphon, of þat grete contre—

Euery man sat styлле and helde his pees

To here the speche, þe tale whyche þat hee

Be-gan to telle ; for his auctoryte 572

Was tho ful grete, in specyal for his age.

his wordys were a-coordynge to his vysage. 574

Thus be-gan he : “ it is better, my lady dere, 575

In suche a cas, whan it must nedes be doo,

To doo it at oones thanne for to leue in dwere

Or for to abyde ether on yeer or too.

Take ye non heed, consydere ye not ther-too 579

how ouyde seyde and wrote it in his book :

“ Whan thyng is newe, be war be tyme and look 581

tells Katharine she'd better get married at once.

- Bk. II. Ch. 9.* "ffor to amende it; for medecyn comyth ouyr-lathe¹ 582
 Whaþ þat þe man his² ded and hens I-goo, ¹ r. late ² r. is
 And with his frendes born oute at þe gate³?
 3our' londes, lady, if 3e take heed þer-too,
 ly fer a-sunder, for fro þis cuntre, loo, 586
 Whech we be Inne, rith on-to famagost
 Is many a myle; who schuld 3e with 3our host 588
 [fol. 26, b.] "Ryde sweche a way? and if þat 3e schuld sayle, 589
 [1st hand]
 It wold yow fese þe salt water rowe,
 3our' hert wold drede wyth-outyn ony fayle—
 That I sey now, me pinkyth it for your' prow.
 The lond of cypre, þat I cam þorow now, 593
 Is eke ful ferr'. it mute nedes be a man
 Whech schal wil, & eke þat may & can, 595
 "Do al þis labour, both in flesch & gost, 596
 Ryde & seyle, labour to se his lande,¹ ¹ orig. londe
 Sumtyme her', sumtyme at famagost—
 þus shal he gouerne þe lond, þe see, þe sand.
 þan may 3e haue your' bokes in your' hond 600
 And stody 3our' fille, it shal not greue us.
 Me pinkyth sewyrly þat 3e shul[d] wil þus! 602
 "3e shul[d] desyr' to be mor' at 3our' ese, 603
 To weld 3our' leyser' as 3e desyr' to haue;
 þer is mech ping' þat doth 3ou of[t]¹ displese, ¹ MS. of
 Whech shuld not þan. þerfor, if 3e wil saue
 Your' owne astate, & þus no lenger waue 607
 Both too & fro, doth be our' counsayle;
 In tyme comyng' it may 3ow mech awayle." 609

*Bk. II. Ch. 10.*Cam. 10^m.

- "Grameracy, ser', of your' goode counsayle!" 610
 þus seyð þe qween, "if 3e be as 3e wer',
 3our' myth & cumnyng' may vs mech awayle,
 &, as me pinkith, no man shal vs der',
 On paphon or cypre shal þer be no wer' 614

- “ffor to amende it; ffor medecyn comyth ouere-late *Bk. II. Ch. 9.*
 Whan þat the man is deed and hens I-goo 583
 And wyth his freend's boorn oute at þe gate?
 Youre londes, lady, if ye take heed ther-too,
 Iye fer a-sondre, for fro this contre, loo, 586 Her lands lie
far asunder.
 Whiche we be Inne, ryght on-to famagost
 Is many a myle; how shuld 3e wyth your oost 588
 “Ride swiche a weye? and if ye shuld sayle, 589 How can she
ride, and sail,
and be every-
where?
 It wulde yow fese, that salt water row,
 Your herte wolde drede wyth-outen ony fayle—
 That I seye now, me thenketh it for your prow.
 The lond of Cypre, that I cam thorgh now, 593
 Is eke ful ferre. it muste nedes ben a man
 Whiche shal haue wiH,¹ and eke þat may and can¹ overl. 595 A man is
needed
 “Doo al this labour, bothe in flesh and goost, 596
 Ride and sayle, laboure to see his lande,
 Somtyme here, somtyme at famagoost—
 Thus shal he gouerne the lande, the see and þe sande. to govern,
 Thanne may ye haue your bookys in youre hande 600 while she
may study
her books.
 And stodyen yowre fylle, it shal not greuen vs.
 Me thenketh suerly þat ye shulde wiln thus! 602
 “Ye shulde desyre to be more at youre Eese, 603
 To welde your leyser þat ye desyre to haue;
 There is moche thyng þat dooth yow ofte displese
 Whiche shulde not panne. therefore, if ye wil saue
 Youre owne astat, and thus no lengere waue 607 The Prince
urges Katha-
rine to marry.
 Bothe too and fro, dooth be oure counsayle;
 In tyme comynge it may yow moche awayle.” 609

Cam. decimum.

Bk. II. Ch. 10.

- “G Romercy, sir, of youre good counsayle!” 610 Katharine
answers
Prince Her-
cules of
Paphon.
 Thus seyde the queen, “if ye be as ye were,
 Youre myght and cunnyng may vs moche awayle
 And, as me thenketh, no man shal vs dere,
 On paphon or Cypre shal there be no werre 614 She praises
his rule of
Cyprus,

Bk. II. Ch. 10.

Whil þat 3e lyue, her-of I drede ryth nowth.

Now wold god so, it wer' ful der' I-boute 616

“Vp-on my body, in cas þat it stood soo 617

Thorow aȝ my lond as it in cypre stant!

I mith þan stody, þan myth I tend þer-to

And al my wil¹ þerof¹ now I want. ^{1 haue om.?}

3e shuld plese god, if 3e wold set & plant 621

3our' knythly maneres in yong' men þat be her',

To lern hem iust; I wolde wele qwrite 3our' h'ere. 623

[fol. 271
2nd hand]

“Of þat gret godd ek whech gouerneth all batayle, 624

Mars I mene, whos knyght 3e hafe be founde,

3e schall haf worchep, thow 3e hafe non auayle,

To tech hem holde þe schaftes þat be rounde.

Wyth 3our' praysyng my tale schuld mor' abunde 628

But þat we schuld noght preyse men in presence.

Than in 3our' londe I lak not now þe absence 630

“Of my lorde my ffadyr; it is noght gretly a-spyede 631

hys deth wyth yow. I sette cas ferthermor'

þat if I wer', as 3e wolde, now newe a-lyede,

Weddyd I mene, what schuld þan 3our' sore

Therby be esed? þat man is not 3et bore, 635

Wer' he neuyr so wys, manfull or'stronge,

Of hert fell, of body broode & longe, 637

“That myght at onys be in all þese places 638

Whech 3e spak of ryght now in 3our' tale;

Thow he had plentiuously all þe grete graces

Whech kepe a man fro byttyr peynes bale

And saue hym harmles, as wyth-Inne þe wale 642

Of a strong schyppe a man is bor' a-lofte,

3et myght he noght, rode he neuyr so softe, 644

“Be in too places at onys. for ryght as a stone, 645

Whan he is layd in hys naturall place,

May not þat tyme be founde but þer a-lone

Whil þat ye leuen, her-of I drede ryght nought.

Bk. II. Ch. 10.

Now wolde god so, it were ful dere I-bought

616

“Vp on my body, in cas that it stood soo

617

Thurgh al my lond as it in Cypre stante !

I myght þanne stody, thanne myght I tende ther-too

And haue¹ al my wil ther-of now I wante. ¹ A. h. on erasure.

Ye shulde plesse god, if ye wolde sette or plante

621

and wishes
he'd teach
her young
Syrians

Youre knyghtly maners in yonge men tho ben her',

To lerne hem lusten ; I wolde weel quyte *your* hyre. 623

“Of þat grete god eke whiche gouerneth al batayH, 624

Mars I mene, whos knyght ye haue be founde,

Ye shal haue wurship, thow ye haue not awayle,

To teche hem hoolde the shaftes tho ben rovnde.

to handle
their spears.

With youre preysyng my tale shuld more abounde 628

But þat we shulde not preyse men in *presens*.

Than in yowre lond I lakke not now the absens

630

“Of my lord, my fader ; it is not gretely aspyede 631

his deeth with þow. I set cas ferthermore

That if I were, as ye wolde, now newe allyede,

Wheddede I meene, what shuld thanne *your* soore

Therby ben esed ? þat man is not yeet bore,

635

No one man

Were he neuere soo wys, manful or strong,

Of herte fel, of body brood and long,

637

“That myght at oones be in all these places 638

Whiche ye spak of ryght now in *your* tale ;

Though he hadde plentiuously all þe grete graces

Whiche kepe a man from alle þe bitter peynes bale

And save hym harmles, as with-inne the wale

642

Of a stronge ship a man is bore a-loft,

Yet myght he not, rood he neuer so soft,

644

“Be in to places at oones. for ryght as a ston), 645

can be in two
places at
once,

Whan he is leyd in his natural place,

May not at that tyme be founde but there alon

Bk. II. Ch. 10.

Wher' he was leyd, ryght so in þis cas ;
 O man may not be in dyuerse place, 649
 And þat at ones, for' be our' phylosophye
 It is condempned as for an heresye. 651
 "Therfor ryght thus we conelude our' clause : 652
 Euery body hath hys naturall rest,
 Aftyr hys kende or aftyr hys priuy cause, ^{1 on the margin.}
 Whech þat¹ þe goddes ryght euene as hem lest
 haue departyde. to opyne thus þan holde I best : 656
 he þat is her', he is her', & noo-where ellys—
 Example lo I mene : who-so-euyr þat dwelles 658
 "At grete Alysaunder', he dwelleth not in famagost. 659
 þan must euery man nedys hym-self remeue
 And cary hys men thorow-owte all þe coost,
 Ete at noone, rest [hym]¹ eke at eue ^{1 om.}
 her' & þer' as hys iornay wyll preue. 663
 Ryght so may I, thow I a woman be ;
 þan in 3our argument me thynkyth noo difficulte." 665

Bk. II. Ch. 11.**Cam. 11m.**

The duk of damaske was wroth wyth þis answer, 666
 he stode up tho & þus he gan to sey :
 "In my 3ong age ryght thus dyd I ler' :
 þe pupyll must nedys on-to þe kyng obeye,
 loue hym & drede hym euyr tyll þei deye, 670
 ffor þei ar' bounde full sor' thus to do ;
 And we wyll euyr hertly bowe þer-too. 672
 "So is a kyng swor' eke ful depe 673
 To loue hys pupyll, be þei heye or lowe,
 Ryght & trowth amonge hem alle to kepe,
 So þat noo wrong schuld hem ouyr-throwe.
 þus ar' 3e swor', madame ; 3e it know, 677
 Bettyr þan I, qwat is to breke an othe—
 Reson may not ne schall not make 3ow wroth. 679

Where he was leyd, ryght soo in this cace ; *Bk. II. CA. 10.*
 Oo man may not be in dyuers place, 649
 And that at oones, for be oure philosophie as natural
 It is condemned as for an heresy. 651 philosophy
teaches;

“ Therefore ryght thus we conclude oure clause : 652
 Euery body hath his natural reste,
 After his kynde or after his preuy cause,
 Whiche that þe goddys ryght as hem leste
 haue departed. to opyne thus than holde I beste : 656
 he þat is here, he is here, and noo-where ellys—
 Exaunple loo I mene : hoo-so-euere þat dwellys 658

“ At grete Alysaundre, he dwelleth not in famagost. 659
 Than muste euery man nedes hym-self remeue man must
 And carye his men thurgh-oute al the oost, move him-
 Ete at noon), eke reste hym at eue self when he
 heere and there as his Iorney wil preue. 663 wants to get
 Right soo may I, thow I a woman be ; to another
 Thanne in youre argument me thenketh noon difficulte.” place ;
so she, Ka-
tharine, can
do the same.

Ca^m. vndecimum.*Bk. II. CA. 11.*

The duke of Damask was wroth wyth þis answe, 666 The Duke of
 he stood vp tho and thus gan he to seye : Damascus
 “ In my yonge age ryght thus dede I lere :
 The puple must nedes on-to the kyng obeye,
 Loue hym and drede hym euere tyl thei deye, 670
 ffor thei arn bounde ful sore thus for to doo ;
 And we wyl euere hertely bowe ther-too. 672
 “ Soo is a kyng sworn eke ful depe 673
 To loue his puple, be thei heygh or lowe, reminds
 Right and treuthe a-mongis hem alle to kepe, Katharine
 Soo that no wrong shulde hem ouere-throwe. that she
 Thus arn ye sworn, madame, ye it knowe ; 677 swore
 Better þan I ȝe¹ wot what¹ it is to breke an ooth— ¹ overl.
 Reson may not ne shal not make yow wrooth. 679

- Bk. II. Ch. 11. "3owr' othe was þis, if 3e remembyr' 3ow welle : 680
 To ordeyn so for londe, for man & townn),
 þat alle þese þingys at euery tyme & seele
 Schuld be redressed, be it vp or down),
 ffor þat þei longe alle on-to 3our' crown. 684
 þis othe may 3e not' saue non other' wey
 But if 3e wyll on-to our' wyll obeye, 686
 "ffor to be weddyd on-to sume worthy man. 687
 Wher' is no lorde, þer is no lawe, men say.
 Now, be my trowth, in no wey þink I can
 þat ony woman, if þer come a fray,
 Schuld sese vs sone, & specyaly a may. 691
 3e ber' vs downn) wyth 3our' philosophye ;
 But at þe last 3e must bowe, hardylle." 693

Bk. II. Ch. 12.Cam. 12^m.

- "**S**Er," seyð þe qwen, "3e make now swech a skyl 694
 Ryght in 3our tale whech 3e enforst now,
 þat I wold thus, & þat it wer' my wylle,
 þat 3e no gouernauns had. & I sewyr' 3owe,
 I thowte it neuyr' ; it wer' not to my prow. 698
 ffor thowe it¹ schuld noye alle our' oost, MS. I
 Thys wote I well, it schuld towch me moste. 700
 "I kepe, & schall, myn othe whech I made, 701
 Tyll þat I deye I schall it neuyr breke.
 3e may wel carpe & in 3our langage wade,
 New wordes reherse & new resones speke,
 Whech wer' rehersyd & haue her' answers eke ; 705
 Me lyst not for to remembre swech thynk¹ a-geyn). ¹ r. thyng
 But thus mech, ser', to 3ow dar' I seyn) : 707
 "As for my ffadyr', he left 3ow in rest & pes, 708
 And in noo debate, ne lykely for to be ;
 If þer' ryse ony, 3e may 3our'-self it ses,
 And but 3e do, 3e be on-trewe to me,
 Not to me oonly, but to þe mageste 712

- "Youre ooth was pis, if ye remembre yow weel: 680 *Bk. II. Ch. 11.*
 To ordeyne soo for the lond, for man and town, *an oath to*
 That alle þese þingis at euery tyme and seel *redress all*
 Shulde be redressed, be it vp or down, *her folk's*
 ffor that thei longen alle to your crown. 684 *wronge;*
 This oth may ye not saue non other weye
 But if ye wil on-to oure wil obeye, 686 *and this she*
cannot do
 "ffor to be wedded on-to som wurthy man. 687 *unless she*
 Where is no lord, there is no lawe, men say. *weds some*
 Now, be my sothe, in no weye thenke I can *worthy man.*
 That ony woman, if there come a fray,
 Shulde cece vs soone, and specyally a may. 691
 Ye bere vs down with youre phylosophie;
 But at þe last ye muste bowe, hardylye." 693

- "Sere," seyde the queen, "ye make now suche a skyl *Katharine*
 Ryght in your tale whiche ye enforced now, 695 *answers*
 That I wolde thus, and also¹ it were my wyl, ^{1 on erasure.}
 That ye no gouernance had. I sewer you,
 I thoughte it neuere; it were not to my prow. 698
 ffor thow it shuld noyen al oure oost,
 This wote I weel, it shuld touche me moost. 700
 "I kepe, and shal, myn ooth whiche I made, 701 *that she will*
 Til þat I deye I shal it neuere breke. *keep her oath.*
 Ye may weel carpe and in yowre langage wade,
 Newe woordys reherse and newe resouns speke
 Whiche where rehersed and haue her answeere eke; 705
 Me leste not for to remembre swiche þing ageyn.
 But thus moche, sir, to yow dar I seyn: 707
 "That, for my fader lefte yow in reste and in pees 708
 And in no debate, ne lykly for to bee,
 If there ryse ony, ye may youre-seelf it cees;
 And but ye doo, ye ben on-trewe to me,
 Not to me oonly, but to the maieste 712 *If any quar-*
rels rise,
it is the
Duke's duty
to stop them.

Bk. II. Ch. 12. Of my crown, & gylty for to deye.

A-vyse 3ow bettyr whan þat 3e lyst to seye!" 714

*Bk. II. Ch. 13.*Cam. 13^m.

A Gret clerk þoo stod up be hym-selue, 715

þat was fful scharp in wytte, as I wene;

In þis mater' he thowte þoo for to delue

A lytyll depper', þer-for vn-to þe qwene

Thus he spake: "þese lordes all-be-dene 719

þei can not, lady, a-spye as 3et 3our' art,

Who pregnantly 3e can kepe 3our' part. 721

"3e arn lerned, & so be þei nowte; 722

It is less wondyr' thow þei concluded be.

But euyr wondyr I gretly in my thowte,

3e sett no mor' be þat hye degre,

Grettest of all, I mene þe regalte. 726

Who schuld preys it but 3e? I supposyd,

Afty'r þe name wyth wech 3e ar' losed, 728

"That 3e wold enhaunse þis ilk degre 729

Most of all wommen. what eylyth now 3our wytte?

I am in poynt to leue it is noght 3e.

þis mater', lady, on-to myn hert it sytte

So sor', I-wys, me thynkyth it wyll it kytte. 733

3e drynk so sor', I trowe, of poetrye,

And most in specyale of hym, valerye, 735

"Whech wold, it semyth, þat no man wedded schulde be,

he counseled so to on ruffyn, 3e know it welle, 737

3a ouyrwelle—what nede is for me

ffor to reherce þe sorow, þe langwor' euerydelle

Whech þat longyth vn-to þat fykell whelle 740

Of spousalye, as wrytyth þis hold clerke,

Valerye, þe moost in þis forsayd werke. 742

"But thow in þe por' be often swech myschauns, 743

It is not þus in swech grete mageste

Wyth whech we wolde 3ow, lady, now аваuns.

Of my crowne, and gylty for to deye.

Bk. II. Ch. 11.

A-vyse yow better whan ye leste to seye!"

714

Ca^m. duodecimum.

Bk. II. Ch. 12.

A grete clerk tho stood vp be hym-self,

715

A great Clerk

That was ful sharp in witte, as I wene;

In [t]his mater tho he thought for to delf

A lytil deppere, therfore on-to the queene

Thus he spak: "these lordes alle be-dene

719

admits that
Katharine

Thei can not, lady, a-spye as yet *your* art,

how pregauntly ye kan kepe youre part.

721

"Ye arn lerned, and so be thei nought;

722

It is lesse wondir thow thei concluded bee.

But euere wonder I gretly in my thought,

Ye sette no more be that heye degre,

Grettest of alle, I meene the regalte.

726

hoo shulde preyse it but ye? I supposed,

After the name with w^hych e ye arn losed,

728

"That ye wolde enhaunce this ilke degre

729

The great
Clerk

Moost of alle women). what eyleth now *your* wyt?

I am in poynt to leue it is not yee.

This mater, lady, on-to myn hert it syt

Soo sore, I-wys, me thenketh it wil it kyt.

733

reproaches
Katharine
for reading
Valerius,

Ye drynke so soore, I trowe, of poetrye,

And most enspecial of hym, Valerye,

735

"Whiche wolde, it semyth, þat no man wedded shuld be,

he counseiled soo to on ruffyn, ye knowe it weel,

737

who writes
against
marriage.

Ya ouerewel—what nedeth it for me

ffor to reherce the soorwe, the langour euery deel

Whiche þat longeth on-to þat fekel wheel

740

Of spousayle, as wryteth þis olde clerk,

Valery, the moste in this forseyd werk.

742

"But thow in the pore be often suche myschaunce, 743

It is not thus in swiche maieste

Wyth whyche we wolde you, lady, auance.

- Bk. II. Ch. 13. And eyur contrarye on-to our' wylle are 3e.
 Thyнк 3e not what 3e seyde wole late, parde? 747
 3e spake not long sythe & seyde ryght euen þus :
 3e wold, 3e seyde, haue on to gouern) vs. 749
 "What schuld he be but he wer' a kyng? 750
 þer may no man gouern) þis grete reem
 But swych a man þat is able in all þing
 To wedd 3ow ;—& for my lord 3our Em
 May not wed 3ow neyther' in wecch ne drem, 754
 Therfor' he may not her' as in þis place
 Ber' noo crown), for it stant in 3our grace 756
 "Who schall it ber', it longeth on-to 3our ryght. 757
 Syth 3e haue graunted þan þat we schall haue
 A gouernour' to sett vs in good plyth,
 þan haue 3e graunted all þat eyur we craue ;
 And fro þis purpos este 3e turn) & waue, 761
 And sey 3e wyll no husbonde haue as 3itte !
 Be-holdeth now wysely if so be þat 3our wytte 763
 "Be stedefastly I-sett eyur vp-on o poynt' ? 764
 Me thynkyth nay, 3e changen) too & froo,
 Now wyll 3e, now ar' 3e in an other' ioynthe
 And þan wyll 3e not. who schuld we come þer-too
 To know your' purpos, whan 3e vary soo ? 768
 lat vs know pleynly, lady, what 3e mene ;
 We be 3our' men, þynkyth 3e be our' qwene." 770

Bk. II. Ch. 14.

Cam. 14m.

- "**S**Er," seyde þe qwene, "3e be lordes fele, 771
 And wyse also : what nedyth 3ow þus to care,
 Whan 3e be 3ung, lusty, & in good hele ;
 Eke 3our countres beth as now not bare
 Neyther of corn, of men, ne of welfar' ? 775
 But to 3ow, syr, I woundre mych mor' than 3e—
 ffor 3e sey in þis mater' 3e haue meruayle of me ; 777

And euere contrarye on-to oure wil arn) ye. *Bk. II. Ch. 12.*
 Thenke ye not what ye seyde wol late newele? 747 She has
promist her
folk some one
to govern
them.
 Ye spak not longe syth and seyde ryght thus :
 Ye wulde, ye seyde, haue oon) to gouerne vs. 749

“What shulde he be but he were a kyng? 750
 There may no man) gouerne this grete reem
 But swiche a man that is able in al ping
 To wedde yow ;—and for my lord youre een) ^{1 orig. heem} 754 This must be
her husband.
 May not wedde yow neyther in wetche ne in dreem,
 Therefore he may not here in þis plas
 bere no crowne, for it stant in youre gras 756

“ho shal it bere, it longeth on-to your ryght. 757
 Syth that ye haue graunted thanne that we shal haue
 A gouernour to sette vs in good plyght,
 Thanne haue ye graunted al þat euere we craue ;
 And fro this purpos efte ye turne and waue, 761 But she says
she won't
have a hus-
band.
 And seye ye wil non) housbond haue as yit.
 Be-holdeth now wysly if soo be þat youre wyt 763

“Be stedfastly set euere vp-on) oo poynt? 764
 Me thinketh nay, ye chaungen too and fro,
 Now wil ye, now arn ye in a-nother ioynt
 And thanne wil ye nought. how shuld we come þer-too
 To knowe youre purpos, whanne ye varye soo? 768 Why does she
vary so?
 Lete vs knowe pleylnly, lady, what ye meene ;
 We ben) youre men, thinketh ye ben) oure queene.” 770

Cam. 13m.

Bk. II. Ch. 13.

“S^Ere,” seyde the queen), “ye be lordes fele, 771 Katharine
 And wyse also : what nedeth yow thus to care,
 Whan) ye be yonge, lusty, and in good hele ;
 Eke youre contrees beth as now not bare
 Neyther of corn, of men, ne of weelfare? 775
 But to you, sir, I wonder moche more than) ye—
 ffor ye seyn) in this mater ye haue merueyle of me ; 777

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 14.</u>	“ And wher’ 3e sey þat I wold now disseyue	778
	Wyth my termes my lordes whech I loue,	
	I pray 3ow hertly þat 3e wyll noght conceyue	
	Of me swech þing. for truly, it wold not proue;	
	Swech iapes to make wer’ not to be-houe,	782
	Neythyr to me ne to non other’ wyght;	
	To be a dysseyuour’ it is a grett dispyte.	784
	“ 3e sayd eft-sone þat I dyspyse a kyng,	785
	Eke þat astate I trede all vndyr fote.	
	Thow I be not enclyned to 3our askyng,	
	As for to be weddyd whan I schall, godd wote,	
	3et am I come bothe of þat stok & rote—	789
	I may not hyde it, for it is know so wyde—	
	Bothe on my faderes & on my moder’s syde.	791
	“ Schuld I þan dyspyse þat hye degre,	792
	Whech þat is ordeynd be goddys prouidens,	
	Whech is eke come be descense to me?	
	Godd forbede in me þat gret offenses,	
	Or þat I wer’ founde in swech neelygens!	796
	I wote full weele, a kyng is all a-boue	
	Ouyr hys legys, both in fer’ & loue;	798
	“ And þei be to hym as it wer’ botraces,	799
	To schoue & holde fast & stedefastly,	
	To mey[n]ten ryght a-geyn all wrong traces;	
	A kyng’s myght full small is hardyly	
	Wyth-oute swech help, 3e wote as weel as I.	803
	But þat 3e lyst to seye as for 3our’ part.	
	þan semeth it, ser’, þat I vse treuly myn art,	805
	“ And not pretende in no-maner’ terme	806
	Non othyr sentens þan þe terme schuld haue,	
	But vse my langage stabyly & ferme;—	
	Myn entent is swech, so godd me saue,	
	And euyr schall be, I trow neuyr to waue	810
	ffro þat purpos whylys þat I am her’—	
	þis is my mynde, if 3e wyll it her’.	812

- " And where ye sey þat I wolde now disceyue 778 *Bk. II. Ch. 13.*
 With my termes my lordes whiche I loue,
 I pray you hertily þat ye wil not conceyue
 Of me swiche ping. for treuly, it wil not proue ;
 Swiche iapes to make where not to be-houe, 782
 Neyther to me ne to noon other whygt¹ ; ^{1 corrected.}
 To be a disceyoun² it is a gret dissyght. ^{2 orig. diss} 784
- " Ye seyde eftson^e þat I despise a kyng, 785 *or despise a King.*
 Eke þat astate I trede al vnder fote.
 Thou I be not enclyned to *your* askyng
 As for to be wedded whanne I shal, god wote,
 Yet am I come bothe of þat stok & rote— ^{1 MS. a} 789
 I may not hyde it, for it is knowe soo wyde—
 bothe on my faderis and on my moderis syde. 791
- " Shulde I thanne despyse that heigh degree, 792 *She reverences Royalty.*
 Whiche þat is ordeyned be goddys prouydens,
 Whiche is eke come be discens on-to me ?
 God forbede in me þat grete offenses,
 Or that I were founde in suche neglygens ! 796
 I wot ful weel, a kyng is al a-boue
 Ouere his lyges, bothe in fere and in loue ; 798 *A King is over his lieges*
- " And thei ben¹ to hym as it were boteras, ^{1 orig. be} 799 *and they are a buttress to him to maintain Right.*
 To shoue and holde faste and stedefastly,
 To mey[n]teyn ryght a-geyn alle wrong tras ;
 A kyngys myght ful smal is ha[r]dly
 With-outen swiche helpe, ye wote as weel as I. 803
 But that ye list to seye as for *your* part. ^{1 corr. to sir}
 Thanne semeth it, ser,¹ þat I vse treuly myn art, 805
- " And not pretende in no-maner terme 806
 Non other sentens thanne the terme shuld haue,
 but vse my langage stably and ferme ;—
 Myn entent is suche, soo god me saue,
 And euer shal bee, I trowe neuer to waue 810
 ffor þat purpos wils that I am heere—
 This is myn mende wyth-oute ony feere. 812

- Bk. II. Ch. 14.* "3e list also me efte to repreue : 813
 ffor I graunted 3ow to haue a gouernour,
 Therfor 3e sey, fully I 3aue 3ow leue
 To haue a kyng, lord of town & toure.
 lett be 3our' sophym ! 3our termes ar' but sour' ! 817
 ffor thow 3e bryng forth alle 3our hool bunch,
 3e schall not mak an elne of a vneñ. 819
 "I sett cas a man hath 3oue to 3ow a best, 820
 It folowyth not per-of þat he 3aue 3ow an ox ;
 he may as weell paye þe mor' as þe lest,
 he may chese to 3eue 3ow a hors or a fox.
 3our termes come owte of þat sotyll box 824
 Of Aristoteles elenkes, made in swych wyse
 Who so þat lerneth hem, he schall seme wyse. 826
 "So graunted I to 3ow to haue 3our' choys fre 827
 To chese a duke whech þat schuld lede 3ow,
 Not for to haue no (!) gouernauns vp-on me,
 But to my byddyng he must lowte & bowe.
 All þis entent 3et eft I new alowe, 831
 Thus schull 3e haue 3our wylle, & I schall haue myne ;
 ffor of myn answer', ser', her' is þe fyne." 833

*Bk. II. Ch. 15.*Ca^m. 15^m.

- "**M**Adame," quod þe erle þoo of lymasones, 834
 "Alle these lordes þat now her' sitte
 Wondyr' full sor' of 3our grete resoness,
 þei wayle eke þat 3e haue swech a wytte ;
 3our' wordes ar' scharpe, þei can bynde & kytte. 838
 But had 3e ben as other' wommen ar',
 þan schuld 3e a ferde as other' wommen far'. 840
 "3our' scole wyll schath vs, I-wys, we skape it nowte. 841
 We hoped of 3ow to haue had sume grete empyr-e,
 But all is turned no-þing as we thowte.
 In many materes men may be ouyr'-wyse !
 3our' conceytes, madame, set hem in sume syse ; 845

- Ye liste also me efte to repreue, 813 *Bk. II. Ch. 13.*
 ffor I graunted yow to haue a gouernour,
 Therefore ye sey, fully I yaue you leue
 To haue a kyng, lord of toun and tour.
 late be youre sophym! *your* termes arn but sour! 817
 ffor thow ye brynke foorth al *your* hool bunch,
 3e shal not make an elne of an vnch. 819
- "I sette cas a man hath youe to you a beeste, 820
 It folweth not therof þat he yaaf yow an¹ oxe; ¹ MS. and
 he may as weel paye the more as the leeste,
 he may chese to yeue yow an hors or a foxe.
 Your termes come oute of þat sotil boxe 824
 Of aristoteles elenkes, made in suche gyse
 ho-so þat lerneth hem, he shal seme wise. 826
- "Soo graunted I yow to haue *your* choys free 827
 To chese a duke whiche þat shulde leede yow,
 Not for to haue gouernauns vp-on mee,
 But to myn biddying he muste lowte and bowe.
 Al this entent yet eft I newe allowe, 831
 Thus shul ye haue *your* wil, and I shal haue myn;
 ffor of myn answee, sir, this is the fyn." 833

Ca^m. 14^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 14.*

- "M Adame," quod the Erl tho of lymasones, 834
 "Alle these lordes that now here sitte
 Wondyr ful soore of youre grete resoness,
 Thei wayle eke þat ye haue swiche a wytte; 837
 Your wordes arn sharpe, thei can bynde and knytte (!).
 But had ye ben as other women are,
 Thanne shulde ye a ferde as other women fare. 840
- "Your scoole wil scathe vs, I-whis, we scape it nowht. 841
 We hopyd of yow haue had som grete empyrse,
 But al this turned no-thing as we thought.
 In many maters men may ben ouere-wyse! 844
 Your conseytes, madame, sette hem in som syse,¹ ¹ MS. fyse

begs Katharine not to be otherwise,

Bk. II. Ch. 15.

ffor loue of godd, which is our' governowr',
 Accepte our' wyttes & leue sume-what of 3our' ! 847

" We may weel doo ryght as 3e sayn), 848

Chese vs now a leder', if þat we lyst,

[fol. 50]

Which schall be to vs in maner' of a cheuetayn).

But in þis lond it was 3et neuyr wylt ; 851

he myght be swech parauentur' þat he schuld fro 3our' fyst

Drawe mech of 3our' lande euyn vn-to hym--

A-vyse 3ow ryght weele, þis mater' is full dym ! 854

" Eke, thow we peyned vs alle hym to plesse, 855

he schuld noght lyke vs, certeyn, luyng 3ow ;

Our' hertes schuld not haue no rest ne no ese,

But he wer' lorde ryght as 3e be, lady, now.

It is full harde a-geyn wylle to bowe. 859

he cowde not be chose eke a-mong ony of vs ;

And hard it is to leue in langour' thus." 861

*Bk. II. Ch. 16.*Ca^m. 16^m.

[6th hand]

Than) answeryd schortely þat fayre swete may : 862

" Sere erl," sche sayde, " 3e may full wele tryst,

þere is but o poynt to qwech I sey nay ;

And my cawse is þis : I haue 3it no list

þat ony man my maydynhod schuld twyst, 866

But if I knew better what þat he were.

Thus say I now, & þus sayde I ere : 868

" I wyH abyde tyH better tyme may come, 869

A 3ere or two, tyH þat I elder be ;

ffor to wedde 3it me thynk' it full sone ;

And to 3our' governawns þus I demene me.

Iff 3e lyst not to haue on, I graunt 3ow two or thre, 873

Whych men may gouerne wyth-owtyn enuye.

I profyr 3ow reson, what-so-euer 3e crye." 875

ffor loue of god, whiche is oure gouernoure,
 Accepte oure wittes and leue som of your! 847

"We may weel doo ryght as ye seyn),
 Chese vs now a leedere, if that we lyst,
 Whiche shuld be to vs in maner of a cheuentayn).
 But in this lond it was neuer yet wist; 851

he myght be swiche paraventure þat he shuld fro your fyst
 Drawe meche of your lond euene on-to hym—
 Avyse yow ryght weel, this mater is ful dym! 854

"Eke, thow we peyned vs alle hym to plesse,
 he shuld not lyken vs, certeyn, lyuyng yow;
 Owre hertes shulde haue non reste ne non ese,
 But he were lord ryght as ye be, lady, now.
 It is ful hard a-geyn the wil to bow. 859

he cowde not be chose eke a-mongis ony of vs;
 And hard it is to lyue in langour thus." 861

Ca^m. 15^m.

Bk. II. Ch. 15.

Thanne answerde shortly þat fayr swete may : 862
 "Sir Erl," she seyde, "ȝe may ful weel tryst,
 There is but oo poynt to whiche I sey nay;
 And my cause is thys : I haue no lyst
 That oony man) my maydenhod shuld twyst, 866
 But if I knowe beter what þat he were.
 Thus sey I now, and thus seyde I heere :¹ 1 = ere 868

"I wyl a-byde til beter tyme may come,
 A yeer or too, til that I ooldere bee;
 ffor to wedde yet me thenketh it ful sone;
 And to yowre gouernauns thus I demene me.
 If yee lyst not to haue oon), I graunte you too or thre, 873
 Whiche men) may gouernen) withouten) enuye.
 I profere yow reson), what-so-euere ye crye." 875

"I wyl a-byde til beter tyme may come,
 A yeer or too, til that I ooldere bee;
 ffor to wedde yet me thenketh it ful sone;
 And to yowre gouernauns thus I demene me.
 If yee lyst not to haue oon), I graunte you too or thre, 873
 Whiche men) may gouernen) withouten) enuye.
 I profere yow reson), what-so-euere ye crye." 875

- T**han spak þe amirall of gret Alisawndre, 876
 Thus he gan sey ryght in þis manere :
 “ Ȝoure wordis to Ȝour wysdom are but slaundre,
 Thus thynk Ȝour frendis all þat sytte here.
 Loke þat Ȝe þrow not now all in þe mere ! 880
 Loke þat Ȝe lese not now Ȝour gret namyd lose,
 Whan þat Ȝe may so heily it endoos ! 882
 “ Who honoure Ȝe Ȝour owne grete astate ! 883
 Why hate Ȝe now þat ilk lady must haue ?
 Wherefore haue Ȝe swech þing in hate
 That may Ȝoure londes & eke Ȝour-self saue ?
 [fol. 30, b.] Yf Ȝe wer’ not my lady, I wold wene Ȝe raue ; 887
 [1st hand] ffor yf all þeis conseytes had come of wyt,
 Mo folk þan Ȝe wold haue usyd it. 889
 “ Men seyn, madame, þat he maddyth mor’ 890
 þat doth lich no man, & is mor’ out of herr’,
 þan is a foole þat can not se be-for’
 Ne can not knowe þe best fro þe werr’.
 Be ye¹ war’ be-tyme þat Ȝe no lenger’ erre ; ¹ MS. þe 894
 Schape not your-self ne your’ lond to schend,
 Thynk now be-tyme what shal be þe ende ! 896
 “ Ȝe wote þat I am keper of þis grete cite, 897
 And in þis same cite as now standyth it soo :
 þer is many a man & many dyuerse degre,
 Both cristen & hethen, frely com þer-too :
 I woote not sumtyme what is best to doo, 901
 I dweH her’ soo in swech-maner drede,
 I knowe not my frend whan I haue nede. 903
 “ I se also her’ an othir grete myscheffe, 904
 In Ȝow, madame, & Ȝe lyst to her’ :
 Ȝe be to euery man both deynty & leffe,
 & Ȝe no man cownt not at a per’.
 It wyH not proue, swech solen daunger’ ; 908

Ca^m. 16^m.Bk. II. Ch. 16.

- T**hanne spak the amreth of grete Alysandre, 876 The Amiral
Thus he gan seyn right in this manere : of Alexandria
- “Youre woordis to *your* wysdam arn but slaundre,
Thus thenken youre freendys alle that sitten here. asks Katharine
- Looke þat ye throwe not now al in the meere ! 880
- Looke that ye lese not youre grete named loos,
Whanne that ye may soo heyly it endoos ! 882
- “how honoure ye *your* owne grete astate ! 883
- Why hate ye now that ilke lady muste haue ? why she hates
Wherefore haue ye swiche thing in hate a Husband ?
- That may youre londes and eke *your*-self saue ?
- If ye were not my lady, I wolde wene ye raue ; 887
- ffor if alle these conseytes had come of wyt,
Mo folkys than ye wold haue vsed it. 889
- “Men, madame, seyn¹ that he maddeth more ¹corr. 890 Her eccen-
That dooth liche no man, and is more oute of herre, tricities will
Than is a fool that can not see be-fore harm her
Ne kan not knowe the beste fro the werre. land.
- Be ye war be-tyme that ye noo lengere erre ; 894
- Shape not youre-self ne youre lond to shende,
Thenke now be-tyme what shal be the ende ! 896
- “Ye wot þat I am kepere of this grete Cytee, 897 He, the
And in this same Citee as now standeth¹ soo : ¹corr. governor of
There is many a man in many dyuers degree, Alexandria,
- Bothe crystene and ethen, freely come ther-too :
- I wote not somtyme what is best to doo, 901 knows by ex-
I dwelle heere soo in swiche-manner dreede, perience how
I knowe not my freend whan I haue neede. 903 difficult it is
to rule alone.
- “I see here also¹ a-nother grete myschef ¹overlined. 904
- In you, madame, and ȝe listen to heer’ :
- Ye be to euery man bothe deynte and leef,
And ye no man counte the valu of a pere.
- It wil not proue, swiche soleyn daungeere ; 908
- Every one
values her :
she regards
no one,

Bk. II. Ch. 17. Thinken on othir þat haue abyden long,
And at þe last þei haue walkyd wrongi." 910

*Bk. II. Ch. 18.*Ca^m. 18^m.

"And dede þei so," seid þis noble qwene, 911
"So shal I not, wyth grace of god aboue ;

My wyttes, I telle 3ou, no-þingⁱ besy been
I[n] swech materⁱ, neythir to lust ne to loue—
ffy on þo hertes þat euer on swech þing houē ! 915

Dred yow not of me in þis materⁱ,
Beth not a-ferd tyl 3e morⁱ þingⁱ herⁱ. 917

"And as for yourⁱ puple þat amonges you dweH, 918

haue 3e not powerⁱ & ful auctoryte
To put out hem whech beth of hert so feH,
Or hem þat use falshed or sotylte,
Be whech ourⁱ rewme happily harmed myth be ? 922

Syth þat 3e may, whi do 3e not yourⁱ dede ?
þe[i] þat lett yow, arⁱ worthy to be dede. 924

"3e arⁱ a man large & grete of bones ; 925

Yf yourⁱ hert be as 3ourⁱ grete body is,
3e ar ful lykly to do morⁱ note at onys

Than othir thre men. a schame for soth it is
That swech a man schuld ferⁱ ony of his, 929

Whan þat he may correct hem hym-selue ;
I wold 3eue¹ 3e alone shuld oppresse twelue !"^{1 r. wene} 931

*Bk. II. Ch. 19.*Ca^m. 19^m.

An othir duke gan þan to approche, 932
Ser clamadour þei calle his ryth name,

A worthi man & duke of Antioche,
þe qwenes cosyn, a lord of ful grete fame.
"þei þat lerned you, ar ful mech þe¹ blame ^{1 r. to} 936

As in my conseyt," þus seyde he to þe qwene,
"ffor of swech wytt & of swech cunnyngⁱ 3e been 938

Thenke other that haue abeden longe,
And at the laste thei haue walked wronge." 910

Bk. II. Ch. 16.

Cam. 17m.

Bk. II. Ch. 17.

"And dede thei soo," seyde this noble queen, 911 Katharine
"Soo shal I not, wyth þe grace of god aboue; says she
My wittis, I telle you, no-thing besy been does not care
In swiche mater, neither to lust ne to loue— for love.
ffy on tho hertis þat euere on suche þing¹ houe! 915
Drede you not of me in this matere, ^{1 MS. þingis}
beth not aferd til ye more þing here. 917

"And as for your puple that a-mong yow dwelle, 918 The Amiral
haue ye not power and ful auctoryte has full power
To putte oute hem wiche been of herte soo felle, to banish ill-
Or hem þat vsen falsched or sotilte, doers:
Be whiche oure reem happely harmed myght be? 922
Syth þat ye may, whi doo ye not youre offys¹? ^{1 corr.} why does he
They þat lette yow, arn wurthi deed, be thei neuer so wys. complain?

"Ye arn a man large and gret of bones; 925 He is big
If your herte be as youre grete body is, enough
Ye arn ful likly to doo more note at oones
Than other thre men. a shame forsothe it is
That swiche man shuld fere ony of his, 929
Whan ye may correcte hem youre-selue;
I wol wene, ye allone shuld oppresse twelue!" 931 nay, for 13.

Cam. 18m.

Bk. II. Ch. 18.

An other duke gan thanne to approche, 932 Sir Clama-
Syr Clamadour thei calle his ryght name, dour, Duke of
A worthi man and duke of Antioche, Antioch,
The queenes cosyn, a lord of ful grete fame.
"Thei that lerned yow, arn ful moche to blame 936 then argues
As in myn conseyte," thus seyde he to the queen, with Katha-
"ffor of swiche wyt and of swiche con[n]yng ye been, 938 rine.

- Bk. II. Ch. 19. "It passith our' wittis, þer is no mor' to say; 939
 lych to an egle 3e flye vs all a-boue.
 3ete in as mech as 3e be 3et a may,
 And eke a qwene, it fallyth to 3our' be-houe
 To fostre hem which 3ou drede & loue, 943
 Despise hem nowt, þou3 þat þei be dulle,
 Nout3 lich to 3ou—for 3e be in þe fulle, 945
 "As I suppose; I pray god as for me, 946
 Grow 3e no hier', 3our' wyt is hye I-now.
 Than, þow our' wytt be not in swech degre,
 3et our' good wyll must 3e nedes a-low.
 What shal men ellys wryte & sey of' yow: 950
 þat 3e dysdeyne þe pore creature
 And hauns your' witt out of' aH mesur'. 952
 "What þing' letteth yow þat 3e wil not us leue, 953
 & be we your' men & your' seruau^{tis} aHe!
 3our' counsayl, lady, which shal 3ow not greue,
 3e shuld tel us, for it may so falle
 þat þe better end þat mater schalle 957
 Be browt to—for þe mo wyse hedes þer be
 In ony mater', þe better is it, as þinkyth mee." 959

Bk. II. Ch. 20.

Cam. 20m.

- "Cosyn," sche seyde, "3e preyse sor' a kyng'. 960
 But I wold wete of' you þe cause qwy
 þat o man a-boue many shal haue gouernyng',
 To byd & commaund, send both ferr' & nye;
 What is þe cause þat he hath swech maystry 964
 Ouer all men, & no man hath ouer hym—
 he his lord of' lond, of' body & of' lym? 966
 [fol. 31, b.] "In elde tyme, for stryff & for þe bate¹ 1 r. debate 967
 [2nd hand] Amongys þe puple þat reigned to & froo,
 And for to staunch bothe enuye & hate,
 ffor to haue reule, þei wer' compellyd þer-too
 To chese a leeder', hem for to gouerne thoo— 971

- "It passeth oure wyttis, there is no more to say ; 939 *Bk. II. Ch. 18.*
 Lyche on-to an Egle ye flye us alle a-boue.
 Yet in as moche as ye been a may
 And eke a queen, it falleth to *your* be-houe
 To fostre hem whiche yow drede and loue, 943
 Despyse hem not, though þat þei be dulle,
 Not lyche to yow—for ye be in the fulle, 945
 Katharine ought to hear others,
- "As I suppose, I prey god as for me, 946
 Growe ye non heyre, youre wyt is heye I-nowe.
 Thanne, thow oure wyt be not in suche degre,
 Yet oure good wil muste ye nedes allowe.
 What shal men wryte ellis and sey of yowe? 950
 That ye disdeyne the poere creature
 And haunce youre wyt oute of all mesure. 952
- "What þing letteth you þat ye wil not vs leue, 953
 And be we youre men and *your* seruauntys alle!
 Youre counseil, lady, whiche shal you not greue,
 Ye shulde telle vs, for it may soo falle
 That þe better eende the mater shalle 957
 Be browt too—for þe moo wyse heedes ther be
 In ny mater, the better it is, as thenketh me." 959
 and tell them her mind.

Cam. 19m.

Bk. II. Ch. 19.

- "C^Osyn," she seyde, "ye preyse sore a kyng. 960
 But I wolde wete of you þe cause whi
 That oon man a-boue many shal haue gouernyng,
 To bidde and commavnde, sende bothe fer and ny ;
 What is the cause that he hath swiche maystry 964
 Ouere alle men, and no man hath ouere hym—
 he is lord of lond, of body and of lym? 966
 Katharine puts the question how there came to be kings,
- "In oolde tyme, for stryf and for debate, 967
 A-mongis the puple that regned too and froo,
 And for to staunche bothe enuye and hate,
 ffor to haue reule, thei were compelled þer-too
 To chese a leedere, hem for to gouerne thoo— 971
 with such extravagant power?

Bk. II. Ch. 20.

- þis was þe cause why þei chose a kyng ;
 þei schuld ellys a streue for many a thyng. 973
- “ ffor qwan þer is not ellys but per' & pere, 974
 þer is non as than wyll do for othyr,
 On seyth her', an other' seyth it schall be per' ;
 þis stryffe it fallyth be-twyx brother' & brother,
 Ageyn þe sune sumtyme stryuyth þe modyr. 978
 Than wer' þei chose ryght for þis entent,
 To bryng in reule þing þat was wrong went. 980
- “ Summe wer' chose for wysdam & for wytt, 981
 Summe for strenght, summe for humanyte—
 þat I sey treuth, cronycles wytness it.
 So þan a kyng as in auctorite
 Excellyth hys puple—for þer be as wyse as he 985
 Oft-tyme seyn ryth wyth-inne hys londe.
 þan may 3e se þat all þis seruyle bonde 987
- “ Came oute of fredam—þe puple was sume-tyme fre 988
 And had noo lord, but ych man reuled hym-selfe.
 þus cam þei þan oute of her' liberte,
 Be her' fre choys ten of hem or twelue
 Wer' draw a-wey, þei schuld noo lenger' delue 992
 Ne do no labour', but reule þe cuntre a-bowte ;
 And to her' heed hem-self 3et must [þei]¹ lowte. ¹ om. 994
- “ But for 3e wyll allgate know myn hert, 995
 Whath þat I thynk, I tell 3ow platt & pleyñ :
 þer schall neuyr man, be he neuyr so smert
 Ne eke so st[r]ong, wyne me, þat is to seyn
 haue me to spowse—I wyll no lenger' feyn— 999
 But if he be so strong hym-self a-lone
 þat he be able to fyght wyth all hys fone. 1001
- “ Thys is þe ende, & þis my wyll now is, 1002
 let vs no mor' as in þis mater' speke.
 So god my soule bryng on-to hys blys,

This was þe cause whi þei chose a kyng ;
 Thei shulde ellis a streuen for many a thyng. 973

*Bk. II. Ch. 19.*Kings were
chosen

“ffor whanne there is not ellis but peere and peere, 974

There is non) as than) wil doon) for other,

Oon seyth here, another seyth it shal be there ;

This stryf it falleth be-twyxe brother and brother,

A-geyn) the sone somtyme stryueþ þe moder. 978

Thanne were thei chosyn) ryght for þis entent,

To brynge in rewle thyng þat was wrong went. 980

only to set
wrong, right.

“Some were chosyn) for wysdam and for wyt, 981

Some for strengthe, and some for humanyte—

That I sey treuthe, cronyclis witnesseth it.

Soo thanne a kyng as in Auctoryte

Excelleth his puple—for there been as wys as he 985

Ofte-tyme seyn) ryght wythinne his loond.

Thanne may ye see þat all this seruyte boond 987

“Cam oute of fredam—the puple was sumtyme free 988

Folk were
first free,

And had no lord, but iche man) reuled hym-selue.

Thus cam) thei thanne oute of her liberte,

Be her fre choys ten) of hem or twelue

Were drawe a-wey, þei shuld no lenger delue 992

and then
gave up their
liberty.

Ne doo no labour, but reule the contre aboute ;

And to her hed hem-selue yet muste þei loute. 994

“But for ye wil algates knowe myn) herte, 995

What þat I thenke, I telle yow plat and pleyn) :

There shal neuere man), be he neuere so smerte

Ne eke so strong, wyne me, þat is to seyn)

haue me to spouse—I wil no lenger feyn)— 999

she will
never wed.

But if he be soo strong hym)-self allone

That he be able to feyghte with alle his fone. 1001

“This is the eende, and this my wil now is, 1002

Lete vs no more as in this mater speke.

Soo god my soule brynge on-to his blys,

Let no more
be said to
her about
Marriage.

Bk. II. Ch. 20.

þis couenaund made ne schall I neuyr breke.
 3e may well carp, stryue, clatyr & creke ; 1006
 Whan all is doo, þis schall be þe ende ;
 3our wordys þerfer^r lett hem fall fro meende." 1008

*Bk. II. Ch. 21.*Ca^m. 21^m.

Than was þer^r woo & waylyng eke enowe, 1009
 þei morned alle & made mekyl mone
 Whan þat þei sey wher^r-to þe mater^r drowe,
 Carefull wytys wer^r þei than ilkone.
 þe qween, hyr^r modyr, gan^r to syghe & grone, 1013
 Sche seyð : "doghtyr, þis is noght 3our awayle,
 Put not 3our purpos in swych grete perayle ! 1015
 "3our dotyng-dayes, I trow, now be come ! 1016
 What wold 3e hafe ? wote 3e qwat 3e say ?
 Thorow-oute þis werlde, in grece ne in rome
 Is no swych man¹ þat þis thyng do may, ^{1 r. woman ?}
 Schuld kepe a londe of so gret aray 1020
 And he a-lone. what wene 3e for to hafe ?
 It is impossible þat 3e desyr^r and crafe. 1022
 "A-vyse 3ow bettyr, & take an other^r day, 1023
 Tyll þat 3our wytte is chaunged & 3our thowte !
 Is 3our wysdam now turned to swech aray
 ffor to desyr^r swych þing as is nowte ?
 Cursyd be þei þat 3ow her^r-to browte, 1027
 On-to þis errour^r to do as no man dothe ;
 þat euery poynt þei varye fro þe sothe." 1029

*Bk. II. Ch. 22.*Ca^m. 22^m.

"**M**Adame," sche seyð, "þis þing wech I schall doo
 I not who sett it in myn hert, treuly. 1031
 It is so fast, I may not fle þer-froo,
 It cleuyth so sor^r, it wyll not slyde for-by,
 Wheythyr^r I goo, sytte, knele or elles ly ; 1034
 ffor noo counseyll I may it not for-sake,
 Ne for noo crafte a-wey I can it schake." 1036

This conuenaunt made shal I neuere breke. Bk. II. Ch. 19.
 Ye may weel karpe, stryue, clatere, and creke¹; 1006
 Whanne al is doo, this shal be the ende; ¹ MS. treke
 Youre wordis therfore lete hem falle fro meende." 1008

Ca^m. 20^m.

Bk. II. Ch. 20.

Thanne was ther woo and weylyng eke I-now, 1009
 Thei moorned alle and made mekel mone
 Whan þat þei saugh wherto the mater drow,
 Careful wyghtis were thei thanne ilkone. Katharine's
Mother
 The queen, hir moder, gan to sey and grone, 1013
 She seyde: "doughter, þis is not youre awayle,
 Putte not youre purpos in swiche grete perayle! 1015
 "Youre dotynge-dayes, I trowe, now be come! 1016
 What wolde ye haue? wote ye what ye say?
 Thurgh-oute this world, in grece ne in Rome
 Is noon swiche man þat þis thyng doo may, says that no
man even
could rule the
Land alone.
 Shulde keepe a lond of soo grete aray 1020
 And he allone. what wene ye for to haue?
 It is impossible that ye desyre and craue. 1022 Katharine
can't.
 "Avyse yow bettere, and take another day, 1023 Let her wait
till she's
changed her
mind.
 Til þat youre wit is chaunged and youre thought!
 Is youre wysdam now turned to swiche aray
 ffor to desyre swyche þing as is nought?
 Cursed be thei that you here-to han brought, 1027
 On-to this errour to doo as no man dooth! ¹ corr.
 What¹-euere thei poynt, ye varye euere for¹ sooth." 1029

MAdame," she seyde, "this thyng whiche I shal doo
 I not hoo seet it in myn herte, truly. 1031
 It is soo fast, I may not flee ther-froo,
 It cleueth soo sore, it wil not slyde forby,
 Whether I goo, sytte, knele or ellys ly; 1034
 ffor no counseil I may it not for-sake,
 Ne for [no] craft a-wey I can it shake." 1036

Katharine
sticks to her
purpose.

Bk. II. Ch. 23.

Cam. 23m.

Than wept þe qween) & was in car' & woo, 1037
 And to þe lordes sche sayd : " all is I-lorn),
 What schall we say, what schall we speke or doo ?
 I wayle þe tyme þat euyr sche was born).
 hyr hert is harde & tow as is¹ þe thorn), ^{1 overlined.} 1041
 hyr wytte is sett so hye I wot not qwer';
 þer is no man þat may hyr her' answe're. 1043
 "What sey 3e, cosyn), lord & duk of tyr' ? 1044
 What comyth herof ? can 3e owte ferther' say ?
 ffor as wyth me, dunne is in þe myre,
 Sche hath me stoynd & browte me [to] a-bay.
 Sche wyll not wedde, sche wyll be styll a may ! 1048
 It schall cause my deth, but mech soner', loo,
 Be-cause I leue þus in swech car' & woo." 1050

Bk. II. Ch. 24.

Cam. 24m.

Than roos þis lord, em to þe qween), 1051
 Gaufron) he hyght, he was her' omager',
 And duke of tyre—mech þing had he seen),
 he had passed eke many a grete daunger';
 he was þe next of hyr kynrod ther', 1055
 he myght mor' boldly sey all hys entent.
 "Madame," he seyde, "a þing þat was neuer ment 1057
 "What ayles 3ow þat 3e desyr' so sore, 1058
 And 3e so jung, & wys woman alsoo ?
 A þing þat lawe for-bedyth euyr-mor';
 Natur' eke wyll 3eue no leue þer-too—
 þis 3e desyr', 3e wyll not twynn) þer-froo. 1062
 What is 3our' wyll ? I wolde wyte qwat 3e mene.
 Wyll 3e 3our' bodye fro alle men kepe clene ? 1064
 "What boote was it to vs þat 3e wer' born), 1065
 If þat 3e wyll not do ryght as þei dede,
 I mene 3our' ffadyr & modyr 3ow be-form' ?

Ca^m. 21^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 21.*

- T**hanne wepte þe queen and was in care and woo, 1037 Her Mother
weeps,
 And to the lordes she seyde : “al is I-lorn),
 What shal we say, what shal we speke or doo?
 I wayle the tyme that euere she was born).
 hir herte is hard and tough as is the thorn), 1041
 hir wyt is sette so hye I wot not where ;
 There is no man that may here hir answeere. 1043
 “What seye ye, cosyen), lord and duke of Tyre? 1044 and appeals
to the Duke
of Tyre.
 What cometh here-of? can) ye owte ferthere say?
 ffor as wyth me, dun is in the myre,
 She hath me stoynd and brought me to a bay.
 She wil not wedde, she wil be styлле a may ! 1048
 It shal cause my deeth, but meche sonnere loo,
 Be-cause I leue thus in suche care and woo.” 1050

Ca^m. 22^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 22.*

- T**hanne ros the lord, eem) on-to the queen), 1051 Gaufron,
Duke of Tyre,
her Uncle,
 Gaufron) he hyght, he was hir homagere,
 And duke of Tyre—moche þing he had seen),
 he had passed eke many a gret daungere ;
 he was the nexte of hir kenerede there, 1055
 he myght more boldely seyn al his entent.
 “Madame,” he seyde, “a thyng þat was neuere ment, 1057
 “What eyleth you þat ye desire soo sore, 1058 argues with
Katharine.
 And ye so yong and wyse woman) alsoo?
 A þing þat lawe forbedeth euer-more ;
 Nature eke wil yeue no leue ther-too—
 This ye desyre, ye wil not twynne therfroo. 1062
 What is youre wil? I wold wete what ye mene.
 Wyl ye youre body fro alle men) kepe clene? 1064 Does Katha-
rine mean to
keep herself
from men?
 “What boote was it to us þat ye were born), 1065
 If þat ye wil not doo ryght as thei dede,
 I mene youre fader and moder yow be-forn)? How would
she be here

- Bl. II. Ch. 24.* 3e had not come ne sote (!) now in þis stede,
 had not 3our modyr' wyth mech care & drede 1069
 Browt 3ow forth & to þis lyght 3ow bore.
 ffolow 3e þe steppys of hem þat went be-fore ! 1071
 "3e do wrong ellys on-to þo chyldryn alle 1072
 Wech 3e ar' lykly to bryng forthe & bere.
 W^hat desese & what myschefe may falle
 But if 3e do þus, I trow your-self wot ner'.
 To put all þis thyng oute of drede & fere, 1076
 And þat þis synne in 3ow schuld not be sene,
 A kynges doghtyr to dey bothe mayd & qween), 1078
 "I counsell 3ow þis, & 3e receyue it wold : 1079
 To fle þis chauns of feyned chastite.
 hewe not so hye but if 3e may it holde,
 Desyr' no thyng þat may not goten be—
 Lerneth þis lesson), if þat 3e lyst, of me ; 1083
 Sche is not born), me thynkyth, þat myght wynne
 To grype a degre so grete as 3e be-gynne." 1085

*Bl. II. Ch. 25.*Cam. 25^m.

- "**V**Ncle," sche seyð, "& þat wer' me full lothe 1086
 To clyme so hye þat I myght not come down);
 ffor, as I wene, þat mater' wold greue us bothe,
 And lese our' londe be cyte & eke be town);
 It wer' destruceyon eke to our' crown). 1090
 God he lede vs þat we come not ther',
 To ley our' worchep so lowe vndyr brere ! 1092
 "But for 3e say, to me it schuld be ioye 1093
 To hafe a lord schuld gouern both 3ow & me,
 I sey 3ow nay, it schulde be but a-noye
 On-to myn hert. for if it wer' so þat he
 Wer' louyng & gentyll, & all hys hert on me, 1097
 þat he louyd me & I hym best of alle,
 What sorow, hope 3e, on-to myn hert schuld falle 1099

Ye had not come ne sete now in þis stede,
 had not *your* moder with moche care and drede 1069 *Bk. II. Ch. 22.*
 Brought yow foorth and to this lyght you bore. *if her Mother*
 ffolwe ye þe steppys of hem þat wente be-fore ! 1071 *hadn't*
brought her
forth?

“Ye doo wrong ellis on-to tho children alle 1072 *Chastity is a*
 Whiche ye arn lykely to brynge foorth and bere. *sin against*
 What disese and what myschef may falle *the unborn,*
 But if ye thus doo, I trowe youre-self wot neere, *and im-*
 To putte alle these thyngis in drede and¹ fere. 1076 *possible.*
 And þat þis synne in yow shuld not be seene, ¹ orig. and in
 A kyngis doughter to dey bothe mayde and queene, 1078

“I counseilh you thus, and ȝe¹ receyue it wolde : 1079 *She should*
 To flee this chauns of feyned chastyte. ¹ overlined. *give up this*
 hewe not so hye but if ye may it holde, *feign'd chas-*
 Desyre no thyng that may not goten be— *tity.*
 Lerne this lesen, iff þat ye list, of me ; 1083
 She is not bore, me thynketh, that myght wynne
 To gryppe of degree so grete as ye be-gynne.” 1085

Cam. 23m.

Bk. II. Ch. 23.

“Vncle,” she seyde, “and that were me ful looth 1086 *Katharine*
 To clymbe so hye that I myght not com down) ; *answers her*
 ffor, as I wene, that mater wolde greue vs booth, *Uncle.*
 And lese oure lond be Cyte and be toun) ;
 It were grete destruccyon eke to oure croun. 1090
 God he lede vs that we come not there,
 To ley oure wurshype soo lowe vnder brere ! 1092

“But for ye sey, to me it shulde be Ioye 1093 *Katharine*
 To haue a lord shulde gouerne bothe yow and me, *says,*
 I sey yow nay, it shulde be but a-noye
 On-to myn herte. for if it were soo þat hee
 Were lovyng and gentyl and al his herte on me, 1097 *if she lov'd her*
 That he loued me and I hym beste of alle, *Husband,*
 What sorwe, hope ye, on myn hert shuld falle 1099

Bk. II. Ch. 25.

"If þat he deyð or ellys wer' slayn in felde, 1100
 And I for-go þat þing þat I loued best?
 'It myght fall also, thow it hap but selde,
 þat þis loue be-twyx vs too myth brest
 And part a-sundyr²—þis wer' a full hard rest 1004
 On-to our' hert! þer-for³, to put alle oute of dowte,
 I wyll not enter, wyll¹ I may kepe me owte. ¹ = whil 1106
 "What counsell 3e me swech game to be-gynne 1107
 Whech is not stedfast, in lowe ne in astate?
 In all her' gladeness sorow is eyr wyth-inne,
 And wyth her' plesaunce eft medeleth debate.
 þer-for' þat lyfe I dispyce & hate 1111
 þat hath noo sewyrte, but eyr is variable;
 I wold hafe lyffe & loue¹ þat eyr is stable." ¹ MS. lond

Bk. II. Ch. 26.

Cam. 26m.

"O Mercy godd," seyð þe gret baldake— 1114
 he was þoo lord & prince of palestyne—
 "þer' may no man my lady grype ne take,
 her' craft is swech, we may her' not enclyne;
 þer is no philosophyr' ne ek noo diuine 1118
 Whech sche dredyth, hyr' termys be so wyse;
 What-eyr we say, sche 3euyth of it no pryce. 1120
 "I sey 3ow, madame, as it is seyð be-fore: 1121
 We want a leeder, if we owte schuld doo.
 Be-thynk 3our-self, fro tyme þat 3e wer' bore
 To gorgalus tyme—thre hundred 3er' & moo
 It is, certeyn, & 3et stod it neuyr soo 1125
 As it' stant now, madame, in no lond of 3our'.
 Of þing þat 3e reioye we schall hafe langour." 1127

Bk. II. Ch. 27.

Cam. 27m.

"Q wat wold 3e hafe?" seyð þis noble qween, 1128
 "haue 3e not 3oue to me bothe crown & londe?
 I am 3our lady, my subiectis all 3e been).

"If þat he deyed or ellis were slayn in feeld, 1100 *Bk. II. Ch. 23.*
 And I for-goo þat thyng that I loued beste? and he died,
 It myght falle soo, though it happed but seeld,
 That this loue be-twyxe vs to myght breste
 And parte a-sondre—this were a ful harde reste 1104 it would
 On-to oure herte! therfore, to putte aft oute of dowte, wring her
 I wyl not entre whil I may kepe me oute. 1106 heart.

"What counseil 3e me suche game to be-gynne 1107 Love is not
 Whiche is not stedfast, in lowe ne in astate? steadfast, nor
 In al her gladnesse sorwe is euere wyth-Inne, without
 And wyth her plesauns efte medeleth debate. alloy.
 Therfore that lyf I despyse and hate 1111 She will have
 That hath no suerte, but euere is varyable; 1 MS. lond no changing
 I wolde haue lyf and loue¹ that euere is stable." 1113 life.

Cam. 24^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 24.*

"O Mercyful god," seyde the grete baldake— 1114 Baldake,
 he was tho lord and prynce of palestyn— Prince of
 "There may no man my lady gripe ne take, Palestine,
 hir craft is suche, we may hir not enclyn);
 There is no philisophre ner eke dyvyn 1118
 Whiche she dredeth, hir termes be so wys;
 What-euere we say, she yeueth of it no prys. 1120 says Katha-
 rine won't
 attend to
 them.

"I sey yow, madame, as it is seyde be-fore : 1121 Prince Bal-
 We wante a leedere, if we owte shulde doo. dake says
 Be-thenke your-self, fro þat tyme that ye were bore they want a
 To gorgalus tyme—thre hundred yeer and moo leader.
 It is, certeyn, and yet stood it neuere soo 1125
 As it stant now, madame, in no lond of youre.
 Of thing þat ye reioie we shal haue langoure." 1127

Cam. 25^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 25.*

"What wolde ye haue?" seyde this noble queen, 1128 Katharine
 "haue ye not youe to me bothe croune and loonde? says she is
 I am youre lady, my subiectis alle ye been. queen;

Bk. II. Ch. 27.

I wot full wele what longyth to þe bonde
 Of regalte whech I hold in myn honde. 1132
 ffor euery werk, sothely, it stant in too :
 In good counsell & eke in werkyng alsoo. 1134
 “The wytt & counceH, syr, þat schall be our, 1135
 We schall telle who we¹ wyll hafe it wrowte ; ¹ MS. 3e
 And all¹ þe labour' & werke þat schall be 3our'— ¹ MS. all?
 3our' grete lordchype 3e schul nogt haue for nout3 !
 þe lond of palestyne it was neuyr to 3ow boute, 1139
 It was 3oue 3our' eldres 3ow be-fore
 To serue my crown : & þer-to be 3e swore.” 1141

Bk. II. Ch. 28.

Cam. 28m.

Than spake a-nothyr, lord of nychopolye, 1142
 he seyð wordys whech sempt full wyse—
 hys name was called þoo syr' Eugeny—
 To þe qween he spake þan ryght on þis wyse :
 “þe estate of regalte is of swych a pryce, 1146
 Ther may no man, sothly, to it atteyne
 But if he hath both power' & wytte, certeyne. 1148
 “Therfor sey I 3ett þat we nedys muste 1149
 Be rewled be on whech þat hath þeis too,
 Boþe wytt in sadnesse, & power' eke in lust,
 And elles our' reule sone wyll breke in-two.
 As other' londys ar' rewled, let vs be reulyd soo ; 1153
 Let vs suppose þei be as wyse¹ as we. ¹ MS. as wyse as wyse
 for þus he wrytyth, þe astronomer' tholome : 1155
¹ MS. neybour)
 “ ‘Who-so wyll not doo as hys neybour[s]¹ werk, 1156
 Ne wyll not be war' be hem' whan þei do amys,
 Of hym schul other' men boþe carp & berke,
 And sey, be-holde þis man, lo [he]¹ it is— ¹ om.
 Wheythyr he do weel or wheyther' he do amys. 1160
 he wyll none exaample of other' men i-take,
 Exaample to othyr' mene he schall be for þat sake. 1162

- I wot ful weel what longeth to the boonde
Of regalte whiche I holde in myn honde. 1132 *Bk. II. Ch. 25.*
- ffor euery werk, soothly, it stant in too :
In good counseil and eke in werkyng also. 1134 *all work needs
1. counsel,
2. carrying-
out.*
- “The wyt and counseil, syr, þat shal ben oure,
We shal telle how we wil haue it wrought ;
And al the labour and werk that shal be youre—
youre grete lordshepe ye shul not haue for nought !
The lond of palestyn it was neuere to yow bought, 1139
It was yove youre olderis¹ here-be-fore ^{1 orig. elderis}
To serue my croune : and ther-to be ye swore.” 1141 *She'll do the
counsel.*
- The lords
should do the
carrying-out.*

Ca^m. 26^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 26.*

- T**hanne spak a-nother, lord of Nychop[o]ly,
he seyde wordys whiche sempte ful wise—
his name was called tho syr Eugeny—
To the queen he spak þanne ryght on þis gyse :
“The astate of regalte is of suche apryse, 1142 *Sir Eugenius
of Nichopolis*
- There may no man, sothly, to it atteyne
But he haue bothe pouer and wytte, certeyne. 1146 *then argues
with Katha-
rine.*
- “Therefore sey I yet that we nedes must¹ or, muste 1149 *A ruler needs
not only wit,
but power.*
- Be rewled be on whiche þat hath these too,
Bothe witte in sadnesse, and pouer in lust,¹ ^{1 or. luste}
And ellis oure rewle shal breke and asunder goo.
As other londes arn rewled, lete vs be rewled soo ; 1153 *The example
of other na-
tions should
be followd*
- Lete vs suppose thei be as wys as we.
ffor thus he wryteth, the Astronomer tholome : 1155
- ^{1 MS. neybour}
“ho-so wil not doo as his neybour[s]¹ werke, 1156
- Ne wil not be war be hem whan thei doo amys,
Of hym shul othere men bothe carpe and berke,
And sey, beholde this man, loo he it is—
Whether he doo weel or wheder he doo other-wys. 1160
- he wyl non example of other men I-take,
Exaample to other men he shal be for þat sake. 1162

Bk. II. Ch. 28.

“ ‘ All opir’ mene schul be war’ be hyme, 1163
 ffor þei schul se & fele in hem-selue
 þat hys werkys wer’ bothe derk & dyme.’
 Therfor, madame, what schuld I lenger’ delue
 In þis mater’? me thynkyth, ten or twelue 1167
 Schuld 3eue exauple, rather’ þan schall oone.
 3e haue my mocyon), for my tale is doone.” 1169

Bk. II. Ch. 29.Ca^m. 29^m.

The qween) full sadly answerd to þis lord : 1170
 “ I wold wyte,” sche seyde, “ of 3ow, whyll 3e be her’,
 And alle, I trowe, to-gyder’ mote a-corde :
 If þat I dede þis tyme at 3our’ prayer’,
 To leue my wyll & put me in daunger’, 1174
 I sett cas, þe man whech þat I schall chese
 To be 3our’ lord, þat he haue non of þese, 1176
 “ That is to sey neythyr wytte ne strength,¹ ^{1 orig. strength}
 What sey 3e now, who schall reule 3ow than, 1178
 3our’ londys þat ly so fer’ in brede & length?
 þe febyll may nott, þe fool eke ne can)
 Demene swyche þing ; þan wyll 3e curs & bane 1181
 þat eyr wer’ 3e subiectys to sweche a foole,
 And to 3our’ hert it wolde be full grete dole. 1183
 “ 3e schuld be fayn) þan for to reule hyme, 1184
 To counsell & rede þat he do not amys.
 þis wer’ noo worchepe to me ne to my kyn)!
 And sekyrly, a full grete cause it is
 þat I wedde nowte, for owte of ioie & blys 1188
 Schuld I þan passe & make my-selue a thralle.
 held me excused, for sykyrly I ne schalle. 1190
 “ ffor syth 3e sey þat I am now so wys, 1191
 Than haue I o þing whech longeth to regalte.
 þer is no man but if he be ouyr-nys,
 But if¹ he wyll sey & held wyth me ^{1 if on the margin.}
 þat it is bettyr, whan it non) other’ wyll be, 1195

- “ ‘ Alle othere men shul be war be hym,
 ffor thei shul see and fele in hem-selue
 That his werkys were bothe deerke and dym.’
 Therefore, madame, what shulde I lenger delue
 In thys mater? me thenketh, ten or twelue
 Shulde yeue exaample rathere þan shal oon.
 Ye haue myn mocyon, for my tale is doon.”
- 1163 *Bk. II. Ch. 26.*
 1167
 1169 rather than
 one woman's
 whims.

Cam. 27.

Bk. II. Ch. 27.

- T**he queen ful sadly answerde to this lord :
 “ I wolde wyte of yow,” she seyde, “ whil ye ben here,
 And alle, I trowe, to-gedere mote acord :
 If þat I dede this tyme of youre prayere,
 To leue my wyl and putte me in daungere,
 I sette cas, the man whiche þat I shal chese
 To be youre lord, þat he haue noon of these,
 “ That is to sey neyther witte ne strengthe,
 What sey ye now, hoo shal reule you than,
 Youre londes þat lyn soo fer in brede and lengthe?
 The feble may not, the fool eke ne kan
 Demene suche þing; than wil ye curse and ban
 That euere were ye subiectis to swyche a fool,
 And to youre hertis it wold been ful gret dool.
 “ Ye shulde be fayn thanne for to reule hym,
 To counseyll and rede that he dede not amys.
 This were no worshep to me ne to my kyn!
 And sekylly a ful gret cause it is
 That I wedde not, for oute of Ioye and blys
 Shulde I thanne passe and make my-self a thral.
 helde me excused, for sekylly I ne shal.
 ‘ ffor syth ye sey that I am now so wys,
 Thanne haue I on thyng whiche longeth to regalte.
 There is no man, but he be ouere-nys,
 But he wyl sey and helde wyth me
 That [it] is better, whanne it no other wil bee,
- 1170 Katharine
 answers Sir
 Eugenius of
 Nichopolis.
 1174
 1176
 1177 Suppose she
 marries a
 stupid or
 weak man,
 1181 her folk 'll
 curse him.
 1183
 1184 They'd have
 to rule him.
 1188
 1190 She will be
 free.
 1191
 1195

Bk. II. Ch. 29. To chese þe on þan for to want bothe.
 Chese 3e now ; we be no lenger' wrothe." 1197

Bk. II. Ch. 30.

Cam. 30m.

3 Et gan to knele eft be-for þe qween 1198
 Bothe mayster & duke of Athenes þat cyte ;

Mayster he was in scole & long had been,
 And duke I-chose be þe puple þoo was he—
 ffor her' choys þer' as þan was fre 1202

To haue qwat man, whech hem lyked to heed.
 þus in hys tale be-gan he [in] þat steed : 1204

" We supposyd, lady, euyr on-to þis tyme 1205

þat 3e had come of þat gentyll bloode
 Of 3our modyr, descendyd down be lyne,
 And of 3our fadyr þat was ful gentyll & good.
 But our' opynyon is chaunged & our' moode, 1209
 ffor, as it semyth, 3e ar' no-þing of kyne ;
 And if 3e wer', 3e coude not cese ne blyne 1211

" To folow þe steppes of 3our elderys be-for', 1212

As grayn reall growyn oute of her' grounde—
 ffor natur' wolde, thow 3e þe reuers had swore,
 þat 3e wer' lych hem, certeyn, in euery stownnde ;
 And in our' Philosophye, I hope, þus it is founde 1216
 þat naturally þe braunch oute of þe rote
 Schall tak hys sauour', be it sour' or swote. 1218

" fferthermore 3et sey our' bokys þus : 1219

' þat euery lych hys lych he schall desyre.'
 Be all þese menes it semeth þan to vs :
 Eyther 3e cam neuyr duly to þis empyr',
 Or ellys 3our hert dyspysyth ioye as myr'. 1223
 I can no mor', I speke on-curteslye,
 I may not chese, I am so vexed, trulye." 1225

To chese the on) than for to wante bothe.
Chese ye now ; we be no lengere wrothe."

Bk. II. Ch. 27.

1197

Cam. 28m.

Bk. II. Ch. 28.

Y et gan to knele efte be-fore the queen),
Bothe mayster and duke of athenes þat citee ;

1198

The Duke of Athens argues with Katharine.

Mayster he was in scole and longe had been),
And duke I-chose be the puple tho was hee—

ffor her choys there and thanne was free

1202

To haue what man), whiche hem lyked to hed.

Thus in his tale be-gan) he in that steed :

1204

"We supposed, lady, euere on)-to this tyme

1205

That ye had come of that gentyl blood

Of youre moder, descendet down) be lyne,

And of your fader þat was ful gentil and good.

But oure oppynyon) is chaunged and oure mood,

1209

ffor, as it semeth, ye arn) no-thing of kyn) ;

And if ye were, ye cowde not sece and blyn)

1211

"To folwe þe steppes of youre olderis be-forn),

1212

As greyn) real growen) oute of her grounde—

ffor nature wolde, þough ye the reuers had sworn),

That ye were lyche hem in euery stounde ;

And in oure philosophie, I hope, thus is it founde

1216

That naturally the braunche oute of þe rote

Shal take his sauour, be it soure be it swote.

1218

"ffurthermore yet seyn) oure bookis thus :

1219

'That euery liche his lyche shal desyre.'

Like ought to follow like.

Be alle these menes it semeth þan to vs :

Eyther ye cam neuer dewly to þis empyre,

Or ellis youre herte despiseth ioye as myre.

1223

I can no more, I speke on-curteysely,

I may not chese, I am) so vexed, trewly."

1225

- O**N-to þe duk þus answerd þoo þe qween): 1226
 “3e make a reson of ful gret apparens,
 3e schew full wele wher þat 3e hafe been):
 In þe grete nest of bysy dylygens,
 Wher’ stody & wytt is in experiens, 1230
 I mene Athenes—of wysdam it beryth þe key;
 Who will oute lerne, lat hym tak þidyr þe wey. 1232
 “But neuyrþelasse, thow þat 3e be endewyd 1233
 Wyth werdly wysdam & can all þing pleynty,
 So þat 3e may wyth no sophym be pursewyd:
 3et to 3our motyff answer’ þus may I,
 And voyd 3our’ resoun well & pregnantly, 1237
 If 3e wyll her’ & take entent to me.
 ffor if men take heed, oft-tyme þei may se 1239
 “Owte of a tre growyng dyuerse frute, 1240
 And þat same tre þat sumetyme bar’ þe grene,
 Now bereth he reed or qwyte, of dyuerse sute.
 Be þis example pleynty þus I mene:
 My modyr is, & so am I, a qween), 1244
 In þis we a-cord; & þat I am a may,
 In þat we dyuerse, I can not þer-to sey nay. 1246
 “It semeth me þat lych a griff am I, 1247
 I-planted be god vp-on an elde stoke,
 Of an oper kynde, an othyr sauour’ hardyly;
 And euene as be miracle þe elde blok,
 Wech is clouyn in four’ wyth many a knok, 1251
 Schall rather folow þe gryff, þan þe gryff hym,
 So faryth it be me & be my elder kyn): 1253
 “Thei schul rather consent to leue all sole 1254
 As I do now, þan schall I¹ folow hem). ^{1 r. I schall}
 ffor certeynly, I kepe not of þat scole
 Wher’ þat her’ ioye is, but lych a drem)
 ffarwell ffadyr, ffarwell modyr & eem, 1258

Ca^m. 29^m.*Bk. II. Ch. 29.*

- O**N-to the duke þus answered tho þe queen: 1226 Katharine
 “Ye make a reson of ful grete apparens, answers the
 Ye shewe ful weel where þat ye haue ben), Duke of
 In the grete neste of besy diligens, Athens.
 Where stody and wytte is in experiens, 1230
 I mene athenes—of wysdam it bereth the keye ;
 ho wil owte lerne, lete hym take thedir þe weye. 1232
 “But neuerthelesse, thow þat ye be endwed 1233
 Wyth werdly wisdam) and kan) aȝ thyng trewly,
 Soo þat ye may with no sophym) be pursewed :
 Yet to youre motyf answee thus may I,
 And voyde youre reson) weel and pregauntly, 1237 She will upset
 If ye wele here and take entent to me. his reasons.
 ffor if men) taken heed, often-tyme may þei see 1239
 “Oute of oo tre growyng dyuers frute, 1240
 And þat same tree that somtyme baar the grene,
 Now beryth he reed or white, or of dyuers sute. Katharine
 Be þis exaample pleynty thus I mene : says
 My moder is, and so am I, a queene, 1244
 In this we a-coorde ; and in þat I am a may,
 In that we dyuers, I can) not ther-to sey nay. 1246
 “It semeth me þat liche a gryf am I, 1247 she is like a
 I-planted be god vp-on) a old stok, graft on an
 Of another keende, a-nother savour hardly ; old stock.
 And euene as be myracle þe olde blok,
 Whiche is clouen) in foure with many a knok, 1251
 Shal rathere folwe the gryffe, than) þe gryffe hym),
 Soo fareth it be me¹ and be myn) oldere kyn): ¹overlined. 1253
 “Thei shul rathere consente to lyve al soole 1254 She will not
 As I doo now, than) I shal folwe hem. be married,
 ffor certeynly I kepe not of þat scoole
 Where þat her ioye is, but lyke to a drem) but live
 ffar-weel, fadir, farweel, moder and em), single. 1258

Bk. II. Ch. 31. Whan þat her' counsell is not profitable ;
I take swych lyffe, I hope is ferm & stabyll." 1260

Bk. II. Ch. 32.

Cam. 32^m.

Q wan þei had sayd all þat euyr þei coude, 1261
þei went a-sundre & parted for a space ;
Comound her wyttys styll, & no-þing lowde,
Euyr [h]opyng & loking after grace
Of þis same mayde, if þei it myght purchase, 1265
And at a day sette þei cam to-gedyr a-geyn,
To haue an answer of hyr plat & pleyn. 1267
Thei chose a clerke to telle her' alders tale, 1268
Whech was full wys & of full grete cunnyng—
ffor uery stody hys vysage was full pale,
Alle hys delyte & ioie was in lernyng ;
Be alle her' consent he had enformyd a thyng 1272
Whech he wyll vttyr if he may owte spede,
And all is lost but sche þer-to take hede. 1274
“ffour pinges,” he seyde, “madame, be in 3ow, 1275
Whech schuld excite 3ow wedded for to be ;
If 3e commaunde, I wyll declar' hem nowe.
þe fyrst of hem is þat grete dygnyte
Of 3our bloode ryall—I trow þat þer non be 1279
In all þis werld whech is so hye a-lyed.
þe secunde also may be sone a-spyed, 1281
“ffor it is open to euery mannes eye : 1282
I mene 3our beute—god mot it preserue !
þer lyuyth no man þat euer fayrer' sy3e—
Euyr lest it tyll tyme þat 3e sterue !
þat blessed lady whech we clepe mynerue, 1286
Sche hath 3oue 3ow þe thryd þat I of sayde :
Whech is cunnyng ; it is so on 3ow layde, 1288
“It may not fall fro 3ow be no weye. 1289
And eke þe fourt is þe gret rychesse
Whech þat 3e welde, I can not tell ne seye,

Whan her counsell is not profytable ; ^{1 orig. his} *Bk. II. Ch. 29.*
 I take swyche lyf, I hope, as is¹ firme and stable." 1260

Cam. 30m.

Bk. II. Ch. 30.

Whanne thei had seyde al that euere þei cowde, 1261 Katharine's
 Thei went a-sundre and parted for a space ; lords depart,
 Comouned her wittis styлле, and no-thing lowde, commune,
 Euere hopynge and lookynge after grace
 Of this same mayde, if thei myght it purchace, 1265
 And at a day sette thei come to-gedyr a-geyn,
 To haue an answer of hir plat and pleyne. 1267 and assemble
 again for her
 answer.

Thei chose a clerk [to telle] her alderis tale, 1268 They choose
 a Clerk to
 argue for
 them.
 Whiche was ful wys and of ful grete connyng—
 ffor very stody his face was ful pale,
 Al hys delyte and ioye was in lernynge ;
 Be al her consent he had enformed a þinge 1272 The Clerk
 urges Katha-
 rine to marry,
 Whiche he wil¹ vttere if he may owte speede, ^{1 MS. wild}
 And al is lost but she therto take heede. 1274

"ffoure þingis," he seyde, "madame, ben in yow, 1275
 Whiche shulde excite you wedded for to bee ;
 If ye comaunde, I wil declare hem now.
 The firste of hem is þat grete dignyte ^{1 not—she over erasure.} 1. for her high
 lineage,
 Of youre blood rial—I trowe that not boorn his she¹ 1279
 In al þis world wich is so hy allyed.

The secunde also may bee ful soone aspyed, 1281
 "ffor it is open to euery man-is eyze : 1282

I mene youre beute—god mote it preserue ! ^{2. for her}
 Ther leueth no man that euere fairere seyze— beauty,
 Euere leste it til tyme that ye sterue !
 That blyssed lady whiche we clepe mynerue, 1286
 She hath youe yow the thredde that I sayde :
 Whiche is connyng ; it is soo on yow layde, 1288 ^{3. for her}
 knowledge,

"It may not falle fro yow be no weye. 1289
 And eke the fourthe is the grete rychesse
 Whiche þat ye welde, I can not telle ne seye, ^{4. for her}
 riches.

Bk. II. Ch. 32.

ffor, as I suppose, no man may hem gesse.

Suffyr me, lady, my resones to expresse, 1293

So þat þei may be on-to 3ow plesaunce,

And eke 3our puple, I hope, it schuld avaunce. 1295

“The fyrst of alle, as I seyð be-for’, 1296

Is 3our’ bloode, 3our reall stok & lyne,

Owte of whech 3e wer’ be-gote & bore :

þis schuld 3our hert boþe drawe & enclyne

ffor to spede our’ purpos well & fyne. 1300

Wote 3e nott welle of what lordes 3e came?

Kyng alysaundyr’, þat all þis werld wan, 1302

“Was of 3our kyn, & so was þat noble kyng 1303

Whech¹ made þis cyte, babel I mene be name,Eke many an other’ þat her’ in her’ lyuyng ^{1 þat crossed out after Wh.}

Wer’ enhaunshed hyely wyth gret fame.

Take heed her-to, for goddys sake, madame ; 1307

Syth þei weddyd wer’ & ech on had a make,

Dothe 3e þe same, for 3our’ kynrod sake ! 1309

“On þe other’ syde of 3our’ bryte beute 1310

þus dar’ I say, & I dar’ stand þer-by :

þer is no man þat eyr wyth eye 3et see

Swech an othyr as 3e be, hardly.

I flatyr not, I am non of þoo, sewyrly ; 1314

It is not presyd in noo book þat I rede.

þan sey I thus þat natur’ wyth-oute drede, 1316

“Whan sche wyll peynt, þer can no man do bettyr. 1317

ffor sche schapyth parfytely all þat euer sche dothe,

Sche is vndyr godd made be patent lettyr

hys vycere generall, if I schall sey sothe,

To 3eue mankynd bothe nase, eye, & tothe 1321

Of what schape þat hyr lykyth to 3eue,

And of hyr werk no man hyr to repreue. 1323

“Sche hath 3oue, lady, ryght on-to 3our persone 1324

3our’ bryght colour & fayr’ schap eke wyth-alle,

- ffor, as I suppose, no man may hem gesse. Bk. II. Ch. 30.
- Suffre me, lady, my reson es to expresse, 1293
- Soo þat þei may bee on-to you plesauns,
- And eke youre puple I hope it shuld avauns. 1295
- “The firste of alle, as I seyde before, 1296
- Youre blood, youre ryal stook and lyne,
- Oute of whiche ye were be-gote and bore,
- This shulde youre herte bothe drawe and enclyne
- ffor to spedyn oure purpos weele and fyne. 1300
- Wote ye not weel of what lordes ye cam?
- Kyng Alysandre, that al thys word wan, 1302 Alexander
- “Was of youre kyn, and so was þat noble kyng 1303
- Whiche made þis citee, babel I mene be name,
- Eke many an other in er lyuyng
- Were enhaunced hyly wyth ryght grete fame.
- Taketh heed her-to, for goddys sake, madame; 1307
- Syth thei wedded were and iche had a make,
- Dooth ye the same, for youre kenredes sake! 1309 She should marry.
- “On the other syde of youre bryght beute 1310
- Thus dar I seye, and I dar stande ther-by:
- There is¹ noman that euere with eye yet see 1 overlined. She is very beautiful.
- Suche an other as ye be, hardyly.
- I flather not, I am noon of tho suerly; 1314
- It is not preyed in ony book þat I reede.
- Thanne sey I thus þat nature with-oute dreede, 1316
- “Whanne she whil poynte, þer can no man doo better.
- ffor she shapeth parfyghtly al þat euere she dooth, 1318 Nature has given her
- She is vnder god made be patent letter
- his viker general, if I shal sey sooth,
- To yeve mankeende bothe nase, eye and tooth, 1321
- Of what shap þat hir lyketh to yeue,
- And of hir werk no man hir to repreue. 1323
- “She hath youe, lady, ryght on-to youre persone 1324
- Youre bryght colour and fayr shap ryght wyth-al, colour and shape,

Bk. II. Ch. 32.

- To þis entent 3e schuld not leue a-lone,
 But wyth charyte departe þis 3yfte 3e schall.
 But 3e do þus, 3e may sone haue a faß, 1328
 ffior sche may take þing þat sche 3afe, certayn,
 And doth allday fro hem þat ar' dysdayn), 1330
- " Whech can not thank hyr' of hyr hye grace. 1331
 þerfor', madame, taketh heed her-to, I pray,
 lese not 3our holde, lese not 3our purchase,
 lete mekenesse dwelle wyth swych a fresch may !
 þan schall we sykyrly of 3ow syng & say 1335
 þat all is well, ryght as we wold it haue.
 fferþermor', so godd my sowle mote saue, 1337
- " I trow, þow natur' had coupled in o persone 1338
 All hyr 3yftis—as, if sche wyll, sche kan),
 Than trowe I welle 3e haue hem all a-lone.
 Of 3our' charyte þan take to 3ow sume man),
 lete hym haue parte of swech þing as 3e han) ! 1342
 Swech goodely 3yftis wold not euer be hyd—
 If natur' wer' her', þe same sche wold byd. 1344
- " And for þe thryd poynt in whech I 3ow commende,
 Whych is 3our wysdam & 3our gret lernyng : 1346
 3our' wyttys ar' swech, þer can no man amende
 3our' conceytes hye, for, if 3e had a kyng,
 he myght ful well trost in 3our cunnyng, 1349
 Thow he hym-self had not as 3e haue.
 And as me þinkyth, 3our soule can 3e not saue 1351
- " But if 3e comoun þis 3yfte to other' mene— 1352
 It is not 3oue 3ow to haue it all a-lone.
 þe fyrst meuer', as our' bokes vs ken),
 Whech syttyth a-boue þe sterres in hys trone,
 he 3euyth sume man more wysdham be hys one 1356
 þan haue xx^{ti}, only for þis entent
 þat he to other' schall comon þat godd hym sent. 1358

- To this entent ye shulde not lyue allone,
 But with charyte departe this yifte ye shal.
 But ye doo thus, ye may soone haue a fal, 1328
 ffor she may take thyng that she yaf, certayn,
 And dooth al day fro hem *pat* arn dysdayn, 1330
- “Whiche can not thanken hir of hir hy grace. 1331
 Therefore, madame, taketh heed hir to, I you¹ pray, ^{1 on eras.} Katharine
 lese not youre hold^t, lese not youre purchace,
 lete mekenesse dwelle with suche a freshe may!
 Thanne shal we sekerly of you syng and say 1335
 That al is weel, ryght as we wold it haue.
 fferthermore, so god my sowle mote saue, 1337
- “I trowe, though nature had complet in oon persone
 Alle hir yeftes—as, if she wil, she can, 1339
 Than trowe I weel ye haue hem a^{ll} allone.
 Of yowre charyte *panne* take to you som man,
 lete hym haue part of suche ping as ye hane! 1342
 Swiche goodly yyftis wolde not euer ben^d hyd—
 If nature were here, the same she wold byd. 1344
- “And for the thredde poynt in whiche I yow commende,
 Whiche is youre wysdam and youre gret lernynge: 1346
 Youre wittis arn^d swiche, there can noo man amende
 Youre conseytes hye, for, if ye had a kyng,
 he myght ful weel trost in youre conyng, 1349
 Thow he hym^d-self had not as ye haue.
 And as me thenketh, youre soule can^d ye not saue 1351
- “But if ye comoun^d thys yifte to other men— 1352
 It is not youe you to haue it allone.
 The first meure, as oure book^{is} us ken,
 Whiche sitteth a-boue the sterris in his trone,
 he yeueth som man^d more wysdam be his oone 1356
 Thanne haue twenty, onoly to this entent
 That he to other shal comoun^d *pat* god hym sent. 1358

*Blk. II. Ch. 30.*meaning her
to wed.should share
her gifts with
a Husband.She is very
wise.A King could
trust her.If she doesn't
marry,

Bk. II. Ch. 32. "Take heed herto, for perellis þat may falle 1359
 If 3e dysplese þat meuer' whych sitt a-boue;
 hys 3yftis fro 3ow draw a-wey he schaff—
 þat I spek now, I sey it of very loue,
 And, as me pinkyth, mech to 3our' be-houe. 1363
 þe fourt poynt of theyse & last of alle,
 Is þe rychesse whech is on-to 3ow falle. 1365
 "3e be so rych þe werld woundyrth of it. 1366
 What schall 3e do wyth alle þis welth a-lone?
 I sey of þis as I seyð of 3our' wytt:
 þei wer' I-graunted of godd to 3our' persone
 þat 3e schuld part all þis welth & woone; 1370
 þat schall 3e best [do]¹ if 3e take a kyng. 1 om.
 her' is my tale, her' is myn askyng." 1372

Bk. II. Ch. 33.

Cam. 33m.

Than answerd sone þat swet gracyous wyght, 1373
 And to þis mayster sche seyð þus a-gayn:
 "3our' commendacyon whech 3e dyd endyth,
 If it be soth as 3e sayd plat & playn,
 Schall cause me, þer is no mor' to sayn, 1377
 To plese þat lord wyth all hert & mynde
 þat in hys 3yftis hath be to me so kynde 1379
 "And sent me graces whech oþer women want. 1380
 3e seyð efte: for þat I am so fayr'
 And eke so wys & rych as 3e warant,
 þerfor' me must purpos to haue a ayr',
 To chese an husbond good & debonayre. 1384
 A-vyse 3ow, syr', what þat 3e haue sayde;
 We wyll not lyght lower' þan 3e vs layde. 1386
 "3e haue sett our' loos a-boue so hye, 1387
 We pase all women þat now formed are.
 And on 3our' grounde a-geyn I þus repleye:
 I wold know to me who þat worthy ware.
 þis is 3our argument, þis is 3our owne lare 1391

- "Take heed her-to, for perill that may falle, 1359 *Bk. II. Ch. 30.*
 If ye displese that meure whiche sit a-boue;
 his yiftes fro you drawe a-wey he shalle—
 That I speke now I sey it¹ of very loue, ^{1 overlined.}
 And, as me thenketh, moche to youre be-houe. 1363
 The fourthe poynt of these and last of alle,
 Is the rychesse whiche is on-to yow falle. 1365
 "Ye be so ryche the world wondreth of it. 1366
 What shal ye doo wyth al this welthe allone?
 I sey of this as I seyde of youre wit:
 Thei were I-graunted of god to youre persone
 That ye shuld parte al this welthe and wone. 1370
 That shal ye best doo if ye take a kyng.
 here is my tale, here is myn askyng." 1372

God may
withdraw
His giffs
from her.

Katharine
has such
riches,

that she
should share
them with a
Husband.

Ca^m. 31^m.

Bk. II. Ch. 31.

- T**hanne answerde þat swete gracyous whigt, 1373
 And to this mayster she seyde thus a-geyn:
 "Yourre commendacyon whiche here now ye endyght,
 If it be sooth as ye seyde plat and pleyn,
 Shal cause me, there is no more to seyn, 1377
 To plesse that lord with al myn herte and mynde
 That in his yiftes hath been to me so kynde 1379
 "And sente me grace whiche other women wante. 1380
 Ye seyde efte: for þat I am so fayre
 And eke so wys and ryche as ye warante,
 Therefore me muste purpos to haue an ayre,
 To chese an husbond good and debonayre. 1384
 Advise you, sir, what that ye haue sayde;
 We wil not lyght lower than ye vs layde. 1386
 "Ye haue sette oure loos a-boue so hye, 1387
 We passe alle women þat now foormed are.
 And on your grounde a-geyn I thus replye:
 I wulde knowe to me hoo worthy ware.
 This is your argument, this is your owne lare 1391

As he has
made her out
to be perfec-
tion,

- Bk. II. Ch. 33.* þat I am worthyest lyuyng of all women :
 þan must I hafe þe worthyest of all men), 1393
- “It folowyth full euene ryght of¹ *your* tale, ^{1 MS. on} 1394
 If 3e take heed. I pray 3ow wher’ dwellyth he,
 So wyis, so fayr’, so ryche wyth-outen bale,
 And of swech lynage born) as we be?
 But if 3e fynde swech on, 3e may leue me 1398
 I wyll noon¹ haf; þer-for’ loke well a-boute!— ^{1 MS. now}
 þe mor’ 3e plete, þe mor’ 3e stand in doute. 1400
- “But 3e wyll wyte allgate what I desyr’: 1401
 I schall dyscriue myn) husbond whom I wyll hafe.
 A-boue all lordes he must be, wyth-oute pere,
 Whom he wyll to spylle or elles to saue;
 he must be stable, & neuyr turn) ne waue 1405
 ffro noo purpos þat he set hym on—
 But he be swech, husbond schall he be none 1407
- “As on-to vs, whom 3e hafe so commended. 1408
 he must be wyis alsoo, þat he knowe aH,
 Euery þing þat it may be a-mendyd
 And reryd a-geyn), or it fully faH.
 If þer be swech on), receyue hym sone we schaf), 1412
 And ellys, sekyr, we wyll haue husbond none.
 loke well a-boute if 3e can fynd swych on)! 1414
- “fferþermor’ 3et must he haue swech myght 1415
 þat hym nelyth no help of no creature,
 But he hym-self be suffycient to do þe ryght;
 And euer hys myght demened wyth mesure.
 If þat 3e wyll swech on me ensure, 1419
 I wyll hym hafe, I schall neuier sey nay.
 Herkenyth also more what I wyll say : 1421
- “I wold eke þat he schuld be so ryche 1422
 þat hym neded not of opir mennys goode;
 No lorde in erthe I wold haue hym lych;

That I am wurt[h]yest luyng of alle women :
 Than must I haue þe wurt[h]yest of aH men,

1393

*Bk. II. Ch. 31.*she must
have a perfect
Husband.

“ It folweth ful euene ryght of youre tale,
 If yee take heed. I prey yow where dwelleth he,
 So wys, so fayr, so ryche wyth-oute bale,
 And of swyche lynage born as we bee ?

1394

But where is
a Husband
worthy of her
to be found ?

But if ye fynde suche oon, ye may leue me
 I wil noon haue ; þefore looke weel a-boute !—
 The more ye plete, the more ye stonde in doute.

1398

1400

“ But ye wil wete alga^{tis} what I desyre :
 I shal discrie myn husbonde whom I wil haue.

1401

A-boue alle lordes he muste be and wyth-oute pyre,¹

¹ corr.He must be
peerless,

Whom he wil to spille or ellis to saue ;

he muste be stable, and neuere turne ne waue

1405

ffro no purpos that he sette hym up-on—

But he be swiche on husbond, myn shal he be noon,

1407

“ As on-to vs, whom ye haue so commended.

1408

he must be wys also, that he knowe al,

most wise,

Euery thyng that it may be mended,

And rered ageyn, or it fully fal.

If there be swiche on, receyue hym soone we shal,

1412

And ellys, sekyr, we wil haue husbond noon.

looke weel a-bouthe if ye can fynde swiche oon !

1414

“ fferthermore yet muste he haue suche myght

1415

most mighty,

That hym nede non helpe of other creature,

But he hym-self be suffycient to doo ryght ;

An euere his myght demened wyth mesure.

If that ye wil swiche on me ensure,

1419

I wyl hym haue, I shal neuere sey nay.

herkeneth also more what I wil say :

1421

“ I wil eke þat he shal be so ryche

1422

most rich,

That hym nedeth not of other mannys good ;

No lord in erthe I wulde haue hym lyche ;

- Bk. II. Ch. 33. I desyr' eke he schuld be so large of goode,
 ffre of hert & manfull eke of moode, 1426
 þat, what man onys asked hym any þing,
 he schuld hem graunte mor' þan her' askyng. 1428
- "he must be fayr' also, he whom I desyre, 1429
 So fayr' & amyable þat he must pase me ;
 ffor syth he schall to me be lord & syr',
 It is good resoun þat hys schynyng ble
 Pase hyr colour' whech schall hys seruaunt be, 1433
 And on-to hys lordchype boþe seruaunt,¹ spouse & wyffe.
 fferþermor' 3et schall þis lordes lyff ^{1 to be om. ?} 1435
- "Be eterne—elles all þis is nowte, 1436
 All þat is sayd, but he haue þis ;
 ffor syth he schall wyth so gret labour' be sowte,
 As me semeth, þe game went sor' a-mys,
 Whan all wer' well & all in ioye & blys, 1440
 Sodenly to fayle & falle fro swech welth.
 þerfor I tell 3ow, I dysyr' þat hys helthe, 1442
- "hys age, hys strength, þat all þeis fayl neuyr, 1443
 But euermor' lest, for sorow þat it wold make
 To me whech-tyme þat we schuld dysseuyr—
 ffor other' lord wold I neuer-mor' take,
 But wepe & morne all in clothys blake. 1447
 þer-for 3e schull me warant he schall not deye,
 þis lord to whom 3e wold me newe alye : 1449
- "And þan consent I to all þat euer 3e craue, 1450
 Elles nowt. wene 3e þat I wold fare
 As many other' do, & haue as þei haue,
 lych to my modyr, þe sorow, þe wo, þe care
 Whech sche had, whan þei departed ware, 1454
 My lord my fadyr & eke my lady a-sundyr ?
 þat I fle þis, me þinkyth it is no woundyr !" 1456

- I desyre eke he shulde bee so large of food,
 ffre of herte and manful eke of mood, 1426 *Bk. II. Ch. 31.*
 That, what man asked hym oones ony thyng,
 he shulde hem graunte more than her askyng. 1428
 most liberal,
- “ he muste be fayr also whom I desyre, 1429
 Soo fayre and amyable that he muste passe me ;
 ffor sith he shal to me be bothe lord and syre,
 It is good reson that his shynyng blee
 passe hir colour whiche shal his seruaunt bee 1433
 And on-to his lordshype bothe seruaunt, spouse and wyf.
 fferthermore yet shal this lordys lyf 1435
 most fair and
 amiable,
- “ Ben eterne—ellis al this is nought 1436
 Al þat is seyde, but if he haue this ;
 ffor sithe he shal with soo grete labour be sought,
 As me semeth, the game wente sore amys,
 Whan al were weel and al in Ioye and blys 1440
 Sodey[n]ly to fayle and falle fro swiche welthe.
 Therefore I telle you, I desyre that his helthe, 1442
 immortal,
- “ his age, his strengthe, that alle these fayle neuere,
 But euere-more leste, for sorwe þat it wolde make 1444
 To me whiche-tyme þat we shulde disseuere—
 ffor other lord wolde I neuere-more take,
 But wepe and moorne al in clothys blake. 1447
 Therefore ye shul me warrant he shal not deye,
 This lord to whom ye wolde me newe alleye : 1449
 and ever
 vigorous.
- “ And than consente I to al þat euere ye craue, 1450
 Ellis nought. wene ye that I wold fare
 As many other doo, and haue as¹ thei haue, ^{1 as corrected.}
 lyche to my moder, the sorwe, þe woo, þe care
 Whiche she had, whan thei departed ware, 1454
 My lord my fadyr and eke my lady a-sunder ?
 Thou I flee this, me thenketh it is no wonder !” 1456
 Katharine
 'll marry
 him ; else
 not.

Whan sche had seyde these wordes all a-lowde 1457
 And vttyrd hyr conceyte pleyndly to hem alle,
 þer was no man as þan þat him kepe cowde
 ffor wepyng teres—full sor þei gun downe falle.
 hyr modyr fel downe as rownde as any balle, 1461
 ffor very sorow sché swounyd in þat place,
 ffor now sche seeth þer is non oþyr grace. 1463

Sche was lyft vp & comforted new a-gayn, 1464
 And at þe last, whan sche had caut wynde,
 “Alas,” sche seyde, “sorow hath me nye slayn!
 Wher schall we seke, wher schall [we] swych on fynde?
 My dowtyr, I trowe, hath not well her mynde, 1468
 Sche wote not what sche seyth, sche is so made!
 Who may it be? wher may swech on be hadde? 1470

“As sche desyryth it is not parde! possible, 1471
 Ther is non swech, þan schall sche neuer haue non;
 Neuyr deye, neuer seke, he must be inpassible!—
 We may well see sche scorneth vs echon.
 Go we fast hens, let hyr haue it a-loon! 1475
 Worcheþ & rychesse sche schall ful soone lese,
 No defaute in vs, for we may not chese.” 1477

Thus wayled þe lordes as þei sote be-deen, 1478
 Cursyng hyr maysterys, cursyng her bokes alle:
 “Alas,” þei seyde, “þat euer any qween
 þus schuld be comered! our worcheþ is downe falle!
 God send neuyr rem kyng þat wereth a calle! 1482
 We pray godd þat he neuyr woman make
 So gret a mayster as sche is, for our sake.” 1484

Thus wyth wo, mych care & grucchyng 1485
 þei parte a-soundyr, ech man on-to hys home
 þei goo or ryde or sayle at her lykyng;

Ca^m. 32^m.Bk. II. Ch. 32.

W^han she had seyde these wordys alle allowde 1457
 And vtteryd hir conseyte pleyntly to hem alle,

There was no man as þanne þat hym kepe cowde
 Fro weeping teeres—ful sore thei gunne downe falle.

Katharine's
Lords weep;

hir moder fel downe as round as ony balle, 1461

for very sorwe she swouned in that place,
 ffor now she seeth ther is noon other grace. 1463

She was lyfted vp and comforted newe a-gayn, 1464

And at the laste, whan she had caute wynde,

“Allas,” she seyde, “sorwe hath me ny slayn!

Where shal we seeke, where shal we swyche oon fynde?

My doughter, I trowe, hath not weel hir mynde, 1468

her Mother
thinks she's
mad:

She wot not what she seyth, she is soo mad!

how may it bee? where may swiche oon be had? 1470

“As she desireth it is not trewely possible, 1471

There is noon suche, than shal she neuere haue noon;

Neuere deye, neuere seek, he muste bee impassible!—

no immortal
man can be
found.

We may weel see she skorneth vs eche oon.

Go we fast hens, lete hir haue it alloon! 1475

Wurshipe and rychesse shal she ful soone lese,

No defaute in vs, ffor we may not chese.” 1477

Thus weyled the lordes as þei sete be-deene, 1478

Cursyng hir maysteris, cursyng hir bookis alle:

“Allas,” thei seyde, “that euere ony queene

Thus shuld be comered! oure wurshype is downe falle!

God sende neuere reem a kyng that wereth a calle! 1482

We prey god þat he neuere woman make

Soo grete a mayster as she is, for hir sake.” 1484

Thus wyth woo, meche care and grutchynge 1485

Thei parte a-sondre, iche man to his hom

Thei goo or ryde or sayle as here lykyng;

The Partia-
ment breaks
up. Its
members
grumble.

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 34.</u>	ffor wyth þe qween wroth þei are echon.	
	Sche is now left for hem to dwell a-lon;	1489
	Sche may stody, rede, reherse, & wryght.	
	þus is þe parlement fynchyd, & euery wyght	1491
	Is in drede & leueth wyth hert suspens,	1492
	lokyng alwey aftyr new chaungyng;	
	Alle her' wyttes & all her' grete expens	
	Are now but ¹ lost. & her' schall be þe endyng ^{1 on the margin.}	
	Of þis same boke, whech tetryth of þe pletyng	1496
	Be-twyx þis qween & all hyr lychemen.	
	God send vs parte of hyr prayer'. AmEN.	1498

Bk. III. Prol.

Liber iij. (Prolog.)

S ith no man may her in þis lyffe present	1
Doo no good dede, but he enspyred be	
Of þat goste whech fro þe omnipotent	
ffader of heuyn & fro þe sune so fre	
Is sent to us, ryght so be-leue now we	5
þat [it] is best þat we our labour' commende	
On-to þis gost, if we wyll haue goode ende.	7
ffor I haue tolde 3ow schortly, as I can,	8
þe byrth, þe kynrod, þe nobyllhed of þis mayde,	
þe gret disputyng of lordes who it be-gan,	
And eke hyr answer', what sche to hem sayd;	
þis haue I pleyndly now be-for 3ow layde	12
In swech ryme, as I coude best deuyse—	
Schall neuyr man lese no labour' ne no seruyse	14
Whech þat he doth on-to þis noble qween;	15
And now hens-for-warde schall be my laboure	
To tell of hyr be ordre & be-deen	
Who sche was wonne to crist, our' sauyour',	
Who meruelously he entred to hyr toure	19
I mene daun adryan þe munke, whech our' feyth	
ffyrst to hyr tawte, as þis cronycle seyth.	21

ffor wyth the queen wroth thei are iche oon).		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 32.</i>
She is now left for hem to dwelle allow;	1489	
She may stody, reede, reherce and write.		
Thus is the parlement fynyshed, and euery whyte	1491	The meeting of the Parliament has been in vain.
Is in dreed and lyueth wyth hert suspens,	1492	
lookyng alwey after newe chaungynge;		
Alle her wyttis and alle her grete expens		
Arn now but lost. and [here] shal be the endynge		
Of this same book whiche treteth of þe pleytynge ¹	1496	
Be-twyxe the queen and alle hir lygemen.	¹ MS. pleyntyng	
God sende vs part of hir prayere, amen.	1498	

Liber iij. Ca^m. primum.¹¹ r. Prolog.*Bk. III. Ch. 1.*

Sith noo man may here in this lyf present	1	
Doo no good dede, but he enspyred bee		
Of þat goost whiche fro the omnypotent		To the Holy Spirit
ffadir of heuene and fro the sone soo free		
Is sent to vs, ryght soo be-leue now we	5	
That it is best that we oure labour commende		I commend my work.
On-to this goost, if we wil haue good eende.	7	
ffor I haue tolde yow shorthly, as I kan,	8	I've told you of Katharine's birth,
The berthe, þe kynrede, þe noblehed of þis mayde,		
The grete disputynge of lordis hov it be-gan,		
And eke hir answer, what she to hem sayde;		and her refusal to marry;
This haue I pleynly now be-fore yow layde	12	
In swiche ryme as I cowde beest deuys—		
Shal neuere man lese labour ne seruyse	14	
Whiche that he dooth on-to this noble queen;	15	
And now hens-forthward shal ben my labour		now I'll tell you
To telle of hir be ordre and be-deen		
how she was wonne to cryst, oure saucour,	18	how she was won to Christ.
how meruelyously ¹ he entred in to hir tour	¹ or. merueylously	
I mene daun Adryan the monke, whiche oure feyth		
ffirst to hir taught, as this cronycle seyth.	21	

Bk. III. Prol. And if 3e dowte, 3e reders of þis lyffe, 22
 Wheyther' it be sothe, 3e may well vnderstande :
 Mech þing hath be do whech hath be ful ryue
 And is not wretyn ne cam neuer to our' hande,
 Mech þing eke hyd in many dyuerse lande ; 26
 Euene so was þis lyffe, as I seyde in þe prologe be-for',
 Kept all in cage, a-boute it was not bore. 28
 Now schall it walk wyder' þan euer it dede, 29
 In preysyng & honour' of þis martir Katherine ;
 hyr lyff, her' feyth, hyr passyon schall neuer be dede
 Whyll þat I leue, I wold fulfayn enelyne
 hyr holy prayer' to be my medycyne 33
 And eke my tryacle a-geyns þe venym foule
 Whech þat þe deuyll hath þrowyn on my soule. 35
 I dresse me now streyt on-[to] þis werk. 36
 Thow blyssyd may, comfort þou me in þis !
 Be-cause þou wer' so lerned & swet a clerk,
 Clerkes must loue þe, reson for-sothe it is !
 Who wyll oute lerne, trost to me, I-wys, 40
 he dothe mech þe bettyr if he trost in þis may.
 þus I be-leue, & haue do many a day. 42

Bk. III. Ch. 1.

Cam. 1m.

Ther' was an hermyth, as elde bokes telle, 43
 A munke, a man of ful hye grace & fame ;
 Be þe see, þei sey, sett was¹ þoo² hys celle—
 Adryane, I rede þat it was hys name ; <sup>1 MS. wall
2 overlined.</sup>
 hys knelyng had made hys kneis full ny lame ; 47
 A prest he was eke, sothely, as I fynde,
 he had a chapell in whech he song & dynde, 49
 Slepe & welk—for other' hous had he non. 50
 þis man knew þe counsell of þis mayde
 fyrst of alle—for Athanas, of whom long a-gein
 We spoke be-for, was not þan arayde
 Ne eke a-noynted wyth baytym ne assayde 54

- And if ye doughte, ye redere of this lyf, 22 *Bk. III. Ch. 1.*
 Whether it be sooth, ye may weel vndirstande :
 Moche thyng hath be doon whiche hath ben ful ryf
 And is not wretyn ne cam neuere to oure hande,
 Moche ping hid eke in many dyuers lande ; 26
 Euene so was this lyf, as I seyde in the prolog before,
 Kepte al in cage, a-boute it was not bore. 28
- Now shal it walke wydere than euere it dede, 29
 In preysyng and honour of this mayde Kataryne ;
 hir lyf, hir feyth, hir passyon shal euere-more sprede
 Whil þat I leue, I wolde ful fayn enclyne
 hir holy preyere to be myn medecyne 33
 And eke my treacle a-geyns the venym foule
 Whiche that the deuile hath throwen on my soule. 35
- I dresse me now streyt on-to this werk. 36
 Thou blyssed may, comforte þou me in this !
 Be-cause þou were so lerned and swiche a clerk,
 Clerkys muste louen þe, reson forsothe it is !
 Who wil owte lerne, troste to me, I-wys, 40
 he dooth moche þe bettere if he truste in þis may.
 Thus I be-leue, and haue doo many a day. 42

Blessed
Maiden,
strengthen
me in my
work !

Ca^m. secundum.¹¹ r. primum.*Bk. III. Ch. 2.*

- There was an Ermyte, as olde bookys telle, 43
 A monke, a man of ful hey grace and fame ;
 Be þe see, thei seyn, set was tho his celle—
 Adryan, I rede that it was his name ;
 hys kneelynge had maad his knees ful ny lame ; 47
 A preest he was eke, soothly, as I fynde,
 he had a chapel in whiche he song and dynde, 49
- Sleep and welk—for other hous he had noon. 50
 This man knew the counseilt of þis mayde
 firste of alle—for Athanas, of whom longe agoon
 We spoke before, was not þan arayede
 Ne eke anoynted wyth baptem ne assayed 54

This monk
Adrian first
converted
Katharine.

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 1.</u>	Wyth goddys scourge ; for he was turned be hyr',	
	And sche conuertyd be miracle, as 3e schul here.	56
	This man was ordeynd lych, I vndyrstande,	57
	To seynt Ioseph our lady to lede & gyde :	
	ffor euene as Ioseph in to egypte lande	
	Went wyth our ladye, euermor be hyr syde,	
	So was þis Ermyte þan in þat tyde	61
	A bodyly leder to þis gostly werke,	
	Whech-tyme þat cryst þis noble mayd schulde merk	63
	Wyth hys crosse to make hyr strong & stabylle	64
	A-geyns þe flesch, a-geyns þe affluens	
	Of wordly delyte, & make hyr to hym abyll,	
	Bothe spouse & wyffe ; whech feestly dylygens	
	Was wrought so wondyrly, it paseth experiens	68
	Of wordly men. wherfor I am a-gast	
	To spek þer-of, knowyng it passeth þe gnast	70
	Of my cuznyng, but þat I leue in hope	71
	þat thorow þe prayer of hyr & adryane	
	I schall haue myght & strength eke to grope	
	Thys holy mater, to telle forth of þis man	
	Who þat he lyuýd & who he vytail wan.	75
	ffor on-to town wolde he neuyr aproche,	
	But tyllyd hys londe heye up-on a roche.	77
	Sumetyme of schyppes þat ryden þer fastby,	78
	had he comfort of mete & eke of drynke.	
	Sexty 3er þis lyffe he led, sothely,	
	þat neuyr went he a-way fro þat brynke.	
	þus party wyth elmesse, party wyth hys swynke,	82
	Alle blyssydly in abstinens & prayer	
	þis lyffe led he, þis ermyte or þis frere—	84
	ffor frere was name þan to all crysten men	85
	Comon, I rede, & ermytys wer þei called	
	þat dwelt fro town, mylys sex or ten,	
	Wer þei growen, wer þei bar or balled ;	
	Be-cause þei wer eke all soole I-walled,	89

Wyth godd's scourge ; for he was turned be hir, And she conuerted be myracle, as ye shul here.	56	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 2.</i>
This man was ordeyned liche, I vnderstonde, To seynt Ioseph oure lady to lede and gyde : ffor euene as Ioseph in to Egipte londe Wente wyth oure lady, euere more be hir syde, Soo was this ermyte thanne in that tyde	57 61	He led her as Joseph led St. Mary into Egypt.
A bodyly leedere to þis goostely werk, Whiche tyme þat crist þis noble mayde shuld merk	63	
Wyth his cros to make hir strong and stabil A-geyns the flesh, a-geyns the affluens Of wordly delyte, and make hir to hym abil, Bothe spouse and wyf ; whiche feestly dylygens Was wrought so wonderly, it passeth experieus Of wordly men. wherfore I am a-gast To speke ther-of, knowynge it passeth þe gnast	64 68 70	
Of myn connyng, but þat I leue in hope That thurgh the prayere of hir and Adrian I shal haue myght and strengthe eke to grope This holy mater, to telle foorth of this man how þat he leued and how þat he vitayl wan. ffor on-to tounne wolde he neuere approche, But filled his lond hey vp-on a roche.	71 75 77	Thro' his prayer and Katharine's I'll tell you about him.
Somtyme of shippys þat reden there faste-by he had conforte of mete and eke of drynk. Sixty yeer he ledde this lyf soothly, That neuere wente he away fro that brynk. Thus party wyth elmesse, party wyth swynk, Alle blyssedly in abstynens and prayere This lyf led he, this ermyte or this frere—	78 82 84	Adrian livd 60 years on a rock.
ffor frere was name thanne to alle cristene men Comou[n], ¹ I rede, and ermytes were thei called That dwelled fro town myles sexe or teen, Were thei growen, were thei bare or balled ; Be-cause thei were eke al sool I-walled,	85 89	Friars who dwelt 6 or 10 miles from a town were cald Hermits.

¹ n erased.

Bk. III. Ch. 1. Sume men called hem munkys, wyth-owte drede—
ffor þeis wordes, munke & soole, ar on), as we rede. 91

Bk. III. Ch. 2.

Ca^m. 2^m.

Whan þis ermyte was fall (!) stope in age, 92
 And myght not byd hys bedys as he was wont,
 þan wold he goo forthe a grete passage,
 Ryght be þe see, on stones scharp & blunte,
 And euyr hys body wold he chyde & runte : 96
 “What evelyth þe now, why art þou so sone oute
 Of holy prayer, of werkes þat be deuoute ? 98
 “Now god,” he seyd, “þat syttest hey in trone, 99
 ffor-zeue it me þat I do not so weell
 As I was wone ! my body is cause a-lone,
 And not my soule, ful sykyrly þis I feele ;
 I may not wake ne fast neuyr a dele, 103
 I can no mor^r—all þis defaute is myne ;
 If any goodenes haue I, lord þat is þin. 105
 “Demene¹ not me, lorde, after my febyll myght, ^{1 r. Deine ?}
 But after [my] wylle, þat euyr desyreth¹ in on) ^{1 MS. sesyreth}
 Wyth blessed dedes to be a-lowed in þe syte
 Of þi mercy ! for þow3 my myght be gon),
 3et is my soule as stable as any ston), 110
 And euyr schal be, as I can best deuyse,
 In þi drede & eke in þi seruise.” 112
 Vn-nethys had he ended hys oryson), 113
 he saw a syght, a meruelous þo, he þowte.
 ffor as he walkyd þe strondes up & down),
 he fond a þing whech he had long I-south,
 A blessed syght on-to hys eye was browte : 117
 A qween) he sey, of vysage & stature,
 Pasyng full mech alle erdely creature, 119
 All hyr aray a-cordyng eke þer-too, 120
 So bryght a-corown), so bryte clothys eke !
 he wot not what hym is best to do ;

Some men called hem monkes wyth-outen dreed—
ffor this woord monk and sool are on), as we reed.

Bk. III. Ch. 2.

91

Ca^m. *tercium*.

Bk. III. Ch. 3.

Whanne this ermyte was fer stope in age,
And myght not bydden) his bedes as he was wont,

92

When Adrian
couldn't pray,

Thanne wolde he gon) foorth a grete passage

Ryght be the see on) stones sharp and blont,

And euere his body wolde he chyde and rent :

96

he walkt on
the stony
shore,

“What eyleth the now, why art þou soo sone oute

Of holy preyere and of werkys that ben) deuoute ?

98

“Now god,” he seyde, “þat sittest hyest in throne,
ffor-yeue me þat I doo not soo wel

As I was wont ! my body is cause allone

And not my soule, ful sekerly this I feel ;

I may not wake ne faste neuere a deel,

103

and told God
that his body
was at fault,
not his soul.

I can) no more—al this defaute is myn) ;

If ony goodnesse haue I, lord, þat is thyn).

105

“Deme¹ not me, lord, after my febyl myght, ^{1 orig. Demene}
But after my wyl, þat euere desireth in oon)

107

Wyth blyssed dedes to be allowed in the sight

Of thi mercy ! for though my myght be goon),

Yet is my sowle as stable as ony stoon),

110

And euere shal be, as I can) beste deuyse,

In thi dreed and eke in thi seruyse.”

112

Vnnethes had he eended his oryson),

113

he saugh a sight, a meruelous tho, he thought

ffor as he walked the strondes vp and doun),

he fond a þing whiche he had long I-sought,

A blyssed sight on-to his eye was brought :

117

As Adrian
is on the sea-
shore,

A queen) he sawe, of vysage and of stature

Passyng ful meche aH erthely creature,

119

he sees the
Virgin Mary.

Alle hir array acordyng eke ther-too,

120

Soo bryght a coroun), soo bryght clothes eke.

he wot not what hym is best to doo ;

<u>Bk. III. Ca. 2.</u>	he is not febyll, he is no lenger' seke,	
	hys blode is come a-geyn on-to hys cheke,	124
	hys eyne haue caute of new coumfort a lyght,	
	hys body is 3onthyd, he pinketh hym-self ful lygth.	126
	Than gan pis ermyte stalk ¹ ny & nye,	¹ r. stalken 127
	To se pis syght, pis selcowth new ping.	
	"O benedicite!" he seyde, "mech meruayle haue I,	
	pat pis lady fresch & fayr' & 3yng	
	Is come so sodenly hydyr in pis morownyng,	131
	And schyppe ne boote ne can I now her' see,	
	Neyther' on lond ne fletyng on þe see."	133
	Thus merueylyng be-twyx ioye & drede	134
	A full softe pase on-to hyr-ward he went;	
	ffor, as hym thowte, sche also to hym 3ede.	
	But sche spake fyrst wyth full meke entent:	
	"Brothyr," sche sayde, "þe lord omnipotent,	138
	Whech made þe heuyn, þe watyr, & þe londe,	
	he saue 3ow eyr & blysse 3ow wyth hys honde!"	140
	The ermyte þan on-to our' lady sayde:	141
	"Gramercy, madame! & he kepe 3ow alsoo	
	ffro aH myshap, pat 3e be not a-frayde	
	Of noo dysese, but eyr wyth-owten woo!	
	I prey to godd, 3e mote be on of thoo	145
	Whech pat schall dwelle wyth hym in hys blys,	
	Wher' may no ioye ne no solace mys."	147
	"Good syr," seyde sche, "I wolde 3ow pray full fayn	148
	To do a massage fro me vn-to a whyte	
	Whech pat I loue & trost, 3e may hyr sayn—	
	So doth my sone, for werkys pat be ryght	
	Whech pat sche vsyth, pat mayde fayr' & bryte.	152
	And 3e, syr, our' massanger' I wold 3e were,	
	Our' wyll & our' wordes to pis lady for to bere."	154
	"O mercy, godd!" seyde þoo pis adryan,	155
	"What, wold 3e now I schuld forsak my celle,	
	fforsake my seruyce & to be 3our' man?	

he is not feble, he is no lengher seeke, Bk. III. Ch. 3.

his blood is come a-geyn on-to his cheeke, 124

his eyne han^d caute a newe comfort of lyght, ^{1 The 4 last words on erasure.}

his body is yongthed, he thenketh, and strengthed in myght.¹

Than^d gan^d this ermyte stalke ny and ny, 127 He draws nigh to her.

To see this sight, this selkouth newe thyng.

“O benedicite!” he seyde, “moche merueyle haue I

That this lady fresh and fayr and ying,

his come soo sodeynly hedir this mornyng, 131

And ship ne boot ken I noon^d her to be¹ ^{1 ken—be on erasure.}

Neither on lond ne fletyng on the see.” 133

Thus merueylyng be-twyxe Ioye and dreed 134

A ful soft paas on-to hir he went;

ffor, as hym thought, she also to hym yeed.

But she spak first wyth ful meke entent:

“Brother,” she seyde, “the lord omnipotent, 138 She blesses him.

Whiche made þe heuene, þe water, and þe lond,

he saue yow euere and blysse yow wyth his hond!” 140

The ermyte thanne on-to oure lady sayde: 141

“Gromercy, madame, and he kepe you also

ffro al myshap, that ye be not afrayed

Of no disese, but euere with-oute wo!

I prey to god ye mote ben^d on^d of tho 145

Whiche shal dwelle wyth hym in his blis,

Where may no ioye ne solas mys.” 147

“Good sir,” seyde she, “I wolde you prey ful fayn^d 148 She asks him to be her messenger to a Maiden.

To doo a masage fro me on-to a whight

Whiche þat I love and truste, ye may hir sayn^d—

Soo dooth my sone, for werkys tho be ryght 151

Whiche þat¹ she vseth, þat mayde fair and bryght. ^{1 MS. þo?}

And ye, sir, oure masager I wolde ye were,

Oure wyl and oure wordis to þis lady for to bera.” 154

“O mercyful god,” seyde tho þis Adryan, 155

“What, wolde ye now I shulde forsake my celle,

ffor-sake my seruyse and to be your man?”

Bk. III. Ch. 2. I haue made couenaunt euyr' her' to dwelle
 Whyll þat me lestys brethe, flesch & felle, 159
 Tyl ihesu wyll fecch me, þat was maydenys sone.
 Spek not þer-of, for it may not be don!" 161

Bk. III. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

Than sayd þat mayde a-geyn on-to hym : 162
 " Art þou a-vysed what þou hast seyð to me?
 þou prayed full late, whyll þe nyte was dyme,
 þat god hym-self no-þing wrothe schuld be
 Wyth þin age ne wyth þi febylte ; 166
 þou prayed eke hys modyr, I herd it, loo,
 Sche schuld be mene ryght be-twyx 3ow too. 168
 " I am sche to whom þat þou so ofte 169
 Wyth pytous uoys hast cryed boþe day & nyght
 þat I schuld help þi dulnes for to softe.
 þer-for I wyll þou force þe wyth þi myghte
 To be my massanger, & eke my gostly knyth, 173
 On-to þat lady whom I loue full wele—
 3et hath sche of me knowyng neuer a deele. 175
 " Therfor busk þe to Alysaundyr' for to goo, 176
 On-to þat cyte whech men called sume-tyme
 Grete babell—þer be swych no moo
 In all þis werld, þus seyth euery pylgryme.
 What schuld I lenger tary in my ryme? 180
 þou schalt fynde þer a qween full reall,
 And on-to hyr' bodily¹ speke þou schall. ^{1 r. bodily?} 182
 " Sey ryght thus : ' þe lady, boþe modyr & mayde, 183
 Grettyth hyr¹ well, & þat in goodely wyse, ^{1 r. þe}
 Ryth be me, for sche both comaunde & prayde
 þat I schuld doo to hyr þis goode seruyse.
 þus schall þou sey, ryth as I deuyse— 187
 Sche schall make straung & be a-stoynd sor',
 leue not þis massage for þat cause neuer-þe-more! 189

I haue made conuenaunt euere here for to dwelle		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 3.</i>
Whil þat me lesteth breth, flesh and felle,	159	Adrian says he has vowd to live on his rock.
Til ihesu wil fetche me, þat was maydenes sone.		
Speke not ther-of for it may not be done ! "	161	

Cam. quartum.

Bk. III. Ch. 4.

T hanne seyde þat mayden a-geyn on-to hynd :	162	The Virgin
" Art thou avysed what þou hast seyde on-to me ?		
Thou preyed ful late, whan the nyght was dyn,		
That god hym-selue no-þing wrooth shulde bee		
With thyn age ne wyth thi febilte ;	166	
þou preydest eke is moder, I herde it loo,		
She shuld be mene ryght be-twyxe yow too.	168	

" I am she to whom þat thou soo ofte	169	tells Adrian who she is,
Wyth pytous voys hast cryed bothe day and nyght,		
That shulde helpe thy dulnesse for to softe.		and that he is
Therfor I wil þou force the wyth thi myght		
To be my masager, and eke my goostly knyght,	173	
On-to that lady whom I loue ful weel—		
Yet hath she of me knowyng neuere a deel.	175	

" Therefore buske the to Alysaunder for to goo,	176	to go to Alex- andria,
On-[to] that citee whyche men called som-tyme		
Grete babel—there be suche no moo		
In al þis world, þus seyde euery pilgryme.		
What shuld I lengere tarye in myn ryme ?	180	
þou shalt fynde there a queen ful real,		
And on-to hir bodyly spekyn þou shal.	182	

" Sey ryght thus : ' the lady bothe moder and mayde		and greet Katharine from her.
Greeteth hir ¹ weel, and that in goodly wise, ^{1 r. þe}	184	
Right be me, for she bothe commaunde and prayde		
That I shuld doo to hir this good seruyse.'		
Thus shalt þou seyn, ryght as I deuyse—	187	
She shal make straunge and be astoynd sore,		
Leue not þis masage for þat cause neuere the more !	189	

- Bk. III. Ch. 3. "It is not goo now but a lytyll whyle 190
 Syth þat þis lady was wyth hyr counsayle,
 In whech þer was ordeynyd many a wyle
 And many a mene, & spent mych trauayle,
 To do hyr wedde; but it myght not a-vayle. 194
 ffor I my-selue haue ordeynd hyr' a lorde,
 To whom sche schall in clenness well a-corde. 196
 "Eke þat þou schuld þe mor' deynte haue 197
 To do þis massage & all þis grete labour',
 I wyll þe tell pleyndly, I wyll not waue,
 I wyll not varye, but the lynage,¹ þe honour', ^{1 MS. lynager}
 The uertu, þe occupacyon of þis swete flour' 201
 þou schalt it knowe be informacyoun of me,
 Boþe hyr goodenes, hyr' cunnyng & hyr' degre. 203
 "ffyrst of alle þou whyte¹ sche is a when',² <sup>1 r. wyte
2 = qwen</sup> 204
 A ryth, a reall, a wys, & eke a fayr—
 ffor in þis werlde swech no moo þer been;
 Sche hath no chylde ne sche hath non ayr',
 ffor, if sche leue, sche schalt loue bettyr þe hayr' 208
 Than any¹ reynes, aftyr þat sche be drawe ^{1 corr. from ony}
 On-to my seruyse & to my sunnes lawe. 210
 "Sche is also, in sothenesse, a ryth grete clerke, 211
 And eke a sotyll, in alle þe seuyn scyens;
 þat schewyd sche welle bothe wyth worde & werke
 In þe parlement, wher' was grete expens
 Of werdly rychesse, & eke grete dylygens 215
 Of werdly wytte to make hyr' wedded be;
 But þei sped not. a heyer' lord of degre 217
 "Schal be hyr' spouse, whom sche zet not knowyth; 218
 Sche must for-ber' fyrst mech þing, certayn,
 I mene þe rychesse in whech sche now flowyth;
 ffor of pouert schall sche be as fayn
 As eyr sche was of rychesse, sothe to sayn, 222
 Or of ony welth or ony grete honour'.
 I schall be to hyr a counfortour' 224

- “ It is not goo now but a lytel while 190 *Bk. III. Ch. 4.*
 Sith that this lady was with hir counsayle,
 In whiche ther’ was ordeyned many a wyle
 And many a mene, and spente moche *trauayle*,
 To doo hir be¹ wedde ; but it myght not avayle. ¹ overl. 194
 ffor I my-self haue ordeyned hir a loord,
 To whom she shal in clenness weel acoord. 196
 She has provided a Husband for Katharine.
- “ Eke þat þou shuldest þe more deynte haue 197
 To doo this massage and al þis grete labour,
 I wyl the telle pleyndly, I wil not waue,
 I wil not varye, but the lynage, the honour,
 The vertu, þe occupacyon of þis swete flour 201
 Thou shal it knowe be informacyon of me,
 Bothe hir goodnesse, hir connyng and hir degree. 203
- “ ffirste of alle þou wite she is a queen, 204
 A ryche, a real, a wys, and eke a fayre—
 ffor in þis world no mo swiche ther ben ;
 She hath no chyld ne she hath noon¹ ayre, ¹ MS. noon
 ffor, if she leue, she shal loue bether þe hayre 208
 Than ony regnes, after þat she be drawe
 On-to my seruyse and on-to my sones lawe. 210
- “ She is also, in soothnesse, a right grete clerk, 211
 And eke a sotil, in alle the seuene scyens ;
 That shewed she weel bothe in word and werk
 In the parlement, where was gret expens
 Of woordly ryches, and eke grete diligens 215
 Of woordly wytte to make hir wedded to bee ;
 But þei sped not. An hyere lord of degree 217
- “ Shal ben hir spouse, whom she yet not knoweth ; 218
 She must for-bere first moche þing, certayn,
 I mene the rychesse in whiche she now floweth ;
 ffor of pouerte shal she ben as fayn
 As euere she was of rychesse, sooth to sayn, 222
 Or of ony welth or ony grete honour.
 I shal ben to hir a comfortour 224
 but she must give up her riches.

Bk. III. Ch. 3. "In all her' nede, whan þat sche schall fyght 225
 A-geyns þe heresy of philosophye;
 Of all her' resones sche schall rek but lyght,
 Thow þei her' sophymes sotyly mulytiple; 229
 Sche schall asoyle hem & a-geyn replie
 So myght[i]ly, þat þei schul lese her' art,
 And sche schall drawe hem to be in goddis part. 231
 "ffor aftyr me, I tell þe sykyrlye, 232
 þer was neuer swech an other' lady lyuande
 þat wyth-owte ensauple cowde leue parfytely,
 As sche hath now newly take on hande
 So holy a lyffe. þerfor, þou vndyrstande, 236
 Sche schall haue eke as glorious [a] hende
 As eyr had woman þat lyued her' in kende." 238

Bk. III. Ch. 4.

Cam. 4m.

Whan þat our' lady had seyde all þis þing, 239
 þis ermyte fell to grounde plat & pleyne,
 he was a-ferd & raueched in swownyng.
 And sche full mekely lyft hym vp a-geyn,
 "Be not a-ferd," sche gan þoo to hym seyn. 243
 And he answerd: "gramercy now, madame.
 ffor-gyfe me now! in þat I was to blame 245
 "That I knew not crystis moder' der', 246
 But all wythes, rekles & boystous
 Was I, lady, full late in myn' answer.
 3e may well se my wytte is komerous,
 3our comyng was to me so meruelous 250
 My wytt was goo þan, I sey 3ow veryly.
 My lordes moder', myn' aduocate, my mary, 252
 "And I her' seruauant, & eyr' hath be & cast!¹ 253
 Allas, allas! & it is wrete full pleyne
 A hard þing of whech I am a-gast:
 'Who wyll not know, schall be for-gete, certeyn.'
 þis is my thougth, my lady souereyn, 257

¹ so all MSS.

- "In al hir nede, whan þat she shal fyghte 225 *Bk. III. Ch. 4.*
 A-geyn the heresy of philosophie ;
 Of alle her resones she shal rekken but lyghte,
 Thou þei her sophems sotly multiplye ;
 She shal a-soyle hem and ageyn hem replye 229
 Soo myghtyly, þat þei shul lese her art,
 And she shal drawe hem to be in goddis part. 231
 "ffor after me, I telle the sekerly, 232
 Ther was neuere suche another lady lyuande
 That wyth-outen exauple cowde lyue so parfychtly
 As she hath now newly take on hannde
 Soo hooly a lyf. therfore, þou vndirstande, 236
 She shal haue eke as gloryous an eende
 has euere had woman that leued here in keende." 238

Cam. quintum

Bk. III. Ch. 5.

- W han þat oure lady had seyde al þis thyng, 239
 This ermyte fel to grounde plat and pleyn,
 he was a-fered and rauyshed in swownyng.
 And she ful mekely lift hym vp a-geyn,
 "Be not afered!" she gan tho to hym seyn. 243
 And he answerde: "gromercy now, madame.
 ffor-yeue me now! in þat I was to blame 245
 "That I knew not cristes moder deere, 246
 But al wytteles, rekles and boystous
 Was I, lady, ful late in myn answer.
 Ye may weel see my wytte is comorous,
 Youre comyng was to me soo meruelyous, 250
 My wytte was goo whan I sey you, verely.
 My lordis moder, myn aduocate, my mary, 252
 "And I hir seruauent, and euere haue be chast! 253
 Allas, allas! and it is wreten ful pleyn
 An hard þing of whiche I am a-gast:
 'Who wil not knowe, shal be forgete, certeyn.'
 This is my thought, my lady souereyn, 257

The Virgin
will enable
Katharine to
confute all
her op-
ponents.

Adrian
swoons.

He begs the
Virgin's for-
giveness for
not knowing
her.

He is her
servant.

Bk. III. Ch. 4.

Be-cause þat I so recles was full late,
 þat 3our loue schuld now turn to hate. 259
 “Therfor 3our grace wyth pytous voys I pray 260
 To punch & snybe, 3our-self as 3e lest,
 And I am redy euermor nyght & day
 To be obedyent ryght at 3our request,
 To do 3our massage, so as I can best. 264
 But sewyrly, þis gret cyte large
 Of whech 3e spoke whan 3e dyd me charge, 266
 “I know it noght, ne eke þe wey þer-to, 267
 I haue not herd but lytyll of it, certayn.
 But as 3e wyll, ryght so mote I do ;
 To fulfyll 3our byddying myn hert is ful fayn ;
 þow I for werynesse dey or elles be slayn, 271
 I schall go thedyr. 3et hafe I full mech care
 Of wylsom weyis or þat I come þar, 273
 “ffor, as I wene, many a wyldyrnesse 274
 Is in þat wey, & many a wyked beest.
 3et schall I forward hastily now me dresse ;
 I trost on 3ow þat 3e schull at þe leest
 Ordeyn for me þat I be noght a-reest, 278
 But vndyr 3our wyng & 3our proteccyon
 May be þis vyage & þis progressyon.” 280

*Bk. III. Ch. 5.*Cam. 5^m.

Than seyð þe qween on-to hym a-geyn : 281
 “Well may þou blys þat lord þat boute vs alle,
 þat he be the wold send or elles seyn
 þis reall mater, & eke þer-to þe calle !
 Go now þi wey, þou may not stumble ne falle 285
 Whan swech a leder is to þe a gyde.
 But whan þou comst wyth-in þoo 3atis wyde, 287
 “Whom-euer þou mete, if he spek to þe, 288
 Spek not a-geyn in no-maner wyse :
 I tell þe why : þe hyc noble secre

Be-cause þat I soo rekles was ful late,
That youre loue shulde now turne to hate. 259

Bk. III. Ch. 5.

“ Therefore youre grace wyth pytous voys I pray 260

To punyshe and snebbe, youre-self as ye lest,

And I am redy euere-more nyght and day

To be obedyent ryght at youre request,

Adrian tells
the Virgin he
will do all
she wishes.

To doo youre massage soo as I can best. 264

But suerly, this grete cyte large

Of whiche ye spoke whan ye dede me charge, 266

“ I knowe it nought, ne eke the weye þer-too, 267

I haue not herd but lytil of it, certayn.

But as ye wil, ryght soo mote I doo ;

To fulfille your byddynge my herte is ful fayn ;

Though I for werynesse dey or ellis be slayn, 271

I shal goo theder. yet haue I ful moche care

Of wylsom weyes, er thanne I com thare, 273

“ ffor, as I wene, many a wyldernes 274

Is in þat weye, and many a wykked beste.

Yet shal I forward hastyly me dresse ;

I truste on you þat ye shul at the leste

Ordeyne for me þat I be nought a-reste, 278

But vnder your wenge and youre proteccyon

May be this viage and this progression.” 280

but he will
go there,
trusting to
the Virgin.

Cam. sextum.

Bk. III. Ch. 6.

Thanne seyde the queen on-to hym a-geyn : 281

“ Weel may þou blysse þat lord that bought vs alle,

That he be the wold sende or ellis seyn

This ryal mater, and eke þer-to the calle !

Goo now thi weye, þou may not stomble ne falle 285

Whan swiche a leedere is to the a gyde.

But whan þou comest with-inne tho yates wyde, 287

“ Whom euere þou mete, if he speke to the, 288

Speke not ageyn in no-manner wise !

I telle the whi : þe hye noble secree

She bids him
start at once,

and speak to
no one he
meets.

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 5.</u>	To whych þou schall do labour' & seruyse,	
	If vnworthy herd it, þei myght it dyspyce.	292
	Eke þi-self þi mouth must þou spere,	
	And kepe þi wordys only for þis mater'.	294
	"So schall þou goo thorow þat grete cyte,	295
	Tyll þat þou come on-to þe paleys reall	
	Whech þat he made, costus þe kyng so fre,	
	Both dych & hylle, dounгон, tour', & wall.	
	Many a knyth & many a sqwyer' þou schall	299
	flynd þer' & se, þe gates for to kepe :	
	Be not a-ferde, my son schall þe kepe	301
	"ffro all her' manace & all her' grete daunger'.	302
	Blesse þe well, & eke my sones name	
	Ryght in þi forhed loke þou crouch & bere :	
	þan no man schall haue power' þe to blame	
	Ne eke to lett þe, tyll þou come at þat dame.	306
	And wher' sche dwellyth, now wyll I þe say :	
	þou schall goo forthe & passe all þat a-ray,	308
	"Tyll þat þou see wallys fayr' & newe ;	309
	And at [a] posterne, smalle of forme & ¹ schap—	¹ MS. & of
	On-to þat same loke þat þou fast sewe ;	
	þer nedyth þe noght neyther' ryng ne rap,	
	þe gate schall ope[n] lygtly at a swap ;	313
	þou schalt' enter' & fynd þat swet may.	
	Whech schall to hyr be full grete a-fray,	315
	"ffor sche schall wondyr' who þat ony man	316
	Myght enter' to her' in to þat pryuy place ;	
	hyr booke, hyr stody schall sche leue ryght than	
	And loke on þe wyth full sobyr face.	
	haue þou no fer' in no-maner' cace	320
	Of hyr qwestyouns ne of hyr apposayle,	
	I schall enforce þe soo þou may not fayle	322
	"To ȝeue hyr answer' to euery questyoun.	323
	So sayd my sone to hys aposteles twelue :	

To whiche þou shalt doo labour and seruyse,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 6.</i>
If onwurthi herde it, þei myght it despyse.	292	
Eke thi-self thi mouth must þou spere,		
And kepe thi woordis oonly for this matere.	294	
“Soo shalt þou goo thurgh that grete citee,	295	The Virgin
Til þou come on-to the paleys real		Mary tells
Whiche þat he made, Costus the kyng soo free,		Adrian how
Bothe dyche and hyll, dongeon, tour, and wal.		to find
Many a knyght and many a sqwyer þou shal	299	Katharine in
ffynde there and see, the gates for to keepe :		Alexandria.
Be nought a-ferde, my sone shal defende þe fro all þe heepe,		
“ffro her manace and al her grete daungere.	302	
Blysse þe weel, and eke myn sones name		
Ryght in thi forhed looke þou crosse and bere :		
Than no man shal haue pouer the to blame		
Ne eke to lette, til þou come at þat dame.	306	
And where she dwelleth now wil I the say :		
Thou shal goo foorth and passe al þat aray,	308	
“Til þat þou see walles fayre and newe ;	309	
And at a posterne smal of foorme and shap—		The postern
On-to that same looke þat þou faste sewe,		
There nedeth the not neyther rynge ne rap,		
The gate shal open lightly at a swap ;	313	gate will
þou shal entre and fynde the swete may.		open, and he
Whiche shal be to hir ful grete afray,	315	will find
“ffor she shal wondir hough þat ony man	316	
Might entre to hir in þat preuy place ;		
hir book, hir stody shal she leue ryght than		Katharine
And looke on the with ful sober face.		studying.
haue þou no fer in no-maner cace	320	
Of hir questyons ne of hir apposayle,		
I shal enforce þe soo þou may not fayle	322	
“To yeue hir answeere to euery questyon.	323	
Soo seyde my sone to his apostellis twelue :		

- Bk. III. Ch. 5. 'Whan 3e stand,' he seyde, 'be-for þe dome
 Of many tyrauntys, & 3e a-lone 3our-selue,
 Thow þei 3ow calle lollard, whych or elue, 327
 Beth not dysmayd; I schall gyue 3ow answere,
 þer can no man swech langage now 3ow lere.' 329
- 'Ryght so schall þou haue in þi langage 330
 Swech wonder termes þat sche schall stoynd be,
 Cryst schall endewe þin eld[e] rekeles age
 Wyth eloquens whech full meruelous, trost me,
 Schall be to þe, & most specyaly sche 334
 Schall lyste ful sore after þis new doctrine,
 Alle her' wyttys þer-to wyll sche enclyne. 336
- "No wondyr it is, for my sone, in sothenesse, 337
 hath chose hyr specyaly aboue all oþer lyuande,
 ffor hyr uertew & for hyr grete clenness, he wyll wedd hyr in schort tyme comande;
 þou schall be massanger & tak þis werk on hande: 341
 þou schall brynge her' euene vn-to þis place
 þi-selue a-lone wyth-owtyn othyr' solace. 343
- "Thys same tokne schall þou to hyr bere: 344
 ffor if sche enqwyre who þe þedyr sent,
 þe same lord, sey a-geyn to hyr,
 Whom þat sche chees syttyng in parlement,
 ffor which choys sche was full nye I-schent 348
 Of hyr lordes, so as þei þan durst;
 Sche toke þe bettyr & forsok þe wurst. 350
- "Wyth-inne her' stody þus schall þou hyr fynde. 351
 Be not a-ferd of hyr sotell cunnyng,
 þou schall not fayle of answer to þe kynde
 Of all hyr wytte & all hyr stodyng.
 Go now forth fast, & hedyr sone her' bryng, 355
 Gyrde þe sore & tuk vp well þi lappe,
 Tak wyth þe þi staffe & ek þi cappe!" 357

- ‘Whan ye stande,’ he seyde, ‘be-fore the doom Bk. III. Ch. 6.
 Of many tyrantis, and ye allone your-selue,
 Though thei you calle lollard, wytche or elue, 327
 Beth not dismayed, I shal geue you answere,
 Ther can no man swiche langage now you lere.’ 329
- “Right soo shal þou haue in thi langage 330
 Swiche wonder termes þat she shal stoynd be,
 Criste shal endwe thyñ old rekles age ¹ MS. merueylous Christ will
 With eloquencye whiche ful merueylous,¹ troste me, give Adrian
 Shal be to the, and most specyally she 334 eloquence to
 fful sore after this newe doctryne speak to
 Alle hir wittes ther-to wil she enclyne. 336 Katharine,
- “No wonder it is, for my sone, in soothnesse, 337
 hath chosyn hir specyally a-boue all other lyuande,
 ffor hir vertu and for hir clennesses,
 he wyl wedde hir in short tyme comande ; whom He will
 þou shalt be massager and take this werk on handle : 341 soon wed,
 Thou shal bryngen hir euene on-to þis place
 Thi-self allone with-outen other solace. 343
- “This same tookne shalt thou to hir bere : 344
 ffor if she enquere hoo the thedyr sent,
 The same lord, sey ageyn to here, and who is
 Whom þat she chees syttyng in parlement, the Lord
 ffor whiche she was ful ny I-shent 348 whom she
 Of hir loordis, soo as thei thanne durst ; chose in her
 She took þe better and for-sook þe wurst. 350 Parliament.
- “With-Inne hir stody thus shal þou hir fynde. 351
 be not aferde of hir sootyl connynges,
 þou shalt nought fayle of answere to þe kynde
 Of all hir witte and al hir stodynges.
 Goo now foorth faste and heder soone hir brynge, 355 Adrian is to
 Girde þe soore and tukke vp weel thi lappe, start at once.
 Take wyth þe thy staf and eke thi cappe !” 357

Thus goth þis ermyte forth ryght in hys way, 358
 Trostyng on gydes swech as long to heuen; ;
 ffor thow he non aungellys þoo herd ne say,
 Wyth-oute dowte, her' ledyng browte hym euene
 On-to þis cyte, long or it was euyne, 362
 Nowt þat same day, but aftyr a full long whyle,
 Whan he had go & rune full many a myle. 364
 Thus wyll god wyth ful onlykly þing, 365
 As to þe werld, werk whan þat hym leest;
 he chesyth sume-tyme on-to hys hye werkyng
 ffull febyll & sekely, & a-vey can kest
 þe strong & wyse—poule seyth þis best 369
 In hys epistoles, who þat wyll hem rede.
 Ryght þus dede he her', wyth-outen drede. 371
 fful on-likly was þis man to þis massage, 372
 But þat god chese hym of hys goodenesse.
 he is now goo forth in hys vyage,
 Be hyllys¹ & pleyn, felde & wyldyrnesse; 1 r. hyth?
 he is now come wher' as þis emperesse 376
 Satte in her' gardeyn, stodying þan ful sore;
 Sodenly enterd set he is hyr be-for. 378
 fful sore a-stoynd wer' þei þan both-twoo, 379
 þe on for meruayle of hyr' hye beaute,
 The other' was marred, if we schuld sey soo
 þat sche a man so sodeynly þer gan se
 Be-for hyr knele now ryght in hyr secre. 383
 As, if ȝe wyll þis conceyt here mor' pleyn,
 þe ermyte in hys wytte was a-stoynd, certeyn, 385
 ffor he foud hyr þan lenyng on a booke, 386
 In sad stodye, ful solitarie all a-lone,
 And often a-mong to heuene gan sche look;
 But swych beute sey þis man neuyr none
 As now he sethe in þis same persone, 390

Ca^m. septimum.Bk. III. Ch. 7.

Thus gooth this Ermyte foorth right in his way, 358 Adrian is led
by heavenly
Guides to
Alexandria.
 Trustyng on gydes swiche as longen to heuene;
 ffor though he non Aungell's tho herde ne say, ¹ w.—st. on eras.
 Wyth-oute doute, here leedyng wyth ful myelde steuene¹
 Brovght hym to the citee longe be-fore² euene, ² all this on eras.
 Nought that same day, but after a ful long while,
 Whan he had goo and ronne ful many a myle. 364

 Thus wil god wyth ful onlykly thyng, 365
 As to the world, werke whan that hym lest;
 he cheseth somtyme on-to his hey werkynge
 fful febyl and sekely, and away can kest
 The strong and wyse—paule seith þis best 369
 In his epystoles, hoo þat wil hem reede;
 Ryght thus dede he here, wyth-outen dreede. 371

 fful onlykly was this man to this massage, 372 He finds
Katharine
 but þat god chees hym of hys goodnesse.
 he is now goon foorth in his viage,
 Be hiȝ and pleyȝ, feeld and wildernesse;
 he is now come where as this empressse 376
 Saat in hir gardeyn, stodyng ful sore;
 Sodeynly entred set is he hir before. 378 studying in
her garden.

 fful soore a-stoynd were thei þanne bothe-too, 379
 The on for meruayle of hir hy bewte,
 The other was marred, if we shulde sey soo,
 That she a man soo sodeynly there gan see
 Be-fore hir knelyng ryght in hir secree. 383 She is
astonisht to
see him
kneeling
before her.
 As, if ȝe wiln this conseit heere more pleyȝ,
 The ermyte in his witte was astoynd, certeyȝ, 385

 ffor he fond hir thanne leenyng on a book, 386
 In sad stodye, ful solitarie al alone,
 And ofte a-monge to heuene gan she look;
 but suche beaute saugh this man neuere noone
 As nough he seeth in this same persone, 390 Adrian has
never seen

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 6.</u>	Saue our lady—blessed mot sche be!—	
	So bryght & se[h]lynyng was þoo hyr fayr ble.	392
	“A, meruelous godd,” thowth he in hys mynde,	393
	“Wend I neuer a seyn swech creatour lyuung!	
	I trow, in erde as in womannes kynde	
	Is non so bryght, so beuteuous in all þing.	
	Blessed be ihesu, þat hye heuyn-kyng,	397
	þat me sent hedyr to se þis creature!	
	ffor aftyr our lady sche passeth wyth-oute mesure	399
	“Alle oper women.” And wyth þis þouth a-non	400
	Sche lokyd on hym, & was a-stoynd sore	
	Who þat he myght ouyr þoo wallys of ston,	
	þis olde man, clyme, or ellys if he wore	
	Crope thorow þe zate? þan meruelyth sche more,	404
	Syth þat hyr-self had be þer last,	
	ffor sche bar þe key, & sperd it wondyr fast.	406
	Wyth þis same stoynyng hyr bloode gan to renne	407
	Mech mor frescher þan it was be-fore,	
	In cheke & forhed newly doth it brenne;	
	And if sche fayr & bryght wer be-fore,	
	It is a-mendyd a hundred parte more	411
	As to hys syght, þis olde ermyte lame.	
	he knelyth down & seyth “all heyll, madame.”	413

Bk. III. Ch. 7.

Cam. 7m.

Sche ryght þus a-geyn on-to hym sayde:	414
“Good syr, tell me who may þis be—	
ffor of 3our persone be we sor dysmayde—	
þat we so sodenly 3ow in our presence see,	
I-come þus a-lone wyth-owte oper mence?	418
þis ask we fyrst, for sekyr, wete we ¹ must;	¹ MS. ws?
Wheythyr þis is truthe or apparens, it schall be wust.	420
“What-maner mane myght make 3ow so maisterlye	421
To clyme our wallys whech are so hye?	
I trow, be enchaun[t]ment or be nygromancye	

- Saue oure lady—blyssed mote she be!— *Bk. III. Ch. 7.*
 Soo bryght and shynynge was tho hir fair blee. 392
- “O merueyleous god,” thought he in his mynde, 393
 “Wende I neuere a seen swiche a creature lyuynge.
 I trowe, in erthe as in womans kynde
 Is noon soo bryght, soo bewtyvous in al thyng.
 blyssed be ihesu, þat hy heuene-kyng, 397
 That me sente heder too see this creature!
 ffor after oure lady she passeth wyth-oute mesure 399
- “Alle other women.” and wyth this thought a-noon 400
 She loked on hym, and was a-stoynd sore
 how þat he myght ouere tho walles of stoon,
 This olde man, clymbe, or ellis if he wore
 Crope thurgh the yate? thanne merueyleth she more, 404
 Sith that hir-self had been there last,
 ffor she baar the keye, and spered it wonder fast. 406
- Wyth this same stoyngene hir blood gan to renne 407
 Meche more freshere than it was be-fore,
 In cheke and forhed newly dooth it brenne;
 And if she fayr and bryght were hoore,¹ ^{1 = ore, on er. (or. before)}
 It is a-mended an hundird part more 411
 As to his sight, this olde ermyte lame.
 he kneleth down and seith “al heil, madame.” 413

so lovely a
lady as
Katharine.

She wonders
how he, so
old, could
climb over
her walls.

Adrian says
“All hail!”
to her.

Cam. octauum.

Bk. III. Ch. 8.

- She right thus ageyn on-to hym sayde : 414
 “Good sir, telle me how may this bee—
 ffor of your persone be we sore dismayde—
 That we soo sodeynly you in oure presens see,
 I-come thus alone wyth-outen other menee? 418
 This aske we first, for sekyr weten we must,
 Whedir this is truthe or apparens, it shal be wust. 420
- “What-maner man¹ myght make yow soo maisterlye 421
 To clymbe oure wallys whiche arn soo hye? ^{1 overlined.}
 I trowe, be enchauntement or be nygramauncye

She asks him
to explain
how he came.

Katharine
asks Adrian
who enabled
him to climb
over her
walls.

Bk. III. Ch. 7.

Are 3e entyrd now her' be-for' our' y3e.
 We wyll wete pis þing, be 3e neuyr so slye, 425
 Who 3aue 3ow hardynesse for to be so bolde
 Wyth-owte our' [leue] to entre to owr' holde? 427
 "ffor of all þe lordes & knyts þat we haue 428
 Is non so hardy but we 3efe hym leue,
 But if he wyll reklesly hys lyff laue,
 Onys to entre, neyþer morow ne eue,
 Our' priuy seere. þer-for is it repreue 432
 On-to 3our age to tak swech þing on 3ow;
 It wyll not fall happyly on-to 3our' prow. 434
 "Ther-for' now tell me schortly in a clause: 435
 Who 3aue 3ow boldenesse to do pis grete folye?
 Sekyr may 3e be we wyll wete þe cause,
 And euery mene þorow whech 3e wer' hardy,
 Perauentur' if treson be found in our' meny. 439
 þis schall 3e telle, or 3e fro vs weende;
 3e gete of vs elles no ryght fayr' ende." 441

Bk. III. Ch. 8.Ca^m. 8^m.

BE pis was þe erymyte counforted a-geyn), 442
 ffor wyth bolde spech he 3aue pis answe
 And wyth manly voys þus gan he seyn):
 "Sche þat me sent is gretter', if 3e wyll lere,
 Than ony lady in erde þat dwellyth her'; 446
 And eke þe lest þat longyth to hyr bour'
 Is more of astate þan kyng or emperour'. 448
 "Eke for 3e ween) þat 3e be so fayre, 449
 So rych in welth as it is seyde, certayn),
 3et may 3e not to hyr' beaute repayr',
 Ne neuyr 3e schall, sothly dar I sayn).
 Boþe hyr & 3ow wyth eyne haf I seyn, 453
 I may þe mor' boldely mak þis commendyng:
 Sche paseth 3ow, certayn), in all-manner þing. 455

- Am ye now entred here be-for oure eye. Bk. III. Ch. 8.
- We wyl wete this thyng, be ye neuere soo slye, 425
- hoo yaf yow hardynesse for to be so bold,
- Wyth-outen oure leene to entre in to oure hold? 427
- “ffor of alle the lordes and knyghtes þat we haue 428 None of
Katharine's
lords would
- Is noon so hardy, but we yeue hym leene,
but he wil reklesly his lyf laue,
- Ones to entre, neyther morwe ner eue, come into
her private
retreat.
- Oure preyu secree. therfore is it to¹ repreue ^{1 overlined.} 432
- On-to youre age, to take suche thyng on you ;
- It wil not falle happyly on-to youre prow. 434
- “Therfore telle me shortly now in a clause : 435
- ho yaue you boldenesse to doo this gret foly ? Who has let
Adrian in ?
- Sekyr may ye bee we wil wete þe cause,
And euery mene thurgh whiche ye were hardy,
- Peraunture if treson be founde in oure meny. 439 Has any of
her house-
hold been a
traitor ?
- This shal ye telle, er ye fro vs wende ;
- Ye gete of vs ellis no¹ right fayr ende.” ^{1 or. no good} 441

Ca^m. nouum.

Bk. III. Ch. 9.

- B**E this was the ermyte comforted ageyn), 442
- ffoorth with bold speche he yaf this answer
- And with manly voys thus gan he seyn :
- “She þat me sente is grettere, if ye wil lere,
- Than ony lady in erthe þat dweleth here ; 446 Adrian says
the highest
Lady sent
him.
- And eke the leest þat longeth to hir bour
- Is more of astate than kyng or emperour. 448
- “Eke, for ye wene þat ye ben soo fayre, 449 A Lady who
is more beau-
tiful than
even Katha-
rine,
- Soo ryche in welthe as it is seyde, certayn,
- Yeet may ye not to hir bewte repayre,
- Ne neuere ye shal, soothly dar I sayn.
- I haue you bothe seen, ther-of I am ful fayn, 453
- I may the more boldely make þis commendying :
- She passeth you, certeyn, in al-maner good thyng. 455

Bk. III. Ch. 8. "Eke hyr grete power' þat is spred so fer', 456
 Sche may doo what þat euer sche lyst;
 ffor be 3on 3ate whech 3e dyd sper'
 Sche browte me in; sekyr, or I it wyst.
 If sche be wrothe, no man skapyth hyr fyst; 460
 þer-for' a-vyse 3ow, lady, what 3e wyll say,
 lest þat my lady turne fro 3ow a-way." 462

Bk. III. Ch. 9.Ca^m. 9^m.

Than gan þe qween merueyle of þis word, 463
 Mor' þan sche dyd euyr hyr lyue be-fore
 Of ony mater. cryst had made hys horde
 Or þis ermyte cam, & leyd hys grete tresour'
 Ryght in hyr hert empredd full sore; 467
 ffor þow 3 he sent þe ermyte as hys massanger',
 Or þe ermyte cam crist hym-self was ther'. 469
 Ryght as gabriell, whan he fro heuene was sent 470
 On-to our' lady to do þat hye massage,
 In to nazareth in forme of man¹ he went, ^{1 MS. o man?}
 ffayr' & fresch, & 3ong eke of age,
 But er' that he cam on-to þis maydes cage, 474
 Cryst was ther', as we in bokes rede:
 Ryth so dyd he her', if we wyll take hede. 476
 But þow 3 god wer' come as þan to hyr hert, 477
 It was fer' as 3et fro hyr knowlechyng.
 þer-for' wyth wordes þat wer' full smert
 Sche turneth a-geyn on-to þe same þing
 Whech we left er', & þus in apposyng 481
 Sche þus procedyth, sey[i]ng to þis man:
 "Who may 3our' lady be so worthy woman 483
 "As 3e commende now in 3our tale to me 484
 Of hyr hye worchepe & also of hyr wytte?
 þe worthyest of all women we ween' þat we be,
 We herd neuyr of non worthyer' 3ytte.
 Wher' lyghte hyr londe, we wold fayn know itte; 488

"Eke hir grete power þat is spred soo fer, 456 *Bk. III. Ch. 9.*
 She may doo what that euere she lyst ; and whose
 ffor be youre yate, whiche ye dede sper, power is
 She brouthe me in, seker, er I it wylt. almighty.
 If she be wroth, no man skapeth hir fist ; 460
 Therefore avyse yow, lady, what ye wyl say,
 lest þat my lady turne fro you a-way." 462

Ca^m. decimum.*Bk. III. Ch. 10.*

Thanne gan the queen meruayle of þis woord, 463 Katharine
 More than she dede euere hir lyf before wouders at
 Of ony mater. crist had maad his hoord this.
 Er this ermyte cam, and leyde his gret tresore
 Ryght in hir herte empredded ful soore ; 467 Tho' Christ
 ffor though he sente the ermyte as his massanger', is in her
 Er the ermyte cam, cryst hym-self was there. 469 heart,

Right as gabriel whanne he froo heuene was sent 470
 On-to oure lady to doo that hye massage,
 In to nazareth in foorme of a man he went,
 ffayr and fresh, and yong eke of age,
 But er that he cam to this maydenes cage, 474
 Crist was there, as we in bookys rede :
 Right soo dede he here, if ye wil take heede. 476

But though god were com as þanne to hir herte, 477
 It was fer as yet fro hir knowlechyng.
 Therefore wyght¹ woordys tho were ful smerte, ^{1 = wyth} she does not
 She turned a-geyn on-to the same thyng yet know it.
 Whiche we lefte ere, and thus in apposynge 481
 She þus procedeth, seyng on-to this man :
 "how may youre lady be so worthi a woman" 483 Katharine
 asks Adrian

"As ye comende in youre tale now on-to mee 484
 Of hir hygh wurship and also of hir wyt?
 The wurthyest of alle women we wene þat we bee,
 We herd neuere of noon worthiere yit.
 Where lyghit hir lond, we wolde fayn knowe it ; 488

Ek. III. Ch. 9. Who is her lorde, or wheythyr' is sche lorde-lees?
 3e telle vs þingys whech we holde but lees. 490
 "Wheythyr' is þat dame lyuyng in spousayle, 491
 Or leuyth sche sool as we do now?
 If sche be weddyd, sykyrly sche may fayle
 Mych of hyr wyll, for sche mote nedys bowe
 On-to hyr lord, loke he neuer so row; 495
 And if sche lyue be hyr-self a-lone,
 þan may sche make full oft mech mone 497
 "Ryght for vexacyon of hyr lordes a-boute— 498
 þis know we well, we are vsed þer-to.
 þer-for, goodeman, put vs oute of doute,
 Tell vs þe soþe, be it ioie or woo
 Whech þat þis lady most is vsed too; 502
 And we wyll þank & rewarde 3ow eke
 Wyth swech plente þat it schall 3ow leke." 504

Ek. III. Ch. 10.Ca^m. 10^m.

"I-wys, madame," seyð þis ermyte þoo, 505
 "þe grete lordscheppe of my lady seureyn
 Is spredd ouyr heuyn, & ouyr erd þer-too,
 And ouyr þe see eke, sothely to seyn;
 þer comyth noo sune, no dewys ne no reyn 509
 But be comaundement of hyr lord & hyr desyre—
 Swech is hyr myght & all-so hyr powere. 511
 "hyr ladyschepe eke þer-to is so strong 512
 And euyr so stedfast, þat it may not fayle,
 þer may no man, treuly, do hyr wrong;
 ffor þow 3 þei doo, þei lese her' trauayle.
 þer may no myght a-geyn hyr myght a-vayle, 516
 hyr lord & sche, þei lyue in full grete pees,
 Wyth many mylyons of men & mekyll prees. 518
 "he is hyr lord, & eke to hym sche is 519
 Moder' & noryse, 3et is sche a mayde—
 lord & sone boþe to-gedyr I-wys,

hoo is hir lord, or wheder is she lordles?		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 10.</i>
Ye telle vs thyngis whiche we holde but lees.	490	who this noblest of women is.
“Whedir is þat dame leuyng in spousayle,	491	Is she married, or single?
Or leueth she sool as we doo now?		
If she be wedded, sekerly, she may fayle		
Myche of hir wyl, for she mote nedes bow		
On-to hir lord, looke she neuere soo row;	495	
And if she lyue be hir-self allone,		
Thanne may she make ofte ful moche mone	497	
“Right for vexacyon of hir lordes a-bowte—	498	If she's single, her lords must worry her.
This knowe we weel, we am vsd ther-too.		
Therefore, goodeman, put vs oute of dowte,		
Telle vs þe sooth, be it Ioye or woo,	¹ 3 last words on eras.	
Whiche þat this lady most absenteth hir froo ¹ ;	502	
And we wil thanke and reward yow eke		
Wyth swich plente þat it shal yow leke.”	504	

Ca^m. vndecimum.

“I-wys,” madame,” seyde this ernyte thoo,	505	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 11.</i> Adrian says his Lady has Lordship over heaven, earth, and sea.
“The gret lordship of my lady souereyn		
Is spred ouere heuene, and ouere erthe þer-too,		
And ouere the see eke, soothly for to seyn;		
Ther cometh noon sonne, no dewes ne no reyn	509	
But be commaundement of hir lord and hir desire—		
Swiche is hir myght and also hir powyre.	511	
“hir ladyship therto eke is soo strong	512	Adrian's Lady is so strong,
And euere soo stedfast, þat it may not fayle,		
Ther may no man, trewely, doo hir wrong;		
ffor þough þei doo, thei lese her travayle.		
There may no wyght ageyn hir myght pre[u]ayle,	516	that no one can prevail against her.
hir lord and she, thei leue in ful grete pees		
Wyth many myllyons of men and meche precs.	518	
“he is hir lord, and eke to hym she is	519	She is the Mother of her Lord,
Moder and norse, yet is she a mayde—		
lord and sone bothe to-gedyr I-wys,		

Bk. III. Ch. 10. þis longyth to hym, & ȝet ist,¹ as I sayde— ¹ = is it
 leuyth my tale & beth no-þing dysmayde— 523
 ffor sche is modyr & also clene virgyne ;
 þis schall ȝe know aftyr well & fyne." 525

Bk. III. Ch. 11.

Cam. 11m.

"**S**Er," seyð þe qween, "now merueyle I ful sore 526
 ffor ȝe prech of þis hye degre
 Of þis same lady ; for ȝe seyð þis more
 Sche passyth all other in very felycite
 Whech þat be her' now or euyr-mor' schall be : 530
 þan wondyr we sore þat sche sent vs here
 So euyll arayd, so sympyll a massengere. 532
 "ffor to hyr astate it had be full conuenient 533
 To send moo men, & not send on a-lone,
 Wher' sche so many hath at hyr comaundement ;
 Eke, as me pinkyth, to swech a grete persone
 Schuld long, all seruauentes þat ar' in hyr wone 537
 To clothe mor' clenly, for worchyp of hyr hous ;
 ffor, syr, ȝour clothyng semeth not ryght precyous !" 539

Bk. III. Ch. 12.

Cam. 12m.

"**M**A-dame," seyð he, "if ȝe wold me leue, 540
 I wold tell ȝow pleyndly þe cause & why
 To mak me massenger' dyd þis lady meue.
 ffor þow þat sche hafe many mylyons of meny,
 Sche is in hert neuer þe hyer', hardyly ; 544
 And swech as sche is, ar' hyr seruauentes, lo ;
 ffor all þat loue hyr þei must do ryght so. 546
 "ȝe wote well, madame, for mych þing ȝe know, 547
 þat gostly aray passeth in souereyn wyse
 Bodyly dysgysyng, in hye & in lowe ;
 þe sete of uerteu is sett in swych asyse,
 Euen as þei witnesse, clerkes þat be wyso, 551
 þat treuth is fayrer' be many degrees
 þan euer was cleynd, þe fayr' lady of grees. 553

This longeth to hym, and yet eft, as I sayde,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 11.</i>
leueth my tale and be no-thing dismayde !	523	
ffor she is moder and also clene virgyn ;		and yet a Virgin.
This shal ye knowe after weel and fyn."	525	

Ca^m. duodecimum.

Bk. III. Ch. 12.

"Sere," seyde the queen, "now merueyle I ful soore.		Katharine wonders why so great a Lady
ffor ye soo preche of this hy degree	527	
Of þis same lady ; for ye seyde this more		
She passeth alle other in very felycyte	¹ MS. er	
Whiche þat ben here now or ¹ euere-more shul be :	530	
Thanne wonder we soore that she sente us here		sent so poor a Messenger.
Soo eucl arayed, soo symple a massangere.	532	
"ffor to hir astate it had be conuenient	533	
To a sentte mo men thanne to sende oon alone,		She should have sent many,
Where she soo many hath at hir comavndement ;		
Eke, as me þenketh, to suche a grete persone		
Shuld longe, alle seruauntis þat arn in hir wone	537	
To clothe more clenly, for wurship of hir hous ;		grandly clad.
ffor, sir, youre clothynge semeth not ryght presyous."	539	

Ca^m. 13^m.

Bk. III. Ch. 13.

"MAdame," seyde he, "if ye wolde me leue,	540	Adrian tells Katharine
I wulde telle you pleylnly the cause and why		
To make me massanger dede this lady meeue.		
ffor though þat she haue many myllyons of meny,		
She is in herte neuere the hyere, hardly ;	544	
And suche as she is, arn hir seruauntis, loo ;		
ffor alle tho louen hir, thei must doo right soo.	546	
"Ye wete weel, madame, for meche thyng ye knowe,		
That goostly aray passeth in souereyn a vyse ¹	¹ orig. wyse	that spiritual clothing is far above bodily.
Bodily dysgysynge, in hy and in lowe ;		
The sete of vertu is set in suche assyse,		
Euene as thei witenessen, clerkys þat be wyse,	551	
That truthe is fayrere be many degrees		
Than euere was Eleyne, the fayre lady of grees.	553	

- Bk. III. Ch. 12. " Therfor' þat lady þat me to 3ow now sent, 554
 Desyreth mor' gostly inwardly aray
 þan golden clothys spred on bodyes gent.
 And ferthermor' 3et boldly dar I say,
 Sche hath be-fore hyr in hyr paleys ay 558
 Many a thowsand wyth faces bryght & schene,
 Swech as in erde 3et neuyr wer' sene. 560
 " Sche sayde to me, þat hye noble qweene, 561
 þat my seruyce plesyd hyr so weele
 þat sche wold send me wyth þis aray mene
 To sey hyr wyll on-to 3ow euery dele.
 And be þis processe may 3e see & feel : 565
 If 3e wyll þis ladyes ffrenchyp now wyne,
 ffro werdly delyte mote 3e part & twynne. 567
 " ffor erdely welthys sett my lady at nowte, 568
 þerfor' hyr seruantes schull not haue ;
 Who-so hyr loue, holy mote be her' thowte
 Wyth deuoute lyuyng her sowles to saue ;
 þe mor' þei forsake her', þe mor' may þei craue 572
 Whan þat þei come þer' her' lady is,
 To hyr regyon wher' þei dwell in blys. 574
 " But, lady, to þe purpos now wyll we goo : 575
 Thys blessed qween a tokne dyd me take
 Whan sche me sent 3our' reuerens on-to ;
 þus sayd sche þan : ' my massenger' I þe make
 On-to 3en maydyn ; sche may it not forsake 579
 þe tokne I take þe, so enpre[n]ded it¹ is ^{1 overlined.}
 On-to hyr hert sche can it not mys.' 581
 " Thys is þe tokne þat 3e syttyng in parlement, 582
 Wyth princes, dukes & erles in-fere,
 þis was 3our answer' & þis 3our entent :
 3e wold no lorde ne kyng haue, but if he were
 So strong, so myghty þat he had neuyr fere, 586
 So fayr', so gentyll þat no man wer' hym lych,
 So enduyd wyth good þat no man wer' so rych ; 588

- " Therefore þat lady that me to yow now sente, 554 *Bk. III. Ch. 13.*
 Desireth more goostly inwardly aray
 Than goolden clothes sprede on bodyes gente. *His Lady (the Virgin Mary)*
 And fethermore 3et boldely dar I say,
 She hath beforð hir in hir paleys ay 558 *has Angela in her service,*
 Many a thousand with faces bryght and shene,
 Swiche as in erthe yet neuere were seene. 560
 " She seyde to me, þat hy noble queene,
 That my seruyse plesed hir so weel
 That she wolde sende me with þis aray mene
 To sey hir wil on-to yow euery deel.
 And be this processe may ye see and feel : 565 *to tell Katharine her will.*
 If ye wil this ladyes frenshyp now wyne,
 ffor wordly delyte mote ye parte and twynne. 567
 " ffor erthely welthes set my lady at nought, 568
 Therefore hir seruantes shul not haue ;
 ho-soo hir loue, holy¹ mote be her thought, ¹ orig. hooly
 With deuoute lyuyng her sowles to saue ;
 The more thei forsake heere, the more mon þei craue 572 *Adrian tells Katharine*
 Whanne that þei come there her lady is,
 To regyon where thei dwelle in blys. 574
 " But, lady, to þe purpos now wil I goo : 575
 The blissed queen a tooken dede me take *that the Virgin bade him*
 Whan she me sente *your* reuerens on-too ;
 Thus seyde she : ' my massanger I the make
 On-to yone mayden ; she may it not forsake 579
 The token I take the, soo enprended it is
 on-to hir herte, she can it not mys.' 581
 " This is the tokene þat ye sitting in parlement, 582 *remind her of her answer in her Parliament,*
 With pryncys, dukes and Erlis in prees there,¹ ¹ in p. th. on er.
 This was *your* answe, and þis is² youre entent, ² overl.
 Ye wolde no lord ne kyng haue, but if he were
 Soo strong, soo myghty þat he had noo fere, 586
 Soo fayr, soo gentel that no man were hym lyche,
 Soo endued wyth good þat no man were so ryche ; 588

- Bk. III. Ch. 12.* "Thys was at þat tyme, lady, 3our desyre 589
 þat þis lorde whech þat 3e wold haue
 Schuld lyue euermore, neuyr wyth watyr ne fyre
 Be dreynt ne brent, but eyr hym-selfe saue ;
 3e wold be wyth hym eyr, & neuyr fro hym waue. 593
 þis was 3our wyll, & fullfyllid schall it be,
 My lady sent 3ow bode, if 3e wyll folow me. 595
- "ffor þis same lord whech wyth my lady is, 596
 he hathe alle þese, mor' pleynteously, I telle,
 þan ony man in þis world may pink, I-wys ;
 ffor of alle uertues he is þe very welle.
 Come 3e forth wyth me hom to my celle : 600
 And if 3e fynde my wordes be vnstable,
 A-nopir day a-rest me be 3our' constable ! 602
- "3e schull hafe hyr lord & hyr sone eke, 603
 A gracyous lynage þat may noght mys,
 A merueylous kynrode, to lerne if 3e leke ;
 he is hyr lorde, sche hys modyr is ;
 he is hyr sone & sche mayde, I-wys ; 607
 he made hyr, sche bar' hym in hyr wombe,
 þe synnes of þe werld he clenstyth, þis lombe." 609

- T**han was þis mayden sor' marred in mynde— 610
 Men myght se in hyr colour, in cheke & in pytte
 So ran hyr bloode, so changed hyr kynde—
 ffor neuyr was sche or now put in þis wytte ;
 Sche is in swech a trauns, wheyther' sche stant or sytte 614
 Sche wote not hyr-selue ; sche is in swech cas,
 ffor to sey a soth, sche wote not wher' sche was. 616
- Be-twyx too pingys so is sche newly falle, 617
 Whech sche schall leue or whech sche schall take.
 If sche leue hyr lawe whych hyr lordes alle

“ This was at that tyme, lady, youre desyre 589 *Bk. III. Ch. 13.*
 That þis lord whiche þat ye wolde haue
 Shulde leuen euere-more, neyther wyth water ner fyre
 Be dreynt ne brent, but euere hym-self saue ;
 Ye wolde¹ be with hym euere and neuere fro hym waue. 593
 This was *your* wil, and fulfilld shal it bee, ¹ overl.
 Mi lady sente þow bode, and ye wil folwe mee. 595

“ffor þis same lord whiche with my lady is,
he hath alle these, more plenteuously, I you telle,
Thau ony man in þis world may thenke, I-wys ;
ffor of alle vertues he is the very welle.

Come ye forth with me hom to my celle :
and if ye fynde my woordys be vnstable,
A-nother day areste me be youre constable !

596 This Lord
is with the
Virgin.

600 Katharine
must come
and see Hin.

602

“ Ye shul haue hir lord and hir sone eke,	603	Katharine shall haue the Virgin's Lord and Son,
A gracious lynage that may not mys,		
A merueylous kynrede, to lerne if ye lyke ;		
he is hir lord, she is moder his ¹ ;	1 m. h. on er.	
he is hir sone and she mayden, I-wys ;	607	
he made hir, she bare hym in hir wombe,		
The synnes of þis world he clenسد, þis lombe.”	609	who washes

Ca^m. 14.

Thanne was thys mayden sore marred in mende— 610
 Men myght see in hir colour, in cheke and in pyt
 Soo ran hir blod, soo chaunged hir kende—
 ffor neuere was she er now put in this wyt;
 She is in swiche a trauns, whether she stant or syt 614
 She wot not hir-selue; she is in suche caas,
 ffor to sey a sooth, she wyst not where she was. 616

Katharine is
 in a trance.

Be-twyx too pingis soo is she newly falle, 617
Whiche she shal leue or wyche she shal take.
If she leue hir lawe whiche hir lordis alle

Bk. III. Ch. 13.

hold at þis tyme, & now it forsake,
 falle to a newe for a straunge lordes sake, 621
 Sche seeth not what pereH in þis mater' is.
 But for þe ermyte spake of þis lordes blys, 623
 hys wordes haue enclyned now ful sor' hyr þowte 624
 þat sche schall haue a þing long desyred.
 Alle hyr goddys & hyr goode set sche at nowte,
 So sor' is hyr hert wyth þis loue I-fyred,
 It schall no mor', sche cast, wyth þe werld be myred. 628
 þer-for to þe ermyte eft sche gan þus seye :
 " All þour informacyon I ber' well a-weye, 630
 " Saue þat of o þing grete merueyle I ber'. 631
 3e seyde me ryght now whan 3e told þour talle,
 þat þis grete lady, if I wolde lere,
 Bar' a noble chyld wyth-outen any bale,
 And 3et sche is a mayden at asay & sale. 635
 þis same mater' is a-geyn¹ kynde ; ^{1 r. ageynis}
 What, wene 3e, ser', þat I wer' so blynde 637
 " þat I cowde not vndyrstand of generacyon 638
 þe preuy weyes? þowe I non excersy[c]e
 haue had in my lyffe of swech occupacyon,
 Ne neuyr wyll haue, be þat hye iustyce
 Whech 3e to me now newly gan deuyse, 642
 3et know I wele, & ilk¹ man it knowyth, ^{1 r. ilka}
 Who wyll ha chyld, seed sume-tyme [he] sowyth." 644

Bk. III. Ch. 14.Cam. 14^m.

" **W**yth-outen seed, lady, or wyth-outyn synne 645
 May god make a man, & so he dede or now.
 ffor if we at Adam or at Eue begyne,
 It is full playn for to schew on-to þow :
 ffor whan þat same Adam slept in a swow, 649
 Our' lord owte of hys syde þan made Eue.
 þan be þis ensaumple playnly may 3e preue : 651

holde at þis tyme, and an other make,¹ ¹ an o. m. on er. *Bk. III. Ch. 14.*

ffalle to a newe for a straunge lordys sake, 621

She seeth not what pereff in this mater is.

But [for] the Ermyte spak of þis lord of blys, 623

his woordys haue enclyned now ful soore hir thought 624

That she shal haue a þing longe desyred.

Alle hir goddis and hir good set she at nought,

Soo sore is hir herte with þis loue I-fyred,

It shal no more, she casteth, *wyth* þe world be myred. 628

Therefore to the ermyte eft she gan thus seye :

"Alle your informacyon I bere weel a-weye, 630

Katharine
counts her
Gods as
nothing.

"Saue þat of oon þing grete merueyle I bere. 631

Ye seyde me right now, whan 3e told your tale,

That þis grete lady, if I wolde lere,

Bar a noble chyld *wyth*-outen ony bale,

And yet she is a mayden) at a-say and sale. 635

This same mater is a-geyns kynde ;

What, wene ye, sir, þat I were so blynde 637

She asks
Adrian

how his Lady
can have a
child, and yet
be a Virgin.

"That I cowde not vndirstonde of generacyon) 638

The preuy weyes ? though I not excercyse¹ ¹ or. excersyse

haue had in my lyf of suche occupacyon),

Ne neuere wil haue, be þat hey Iustyse

Whiche to me now newly ye gan) deuyse, 642

Yet knowe I weel, and ilke man) knoweth,

hoo wil haue a child, seel somtyme he soweth." 644

Children
come from
seed.

Ca^m. 15^m.

Bk. III. Ch. 15.

"**W**yth-outen seed, lady, or *wyth*-outen synne 645

May god make a man, and soo he dede er now :

ffor if we at Adam or at Eue begynne,

It is ful pleyn for to shewe on-to yow :

ffor whan þat same Adam slepte in a swow,

Oure lord oute of his syde þan) made Eue. 649

Thanne be þis example pleynly may ye preue :

651

that as God
made Eve out
of Adam,

Bk. III. Ch. 14. "Syth þat he made a uirgyn of a man, 652
 he was of power eke for to make
 A man of a uirgyne—þus he werk can,
 þis gracyous lorde wech 3e to make
 Chosen in 3our parlement. 3et for 3our sake 656
 A-nother demonstracyon in þis same mater'
 I wyll to 3ow schewe, if 3e wyll it here. 658
 "þer may no man, if we take good hede, 659
 Preue be any reson who all þing be-gan;
 Speke we now of creatures & leue þe godhede,
 þe sune & þe mone, þe bryght & þe wan,
 Of her' be-gynnyng þer can now no man 663
 haue no remembrauns ne tell in what plyght
 þat þei wer' made, eyther day or nyght. 665
 "Than, syth no man may of þese erdely werkis 666
 Tell þe pryuy cause, no wondyr is, certeyn,
 þat þei of feyth schull¹ tell ony merkys; ^{1 r. schuld not}
 ffor feyth is not prouable, as clerkys seyn.
 þer-for our wyttes must be fful beyn 670
 To leue swech þingys þat we can not proue—
 lete argumentys walk, þei ar' not to our be-houe." 672

Bk. III. Ch. 15.Ca^m. 15^m.

"**W**hat aylyd þat lord þat all myght hadde, 673
 In our frele natur hym for to clothe,
 To leue þe bettyr & þus take þe badde,
 Or ellys at hys lykyng to kepe styll boþe?
 Was he wyth mankynde euer or now wrothe, 677
 Was he euyr offendyd? we wolde wete fayn
 What 3e to þis mater' now can vs sayn." 679

Bk. III. Ch. 16.Ca^m. 16^m.

"**F**Or myschef, madame, þat man fell in 680
 Whan Adam þe appyll ete in paradys,
 Wold þis lord in erde lowly take hys ine,

- "Sith þat he made a virgyn of a man, 652 *Bk. III. Ch. 15.*
 he was of power eke for to make
 A man of a virgyne—thus he werke can,
 This gracyous lord, whiche ye not slake¹ ^{1 n. s. on er.}
 To chesyn in youre parlement. ȝet for ȝour sake 656
 A-nother demonstracyon in þis same matere
 I wil to yow shewe, if ye wil it heere. 658
- "There may no man, if we take good heed, 659
 Prouen be ony reson how alle þingis be-gan;
 Speke we of creaturis and leue the godhed,
 The sonne and the mone, þe bryght and þe wan,
 Of her begynnyng ther' can now no man 663
 haue in¹ remembrauns and telle in what plyght ^{1 r. no}
 That þei were made, eyther day or nyght. 665
- "Than sith that no man may of these erthely werkys 666
 Telle þe preuy cause, no wonder is, certeyn,
 That þei of feith shulde telle ony merkys;
 ffor feith is not prouable, as clerkis seyn.
 Therefore oure wittes musten ben ful beyn 670
 To leue suche þingis that we can not proue—
 lete argumentys walke, þei arn not to oure behoue." 672
- "What eyled that lord þat al myght hadde, 673
 In oure freel nature hym for to clothe,
 To leue the beter and thus taken the badde
 Or ellys at his likyng to kepe stille bothe?
 Was he with mankeende euere or nought wrothe, 677
 Was he euere offended? we wulde wyte fayn
 What ye to þis mater now can vs sayn." 679

so He can
make a man
out of a
Virgin.

Moreover,
no one can
explain how

the Sun and
Moon were
made.

Faith is not
provable.

Let argu-
ments be.

Katharine
asks why
Christ took
man's worse
nature.

Ca. 16m.

Bk. III. Ch. 16.

- "For myschef, madame, þat man fel to¹ then 680
 Whan Adam the Appel eete in paradys, ^{1 to on er.}
 Wulde this lord in erthe louly take his en,² ^{2 orig. in}

Adrian an-
swers: To
undo the mis-
chief done by
Adam's
apple-eating,
P 2

Bk. III. Ch. 16. Not leuyng þat place full of delys,
 But boþe her' & ther' at hys deuys 684
 he dwelt, as we leue, our' soules to lech—
 þis semyth to 3ow full wondyrfull spech! 686
 "And þat same lord, as nobyll marchaunt, 687
 hys blood for our' synne on crosse wold spylle.
 Of þat same deth we may make a-vaunt,
 It waschyth from vs alle þat we dede ille.
 Of our' feyth, lady, þis is þe grettest bylle, 691
 þat cryst hys bloode payed for' our' synnes alle;
 Best of all marchaunt's þer-for' we hym calle." 693

Bk. III. Ch. 17.Ca^m. 17^m.

"**W**ho may 3e couple now þat 3e¹ haue sayd? 694
 he is lord of all, eyr', watyr & londe, ¹ MS. we
 lyuyng in pees wyth hys modyr & mayde;
 her-too þus 3e adde þat he is so bonde
 þat he suffrede to be slayn wyth wykkyd honde— 698
 Who can 3e a-cord þat þis gret possessyoun
 Schuld long on-to hym, & eke þis strong passyon? 700
 "Who may þat lord lyuyn euyr & ay 701
 Whan he is coupled of contraries too?
 ffor of man & godd hys persone, as 3e say,
 hath take resultauns, & 3et sey 3e moo
 he is boþe etern & temporall, loo. 705
 lok if 3our' spech be now no heresye!
 þis wote I weel þat¹ it offendyth philosophye." ¹ to be om.

Bk. III. Ch. 18.Ca^m. 18^m.

"**T**O þese questyouns þus I answe: 708
 ffor it paseth nature & all hyr scole.
 Natur' fayleth whan we feyth lere,
 ffor our' be-leue standyth so sole, 711
 Wyth þeis argumentis which are full of dolo¹ ¹ = Lat. dolus
 Wyll sche not medelle be no-maner' preue—
 Ther' wer' no mede þan in our' be-leue. 714

Not leuyng that place ful of delys, Bk. III. Ch. 16.
 But heere and there at his deuys 684
 he dwelt, has we leue, oure soulys to leche—
 This semeth to yow ful wondirful speche ! 686
 “ And that same lord as a noble marchaunt 687
 his blood for oure synne on crosse wolde spylle.
 Of þat same deeth we may make avaunt, and to spill
His own
blood to
cleanse us.
 It washeth from vs al þat we dede Ille.
 Of oure feyth, lady, this is the grettest bille, 691
 That cryst his blood payed for oure synnes alle ;
 Best of alle marchauntis therfore we hym calle.” 693

(Questio.)

“ **H**OW may ye couple now that ye haue seyde ? 694 Katharine
asks how
Christ can be
Lord of all,
 he is lord of aH, Eyr, water, and londe,
 leuyng in pees with his moder and mayde ;
 her-too thus ye adde¹ that he is soo bonde ¹ or. hadde
 That he suffred to be slayn wyth wykked honde. 698 and yet slain
by wicked
hands ;
 how can ye accorde that this grete possessyon
 Shulde longe on-to hym, and eke þis stronge passyon ? 700
 “ how may that lord leuen euer and ay 701
 Whan he was coupled of contraries too ?
 ffor of man and god his persone, as ye say,
 hath take resultans, and yet sey ye moo
 he is bothe eternal and temporaH alsoo. 705 how be both
eternal and
mortal.
 looke if 3oure speche be now noon heresye !
 This wote I weel þat it offendeth philosophie.” 707

Ca^m. 17^m.Bk. III. Ch. 17.

“ **T**O these questions thus I answe : 708 Adrian tells
her.
 ffor it passeth nature and al her scoole.
 Nature fayleth whan we feyth leere,
 ffor oure beleue standeth soo sole,
 With these argumentis whiche arn ful of dole 712 Belief doesn't
trouble about
arguments.
 Wil she not medele be non-maⁿer preue—
 There were no mede thanne in oure beleue. 714

Bk. III Ch. 18. " Therfor, lady, if 3e wyll lerne þis þing, 715
 3e schall mech bettyr whan 3e 3our groundys haue.
 ffor of oo poynt I geue 3ow full warnyng :
 3e can neuyr grace of 3our' lorde craue,
 Ne 3our' soule eke schul 3e neuyr saue, 719
 But if 3e forsake for euyr 3our elde be-leue
 And trow swech þing as 3e can not preue. 721
 " Who knew 3e þat costus, kyng of þis londe, 722
 Was fadyr on-to 3ow ? & what euydens haue 3e
 þat 3e wer' bounden sumetyme wyth a bonde,
 Armes, bodye, bak, legges & kne,
 layde þus in cradyll as¹ chyldyr are, parde ? ¹ MS. all 726
 Of all þeis þingys can we make no preue ;
 Wherfor' full mekely we must hem be-leue. 728
 " So schall we be-leue all-maner' þing 729
 Whech þat our lord comaundeth [on]-to vs ;
 ffor þat same lorde þat all hath in weldyng,
 Our' blessed god, our' sauour' ihesus,
 Whan þat he byddyth þat we schall do þus, 733
 Suffyseth us as þan to be obedyent ;
 ffor but if we be, I holde vs but schent. 735
 " 3et, for 3e argue be 3our demonstracyoun 736
 þat þis same doctrine schuld be contrarius,
 Be-cause þat I seyð in my declaracyon
 Who þat blessed lord whech is full delycyous,
 I mene ihesu our' sauour', of all most vertuous, 740
 þat he schuld be god & man eke in-fere :
 Of þis same doctryne example may 3e lere ; 742
 " And for 3e dowte eke of þis coupelyng, 743
 þat we two natures in cryst sey & prech,
 I wyll preue þis be 3our own felyng,
 And 3e 3our-selue 3our owne selue schall teche,
 Myn arbytrour I make 3our owne tung & speche : 747
 ffor wyth-inne 3our-selue, if 3e¹ take heede, ¹ MS. we
 Two natures haf 3e, wyth-outen any drede, 749

- “ Therefore, lady, if ye wil lerne this thyng, 715 *Bk. III. Ch. 17.*
 Ye shal moche beter whan ye youre groundis haue.
 ffor of oon poynte I geue you ful warnyng :
 Ye can neuere grace of youre lord craue,
 Ne youre soule eke shal 3e neuere saue, 719
 But ye forsake for euere your olde beleue
 And trowe swichþe þinge as ye can not preue. 721
 Katharine
 must believe
 what can't be
 proved.
- “ how knewe ye that Costus, kyng of þis lond, 722
 Was fadir on-to you? and what euydens haue yee
 That ye were bounden somtyme with a bonde,
 Armes, body, bak, leggis and knee ^{1 as & c. on er.}
 Leyde thus in cradel as¹ children arn, ye mowe see? 726
 Of alle these thyngis can we make no preue ;
 Wherefor ful mekely we must hem beleue. 728
- “ Soo shal we beleue al-maner thyng 729
 Whiche þat oure lord commaundeth to vs ;
 ffor þat same lord that al hath in weeldyng,
 Oure blissed god, oure saueour *ihesus*,
 Whanne þat he byddeth þat we shal doo thus, 733
 Suffyseth vs as thanne to be obedyent ;
 ffor but if we bee, I holde vs but shent. 735
- “ Yet, for ye argue be youre demonstracyon 736
 That this same doctryne shuld be contraryous,
 Be-cause that I seyde in myn declaracyon
 how þat blissed lord whiche is ful delicious,—
 I mene *ihesu*, oure saueour, of alle most virtuous,— 740
 That he shulde be god and man eke in fere :
 Of this same doctrine exaample may ye leere ; 742
 But that He
 is God and
 man, and
- “ And for ye doute eke of this coupelynge, 743
 That we too natures in cryst sey and preche,
 I wil proue this be youre owyn feelynge,
 And 3e youre-self youre owne self shal teeche,
 Myn arbitroure I make 3oure owne tunge and speche : 747
 ffor with-inne youre-seelf, if ye take heed,
 Too natures haue ye, with-uten ony dreed, 749
 has two con-
 trary natures,
 you may
 judge,
 for you have
 two natures,

<i>Bk. III. Ch. 18.</i>	“ Whech contrarye be ; I preue it be þis skyll :	750
	ffor þat þe on desyreth, þe other' wyll nouth ;	
	Contrarye þan be þei, þese too, in wyll,	
	In desyre, in werkyng, in appetyte, in thowth.	
	Ryght so in þat lorle þat vs alle hath bouth	754
	Bethe too kyndes & wylls eke too,	
	Bothe in oo persone—our' feyth seyth ryght soo.	756
	“ Now wyll we declare on-to 3our' reuerens	757
	Who god is eterne & wyth-outen ende.	
	ffor if 3e loke wysely, þat same sentens	
	Schul 3e haue in 3our' bokes þat trete of kende ;	
	þei determyn þus, if 3e haue mende :	761
	All þing þat is made be-gynnyng must haue ;	
	And for þei fro þat heresy schuld hem saue	763
	“ Whech two begynnynge puttyth in kynde,	764
	þer-for on hafe þei chose, & þus þei hym calle	
	‘ þe fyrst meuer,’ if I ¹ haue mynde ;	¹ r. 3e
	Of whych meuer' oþer' causes alle	
	her' oryginall spryng both haue & schall,	768
	All þat haue ben, & euer-mor' schul be.	
	Of 3our' owyn bokes þis is þe decre.”	770

W	han adryan þe ermyte þese wordes had herde,	771
	Assoyled alle þese qwestyouns, & many moo,	
	On-to þe lady þus he last answerde :	
	“ Madame,” he seyth, “ if 3e wyll now goo	
	And walk forth wyth me, non but we two,	775
	þis lord schall 3e see, þis lady schall 3e speke ;	
	howses schall 3e haue þer' schull neuyr breke.”	777
	These wordes went so depe, sche left bokes alle ;	778
	So a-stoynd sche was, sche wot not verily	
	Wheyther' sche schall þis ermyte a man now calle	
	Or ellys an aungell, come down fro hye.	
	ffor hys clothys to hys wordes ar' full on-lykly,	782

- “Whiche contrarye be; I preue it be þis skyl: 750 *Bk.III. Ch.17.*
 ffor þat þe oon desyreth, the other wil nought;
 Contrarye thanne be þei, these too, in wil,
 I[n] desyre, in werkyng, in appetite, in thought. each striving
 Right soo in that lord þat vs alle hath bought 754 against the
 Beeth too keendes and willes eke too, other.
 Bothe in oo persone—oure feith seyth right soo. 756
 “Now wil we declare on-to youre reuerens 757
 how god is eterne and with-uten ende. God is eter-
 ffor if ye looke wysly, þat same sentens nal,
 Shul ye haue in youre bookes þat treete of keende;
 Thei determyn thus, if ye haue meende: 761
 Alle þing þat is made, begynnyng must haue; because all
 And for thei fro that heresy shuld hem saue 763 things spring
 from Him,
 “Whiche too begynnyng’s putteth in keende, 764
 Therfore oon haue thei chose, and thus þei hym calle
 The firste mouere, if ye haue meende; the First
 Of whiche mouere other causes alle Mover.
 her oryiginal spryng bothe haue and shalle, 768
 Alle þat haue ben and euere-more shal bee.
 Of youre owne bookys that is the decree.¹” 1 MS. degree 770

Cam. 18m.

Bk.III. Ch.18.

- W**han Adryan the ermyte þese wordis had herde, 771 Adrian asks
 Asoyled alle these questions and many moo, Katharine
 On-to the lady thus he at last answerde:
 “Madame,” he seyth, “if ye wil now goo to go with
 And walken forth wyth me, noon but we too, 775 him,
 This lord shal ye see, this lady shal ye speke; see Christ,
 howses shal ye haue, thei shal neuere breke.” 777 and talk to
 the Virgin.

- These woordys wente soo deepe, she lefte bookys alle;
 Soo astoynd she was, she wote not verely 779 Katharine
 Whether she shal this ermyte a man now calle thinks
 Or ell’s an aungett, come doun fro hy. whether she
 ffor his clothis to his woord’s am ful onlykly, 782 shall trust
 Adrian.

- Bk III. Ch. 19.* An olde man & hor' clade in clothys bare,
 A wyse man, a well a-vysed & a ware ; 784
- A man lych a begger whan men hym see, 785
 A man lych a doctour' whan þei hym here ;
 ffew wordes & wyse & full of sentens had hee,
 he semyth not so wyse be aray ne chere
 As þis lady hath preuyd in dyuers manere. 789
 Wherfor' aftyr hys counsele, certeyn, sche wyll do,
 No man schall lett hyr, for sche wyll soo. 791
- ffor a-noon as þe ermyte buskyd hym to fare 792
 fforth in hys iornay, sche folowyth a-pace.
 All lordes & knytes þat in þe castell war',
 þei herd not, þei sey not of all þis solace ;
 Ne thorow-oute þe cyte as þei gun trace, 796
 Was no man a-spyed hem, but as inuisible
 þei passed forby. ryght so seyth our' byble 798
- Of þe men of sodom a-boute loth-is hous, 799
 Who þei neyther dores ne zates myght fynde :
 Godd smet hem þoo wyt^h a sekenes meruelous—
 It is called acrisia, it maketh men seme blynde
 As for a tyme, for sykyr all her' mynde 803
 Schall be so a-stoynd þat þei schull not see
 þing þat in her' hand vp hap þan bee. 805
- So was all þe cyte a-stoynd ryght þan, 806
 Be goddes prouidens fully, as we wene.
 Lete hem curse now, lett hem chyde & banne,
 No man knowyth now whedyr is þe qweene.
 þus goo þei forth walkyng be-deene, 810
 Tyll þei come to þe stronde wher' þat hys hous,
 þis ermyte I mene, þis man meruelous, 812
- Was won for to stande—but all is a-goo ; 813
 þer is no home, all¹ is wyldyrnesse. ¹ orig. all þis
 he wayled, he loked, he went too & froo,

- An olde man and an hore clad in clothis bare, *Bk. III. Ch. 18.*
 A wisman and a weel avysed and a ware ; 784
- A man liche a beggere whan men hym see, 785
 A man liche a doctoure whan men hym here ;
 ffewe woordis and wyse and ful of sentens had hee,
 he semed not [so] wys be aray ne be chere
 As this lady hath proued in dyuers manere. 789
 Wherfore after his counseil, certeyn, she wil doo,
 No man shal letten hir, for she wil soo. 791 Katharine
- ffor a-noon as the ermyte busked hym to fare 792
 ffoorth in his iornay, she folwed a-paas. follows
Adrian.
 Alle loordis and knyghtis that in þe castel ware,
 Thei herd not, thei sey not of al this solaas ;
 Ne thurgh-oute the Citee as þei gun traas, 796
 Was noo man aspyed hem, but as inuysible
 Thei passed forby. right soo seyth oure bible 798 They pass in-
visibly from
Alexandria.
- Of the men of sodom a-bowte loth-is hous, 799
 how thei neyther dores ner yates myght fynde : ¹ MS. Soo
 God¹ smette hem tho with a sekensse merueylous—
 It is called Aurisia,² it maketh men þat sen, blynde
 As for a tyme, for sekyr al her mynde ² r. acrisia 803
 Shal ben soo astoyned þat þei shul not see
 Thyng þat in her hand up hap than bee. -805
- Soo was al that Citee astoyned right þanne, 806 The Citizens
know not
where their
Queen has
gone.
 Be goddis prouidens fully, as we wene.
 lete hem curse now, lete hem chyde and banne,
 Noo man knoweth now whyder his the queene.
 Thus gon thei foorth walkyng be-dene, 810
 Til thei come to the stronde where that his hous,
 This ermyte I mene, þis man merueylous, 812
- Was wont for to stonde—but al is a-goo ; 813 Adrian can-
not find his
Cell.
It has
vanisht.
 There is noon hom, al is wildernesse.
 he wayled, he looked too and froo,

Bk. III. Ch. 19.

he cast þe cuntre, but he coude not gesse.
 þus is he lefte in car' & heuynesse. 817
 "Good lord," he seyth, "wyth me do what þou lest,
 But, as þou hyght me, coumforte my gest!" 819
 In who long tyme or in who many dayes 820
 þat þei fro Alysaunder' went to hys celle,
 It is full harde to telle; for sewyrly, þo wayes
 Wer' so meruelous, we can not wyth hem melle.
 þer-for of þis mater' no mor' wyll I telle; 824
 But he made hem myghty þis iornay to take
 þat be þe aungell led Abacue to þe lake. 826
 Thus mornyth þis man, þus turneth he a-boute, 827
 he lokyth euery coost sekyng hys celle,
 he is falle now sodeynly in full grete doute;
 ffor all hys sorow, sothely for to telle,
 Was for þis lady wher' sche schall dwelle; 831
 þus seyde he to hym-selue: "sche schall ween, I were
 A fals deceyuoure, a ontrewe massainger'." 833

Bk. III. Ch. 20.

Cam. 20m.

The wheen a-spyed be þe ermytes face, 834
 ffor uery uexacyoun who he chaunged moode;
 "Good syr," sche seyde, "I pray 3ow of 3our' grace,
 haue we any tydynges othyr but goode?
 þat 3e ar' turmentyd I se be 3our' bloode. 838
 Telle me what doute þat 3e stand now inne;
 Councell ha 3e non but me, mor' ne þe myn[n]e." 840
 "Madame," he seyde, "her' left I myn hous 841
 Whan I went for 3ow, as I was sent,
 And now þe cuntre to me is meruelous,
 Alle is a-goo, I-drenchyd or I-brent.
 I must seke a new hous, for myn elde is schent. 845
 I had neuyr þowth myn herborow to chaunge:
 Now mote I nedys, & þat schall be straunge." 847

- he caste the contre, but he cowde not gesse. Bk. III. Ch. 18.
 Thus is he lefte in care and in heynesse. 817
 "Good lord," he seyth, "wyth me doo what þou leste,
 But, as þou hight me, comforte my geste!" 819
 In how longe tyme or in how many dayes 820
 That þei fro Alisaundre went to his celle,
 It is ful hard to telle; for suerly, tho wayes
 Were soo merueylous, we can not wyth hem melle.
 Therefore of this mater no more wil I telle; 824
 But he made hem myghty this iornay to take
 That be the aungeſt led Abacuk to the lake. 826
 Thus morned þis man, thus turned he aboute, 827
 he looked euery coost thus seekyng his celle,
 he is falle now sodeynly in ful gret doute;
 ffor alle his sorwe, soothly for to telle,
 Was for this lady where she shal dwelle; 831
 Thus seyde he to hym-self: "she shal wenen, I were
 A fals disseyuere and noon trewe massagere." 833

Cam. 19m.

Bk. III. Ch. 19.

- The queen aspyed be the ermyt's face, 834
 ffor very vexacyon how he chaunged mood;
 "Good sir," she seyde, "I pray you of youre grace,
 haue we ony tydyngis other than good?
 That ye arn tormented I see be your blood. 838
 Telle me what doute ye stonde now Inne; ^{1 overlined.}
 Counceſt haue ye¹ now but me, the more ne þe mynne." 840
 "Madame," he seyde, "heere lefte I myn hous 841
 Whan I wente for yow, as I was sent,
 And now the contre to me is merueylous,
 Al is a-goo, I-drenched or I-brent.
 I must seeke a newe hous, for myn oold is shent. 845
 I had neuere though[t] myn herberwe to chaunge:
 Now mote I nedes, and that shal be straunge." 847

Katharine
asks what
troubles
Adrian.He cannot
find his Cell.

<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>	Tho sayd þe wheen to þe man a-gayn :	848
	“ þat lady þat sent 3ow for to fech me, Sche is so gentyll, so trew, as 3e sayn, Sche wyll not suffyr vs in þis aduersyte To be lost or deuoured in þis straung cuntre.	852
	Trost we vp-on hyr & hyr gentylnesse, ffor in good hope lyghte sumtyme sykyrnesse.”	854
	“ Now euyr be 3e wele ! ” seyð þe ermyte,	855
	“ 3e hafe set 3our trost hyer þan my-selue ; Thow 3e be entered in to þe feyth but a ¹ lyte, ^{1 overlined.} 3e wyll pace in schort tyme oþer ten or twelue. Beth not a-ferde, of best ne of elue,	859
	ffor þat same lady whos son 3e chees, Sche schall vs saue, I leue soo douteles.	861
	“ But all my þowth is now for my celle.	862
	Schall I now grubbe & mak all newe a-geyn ? Schall I now delue & make me a welle ? My myght is I-goo, sothely for to seyn. To chaunge my dwellyng was I neuyr fayn.	866
	þis is my grucchyng, lady, þis is my care ; But for 3our counfort well mote 3e fare ! ”	868
	Godd suffered þis man to falle þus in trauns þat he schuld not hym-selſe magnyfye Of so grete sytys & of swech dalyauns Whech þat he had wyth our ladye. It is þe vse of our lord to lede men hye	873
	ffro full low degre, as dauid fro þe schepe Was led to þe kyngdam, if we take kepe.	875

*Bk. III. Ch. 21.*Ca^m. 21^m.

I	N all þis feer whech þe ermyte hadde,	876
	Euyr was þis qween counfortour to hys age ; þe mor he heuy was, þe mor was sche gladde, And euyr wyth full goodely, full trosty langage Sche seyð on-to hym : “ lete 3our heuynesse swage !	880

- Tho seyde the queen to the man ageyn : 848 *Bk.III. Ch.19.*
- "That lady that sente yow for to fetche me,
She is soo gentyl, soo trewe, as ye seyn,
She wil not suffre us in this aduersite
To be loost or deuoured in this straunge contre. 852
- Truste we up-on hir and hir gentilnesse,
ffor in good hope lygth somtyme sekynnesse." 854 *Katharine
bids Adrian
trust in the
Virgin Mary.*
- "Now euere be ye weel," seyde the ermyte, 855
- "Ye haue sette yowre trost heyere than my-selue ;
Thow ye be entred in to the feyth but a lyte,
Ye wil passe in short tyme other ten or twelue.
Beth not a-feerd, of beste ne of elue, 859
ffor that same lady whos sone ye ches
She shal vs saue, I leue soo douteles. 861
- "But al my thought is now for my celle. 862 *He tells her
he is too old
to build a
new Cell.*
- Shal I now grubbe and make al newe agayn ?
Shal I now delue and make me a well ?
My myght is I-goo, soothly for to sayn.
To chaunge my dwellynge was I neuere fayn. 866
This is my grutchyng, lady, this is my care ;
But for youre comforte weel mote ye fare !" 868
- God suffred þis man to falle thus in trauns 869 *God lets him
grieve, to pre-
vent his being
puft up.*
- That he shulde not hym-self magnyfye
Of soo grete syghtes and of swiche dalyauns
Whiche that he had with oure ladye.
It is the vse of oure lord to leede men hye 873
ffro ful lowe degree, as dauid fro the sheep
Was leed to the kyngdam, if we take keep. 875

Cam. 20^m.*Bk.III. Ch.20.*

- IN all this feer whiche the ermyte hade, 876
- Euere was the queen confortour to his age ;
The more he heuy was, þe more was she glade,
And euere with ful goodly and ful trosty langage
She seyde on-to hym : "lete your heuynesse swage ! 880

*Katharine
cheers him.*

Bk. III. Ch. 21.

Lete it be lost þat lost now wyll be !

But trewly I telle, a solemne þing I se : 882

“ Euene zondyr a-boue, ser, se 3e nowth 883

þe woundyrfull wallys schynnyng as sune ?

Swech a-nother þing was neuyr wrowte,

þer was neuyr swech þing in erde be-gune ; 886

þe stones ar' bryght, þe roues¹ ar' not downn.² ^{1 MS. rones}

Loke vp, man, meryly ! se 3e noght 3on syght,

þe castell zondyr wech schynnyth so bryght ? ” 889

The ermyte be-helde, but he sey nowth, 890

Neyther wall ne zates, & þo sorow gan he make ;

“ Lady,” he seyde, “ in blessed tyme wer 3e browte

On-to þis grounde, 3our spouse for to take !

he hath do now mor' for 3our sake 894

þan I hafe felt all my lyffe leuaunde ;

3e be mor' worthy, as I vndyrstande.” 896

Tho wept he full sore, & sone þan he say 897

þat same vysyon, but sor' a-stoynd he was :

hys chapell was turned all in oper way :

ffor þis wech he sethe, is brygter þan glas,

þe opir was elde, all growyn wyth gras ; 901

hys elde hous was lytyll, þis new is large.

þan 3afe he þe mayden a full grete charge, 903

Thus seyde he to hyr : “ madame, now goo 3e 904

On-to 3on castell, on-to 3on toure !

Trostyth no lenger' of þe ledyng of me,

ffor I am not worthy to prese to þat bour.

God graunt þat I may be 3our successour, 908

þat I may sume-tyme come to þat place !

If 3e may, I pray 3ow, aske [3e] me þat grace ! ” 910

Than went þe mayden forth be hyr one, 911

Desyryng sor' to se þis goodely place.

But Adryan folowyd, whan sche was gone—

lete it be lost that lost now wil bee !

Bk. III. Ch. 20.

But trewly I telle yov,¹ a solenne thyng I see, ¹ overl. 882

“Euene yonder aboue, [ser], see ye nought 883
The wonderful walles shynnyng as the sonne?
Swiche a-nother thyng was neuere wrought,
There was neuere swiche thyng in erthe be-gunne.

Katharine
sees the
Heavenly
City.

The stones arn bryght, the roues arn not dunne. 887

look vp, man, meryly ! see ye not yone sight,

The castel yonder whiche shyneth soo bryght ?” 889

The ermyte be-held, but he sey nought, 890
Neither wal ne yates, and tho sorwe gan he make ;

Adrian can-
not see it at
first,

“ lady,” he seyde, “ in blyssed tyme were ye brought

On-to this ground, youre spouse for to take !

he hath do more now for youre sake 894

Than I haue felt al my lyf lyuande ;

Ye be more worthi, as I vndirstande.” 896

Tho wepte he ful soore, and sone than he say 897
That same auysyon, but soore he astoyned was :

but after-
wards does
so,

his chapel was turned al in other way :

ffor this whiche he seeth, his brytere pan glas,

The other was olde, growen wyth gras ; 901

his olde hous was litel, pis newe is large.

Than yaf he the mayden a ful grete charge, 903

Thus seyde he to hir : “ madame, now goo yee 904
On-to yone castel, on-to yone toure !

and bida
Katharine
go there.

Trosteth no lengere of the leedyng of mee,

ffor I am not worthi to prese to pat boure.

God graunte that I may be youre successoure, 908

That I may somtyme come to pat place !

If ye may, I prey you aske ye that grace !” 910

Than wente the mayden foorth be hir oone, 911
Desyryng sore to see this goodly place.

She sets out.

But Adryan folwed, whan she was goone—
KATHARINE.

Adrian
follows
Katharine

Br. III. Ch. 21.

Oute of hyr hardynesse he gan hym purchace

On-to hys coumfort now a new solace. 915

But whan þei wer' come at þe ȝatys wyde,

þer' wer¹ þei receyuyd on euery syde ^{1 MS. wher', h expunged}

Wyth swech-maner' persones of face & of clothyng 918

We can not speke it. I trow þei told it nowte—

ffor þei þat ar' lyfte to swech mysty þing,

þei telle what þei sey whan þei wer' þidyr broute,

But þei can not expresse her' wyll ne her' þowte 922

In wech þei hade þat manere solace—

It is a-nothyr langage þat longyth to þat place. 924

But þese too persones, as many other' moo, 925

Wer' lyft vp in soule swech sytes for to see.

Seynt poule hym-selue was on of þoo

þat was þus I-raueched; ȝet dowed he

Wheythyr hys body, or nowte, wer' in þat secree. 929

But þis doute I not þat þe body of þis mayde

Was in þat temple wher' sche was arayde 931

Wyth holy baptem & anoy[n]ted eke 932

Wyth holy crisme, as our' lord wolde—

No man may be baptyzed, if we treuly speke,

But þei haue a body, be þei ȝong or olde. 935

þus sey¹ þe elde² bokes, þer-of ar' we bolde: ^{1 orig. seyth, th expunged.}God may do what-euyr hym lyst, ^{2 MS. olde?}

And dothe mech þing wech is not wyst. 938

Thus ar' þei receyuyd in þe fyrst warde; 939

But aftyr mech bettyr, & of worthyer' men,

Whan sche to þe secunde cam; wech sauoured [a]s narde,

Nay, mech swettyr. þer' met sche mo þan ten

Of hundredes I mene, but non can sche ken, 943

þei wer' other'-maner persones þan sche had seyn.

But all þese in-fere on-to hyr gan seyn: 945

“ Wolcom, syster, on-to þis holy place! 946

Wolcom to our' lorde wech hath ȝow chose

ffor to be hys spouse, ryght of hys grace!

Oute of hir hardynesse he gan hym purchase		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>
On-to his comforte a newe solace.	915	to the Heavenly City.
But whan thei were come at þe yates wyde,		
There were thei receyued on euery syde	917	
With swiche maner persones of face & of clothyng	918	They are welcomd by Celestial Beings.
We can not speke it. I trowe thei tolde it nought—		
ffor þei þat arn lyfte to swiche mysty thyng,		
Thei telle what þei sey whan thei were thedir brought,		
But þei can not expresse her wil ne her thought	922	
In whiche thei hadde that-manner solace—		
It is a-nother langage þat longeth to þat place.	924	
But these too persones, as many other moo,	925	
Were lyfte vp in soule swiche sightis for to see.		
Seynt poule hym-selue was oon of thoo		
That was thus I-rauyshed ; yet ¹ doutyd hee	¹ MS. þat	
Whethir his body, or nought, were in þat secree.	929	
But this doute I not þat the body of this mayde		(Katharine is bodily in the Temple
Was in þat temple where she was arayde	931)
With holy baptem) and any[n]ted eke	932	where after- wards she is baptized and anointed.)
With hooly crysme, as oure lord wolde—		
No man) may ben baptised, if we truly speke,		
But thei haue a body, be thei yonge or olde.		
Thus seyn) the olde bookis, ther-of arn) we bolde :	936	
God may doo what-soo-euere hym lyst,		
And dooth meche thyng whiche is not wyst.	938	
Thus arn) thei receyued in þe firste warde ;	939	
But after moche better, and of wurthiere men),		Worthier Beings greet them in the Second Ward.
Whan) she to the secunde cam ; it sauoured as narde,		
Yaa, ¹ meche swettere. there mette she mo than ten	¹ on er.	
Of hundredes I mene, but noon) kan she ken) ;	943	
There were other-manner persones þan she had seyn).		
But alle these in-feere on-to hir gan creyn) (!) :	945	
“ Welcom), suster, on-to þis hooly place !	946	Katharine is welcomd
Weel-come on-to oure lord whiche hath you chose		
ffor to be his spouse, ryght of his grace !		

Bk. III Ch. 21.

Wolcome, of clenness very swete rose !
 ffor 3our virginite, wyth-owte ony glose, 950
 Schal we receyue 3ow," & thus forth þei hyr lede,
 These gostly folkys in wondyrfull wede, 952
 Tyl þei to þe temple cam. but þer' was a syght ! 953
 þer' came kynges, þer' cam emperoures,
 þer' cam a meny wyth habytes so bryght,
 It is not possible to erdely successoures
 To expresse þoo fresch, þoo gay coloures ; 957
 Sche sey hem þan in her' goodely aray—
 We leue in hope to se hem an othyr day. 959
 Thei led hyr þoo forthe a full softe pace 960
 On-to þe barres of þe temple-3ate,
 hyr wolcomyng at þat tyme, swech þoo it was :
 " Wolcom our' syster, wolcom our' mate !
 As 3e be now, wer' we full late, 964
 ffor sumtyme had we bothe flesch, fell & bonys ;
 As 3e hafe now, had we all ones." 966
 Vp-on her' habytes certen tokenes þei ber', 967
 Sum man oo tokyn, sume man an other' bare :
 Aftyr þe passyones whech þei suffred here
 So wer' þei merked wyth tokenes full bare ;
 þoo toknes wer' sett [t]her¹ ryght to declare ^{1 MS. her)} 971
 þat men had þei be & wyth grete distresse
 Oute of þis herde com to þat holynesse. 973
 But whan þis lady to þe dore was browte, 974
 Sche loked in ; hyr' leders louted alle.
 Sche herd þer' melodye, as to hyr thowte
 Sche herd neuyr swych. þer'-for' is sche falle
 Down all in trauns—þer was neuyr man, ne schalle, 978
 þat may susteyn in body swech heuynly blysse ;
 ffor who schall it susteyn, must dye fyrst, I-wys. 980
 Oute of hyr traunce whan sche was wakyd, 981
 Sche folowyd forth þan to þat noble place.

Wolcome, of clennesses very swote rose !
 ffor youre virginite, with-outen ony glose, 950

Bk. III. Ch. 20.

Shal we receyue you," and thus foorth thei hir leede,
 These goodly folkis in wonderful weede, 952

for her
Virginity.

Til thei to the temple cam. but þere¹ was a syght ! 953

There come kyngis, there come emperour[i]s, ¹ MS. þerre Holy
 There come a meny with habitis soo bryght Martyrs, in
 kingly attire,

It is not possible to erthely successourys
 To expresse tho fresh, tho gay coloures ; 957

She sey hem thanne in her goodly aray—
 We leue in hope to see hem a-nother day. 959

Thei ledde hir tho foorth a ful soofte paas 960
 On-to the barres of the temple yate,
 lead Katha-
 rine to the
 Temple gate,

hir weelcomyng at that tyme, swiche tho it waas :
 " Weelcome oure suster, weelcome oure mate !
 welcoming
 her.

As ye be now, were we ful late, 964

ffor somtyme hadde we bothe feß, flesh and bones ;
 As ȝe haue now, had we alle oones." 966

Vp-on her habites certeyn tookenes þei bere, 967

Som man oo tookne, som man an other baar :

Affter the passyons whiche thei suffred heere

Soo were thei marked wyth tooknes ful yaar ;

Thoo tooknes where sette there ryght to declaar 971

That men had thei been and with gret distresse

Oute of this erthe come to that holynesse. 973

But whan this lady to the dore was brought, 974

She looked in ; hir leederis lowtde alle.
 She herde there melodye, as hir thought

She looks in
and swoons.

She herde neuere swiche. therfore is she falle 977

Doun alle in a trauns—there was neuere man, ne shalle,

That may susteyne in body swiche heuenly blis ;

ffor ho shal it susteyne, must firste deyn, I-wys. 980

Oute of hir trauns whan she was waked, 981

She folwed foorth þanne to þat noble plaas.

Bk. III. Ch. 21. þan sey sche our' lord, whech all þing makyd,
 Whech had called hyr to þat noble grace,
 Sittyng full reaf—but up-on hys face 985
 Durst sche not loke for no-maner' þing,
 So was sche a-ferde at hyr fyrst comyng. 987
 Than wyst sche wele it was more þan man 988
 þat sche had sowte & now sche hath it founde ;
 ffor wyth all þe wytt þat sche gadyr kan), <sup>1 MS. hys; r. on hym
this</sup>
 Dar' sche noght fyxe hyr' eye in [t]hys¹ stounde,
 But euyr sche in poynt is to falle on-to þe grounde— 992
 hyr body is cause, it must be claryfied,
 And all þe carnalyte fully puryfied, 994
 Or sche swech þinges eyther' fele or grope. 995
 Thus is þis mayden af in heuynesse
 left, & leyd in maner' of wan-hope ;
 ffor þat same lord whech of hys goodenesse
 lyst for to chese hyr as a specyall spousesse, 999
 Now is so straunge sche may noght hafe þat grace
 To come sumewhat nyher & se hys face. 1001

Bk. III. Ch. 22Cam. 22^m.

Tho cam our' ladye & left hyr' up sone ; 1002
 þus sayd sche te hyr : “ be of good comforte !
 þour' heuynes is pased, 3e hafe þour' bone,
 All þis grete heuynesse schall turn' to dysporte.
 I sent aftr þow þat 3e schuld resorte 1006
 On-to þis howsolde, for 3e schall hafe þis grace,
 Next me a-forn all women to be¹ in þis place. ^{1 om. to be?}
 “ Therfor' come forthe now, for I wyll þow lede 1009
 Ryght to my sone, on-to þat mageste.”
 Both maydes in-fer' þus forthe þei 3ede.
 But þis noble adriane, at þat tyme wher' was he ?
 Myn auctour' telleth noght ; but sekyr may 3e be, 1013
 he had blysse enowe assygned to hys parte,
 he had so mech he was lothe to departe. 1015

Thanne sey she oure lord, whiche al thyng maked,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>
Which had called hir to þat noble graas,		Katharine
Sittyng ful riaht—but vp-on his faas	985	sees Christ,
Durst she not looke for no-maner thyng,		but dares not
Soo was she afered at hir first comyng.	987	look on His
		Face,

Thanne wiste she weel it was more than man	988
That she had sought, and now she hath it founde ;	
ffor with al the witte that she gadre can	
Dar she not fyxen hir eye in this stounde,	
But euere she in poynt is to falle on-to the grounde—	992
hir body is cause, it muste be claryfied	
And al the carnalite fully purified,	994

Er she swiche thyngis eyther feele or grope.	995
Thus is my mayden al in heuynesse	
left, and leyd in maner of wanhope ;	
ffor þat same lord wiche of his goodnesse	
lest for to chese hir as a special spousesse,	999
Now is so straunge she may not haue þat grace	
To come somewhat nyhere and see his blissed face.	1001

Ca.m. 21m.

Bk. III. Ch. 21.

T ho cam oure lady and lift hir vp soone ;	1002	
Thus seyde she to hir : “ be of good comforte !		The Virgin
Youre heuynesse is passed, ye haue your boone,		Mary com-
Al this grete heuynesse shal turne to disporte.		forts her.
I sente after you that ye shuld resorte	1006	
On-to this houshold, for ye shul haue þis grace,		
Nexste me a-for) alle women) to bee in this place.	1008	

“ Therefore come foorth now, I wil yow leede	1009	The Virgin
Right to my sone, on-to that mageste.”		Mary takes
Bothe maydenes in-fere thus foorth þei yeede.		Katharine
But this noble Adryan, at þat tyme where was hee ?		
Myn auctour telleth not ; but sekyr may ye bee	1013	
he had blisse I-now assigned to his part,		
he had so moche he was ful looth thens-wart. ¹ 1 on er.	1015	

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 22.</u>	Thus ar' þese ladyes euen on-to þe trone	1016
	Of our' lord allmyghty walked forthe a-pace,	
	Wyth-uten othyr ¹ company, þei went þoo a-loone—	
	Perauentur' other' folk stood not in þat grace, ¹ omit othyr	
	So ny þat mageste, so ny goddys face	1020
	To approch at þat tyme; it was a specyalte	
	Ordeyned of purpos at þis solemnyte.	1022
	Our' lady had þe wordes whan sche cam þer';	1023
	"Sune," sche seyth, "& maker' of all-maner þing,	
	I hafe browte [a] mayde her' in full grete fere,	
	þe spouse whech þou louyst, her' I hyr bryng,	
	Sche desyryth þat þou schalt now wyth a ryng	1027
	Despouse hyr' to þi-self for euыр-more—	
	þis is hyr' desyre, & hath be full 3ore."	1029
	Our' lord spake a-geyn mysty wordes too,	1030
	Whech þat þis mayde full heuy þoo made;	
	"Modyr," he seyth, "3e know 3our-self, loo,	
	þe cause þat þis company in ioyes þus wade	
	Is þe look of my-selfe, whech dothe hem glade;	1034
	ffor þei þat hafe þat, þei nede noo othyr þing.	
	But þei þat schul hafe þis gracyous syght lestyng,	1036
	"ffull clene must þei be in body & in gooste,	1037
	Wasched fro all synnes þat be fowle & derk.	
	Of swech' hafe I her', 3e see, a grete hoste,	
	Clensyd wyth my blode & merkyd wyth my merk—	
	All þis was my labour' & my bysy werk	1041
	Whan I in erde was to bye mankynde,	
	Wech þat I fynde full oft to me onkynde.	1043
	"Wherfor, modyr, þus I answer' on-to 3ow :	1044
	þis mayde may not hafe as now þat grace	
	Whech þat 3e aske for hyr sake now,	
	I mene þe vysyon, þe syght of my face;	
	lete hyr goo clense hyr', lete hyr goo purchase	1048
	þe holy baptem, þan hath sche my merke;	
	Bryng hyr þan to me, & I schall hyr merke	1050

- Thus arn these ladies euene on-to the trone 1016 *Bk.III. Ch.21.*
 Of oure lord almyghty walked foorth a-pace :
 Wyth-outen other company thei wente tho allone—
 Perauenture other folk stood not in þat grace,
 Soo ny that mageste, soo ny goodis face 1020
 To approche at that tyme ; it was a specialyte¹ ^{1 or. specialte}
 Ordeyned of purpos at this solennyte. 1022
 Oure lady had the wordis whan she cam there ; 1023
 “ Sone,” she seyth, “ and makere of al-maner thyng,
 I haue brout a mayde here in ful grete fere,
 Thi spouse whiche þou louest, here I hir bryng,
 She desireth þat þou shalt now wyth a ryng 1027
 Despouse hir to thi-self for euere-more—
 This is hir desire, and hath been ful 3ore.” 1029
 Oure lord spak ageyn mysty woordis thoo, 1030
 Whiche þat this mayde ful heuy tho made ;
 “ Modir,” he seyth, “ ye knowe youre-self, loo,
 The cause that pis company in ioyes thus wade
 Is the looke of my-self, whiche dooth hem glade ; 1034
 ffor þei þat haue that, thei nede noon other thyng.
 But thei þat shul haue this gracyous sight lastyng, 1036
 “ fful clene muste þei bee in body and in goost, 1037
 Washed fro alle synnys that been foule and derk.
 Of swiche haue I here, 3e see, a grete oost,
 Clensyd wyth my blood and merked wyth my merk—
 Al this was my labour and my besy werk 1041
 Whan I in erthe was to b^eye mankeende,
 Whiche þat I fynde ful ofte to me onkeende. 1043
 “ Wherefore, moder, thus I answeere on-to yow : 1044
 This mayde may not haue as now þat grace
 Whiche þat ye askyn for hir sake now,
 I mene the visyon, the sight of my face ;
 lete hir goo clense hir, lete hir goo purchase 1048
 The holy baptem, than hath she my merk ;
 Brynge hir þanne to me, and I shal hir caerk (!)¹ ^{1 on. cr.}
 to Christ's throne,
 and says she brings Him a Bride who wishes to wed Him.
 Christ says
 that all with Him
 must be pure of sin.
 Christ tells
 His Mother that Katharine mustn't see His face
 till she's baptized.

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 22.</u>	Wyth swech a tokne þat neuyr mayde but 3e	1051
	had it so specyaly. lete þis þing be doo ;	
	A prest hafe 3e redy & a man, parde,	
	Bothe in flesch & goost : lete hym goo þer-too,	
	Performe he schall þis werk wyth hys handys too.	1055
	Myn aungellis wyll I noght occupye wyth þis dede,	
	It longyth to mankynd, wyth-uten drede ;	1057
	“ And 3et þow3 we myght of our’ hyc power’	1058
	Graunte on-to aungellis þis specialtee	
	þat þei schuld baptize men in erde here,	
	3et wyll we noght þat þei occupied schuld bee	
	Wyth swych-maner’ offyce as to humanyte	1062
	longyth, & schal longe, as for most ryght.	
	Go now & baptize þat noble wyght ! ”	1064
	Than spake our’ ladye, to swage hyr heuynesse :	1065
	“ Beth not discomfortyd in no-maner’ weye	
	Wyth my sones wordes ! for, in sykynesse,	
	3e must to hys bydding ful buxumly obeye.	
	It is a goodely vsage, sothely to seye :	1069
	Who schal be weddyd on-to duke or kynge,	
	Be-for hyr weddyng to hafe a bathynge,	1071
	“ ffor to mak hyr swete, for to make hyr clene—	1072
	Ellys myght sche renne in ful grete offens.	
	Be þis example on-to 3ow I mene,	
	Do 3e 3our’ deuer’, do 3our’ dylygens	
	ffor to plesse 3our’ lorde ! a-non goo we hens	1076
	In to 3on chapell to 3our’ baptistery ;	
	Aftyр 3our’ waschyng 3e schal be full mery.”	1078

Bk. III. Ch. 23.Ca^m. 23^m.

T hus ar’ þei walked, þe mayden & þe qween,	1079
In to þis chapell on þe mynster’ syde.	
þer’ fond þei redy a funt, as I wene,	
Wyth watyr, & wyth ¹ crisme in a vessell wyde.	¹ omit wyth
Adriane is called fro þe puple a-syde,	1083

- "With suche a tookne that neuere mayde but yee 1051 *Bk. III. Ch. 21.*
 had it soo specialy. lete this thyng be doo ;
 A preest haue ye redy, and a manⁿ þat loueth me,
 Bothe in flesh and in goost : lete hym þer-to goo,¹ *A priest of earth,*
 Perfoorme he shal pis werk wyth his handis too ; 1055 *1 on. er.*
 Myn aungellis wil I not occupye wyth pis dede,
 It longeth to mankeende, with-uten ony¹ drede ; *not an angel, 1 overl.*
 "And yet though we myght of oure hy powere 1058
 Graunte on-to aungellis this speyalte
 That thei shulde baptise men in erthe here,
 yet wil we not that thei occupied shul bee
 With swiche-maner offyce as to humanyte 1062 *is to baptize Katharine.*
 longeth, and shal longen, as for moost ryght.
 Goo now and baptise that noble whight ! " 1064
 Than spak oure lady, to swage hir heuynesse : 1065
 "Beeth not discounforted in no-maner weye
 With my sones woordis ! for, in sekernesse,
 Yee muste doo his byddyng, ful buxomly obeye.
 It is a goodly vsage, soothly to seye : 1069
 ho shal be wedded on-to duke or kyng,
 Be-forn her weddyng to haue a bathyng, 1071 *As all Brides are bathed before wedding,*
 "ffor to make hir swete, for to make hir elene— 1072
 hellis myght she renne in ful grete offens.
 Be this exauple on-to you I mene,
 Doo ye youre deuer, doo *your* diligens
 ffor to plesse youre lord ! a-noon goo we hens 1076
 In to 3one chapel to youre baptistery ;
 After youre washyng ye shal ben ful mery." 1078 *so Katharine must be.*

Ca. m. 22^m.*Bk. III. Ch. 22.*

- T**hus arn thei walked, the mayden and the queene, 1079
 In to the chapel on-to the mynstre syde.
 There founde thei redy a font, as I weene,
 With water, and with crysme in a vessel wyde.
 Adryan is called fro the puple a-syde, 1083 *She and the Virgino into the Heavenly Minster.*

Bk. III. Ch. 23.

- ffor he must do all þis holy seruyse,
 lych as our' lady þe maner' schall deuyse. 1085
- Thus seyð sche to hym : "go do now þis dede,
 It longyth to þin ordre cristen folk to make ;
 A-ray þe a-none in swech-maner' wede
 Whech I my-self her' þe now take ;
 þis mayde schal be bathyd for hyr loues sake 1090
 In þis cold watyr, & crysten schal sche be,
 My lord my son þus comaundyth he. 1092
- "I my-selfe schal of hyr clothes strepe 1093
 And make hyr all naked, redy to þis þing.
 hyr name Kateryne styll schal þou clepe,
 Ryght for þis cause & for þis tokenyng
 þat þei whech knew hyr', eþir eld or 3yng, 1097
 Schul hafe an eydens sche is styll þe same
 Whech sche was be-for—þer-for styll hyr name 1099
- "Schal sche thus kepe, in confirmacyon 1100
 þat all þing is trewe whech we do here,
 No wyles wrowte ar' ne no collusyon—
 We wyll noght suffyr þat in no maner'."
 Tho was Kateryn spoyled—but blynd was þe frere, 1104
 Bothe in hyr spoylyng & in hyr bapteme.
 Of þat solempne fest þis was þe theme : 1106
- "I baptize þe her' in þe blessed name 1107
 Of þe fadyr & þe sone & þe holygost,
 In presens & wytenes of our' reuerent dame
 Modyr vn-to cryst, of all women moste,
 Godmodyr on-to þe—& þat may þou boost. 1111
 lok þou be-leue, dowtyr, as I seyð to þe :
 þat oo god þer is & persones thre ; 1113
- "Beleue eke in bapteme, & in hōly kyrk, 1114
 Be-leue in þe passyon of our' lord ihesu,
 Be-leue þat þe miracles whech he dede werk

ffor he muste doon) al this hooly seruyse, lich as oure lady the maner gan) deuyse.	1085	<i>Bk III. Ch. 22.</i>
Thus seyde she to hym : "goo doo now þis dede, It longeth to thyn ordere crysten ffolk to make ; Aray the a-noon) in swiche-maner wede Whiche I my-self here the now take ; This mayde shal ben bathed for hir loues sake In this coolde water, and cristen shal she bee ; My lord my sone thus commaundeth hee.	1086 1090 1092	Adrian is to baptize Katharine.
"I my-self shal of hir clothis strepe And make hir al naked, redy to þis thyng. hir name Kataryne stille shal þou clepe, Right for this cause and this tookenyng That thei whiche knewe hir, eyther old or ying, Shul haue an euydens she is styлле the same Whiche she was be-fore—therefore stille hir name	1093 1097 1099	The Virgin will strip her naked.
"Shal she thus kepe, in confirmacyon) That al thyng is trewe whiche we doon here, No wyles wrought are ne no collusyon)— We wil not suffre that in noo manere." Tho was Katarine spoyled—but blynd was þe frere Bothe in hir spoylenge and in hir bapteme. Of that solenne feste þis was the theme :	1100 1104 1106	Katharine is stript ; but Adrian is blind.
"I baptise the here in the blyssed name Of the fadir and the sone and the holy goost, In presens and wittenesse of oure holy dame, Modir on-to crist, of alle women moost, Godmodir on-to the—and that may þou boost. looke þou beleue, doughter, as I sey to the : That oo god there is and persones thre ;	1107 1111 1113	He baptizes her.
"Beleue eke in baptem, and in holy kerke, ¹ Beleue in the passyon of oure lord Iesu, Beleue that the myracles whiche þat he dede werke	1114	Adrian bids her believe the Articles of the Christian Faith.

¹ or. kyrke

- Br. III. Ch. 23. Wer' wyth-oute deceyte, stable & trewe,
 Be-leue þat of a uirgyne hys manhode grew, 1118
 And sche ondefouled—for sche is present,
 Sche can ber' wyttensse of þis testament." 1120
- Kateryne answeyrd on-to þese articles alle: 1121
 "I be-leue hem, ser', as ȝe rehers be-dene;
 þer-for on knes¹ as I now down falle, ^{1 MS. kneis?}
 In þis same funte whech ȝe may not sene,
 Baptize me parcharite & make me clene! 1125
 ffor þis is þe wyll of þe soueren lorde a-boue,
 And my wyll is it eke, ryght for hys loue." 1127
- Thus was sche baptized, & in þis maner' 1128
 Confermed eke & renuede¹ hyr name. ^{1 renewed on the margin.}
 Our' lady hyr-selfe seruauante was her',
 Sche dede of þe clothes of þis swete dame.
 All þis ilk tyme þer was a hame 1132
 Of blyndenes be-for' þis ermytes yȝe,
 ffor of all þis werk no-þing he syȝe. 1134
- But sone aftyr þis sacrament is doo, 1135
 hys lyght receyuyd he newly a-geyn.
 þe myrth, þe ioye þat þe man made þoo,
 We can not esyly expresse now ne seyn!
 fful sekyrly wende he neuyr eft a seyn: 1139
 Now thanketh he godd of hys hye grace
 þat euyr he came in to þat holy place. 1141
- Our' lady comaunded to daun Adryan 1142
 þat all þis þing whech he herd & sey doo,
 Wyth all hys besinesse, ryght so as he can,
 To wryght it pleylny whan he may tend þer-too.
 And as sche bad, full sekyrly he dyd soo, 1146
 þis noble ermyte—for on-to our' ere
 Who schuld it come ellys? who schuld we it lere? 1148

Were with-outen deceyte, stable and trew,
 Beleue þat of a virgyn his manhood grew, 1118 *Bk III. Ch 22.*
 And she ondefowled—for she is present,
 She can bere wittenesse of this testament." 1120

Kataryne answerde on-to these articules alle : 1121 *Katharine
does believe
the Articles.*
 "I be-leue hem, sir, as ye reherce be-deene ;
 Therfore on knes I am now doun falle
 In this same font whiche ye may not seene,
 Baptise me pur charyte and make me clene ! 1125
 ffor this is þe wil of the souereyn lord a-boue,
 And my wil is it eke, right for his loue." 1127

Thus was she baptised, and in this manere 1128 *Her baptism
is complete.*
 Confermed eke and renewed hir name.
 Oure lady hir-self seruauant was heere,
 She dede of the clothis of this swete dame.
 Al this ilke tyme there was an hame 1132
 Of blyndenesse be-forn the ermytis y3e,
 ffor of al this werk noo-thing he sy3e. 1134

But soone after pis sacrament is doo, 1135 *The blind
Adrian
receives his
sight.*
 his light receyued he newly ageyn.
 The myrthe, the ioye that the man made tho,
 We can not esyly expresse now ne seyn !
 fful sekerly wende he his syght a leyn (!) : 1139
 Now thanketh he god of this hye grace
 That euere he come in to that holy place. 1141

Oure lady commaunded to daun Adryan 1142
 That al þis thyng whiche he herde and sey doo,
 With al his besynesse, ryght soo as he can,
 To write it pleynly whan he may tende þer-too.
 And as she bad, ful sekyrly he dede soo, 1146
 This noble ermyte—for on-to oure eere
 how shuld it come elles ? how shuld we it leere ? 1148 *The Virgin
bids Adrian
write down
the Miracle.*

NOW is our lady forth *wyth* þis mayde 1149
 In to þe temple entred a-gayn.
 3et in hyr going þus swetly sche sayde :
 “Dowtyr myn, Kateryne, loke 3e be glad & fayn !
 ffor 3our desyr^r schul 3e haue, certayn, 1153
 Ere 3e goo hens ; be-leue þis sykyrly !”
 Swech wordes talked þei walkyng sobyrly. 1155
 Now be þei come euene be-for^r þe trone 1156
 Of our^r lord god, þe mayde[n] & þe qwene.
 Our^r lady had þe wordes hyr-self a-lone ;
 Swech was þe ordre of hyr tale, I weene :
 “O kyng of kynges, blyssed mote þou been ! 1160
 I haue browte her^r þe¹ þe doghtyr of clenness, ^{1 r. þe her}
 Prayng þe, lorde, *wyth* alle humbylnesse 1162
 “That þou schew now þe blysse of þi face 1163
 On-to þi spouse, on-to þi creature ;
 Euene as þou grauntyd [hyr]¹ þat grete grace ^{1 om.}
 To kepe hyr virginite in clenly trappure,
 So graunte hyr now þat hye portrature 1167
 Of þi blyssyd ymage to se & be-holde !
 ffor þan ar^r sche & I mechⁿ to þe beholde.” 1169
 Our^r lorde answerde on-to hys modyr ful fayr^r : 1170
 “What-so-euyr 3e wyll, modyr, it must be doo ;
 All heuen & herde to 3ow must repayre
 ffor help whan hem nedyth, to refresch her woo.
 I graunte 3our petycyon, I wyll it be soo.” 1174
 þan fell þat qween down plat to þe grounde,
 hyr corown sche toke of þat was ful rownde, 1176
 Sche leyd it be-for hym & þus sche spake : 1177
 “lord of all creatures þat be lyuande,
 No-þing þat I aske of þi grace I lake,
 Euyr be þou honowred in heuyn & in lande !
 I my-selfe am werk of þi hande ; 1181

Cam. 23m.

Bk. III. Ch. 23.

NOW is oure lady foorth with þis mayde 1149 The Virgin
In to the temple entred agayn.

Yeet in hir gooenge thus sweetly she sayde :

“Doughter myn, Kataryne, looke ye be glad and fayn!

ffor *your* desyre shul ye haue, certayn, 1153

Er ye goo hens; beleue this, certeynly!”

Swiche woordys talked thei walkyng forby. 1155

Now be thei come euene be-fore the throne. 1156

Of oure lor[d] god, the mayden and the queene.

Oure lady had the woordys hir-self allone;

Swiche were the wordis of hir tale, I wene :

“O kyng of kyngys, blyssed mote þou bene! 1160

I haue brought here the doughter of clenness,

Praying the, lord, *wyth* alle humblennesse 1162

“That þou shewe now the blisse of thi face 1163

On-to thi spouse, on-to thi creature;

Euene as þou graunted þat gret grace

To kepe hir virginyte in clenly trappure,

So graunte hir now þat hye portrature 1167

Of thi blissed ymage to see and be-hold!

ffo[r] than) arn) she and I bounde to the many-foold.” 1169

Oure lord answerde on-to his moder fulfayre : 1170

“What-so-euere ȝe wil, moder, it must be doo;

Al heuene and erthe to you muste repayre

ffor helpe whan hem nedeth, to refresh her woo.

I graunte youre petycion, I wil it be soo.” 1174

Than) fel that queen) down) plat to the ground,

hir coroun) she took of, that was ful round, 1176

She leyde it be-forn hym and thus she spak : 1177

“lord of alle creaturis that be leuande,

No-thing þat I aske of thi grace I lak,

Euere be þou honowred in heuene and in lande!

I my-self am werk of thyn) hande; 1181

takes
Katharine
to Christ on
His throne.

The Virgin
asks Christ
to show
Katharine
His face.

She lays her

Crown before
Christ,

Bk III. Ch. 21.

- Thow I þi modyr be, þi seruauant am I :
 þi grace I thank, for þi mercy I crye." 1183
- Our lord bad hyr ryse, & sche rose sone. 1184
 Schē was corowned a-geyn, or þei wer' ware—
 Tho men myght see what is to done
 Of ony creature whan þei come þare.
 þis same exaample sat þoo full sare 1188
 On Kateryns hert; sche fell down a-noone
 Plat on-[to] þe grounde, styll as þe stoone, 1190
- Thus seyð sche in schort, for to tell pleynd : 1191
 "I se wele, lorde, þat of all-maner þing
 þou art maker, of erde, eyr' & þe reyn,
 All be obedyent to þi comandyng :
 Mercy I craue, lord, at my be-gynnyng ; 1195
 haue I þi mercy, I desyr' not ellys,
 ffor I haue lernyd of mercy her' þe welle is." 1197
- Sche was lyft vp be our lorde hym-selfe ; 1198
 þus seyð he to hyr' : " wolcom, doutyr', to me !"
 Aboute hyr stode virgynes ten or twelue,
 Wondyrly arayed & full of bewte—
 Our lady had called hem on-to þat deute 1202
 To comfort þis mayde & do hyr seruyse.
 Tho spak þis lorde, þis hye iustyse : 1204
- " Ask what 3e wyll, Kateryne, 3e schul it haue 1205
 Of me at þis tyme to 3our wolcomyng ;
 Syth 3e for-sake boþe castell & caue
 ffor loue of me & for my byddyng,
 I will graunte 3ow 3our hertis desyryng, 1209
 ffor I am þat same whom 3e in parlement
 A-geyn all 3our lordes & comon[s]¹ consent ¹ MS. comon)
- " Chosen¹ on-to spowse. who leke 3e now ? ¹ MS. Chosen ?
 Wyll 3e now haue me for eyr-more ?" 1213
 Wyth þese¹ swete wordes sche fel in swow ¹ MS. þeses

- Thou I thi moder be, thi seruau[n]t am I :
 Thi grace I thanke, for thi mercy I cry." 1183 *Bk. III. Ch. 23.*
 and acknow-
 ledges herself
 His servant.
- Oure lord bad hir ryse, and she ros sone. 1184
 She was corouned ageyn, her thei wer ware—
 Tho men myght see what is to done
 Of ony creature, whan thei come thare.
 This same exa[m]ple sat tho ful sare 1188
 On Kataryne-is herte ; she fel down anoon
 Plat on-to the ground stille as þe stoon, 1190
 Thus seyde she in short, for to telle pley[n] : 1191
 "I see weel, lord, that of al-ma[n]er thyng
 Thou art makere, of erthe, eyr and þe reyn,
 Alle been obedyent to thy commaundyng :
 Mercy I craue, lord, at my begynnyng ; 1195
 haue I thy mercy, I desyre not ellys,
 ffor I haue lerned of mercy heere þe welle is." 1197
 Christ's
 mercy.
- She was lift vp be oure lord hym-selue ; 1198
 Thus seyde he to hir : " welcome, doughter, to me !"
 Abowte hir stood virgynes ten or twelue,
 Wonderly arayed and ful of beaute—
 Oure lady had called hem on-to þat dewte 1202
 To comforte this mayde and doo hir seruyse.
 Tho spak this lord, this hye Iustyse : 1204
 "Aske what ye wil, Kataryne, ye shul it haue 1205
 Of me at this tyme to youre wolcomynge ;
 Sith ye for-sake bothe casteH and caue
 ffor loue of me and for my byddynge,
 I wil graunte you your hertys desyrynge, 1209
 ffor I am that same whom ye in parlement
 Ageyn alle youre lordys and comouns consent 1211
 "Chosen on-to spouse. how lyke ye now ? 1212
 Wil ye now haue me for euere-more ?"
 With these swete woordis she fel in swow
- Her Crown is
 put on again.
- Katharine
 begs for
- Christ
 welcomes St.
 Katharine.
- He will grant
 her all she
 wishes.
- Will she be
 His Bride?

- Bk. III. Ch. 24. Plat on-to þe grounde þe good lorde be-for.
 But whan he hyr wyttes a-geyn gan restore, 1216
 Thus spake sche þan on-to þat kyng :
 " O soueren maker' of all-maner' þing, 1218
 " Of angeH, of man, of best & of tre, 1219
 If I wer' worthy on-to 3our hye presence
 ffor to be couplede wyth solemnyte,
 þan wold I desyr' of 3our excellens
 þat 3e for-gefe me aH-maner' offens ; 1223
 Make me 3our seruaunt, & not 3our' wyffe !
 I am not worthy to so hye a lyffe." 1225
 " 3ys," seyde our lorde, " my modyr wyll here 1226
 þat I schall wed 3ow ; so wyll I saunfayle ;
 þerfor I ask 3ow 3our' wyll for to lere,
 If 3e consent on-to þis spousayle.
 Wyth many ioies I wyl 3ow newly rayle : 1230
 Consent 3e, Kateryne ? what sey 3e nowe ?"
 " Lord," sche seyde þoo, " I wyll as þow.¹ ¹ MS. 3ow ; r. as wilt þow.
 " I forsake here, lorde, for þi loue 1233
 Crown & londe, castell & town,
 Gold & syluyr, bothe hows & rofe,
 Brochys & ryngys, mantell & gown ;
 Suffyr me no mor', lord, for to fall down 1237
 In delectacyon of wordly þingys,
 Kepe me þi-selfe,¹ lorde, kyng of all kyngys ! ¹ r. to þi-selfe
 " All þat eyr I haue, þat wote I wele 1240
 I haue it of þe, lord—of whom haue I elles
 My spech, my þowt, my mende euery dele,
 My bones, my body, my flesch & my felles ?
 Now, as in þe of plente be þe welles, 1244
 Suffyr me neuyr for to part þe froo ;
 ffor fro þi presens kepe I neuyr to goo." 1246
 Than spak our lorde ryght on þis wyse : 1247
 " long was it ordeynde be-for þis tyme
 þat 3e schuld come on-to our' seruyse.

- Plat on-to the ground the goode lord be-fore. Bk. III. Ch. 23.
- But whan he hir wittes ageyn gan restore, 1216
- Thus spak she thanne on-to that kyng :
- “ O souereyn makere of alle-maner thyng, 1218 Katharine says
- “ Of aungeſt, of man, of beeste and of tree, 1219
- If I were wurthi on-to *your* hy presens
- ffor to be coupled with solennyte,
- Thanne wulde I desire of *your* exellens
- That ye forgeue me al-manner offens ; 1223
- Make me *your* seruauant, and not *your* wyff ! she would rather be
- I am not worthi to so hye a lyf.” 1225 His servant.
- Yet seyde oure lord : “ my moder wil heere 1226
- That I shal wedde you ; soo wil I saunsfayle ;
- Therefore I aske *your* wil, for to lere Christ asks
- If ye consente on-to this spousayle. St. Katharine
- With many Ioyes I wil you newly rayle : 1230 to wed Him.
- Consente ye, Kataryne ? what sey ye now ? ”
- “ Lord,” she seyde tho, “ I wil as wilt thou. 1232 She consents ;
- “ I forsake heere, lord, for thi loue 1233
- Crowne and lond, casteſt¹ and towne, 1 r. castellie ?
- Gold and siluer, bothe hous and roue,
- Broches and ryngis, manteſt and gowne ;
- Suffre me, lord, no more for to falle downe 1237
- In to delectacyun of werdly thynges,
- Keepe me thi-self, lord, kyng of al kynges ! 1239
- “ Alle þat euere I haue, that wot I weel 1240
- I haue it of the, lord—of whom haue I it elles ?—
- My speche, my thought, my mynde euery deel,
- My boones, my body, my flesh and my felles.
- Now, as in the of plente been the welles, 1244
- Suffre me neuere for to parten the froo ;
- ffor fro thi presens kepe I neuere goo.” 1246 and prays that she may never leave Him.
- Than spak oure lord ryght on this wise : 1247
- “ longe was it ordeyned beforne this tyme
- That ye shuld come on-to oure seruyse.

Bk. III. Ch. 24.

- A-boue all opir I wyll þat 3e clyme,
 Saue only my modyr, schortly to ryme ; 1251
 3e schal be next ioyned to my presence,
 Ryght for 3our chastyte & 3our' obediens. 1253
 "ffor þow3 all þoo maydenes þat kepe hem clene 1254
 ffor my sake & for my plesaunce,
 Be wyues vn-to me, all be-dene,
 3et is þer' to 3ow schape a hyer' chaunce,
 Be-for hem all schal 3e go in þe daunce, 1258
 Next my modyr, ryght for þis cause
 ffor 3e for-soke, to sey schortly in clause, 1260
 "Emperour', kyng & duke, for my sake. 1261
 • I receyue 3ow þerfor' be a specyalte,
 My wyffe for euyr her' I 3ow make,
 Be-cause of 3our constans in virginite.
 And a new conflycte in schort tyme schul 3e 1265
 Be-gyne for my sake—but drede 3ow noght!
 Who-so offend 3ow, ful der' it schal be bowte!" 1267
 Tho spak our' lady ryght in þis maner': 1268
 "Syth þat þis spousalye mote nedys be doo,
 þis same mayde, lord, geue I þe here—
 A mayde 3eueth a mayde, þou seruyd me soo
 Whan þou commendyd Ihon me vn-too 1272
 Wher' þat þou hyng on þe bloody tre.
 her' is þe ryng, lord, & her' is sche." 1274
 Our' lord tok þat ryng in hys honde, 1275
 he put it on þe fynger' of þis clene¹ virgyne ; ¹ to be om.
 "þis is a tokne," he seyde, "of þat bonde
 Whech¹ 3e 3our-selfe as on of myne ¹ r. Be whech?
 lyst now 3our' wyll to my wyl enclyne ; 1279
 þis tokne eke beryth wytnesse full ryffe
 þat her' I tak 3ow for my weddyd wyffe." 1281
 Certeyn men þat had seyn þis ryng, 1282
 As myn auctour' seyth, þei told it pleynd;
 þei seyde þat it is a fayr' grauyn þing

- A-boue alle other I wil that ye clyme,
 Saue oonly my moder, shortly to ryme ; 1251
 Ye shal ben next Ioyned to my presens,
 Right for youre chastite and youre obedyens. 1253
- “ ffor though alle tho maydenes þat keepe hem clene
 ffor my sake and for my plesauns,
 Been wyues on-to me, alle be-deene,
 3et is there to you shapen an hyere chauns,
 Be-fore hem alle shul ye goo in the dauns, 1258
 Next my moder, ryght for this cause
 ffor ye forsook, to seyn shortly in clause, 1260
 “ Emperour, kyng and duke, for my sake. 1261
 I receyue you therefor be a specyalyte,
 My wyf for euere heere I yow make,
 Be-cause of your constauns in virgynite.
 And a newe conficte in short tyme shul ye 1265
 Be-gynne for my sake—but dreede yow nought!
 hoo-soo offende yow, ful deere it shal be bought.” 1267
- Tho spak oure lady ryght in this manere : 1268
 “ Sith that þis spousayle muste nede be doo,
 This same mayde, lord, geue I the heere—
 A mayde 3eueth a mayde, þou serued me soo
 Whan þou commended Ion me on-too 1272
 Where that þou heyng on the blody tree.
 heere is the ryng, loord, and heere is shee.”
- Oure lord took that ryng in his hond, 1275
 he putte in on the fynger of this virgyne ;
 “ This is a tookne,” he seyde, “ of that boond
 Whiche ye your-self as oon of myne
 lyste now youre wil to my wil enclyne ; 1279
 This token eke bereth wittenesse ful ryf
 That heer I take 3ow for my wedded wyf.” 1281
 Certeyn men that hadde seen this ryng, 1282
 As myn auctour seyth, the¹ tolde it pleynd ;
 They seyde þat it is a fayr grauen thyng

*Bk. III. Ch. 23.*Christ says
she shall be
next His
Mother.Christ makes
St. Katharine
His wife,1273-4 transp.
in the MS.and puts on
her finger a
ring

Bk. III. Ch. 24.

- Oute of a ston whech, as þei eke seyn,
 It is clepyd a calcedony, lych a clowde of reyn 1286
 Or ellys lych þe watyr, swech his colour' is.
 hys uertues ar' touchyd¹ many, I-wys : ¹ r. if touchyd? 1288
 The auctoures sey þat he is gracyous 1289
 To þe berer of hym; if þat he wyll trete
 Of ony materes whech þat be perlyous,
 he schall haue fortune down for to bete
 All þe bate & stryffe in toun or in strete; 1293
 he is vertuous eke to ȝeue men a tast'
 ffor to kepe her' body boþe clene & chast. 1295
 Tho be-gan a song in heuen all a-bowte, 1296
 þe [most]¹ wondyrfull notes þat euyr man myght her';
 Wordes soundyd þei to þe notes full deuoute, ¹ om.
 ffull well acordyng to her' song þer'.
 þe song þat þei sungyn, if ȝe wyll [it] ler', 1300
 Was þis same : Sponsus amat sponsam;
 þe ouert þer'-too : Saluator uisitit illam. 1302
 So semeth it well þis song in heuen be-gan, 1303
 A-monge aungelles & seyntys in blysse.
 Well may it þan be sunge of mane
 her' in þis vale of wrecchydenesse;
 þis chyrch must folow, for sothe I gesse, 1307
 þe chyrch a-boue in all þat it may.
 þus endeth þe weddyng of þis may. 1309

Bk. III. Ch. 25.Cam. 25^m.

- T**ho lest our' lorde hys leue to take 1310
 Of hys new spouse as for a space;
 þat same hand whech all þing dede make
 he lyfte on hye, & of hys goode grace
 he blessed þis swete boþe hede & face, 1314
 "ffarwell," he seyth, "my wyffe ful der'!
 lete no dyscoumfort ȝow noy ne der'! 1316

Oute of a stoon), whiche thei eke seyn)		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 23.</i>
It is cleped a Calcedony, liche a cloude of reyn)	1286	with a stone of Chalcedony in it.
Or ellis liche the water, swiche his colour is.		
his vertues arn) touched many, I-wis :	1288	
The auctoures seyn) þat he is gracyous	1289	
To the berere of hym ; if þat he wil trete		
Of ony materis whiche þat be perilous,		(The virtues of Chalcedony.)
he shal haue fortune doun) for to bete		
Alle debate and stryf, in toun) or in strete ;	1293	
he is virtuous eke to yeue men) a tast		
ffor to kepe her body bothe clene and chast.	1295	
Tho be-gan) a song in heuene al a-boute,	1296	A Bridal Song is sung in Heaven,
The [most] wonderful notes þat euere men myght here ;		
Woordes souned thei to the notes ful deuoute,		
fful weel a-cordyng to her song theere.		
The soun) þat thei sounen), if ye wil lere,	1300	
Was this same : Sponsus amat sponsam ;		
The ouert ther-too : Saluator visitat illam.	1302	
Soo semeth it weel this song in heuene be-gan),	1303	
Amongis aungellis and seyntys in blesse.		
Weel may it thanne be sunen) of man)		
heere in this vale of wretchednesse ;		
This chirche muste folwe, forsothe I gesse,	1307	
The chirche a-boue in al that it may.		and the Wedding is over.
Thus endeth this weddyng of this may.	1309	

Ca^m. 24^m.*Bk. III. Ch. 24.*

T ho liste oure lord his leue to take	1310	
Of his newe spouse as for a space ;		
The same hand whiche alle thyng dede make		
he lifte vp on hye, and of his good grace		
he blisset that swete bothe heed and face,	1314	Christ blessen His new Wife, St. Katharine,
“ffar weel,” he seyth, “my wyf ful deere !		
lete no discomforte you noye ne feere !	1316	

- Bk III. Ch. 25.* "Thow þat 3e lese 3our londe, 3our' welth, 1317
 Thynk it is bettyr þat I 3ow 3eue;
 Thow sekeneſ come in ſtede of helth,
 Kep 3e 3our' counſtans in trewe be-leue!
 And þe, adryane, make I my refe, 1321
 As in þis mater', þou ſhall hyr tech
 Of myn incarnacyon þe maner' ſpech; 1323
 "Tech hyr þe feyth eke of þe trinite, 1324
 þe ffadyr, [&] þe ſune, & þe holy goſt,
 Tech hyr of þe godhede þe vnyte,
 Truly tech hyr, *wyth*-outen boste!
 Of all þis cuntre I troſt þe now moſte: 1328
 þerfor do truly my comaundement!
 But if þou do, þou may ſone be ſchent. 1330
 "Thys werk, þis leſſon truly to performe, 1331
 Eyt dayes wyll I ſche dwell *wyth* þe.
 My modyr ſhall I ſende hyr to enforme
 Aftyr þat tyme *wyth* ſolemnyte
 Of many other' þinges towchyng hyr' & me. 1335
 But, Kateryne wyffe, þis ſhall I 3ow 3eue
 A-boue all women þat now erdely leue: 1337
 "Myn aungellis ſchul honour' 3ow *wyth* a ſeruyſe— 1338
 In tokne þat we be wedded *in-fere*—
 þer was neuer ſey 3et ſwech funeral offyſe
 Of no ſeynt þat in erde deyed here.
 þis ſchal I do for 3our' loue, dere. 1342
 ffar'-wel now, & þink not longe!"
 Thus paſed our' lorde, *wyth* myrthe & ſong. 1344
 And all þoo creatures fayre & bryght, 1345
 Alle are I-ſaſſed, þe temple eke is goo,
 So is þat chapell, þat funt & þat lyght.
 Of all þis þing þei ſe now no moo
 But Adryanes ſelle, wher' þat þei too 1349
 Ar' left a-lone a-mong trees olde.
 But þan was it r'uthe for to be-holde, 1351

- "Though that ye lese youre lond and your welthe,
 Thynke þat it is better that I yow ȝeue; 1318 *Bk. III. Ch. 24.*
 Though seeknesse come in stede of helthe,
 Keepe ye your constans in trewe beleue!
 And the, Adryan, make I my reue, 1321 and makes
 As in the matir, þou shalt hir teeche Adrian her
 Of my incarnacyon the maner speche; 1323 teacher.
 "Teche hir þe feyth of the trynlyte,¹ 1 on erasure. 1324 Christ bids
 The fadir, the sone, the hooly goost, Adrian teach
 Teche hir of the godhed the vnyte, St. Katharine
 Trewely teche hir, with-uten boost! the Christian
 Of alle this contre I troste the now moost: 1328 Faith.
 Therefore do truly my commaundement!
 But if þou doo, thou mayst soone be shent. 1330
 "This werk, this lesson truly to perfoorme, 1331
 Eyte dayes wil I she dwelle wyth the. She'll stay
 My modir shal I sende hir to enfoorme with him 8
 After that tyme with solennyte days. After
 Of many other thyng's touchynge hir and me. 1335 3 days Christ
 But, Kataryne wyf, this shal I ȝow yeue will send His
 A-boue alle women that now erthely leue: 1337 Mother to
 her.
 "Myn aungell's shuln honowre yow with a seruyse—
 In tokene that we been wedded in-feere— 1339 At her death
 There was neuere yet seyn swyche funeral offyse she shall be
 Of no seynte that in erthe deyed heere. buried with
 This shal I doo for youre loue, deere. 1342 angels.
 ffarweel now, and thynke not loonge!"
 Thus passeth oure lord, with merthe and soonge. 1344 Christ goes;
 And alle tho creatures fayre and bryght, 1345 the Angels
 Alle arn I-passed, the temple eke is goo, and Temple
 Soo is þat chapel, that font and that lyght. vanish.
 Of al this thyng thei seen now no moo
 But Adrian is celle, where þat thei too 1349 St. Katharine
 Arn left allone a-mong's trees oolde. is in Adrian's
 But than was reuthe for to be-hoolde, 1351 cell.

- Bk. III. Ch. 25.* To se þis swete, who sche þan felle 1352
 Down in a swow ; as ded þoo sche lay.
 Adrianne now is runne to hys welle,
 Wyth watyr he comyth & grete a-fray,
 " A-wake, madame ! " he gan þoo to say, 1356
 " Allas þat eyr 3e come in [to] þis place ! "
 he rubbyd hyr chekys, þe nose & þe face, 1358
 he wept, he prayed, he cryed ful sore, 1359
 To sche a-woke, sat vp & spake.
 Adryane sayde to hyr : " lady, dey no mor' !
 ffor, & 3e do, hens schal I me pak ;
 Alle-maner' coumfort her' we do lak 1363
 þat schuld 3ow rere : þer-for' I charge 3ow,
 ffall no more in swech-maner' swow ! 1365
 " Thynkyth, thow 3our loue as for a tyme 1366
 hath left 3ow her', 3et hath he nowth
 ffor-sak 3ow, lady, but as a pylgryme
 he wyl 3e be, in dede & in thowte.
 I wote full wele 3e neuyr mech rowth 1370
 Of no wordly ne erdely plesauns ;
 It may 3ow no-þing so hyly avauns 1372
 " As may þat lorde to whom þat 3e be 1373
 Wedded now newly. for goddys sake,
 Comfort 3our-selue & þink who þat 3e
 þis same blesse sumetyme schul I-take
 In swech-maner' sewyrnesse þat schal neuer slake. 1377
 þerfor' beth glade, & loke on 3our ryng !
 It wyl remembyr' 3ow 3our' glorious wedding. 1379

*Bk. III. Ch. 26.*Ca^m. 26^m.

- " **B**vt now must 3e, myn own lady der', 1380
 3our' beleue vnderstand ful sykyr & playn) :
 3our' swete spouse bad I schuld it 3ow lere,
 Whom 3e in flesch now full late sayn),
 In whech he soked & also was slayn) ; 1384

- To see this swete, hough she than felle 1352 *Bk. III. Ch. 24.*
Doun in swon; as deed tho she lay. *St. Katharine swoons.*
Adrian is ronne now to his welle, *Adrian*
With water he cometh and grete affray,
"A-wake, madame!" he gan tho to say, 1356
"Allas that euere ye come in [to] þis place!"
he rubbed hir cheekys, the nose and þe face, 1358
he wepte, he preyed, he cryed ful sore, 1359 *revives her,*
Tho¹ she a-wook, satte vp and spak. ^{1 r. to = till}
Adryan seyde to hir, "lady, deye no more!
ffor, and ye doo, hens shal I me pak;
Alle-maner comforte here doo we lak 1363
That shuld ȝow rere: therfore I charge yow,
ffal no more in swiche-maner swow! 1365
"Thenketh, though *your* loue as for a tyme 1366
hath lefte yow here, yet hath he nought
ffor-sake yow, lady, but as a pilgryme
he wil ȝe been, in dede and in thought.
I wot ful weel ye neuere moche rought 1370
Of no worly ner erthely plesavns;
It may you no-thing soo hyly avauns 1372
"As may that lord to whom þat ye bee 1373
Wedded now newly. ffor goddys sake,
Comforte *your*-self and thenke how þat yee
This same blysse shal ye take
In swiche-maner suernesse þat shal neuere slake. 1377
Therefore be glad, and look on *your* ryng!
It wil remembre yow youre glorious weddyng. 1379

and tells her
that Christ
has not for-
saken her,
and that she
will soon be
with Him for
ever.

Cam. 25m.

Bk. III. Ch. 25.

- "Bvt now must ye, myn owen lady deere, 1380
Your beleue vndirstonde ful seker and playn):
Your swete spouse bad I shuld it ȝow leere,
Whom ye in flesh now ful lat sayn,
In whiche he souked and also was slayn. 1384

He teaches
her the Chris-
tian Faith.

- Bk. III. Ch. 26.* But of hys goddehed, wech is grownd of all,
fleythfully þe treuth tell now I schall. 1386
- “Thys must 3e be-leue, as I told 3ow ere 1387
Whan 3e wer’ baptizyd, if 3e hafe mynde—
Sette 3our hert þer-to & bysyly it lere :
Our’ lord godd is of swech a kynde
þat sykyrly, as I of hym wretyn fynde, 1391
he is on in substauns & in nature,
Thre eke in persones, I 3ow ensure ; 1393
- “O god, o lorde, o maker, o mageste, 1394
þe fadyr & þe sune & þe holygoost,
Thre persones in o godhede—þus be-leue 3e—
Off wech non is smaller’ ne non is most,
All ar’ of euene power’ in euery cost ; 1398
ffor þe pluralyte of persones is no preiudyse
On-to þe vnyte of godhed, in no-maner’ wyse. 1400
- “And 3et he þat is þe fadyr, is not þe sone, 1401
Ne þe sone þe gost, wyth-outen fayle ;
O wyll hafe þei in all þat is don),
O myght, o power’, o lyght, o counsayle—
þis lesson must 3e hyde in 3our entrayle 1405
fful sadly, madame, for it is our’ grounde,
On wech to beleue ful sor’ are we bounde. 1407
- “Dystynceyon in persones, in natur’ vnite, 1408
þis is our’ scole, it must be our’ besynesse.
þe fader’ 3eueth to þe sune, þus be-leue we,
All substauns of deite, & he hath neuyr þe lesse ;
þe fadyr begetyth þe holy sune in blesse, 1412
þe sune is be-gotyn, þe goost fro hem too
Procedyth, þe thryd persone, þus be-lefe we, loo ! 1414
- “To þe fadyr longyth myght, to þe sune cunnyng, 1415
Godeness to þe goost—þus couplede be þei, I gesse ;
And 3et must we sey, for ony-maner þing,

[¹ But of hys goddehed, whech is grownd of all,
fleythfully þe treuth tell now I schall.¹] ^{1—1 om. in MS.} 1386

Bk. III. Ch. 25.

“ This must ye beleue, as I toolde yow eere 1387
Whan ye were baptised, if 3e haue mynde—
Sette youre herte ther-too and besely it leere :
Cure lord god is of swiche a kynde
That sekerly, as I of hym wreten fynde, 1391
he is on in substauns and in nature,
Thre eke in *persones*, I 3ow ensure ; 1393

Adrian
teaches St.
Katharinethe Unity
and Trinity
of God.

“ Oo god, oo lord, oo makere, oo maieste, 1394
The fadir and the sone and the hooly goost,
Thre *persones* in oo godhed—thus beleue yee !—
Of whiche noon is smalhere ne noon is most,
Alle arn of euene powere in euery coost ; 1398
ffor the pluralite of *persones* is noo preiudise
On-to the vnyte of godhed, in no-maner wyse. 1400

“ And yet he þat is the fadir, is not the sone, 1401
Ne the sone the goost, withouten fayle ;
Oo wil haue thei in þat is doone,
Oo myght, oo power, oo light, oo consayle—
This lesson muste ye hyde in *your* entrayle 1405
fful sadly, madame, for it is oure grovnde,
On whiche to beleue ful sore are we bovnde. 1407

The 3 Persons
are distinct,

“ Distineccyon in *personis*, in nature vnite, 1408
This is oure scole, it muste ben oure besynesne.
The fadir yeueth to the sone, thus beleue we,
All substaunce of deyte, and he hath neuere the lesse ;
The fadir begeteth the hooly sone in blesse, 1412
The sone is begoten, the goost fro hem too
Procedeth, the thredde *persone*, thus beleue we, loo ! 1414

though their
Nature is one.

“ To þe fadir longeth myght, to the sone kunnyng, 1415
Goodnesse to the goost—þus coupled be thei, I gesse ;
And 3et muste we sey, for ony-maner thyng,

The Father
has might ;
the Son,
knowledge ;
the Spirit,
goodness.

Bk. III. Ch. 26. O myght, o cunnyng, & eke oo goodenesse. ¹ so all MSS.; r. þow
 þat¹ þe fadyr is all-mygthy, þe sune hath neuer þe lesse;
 Thow þe sune haue cunnyng, þe goost hath þe same;
 Goodenesse haue þei alle, wete 3e wel, madame." 1421

Swech-maner' dalyauns had þese folk¹ þan, ¹ r. folkis 1422
 All þoo eyte dayes, in hye communicacyon.
 Mech mor' þing was seyð þan, mor' þan I can
 Reherse at þis tyme—suffyseth 3ow þis lesson;
 ffor all þoo holy wordes of swech exortacyon 1426
 May bettyr be þowth þan þei may be spoke;
 Swech langage in synfull tunge is but brok[e]. 1428

Bk. III. Ch. 27.

Cam. 27^m.

AT þe eyte dayes ende, as was promission, 1429
 Comth our' lady wyth lyght down fro heuen;
 Chaunged sodenly is þoo þat mansyon,
 ffor it semyth now bryter' þan þe leuene.
 Angellys wer' þer', mo þan sex or seuyñ— 1433
 It longeth on-to hem to do hyr' dew seruyse,
 To þe emperesse of heuyn, modyr to þe hye iustyse. 1435
 Many other' ladyes come þoo wyth þe qwene, 1436
 Wyth mary I mene; so ded Ihon' baptyst;
 þer' wer' eke virgines full fele, as I ween,
 he was þer' eke Ihon' þe euangelyst.
 Who had be þer', of ioie he myght a wyst! 1440
 Our' lady hyr-selfe on-to þis blyssed mayde
 Swech-maner' wordes at þat tyme sayde: 1442
 "Dowtyr to me, wyffe on-to my sone, 1443
 My sone gretyth 3ow wyth hys good blessing.
 As he behestyd 3ow, now am I come,
 To tell 3ow þe maner' of 3oure endyng.
 A tyraunt, a wers was neuyr leuyng, 1447
 Schal distroye 3our' regne, & 3our body sle.
 We wyll not 3e repent 3ow, we wyll not 3e fle, 1449

O myght, o konnynge, and eke o goodnesse. 1418 *Bk. III. Ch. 25.*
 That the fadir is almyghty, the sone hath neuer þe lesse ;
 Though þe sone hath connynge, the goost hath þe same ;
 Goodnesse haue thei alle, wete ye weel, madame !” 1421

Swiche-maner daliauns hadde þese folkis than 1422 *Adrian's teaching lasts 8 days.*
 Alle the eyte dayes in hye communcyacyon.
 Moche more þing was seyde than, more than I kan
 Reherse at this tyme—suffyseth yow this lesson) ;
 ffor alle the hooly wordys of swiche exortacyon 1426
 May better be thought thanne thei may be spoke ;
 Swiche langage in synful tonge is but broke. 1428

Ca^m. 26^m.

Bk. III. Ch. 26.

AT this eyte dayes ende, as was promyscion, 1429 *The 8 days ended, the Virgin Mary comes,*
 Cometh oure lady wyth lyght down from [he]uene ;
 Chaunged sodeynly is tho that mansyon,
 ffor it semeth now bryghtere than þe leuene.
 Aungellis were there, mo þan sexe or seuene— 1433
 It longeth on-to hem to doo hyr dew seruyse,
 To the empres of heuene, modir to the hooly Iustise. 1435

Many other ladyes come tho with þe queene, 1436
 With mary I mene ; so dede Iohn þe baptist ;
 There were eke virgynes ful fele, as I wene,
 he was there eke Iohn þe euaungelyst.
 hoo had be there, of Ioye he myght a wyst ! 1440
 Oure lady hir-selue on-to this blissed mayde
 Swiche-maner wordis at þat tyme sayde : 1442

with John the Baptist, St. John, and others,

“ Doughter to me, wif on-to my sone, 1443 *to tell St. Katharine how she shall die.*
 My sone gretheth yow now wyth his good blyssyng.
 As he behested yow, now am I come,
 To telle yow the maner of youre endyng.
 A tyrant, wers was neuere leuyng, 1447
 Shal destroye youre reigne, and your body slee.
 We wil not ye repente, we wil not ye flee, 1449

- Bk. III. Ch. 27. "Abydyth styll ryght in 3our' owyn place, 1450
 Boldly stryue a-geyn hys tyrannye!
 My sone wyll endew 3ow *wyth* swech grace,
 Was neuyr no woman honoured so hye.
 But fyrst mote 3e sofyre schame & vylonye, 1454
 losse of 3our godys, in 3our body passyon,
 Deth at þe last, þis is þe conclusyon. 1456
 "I must goo now on-to my sone a-geyn, 1457
 3e to 3our owne courte schall repaire.
 All þis tyme þei mysse 3ow not, dar' I seyn.
 fare-wele, my dowty[r], farewel ye¹ fayre! ^{1 MS. þe}
 Whyl 3e *wyth* my sone wer' in þe ayre, 1461
 A qween leche to 3ow all þat tyme kept
 3our' grete a-state, sche ete & slept, 1463
 "Spake & comaunded, bothe dempt & wrote— 1464
 All þis dyde sche ryght in 3our stede,
 þer was no man *wyth-inne* þat mote¹ ^{1 = palace, court}
 þat cowde a-spye in hyr' womanhede
 Ony-maner' differens, sate sche or 3ede— 1468
 My sone ordeyned þis for 3our' sake.
 Whan 3e ar' ded & 3our corownd take, 1470
 "Than schall 3e know swech preuy þingys,¹ ^{1 r. þing} 1471
 Who þei ar doo & in what maner'.
 3et of an other' matere I 3eue 3ow warnyngys:¹ ^{1 r. warnyng}
 þe qween 3our modyr, þe qwych dyd 3ow bere,
 Is I-pasyd & ded, leyd low on bere. 1475
 But beth not dyscounfortyd! now wyll I be
 Modyr on-to 3ow, my sonys wyffe, parde. 1477
 "Too 3er' in 3our place & sumwhat more 1478
 Schull 3e dwell, or þis maxencius
 Come for to spoyle 3our tresore—
 Of þat same rychesse be 3e not desyrous.
 Kepyth 3our chambyr' *wyth* leuyng uertuous, 1482
Wyth prayr', fastyng, & allmes-dede,
 3eue to þe por' folk bothe mete & wede. 1484

- " Abydeth stille ryght in ȝoure owen place, 1450 *Bk. III Ch. 26.*
 Boldely stryue ageyn hys tyrannye!
 Mi sone wil endewe yow wyth swiche grace,
 Was neuere woman honowred soo hye.
 But first mote ye suffre shame and vylonye, 1454
 losse of youre goodis, in your body passyon),
 Deth at þe laste, this is the conclusyon). 1456
*The Tyrant
Maxentius
shall kill
Katharine.*
- " I must goo now on-to my sone ageyn), 1457
 Ye to youre owne court shal repayre.
 Al this tyme thei mysse yow not, dar I seyn).
 ffarweel, my dowter, farweel, ye fayre!
 Qwille¹ ȝe with my sone were in the ayre, ¹ MS. *I wille* on er. 1458
 A queenliche to yow al þis tyme kepte
 Your grete astate; she ete and slepte, 1463
*where her
Doubt has
personated
her.*
- " Spak and commaunded, bothe dempte and wrot—
 Al this dede she ryght in youre stede, 1465
 There was no man wyth-Inne that mote
 That coude asprie in hir womanhede
 Ony-manner differens, sat she or yede— 1468
 My sone ordeyned þis for ȝoure sake.
 Whan ye arn ded an[d] your crowne take, 1470
 "Thanne shal ye knowe swiche preuy thyngis, 1471
 how thei arn doo and in what manere.
 Ȝet of a-nother mater I yeue yow warnyngis:
 The queen youre modir, whiche bare yow here,
 Is I-passed and ded, leyd lowe on bere. 1475
 But beth not discomforted, now wil I bee
 Moder on-to yow—my sonnes wyf ar yee. 1477
 "Too yeer in yowre place and somewhat more 1478
 Shal ye dwelle, er this Maxencyous
 Come for to destroye youre tresore—
 Of þat same rychesse be ye not desyrous.
 Keepeth ȝoure chaunbre wyth leuyng virtuous, 1482
 With preyng, fastyng, and elmesse-dede,
 Yeue to the pore folkys bothe mete and wede. 1484
*The Queen,
her Mother,
is dead.*
*The Virgin
Mary*

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 27.</u>	“ Aftyr þis tyme be pased & I-goo,	1485
	þan shall þis tyraunt mak sone a hende	
	Of 3ow, doutyr, & of many moo.	
	þis lesson I wyll þat 3e emprende,	
	Now & euyr set it in 3our’ mende.	1489
	ffar’-wel now ! fyrst I wyll 3ow kysse.	
	I go to my sone, to euerlestyng blysse.”	1491
	Thus is oure lady sodenly I-goo .	1492
	As now fro þis qween ; sche is home eke	
	Vn-to Alysaunder, myn auctor seyth soo—	
	þei þat wyll rede hym, þei may it seke.	
	Wheyther’ sche cam þedyr in day or in weke,	1496
	I wote noght now, but þer’ now sche is.	
	Was non all þat tyme þat dede hyr mys,	1498
	ffor þat tyme whech sche was oute ;	1499
	þus was it ordeynyd be our’ soueren lorde.	
	þis same book whech we hafe be long a-boute,	
	We wyll now ende, if 3e þer-to acorde.	
	God send vs alle of vnite acorde,	1503
	To plese hym oonly a-boue all menne—	
	þer-to sey we alle wyth oo voys, AmEN.	1505

[For the last Books, the Rawlinson MS. has been
collated only.]

- " After þis tyme be passed and I-goo, 1485 *Bk. III. Ch. 26.*
 Than shal þis tyraunt make soone an ende
 Of you, doughter, and of many moo. foretells St.
 This lesson I wil þat ye emprende, Katharine's
 Now and euere sette it in your mende. 1489 martyrdom
 ffarwel now ! first I wil yow kysse. in 2 years.
 I goo to my sone, to euere-lastyng blisse." 1491

 Thus is oure lady sodey[n]ly I-goo 1492
 As now fro this queen ; she is hom eke
 Vn-to Alisaundre, my auctour seyth soo—
 Thei that wil rede hym, þei may hym seeke. *St. Katharine*
 Whether she cam theder in day or in weke, 1496 *goes home to*
 I wot not now, but there now she is. *Alexandria.*
 Was noon al that tyme þat dede hir mys, 1498

 ffor þat tyme whiche she was oute ; 1499
 Thus was it ordeyned be oure souereyn lord.
 This same book whiche we haue be long aboute,
 We wil now ende, if ye ther-to acord.
 God sende vs alle, of vnyte þe hord, 1503
 To plesse hym oonly a-bouen alle men ;
 Ther-too sey we alle wyth oo voys amen. 1505

[Liber iiij.] Prologus.

Bk. IV. Prolog.

- T**hese erthely dwelleris whiche lyue now here, 1 Folk are like
 Arn lykened to bees whiche dwellyn in hyue, bees:
 Or ellis to dranes, if that ye list to leere.
 It fareth with men ryght thus in her lyue :
 Some wil laboure, and some wil neuere thryue, 5 some work,
 Dyuers conceytes there bee, and eke dyuers¹ degrees. some don't.
 The goode laboureris arn lykened to the bees, ¹ al. dyuers ek

<i>Bk. IV. Prol.</i>	Specialy þei that oute of goddis lawe	8
The Workers suck good out of God's Law.	Of dyuers parties sittynge on the floures Leerne and teche bothe to ¹ soke and drawe	¹ <i>al. om.</i>
	Of good exaamples of hooly predecessoures Swete conceytes, weel famed sauoures—	12
	Alle these ben bees, whiche to þe houshold brynge Alle her stuf and al her gaderynge.	14
The Drones only eat, waste,	Other there be whiche arn not profitable ; Thei ete and drynke, deuoure eke and waaste, Thei laboure not but it be at the table— ffor on-to werk haue þei noo grete haaste— fille weel her bely and yeue hem good repaaste,	15 19
and sleep,	Thanne wil thei slepen seker with þe beste ; We sey not of hem but “dranes loue weel reste.”	21
	Yet to goostly laboure the dranes wil not drawe, ffor that in her thoughtis thei haue noon delectacyon), ¹	22
delighting not in God's Law.	In the heerynge yet of goddis lawe Thei not encrece ne promote her stacyon) ; ffor thei hem-selue to goostly occupacyon)	¹ This v. corrupt ? 26
	Wil not drawe at no mannys requeste, Suffiseth hem her [full] bely and reste.	28
	Thus semeth it to me that holy scripture is In maner of a feelde, with floures faire arayed ;	29
Holy Church is the Hive,	And hooly kirke benethe, I-wys, ¹ She is the hyue with many stormys afrayed ;	¹ on erasure ; r. þat is b. I.
in which the good Bees store Honey.	The virtuous bees in þis hyve haue portrayed her diuers cellis of hony and of wax.	33
	What al this meneth, if ȝe listen to ax,	35
	Ye may it lerne : I sey the grete labour That good men haue to rede exaamples olde, It is to hem of solace newe socour	36

10 to om. 13 be . whehc . housolde 15 are 17 but if it . the
om. 20 slepe 21 lofe 22 the om. 23 ffor þat þei here thowte .
noon om. 25 encrese 28 here full bely 31 is be-nethe 35 lyst

- her virtuous lyuyng stable to be-holde
 And eke to fighte with corage fresh and holde 40
- Ageyns wordly¹ disceyuable affluens, ¹ r. pis worldys?
 A-geyns the fleshly slughed¹ ne glygens. or. slugged 42
- Oon of these bees was this same queen, 43 Katharine
 This mayde Kataryne, whiche with besynesse is a Working
 Of enery floure whiche was fayre to seen Bee,
 Souked oute the hony of grete holynesse, being the
 bare¹ it to the hyue, and þer she gan it dresse— 47 honey of
 ffor it wil doo seruyse bothe to god and man), ¹ MS. And bare Holiness to
 That same likour whiche she gadered than). 49 the Hive.
- This hony gadered she fer and wonder wyde : 50
 In the lawe of nature laboured she first and¹ formeſt,
 Where she the vyces lerned to ley a-syde, ¹ first and al. om.
 And vertues to chese as a clenly nest,
 To doo to no man, dwelled he Est or West, 54
 Werre than she¹ wolde he shulde on-to hir² doo— ¹ or. he,
 This lady gadered in this feeld right soo. ² or. hym) 56
- In the wreten lawe she gadered eke moche thyng : 57 She gathers
 The x commaundement/s to kepe truly in meende ;
 There lerned she the merueylous begynnynge
 Bothe of the world and eke of mankeende ;
 There lerned she the lame and eke þe bleende 61
 To foster, and to clothe bothe oold and 3yng—
 This was hir labour, this was hir gaderyng. 63
- In the lawe of grace souked she swetter mete 64
 Of rippere flowr/s : feyth, hope, and charyte ; Faith, Hope,
 She bar hem, and there she gan hem lete, and Charity.
 In to pis hyue to hooly cherches secrete—
 There ly thei yet as tresour, trust þou me ; 68

39 leuyng 41 pis werdly dec. 42 ageyne . slukyd 44 wheche
 46 the om. 47 And om. the om. 51 first and om. 52 o syde
 54 dwelle 55 he w. . hym 57 meeche 58 mynde 60 mankynde
 61 blynde 62 & clothe . helde 65 ryper 67 chyrches 68 trust

Bk. IV. Prolog. ho that wil labouren), may fro that swetnesse wrynge,
Moche beter than) on galeyen can brynge. 70

And fourth in this swetnesse wil we now *procede*, 71
Whiche *pat* she gadered, this lady, here lyuande.

May we go to Heaven,
God sende vs part, ryght as we haue neede,
In vertuous leuyng stably to stande,
And for to come¹ to *pat* heuenly lande ^{1 r. comen} 75

where Katharine now is!
Where she is now. for fourth to oure processe
Vndir hir socoure streit I wil me dresse. 77

Bk. IV. Ch. 1.

liber iii^{us}.

Cam. primum.

Rome has 3 Emperors: **I**N the tyme of Costus, as oure bookys telle, 78
Were thre Emperours in rome Citee:

I. Maximinus Galerius, The firste was a man) of herte ful felle,
Maximinus galerius, right soo hight he ;

II. Maximian, The secunde hight Maximian; the threde, [*parde*],¹ 82

III. Diocletian. Was named at that tyme dioclyciane— ^{1 MS. lerne ye}
he was many a cristen mannys bane. 84

No. I. stops at home; The firste emperour, Maximinus galerie, 85

Dwelled stille at rome, and kepte there *pe* pees,
The domes, the sacryfises dede he tho gye.

nos. II. and III. sent out to fight, The other too men) with-outen) ony lees
Were sent oute with ful grete prees, 89

To brenne and slee, to take and to saue—
This was office bothe to knyght and knaue. 91

But these same too for very werynesse 92

resign to no. I. leften here honour and resigned her right ;
fful gret excuse had thei, in sekernesse :
Thei seyde her grete labour and her fight
A-vayle hem right nought now it myght, 96

ffor the more thei dede *pe* more *pei* had to doo.
Wherfore, in sekernesse, thus thei too 98

69 laboure 74 lyuyng stably 76 to hyre pr. 82 *parde* 83 dyoclyciane 86 dwelt 87 *sacryfices*. dyd 88 any 93 left

- Resigned her right on-to this same¹ man; ^{1 r. s. first?} 99 *Bk IV. Ch. 1.*
 And he vndir hym made thre Emperouris,
 To helpe his empere al þat thei may and can,
 In alle bataillis, in alle sharpe shouris,
 To wyne Citees, Castellis, tounes and towris. 103
 The first hight Maximinus, as seyth the gest—
 he was assigned to gouerne al the Est; 105 makes Maxi-
 minus ruler
 of the East;
 [To] the seconde, whiche hight tho seuere, 106 Severus, ruler
 of Lombardy,
 &c.;
 Was eke assigned the keynge of lumbardye,
 Of almayn, Tussy—the story seyth soo heere—
 And many other contrees in that partye
 Vndir his power were trybutarye. 110
 Eke of brytayn, the lond in whiche we dwelle,
 Was Constantyne made lord, the sothe to telle. 112 and Con-
 stantine lord
 of Britain.
 The first Emperour, Maximinus galerius, 113
 ffor pryde and sorwe and synful lyf
 Was killed in a batayll—the story seith thus;
 he had defouled many a mayde and wif,
 And therefore, er he deyed oute of this stryf, 117
 he stank on erthe as euere dede carayn—
 lete hym goo walke on sarysbury playn. 119
 Tho took þe romaynis the zonge maxens, 120
 Sone on-to the¹ Maximine þat was in þe¹ Est; ^{1 al. om.} Maxentius
 is made
 Emperor of
 Rome.
 Thei corouned hym rially with gret expens,
 With moche solennyte and ful grete fest.
 The fame wente oute to more and to lest 124
 Tha[t]¹ he was emperour, and his fadir forsake. ^{1 MS. Thanne}
 This made his fadir, short tale to make, 126
 To leue his conquest and come to rome there. 127
 But er he cam there, his pride was I-cast:
 In Cecile he deyede—right soo dede I lere
 Of cronycles whiche [þat] I saugh last—

His father,
 Maximinus,
 dies in Sicily.

101 empyre. or can 102 batayles. schowres 103 wyne. town
 106 And to 111 weche 112 the om. 113 þis 117 or 118 erde
 119 in salysbury 121 the om. þe om. 122 realy 123 myche
 125 þat 128 or 129 cycyle. deyed 130 wheche þat. sey

- Bk. IV. Ch. 1.* There blew he oute his endyng blast ; 131
 And there leyth¹ he to abyden his chauns, ^{1 r. lyght = lyth}
 Whet[h]er it be to weeping or to dauns. 133
- Severus
raises an
army This seuerus eke þat dwelled in lumbardie, 134
 Gadered vp almayn and al his myght,
 ffor with þis eleccion had he grete enuye ;
 Therfore bothe be day and eke be nyght
 he laboured be wrong and [eke] with right 138
 To destroye this Maxence, sooth for to sayn,
 That he myght reigne whan he were slayn. 140
- against
Maxentius, But er he cam fully at this same rome, 141
 he was slayn of his sowdyouris be the weye.
 Than was there no more for to doone,
 But maxence regneth, the sooth for to seye,
 As now allone—euery man must obeye 145
 If he wil keepen his lyf on lofte ;
 But if he doo soo, he slepeth not ellis softe. 147
- but is slain
by his own
men. Thus regned this Maxence in rome al allone ; 148
 No man spak to hym what-euere he wil doo ;
 There was noo mayde, noo wif ne noon matrone,
 But whan he sente, þei muste come hym too
 To suffre his lust, to suffre what he wil doo ; 152
 What husbond letted it he shuld a-noon be deed,
 Vp-on his zate thei shulde setten his heed. 154
- Maxentius
turns tyrant
in Rome. he turned the lawe, al wente than be powere ; 155
 The puple cursd the wombe þat hym had born.
 Was noo man durste¹ in open langage there ^{1 MS. that d.}
 Ones sey to hym “ lord, youre lawe is lorn ! ”
 Of al the senate sette he but a scorn ; 159
 Pride and power hadden enhaunced hym soo,
 Al þat he coueyted he wolde haue it doo. 161
- The people
curse the
womb that
bore him. 132 lyghte . abyde 133 wheythyr . or ellys 134 dwelt 138
 labourerth . & eke 139 sothe 141 or 144 the om. 146 kepe . o
 lofte 147 slepe 149 speke 150 ne no 153 lett 154 sett 156
 pepyll 157 that om. 160 had enhaunced 161 coueyte . haf

Ca^m. 2^m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 2.

- T**ho the romaynis,¹ with a comoun consente, 162 The Romans
letteris preuily of grete sentens ded wryte
And in to bretayn to Constantyn hem sente,
In whiche þei preyed hym, as he was knyte, ¹ MS. tyrannye
That he com helpe hem ageyn this tyra[unt to fyght]¹;
Thei wolde be-traye hym, thei seyde, he² shuld not spede;
This was her ende: "come helpe vs at oure nede!" ² MS. þat he to help them.
- A-noon þis man dede gadere a grete strengthe 169 He raises a
Bothe of þis lond and of fraunce there-too;
Euere gan his ost encrece in brede and lengthe
Be euery contree in whiche he gan goo;
In Ytyle reysed he up puple many moo 173
Thanne euere dede seuere, right for þis tyrannye
Of this fals Maxence and for his lecherye. 175
- he is at rome; the oostis to-gedir mete. 176 and reaches
But maxcence trusteth¹ oonly in the Citee there;
he is deceyued, allone thei hym lete ¹ MS. trusteth
With his hushold, in moche care and fere.
Be this exaample wyse men may weel leere 180
To truste on the puple; for thei wil faile at nede.
Soo dede thei here; for streite fro hym thei yeede 182
- To constantyn, that now cam fro bretayn. 183
Thus [is] he fledde, the same Maxcencius, Maxentius
Deceyued rigtfully thus be her trayn—
Right for his leuyng, that was soo vicyous.
he fledde to perse, and there as man victorious 187 flees to
Dede grete thyngis, and many strengthes wan); Persia,
Soo as for lord, and for he was a man), 189 where he
fights well,
- Thei crowned hym there and called hym kyng of pers. and is made
Thus hath constantyn wonne the feeld this day, 191 King.

163 wryght 165 preyd . a knyte 166 tyraunt to fyght 167 þat
om. 169 strenght 171 lenght 176 hostys . mette 177 trostyth .
on 178 lette 179 howsholde . meche 180 ensaample 181 in
182 so streyt 184 is he 186 lyuyng 187 vycorious 188—263
om., as a leaf is torn out.

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 2.</i>	The other tyrant is put al to the wers.	
	Al this is told to this ende, sooth to say,	
	To knowe how Maxcens with soo grete aray	194
	Cam to Alysaundre swiche maystries for to make,	
	Whan he this lady dede arreste and take.	196
	ffor whan he was thus exalted in pers,	197
	Thus set in astate and in his faderis office,	
Maxentius grows wicked in Persia,	Tho wex he in condiciouns euere wers and wers,	
	And more enclyned to synne and to vice.	
	he sente oute letteris on-to euery Iustice	201
and orders Christians to be hung.	To serche the cristene, to hange hem and to-drawe ;	
	ffor truly, he seyth, he wil destroye that lawe.	203
	These letteris come to surry al aboute,	204
He goes to Syria,	And he hym-self folwed after hem sone.	
	The Copy of hem I wil with-uten dowte	
	Write here in english, me thenketh it is to doone.	
	"The lord of lordis that dwelleth ¹ vnder the moone,	208
	Maxcens, the emperour of pers with-uten peere, ¹ <i>al. dwell</i>	
	Greteth weel oure lyges thurgh-oute oure empere.	210
	"We wil ye wete, oure faderis here-be-forn,	211
	That wurshiped goddis with her dew seruyse,	
	Were neuere in bataill neyther conuycte ne lorn :	
	Sweche was the keepynge of goddis tho ¹ ben wise ¹ <i>r. put</i>	
bids his folk turn from Christ's law,	Ouere her puple. therfore we, as Iustise	215
	And as a preest in religyon of saturne,	
	Wil that 3e alle fro alle veyn lawes turne ;	217
	"Moost speycal fro cryst whiche heyng on tree ;	218
	That noo man be soo hardy hym for to name !	
	What-maner god ¹ shuld he now be ¹ <i>r. of god ?</i>	
	That was I-brought in to swiche fame	
	To be hanged on a tree with so moche shame ?	222
	Therfore noo man dwellynge now in oure lond	
	Shal be so hardy, neyther free ne bond,	224
and not even name him.	"To name hym oones, or for to sette	225
	his merke in pe forhed, as is the vsage	

Of alle these cristen! we wil hem lette		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 2.</i>
Of alle her cerymonyes and her pylgrimage;		Maxentius orders all Christians,
If that thei forfete, ¹ thei shul haue wage	¹ MS. forfete	229
Swiche as thei deserue ¹ for to haue;	¹ r. deseruen	
lordshipe ne richeshe shal hem noon ¹ saue.	¹ al. not	231
“Therefore, what man oony goddis honoure		232
Other than we doo now in oure sette,		who will not worship his Gods,
We wil þat thei be take wyth officeris oure		
And led to preson with-outen ony lette;		to be imprisoned
We wil ordeyn for hem swiche a gette		236
Thei shul neuere eft swiche maystries make		
In aȝ her lyue, and that we vnder-take.”		238 and punisht.
This is the sentens of the letteris longe		239
Whiche he sente oute on-to al the Est;		
Commaundyng lordis and knyghtes stronge		
That thei come in hast, bothe more and leest,		
And in most specyal on-to that grete feest		243
Whiche he wil make wyth ful grete store		
That ilke same day whiche he was boore.		245
The massangeris arn goon bothe fer and wyde		246
To bere these copies in to diuers londe.		
The emperour hym-self, he wil abyde		
On-to that tyme, as I vndirstonde,		
In grete Alisaundre with ful myghty honde;		250
In whiche Citee eke this noble queen soo dere		He comes to Alexandria, where Katharine is.
Wyth a preuy mene leued al in preyere.		252
To this Citee cam kyng, and soo ded queen),		253
Theder cam lordis, mo than I can telle;		
The Innes arn ful as hyues of been;		His Lords fill the city.
There is now not elles but bye and selle,		
In speccial mete and drynk—for there was neuere welle		257
More plenteuous of watir than was the cytee of mete,		
Soo were thei stored there, the marchauntis grete.		259
Whanne alle were come whiche shuld be there,		260
The Emperour thre poyntis dede tho declare,		

Bk. IV. Ch. 2. Whiche poyntis, he seyde, with-outen) dwere,
 Euene as thei in sentens stood plat and bare,
Maxentius commands he wulde euery man, what-soo-euere he ware, 264
 Or in what parti he dwelled of his domynacyon),
 Shulde keepe hem, in peyne of damnacyon). 266

Bk. IV. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

Christians to give up their Faith, **T**he firste poynt was that Cristen) alle and sum 267
 Muste leue her feyth and that grete honour
 Whiche that thei doo to crist, goddis son,
 Whom eke thei clepe¹ now her saluatour ; ^{1 r. clepen}
 " his disciples in to ful grete errour 271
 haue brought alle men) þat wil tende hem too,
 Right wyth the feyned myracles that thei doo. 273
 " Therefore wil we that thei come now alle 274
 To oure presens, for to see and here
and take up What-manner decree þat we yeue shalle
 On-to swiche witches, bothe ferre and nere ;
 We thenke for to make oure lawe ful clere, 278
 And whanne alle arn) looked, to chese þe beste ;
his Religion. This is the religion) that we haue keste." 280
 The seconde poynt whiche he shewed tho, 281
 Was this : he seyde " thei had remembrauns
 how that of rome no^t longe a-goo
He was deprived of Rome he helde the honour and al the gouernauns ; 284
 But be-trayed he was with hem of Bretayn) and frans,¹
by Constantine, Whiche oon) Constantyne had brought in-feere, ^{1 MS. of frans}
 A grete puple and a statly powere. 287
 " Thus had this traytour," he seyde, " this constantyn),
 As a fals intrusore entred in to his lande, 289
who had won his city. Wonne his Citee with gonnes and wyth myn),
 There myght no wal ne noo tour tho stande"—
 Thus bar Maxcens the lordis on hande 292

264 wold 265 dwelt 269 sunne 274 come om. 277 wyccchys .
 fere 279 are 280 hafe 282 remembrauns 283 who 285 of 2
 om. 287 statly 290 gunnes

- Whiche were *wyth* hym at Alisaundre that tyde ;
 "Wherefore sekylly," he seyth, "he wil ryde 294
 "Euene to rome, his right to conquere, 295
 To venge hym on this tyraunt, on þis Constantyn;"
 Wherefore he preyed the lordis that ben there
 That "thei shal be redy *wyth* bowes and engyn;
 ffor he wil rewarde hem with yeftes good and fyn, 299
 With rentes, londes, castellis and toures eke;
 If thei wynne rome, rychesse nede hem not seeke." 301
 The thredde poynt whiche þat he purposed there, 302
 Sittyng hym-selue right in the parlemente:
 he seyde "he wolde renewe with-oute[n] dwere
 Alle tho seruysez and al that dew rente
 Whiche to the goddis was ordeyned be comon assent; 306
 The goddis," he seyde, "shul[d] be more propiecyous,
 If þat here ceremonies were renewed thus." 308
 A bysshop stood vp tho with myter and *wyth* croos, 309
 Swiche as þei vsed tho in her lawe.
 There was cryed "euery man keepe cloos
 his mouth and his tunge, and [h]erkene to this sawe!"
 Whan he had his breth a litel while I-drawe, 313
 Thus spak he thanne in maner of sermonyng: ¹ he s. to be om.
 "I wil ȝe weten," he seyth,¹ "þat Iubiter, þat hey kyng,
 "hath turned away his good conseruacye¹ ¹ MS. conseruatye
 ffrom al oure nacyon, I telle ȝow shortly why: 317
 We haue forsaken hym and falle in maumentrye—
 Many of vs heere, I drede me, ar gylty
 In this same mater. wherefor Iubyter almyghty, 320
 And saturne, his fadir, be preuy operacion¹ ¹ al. apparicyon
 In sleep ȝoue warnyng be very reuelacion: 322
 "Thei bode we shulde þe puple teche to renewe 323
 The olde Cerymonyes and the old rightes¹ ¹ r. rites

Bk. IV. Ch. 3.

Maxentius
will attack
Constantine
in Rome.He will
revive the
dues of the
heathen
Gods.A heathen
Bishopreproaches
the Alex-
andrians, &c.,
with having
forsaken
Jupiter.They must
renew his
worship.

297 be 302 thyrd 304 *wyth*-outen 306 ordeynd 309 crose
 310 vsed om. 312 herken to hys 315 wetyne . iupiter . hye 316
 conseruacye 318 forsak . fall 321 apparicyon 324 held . elde
 rytes

*Bk. IV. Ch. 3.*A heathen
Bishopexalts the
great God
Jupiter,denounces
Christ,and bids the
people with-
stand Him.

Whiche oure faderis vsed or we only thyng knewe,

And soo vsed many lordes and many knyghtes.

ho yeueth¹ us helpe in pees or in fyghtes ¹ MS. he youen 327

But Iubyter allone? helth euere up-on hym,

honcure and seruyse to hym and [to] his kyn. 329

"Noman may maken so grete maystrye 330

As Iubiter dooth whan he wyth anger quaketh ;

The grete thunder whyche he maketh flye, ¹ MS. horribleThe horrible¹ lightnyngis whiche he maketh,Alle these shewe² to vs þat what man hym forsaketh, 334he is ful likly wyth vengeauns to be brent. ² MS. shewedTurne to hym ageyn therfore, lest 3e be not¹ shent! 336¹ corr. to nov

"Leueth alle these newe thyngis, keepe stille your olde!

What shal crist a-mongis goddis? put hym in place! 338

The shepherdis and ploughmen in feeld and in foolde,

Thei wote weel it stant not in mannys grace

O'n-to al the world saluacyon to purchase, 341

As seyn these cristen, for crist, as seyth her book,

With his blood fro the world alle synnes took. 343

"he muste ben eterne that shal swiche thyngis doo 344

That yeue encrece to ilke generacyon—

ffor to a god of ryght this it longeth, loo,

To haue in his nature euerelestyng duracyon.

Repelleth fro 3oure counseyþ this cristen nacyon, 348

This charge I 3ow in [þe] goddis name ;

Saue your soules and your bodyes fro blame!" 350

This was the sentens of this grete sermoun 351

Whiche þat the bisshop at þat tyme spak ;

And this was eke his determynacion

That no man in that lond, but he wil to þe rak

And on the same ly with a broken bak, 355

326 knytes 327 who 3eueth . fytys . 329 & to 330 make 331
 hangyr 333 lytenyng eke 334 schew 336 not 337 leue . þis
 338 among 339 sheperdis . plowmen 340 full well 341 On
 342 sey þis 344 he 345 þat schall 3eue 348 counsell 349 þe g.
 354 in to þe rak 355 þat

Be so hardy in [no]¹ maner of wise ¹ corr. to only *Bk. IV. Ch. 3.*
 Speke ageyn the goddis or her seruyse. 357

Ca^m. quartum.*Bk. IV. Ch. 4.*

The Citee of Alisaundre, whiche his ful large, 358 *Alexandria
is crain-full.*

It his now replessid wyth-oute and wyth-Inne
 With lordes and ladyes¹—there was many a barge
 At the princypal poort, for thei lay not thynne. ¹ MS. with l.

Weel his he at ease [pat may cacch an Inne], ¹ MS. in to the toun
may wyne

The puple was so gret, the prees was so strong.

There is [now] not ellis but trumpyng and soong: 364

ffor [pe] nyght was come of that feestful day 365 *On the eve of
Maxentius's
birthday,*

In whiche Maxcens was bore; therfore he ded crye

That every man there shal in his best aray

Serle the Citee with noyse and menstralsye.

he pat shal sleepe this nyght, must be ful slye 369

That he be not perceyued, for indignacyon

Whiche he shal haue for he went not his stacyon! 371

There was noyse of trompes and noyse of men, 372

Moche more of beestes that deyed in her blood— *many beasts
are kild.*

ffor al pat nyght sekirly, ye may ful weel ken,

The bocheres laboureden as thei had be wod; ¹ al. don)

The wasshyng of the carkeys doun¹ in the flood 376

Shewed the gret moordre of the bestes slayn:

The water was al bloody, sauely dar I sayn. 378

To the temple thei goo the nexte day be-tyme. 379 *Next morn-
ing, in the
Temple,*

The bisshopes haue arayed hem to do the seruyse—

There was noo matynes seyde, [seruyse]¹ ne pryde, ¹ MS. houres,
on eras.

Thei had another [vsage]¹ than I can deuyse. ¹ MS. seruyse

Thus moche can I sey, the emperour as Iustise 383 *Maxentius is
set on high.*

Was set vp-on hy, that he myght al see

how the puple honoured that solennyte. 385

356 no manere wyse 358 is 360 with₂ om. 361 no th. 362
 ese pat may cacche an Inne 364 now . song 365 pe nyte 372
 trumpys 375 laboured 376 carcays done 378 as . sauerly 379
 tempille 381 matens . seruyse 382 anodyr vsage 385 who .
 solempnite

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 4.</i>	Thei kneled and thei cried wyth marred deuocyon—		
Maxentius's Gods are	Al this be-held the emperour with sad y3e, ffor euere-more hath he a fals suspecyon That some arn there whiche wil not sacrifice. The firste god of alle, whiche stood moost hye,		390
1. the Sun,	Was the bryght sonne with his hors and cart, Whiche was I-graue of ful sotil art ;		392
2. the Moon,	Next was the mone whiche we clepe dyane, With hir wellis nyne and the maydenes eke ;		393
3. Saturn,	Next hir was saturne with his bitter bane And his sekel in hande—[many men hym seke], ¹ ffor noon other cause but whan þei are seeke, Thei wene tha[n] ¹ it were of his vengeauns— Soo cruel is his planete in his gouernauns !	¹ MS. as men) seyn in greke, on eras. ¹ MS. that	397 399
	The auter next hym was ful weel arayed,		400
4. Jupiter, with Juno, Venus, Cupid,	On whiche that Iubiter stood al on hy, With his wyf Iuno, ful weel I-portrayed ; Venus the fayre, she stood next by, With hir blynde sone, Cupyde,—soo wene I, Thei calle hym soo þat owe hym seruyse, I owe hym noon, for mawmentrie I despise.		404 406
and others.	Moche more thyng was there, not to purpos now ; But thus moche I telle : there were grete offrynges,		407
Sacrifices are made,	Thei spared neyther hors, oxe, beer ne kow, But "slee and slee," these were her crienges.		
rites and songs per- formd.	The bysshoppys and the prestes, thei doo her pinges ; The menstrallis faile not, for thei shal haue wage ; Euery man maketh noyse after his age.		411 413
	The olde seyde they seyn neuere in her dayes Swiche a-nother sacryfise as this emperour hath renewed in her temple, in many-maner layes, ¹ "The grete goddis alle thei sende hym honour, long lif and stable, make hym a conquerour."	¹ on erasure, al. wayes.	414 418
389 some om. are 391 brythe sunne 396 many men hyme seke 398 þan. veniaunce 402 I-porterayed 408 offeryngis 410 cryingis 412 mynstrelles. shul 414 elde. sey 416 wayes (corr. fr. dayes)			

The 3ong men daunced Iolyly on þe¹ ground ; ¹ MS. þat *Bk. IV. Ch. 4.*
There was reuel a-mongis hem, lightly and round 420

Traced thei þat tyme at that solennyte. 421

The noyse is herd a-bowte a myle on euery syde.

Thus leue I hem in myrthe, [þese seres stoute], ¹ ¹ MS. with oute enmyte

Thus arn thei occupied in ful moche² pryde. ² r. in mechil

The emperour hym-self looketh [on] euery syde],³
ho dooth moost reuerens to his goddis there. ³ MS. tho ful wyde, on erasure. Maxentius closely watches everything.

This made the cristen to haue ful grete fere. 427

Cam. quintum.

Bk. IV. Ch. 5.

O wre noble mayde, oure hooly deuoute queene 428

To whom this story loongeth as now oonly,

This hooly virgyn Kataryn, hir I¹ meene, ¹ MS. I hir Katharine, in her study,

Was tho in silens syttynge in hir stody

Al contemplatyf, spered fro hir meny ; 432

The wordly welthes arn now fro hir shake,

After the tyme that cryst hath hir thus take 434

To wyf or spouse—reede lyke as 3e lyst. 435

This mayden was there and herd tho þis cry. ¹ MS. I hir Katharine, in her study,

“ O ihesu,” seyde she, “ I wolde now þat I wist

What that it meneth, the noyse that is so hy.”

Knyghtis were walkynge thre or foure faste-by, 439

Waytynge vp-on hir ; thus to hem seyde she :

“ This grete noyse, seres, what may it bee ? ” 441

“ I-wis, madame,” tho seyde an olde seruauent, 442

“ The emperour Maxcens, this day was he bore, ¹ MS. men ² MS. infant and is told that it is for Maxentius's birthday.

he hath commaunded to olde man¹ and [to] faunt² ³ MS. and the, and overl.

The olde rightis, the³ seruycis to restore ⁴ MS. haue to ⁵ longest, orig. longeth

Whiche to⁴ the goddis longe⁵ and [haue] doo yoores. 446

This is the cri, if 3e wil wete al-gate. 448

No man on lyue, pouere ne of astate,

419 iolyly . þe 420 amonge 423 þese seres stoute 424 ar .
ful om. mechil 425 lokyth on euery syde 426 who do 430 hire
I m. 432 sperde 433 are 435 ryth inst. of lyke 436 mayd 442
a elde 444 eld . & to faunt 445 elde rythes . and om. seruises
446 haue om. long . haue do 448 of l . . pore

- Bk. IV. Ch. 5.* "Is [not]¹ so hardy this mater to disobeye; 449
 Thei shal be ded that ageyns it speke. ¹ so all other MSS.
- Katharine is told to keep in her closet, Keepe stille youre closet, there is no more to seye—
 It is¹ not oure power his wil [for]² to breke; ¹ overlined. ² so all other MSS.
 lete hem¹ calle, lady, lete hem¹ crye and creke, ¹ MS. hym 453
 suffyseth¹ you if ye may leue in pees. ¹ MS. it s.
 The man is comerous, with-oute[n] ony lees: 455
- as Maxentius "ffor he hath made, if ȝe wil leue me, 456
 A strong decree, whiche he wil we keepe:
 That alle sectys of his secte now shul bee,
 The child, anon as he gynneth to kreppe,
 Shal be taught vp-on the goddis to cleepe, 460
 In peyne of deth the faderis shal hem teeche—
 This herde I this day the grete bysshop preeche. 462
- has ordered that all shall adopt his religion, "Wherefore, madame, now is come that hour 463
 That was dred tho¹ of youre freendes alle ¹ al. tho dred
 Whan that ye wolde receyue no counseillour,
 ffor no thyng that men myght on-to¹ [you] calle. ¹ al. on, vppon
 I amful soory, for now are² lykly to falle ² MS. are ȝe ³ MS. And all 467
 aH³ tho myshappes whiche that⁴ were seyde before. ⁴ al. om.
 Avyse ȝow weel what ye wil doo [perfore]⁵!" ⁵ MS. now more, on erasure.
- She remembers Whan the mayden had herd these wordis alle, 470
 She gan remembre hough oure lady sayde,
 Whan she passed fro hir, what shuld be-falle—
 She spak thus: "to you I telle, my mayde,
 Yee shal heer-after been ful soore afrayde 474
 Off an enmye bothe to my sone and to¹ me"— ¹ al. om.
 At hir leue-takyng swiche woordis seyde she, 476
- the Virgin Mary's warning, Oure blyssed lady mary, to this queen. 477
 Therefore the queen thought: "now is the hour

449 Is not 452 forto 453 hem . hem 454 It om. Suffisith .
 lyue 455 comorows . wyth-oute[n] 456 haue 458 settis 461 shul
 464 þoo drede 465 concelloure 466 on yow 467 ȝe om. 468 And
 om. that om. 469 perfore 470 þis mayd . þeis 471 how 474
 be 475 a . & me 478 þis

Whiche she behested, now is it weel I-seen Bk. IV. Ch. 5.
 Right be þe booldnesse of this emperour
 Whiche ageyn) oure makere and creatour 481
 Thus boldely ryseth in destruccio) of his name,
 Whoos wyf I am and seruau) to his dame." 483

Tho she remembred what conuenaunt [þat] she made Katharine
remembers
her Baptis-
mal Pledge.
 Right in hir baptem whan she washed was, 485
 Eke in hir weddyng, with beheestes ful sade :
 That she shulde neuere, for more ne for las,
 Though she were throwe in hote cawdron) of bras, 488
 fforsake hir loue whyche she hadde oonly chose.
 Tho wex she ruddy and fayre as the rose, 490

Right in remembrauns of þat swete spousayle 491
 Whiche þat she caught be leedyng of Adryane ;
 It is so emprended with-inne hir entrayle,
 Of werdly lustes there shal no fekyl fane
 Blowe it away ; neyther Iuno, Venus ne Dyane, 495
 ffrom) hir herte this loue thei shul not race.
 Thus walked she foorth softly than) a-pace, 497

fful sore astoynd what hir is beste for to doo. 498
 If she holde silens, þan) is she not truwe She cannot be
silent.
 Of hir beheestes—right soo thought she, loo.
 The fair ryng whiche was somewhat blewe,¹ ¹ MS. blowe ?
 Whiche was eke youe hir at hir weddyng newe, 502
 She tho beheld, and seyde thus be hir oone :
 " ffy on) the world, fy on) crowne and trone ! 504

" I shal keepe that truthe whiche þat I [made]¹ 505 She will keep
her truth to
Christ.
 On-to myn) husbond, though I shulde be ded— ¹ MS. dede make
 I shal the sonnere come to hym) that [me made]² ;
 ffor in this world is nought but sleep and dred. 508
 Allas, that euere ony lord or hed ² MS. deyed for my sake, on eras.

484 cōnaunt þat 485 baptim 490 a rose 496 ffro in 498 for
 on. 499 trewe 501 blewe 505 made 506 my 507 soner. me
 made 508 brede

Bk. IV. Ch. 5. Shulde thus bodyly¹ men dragge and drawe 1 r. boldly
Ageyns all truthe, ageyns a ryghtful lawe! 511

Why does
Christ let the
Heathen
rage?
"Why sufferyth my spouse now swiche cursed men 512
To breke his cherches, his seruauntes for to kylle?
Oo cause there is oonly, þat weel I ken):
his seruauntes here shul not haue her wylle—
hoo-so loue this woord,¹ þat loue [will]² hym spylle; 516
Tribulacion is ordeyned for his seruauntys here, 1 on eras.
2 MS. shal
Whiche to heuene shul, streyt fro the beere." 518

Bk. IV. Ch. 6.

Ca^m. sextum.

Katharine
walks out,
Thus walketh she forth soberly a-paas 519
Thurgh hir paleys, she hath forgete al thyng.
Thei folwe hir eke, the seruauntis of þat plas,
Not many, but some, for thei goo to the kyng;
Thei wot not eke what she in hir goyng 523
Purposeth to doo—for be-twix loue and fere
Staker the seruauntis alle tho¹ she hath there. 1 az. that 525
The temple-gatis soo ful of puple now bee, 526
Soo ful replenished no man may entre there;
And euere on-to the porteres thus seyde shee:
"lete us entre, lete vs oure erande bere
On-to the emperour! for and he wist what we were, 530
he wolde not suffre vs no while stonde with-oute.
We wil hym lerne soone wyth-outen dowte 532
"These solennytes better for to make, 533
Not to no vanyte, to¹ noon presumption, 1 MS. ne to
But to his wurshipec that al thyng dede [make]."¹ 1 MS. shape
This was at þat tyme hir peroracyon).
Tho mette she lordis of ful straunge nacyon), 537
Whiche had parfoormed her offryngis and I-doo,
fforth to her Innes thei dresse[d] hem to goo; 539

and asks
entrance
at the Temple
gates.
Foreign
Lords meet
her.

510 boldly 511 treughth 512 sufferth 513 chirchis 516 who
loueth. world. will hem 520 pales. forgote 525 alle þat 529 late
533 Theis 534 ne om. no 535 wirchip. make 539 dressyd

- The emperour's sone cam with these lordis in-feere. 540 *Blk. IV. Ch. 6.*
 But whan thei seyn this lady soo bryght and shene,
 Thei turned her Iornay, and with ful mery chere
 Thus spoken thei alle ful goodly to the queene :
 " Madame," thei seyden, " the grete puple that 3e seene
 Arn come fro ferre with grete deuocyon ;
 Blame hem nought though þei wolde haue doon ! 546
 " But we shal, lady, right for youre reuerens 547
 Turne with yow on-to the temple ageyn ;
 We shal make space with strengthe and resistens,
 That 3e shal entre, shortly for to seyn." *clear Katharine's*
 With mace and manace thei made bare the pleyne, 551.
 Til she was entred right to the¹ hye autere. ¹ MS. that way to the
 Than seyde she suche woordes, liche as ye shal heere ; *high Altar.*
 Thus she be-gan and thus she spak to hym : 554
 " Bothe keende and curtesye wolde teche us this
 To honoure thi crowne, be-cause of thi kyn,
 And 3et for thi degree moche more, I-wys ;
 Alle this shulde excite vs the for to blis 558
 And for to loute with reuerens, ne were oon thyng
 Whiche þou hast doo ageyns the grete[s]^t kyng, ¹ MS. gretet, al. grete
 " Lord of alle lordys, ihesu crist I mene : 561 *the Emperor
for paying
to Idols the
honour due
to Christ,*
 Thou takest here fro hym his hy honour,
 And yeuest it to maumentys, as is weel seene,
 Whiche may neyther helpe the ne eke socour
 In noon of thi causes, in no-manner dolour. 565
 But if þou woldest¹ leue this cursed ydolatrie ¹ r. wold
 And knowe thy god that sitte a-boue ful hye, 567
 " Whiche made the sonne, þe sterres and the mone, 568 *who made the
Heavens.*
 Thanne wolde we honoure the wyth dew seruyse,
 Knele doun on-to the and oure homage ful soone
 ffor to bryng on-to the as oure Iustise.
 But be-cause ageyn crist þou makyst men ryse 572
 541 sey 543 spake 544 seyde 545 Are 547 right om. 552
 þe 553 shulle 558 þese 559 o 560 grete 566 wold 567 sitt
 568 þe om. 572 to ryse

- Bk. IV. Ch. 6.* And worshepe swiche deueles as ben) in helle,
 Therefore shortly, syr, I wil the telle : 574
 Katharine
 refuses to
 honour
 Maxentius,
 "Oure seruyse wil we for a tyme wyth-drawe 575
 Right fro thi persone, til þou þe amende.
 Turne fro this cursednesse, fro this wikked lawe,
 Knowe now thi makere that aȝ þing can) sende,
 On-to his byddyng looke þou condescende ! 579
 Than shal þou haue¹ more prosperyte ^{1 r. hauen ?}
 Than) euere þou hadde yet, truste vp-on) me ! 581
- "These cristen men)¹ here whiche are I-drawe ^{1 r. folkis ?}
 To offere to þin ydoles magre¹ her hed, ^{1 MS. m. in}
 A-geyns aȝ reson, ageyn) al the lawe
 Thou threstest hem with turment and wyth ded,
 With bath of pich and beuerych of leed. 586
 I sorwe for her sake, thei dar non other doo ;
 If thei were stable, þei shulde not werke soo. 588
- his Gods are
 Devils,
 "Thi goddis arn) deuellis, and thi preestis eke 589
 Disceyuouris of þe puple, right for couetyse ;
 Thei wote as weel as I, though men) hem seke,
 senseless
 Idols.
 These maumentis I mene, þei can) not sitte ne ryse ;
 Thei ete not, [þei]¹ drynke not in no maner of wise ; 593
 Mouth wyth-oute speche, foot that may not goo, ^{1 MS. ne}
 handes eke haue thei and may noo werk doo. 595
- He must give
 them up,
 "Wherfore turne thyn) herte fro thys illusyon), 596
 Knowe thy god that made þe and alle þing for the,
 Be not vnkeende in thi condicyon)
 Ageyn) thi makere, ageyn) the trynyste !
 But if þou be amended, thou shalt leue me 600
- or be punisht
 everlastingly.
 Grete peynes god shal the sende,
 Whiche peynes shul neuere haue [an) eende." 602

573 þat be 574 sothly 580 þou . nore 582 þeis 583 in om.
 584 agens . ageyns 589 are 593 þei drynke . of om. 599 Ageyns
 602 a ende

Ca^m. 7^m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 7.

The emperour be-held hir woordis and hir chere, 603 The Emperor
Maxentius
 Wonderynge sore hough she durste be soo boolde
 Be-fore swiche puple right in his presens there,
 And not considerynge the feste whiche he had holde—
 ffor that same tale whiche she hath now toolde 607
 Durste noo man telle, but if he wolde be deed.
 hir fair colour be-twixe¹ whight and reed, ^{1 r. betwixen?}

Whiche shone ful bryght, he gan to be-hoolde, 610
 Astoynd with [hir] bewte, party wyth hir plesauns.
 fful sobyrlly his armes thoo gan he foolde,
 And thus he seyde wyth angri contenauns :
 “ Be war, good woman, of þat gret grevauns 614 rebukes
Katharine,
 Whiche oure goddis on her enmyes take !
 Many a prowde man ful lowe haue þei shake. 616

“ ffor but [her] mercy were more than her Iustise, 617
 3e shulde soone falle in that sory trappe
 Whiche þei haue ordeyned to tho that hem despise—
 A wooful chauns haue thei and a soory happe. 620
 Beth war, suster, that þei yow not clappe <sup>1 MS. of thoundir and
leuene, on erasure.</sup> and warns
her of the
vengeance of
his Gods.
 With her vengeauns right [for 3our' blaspheme]¹ !
 Yee speke of helle, 3e speke also of heuene : 623

“ And thei may graunte yow bothe to 3our wage. 624
 Keepe 3our tonge clos, kepe your lyf on lofte !
 Na were the reuerens of youre gret lynage,
 Yee shulde not this nyght slepe, I trowe, ryght softe !
 3e were [wel] worthi to [be lyft on lofte]¹ 628 She ought to
be hand.
 Ryght on a gebet, for your bitter speche <sup>1 MS. suffre grette
peynis ofte</sup>
 Whith the whiche 3e now ageyn oure goddis preche.” 630

Ca^m. 8^m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 8.

Who seyde the mayden wyth ful sad visage : 631
 “ how be thei goddis, these mawmentis þat we see ?

604 who 609 qwite 611 here b. 612 harmes 614 veniauns
 615 hath take 617 here mercy 620 hafe 621 Be. systre 622
 for 3oure blaspheme 628 wel. be lyft on lofte 629 gybbet 630
 the om. 631 mayde 632 who

Bk. IV. Ch. 8. Reede in youre book,¹ loke in her lynage, ^{1 r. bookis}
 Katharine Than) shal pou knowe that erthely as we be ^{MS. weete weel 3e}
 says: Were thei somtyme. for 3oure saturne, [parde],² 635
 Saturn was King of Crete; Was somtyme kyng, as bookys telle, of crete,
 And so was Iubiter—thus seyth youre poete. 637
 “Be-cause thei myght not bothe in þat lond acoord, 638
 Iubiter the sone made saturne, his fadir, to fle
 and his son Jupiter drove him to Italy, Right in to Ytaile, youre bookis wil it recoord;
 In wiche¹ tyme there tho regned hee, ^{1 MS. swiche}
 where double- Ianus 3e calle, with double face [parde],² ^{MS. as rede we} 642
 faced Janus ruled. Be-cause he looketh to the olde 3eer and the newe.
 Thanne is this sooth, thanne is this tale trewe 644
 They were “That men thei were, and arn) not eterne— 645
 not Gods, hough shuld thei be goddis¹ whan) thei were made?
 It longeth to a god for to be sempiterne. ^{1 MS. gooddis}
 fful falsly the puple 3e disceyue and glade.
 he is a god that may neuere fayle ne fade, 649
 he is a god þat made al thyng of nought,
 but made by god, he is a god of whom 3oure goddis were wrought.” 651

Bk. IV. Ch. 9.

Cam. 9m.

The emperour thought tho besyly in his meende, 652
 In worshipec and strengthe of his beleue
 Bothe with examplis of craft and of keende
 his secte wil he true and stable preue;
 The Emperor “Mayde,” he seyth, “I trowe I shal 3ou meue 656
 says he’ll ffro þat ground that ye haue newly take.
 lete 3oure wordis [as] for a while now slake. 658
 prove that the “ffor I wil preue now openly fyrst of alle 659
 Christian sect must fall. That your secte, whiche 3e crysten clepe,
 May not stande, for it muste ned[is]¹ falle, ^{1 MS. nede}
 Right for þe impossibles whiche þer-inne 3e hepe.
 Al þat I sey now, looke þat 3e sadly repe! 663

635 parde 636 telles 639 sun 640 ytaile 641 wheche 642
 parde 643 elde 645 are noght 646 who 647 for om. 648
 deceyue 652 mynde 654 ensamples. kynde 655 strenght 658
 as for 661 mut nedis

how shulde a mayde in hir wombe bere

A childe, and she mayden as she was eere ?

Ek. IV. Ch. 9.

665 How can a
Mother be a
Maid ?

“This þing is contrarye, ye may see, to nature,

666

This þing is impossible on-to scoles alle.

It's im-
possible.

Remeueth *þour* herte ; for I you ensure,

In swiche errour *þe* may soo deepe doun falle

That, though ye after mercy crye and calle,

670

We may not graunte yow, be-cause *þat* oure lawe

Wil condemne *þow* to ben hange and drawe.

672

“Therefore chaunge *þoure* feyth, I reede, [&]¹ forsake 673

Swiche-maner oppynyons that ilke man on lyue <sup>1 MS. *þow* on
erasure.</sup>

As for heresies euere-more hath take.²

^{2 MS. be take.}

*þe*³ sey a childes blood with woundes fyue

^{3 MS. *þor* *þe*}

Shuld washe fro euery man and euery wyue,

677

How can a
Child's blood
cleaue folk
from sin ?

ffrom euery chyld, her synnes iche oon :

These fonned conseytes, reson haue thei noon.”

679

Ca^m. 10^m.

Ek. IV. Ch. 10.

ON-to these woordis, whiche sempte soo wyse, 680

Answerde the queen with ful gret constauns :

“Sir emperour,” she seyde, “I wolde now¹ denyse

To proue on-to *þow* with grete circumstauns— <sup>1 MS. you now,
on erasure.</sup>

Katharine
tells the
Emperor that

But that the tyme letteth us of swiche daliauns—

684

That *þoure* groundes arn noo-thing true

Off *þoure* beleue, neyther the olde ne the newe.

686

“Ye taken the bark whiche is open to þe ye,

687

he takes the
outside bark,

Ther-on ye fede yow ryght in *þour* dotage ;

The swete frute whiche with-Inne dooth lye,

þe desire it not—loo, swliche is the wood rage

Of *þoure* customes in al *þoure* age,

691

The leues ye take, the frute leue ye stille.

and leaves the
inside fruit.

More openly my sentens declare now I wille.

693

664 who 665 mayde 672 be 673 & inst. of *þow* 674 opinionones.
olyue 675 be om. 676 *þor* om. 678 eche 679 þeis. thei om.
682 sere. you now om. 685 are. trewe 686 nepir. elde 687 take
690 nought 693 now om.

Bk. IV. Ca. 10.God is not
visible on
earth.Stocks cannot
give help.The heathen
are obstinate,and will
never gain
Truth till
they repent.Bk. IV. Ca. 11.

“ Who seketh roses there noo rose[s] growe? 694

Who seketh grapes oute of the brere?

The hye very god, this may 3e weel knowe,

Is not now visible a-mongis vs here;

he is feer above, wyth-outen ony dwere, 698

Dwellynge in blis with his seruantes alle.

Therefore I seye 3ou: though ye crye and calle 700

“ Vp-on these stookes to sende¹ you good grace, 701To sende 3ou of myschef relef and socour, ^{1 r. senden P}leueth [bis]¹ weel, ye shal it neuere purchase, ^{1 MS. it}

Be-cause ye forsake youre creatour,

Wurshipecreatur^s and geue hem honour 705

To whom 3e shulde noon swiche honour 3eue.

Be this exauple I may than weel preve 707

“ The roten bark of thyngis visible heere 708

Whiche 3e [se] outward, this byte [3e] and gnawe,

The swete frute, the solace eke soo deere

Whiche shulde be [3e] parfyttesse of youre lawe,

ffro þat swetnesse ye your-self withdrawe 712

With ful grete herte of cursed obstynacye,

Whiche hath you brought in ful grete heeresye. 714

“ And as longe as 3e thus dilled bee 715

In this same rudenesse of oppynyon,

Shul ye neuere, sekyrly, leue now me,

Of very truthe haue the possessyon.

Therefor repente 3ow of youre transgressyon, 719

Than are ye able to receyue the feyth.

This is the truthe, what-euere ony man seyth.” 721

Ca^m. 11^m.Tho[u]¹ myght a seyn at this tales ende ^{1 u erased} 722

Many man there [al] other-wyse [I]-chered

694 no rose 696 will k. 697 amonge 698 abouen. wythout
 any 701 stokkes 703 þis wele 706 no 709 3e se. byte 3e.
 knawe 711 þe parfyttes 722 Thou 723 al opir. I-cheriede

Than thei were ere ; some her browes gonne bende		<i>Ek. IV. Ch. 11.</i>
Right on tho ydoles whiche he had rered.		Many of the
ffor payne of deth had hem soo I-fered	726	bystanders
Be-fore this tyme, that in al her obseruauns		
On-to the goddis thei made but feyned plesauns ;	728	
But now this lady with hir woordis swete	729	
A newe light of grace on-to her hertis alle,		
Whiche be-fore her feyth thus had leete,		
hath brought in. for now thei gonne to calle :		
"Mercy, ihesu, graunte us noo more to falle	733	cry to Christ
In to swiche errour, to swiche apostacye !"		for mercy.
This was her noyse and thus thei gonne to crye.	735	
This sey the <i>emperour</i> and wyth ful heuy chere	736	The Emperor
he gan to chaunge his colour and his face ;		sees his mis-
"In euele tyme," he thought, "I graunted heere		take in letting
On-to þis mayde, whan she cam to this place,		Katharine
To sey this sermon with a sory grace !	740	speak.
Myn owen men, me thenketh, thei gynne despise		
Alle my goddis and alle my sacryfise ;	742	
"The other syde whiche thei cristen calle,	743	
Thei han caught boldnesse, and that merueilously,		
ffor in my <i>presens</i> þei haue now late down falle		
Alle her offerynges, and that sodeynly."		
Thus thought this man ; and eke ful besyly	747	
he thanne be-heelde the beaute of þis mayde,		
And thanne right thus on-to hir he sayde :	749	
"Mayden," he seyth, "heere haue we newly gonne	750	
A blessed sacrificise on-to oure goddis to make,		
And 3e ful onreuerently ageyn oure god, the sonne,		
Whiche euery man for a god hath take,		
Spende 3oure speche. but now I rede 3e slake,	754	He bids her
Til that oure seruyse eended be this tyde,		wait till his
That tyme we wyl ye drawe you asyde.	756	sacrifice to
		the Sun is
		euded.

724 þan þer were here . summe . gune 726 & deth 732 gun 735
gune þei 741 gyne 743 seyde 744 hane 745 now om. 750
mayde . gune 751 nake 752 3e om. . sunne

Bk. IV. Ch. 11.

May Apollo
not take
vengeance
on her!

" Appollo graunte that ye no vengeauns haue 757
ffor *your* blasphemē, newe[ly] heere¹ I-sowe! ¹ MS. heere newe
he may yow damne and eke he may *3ow* saue,
Ye *3oure*-selue, I wote weel, this ye knowe.
Right for *your* beaute aughte *3e* stoupe ful lowe 761
To thanke hym ther-of, though there were not ellis;
Now are *3e* most, I trowe, of his rebellis." 763

*Bk. IV. Ch. 12.*Cam. 12^m.

Katharine
says the Sun

"**W**hi shulde appollo bere ony deyte," 764
Seyde the mayde, that alle men myght here,
"And is but seruauant to goddes mageste,
With his bemes shynynge fayre and clere?
he walketh noo cours, neither ferre ne nere, 768
But at the byddynge of his makere aboue,
Whom we arn bounde oonly to drede and loue. 770

moves only
as God orders
it.

"But traytours arn we [be] most part, dar I seyn. 771
And *3et* he suspendeth his grete vengeauns.
An open exaample be-fore yow wil I leyn):
Ye ben a lord of ful grete puissauns,
There is noon swiche be-twyxe this and frauns— 775
ffor, as I haue lerned of al the orient,
Youre meny calle yow kyng omnypotent. 777

He suspends
His ven-
geance on
men.

"I sette caas now, þat ageyn *your* regalye 778
Certeyn) of youre men) wyth treson) wolde ryse,
Despyse *your* degree, youre persone defyē:
Shulde *3e* not thanne as [a] true Iustise
3oure grete power fully excersyse, 782
To kille tho traitoures, that thei leue no more?
But ye dede thus, *3e* shulde repente it soore! 784

If subjects
were traitors
to the
Emperor,

he'd kill
them.

"Right thus it semeth be oure creatour, 785
God of heuene, that al made of nought:
Ye take away fro hym that dewe honour

757 veniauns 758 newly here 764 any 768 cors. farre 77
are 771 be most 773 A 774 be . pusaunce 775 no 781 as a

That he shulde haue, whiche he ful deere bought *Bk.IV. Ch.12.*

Whanne that in erthe oure helthe besyly¹ he sought; 789

This same honour 3eue ye to deuels ymages, ¹ *al.* besyly
oure helth

Whiche ye haue sette heere solemnely on stages. 791

"Looke now 3our-self in what ye are falle: 792

Traitoures are 3e, and as traitoures shul[d] 3e brenne— The Emperor
is a traitor to
God.

ffor other name wil I 3ow non calle

On-to the tyme þat 3e youre lord kenne.

lete alle these vanytes fro youre breestes renne, 796

Good sir emperour, and turne to your loord! He should
turn to Him.

Than shul ye and I ful sone acoord."¹ ¹ MS. be ac. 798

Cam. 13m.

Bk.IV. Ch.13.

NOW is the emperour [stoynd]¹ more and more; 799

Al her seruyse as for that day is doone—

This tormenteth hym in his herte ful sore, ¹ MS. tormented

ffor neither to sonne, to venus, ne to moone

Wil no man lowte now, and passed is the noone. 803

Therefore he þenketh right thus in his herte: The Emperor

"Though that I puneshe þis lady wyth peynes smerte, 805

"Though þat I sle hir, strangel or ellis brenne, 806

Yet shal hir doctryne therby no-thing¹ cees. ¹ *al.* no-thing therby

Wherefore I thenke a slyere weye to renne,

That hir purpos shal not thus encrees.

Ageyn oure goddis is she, and ageyn oure pees; 810

Therefore with resons wil we hir oppresse—

This holde I beste ageyn hir sotilnesse." 812

Therefore hath he now, and that in grete hast, 813

Cleped his counseil in to a preuy place. asks his
Council

With ful grete sadnesse tho gan he tast¹ ¹ MS. cast?

how þat he may fro this lady race how to
convict
Katharine.

hir newe oppynyon; whether wyth solace 817

789 bysly oure helthe 793 shuld 795 þat tyme 796 brest
797 sere 798 be om. 799 stoynd 800 hir 805 ponysh 806
strangille 807 no-þing herby 814 counselle 815 tast 816 who

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 13.</i>	Or ellis wyth payne be beste to procede.	
	his counseil seyde thus right ¹ in þat stede	¹ <i>al.</i> right thus 819
The Council advise the Emperor to send for great Clerks.	That he shal sende after grete clerkis,	820
	lerned in gramer, rethorik and philosophie,	
	wiche ¹ haue in sciens soo sekylr merkes	¹ MS. Swiche
	That no man ageyn hem [may] ² replye ;	² MS. can, overlined
	Thei shal sonnest destroyen this heresy	824
	Of this same lady—thus seyde thei alle.	
	A-noon the emperour dede foorth I-calle	826
He does so, from Cyprus and Syria,	Many massangeris, for letteris wil he sende	827
	Thurgh-oute the londe of Cipre and surre :	
	Alle tho clerkys tho ¹ wil her lyfloode amende	¹ <i>al.</i> that
	Thei must come now to this palustre,	
	On-to this place where þis conflicte shal bee.	831
	The letteris arn wrete now, and seeled iche oon ;	
	The massangeris in haste for these men arn goon.	833
by letters seald with his ring.	The emperour hym-self as of a specyalte	834
	Seeled these letteris wyth a precyous ryng,	
	Whiche was I-graue with ful grete sotylte.	
	The sentens of these letteris whiche þat this kyng	
	Wrote at þat tyme, if youre desiryng	838
	Bee for to liste it, 3e may heere it soone :	
How the let- ters run.	“Maxcens the lord, saue sonne and moone	840
	“ Moost grettest in erthe, whiche hath I-bee	841
	Thre tymes Consul in rome, that Citee hy,	
	ffader of the puple, and on-to the deite	
	Of Iubiter the kyng of kynrede ful ny,	
	Sendeth loue and helthe to al [þe] clergy	845
	Of surre and Cipre and other prouncees alle	
	Whiche to his lordshepe newly arn falle.	847
	“ We wil 3e wete, we sende at this tyme	848
	On-to 3oure prouydens counseil to haue ;	

819 rith þus 822 wheche 823 may 824 sonest destroy 827
massageris 829 þat will . lyuelode 832 are wryte . seald . yche
833 are 837 of þe 843 on om. 844 kynrode 845 alle þe clargye
847 are 848 wyte

We axe [not] of you neyther taske ne dyme,		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 13.</i>
But onoly youre feyth and oure secte to saue.		The Emperor
ffor these cristen folke ¹ make oure puple to raue	852	asks the
With sotil suasyons whiche that thei vse,	¹ r. folkis	learned
On whiche sotiltees we oure-selue muse.	854	Heathens to
“ But moost specyaly a lady haue we newe [I]-caught,		
Enforced with eloquens merueilously ;	856	
Mekel of oure puple soo hath she taught		
That fro oure feith flee they sodeynly ;		
Thus party with witte, party wyth nygramauney	859	
She peruerteth oure lond in wonder wise.		
Therefore we bydde, ye that are wyse,	861	
“ Ye haste you now ¹ to Alysaundre for this same cause,		come and
To looke if 3e may this woman oppresse.	¹ MS. you now, you overl.	answer
ffor this I telle you shortly in clause,	864	Katharine,
But she be ouercome with 3oure besynesse,		
Alle shul be cristen, the more and the lesse.	866	or all his
And if 3e conuycte hir, auaunced shul 3e bee		folk will turn
With plente of richesse, if ye troste me.”	868	Christians.
Thus arn the letteris wretten and I-goo.	869	
The emperour is walked foorth with the mayde		He takes
On-to the paleys, with lordes many moo,		Katharine to
Whiche w[as] ¹ at that tyme ful weel arayd.	¹ MS. were	his palace,
Many plesaunt woordis on-to hir he sayd,	873	
And many grete behestes tho he be-hyght,		
To turne hir oppynyon, if þat he myght.	875	
he hight hir : if she wolde to hym consent,	876	and offers
To haue ful power of al maner of thyng,		
More than ony lord of his parlement ;		
ffor alle men shulde bowe on-to hyr byddynge,		
She shulde be queen as he was kyng,	880	to make her
hir ymage wolde he sette in the market-place,		Queen,
Whiche shulde be lyke hir in body and in face,	882	

850 ax not . nethir 851 oure . and om. 853 suasiones 855
 haf. I-caut 857 meche 859 wyth om. 862 you om. 868 ryches
 869 are 871 pales 872 was 873 on om. 874 behyte 875 mythe
 876 hite 877 of om.

<i>Ek. IV. Ch. 13.</i>	And alle maner [of] men shulde wurship yeue	883
and have her Image worship,	On-to þat ymage as on-to a goddesse ;	
	Thei shal not chese if that þei wil leue,	
	Wurship shul thei hir bothe more and lesse.	
	That was his promys that with swiche worthinesse	887
if she'll forsake the Christian faith.	he wil hir auauunce, oonly if she wil forsake	
	hir cristen feyth and his feith now take.	889
She refuses.	But alle these promyses set she at nought,	890
	This blyssed lady, ryght for crystes sake ;	
	This same vers was tho in hir thought	
	Whiche oure lady hir-self gan make :	
	"Thei that are proude, god wil hem forsake ;	894
	Meeke he wil lifte vp right for her meekenesse."	
	Thanne seyde she to the emperour wyth sadnesse :	896
She has given up this world for Christ's love.	"Al this world haue I for my lord's loue,	897
	Ihesu I mene, forsaken) for euere-more ;	
	There shal no mene of dred ne of [loue] ¹	
	putte myn herte fro that grete tresore ; ¹ MS. other be-houe, on eras.	
	It shal ly ful stille there as a good store,	901
	Til þat I deye and yelde up my goost	
	On-to þat lord whom I loue moost.	903
	"But sith that thyne ¹ goddis of swiche myghtis bee	
	As þou hast pronounced heere in this place, ¹ r. þi	905
Let the Heathen Gods take vengeance on her if they can.	lete hem take vengeavnce now vp-on me,	
	If that thei may ; lete hem my body race !	
	her myght is right nought, ne nought is her grace.	908
	Therefore I despise hem as thei stonde on rowe,	
	ffor feendes arn) thei, ful weel þat I knowe.	910
	"And, sir, to 3ow I wil touche another thyng—	911
	I wil 3e shul enclyne al youre entent	
	To herken) my woordis and myn) talking :	

883 of men. shulle 890 promissis 895 vp right om. 898 forsake
899 other om. loue 904 þi. mythe 905 pronounced 906 late
907 that om. 908 right om. 909 stand a-rowe 910 ar 911 sere
912 wole 913 my

It is not onknowen to al the orient		<i>Bk IV. Ch. 13.</i>
That bothe be descens and be testament	915	Katharine says Alex- andria is hers;
This citee is myn, as for myn erytage,		
To whiche ye haue maad now this pilgrymage.	917	
“Sith 3e arn kyng, and rightwisnesse shulde keepe,	918	
Whi make ye swiche maystries in other mennes londe,		
Compelle my tenauntes, though þei soore wepe,		the Emperor wrongly oppresses her tenants.
To goo with her offeryngis ryght in her honde,		
With trompes and tabouris be-form you to stonde,	922	
With-oute my leue, wyth-oute ¹ my licens?		¹ r. wyth-uten
This is wrong to me, and to god offens.	924	
“If youre goddis teche 3ow to do this synne,	925	
Thanne are thei onrightful in her commaundement;		
If 3e ageyn her bydyng thus wil be-gynne,		
Thanne doo ye wrong ageyn ¹ her entent.		¹ r. ageynis?
On what-maner wise 3e make your weent,—	929	
I wil not tarie 3ow wyth no tales longe,		
But thus I conclude, that ye doo me wronge.”	931	
Tho was the emperour so ful of malencolye	932	The Emperor
he myght no lengere suffre hir in his presens;		
To a knyght he commavnded þat stood faste bye,		
he shal taken this lady and leede hir thens,		orders Katharine to prison,
Put hir in preson for hir grete offens;	936	
“look ye keepe hir soo she ¹ goo not aweye;		¹ MS. that she
ffor if þat she doo, ful horrybyly shal ye deye.”	938	
Gladly and iocundely with the knyght she gooth	939	and she goes gladly.
As a spouse to chaumbre, for hir lordis loue;		
No-thing dismayde, no-thing is she wrooth—		
Thus, can oure lord the pacyens proue		
Of hem þat arn chosen to dwelle al aboue	943	
In heuene in his presens. but thus I lete hir ly,		
And foorth I shal telle of this story.	945	

916 myn 2 om. 918 are 919 mastries. otheris menis 921
hondis 922 taburs. befor 925 for to 926 hyr 928 Intent 929
went 932 so om. 935 take 936 grete om. 937 he. that om.
938 shall he 939 goo 943 are

Bk. IV. Ch. 14.

Cam. 14m.

The Emperor **W**hil Katarine is in preson thus I-closed, 946
 The emperour is ryden in to the lond,
 ffor certeyn causes—but as it is supposed,
 It was for brekyn[g of]¹ a certeyn bond <sup>1 MS. corr.: for to brekyn;
of erased.</sup>
 Be-twyxe too citees, as I vndirstond: ^{3 MS. corr.: beg. there} 950
 he rood to cece² the sysme that was [new] begonne³—^{2 or. cesse}
 Eche of hem on⁴ other had spent many a [gonne].⁵ 952
^{4 MS. corr.: vp on} ^{5 corr.: speere.}
 But he hath maad pees, and his iornay is sped, 953
 and returns to Alexandria. he is come hom now to Alisaundre ageyn.
 The massangeris that he sent, eke thei haue led
 Alle these clerkys to Alisaundre, certeyn.
 Thus be thei come bothe, shortly to seyn, ^{1 MS. arn} 957
 The emperour and the clerkis, [þus]¹ mette in-feere.
 A counseil is set now of lordis þat were there. 959
 The Philosphers he has sent for
 The philysophres arn entred in to the same counsayth,
 To wete whi the emperour hath for hem¹ sent. <sup>1 al. for hem
hath</sup>
 There was a faire sight, withouten ony fayth:
 ffor oute of the coostes of al the oryent
 Are these maysteris chose, right for this entent 964
 to argue with Katharine,
 To conquere this lady be philosophie.
 The noumbre of hem, if I shal not lye, 966
 are 50 very learned men.
 Myn auctour seith, was fyfty euene, 967
 lerned men in art and in arsmetrik,
 In retorik, grammer, in alle þe scyens seuene,
 In al this world were hem noon¹ like, ^{1 al. noon hem}
 Thei had stodied the groundes of alle musike. 971
 The Emperor tells them why he sent for them:
 The emperour is ful glad now of her comynge;
 Thus seide he to hem at her enterying: 973
 “Maisteris, we sente for yow for this matere: 974
 We haue heere a mayde whiche with obstinacye

948 but om. 949 for brekyng of. certen 951 sesse. new begun;
 there om. 952 Iche of them of o. . gonne 953 pece 954 cum
 955 massengers. hafe 956 eke certeyn 957 cum 958 arn om.
 thus mete. 960 philosoferis are. cowncelle 961 for hem hath 966
 shuld 969 and alle 970 the. non them 971 grownde 972 hyr
 cummyng 973 hyr 975 hafe

Ren[e]yeth oure lawes, swiche as we vsen heere,		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 14.</i>
ffor she is fallen in to ¹ that cursed heresie	¹ om. to	Katharine has turned Christian;
Whiche the ¹ cristen clepe, ful of ypocris[i]e ;	¹ r. thei	978
She eke so deepe in to this errour is falle		
That alle oure goddis "deueles" doth she calle.		980
"And I suppose verily 3e teeche but truthe,		981
Be-cause that 3e been soo grete lerned men).		
To sle so yonge a lady me thenketh ruthe ;		
Therefore the right weye I wil 3e hir ken),		
To conuerte hir to oure lawe—ellis I must hir bren).	985	she must be converted to Heathenism.
This is þe cause whi I sent for 3ow.		
Goo cast <i>your</i> wittis in the best maner now		987
"how ye wil procede, for she shal come anon) ;		988
hir answeris arn) sly, grete is hir lernyng.		
I make yow seker 3e shal not hens goon)		
On-to the tyme that 3e hir bryng		
In to the same feith whiche hir fadir þe kyng	992	
leued al his lyue, and hir modir also.		
This is the matere whiche I wil haue doo."		994
Oon answerde for alle, and thus spak he :		995
"We weene heere is gadered swyche a companye,		
In al this world shulde not a man) fynde thre		The Philoso- phers are the wisest in the world.
So ¹ wise, so stodyous in philosophie.	¹ MS. Sho	
But ouere alle these Maister Arioth is moost worthye ;		999
he nedeth not his labour on a woman) spende,		
he shal on-to hir but his discipulis sende.		1001
"And if she conclude hem be auctoryte		1002
Or ellis be reson, ¹ leue me ful weel,	¹ MS. resons	If Katharine poses them, she is a Goddess.
I wil sey thanne that a goddesse is she,		
And moost worthi to be sette on the wheel		
Of natural sciens. but I can) not feel		1006

976 reneyhithe. whyche ; as om. vse 977 falle 978 clepeth
979 is In-to 980 goodis 982 be 987 To cast 988 who . cum
989 are 991 that t. 993 lyued . lyfe 994 hafe 996 cumpenye
999 maysteres . Ariott 1001 vnto . disciples 1003 reson 1004
goddes 1006 kannot

Bk. IV. Ch. 14. In no maner that a woman shul[d] come þer-too,
I haue not herd speke that ony woman dede soo." 1008

After this sermonyng on-til the nexte day 1009

The Philoso-
phers are
housd.

The emperour commaunded knyghtis hem to cheere,
To leede hem to her Innes with ful good aray
In sencyaH¹ of bookis and swiche other gere ¹ *al. specyall*
As longeth on-to men that swiche sciens lere. 1013

Katharine is
in prison.

Thus leue I hem stille in thoughtful besynesse, ¹ MS. and in
And Katarine, oure mayden, in presun and¹ distresse.

Bk. IV. Ch. 15.

Cam. 15m.

The Emperor
in Council,

The other day is come. but the emperour thought 1016
To asaye hym-selue with his preuy counsayH

ffor to conquere hir—but it awayleth nought;

ffor whan moost nede is, his resons wil quayH—

Soo weel can oure mayden hir proporsyons rayH. 1020

lordes were there many tho in presens,

Statly, manful and of grete expens: 1022

and the Kings
of Armenia,

The kyng of Armenye was tho in þat place 1023

Where she was apposed of hir beleue;

Soo was þe kyng of Mede, a faire man of face;

Macedon, &c.,

The kyng eke of Macedoyne, whiche made many a proue
Ageyns this lady, but he coude hir not meue; 1027

The prouost of perse was there also,

Wyth bishopes and lordes many mo. 1029

argue with
Katharine
in vain.

Thei made her resons, but þei awayled nought. 1030

ffirst¹ seyde þe emperour right thus to þe may:

"Myn owne suster,² hedir I haue yow brought ¹ MS. ffyrst tho
Be-forⁿ my special frendes this day, ² MS. o. s. on erasure.

To see whether ye wil stille in your olde lay 1034

helde þoure perseuerauns or ellis consente¹ to vs

And ren[e]ye for euere that traytour Iesus, ¹ MS. ye wille 1036

1007 shuld cum 1008 hafe. hard. dyde 1012 In specyalle
1016 cum 1017 couñcele 1018 it om. 1019 resonys. whayle
1020 mayde 1023 Ermenye 1024 opposed 1026 macedon 1027
A-geyn. mend 1030 hyr 1031 tho om. thys may 1032 syster.
hafe 1033 Befor 1034 whedyr. eld 1035 3e wil om. 1036 reney

“To turne to appollo, venus and mynerue— 1037 *Bk. IV. Ch. 15.*
 ffor 3oure preson shulde cause yow, I suppose,
 To chaunge 3our lyf, lest þat ye sterue.
 ffor of alle maydenes ye be the rose,
 And to maydenes it longeth to be led wyth glose. 1041
 lete see now, telle how 3e avysed bee!”
 On-to these woordis thus answerde shee : 1043

The Emperor
 urges Katha-
 rine to change
 her Faith.

“A loue haue I, sere, whiche liketh me soo 1044 She declares
 That woordly¹ delite to me is but peyne
 And wordly¹ Ioye to me is but woo, ^{1 at. all worldly}
 If I very truthe to yow shulde now seyne.
 Therefore knoweth this for a certeyne : 1048
 I wil neuere chaunge, whil I haue lyf,
 I shal been euere to hym truwe spouse and wyf.” 1050

she never
 will.

Tho seyde the emperour : “th[an]¹ is al nought ^{1 MS. this}
 That we with oure wittis haue laboured 3ow to saue !
 Turne 3oure woordis, turne eke 3our thought, 1053
 Or ellis swiche ende muste ye now haue
 As longeth to traitouris that wil thus¹ raue. ^{1 at. thus wil}
 Advise 3ow of too thyngis whiche ye wil take :
 Eyther shal 3e deye, or youre lawe forsake.” 1057

He says she
 must, or die.

And eke the grete kyng of Armenye, 1058
 Eem on-to Kataryne he was, as I wene,
 “Cosyn,” he seyde, “leueth this heresyne,
 Thenke on 3oure kenerede, bothe kyng and queene,
 Was noon¹ of hem swiche thyng wolde sustene. 1062
 Allas, woman, why despise 3e saturne ? ^{1 at. neuer noon}
 he may, and he wil, in to a ston 3ou turne.” 1064

Her Uncle,
 the King of
 Armenia,
 tries to per-
 suade her.

The kyng of Mede, whiche sat tho be-syde, 1065
 In oure lord ihesu he gan putte swiche blame :

1042 lat. who 1044 hafe. syr 1045 alle worldly 1046 alle w.
 1047 now om. . sayn 1048 know. a certen 1049 hafe 1050 be.
 trewe 1051 than is 1052 hafe. safe 1054 hafe 1055 thus wyll
 raffe 1057 Ethr. dye 1058 Armonyne 1059 on om. 1060 leve
 1061 Thynk of. kynrede 1062 was neuer non of them. susteyn
 1066 gan om. put

Bk. IV. Ch. 15. "Ȝoure god crist," he seyde, "is knowe ful wyde
That he was a whiteche, and soo was his dame,
The King of Media says Christ was a witch. And grettest in whitechecraft, as is the fame. 1069
ffy on swiche wisdom, fy on swiche feyth!
This same recorde al the world seyth." 1071

Another king says no one shares her belief. An other kyng was there, and thus he hir repleued:
She stood in this mater, he seyde, but allone,
There is noon but she þat in crist leued;
"looke now," he seyde, "whether oon persone
Is more wurthi to be leued þan we iche oone; 1076
Reson wil conclude þat where multitude is, ^{1 r. not but?}
There is the truthe, a man may not ¹ mys." 1078

King Caspanus says. The kyng of Macedoyne, sir caspanus, 1079
On-to þe lady ful sobirly thus seyde:
"Youre god, youre lord whiche ye calle Iesus,
As ȝe sey, he was bore of a mayde;
that no King would let his subjects treat him as Jesus was treated. But why suffred he to be soo arayde 1083
Of his owne seruauntis, soo as he was?
And a wyse lord had stonde in that cas, 1085

"he wolde haue hangen hem of very Iustise." 1086
Thus seyde the bishopes, þus seyde thei alle
On-to this lady in her best wyse, 1088
And with besynesse soore on hir [they]¹ calle, ^{1 MS. to}
That she fro this vanyte must nedes¹ falle ^{1 al. nedes must}
And make of hir enmyes hir freendes deere.
Than spak this lady right as ȝe shal heere: 1092

Bk. IV. Ch. 16.

Cam. 16m.

Katharine answers her objectors.

"Sir emperour," seyde she, "I haue or this 1093
On-to youre reuerens declared ful weel
Whi my lord Ihesu of seruauntis his
Wolde suffre al this payne¹ euery deel; ^{1 r. paynes?}
But of my feyth no-þing ye feel, 1097

1068 wyche 1069 the gr. 1072 Anoder thyng. he hir thus
1075 wheder o 1078 but om. 1082 sayd 1083 soo om. 1086
hanged 1088 hyr 1089 they c. 1090 And she. nedis muste
1091 her enmes 1093 hafe 1096 peyn

Soo ar 3e harded with obstinacye.

Bk. IV. Ch. 16.

Therefore hold I now [but] a grete folye 1099

“ Youre demonstracyons for to declare. 1100

But thus moche I seye on-to you euerychon) :

3oure mahound of whom ye make swiche fare,

Shal not saue yow whan ye shul goon

Doun in to peynis, heuy as a stoon) ;

1104

he may not delyuere hym-self fro þat peyne,

Where he is bounde with many a cheyne. 1106

“ But witche was he neuere, Ihesu, my lord,

1107

Ne his blysse[d] modir mary, þat may ;

he was god and man), as bookis record,

And alle tho myracles were put in asay

Be his mortal enmyes with ful grete afray

1111

And euere were thei founde truwe and stedfast.

Therefore ley doun that horrible blast

1113

“ Of youre cursed tounge, 3e lordes, I 3ou pray ; 1114

Berke now no more ageyn that hooly name,

ffor ye shal somtyme see that day

Ye shal for þis berkyng be put on-to blame.

Alas, þat euere ony wretchis shulde defame

1118

Soo hy a lord, soo grete of dygnyte,

To whom mote nedes bowe¹ euery kne !” ^{1 r. bowen} 1120

Than spak the prouost of perse ful sone :

1121

“ Sende after these cle[r]kys, sir, and lete hem seye ;

Thei can oure feith, thei wote what is to done.

lete hir beleue hem or ellis shal she deye,

She shal chese oon), there is noon) other weye.

1125

With this longe claterynge, tyme lese we heere ;

Thei wil appose hir in an other manere.”

1127

1098 abstinacye 1099 but a 1101 myche . on om. 1102 of
whyche 1103 shall 1104 a om. 1105 deleuer . from 1107 Ihesu
om. 1108 Be . blyssed 1110 myrakyls 1111 mortaylle enmes
1112 trew 1113 orible 1114 tungis 1117 barkyng 1118 euere om.
1119 hyghe . grete a d. 1120 nede 1122 them 1124 lat 1125
chese om. 1127 oppose . an om.

Katharine
says that
Mahound
will not save
them from
Hell.

Christ and
Mary are not
witches.

Let the
Kings stop
their bark-
ing!

The Provost
of Persia
calls for the
Philosophers.

Bk. IV. Ch. 17.

Cam. 17m.

The Emperor
appeals to the
Philosophers
to answer
Katharine.

The philosophres arn) entred to the counsayH. 1128

The emperour seyde: "sir^s, this is the houre

In whiche we shal see if connyng wil awayle.

Therefore, maistres, dooth now 3oure laboure,

ffor ye muste defende vs fro this sharpe shoure 1132

With the whiche we arn) heyled now on euery syde;

But if ye spede, oure feyth wil sone slyde." 1134

Thei answerde ageyn, thei seyde thei had scorn 1135

That soo many¹ ageyn) a mayden 3yng ^{1 al. many men}

Shulde now dispute; for he is not born)

In erthe as yet that durste stere ony thyng

Ageyn her conclusyons, neither duke ne kyng— 1139

Swhiche grete roos was made þan¹ in þat place. ^{1 al. þo}

"lete hir come," thei seyde, "lete vs see hir face!" 1141

But whil thei were carpyng in this matere, 1142

A knight
warns her in
prison of her
coming trial.

A knyght is goo to hir in preson) in hast,

Warnyng hir as a genteH offidere

In what maner the emperour wil hir a-taast.

What nedeth now mo woord^s for to waast? 1146

The lady seyde that it was glad tydyng,

There coude no man) gladdere to hir bryng. 1148

Tho fel she doun) plat al in a traunce, 1149

Commendynge hir cause right on-to god allone,

She prays to
God for help.

"Graunte me, lord," she seyde, "perseueraunce,

To serue thi godhed whiche sitteth in trone;

Of whiche godhed thi sone, the secunde persone, 1153

Deyed in erthe for synne of al man-kynde,¹ ^{1 corr.: keende}

Whiche on-to hym ful ofte [he fynt onkynde].¹ 1155

^{1 MS. corr.: onstable is in meende.}

"Thou graunte me, lord, this day eloquens, 1156

To saue thi feith, right as þou best can);

1128 are. councele 1130 conyng 1131 do 1132 from 1133
the om. are hayld 1136 many men 1138 erde 1139 hyr.
neþer 1140 rowse. þo 1141 cum 1143 gon. in preson om.
1145 a-taste 1151 sche sayde lord 1153 sune 1154 kynde 1155
he fynt onkynde

Suffre not these clerkis to make resistens

Etc. IV. Ch. 17.

Ageyn þat doctrine whiche þou, god and man,
here in this world with woundes blewe and wan 1160

Confermed thus; geue me, lord, that goost
Whiche can put doun soone al wordly boost! 1162

*Katharine
prays for the
Spirit*

“And as þou graunted to thyne Aposteles heere, 1163

Whan thei shulde stonde be-fore prynce or kyng,
Thou seyde to hem thei shulde not be in dwere
What thei shulde speke, neither to olde ne ȝyng,
ffor thou shulde graunte hem witte in answeyng, 1167

Ageyn whiche there shulde noo man replie,
Neither of the secte of hethen ne of heresy: 1169

“Right soo graunte now to me, pi seruauent, heere, 1170

That I haue strengthe thi cause [for] to defende,
That I may proue be resons sharpe and clere

*to defend
Christ's
cause.*

Thi cherches feyth, for whiche þou gan descende
Euene fro heuene oure maneris to a-mende. 1174

This prey I the, put this in my breest,
As þou art god and man, bothe kyng and preest. 1176

“Thou art my connyng, þou art myn hardynes, 1177

Thou art al in whom oonly I trost;
There cometh noo vertu but of thi worthinesse:

*In Him only
does she
trust.*

Lete not thi power at this day be loost!
Thou makest al thyng, bothe þe hete and the frost; 1181

Wherfore I prey, lord,¹ thoug I a woman be, ¹ MS. the, lord
Yet for thi wurshipe ȝet soo enforce me 1183

“That I may speke wordis to thi plesauns. 1184

As þou graunted hester to plesse hir assuere,
To leue his stately solenn countenauns

*May He
strengthen
her to speak
aright!*

And speke to hir wordis of goodly cheere:
Soo graunte me now, lord, thi seruauent heere, 1188

1158 suffyr 1164 stande 1166 elde 1171 hafe . forto 1172
preue 1173 chyrches . kan 1174 maners 1177 conyng . my
1179 comth . verteve 1180 as þis d. 1182 the om. . thow 1185
ester

Bk. IV. Ch. 17. That I may plese and plete in thi cause.

This is the sentens that I prey in clause." 1190

*Bk. IV. Ch. 18.*Ca^m. 18^m.An Angel
comes from
Heaven,W^han that this lady had made hir oryson, 1191
Ther cam an aungel glidyng doun from heuene ;

With merueylous noyse cam he þat tyme doun,

As bright he semed as it were the leuene.

Alle th[e]¹ preson whiche had vowtes seuene, 1195Was light that tyme right of his presens ; ¹ MS. tho in

The derke corneres cowde make no resistens. 1197

And she myght not susteyn that vysyon, 1198

Soo was she rauyshed with th[at]¹ newe light ; ¹ MS. the

Right with his comyng she fel soone doun.

and comforts
Katharine
in prison.The aungel comforted hir and bad hir be [l]yght ; ¹ ¹ MS. wyght

“Drede not,” he seyth, “though þat I be bryght ! 1202

I am a seruau^t bothe on-to god and yow,

And for 3oure comfort fro heuene cam I now. 1204

Christ greets
her,

“ My lord youre spouse be me greteth 3ow weel ; 1205

ffor very loue this massage now he sent :

and bids her
not fear.

he commaunded 3ou to drede neuere a deel,

Of these clerkis 3e shal not be circumuent ;

Ye shal conceyue ful clerkly¹ her entent, ¹ *al.* clerely 1209

And 3et moreouere thei shul haue noo powere

ffor to conclude 3ou now in noo manere. 1211

“ But 3oure power shal be ouere hem more large, 1212

ffor 3e shal conuicte hem with gret auctorite ;

She shall
convert her
opponents,

Ye shal leden hem on-to peteres barge,

Whiche fygureth oure feyth, as seyth dyuynite.

And not only thus, but soo deuoute shul þei bee 1216

and they
shall die for
Christ.

That as martirs for crist thei shul deye—

This same propheeye whiche I to 3ou seye 1218

1192 fro 1194 bryth 1195 alle þe preson 1199 þat 1201 lyght
 1202 noght . bryte 1203 & to 1206 lofe . message 1208 þeyse
 1209 clerly 1210 hafe 1214 leden on. þe peteres b. 1217 martyres

"Is determyned a-boue be goddis prouydens.	1219	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 18.</i>
These clerkes shul than ¹ despise her bookis alle	¹ al. now	The Philosophers shall despise their heathen books.
In whiche thei haue had a ful grete confidens ;		
Al her gret trost now shal fro hem falle		
With þe whiche thei haunted her goddis for to calle.	1223	
This shal oure lord doo, lady, be youre labour :		
Rise vp now and thanke <i>your</i> sauour !	1225	
"And 3e youre-self, after that thei be dede,	1226	
Shul suffre for hym moche more thyng		
Than I haue leyser to telle now in this stede.		
But of thus moche I geue you ful warnyng :		
3e shal make the queen for to forsake hir kyng	1230	Katharine shall make the Queen forsake her King.
ffor cristis loue, and deye soo in hir blood ;		
3e shul be cause, lady, of alle these werkis good.	1232	
"Yeue credens to me as to a truwe massagere,	1233	
And as noo feyned spyrite with doubilnesse ;		
My name is mychael, if 3e wil it heere,		
Archaungel of heuene, whiche hath þat besynesse		The Arch-angel Michael tells her this.
That alle soules, the more and eke þe lesse,	1237	
That shal to blisse, I peyse hem alle be wyte		
Whether in goodnesse thei ben heuy or lyghte.	1239	
"This is myn office, leue me, lady, weel !	1240	
There is a sete ordeyned in heuene aboue		She shall sit in Heaven after her martyrdom.
ffor yow, lady, after youre sharpe wheel		
Whiche 3e shal suffre for youre spouses lone ;		
Was neuere no mayde to swiche sete myght proue	1244	
Saue Mary allone, cristes moder deere.		
ffarweel now, lady, and beth of ryght good cheere !"	1246	
Thus was she comforted, and left al þat nyght	1247	Katharine is comforted.
In preson stille, in swete orison allone ;		
The sauour abode and somewhat of þe light		
After the tyme þat the Aungel was goone.		
he hath made hir hardy and stable as þe stoone,	1251	

1219 determynde 1220 now inst. of than 1221 hafe 1223 þe om.
1227 mech 1229 myche. you om. 1233 trew mess. 1234 not f.
1238 hem om. . wyght 1239 wheythyre . be 1247 counforted

Bk. IV. Ch. 18. There shal noo peyne hir herte now remeue
firo the feyth ne fro hir beleue. 1253

Bk. IV. Ch. 19.

Ca^m. 19^m.

All Alexan-
dria gathers
to hear the
Discussion.

NOW is the Citee, for to see this mayde, 1254
Gadered in-feere with noyse and rumo[u]r ;

Euery man there after his connyng sayde :

“ Now is come the day and eke the hour

In whiche there shal falle ful grete honour 1258

On som party, or elles ful grete shame.”

And be-cause this lady was of soo grete fame, 1260

Euery man is besy to stoonde that tyme ny, 1261
That he myght heere and see al þat was doo.

The Emperor The emperour is sette, the lordes sitte faste by,

The cle[r]kⁱs eke were sette be too and too ;

The may is sette in a sete also 1265

Right be hir-self, for she is lefte allone.

The emperour, sittying al hy¹ in his trone, ¹ MS. on hy 1267

exhorts the
Philosophers

Thus exorted¹ these noble clerkⁱs alle : ¹ MS. ex. he, he overl.

“ Maistres,” he seyth, “ heere is the concionatrix, 1269

heere is the mayde on whom we dede soo calle,

heere is the newe dyuynour, heere is þe newe Vlix,

heere is she whos errour is soo fyx 1272

And soo sore glewed she wil not fro it remeue ; ¹ al. schaftes

to prove their
skill on
Katharine.

Therefor 3oure craftes¹ on hir now must 3e preue.” 1274

Than made the mayde on-to the emperour 1275

A ful strong¹ chalange, seyenge on this wyse : ¹ al. strange

She asks him

“ On-to these clerkys, whiche are heere in this hour

Gaddered to-gedir be-fore you as Iustise,

3e haue graunted a guerdon of grete apryse 1279

If that thei conuicte me ; to me graunte ye noon :

Wherfore me thenketh al wrong haue 3e goon. 1281

1256 cunnyng 1261 stand 1267 on om. 1268 he om. 1269
pis c. 1273 glewyd 1274 schaftys 1276 straunge 1277 in om.
1279 hafe 1280 3e inst. of thei 1281 hafe

"But wolde 3e graunte¹ now to my guerdon" ^{1 r. graunten} *Bk. IV. Ch. 19.*
 That, if I spede and conuicte hem alle on rowe, 1283 whether, if
 she wins,
 That 3e shul leue 3owre maumentrye ful soon,
 And my lord Ihesu as for 3oure god knowe,
 Than wolde I seye with woordis meke and lowe 1286 he'll take
 Jesus as his
 God.
 That ye were iuge, iuste man and¹ truwe." ^{1 Ar. 20 tr. and man}
 With these woordis the emperour chaunged hewe. 1288

he seyde on-to hir wyth ful stoute countenaunce: 1289
 "What hast þou to doo of oure reward now?
 Defende thi feith with al the circumstaunce
 That þou can thenke, it shal be litel [enow].¹ <sup>1 MS. corr.: to
 litel to 3ow.</sup>
 lete be, damysele, make it not soo tough! 1293
 Entermete¹ the where thou hast too doone; ^{1 MS. Entermete}
 If þou haue witte it [wil]² be seene [ful] soone." ^{2 MS. shal}

Tho spak the mayde on-to the clerkes alle: 1296
 "Sith 3e be gadered now in to this place
 Vp-on me oonly for to crye and calle,
 With 3oure argumentis to loke if ye may chace
 My witte, my meende fro that newe purchase 1300
 Whiche I haue wonne, I mene fro cristen feyth,
 lete see what ony of yow to me seyth!" 1302 to begin.

Tho spak a philosophre of ful grete age, 1303
 An honourable man, Amphos of Athene:
 "We are come," he seith, "at the emperouris wage
 ffor a mayden, he wrote, of yeeris eytene: ^{Amphos says}
 That same is 3e, pleyonly as I wene. 1307
 But wherfore we come, as yet we knowe¹ not¹ now;
 Of that mater the answeere lith in 3ow. ^{1 al. know we} 1309

"Sith ye be causere thanne of this affray, 1310
 Sey ye 3oure groundes, and we shul puruay
 Answeris ther-too. or we goo [hens] this day,
 We caste us sekyr newly you to conuay
 she must
 state her case.

1283 o rowe 1284 schall 1285 to know 1287 trewe 1289
 vn-to 1292 to om. lytyll enow 1293 towe 1294 Enternet 1295
 hafe. wilbe. ful sone 1300 mynde 1301 hafe wunne 1306
 mayde 1308 know we 1311 purueye 1312 goo hens 1313 conueye

Bk. IV. Ch. 10. On-to that feyth whiche 3e dede reneye 1314
 Be wykked counsail. therfore first shal yee
 Speke in this mater, and than answere wee." 1316

*Bk. IV. Ch. 20.*Ca^m. 20^m.Katharine
crosses her-
self,

The mayde stood up, and wyth ful good chere 1317
 She crossed hir hed, hir mowth and hir brest;

and speaks.

Thanne spak she to hem right as 3e shal here:
 "In me it lith at the begynnyng of this fest
 To pronounce first, though þat I be lest 1321
 And moost onwurthy, but oure lord Ihesu,
 Blissed be he syth tyme that I hym knew. 1323

She has got
rid of her
heathen
books,

"I haue lefte alle myn auctouris olde, 1324
 I fond noo frute in hem but eloquens;
 My bookis ben goo, 3ouen or ellis solde.

Aristotle,

ffarweel, Aristotil! for ful grete expens
 Made my fadyr and had ful grete diligens 1328
 To lerne¹ me thi² sotyl bookys alle ^{1 r. lernén?} ^{2 MS. the}
 Of dyuers names as thou dede hem calle. 1330

Homer,

"Of omere eke haue I take my leue, 1331
 With his faire termes in vers and eke in prose—
 fful erly sat I and eke ful late at eue
 To lerne the texte and to lerne the glose;

Ovid,

I haue chose better, truly, I not suppose 1335
 But wote ful weel. farweel eke, ouyde!
 Thou loued ful weel blynde Venus and Cupide. 1337

Æsculapius,

"I haue take leue of esculape and Galiene 1338
 And of alle her preuy sergyng of nature—
 I haue a lesson moche truere to sustene
 And more directe to knowe¹ creature. ^{1 r. knowen}

Plato, &c.

3e plato bookis eke, I you ensure, 1342
 We haue doo now, we shal neuere more meete;
 Ne hym philistion, bothe philosophre and poete. 1344

1318 breeste 1320 lyghte 1321 pronownns. leest 1324 hafe.
 my 1326 be 1329 þi 1340 meche trewere. susteyne

"Be-helde ye, maistres, alle these mennes werkes 1345 *Bk. IV. Ch 20.*
 haue I stodyed and lerned ful besyly ; *These*
 Thei were red me of ful sotil clerkes, *Pagans'*
 There lyue noon better at this day, hardyly : *works*
 And in these bookes noon other thyng fond I 1349
 But vanyte or thyng that shal not leste, *were vanity.*
 And euere me thoughte that swiche lernyng was beste 1351

"That treeteth of thyng whiche shal euere¹ endure. 1352 *Christ is*
 Swiche thyng lerne I now, turned to crist Ihesu ; *eternal,*
 I lerne how god is lord of creature, ¹ *al. euer shal* *Lord of all*
 I learne hough he the heuene white and blew, *creation,*
 The water, the feyr, the erthe, eer þat it grew, 1356
 Made al of nought—this is now my lernyng.
 I lerne also that he a childe ful ying 1358

"Was bore in erthe of Mary, and she a mayde, 1359 *born on earth*
 Grew to¹ manhod, to thretty wynter and thre, ¹ *al. on to* *of Mary,*
 And thanne wilfully, as the prophetes sayde,
 ffor synne of man) heyng¹ vp-on a tree ; ¹ *al. hyng* *hangd on a*
 Many myracles in erthe tho dede hee 1363 *tree.*
 Whil he wente here—this I 3ow ensure.
 Be dyuers werkys knowe was sondry nature : 1365

"That he was god, he shewed be werkes grete, 1366 *He is God*
 ffor alle the elementis obeyed his commaundement ;
 That he was man, ful esy is to trete : *and man.*
 Thei sey and felte hym that with hym were present.
 I telle you pleyonly [now] al my[n] entent, 1370
 This is my scole, þis is my philosophie,
 This is þe seyens I hope shal neuere lye ; 1372

"This is my feyth, this is my victorie. 1373 *This is*
 What-euere men sey, a god muste we haue, *Katharine's*
 About alle men that euere regned erthely *Faith.*
 Most souereyn lord, whos power may al saue.

1348 noo 1349 no 1352 euyr schall 1354 who 1355 who .
 whyght 1356 fyre . erde or 1360 on-to m. 1362 hyng 1363 dyd
 1366 obeyd 1370 now all myne 1374 hafe 1375 reygned erdely
 1376 sofrene . safe

Bk. IV. Ch. 20. looke on your goddis how þei tounble and wane 1377
 Right whan men swepe hem—so litil of myght! ¹ at ye
 Wype away ¹ þat blyndenesse which he loked þour sight!

Christ said
 that those
 who see shall
 be blind. “ffor crist seyde soo, whan he the þing saw: 1380
 ‘Thei that see,’ he seyth, ‘shul be ful blynde.

And thei þat neuere of my vertu knew
 ful truly wil thei haue ¹ in her mynde ¹ MS. haue
 But pulle we the frute oute of the rynde. 1384

To telle þou platly what þis sentens is
 The seeynge men be-tokene þow, I-wis 1386

“ffor þe can see alle thyng þat to godde
 Perteyneth, be craft which ye of bookes haue: 1387

And blind the
 Philosophers
 are to their
 Salvation. But þoure saluacion, that I you ensur
 Considere þe nought, ne how þe may ¹ 1391

Yowre blasyng sciens maket[h] ¹ you ¹ to haue 1391

That endeles truthe can þe neuere-mo tynde: ¹ r. make?
 Ar. 108 make

This same errour is þat maketh yow blynde. ¹ Ar. 29 maket

“But in his name whom I now reles. 1394

They can
 never over-
 come Katha-
 rine. I shal be strong alle materis to conclud; ¹
 There shal no man haue myght ne thynners.

Though þe brynge a grettere multitude ¹ MS. gyse, on eras.

he can make wittis that been ful dour and rude, 1398

To shyne wyth scyens on the freshe wylse, ¹

My lord ihesu, and foolles ofte maket he wyse.” 1400

Bk. IV. Ch. 21.

Cam. 21m.

Whan this mayde ¹ of this fair yowesse ¹ r. mayden
 had made an ende, there stode vp tho a man

Of fers corage, though ¹ it were wode-se— ¹ Ar. 20 os þowe

Master
 Astenes. Maister astenes, soo thei called hymhan; ¹
 ffor very anger of colour was he wan. 1405

speaks
 angrily: with cryenge voys he filled tho the pace,
 Thus spak he than: “allas, what is are grace? 1407

1377 who . tumbyll . wafe 1379 þe in . of away . hyllyd 1380
 sew 1381 schall . ful om. 1383 hafe m 1388 hafe 1389 sau-
 cyon 1390 who . safe 1391 make . ral 1398 be 1399 wyse
 1400 he make 1402 a hende

- "Ye of me, lordes and cites[e]ines alle, 1408 *Bk. IV. Ch. 21.*
 3e blood ry, ye men of nobelnesse,
 What can shul men haue, you to calle
 Wysement adued with sobyrnesse?
 If wysdamvere wyth 3ow, than wolde I gesse 1412
 3e shulde not suffren pis cristen foolk¹ here ¹ r. folkis
 Repreue oue goddis with swiche veniable manere. 1414
 "ffor we ere called be oure emperour, 1415
 ffader and kperre ful gracyous of this lond,
 To couictehe seyde, here a newe errour.
 Whiche is not newe, 3e may weel vndirstond;
 Many of hei haue I brent with brond 1419
 Of these crien, right for this entent,
 That thei can feith, we calle delirament. 1421
 "Oure goddis may seyn that we been on-keende, 1422
 ffor alle the benefetes that thei to vs sende
 We to suffrene 3ongthe¹ of woman-[k]eende² ¹ Ar. 3ynkith
 Thus openly rist for to commende ² corr.: leende
 And al his trou with colouris to defende, 1426
 Oure goddis ce deueles for to calle—
 This suffre we and that is werst of alle. 1428
 "Wherfor sir kyng, be war of hir offens, 1429
 Suffre no[w]¹ his lady [no] lengere [for] to speke; ¹ MS. no3t
 These lewde folkis that listen with grete silens, *Stop this Katharine,*
 With apparenresons she shal soone I-cheke,
 That fro her th she shal soone hem breke— 1433
 Thei come nere hon), though we wolde hem drawe.
 To suffre swiche prechouris it is agayn oure lawe. 1435
 "We can now heder to heere som nouelte, 1436
 And she be-gyneth with Ihesu of Nazareth!
 Cryst thei calle hym, and prophete of galyle,
 She calleth hy lord of wynd and of breth,
 Of erthe, of war, of lond[e] and of heth. 1440
with her Jesus of Nazareth.

1408 cetesvns 411 endewyd 1413 suffyre 3ese 1422 sey. be.
 onkynde 1424 3erth. woman-kynde 1430 now. no lengere for
 to 1431 lewyd 1435 suffyre 1437 of om. 1440 erde. londe

Bk. IV. Ch. 21. This olde errour knowe we weel I-nough,¹ ¹ r. enow
 I haue my-selue conuicted many of yow, 1442

How could Christ's
 mother be a
 maid? "Of [3]oure secte I mene. how may 3e for shame 1443
 Reherse of Ihesu that grete doubelnesse?

Some men seyn that he had a dame
 Whiche was a mayde, in very soothfastnesse,
 After the tyme that she had suffred distresse 1447

It is a lie. Of childe-birthe—this knowe alle men a lye,
 This leude doctryne is no3t wurth a flye. 1449

"Ye magnyfie hym for this cause also : 1450

As to His rising from death, 3e seye he roos fro deeth to lyue ageyn.
 But of his discyples in sekernesse weere there too
 Whiche wente to the graue, as I herde Iues seyn :

2 of His disciples only stole His body." Thei stoole the body ful preuily in a reyn), 1454
 And thanne seyde thei, her maister was I-goo
 Be very myracle, and thus seyde many moo." 1456

Bk. IV. Ch. 22.

Ca^m. 22^m.

ON-to these wordes, on-to this blasphemie ¹ al. om. 1457
Katharine says She¹ answerde, 3e mayde, with moost goodly chere,
 She seyde thus : "at my lord of heuene 1459

Tooke I be-gynnyng¹ of myn conflicte heere : ¹ MS. my beg.

A makere is there withouten any dwere ² overlined; r. or

Ouere al thys world, whiche was er² it be-gan).

Jupiter ffor, as I haue proued, Iubiter was but a man), 1463

and Saturn were but men. "No more was saturne, whiche was fadir his.¹ 1464

Thanne sith thei were men and took her begynnyng,

Than muste we ferther procede, I-wis, ¹ al. his fadir is

To seeke hym whiche be-forn this ping) 1467

Was euere in heuene eternal¹ regnyng. ¹ r. eternally? al. eterne

This same is god of whom now I preche,

Ageyn alle synnes moost souereyn noted leche ; 1470

1441 elde . enow 1442 conuicte 1443 your . who 1449 lewyd .
 not worth 1451 lyffe 1453 iewys 1458 She om. 1460 my om.
 my 1462 or 1464 hys fadyr is 1466 procede now 1467 befor
 1468 eterne

"Spryng of aȝ pingē þat euere be-gynnyng hadde 1471 *Bk. IV. Ch. 22.*
 Soo is he called; in whom alle ping is eke,
 Of whom aȝ good ping, and no thyng hadde,
 Procedeth, truly,¹ bothe be day and be weke, ^{1 at. newly}
 Be whom alle creaturis, be þei wylde or meke, 1475 the preserver
 Are conserued—at hym thus I began; of all
 But if I dede, I were no wys woman. 1477 creatures.

"Make no comparyson be-twyx ȝour god and myn!
 ffor my god hath made¹ al þing of nought, ^{1 h. m. on eras.} No heathen
 Eke ȝour godd's arn not soo goode as swyn— 1480 god can be
 Thei can not grunten whan hem eyleth ought. compared to
 As fer as ye in this mater haue I sought, 1482 Him.
 I fond noo truthe: therfore fro ȝou I fledde;
 In truere weyes ful seker am I ledde." 1484

This man was tho of these resons grete 1485
 Soo troubled, he qwok be-twyxe ire and drede.
 Iete other men now in this mater trete,
 ffor he hath doon, he hath sowe his seede—
 A seker help whan ther cometh grete neede! 1489
 But god wulde haue hym turned in this manere—
 his merueilous menes shul we neuere lere. 1491

Cam. 23m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 23

Another clerk stood vp tho in haste, 1492
 On-to the mayden he made swiche evidens :
 "Alle ȝowre word's haue ye not spent in waste,
 I vndirstende ful weel ȝowre grete eloquens.
 Ageyn oure godd's ȝe maken this defens : 1496
 Ye sey, her ymages whiche we worship heere
 May not feele ne haue noon poweere. 1498
 "This wote I weel, thei ben but figures, 1499
 Representynge other-manner thyng,
 Liche to these fayre riche sepultures
 only re-
 present

1474 newly 1479 nowte 1480 are 1481 not gruntyn . ayleth
 owte 1482 sowte 1483 flede 1484 trewer . lede 1485 resones
 1493 mayde 1495 vndyrstand 1496 make 1498 not . hafe . no
 1499 be

Bk. IV. Ch. 23. Whiche be-tokene in her representyng
 That there is beryed duke or ellis kyng— 1503
 the Gods Soo arn these [ymages]¹ tooknes of godd^{is} oure. ¹ MS. thyngis
 themselves, To whom we 3eue with herte grete honore, 1505
 “Not for her cause, but for signyfycacion) 1506
 Of the worthy whom thei represent.
 Therfore I answere to 3oure replicacion),
 Seruyng somwhat now 3oure entent :
 and are but Thei þat made hem, neuere otherwyse ment 1510
 set up to stir men to devotion. To sette hem up, but for this cause oonly,
 That to hyere deuocion) men shuld goo therby.” 1512

*Bk. IV. Ch. 24.*Ca^m. 24^m.Katharine
denounces

Thanne seyde the mayden): “I wold 3e shulde now shewe
 of alle these godd^{is} whiche þat wurthiest bee. 1514
 ffor as thei stonde in 3oure temple on rewe,
 I can perceyuen) in hem noo dyuynyte 1516
 More in oon) than other.¹ for 3our saturne, [parde],²
 Whil that he leued was a fals traytour,
 homycide cruel, debater and robbour. 1519

his wife as
a chider;

“his wyf was woman) ny of the same vice, 1520
 Vengeable, dispitous, a¹ chidere euery tyde, ¹ al. om.
 Of hir condicion) onstable, and ful nyce—
 There myght no man) wyt^h hir no while abyde ;
 hir owne children) kyllid she be hir syde. 1524

Jupiter as

Iubiter was gelt of his fadir saturne eke,
 Banyshed his lond, his herberghe gan he seke. 1526

incestuons,
and a
banisher of
his Father.

“his owne suster Iubiter defouled tho, 1527
 his fadir after banyshed he oute of londe—
 These arn) the dedes of youre godd^{is}, loo !
 how may 3oure lawe eternally thus stonde
 Whan) it is biled on soo brethel bonde ? 1531

1503 byryed 1504 are . ymages 1513 no new chapt. mayde
 1515 stande . o rewe 1516 perceyue 1517 in an om. parde 1518
 lyued 1520 a woman . þat 1521 a om. 1526 Banychide . her-
 borow 1527 systere 1529 are 1530 who 1531 bylyd . brythyll

Pluto was rauyshere of maydenes ful violent, Bk. IV. Ch. 24.
 Venus was lecherous and also vynolent, 1533 Pluto,
Venus,

“Vulcane was cruel and 3et was he cokhold— 1534 Vulcan,
 how shulde swiche personys to ony godhed proue?
 Some arn 3onge, some of hem arn old.
 Cupyde encreseth in men that onclene loue— Cupid,
 These grete velanyes can 3e neuere shoue.¹ ¹ *at. fro hem shoue.*
 Of wytchecraft noted was 3oure god Mercurie, Mercury,
 Maister of charmes and of swiche so[r]cerye. 1540

“Youre god appollo, whan he was drunken of wyn, Apollo,
 Thanne wulde he iangel in maner of prophecie,
 fful sotil lesyngis wolde he tho dyuyne
 To hem that knewe not his tretcherye,
 Somtyme soothsawed, somtyme dede he lye. 1545
 These are 3oure goddys wiche 3at ye honoure!
 Alle to vices set was her laboure. 1547 heathen
Gods,
were all
vicious.

“3oure offerynges eke, thei be abhomynable : 1548 Offerings
to them
abominable.
 To some goddes offre 3e swynnes dunge;
 There cometh no mete be-fore you at the table
 Til 3our god hath away the tunge.
 If al 3oure harlotrye thus openly were I-runge, 1552
 It wolde shame 3ow. therefore 3e 3at ben wyse,
 fle this foly, drede the hye Iustise!” 1554

Tho stood the man afrayed as oute of mynde, 1555 The second
Philosopher
is silenst,
and con-
verted.
 he coude no3t speke to hir oon woord moo.
 Oure blissed lord his herte gan tho bynde
 On-to his seruyse—therfore lete hym goo,
 Sitte and reste as for that tyme with wo! 1559
 Thus shul thei stynte whan god wil sey pees;
 Of alle wysdam he can¹ soone relees.² ¹ *MS. gan* ² *at. make relees.*

1534 Wulcane 1535 who 1536 are 1538 vylonyes . neuyr fro
 hem 1541 drunk 1542 wold . iangyll 1544 tresceyre 1549
 offyr . swynys 1550 comth 1553 be 1556 o 1561 can . make
 relees

*Bk. IV. Ch 25.*Ca^m. 25^{m.1}¹ = Rawl. 24^m.A third
Philosopher
explains

A nother clerk thought deppere to procede, 1562
he stood vp tho, and this was his sentens :

“Of oure goddis ^{3e} shewe the shameful dede,
No-thing speke ^{3e} of her good prouydens.
We haue in this mater ful mysty intelligens, 1566
Whiche may noȝt be comon to euery man ;

to Katharine But to you, lady, soo now as I can, 1568

“Wil I þat comon, right for this entent, 1569

Be-cause youre-selue of wit sotil bee,
And for these lordes eke þat be present—
These same motiues at this tyme meue¹ me. ¹ MS. meueþ
ffor I wil telle now the moste preuy secree 1573
Whiche þat we haue in oure philosophie
Touchynge the goddis and her progenye. 1575

that Saturn is
Time,

“Saturne, þe firste whom ye soo dispreue, 1576
hym take we for tyme, be-cause he is oold,
And tyme, [parde]¹, after oure beleue ¹ MS. weteth weel ^{3e}
As for a god among's us is hoolde.

Jupiter, Fire, Iubiter the kyng, as the truthe is toolde, 1580
he is take for fyre,¹ and [Iuno] eke, his wyf, ¹ MS. the f.

Juno, Air. She is take for eyr that vs ^{3e}ueth lyf. 1582

These Gods
are an
Allegory

“Thus are oure goddis in maner of Allegorye, 1583
Resemble to natures whiche that be eterne.

of things
eternal.

Than is oure feyth grounded on noo lye,
But on swliche thyng whiche is sempiterne.
Myn owne lady, ye soughte noȝt weel this herne, 1587
Whan ^{3e} blasphemed oure goddis alle on rowe.
I telle you this ; I wolde alle men it knowe.” 1589

*Bk. IV. Ch. 26.*Ca^m. 26^m.Katharine
says

The lady answerde with sad avisement, 1590
She seyde she knewe his circumlocucion,

1562 pouth 1566 hafe 1567 not. comyns 1569 comowne 1572
meue 1578 parde 1579 now is 1581 the om. and Iuno. wyffe
1582 lyffe 1587 sowt not 1588 o rowe 1590 no new chapt.

The kyng of Thebes a book had ¹ hir sent	¹ MS. hir had	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 26.</i>
In whiche she fonde swiche exposicion;		she has seen this explana- tion before.
But she halt it now but for abvsyon).	1594	
Yet these resons whiche the man had shewed,		
Be very reson she wil proue hem lewed.	1596	
ffor at this tale whiche this man had told	1597	
Gladdyng ¹ the emperour, tremelyng euene for ioye,		The Emperor
To speke than was he waxe ful bold;	¹ <i>at.</i> Gladed	
" Clerke," he seyde, "saturne keepe the fro noye!		
I troste this lady wil now bere hir ¹ more coye.	1601	
What sey 3e, mayde? where is 3oure answer?		challenges Katharine to answer.
If 3e can ought, lete us now it lere!"	¹ <i>at.</i> bere hir now	1603
The mayde seyde tho on-to that maister soone:	1604	
"3oure shameful doctryne wolde 3e ful fayn hyde		
With figures and colouris, as 3e are wont to doone;		
But 3e muste leyn these exposicions asyde.		
Arn not these planetes knowen wonder wyde?	1608	She asks, How can the Planets,
May we ¹ not seen hem whan thei shyne soo clere?	¹ MS. 3e	
The sonne, the mone, whiche shyne ¹ on vs here,	¹ <i>r.</i> shynen	Sun and Moon,
"This wote we weel that these been noo men).	1611	be men?
Why arn thei grauen thus of stoon and of tree?		
This errour is ful esy for to keen		
That men arn thei no3t, ne neuere-[more] shal bee.		They are not.
In these fyguris thanne ful foule erre 3ee;	1615	Their images are shams.
Ye wurshep the shadwe and leue the substauns,		
here is in 3ow a ful grete varyauns.	1617	
"Eke the planetes whiche shyne thus aboue,	1618	The Planets can't be proved eternal.
Though thei shul stonden euere and be eterne,		
Yet can 3e not with 3oure bookys proue		
That 3ei haue euere be-fore be sempiterne.		
If philosophie were looked in his preuy herne,	1622	

1592 had hir 1595 resones 1598 gladed 1601 bere hyre now .
koye 1604 tho om. be. 1606 fygure . colour . wone 1607 ley
1608 Are . knowyne 1609 we . se 1610 sune . on-to 1611 3ei be
1612 are . graue 1613 ken 1614 are . neuer more 1616 schadow
1619 schuld stand 1621 hafe 1622 phylophye

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 26.</i>	Ye shulde fynde þere þat planetis alle ben made.	
The Planets	What wil 3e ferthere in this mater wade?	1624
are made by their Creator, God.	“If thei be made, than arn þei creatures, And he that made hem, [he] is god allone. ley hem in water, alle youre mysty figures, ffor nozt arn thei, neither þe stok ne the stooene.	1625
Pray to Him!	On-to that hye god loke 3e make <i>your</i> moone, Prey hym to sende 3ou of errour repentauns! Thanne haue 3e of treuthe the very assurauns.”	1629 1631

*Bk. IV. Ch. 27.*Cam. 27^{m.1}¹ = Rawl. 25^{m.}The Philosophers marvel
at Katharine.

The philosophres merueyled of this answer, 1632
Of hir wit and of hir eloquens;

Thei that now in presens arn there
herde neuere be-fore swiche-maner sentens.
She can alle thyng of very experiens. 1636

One Master

A maister stod vp and spak tho to hem alle:
“I wolde a supposed,” he seyde, “þat the heuene shuld falle,

exhorts the
others to

“Rather than woman swiche sciens shulde attame. 1639
lete vs leue, felawes, now oure olde scole,
Yeue attendauns at þis tyme to this dame!
ffor in þis word¹ in cunnyng stant she soole. ¹ = world

Alle oure lernynge wil turne vs to doole 1643

But if we folwe, as meche as we may,
To lerne the trewth the whiche shal lasten ay. 1645

learn the
Truth from
Katharine.

“Therefore lete vs lerne now of þis mayde 1646

What þat god is whiche made thus alle þing.
With this mater haue I ben ofte dismayde,
ffor I coude neuere with natu[r]al arguyng
Diuyne so ferre, and euere oure stodyng 1650
hath ben therto ful directe, as me semeth.

He believes
her doctrine.

I wil beleue now as þis lady demeth.” 1652

1623 be 1625 are 1626 he is 1628 nowt are . the om. 1631
hafe 1634 are 1640 elde 1641 entendauns 1642 worlde . stand
1645 lestynne 1648 hafe . be 1650 stodyng 1651 be

Thus is consented now alle þe compayne; 1653 *Bk. IV. Ch. 27.*
 Thei wil lere of hir, þei sey plat and pleyne,
 ffor it is aboue al her phylosophie,
 What lord he is þat made the wynd and reyn.
 That there is swiche on, can thei weel [I]-seyne, 1657
 But what he is, or what is his name,
 This desire thei to lerne now of this dame. 1659

All the
 Philosophers
 ask Katha-
 rine to teach
 them about
 God.

The mayde eke was as glad as thei, 1660
 To enforme hem in this same matere;
 On-to these men ful sadly gan she sey:
 "Sith that ȝe take the foorme now of scolere,
 Ye arn the rediere these mysteries for to lere. 1664
 But we wil leue this godhed for a tyme,
 And of the manhod a while wil we¹ ryme. 1 MS. we wil 1666

She says

"Ye shal knowe first, þat oo god is in heuene, 1667
 Distynct in persones, as we beleue,¹ thre, 1 r. beleuen
 ffadir and sone and holygoost ful euene:
 These same persones oonly oo god [be].¹ 1 MS. arn hee.
 Oure auctouris seyn that if god had bee 1671
 Oonly oo persone, than shulde not his hooly blys
 Be comound to other soo parfytly as it is, 1673

One God is
 in 3 persons.

"ffor creature noon myght receyue [no]¹ swiche; 1674
 Therefore he ordeyned be his eterne counsaile 1 MS. corr.: ony
 That thre persones in myght and nature lich
 In oo godhed—to vs ful gret meruayle— 1 MS. considered
 Shuld be con[fe]dered¹ to mannes grete awayle, 1678
 And iche of other his substauns shulde thus take,
 Noon lesse, noon more—thus oure feith we make 1680

These 3 form
 1 Godhead.

"Of [þe] thre persones the secunde, whiche is the sone,
 Cam down to erthe, here he took [mankynde],¹
 ffor man had lost al þat euere was done 1 MS. corr.: mannes keende
 Whan he [to]² god was falle [so vnkynde]³ 2 MS. fro
 3 MS. to the feende

The Second
 took man's
 nature,
 to redeem
 man.

1657 I-seyne 1664 are 1666 wyll we 1670 be 1671 sey 1674
 no sweche 1678 confederyd 1679 eche 1681 þe thre . qweche .
 sunc 1682 erde . mankynde 1684 to god . fall so vnkynde

Bk. IV. Ch. 28. he brak þe precepte with whiche he gan hem b[*y*]nde¹
 A-mongis the trees in the place of delice, ^{1 MS. beende}
 Whiche þat we clepe in bookis paradise. 1687

Christ came
 to unite God
 and man. "And for there was no man able in erthe ther-too 1688
 To make vnyte be-twix god and man),
 This was the cause that þat lord dede soo.

He was born
 of a Virgin,
 and died for
 us. he light to erthe and in a 3ong woman),
 A clene mayde[n], flesh and blood he nam); 1692
 There-in he deyed to slee oure synnes alle.
 This is the god on whom we cristen calle." 1694

Bk. IV. Ch. 28.

Cam. 28m.1

¹ = Rawl. 26m.The chief
 Philosopher

The maister princypal, whiche the woordys hadde 1695
 ffor hem alle at that same day and tyme,
 Of hir doctryne was ful Ioyeful and gladde ;
 ffor god had poynted in hym a newe pryme,
 Oure lord ihesu had purged hym of his cryme, 1699
 Made hym disposed to his conuersion).
 But he merueyleth soore of this informacion). 1701

asks how the

he seyde to the lady in ful faire manere : 1702
 "Oo thyng there is heere in youre techyng
 Whiche I can) noȝt conceyue it ȝet ful clere :

natures of
 God and Man
 can join in
 1 person.

ffor god and man) in her coupelyng
 Been ful diuers, and ȝet sey ȝe this thyng 1706
 That bothè natures ben ioyned in oo persone ;
 There was neuere swiche but if it be he allone. 1708

God is
 eternal,
 man is
 mortal.

"ffor if he be god, than) muste he be eterne ; 1709
 If he be man), þan) is he corruptible.

[A]¹ nature [or]² persone whiche is sempiternē,
 To sey of it that it is passyble, ^{1 MS. corr.: Of} ^{2 MS. a}
 Semeth to me a ful gret insolible. 1713
 This is the mocyon), lady, ȝe muste declare,
 ffor in pis mater oure wittis been) ful bare." 1715

1685 bynde 1692 maydyne . of flesche 1693 deyde 1698 hath
 1701 meruelyth 1706 Be 1707 be 1711 A n. or p. 1715 be . but

Cam. 29m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 29.

- Thus to this mocyon answerde tho þe mayde : 1716 Katharine
 "Ye muste conceyue," she seyde, "in 3oure mynde says
 That these too natures in oure lord ihesu were layde
 And coupled to-geder ageyn vsed kynde.
 Thus we of hym in solenne bookis fynde ; 1720
 But the very proue of his werkis grete
 Is right I-now this mater for to trete. 1722
 "ffor he þat reysed lazarus fro the graue 1723 that Christ's
 Where he had loyn foure dayes euene, raising
 he that petir in the see dede saue Lazarus,
 And walked there as men doon on a grene, making Peter
 he þat commaunded the wynd þat was soo kene 1727 walk on the
 That it shulde cese and blowe noo more þat tyde, sea,
 he þat so merueylously on-to heuene gan glyde 1729 and His
 "Body and al : he was more þan man), 1730 bodily ascen-
 ffor be his godhed wrought he this meruayles. sion into
 Moche more þing now reherce I can), heaven,
 But I passe ouere, 3euyng to 3our assayles prove His
 Tyme and space. I prey god þat 3our entrayles 1734 Godhead:
 he endewe with grace, that 3e may knowe the truthe—
 Of 3our damnacyon haue I ful grete ruthe. 1736
 "But alle these werkes whiche were soo grete 1737
 Shewe be reson that more than man was hee. that He was
 Whan he the Iewes mette right in þe streete, more than
 There shewed he thanne his diuynyte : man,
 Thei durste noȝt looke, but fel down at his kne. 1741
 There myghte noo creature be reson doo these werkys,
 But he were god—thus proue oure clerkys. 1743
 "And that he ete his mete, slepe and wente, 1744 though also
 Spak and drank, rested, and wery was eke, man.
 This serueth ful pleynty to youre argument

1716 no new chapter 1722 enow 1723 lazare 1724 loy fourti (!)
 1726 do 1728 he 1730 a man 1731 wrowt. þese 1732 meche
 1734 pase 1735 treuth 1736 reuth 1741 not

Bk. IV. Ch. 29. In whiche 3e gan ful sotylylly for to seeke.
 3owre answer haue 3e, if it may 3ow leke : 1748

Christ's 2
 natures workt
 diversely
 here. That these too natures whiche in hym were,
 Diuers werkynge had, whil he was heere. 1750

“ Yet of [3]oure auctoris may we take witnesse. 1751

Even the
 heathen Sybil
 said that God
 should be
 hangd like a
 thief: Sibille seyde merueylously in pis matere :
 That holy god, she seyde, euere be in blesse
 Whiche shal¹ be hangd liche a thef heere ^{1 MS. shulde}
 Right on a tree, and after leyd on beere. 1755

What wil 3e more? what shulde I to 3ou say?
 On-to this auctrix 3e may neuere seye nay. 1757

and her
 authority is
 unquestion-
 able. “ ffor as an auctour a[d]mitted in 3oure lawe 1758

Is she receyued, and pleyndly to oure feyth
 Bereth she wytnesse in hir mysty sawe,
 ffor these too natures in oure lord she leyth :
 God, he his fulblyssed, as she seyth, 1762
 And manhod¹ it is that heyng vp-on the tree. ^{1 MS. mandhode}
 Oute of 3owre lawe cometh this auctoryte.” 1764

Bk. IV. Ch. 30.

Ca^m. 30^m.¹

¹ = Rawl. 27^m.

Another
 Philosopher

A Nother maister, euene ful of eloquens, 1765
 Of curtesye eke, and a ful seemly man,

Spak to this lady with ful grete reuerens ;
 he seyde hir [wytt]¹ be-fore her wyttys ran ^{1 MS. woordis}
 Soo grete a paas it can not be ouer-tan ; 1769

asks Katha-
 rine

But 3et he preyed hir that he myght seye, ^{1 r. hir? 2 r. sche?}
 In his¹ arguyng ful naturally he² took the weye. 1771

to prove her
 doctrine by
 Nature.

“ ffor nature,” he seyde, “ be swiche influens 1772
 Was soo confermed that it myght not faile ;
 Euery thyng therfore that maketh resistens
 Ageyn nature, ful soone wil it quayle ;
 With-oute nature may no thyng awayle.” 1776

1751 3our 1754 schallbe hankyde leche 1758 admittede 1762
 is . byssyd 1763 hyng 1768 wytt inst. of woordis 1776 wyth-
 outyn

Wherefore he wolde, swichiche thyng as she shal preche, Bk. IV. Ch. 30.
Be natural resons hir thyngis shulde she teche. 1778

“ffor hard it is to constreyne a mannes wil 1779 Proof is necessary for belief.

To trowe a þing whiche he can not proue.
hoo shal beleue good thyngis or ellis il,¹ ¹ orig. ille

That same beleue muste come of very loue 1782

And very trost whiche is on-to his be-houe.”¹ ¹ al. houe

Therfore this man desyreth that naturally
hir conclusyons she proue now openly. 1785 Prove Christ's two natures, naturally.

Cam. 31^m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 31.

She seyde, she wolde with good entent 1786 Katharine quotes the

Soo as hir wit¹ wolde serue hir for þis tyme, ¹ MS. with

And soo as god of his grace hath sent

On-to hir knowleche at þat day to dyuyne,
fful fayn wolde she this mayster to enclyne— 1790

ffor she to crist cast hir hym to drawe,
he shal no more troste now on is lawe. 1792

This same exaample putte she to hym tho, 1793 analogy of man's body and soul.

Of body and soule whiche we bere aboute,
how thei arn¹ Ioyned in on þus, these too, ¹ MS. arn) thei

And oon is hyd, the other is seen with-oute.
She seyde, “to alle men it is ful grete dowte 1797

how þat the soule whiche þat [m]euere is
Cam to the body, whan he cam fro blys; 1799 How does the Soul come to the Body?

“What weye he cam, or ellis in what hour 1800

Whan to the body he cam it for to queke;

It is but foly to spende ony labour

Swiche preuy thyngis for to serge and seeke. It's folly to search into such hidden things.

3e may leue these thyngis,¹ if ye leeke, ¹ r. this thyng 1804

That soule and body arn ioyned now in-feere

In what persone þat 3e see walken heere; 1806

1778 resonis 1781 þing 1783 houe inst. of behoue 1786 no
new chapt. 1787 wit 1790 wold she now. to om. 1792 his
1794 aboute 1795 who. are 1796 his hyd. wyth-outh 1797
douth 1798 who. meure 1802 oure l. 1804 þis þinge. like
1805 are 1806 walke

*Bk. IV. Ch. 31.*If then men
know nothingof their own
souls and
bodies,how can they
know about
Christ's
being?*Bk. IV. Ch. 32.*The Chris-
tians who've
bowd to idols,repent and
lamentat Katha-
rine's last
answer.The Pagans
see their
Philosophers
silenst.

“ And if ye liste not to be-leue this thyng, 1807

Ye may leue—but 3e shal it neuere I-knowe,
The maner or¹ tyme of [pis] preuy werkyng, ¹ MS. of

Youre scole therto is 3et ouer-lowe.

Ye may weel booste of 3our connyng and blowe, 1811

But 3e shal faile whanne 3e come to the poynt;

Oure lord [god] hath hyd fro yow that ioynt. 1813

“ Thanne, sith 3e may be no natural weye 1814

haue the knowleche of these creatures heere,

how shulde we of 3ow now þan) seye

That 3e shulde knowe þing aboue ful clere? 1817

how shulde 3e knowe þe¹ lord þat hath powere ¹ al. þat

Ouere alle thyng? how shulde ye to hym) gesse,

Whanne þat 3e may not knowe moche þing lesse?” 1820

Cam. 32m.1

¹ = Rawl. 28m.**W**hanne this answer was youe thus to þis man), 1821

Eche man) be-syde þat stood tho aboute

fful merueylously chaunge¹ thei be-gan). ¹ r. chaungen

ffor thei þat cristen) were, with-oute[n] doute,

Whiche to the maumentis before-tyme dede loute, 1825

Now wayle þei soore with ful grete repentauns,

Demyng hem-self ful worthi grete penauns; 1827

Thei haue remembred her god moost of myght, ¹ MS. hemAnd where that a woman) precheth him¹ constantly, 1829

There thei forsake hym; “ this thyng gooth not right,

That [þe] frelere kynde shal soo stab[y]ly 1831

Confesse oure feyth, where þat¹ more myghty ¹ r. þat þe

helde her pees and dar speke ryght nought”—

Of the cristen this was bothe cry and thought. 1834

The other syde, tho that paynemes were, 1835

Thei sey hir resons and hir grete euydens

Whiche stoynd the clerkis alle tho¹ ben there; ¹ r. that

1809 or tyme of þis. 1813 lord god 1816 who 1817 ful om.
 1818 þat 1819 who 1820 meche 1821 Whan þat þis 1824 with-
 outen 1826 ful om. 1828 hir. myth 1829 hem om. 1830 no
 ryth 1831 þe freler. stabyly 1832 myty 1837 that be

- This putte þe puple in conceytes [ful] suspens. *Bk. IV. Ch. 32.*
 ffor al her labour and al her grete expens 1839
 ffor thys þing her reward shal be woo.
 Grete murmur was there, and some be-gunne to goo. 1841
 Ouer al this þe emperour he his now wood, 1842 The Emperor
 On-to the clerkis with ful angry face
 he cried, "be armes, bones, and be blood, abuses the
 It was a shame and a soory grace Philosophers
 That soo fele clerkis gadered in a place 1846
 Shulde be astoynd sodeynly of a mayde;" ^{1 MS. cowardis} for being put
 "Coward¹ churles!" right thus to hem he seyde, 1848 Katharine.
 "Pluk vp þoure hertis, lete noȝt oure lawe thus falle,
 lete not oure goddys suffre thus this wrong! 1850
 But if ȝe doo, the moost part of yow shalle Unless they
 Er longe tyme be the nekke shul be hong. answer her,
 Speke, men, for shame! the tyme is not long, 1853 he'll hang
 It paseth faste and we doo no note; 'em.
 Me thenketh ye stoonde euene as men that dote." 1855

Ca^m. 33^{m.1}¹ MS. 32^m. = Rawl. 29^m.*Bk. IV. Ch. 33.*

- T**he stood up with a newe motyf 1856
 A fressh clerk, mayster appollymas— Appollymas
 Soo aferd was he neuere in al his lyf
 Of no mater ne of no diuers cas
 Soo as of this mater now he feses was; 1860
 But thus seyde he þan softly to the mayde:
 "In þoure declaryng, lady, me thought ȝe sayde 1862
 "Too sundry thyngis, if we considere weel; 1863
 Contradiccyon ful soone in hem shal be founde.
 Youre lord ihesu, whiche is knowe ful weel,
 As ȝe sey he made this world soo rounde, said Jesus
 Adam and Eue he foormed fro the grounde, 1867 made the
 And al other thyng whyche that hath substauns World,
 It was made, ȝe sey, be his ordynauns. 1869 Adam and
 Eve, &c.

1838 ful suspens 1846 soo om. 1848 coward 1849 not 1854
 passith 1855 stand 1857 apollinas 1868 haue

KATHARINE.

Y

Bk. IV. Ch. 33.

“Ageynⁿ 3ou now thus I wil replie, 1870
 Prouynge on-treuthe in youre marred feyth.
 I haue made rek[e]nyng, whiche may not lye,
 A-mongⁱs oure storyes, what¹ ony manⁿ seyth: ¹ r. what so?
 The berthe of ihesu ful truly oure book leyth, 1874
 ffor he was bore¹ vndir octauyane ¹ r. boren
 At lytel bethleem in a l[ewde]¹ lane; ¹ MS. lowe 1876

Whereas
 Jesus was, in
 fact, born

not 300 years ago. “It is not 3et fully¹ thre hundret 3eere ¹ al. not fully 3et
 Sith þat 3oure ihesu of his modyr was² bore. 1878

How could
 He then have
 made the
 world?

how dar 3e thanne in swiche presens here
 Affirme of thyng þat was soo longe before, ² al. was of his modyr
 That he this [worlde] shulde make or restore? 1881
 how myghte he make thyng whyche thowsendⁱs fyue
 had her duracyoonⁿ er than¹ he took lyue? ¹ al. that 1883

Let Katha-
 rine answer
 plainly.

“This is my motyf, an¹ answer I desyre ¹ MS. and 1884
 In pleyn langage with-oute distynctyon.
 This symple puple haue 3e set on fyre
 Wyth youre crafty circumlocucion.
 Answer in short to this conclusyon, 1888
 Thanⁿ shal I sey that 3e be þat mayde
 Swiche another no manⁿ hath assayde.” 1890

*Bk. IV. Ch. 34.*Ca^m. 34^{m.1}¹ MS. 33^m.

She says
 Appollymas

Thus spak the lady on-to the clerk ageynⁿ: 1891
 “Alle 3oure groundes, sere, in youre arguyng
 haue take oo partye and, shortly for to seyn,
 lefte the other; wherfore the concludyng
 ffayleth ful foule now in 3our rekkenyng. 1895
 his manhod counte 3e, and his birthe temporaⁿH,
 And not that birthe whiche is eternaⁿH. 1897
 “ffor this temporal birthe, as 3e seyde late, 1898
 Was now before us not many 3eeres goo—

has thought
 only of
 Christ's tem-
 poral birth,
 not His
 eternal.

1871 marrethe 1873 stores 1875 borne 1876 bethlem . lewde
 lane 1877 fully 3ete 1878 was of his m. 1879 who 1881 þis
 worlde 1882 who . thousandⁱs 1883 er þat 1884 an 1888 a folio
 is missing in the MS. to v. 1963.

- As to comparison) of the largere date
It may be counted but for a 3eer or too.
But of this mater the mistery wil I on-doo, 1902 Katharine explains
ffor of this same haue 3e grete meruayH,
As me semeth right be 3oure assayH. 1904
- "At the gynnyng first shul 3e vndirstande, 1905 that Jesus was God from eternity,
That god eternally hath euere oure ihesu bee ;
Makere and shapere of aH thyng þat is leuande,
Thus is he called, and thus beleue we.
But now in¹ late dayes of his charite ^{1 al. of} 1909 but lately took man's nature, to redeem him.
he took oure keende to oure redempeyon),
In whyche keende he suffred his¹ passyon). ^{1 al. om.} 1911
- "ffor the manhod was not able to doo this thyng, 1912
And the godhed myght not suffre swiche disese ;
Wherfore of these too he made a coupelyng,
The faderes offens thus for to plese,¹ ^{1 r. pese?}
The deueles power thus for to fese. 1916
In godhed and manhed he took this batayH,
ffor manhed allone myght not awayH. 1918
- "Thus, for his godhed hath be eternally, 1919
Therefore sey we that he made al thyng
Thurgh power of the same, and eke þat body
Whiche was conceyued of a mayde[n] yinge ;
That same body on the crosse hyng, 1923 The body born at Bethlehem hung on the cross.
That same body at bethleem was bore—
ffor the godhed hath be eternally before." 1925 The Godhead was eternal.
- Whan she had sayde this glorious vers, 1926
The man) stood stoynd and marred in meende ;
Noon of hir woordes coude he reuers,
Thei passed of his lernyng al the keende ;
Resons ageyn) hir coude he noon fynde, 1930
But thus seyde he tho openly with cry :
"As 3e beleue, lady, soo beleue I." 1932 Her opponent believes in Christ.

*Bk. IV. Ch. 35.*Ca. 35^{m.1}¹ MS. 34^{m.}Another
Philosopher
asks why

A Nother mayster made hir thys motyf : 1933
 “ 3e preche of crist,” he seith, “ and of his dede,
 how he for man thus freely lost his lyf
 ffor to brynge hym to þat heuenely mede ;
 his deth, 3e sey, away tho gan lede 1937
 Alle-maner synne, the power eke of helle
 With his deth that lord gan than felle. 1939

Christ didn't
send an Angel
to fight the
Devil,

“ Might not þat lord with his real power 1940
 A maistred the deuel and putte hym soo to flyght ?
 Might he not a sente an aungel or a massager ?
 What was the cause that he hym-self wolde fight,
 Suffre swiche passyon and lese soo his right ? 1944
 If he was myghty, whi suffred he that wrong ?
 Answer me tale, for it is noȝt long. 1946

instead of
doing it
Himself ?

“ If he hym-selue myght not redresse þis thyng, 1947
 Than was it foly to take[n] it on hande ;
 And if he were, as 3e seye, soo myghty a kyng,
 There myght no powere þan ageyn hym stande.
 Yowre prophete seyde that he with yrn wande 1951
 Alle his enemyes shulde bothe bete and bynde.
 In swiche sufferance me thenketh he was blynde.” 1953

*Bk. IV. Ch. 36.*Ca. 36^{m.1}¹ MS. 35^{m.}Katharine
answers,

Youre motyf, sir,” seyde the noble queen), 1954
 “ hath grete colour, but ȝet I voyde it thus,
 A[s]¹ I haue lerned in bookes that I haue seen). ¹ MS. And
 Oure lord crist, oure sauour Iesus,
 list for to feyten with the deuel for vs 1958
 And ouere-come hym in swiche keende as he took,
 ffor the synne of Adam, if we wil look, 1960
 “ Muste been redressed oonly be mankeende ; 1961
 And be-cause ther were a-mongis men non able—
 ffor in al erthe myght he than noon fynde

“because
Adam's sin
had to be
redrest by
man.”

Man soo elene, soo parflight, soo profytable		<u>Bk. IV. Ch.36.</u>
As Adam was whyl that he was stable	1965	As Adam
In blissed paradys er he dede offens,		
Therefore oure lord with his fleshly presens	1967	
“Took pis iornay and deyed on [a] tree,	1968	
That, euene as synne in the tree was doo,		sind by a tree,
Right soo on the tree deth suffred hee.		so Christ died on a tree.
It was conuenyent he shulde feyte soo :		
In tree ¹ was ioye bore, and in the tree woo ; ¹ al. þe tre	1972	
Woo be sathan, Ioye be oure lord Ihesu ;		
Oute of the tree a blissed frute grew.”	1974	

Cam. 37^{m.1}¹ MS. 36^{m.} = Rawl. 31^{m.}Bk. IV. Ch.37.

T here stood vp thanne with a [full] boold face	1975	
A grete clerk, thei called Alfragan ;		Alfragan objects
he thoughte to haue worship in þat place,		
his apposayle right thus he began :		
“ Youre ihesu crist, he is bothe god and man),	1979	
As 3e seye, lady. but ley that a-syde,		
As for a space lete that mater abyde !	1981	
“ Ye cristen putte euere in 3oure posycion)	1982	that though there is but one Christian God,
That there be noo moo godd ^{is} but oon) ;		
But if youre owne booke come to reuoluc ^{ion} ,		
I trowe oo god shal not be founde there allon).		
I rede in a cristen) prophete not longe a-gon)—	1986	a Prophet says,
I wot not 3et veryly ¹ what 3e hym) calle—	¹ al. not veryly 3et	
Thus speketh he that 3e be godd ^{is} alle.	1988	“ Ye are all Gods.”
“ Whom mente he heere in this pluralite	1989	
But god, whiche 3e syngulere confesse ?		
Be-twyxe these too is noon) n[eut]ralite. ¹	¹ MS. naturalite	How can this be?
But, be thei more godd ^{is} or be thei lesse,		
Youre owne book ^{is} of hem bere wetenesse	1993	

1964 parfyth . profithable 1966 or . 1968 on a . 1971 fyte
 1972 þe tre . in 2 om. 1974 þat tre . 1975 wyth full bold 1980
 o syde 1987 ueryly 3it 1991 no neutralite 1993 witnesse

- Bk. IV. Ch. 37.* That many be there and moo than) oon).
lete see what weye that 3e wil now goon! 1995
- Christians
say there is
one God, with
a son Jesus;
“Ye putte to vs here a grete god of heuene 1996
Whiche hath a sone, 3e sey hight Ihesu :
And in 3owre bookis fynde we ful euene
Of a-nother god, bothe iuste and true,
Thei calle hym) baal—I trowe 3e hym knewe ; 2000
Thre hundret prophetes on-to his seruyse
Were endued there, ful sad men and wise. 2002
- yet their
books speak
of the god
Baal.
“How may 3e sey thanne þat god is but on)? 2003
hough may 3e for-barre oure oppynyon)?
If þat 3oure god be regnande thus allon),
Why speke 3oure bookis of swiche dyuysyon)?
Why may not Iubiter make his coniunceyon) 2007
With Iuno, his wif, syth there been) goddis fele?
Youre resons, lady, avayle not a rake-stele.” 2009
- This is con-
tradictory.

*Bk. IV. Ch. 38.*Cam. 38^{m.1}¹ MS. 37^{m.}

Katharine
says the
Scriptures
use figurative
language.

- “**Y**E muste conceyue, sir,” seyde the mayde, 2010
“That oure scripture in his mysti speche
hath many fygyres if thei ben) asayde :
Oure lord god is somtyme called a leche,
Somtyme a Iustyse and ful of wreche, 2014
Somtyme a fadir al ful of loue ;
Swhiche sondry predicates in hym wil¹ proue ¹ MS. wil I

- “The sondry effectes that in hym bee. 2017
Wherfore I telle you, sir, if 3e wil here,—
Of oure feyth a ful grete verite
Ye may consydere now, and 3e wil lere :
Goddis are there noon), ne [neuer]-more were, 2021
But on) allone whiche made erthe and heuene,
hayl, reyn, wynd, thounder and leuene, 2023

But there is
only One God,
the Creator of
all things.

1997 sun . hith 2002 endewid 2003 who 2004 who 2008 be
2010 no new chapt. sere 2012 be 2016 sundry . I om. 2018 ser
2021 ne neuer more 2022 erde 2023 þundir

- "And be nature he is god regnyng thus allone; 2024 Bk. IV. Ch. 38.
 But yet of his goodnesse he hath to hym chose
 Certeyn persones to dwelle in his woone :
 Tho calleth he godd^{is}, as I suppose.
 This þat I seye now, is noo fals glose, 2028
 But folweth of the texte, if 3e take hed ;
 ffor there that ye now on this wyse gan red 2030
This One God has chosen folk to dwell with Him.
These, the Scripture calls Gods,
 "I sey 3e be godd^{is},¹ there folweth¹ thus ¹ r. it f. 2031
 'And sones of hym that sytteth hyest.'
 This is a gret distynceyon, sir, among^{is} vs
 Of nature and adopeyon, whiche is the best.
 Adopeyon, we seye, is but as a gest, 2035
 ffor he is chosen in right be fre wiH ;
 B[ut] natural regnyng hath an hyer skiH.¹ ¹ MS. Be 2037
 "ffor who-so regneth naturally in any place, 2038
 he may not be putte oute but he haue wrong ;
 And he þat chosen is, he cometh in be grace. ¹ MS. brynge
 Myn answeere wil I br[egge]¹ and make not longe ; 2041
 ffor² catche now this conceyte and in 3our wit it fonge
 That naturally god regneth al allone ; ² MS. ffor to
 Whiche of his goodnesse hath called to his trone 2044
 "Certeyn folkys right of his good grace, 2045
 Whiche godd^{is} we calle be-cause thei haue blis.
 Thus are thei with hym euere and see his face,
 Regne there in Ioye whiche may neuere mys ;
 There arn thei treeted ryght as children) his. 2049
 This is the entent of that auctoryte.—
 A-nother thyng efte allegge yee 2051
 "Of baal the god¹ and of his seruantes alle ; 2052
 But noo-thing to purpos is¹ that 3e conclude. ¹ MS. if
 Oure scripture reherseth thei dede hym) soo calle,
 Tho same prophetes, of his simylytude.

and Sons of God.
We distinguish between nature and adoption.

The folk thus cald Gods are with God, see His face, and are Sons by adoption.

As to Baal, the Scripture only says that false prophets cald him God,

2024 is he 2029 folowith 2036 chose in, rith 2037 But . a
 2040 chosyn . comth 2041 bregge 2042 to om. 2049 are 2052
 þat god ; prophete om. 2053 is

Bk. IV. Ch. 38. Reede better þat book of tho dyuynours rude, 2056
 and that they ffor there shal 3e fynde that thei damned were
 for it. ffor heer fals beleue, alle þat were there." 2058

Bk. IV. Ch. 39.

Cam. 39m.1

1 MS. 38m. = Rawl. 32m.

Alfragan
confesses that
Katharine

The maister avysed hym and than cryed loude: 2059
 "Thys mayde wil ouere-leede us, sirs, we are caught

In oure artes, be we neuere so proude;

A newe maistresse sekerly haue we laught,

has benten
him.

Alle oure lernynge as now awayleth naught. 2063

He gives up.

Therefore I sey, as for me, I 3eue it vp,

This lady hath drunken of an hyer cup, 2065

"Of preuyere secretis¹ þan euere we coude fynde; 2066

She passeth plato, she passeth philosophie,

1 r. secretes

She speketh of hym þat auctour is of kynde.

That she seyth, I wote weel is noo lye.

Wherfore of herte entierly thus I crye:

2070

He turns to
her Faith,

I can noo more, I wil turne to hyr feyth

And leue myn olde, what¹ ony man seyth.

1 Ar. 20 what so

"Ye shul doo soo eke be myn consent.

2073

and acknow-
ledges One
God, and Him
alone.

ffor oo god I knowleche and noon but hym allone—

Though I seyde nowht, euere haue I soo ment.

lete vs submytte vs therfore to hys trone!

I am conuerted, I sey, for my persone,

2077

I shal neuere berke ageyn that deyte.

In this mater, sirs, what sey 3ee?"

2079

All the others
do so too.

Thei cryed alle concoursly¹ with oo voys

1 MS. comoursly

That thei consenten to his conclusyon,

Oo god confesse thei whiche þei calle noys;

What he commaundeth, of nede it muste be doon.

But 3et her conseytis wil thei vtter soon

2084

Of other thyngis longynge to this crede.—

To telle the rumour, I trowe it is noo nede,

2086

2056 dyuynouris 2060 seris. caut 2062 laut 2063 naut 2065
 drunke. a. cupp 2066 secretes 2068 autor 2070 enterly 2072
 elde 2073 my 2079 seres 2081 consent 2084 uttyr soun

Whiche in the puple is encreased this tyde.	2087	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 39.</i>
"Allas!" þei sey, "what lif haue þei ledde,		The people
Oure grete clerkis whiche arn knowe soo wyde?		rail at the
It were as good thei had loyn ¹ in bedde,	¹ <i>al. loy</i>	Philosophers.
Whan thei teche thyng whiche must be fledde,	2091	
Whiche thyng is holde but for vanyte."		
The lordes eke there after her degree	2093	The Lords
Disputed þis mater, and bete it up and doune;	2094	
"Noo god but oon?" þei seyde, "thanne what is ¹ saturen?"		
Eche to other ful preuely thus dede rowne:	¹ <i>al. what is thanne</i>	
"ffro these maumentis good is that we turne;		
lete vs despyse hem and with oure feet hem spurne,	2098	propose to
ffor this falshed haue we folwed to longe"—	¹ <i>al. thanne there</i>	spurn their
This was the noyse there thanne ¹ hem amonge.	2100	idols.
The emperour looketh, but I trowe he is wrooth;	2101	The Emperor
"ffy on feynte harlottis that thus ren[e]yeth oure lawe!"		is angry
Thus seyde he þanne, he thought his lyf ful looth;		
That ony mayden clerkis shulde thus drawe,		that a Maiden
That she shuld be wysehere ¹ in hir saughe,	¹ = <i>wysere</i>	beats his wise
This greueth hym sore. but 3et in his greuauns	2105	men.
Stood vp a clerk whiche with his dalyauns	2107	
Seyde he wolde proue be reson naturall	2108	One Philoso-
That moche thyng touched was ful ontrewre;		pher under-
Oo persone eterne an[d] eke mortall,	¹ <i>MS. is</i>	takes to prove
This doctryne, he seyde, [was] ¹ come on [þe] ² newe.		Katharine's
But the same resons that other dede sewe	² <i>MS. on-to vs, on eras.</i>	doctrine false.
Reherseth my[n] auctour, as he dooth ful ofte.		I leave that
I suffer tho leuys to ly[e]n stille ful softe,	2114	out,
lete other men here hem that loue nugacyon);	2115	
ffor other many materis must come on hande.		
I wil reherse first the grete disputacyon		and pass over
In whiche that þis lady feythfully gan stande		to Ariot's
		dispute.

2088 hafe 2089 are 2090 loy 2092 for a 2094 beet 2095 what
is þan 2100 þan þere 2102 reneyth 2104 schul 2105 wysere.
sawe 2108 naturale 2109 mych 2110 & . mortale 2111 was
come on þe newe 2112 resones 2113 myn 2114 lye 2116 most

Bk. IV. Ch. 39. With maister Aryot, thorgh-oute that lande 2119
 Most famous man noysed in þat tyme ;
 Of þis mater wil we now ryme. 2121

*Bk. IV. Ch. 40.*Cam. 40^{m.1}¹ MS. 39^{m.} = Rawl. 33^{m.}

Aryot
 disputes with
 Katharine.

This Aryot was chose be comon assent 2122
 To dispute with hir, to looke if þat he may

Destroyen hir feith and alle hir fundament ;
 On hym haue thei put now al this affray.
 Now shal be seene hoo shal haue the day ; 2126
 If he be conuycte, thei wil ȝelde hem alle,
 If he be victour, than wil the reuers falle— 2128

ffor victouris be thei thanne be his conquest. 2129

he stood vp ful solemnely with ful sober chere,
 Commendynge the lady as he though[t] best ;
 Thanne seyde he to hir in this manere :
 " Many thyngis haue ben rehersed heere, 2133

I herd aȝ, and ȝet I helde me in¹ pees. ¹ *al. my*

But now is the mater soo sette, dovteles, 2135

" It is put in vs too al þis thyng to treete. 2136

Oure lord god sende us good speede !

If he converts
 her,

If it soo be-falle þat I, with argumentis grete
 Or ellis with auctoryte, þat I may ȝow leede
 ffrom alle ȝoure feyth and fro ȝoure fekel creede, 2140

he wins.

Than haue we wonne ; and if that ȝe lede me,
 Thanne haue we doo, for victour¹ are ȝe." ¹ *r. v. þan* 2142

He first
 objects to
 Christ's two
 natures.

His first question, as I vnderstande, 2143

But this
 we've before
 treated.

Was of too natures whiche we in cryst reede ;
 Whiche mater be-forn hath ben in hande, ¹ *MS. it is ; it overl.*
 And for that cause me thenketh it¹ noo neede

With swiche prolixite oure book ferthere to leede. 2147

Turne, and rede ȝe that [wyll]¹ it renewe. ¹ *MS. and*

An other mater this philosophre gan pursue, 2149

2124 dystroy 2125 hafe 2126 who 2130 ful 2 om. 2131 hym
 thowt 2133 hafe be 2134 my pees 2135 þis. m. þus 2138 it om.
 2141 wune 2142 uictoure poo 2145 before haue be 2146 is om.
 2148 þat wyll it r. 2149 pursewe

- Of cristis incarnacion), hough that it myght be, 2150 *Bk. IV. Ch. 40.*
 And hough he in bethleem thus born) was. *Aryot then doubts Christ's Incarnation.*
 Eke al this mater, as thenketh me,
 A-forn) in his werk þis man dede it tras;
 Wherfore fro alle these þus shortly I pas, 2154 *This too we've dealt with before.*
 Supposynge that þis same prolyxite
 Wolde make men) very of reedyng to be. 2156
 Yet a-nother mater touched he to the mayde : 2157
 Of oure ladyes clenness in hir concepcion
 he had ful grete meruayle, as he sayde ; *He also objects to Mary's purity,*
 Sith the synne of Adam in his progressyon
 Was ȝoue to mannys flessch as possessyon), 2161
 hough myght she haue clenness [&]¹ maydenhed 1 MS. in *as she was of Adam's corruption.*
 Whan she cam of that corrupte seed ? 2163

Cam. 41^{m.1}1 MS. 40^{m.} *Bk. IV. Ch. 41.*

- T**he mayde answerde right thus to his tale : 2164 *Katharine*
 “Thyng that is foule, oure lord may make clene,
 he is very medicyn) ageyn) al oure bale.
 his wondyrful werkis are harde for to seene,
 But be exaumples we may proue, I wene, 2168
 That this coniunceyon) of mayden) and of man)
 With-uten ony synne þis lord thus be-gan). 2170
 “ffro the seed first of al mankende, 2171 *says that God preservd Mary from hereditary corruption.*
 That was soo corrupte, he preserued this mayde—
 It had ellis ful moche been) ageyn kynde,
 But if hir soule had ben) arayde
 With vertues grete and no-thing a frayde 2175
 With no vice of synne or vyllonye—
 Thus dede this lord þat sitteth soo hye. 2177
 “fferthermore, whan) he cam to þat herburgage, 2178
 his comynge was liche the sonne shynynge bryght ;

2150 who 2154 for 2156 wolde 2162 whoo. & m. 2164 no
 new chapt. 2168 ensaumples 2169 mayde 2170 with-oute 2171
 man-kynde 2173 be 2174 be 2176 velenye 2177 þus hye 2179
 sune. brythe

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 41.</i>	lyche to the glas I lykne that maydenes kage,	
Mary's womb was like glass,	The sonne shyneth ther-on with bemes lyght	
	And thurght it gooth, as we see in sight,	2182
	Yet is the glas persed in noo manere—	
and God past through it like light.	Soo ferde that lord, whan he cam down heere.	2184
	“Thus was she clene in hir concepeyon),	2185
	Thus hath she receyued the godhed of blis,	
She was pure in Christ's incarnation.	Yet was she clenner in his incarnacyon) ¹ —	¹ <i>al.</i> carnacion
	Of whiche clennesses shal she not ¹ mys.	¹ <i>al.</i> neuer
	This muste 3e beleue, sir, if 3e wil ben his,	2189
	Than shul 3e knowe þat 3e neuere knewe—	
	In my behestes 3e found me neuere ontrue.”	2191

*Bk. IV. Ch. 42.*Ca^m. 42^{m.1}¹ = Rawl. 34.

	A Nother questyon meued this man that tyme,	2192
	Replyenge sore ageyn hir declaracyon).	
	It is ful hard swiche þingis for to ryme,	
	To vtter pleyntly in langage of oure nacyon)	
	Swiche straunge doutes þat longe to the incarnacion),	2196
	But that myn auctour took swiche þing on hande,	
	And yet his langage vnnethe I vnderstande ;	2198
	Wherefore with other auctours I enforce hym thus,	2199
	Whiche spoke more pregauntly as in this matere.	
Aryot objects	ffor ageyn the birthe of oure lord Ihesus	
	And his concepeyon argued tho this sere.	
	“3oure oppynyon set 3e alle in mere,”	2203
	This ¹ seyde this man on-to this lady mylde,	¹ <i>al.</i> Thus
	“ffor ye rehers hough that god and chylde,	2205
that Christ's union of God with Man	“Bothe to-gedyr coupled in oon persone,	2206
	Was 3oure ihesu, and eke 3e thus confesse	
	That this myracle dede he not allone,	
	But it was doo be alle thre, I gesse—	
	This is 3oure feyth, to this 3e you professe—	2210

2182 thorow . 2187 carnacion¹ 2189 sere . be . 2191 vntrewe
 2193 Replynge 2204 Thus 2205 who 2206 oo

That be the fadir, the goost, and eke þe sone *Bk. IV. Ch. 42.*
Wrought was thus this incarnacyone. 2212 was wrought
by all three
Persons of
the Trinity.

Whi shal we not thanne of þoure woordis conclude 2213

That fadir, and sone, and hoolygoost in-feere,

Sith that thei been alle of oo symilitude,

That eche of hem flesh and blood took heere?

Thre sundry men þan arn thei, with-oute[n] dwere, 2217

So they all
took flesh,
and were 3
distinct men,
yet 1 God.

And eke oo god—hough acordeth this tale?

Al a wrong, me thenketh, wriheth the male. 2219

“ffor ȝe sey eke þat but oon was incarnat, 2220

Oon and no mo, and that was ihesu, ȝour lord;

Therto the fadir put ȝe in that astat

That he dede this—hough may this accord?

How can this
be?

Sith that he wrought this of ȝoure owne record, 2224

Thanne was he Ioyned on-to that same werk—

That it¹ thus folweth, perceyu[eth]² euery clerk.” 2226

¹ MS. it is ² MS. perceyuyng

Cam. 43m.1

¹ MS. 42m.

Bk. IV. Ch. 43.

This motyf preysed the queen wit[h] the beste, 2227

She seyde on-to hym: “sir, ȝe lakke no ping

Katharine
praises Aryot
for his skill;

That longeth of vertu to ȝoure soules reste

But feyth alone; I prey that heuenly kyng

That he may touche yow with som preuy merkyng, 2231

That ye may knowe whiche is the very truthe;

But if ye dede, it were ellis grete ruthe. 2233

“As moche as nature may, she hath ȝou taught, 2234

She coude noo ferthere in hir weye procede;

But the wisdam of god, þat¹ may naught ¹ r. yt?

but he lacks
God's
wisdom.

Be caught be nature, leue this as youre creede.

Yet as I can, I wil ȝow mekely leede 2238

On-to oure scole, and telle of this matere

The exposycion, if ȝe wil it leere. 2240

2211 sune 2215 be 2217 are . wyth-uten 2218 whoo 2219
wrythith 2223 did, whoo 2225 to om. 2226 þat it þus folowyth
perceyueth euery clerke. 2227 no new chapt. wyth 2228 sere
2230 heyn 2232 he 2235 coude om. farder 2237 Be cause of
n. lerne

Bk. IV. Ch. 43.

God the
Father has
power;
the Son,
wisdom;

the Holy
Ghost, good-
ness.

To the Son
the Incarna-
tion was due;

the message
and provi-
dence, to the
Trinity in
one God.

3 Princes
fetcht David
water from
Bethlehem,

but only one
bare it.

"Thus seyn) oure bookis: on-to the faderis astat 2241

Longeth powere, with whom¹ he gouerne² may alle,
And to the sone longeth this appropriat ¹ Ar. whech ² om. in Ar.
Whiche we calle wysdam)—the world, round as a balle,
And heuene eke, whiche may not falle, 2245
Were made in hym; to the goost longeth goodnesse—
This is oure scole, wyth-oute[n] more or lesse. 2247

"Thanne folweth thus that, sith the fadir alle thyng 2248
Made in this wysdam, it was ful conuenient
That be that same [pat]¹ grete refoormyng ¹ erased, or þe?
Of al mankende, whiche with synne was shent,
Shuld be redressed. loo, this is her entent 2252

That proue¹ be feyth and demonstracion) ¹ MS. pr. we, we overl.
That mooste to the sone perteyneth þis incarnacion), 2254

"As in praktyk; but the soonde and the prouydens,
As the menes of mercy whiche were tho I-doo,
Tho longe to the trynyte, oo god in existens,
Thre persones,¹ oure god we descryue hym) soo. ¹ al. in p.
Exaample, sir, may we putte ther-too, 2259
As putte oure clerkis in her bookis wyse,
Whiche write there in this maner of [w]yse¹: ¹ MS. gyse

"'David,' thei seyn), 'whanne he thristed sore, [On the
he desyred to drynke of that fresh welle margin:
Whiche stood in bethleem where he was bore: þe secunde
he sente thre pryncys, the sothe for to telle, book of
Thurgh al the oost of philestees¹ soo felle, ¹ MS. þe ph. 2266 kyngis, 23
Thei brought this watir wyth pereH on-to þe kyng, chapetre]
On of hem in a basenet bar this þing.' 2268

"Alle had thei labour egal, as I wene, 2269
And yet oon) bar the veseH, and noo mo.

2241 on om. 2242 powere wheche we beleun) alle 2243 þus
a parte 2244 callen wisdom 2245 eke also 2247 wyth-uten
2248 sith om. 2249 his w. 2250 pat om. 2251 mankynde 2253
prouyth be f. & be 2254 þe inc. 2256 þer doo 2257 longen 2258
in p. . oure god om. hem 2260 putten . wysse 2261 Wheche
wretyn wyth ful good avysse 2262 hē seyd 2263 desyred sore.
fresh om. 2265 the om. 2266 hoost. þe om. philestis 2267
parelle. on om. 2268 basnet 2270 vesselle

This same figure oure clerk's thus remene, ¹	¹ = interpret (Wycliffe).	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 43.</i>
That, though the fadyr and the goost bothe-too		The Father and Holy Ghost pland the Incarna- tion, Jesus carried it out.
Wrought this thyng and ordeyned it shulde be soo,	2273	
Yet was the byrdene on oure lord allone,		
Ihesu I mene, the sone, the secunde persone.	2275	

Ca^m. 44^m. 1

¹ = Rawl. 35.

Bk. IV. Ch. 44.

A fter this had thei ful grete communycacyon)	2276	Katharine and Aryot discuss Adam's sin ;
Of the synne of Adam and of the serpent,		
Enterfered with speches ; but this dilatacyon,		
As me thynketh, longeth not to this lyf present,		but that I'll leave out.
It occupieth ny al the newe testament,	2280	
That men myght plod in her, ¹ if þat hem lyst.	¹ MS. hir	
Wherfore myn entent I wolde that 3e wyst :	2282	

I loue no longe tale, eueure hangynge in oon).	2283	I don't like a long tale !
Wherfore as of this book I wil make an ende		
Right in this Chapetre—me thenketh it longe a-noon)		I'll end this 4th Book.
Sith that I be-gan this book for to bende		
Oon-to youre eres and on-to youre mende.	2287	
Knoweth thys first, þat þis noble queen)		
hath concluded these mayster's thus be-dene,	2289	

And in especyal Aryot ; for al that he cowde repleye		
Avayleth as nought, his witte is but boost,		Aryot is at his wits' end.
he stant al ¹ mased, no-thyng now hardye	¹ orig. as	
To speken oon woord. thus can ¹ the goode goost	¹ = gan	
Gadere to hym alle thys wyse oost	2294	
And make[n] hem to trowe as the mayde[n] taught ;		
ffor al her philosophie thus arn thei caught.	2296	He is caught.

ffor after thei had spoken of the filiacion)	2297
of crist, oure lord, whether there be too or oon),	
And eke of the hooly goost and his procession—	

2273 ordeyn 2274 bordeyn in 2278 this om. delectacion) 2276
this om. 2281 þat myth it here if. 2285 this om. 2286 Sithen I
2288 weel inst. of thys 2290 speciall al om. 2291 It av. 2292
standith a-masid, & noþing. now om. 2293 spekyn o 2294 hoost
2295 makyn. mayden 2296 are 2297 spokyn 2298 þer were
2299 of om. wyth inst. of and

Bk. IV. Ch. 44. Where that this lady fayled answer¹ noon), ¹ MS. answered
 Aryot confesses This same Aryot stood stille as ony ston); 2301
 ffor the hooly trynyste she proued hym be kynde,
 he cowde¹ fro the resons no weye fynde. ¹ Ar. 168 c. not. 2303
 On-to his felawes thus ful loude he sayde : 2304
 that he and his fellows are wrong; " We haue gon) wrong euere on)-to this day ;
 Blissed be god and this holy mayde
 That to us hath taught a truere way !
 Sey 3e as ye like, I can) no3t sey nay ; 2308
 he now be- lieves in God the Father, Son, and ffor on oo god I beleue whiche is in blis,
 I beleue on) Ihesu eke whiche is sone his,¹ ¹ az. his s. is 2310
 Holy Ghost, " I leue in the goost, knettere of hem too ; 2311
 I leue that pis Ihesu deyed for my sake,
 Thus were oure synnes be hym clensed soo.
 and commits his soul to Christ. On-to his handis my soule I be-take,
 Preyng hym hertely that fro 3e feendis blake 2315
 he now defende me, 3at I no3t damned bee.
 This is my crede ; felawes, what sey 3ee?" 2317
 His fellows do so too, Thei answerden) alle 3at thei had now founde 2318
 Thyng 3at thei [had] sought¹ alle her lif-dayes ;
 This wil thei kepen now as a true grounde, ¹ MS. soughten
 ffor thei haue walked many perillous wayes,
 With veyne argumentis iangelynge [euer] as Iayes ; 2322
 and turn to Christ. Now wil thei leue it and to crist hem turne,
 With Aristotil or plato wil thei no more soiurne, 2324
 But put hem in the mercy of oure lord Ihesu, 2325
 Preyenge this mayde that she be her¹ mene ¹ MS. hir
 To purchase hem pardon) of her feith ontrew,
 That thei so longe shulde it sustene ;
 Thei felle on knees, the[se] clerkis alle be-deene, 2329

2300 lady om. answer was non. 2301 a stone. 2305 into
 2307 haue. trew 2308 leke 2309 on om. 2310 I leue. his sone is
 2311 And I l. on. knyte 2315 prayng. hertily 2318 answerd
 2319 3at om. had south 2320 kepyn. now om. 2321 had. per-
 lous 2322 euer as Iay3es 2323 leuyn. hem om. 2324 Ar. nen
 Ovide 2326 her om. 2327 hem om. 2328 susteyne 2329 fellen.
 pese

Cryenge loude with grete deuocyon):

Bk. IV. Ch. 44.

"O¹ Ihesu cryst, for thy swete passyon" ¹ MS. On 2331

The converted pagan Philosophers pray for Christ's forgiveness.

"Haue mercy up-on us, forgeue vs oure trespas!" 2332

Demene vs [not],¹ lord, after oure mysdede! ¹ MS. Deme ne vs, on eras.

As þou art pytous,² soo þou graunte us gras, ² MS. pytousful

Of thi protectyon) haue we ful grete neede. 2335

We wil do oure diligens for to lerne [our]¹ crede, ¹ corr.: this

To meynten) it and susteyn) with al oure myght;

There shal neuere man) brynge us in other plight." 2338

[1 vv. 2339—2345 follow in MS. Ar. 20 after V, 329.]

¹ Thus are thei conuerted; this conflicte is I-doo; 2339

Oure book is at an ende, a newe we wil be-gynne—

Book IV is finisht.

It is ful conuenient that we shul[d] do soo.

God and seynt Kataryne kepe us oute of synne,

We'll start Book V.

Sende us the weyes heuene-blisse to wynne, 2343

Where we may dwelle and looke[n] on his face, ¹ *al. men*

Whiche gladeth alle creatur's¹ that been) in þat place! 2345

Liber quintus

Bk. V. Prol.

Prologus.

[vv. 1—63 are wanting in Ar. 20.]

NOW is it come, oure leyser and oure space,
In whiche we may, after oure grete labour

1 Now we'll turn

Of other maters, now, whil we haue grace,

Turne ageyn) and taaste the swete sauour

Of this clene virgyne, of this weel sauoured flour,

5 to the sweet savour of the pure Virgin Katharine.

Whiche with fyue braunches grew thus here in erthe.

The firste, the secounde, the thredde, and¹ the feerde 7

¹ Ar. & eke

haue 3e perceyuēd, if 3e haue red alle; 8

Now shal the fyfte be shewed on-to 3oure sight.

ffor now we¹ lyste this lady a rose to calle, ¹ *al. me*

Of fyue braunches ful precyously I-dyght.

The rede colour, that shon in hir so bryght, 12

2330 Cryenge long . ful grete 2331 O 2333 Deme us not 2334
petous (ful om.) . soo þou om. of þi g. 2336 don . 3oure c. 2338
bryngen 2339 counselle 2341 shuld 2343 And send . þe hey
weyes 2344 dwellyn . lokyn . þat face 2345 alle men 1 it om.
3 materis . whil om. 6 erde 7 thrid . ferde 9 vnto 10 me lyst

<i>Bk. V. Prol.</i>	That was hir martirdam; the fyue leues grene	
We shall now tell of Katharine's martyrdom.	Be-tokne hir lyf, thus distincte, I wene,	14
	In diuers bookis, liche as we haue dyuysed	15
	Be-fore this tyme, and now this is the last.	
	These fyue leues, right thus are þei sysed	
	That on the stalk thei cleue[n] wonder fast,	
	The reed flowres kepe thei fro the blast	19
	Er thei hem-selue dilate ¹ thus a-brood,	¹ r. dilaten
	And after that thei make than her a-bood	21
	Euene vndir tho same swete reed floures;	22
	Be-tokenynge that al hir lyf was spred	
	With martirdam and wyth tho sharp shoures	
	Whiche she for crist bothe suffred and ded.	
	ffor in diuers bookis as I ofte haue red,	26
Martyrdom is the greatest of all virtues.	Martirdam hath a souereyn dygnyte,	
	A-boue alle vertues whyche that goostly bee.	28
	Thus grew this rose oute of the thorny brere	29
	Whan that this martir of hethen folk was bore.	
	I wil declare 3et ferther, if ye wil here,	
	Whi that these leues that cleue so sore,	
	Thre of hem arn berded, and no more,	33
	And too stande naked with-oute[n] dagge or ber ^t —	
	Thus arn thei wonet ¹ to growe[n] in oure 3erd.	¹ r. wone 35
	These fyue leues, as I seyde wol late,	36
	Be-tokne these bookis whyche we haue in hande;	
Our first 2 Books	Too of hem expresse the tyme and the date	
	In whiche this lady, as I vndirstande,	
spoke of Katharine's heathen life.	leued as hethen, as dede tho al hir lande—	40
	Therefore are thei naked in her kynde,	
	Expressynge thus this ladyes leuyng blynde.	42

15 like 16 Before 18 cleue[n] 20 Or . þus lateth hem 21 here
þan abode 22 þe. reed om. 23 Betokynyth. al om. 24 tho om.
25 she om. . suffered 26 haue oftyn 27 suffereyn 30 folk om.
31 ferther om. 32 þeis. that om. cleuyn 33 are 34 wyth-uten
35 are . wont . growen 36 wolate 37 Betokenes . hauen 40 and
so dede al

Blynd I calle hir whil she was in that lyf,	43	<i>Bk. V. Prot.</i>
Knewe not crist, baptem had noon I-take,		
Of heuenly thyngis litel inquisityf		
hir olde oppynyons had she noȝt forsake.		
fro this blyndenesse cryst made hir a-wake,	47	
In oure thredde book ryght as we seyde before—		Our last 3 Books deal
It nedeth not as now reherce it no more.	49	

The other thre with berd ^{is} are soo I-growe	50	
That leues of vertu we may hem alle calle ;		
To al the world openly thus is it knowe		with Katharine's Christian graces.
That she hath graces whiche may not falle.		
Soo are her leues endewed, and euer shalle,	54	
Euere am ⁿ thei grene, and euere-more wil bee,		
Regnyng with crist in very felicyte.	56	

And in hir honour now I wil procede	57	
To my fyfte book, in whiche I wil speke		The 5th and last
Of hir martirdam, so as the story wil lede ;		
hough god the wheles for hir cause gan breke		
And on the puple tho took ¹ ful grete wreke : ¹ Ar. toke po	61	
This shal be translated now newe fro latyn,		I'll now english from Latin.
To the wurshyp of god and of seyn ⁿ Kataryn.	63	

Ca^m. 1^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 1.

W hanne the clerk ^{is} had mad thus her compleynt	64	
Of alle her errour and w ^l ong credulite,		
The emperour ^{is} herte for sorwe gan feynt.		The Emperor
ffor now is noon that dar spekyn but he—		
In al this mater conuicte is this mene.	68	
Wherfore with cheer ful angry and dispytous		looks angry.
Thus seyde he to hem as he stood in the hous :	70	

44 baptem ne had non. I om. 46 her elde 49 it rehers 51 men may . alle om. 52 it is 53 grace 55 are . shalle bee 58 myn 60 quelys . his c. dede 61 puple to full 62 Thus sh. it be translate. lateyne 64 þeis c. 65 crudelyte 66 to feynt 67 speke 68 þeis materis 69 ffor wyth angry chere & wordys full dispytous 70 in þat

<i>Ek. V. Ch. 1.</i>	“ffy on youre scoole! we had a ful gret trost	71
The Emperor says his converted Philosophers have deprived him of all bliss.	3e shuld a made weel al þat went amys: Alle oure expens, ¹ al oure counsel is lost, 3e haue reued me of al this wordly blis,— Not wordli, but goostly—for I seyde amys, It is goostly ioye that longeth on-to oure feyth. heere 3e noȝt now what the puple seyth?	 1 MS. expensens 75 77
	“Thei seyn), a mayde hath conuicte in this place fifty clerkis, in this world noon) liehe; Thei sey thei wil the same feyth purchase; Thus sey thei alle, bothe þe pore and þe ryche. God wolde ¹ ye hadde be beryed in a dyche Whanne 3e cam) heder! for now al is lost, Labour and connyng, rydyng and mekel cost.	78 82 84
His folk will turn Christians.		
Let them take heart again,	“[Lete] ¹ now 3oure prudens make you a newe corage, That 3e lese not youre konnyng & 3our fame! þenke what I hight 3ou, wurshype & eke wage! Beth noȝt a-ferde, for þanne 3e lese your name, Left vp youre hertis, men), for very shame! Speke to pis woman), wyth reson) bere hir doun! Thanne are ye worthi in sciens to [b]ere ¹ þe crown).	 1 MS. ffette 89 91
and argue down Katharine.		
	“3e stonde as herteles! where is 3our connyng, 3e That ben) astoynd with nature femynyne? Be hooly saturne, I wolde a supposed soo That oon of 3ou, myghty had be for nyne! Ye fare[n] as though 3e were bounde with lyne; What answer wil 3e yeue of youre connyng, Whan that at nede it awayleth no-thinge?”	92 96 98
One of them ought to be worth 9 women.		

71 a om. 72 was amysse 73 expens. consayle 74 al om. 75
noth 76 & longith to 77 what þat þe 78 maydyn 80 wollyne
81 bothe om. 82 Wold god. byryed 84 coost 85 Lete 87 hyth.
eke om. 88 & 89 transposed 88 lesen 89 Lyft 91 bere 92
stand alle h. 95 myth a ben for sweche n. 96 faren. though om.
97 3euy 98 Whech (corr. from what). it om.

Ca^m. secundum.

Bk. V. Ch. 2.

- T**he grettest of hem, maister and ledere eke, 99
 This same Ariot of whiche I spak before, Aryot tells the Emperour
 To the emperour thus he gan to speke :
 "On-to thi court come we, lesse and more,
 Thi goddis seruyse to renewe and restore ; 103
 And as I wene, of alle the est-syde
 Of al this world, to seke ferre and wyde, 105
 "Shulde þou not fynde soo pyked a company 106 that tho' the Philosophers knew Arts,
 In gramer, rethorike, and tho artes alle ;
 But specially in natural philosophi
 Are we endewed. but to þe¹ sciens whiche þei calle ¹ al. om.
 Theologye, [to þat] cowde we noȝt falle, 110 they didn't know Theology till Katharine taught 'em it.
 Tyl that þis lady made vs an Introduccyon)—
 Euere blessed be she for hir instruccyon! 112
 "What-maner man þat wolde er this tyme 113
 Dispute with vs be reson) or be auctoryte,
 his demonstracyons coude vs not trappe ne lyme,
 But he w[as]¹ caughte for al his sotilte ; ¹ MS. were
 he passed not from vs wyth-oute a vylone— 117
 This was oure vsage¹ right thanne for victorie, ¹ al. wage
 Soo loued we tho this wordlys veynglorye. 119
 "Now it is turned, oure fortune & oure chauns, 120
 Oure appetite eke, I not hough it is went ;
 This mayde[n] maketh that we falle in trauns,
 Oure connyng now it semeth þat it is spent ;
 She speketh of god whiche was hangen) & rent, 124 She speaks of God on the Cross.
 A goostly speche hath she brought to place, ¹ MS. in maner
 Natural scyens hath in [þis] ma[t]er¹ noo space. 126

99 maister om. 101 On-to 103 ȝefe inst. of renewe 106
 Shuldist, þou om. sweche a pykyd 108 speciall 109 þe om. 110.
 Th. to þat coud we. 111 bryngyth us to induction 112 hir good
 113 or 114 & auctorite 115 neythere t. 116 was caute. sotelte
 117 passed. fro. velanye 119 tho om. þese wordes of v. 121 wote
 neuer how 122 mayden 124 wheche þat 125 And inst. of A 126
 in þis matere

Bk. V. Ch. 2.

Aryot

"Therefore can we as in this soleynte 127

Speke right nought; but resons maketh she grete,

hir prechyng passeth al oure carnalite;

ffor whan I firste thus mystyly herde hir trete,

In my body myne bowayles¹ sore gonne bete, 131

ffor very rebuke that I hir langage ^{1 al. my bowels}

Coude not conceyue. wherfore, sir, al *your* wage 133

refuses the
Emperor's
fees,

"And youre rewardis whiche ye profered vs, 134

We refuse it; *your* goddis and *your* lawe

renounces his
faith,

We renunce, for the loue of oure lord *Ihesus*.

Shewe *ze* som reson openly that we may knawe

If *pat* *your* goddis wyth the¹ rough pauwe ^{1 al. her} 138

haue other euydens *pan* we¹ can proue *pis* tyde! ^{1 al. *ze*}

ffor in this errour we wil noo lengere a-byde. 140

and confesses
Christ.

"Cryst, goddis sone, that with his passion 141

Boughte al mankende, heere we now confesse;

On-to his mercy with good deuocyon

We now commende vs, the more and eke the lesse.

Slee and flee, brenne & put in distresse: 145

Other feyth shalt *þou* neuere-more plante

In to oure hertis; for noo thyng now we wante 147

"But of baptem the hooly sacrament. 148

God, as he boute vs, on vs haue mercy!"

Thus seyde his felawes alle wyth oon entent:

"There is noo god but he *pat* sit on hy;

On alle these maumentis euere sey we fy! 152

We wil deye rathere *pan* we shulde forsake

The cristen feyth whiche we haue now take." 154

All the philo-
sophers will
die rather
than give up
the Christian
faith.

Bk. V. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

¹ overl.; om. in Ar.

Now was the emperour ny wod and¹ oute of mynde,
his eyne rolled as thei wolde falle oute. 156

127 solennyte 128 make 130 mystly 131 my bowelles . gunc
134 Alle 135 refusen. it om. 137 pleyntyly 138 here rowe pawe
139 *pat* inst. of *pan* . *ze* . preue 141 hys blyssyd p. 142 kynde
143 ryght wyth 146 schall . neuer in oure hert plant(!) 147 hert
150 seyden 151 syttyth 153 schuld dey 155 wax

"ffy on you," he seyde, "cherles kynde, Bk. V. Ch. 3.
 Now is oure feyth for 3ou in more¹ doute ¹ al. more in The Emperor
 Than euere it was." and to hem that stood aboute 159
 he tho commaunded in ful hasty wyse : orders
 "I wil," he seith, "her deth 3e thus denyse : 161
 "A fyre I wil pat 3e now hastily make 162 a fyre to be
made in the
city,
 Right in the myddes of this grete Cytee ;
 Spare no wode, for hooly saturnes sake,
 Spede you faste, these renegates pat we may see
 frye in her grees ! for be pat deyte 166
 Of swete appollo, I shal not ete ne drynke
 Til that I se hem bothe brenne and stynke. 168
 "Put in roseyn, pych and other gere, 169
 Spare noo cost, for in this doo ye seruyse
 On-to oure goddis with-outen ony feere.
 Thus shal thei deyen that oure goddis despise ;
 I shal be there my-self as very¹ Iustise ¹ al. om. 173 to burn the
Christian
converts.
 And see this Iugement be¹ doon in dede. ¹ Ar. Iewesse that it be
 Whan 3e haue ended,² ye shul haue 3our mede. ² al. don 175
 "I wil 3e bynde hem bothe in foote and hande, 176
 Drawe hem foorth as doggis on-to the place,
 Looke youre ropys be myghty, and 3our bande,
 Spare neyther bodyes, heedis ne her face ! ¹ om. in Ar.
 God geue hem¹ alle swiche a sory velenous grace, 180
 That thus forsake oure goddis pat ben eterne !
 Looke noon of hem scape¹ 3ou in noon herne ! ¹ r. ascap ? 182
 "Thei shal be dede right as I haue sayde, 183
 Brent in to asshes—they gete noo remedye.
 lete hem crye now on-to¹ this wilful mayde ¹ al. on
 Whiche hath brought hem in to this heresie. Let them cry
to Katharine!

157 charles vnkynde 158 more in 159 and om. stonden 161
 he seith om. her d. pat 3e pus. 162 now om. hastily 163 of be
 164 saturne 165 pat renegatys pat 3e see 166 frye hem. grece 169
 rosyn¹ 172 schul. dey 173 very om. 174 se pese lwes don 175
 haue done. schall h. . ryght goode m. 176 in om. 178 3oure ropes
 loke bei 179 body. nyne (inst. of ne) 180 3efe. velenous om. 181
 be 182 hyrne 183 be brent d. 184 askes 185 to om. 186 pat h.

344 *The Christians rejoyce in their Death-sentence.* [MS. Arundel.]

Bk. V. Ch. 3. I wil no woordis as now more¹ multiplye, ¹ *al. om.* 187
 Goo now foorth in hast and doo your dede!
 Whan it is doon, 3e shul haue 3oure mede." 189

Bk. V. Ch. 4.

Ca^m. 4^m.

The Chris-
 tians do not
 contest their
 doom.

Thus are thei drawe¹ with grete velonye ¹ *r. drawn?* 190
 On-to her doom; thei wrestlen nought ageyn.
 Men myght see theree many a wepyng y3e,
 But for feer no man now dar¹ seyñ; ¹ *r. dar no3t?*
 Glad are these meny alle of her peyn. 194
 The mayster of hem, thus he cryed at þat tyme:
 "God be thanked, that for noo synne ne cryme 196
 "Be we appeched, but onoly for trewe feyth! 197

They thank
 God that they
 are going to
 Bliss.

Therefore, felawes in crist, 3our-selue confort;
 What-euere þis tyraunt or ony of his seyth,
 Thanke oure lord, for we are in the port
 Whiche þat ledeth to þe¹ blessed counfort ¹ *al. þat* 201
 Where alle seyntis arñ gadered right be grace,
 In an heuenly Ioyeful blissed place. 203

They desire
 only to be
 baptised.

"Oure lord hath called vs fro oure olde errour 204
 On-to þis ende; thanke we hym therefore,
 Whiche to the beute of his fayre merroure
 Wolde of hys goodnesse newly us restore.
 In this world, as for me, I wil no more, 208
 But that we shulde be baptised or we deye:
 Than were we redy to walke th[at]¹ goodly weye. ¹ *MS. the*

"ffor þat same baptem is an hooly werke, 211
 It causeth grace, feyth eke it endeweth;
 Be-twixe god and man it is a very merke,
 That who-soo-euere cristis steppis seweth,
 Al his lyuynge soothly he reneweth 215

187 more om. 189 treuly schall 3e 190 vylony 191 wrestyll
 not 192 eye 193 dare now 194 þeis meny. of very p. 195 at om.
 196 To god be it þat 199 tyraunt dothe or seyth 200 hys port 201
 l. vs to þat 202 are gadered to-gedyr be g. 206 on-to. fayre om.
 208 werde 209 ben 210 forto. þat goode 212 gr. & feyth & eke.
 it om. 213 Be-twys 214 crysten 215 leuyng

Whan that he wasshet[h] in this water his synne.

Bk. V. Ch. 4.

Oure lord hym-selue, he was wasshe ther-Inne, 217

“Right for this cause þat noo man shulde dysdeyne 218

To vse the same whiche þat this lord vsed.

Of my conseyte I wil noo more now feyne,

Aryot has

ffor in this mater ofte-tyme haue I mused ;

Many a ȝeer this sacrament I refused :

222 long refused
Baptism,

That I repente now, and euere I shal it rue

That I soo longe lyued a lyf on-true.

224

“Wherefor my care now is this oonly,

225

That sith we shal and nedes muste we deye,

Off alle oure synnes mercy for to cry,

Alle oure defautes vndir foote for¹ to leye,

¹ al. om.now he
desires it.

To trede hem doun ; thanne sauely may we seye

229

Th[at]¹ we arn purged and of hem alle made clene.

Thus muste ȝe trowe, felawes, alle be-dene.”

¹ MS. Thus[Rawl. Cam. 5^m]

And to the mayde he turned hym with his voys : 232

“lady,” he seyde, “for god that sitteth aboue,

He appeals to
Katharine

And for the passion that cryst had on the croys,

Prey for vs to hym—he¹ is thi loue !

¹ al. þat

Thou seest ful weel we may no lengere shoue

236

Oure leuyng dayes, for thei arn at an ende :

Prey that lord he wil his merci sende

238

“On-to his seruau^ts and spare vs at þis tyme,

239

Suffre vs eke that we may washed bee

With hooly baptem, that we may better clyme

to baptise
him and his
fellows.

On-to that place of grete felicite.

And if this preyere plesse not hym, but he

243

Wil algaates that we shal wante þis thyng,

We wold desire thanne of þat blyssed kyng

245

217 he om. wasched 222 a om. 223 rewe 224 leued. vntrewe
226 we 2 om. 228 And all. for om. 229 treden¹ 230 þat. are
hem om. 231 we beleuen¹ 232 onto. maydene 234 on crosse 235
þat is 236 seyst 237 lyuyng. are nye at ende 238 lord om. 239
hem inst. of vs 240 Suffryng eke 241 þe bettyre 242 On om.
245 of þis

Bk. V. Ch. 4. "he wolde with us make dispensacyon)— 246

But if God
will dispense
with their
Baptism,
ffor al¹ may he, he is omnyopotent, ^{1 at. al pis}
he loueth alle men), he loueth iche nacyon)
Egaly, 3e sey—this is oure fundament.
If he dispense with vs of this sacrament, 250
That for the wantyng we may bere no blame,
they'll die gladly. Than shal oure deth ben) to us but game." 252

Bk. V. Ch. 5. **Cam. 5m.**

Katharine
says **T**hanne seyde the mayde [on]-to hem alle in-fere : 253

"ffere you¹ right nought though 3e wante pis thyng!
Soo as I can) now wil I 3ow lere. ^{1 at. 3e}
Tho men) that deye for loue of cryst, oure kyng,
Whiche wante [of] baptem) þat hooly washyng, 257
Thei shul to blysse, for Aungell's shul hem cary ;
The feendes power noo-þing may hem tary. 259

"In stede of baptem) serueth her passyon), 260
Not oonly blood whiche thei for hym) blede,
But al other deth whyche with deuocyon)
Thus thei suffre on-to her grete mede.
leue this doctryne hardly as 3oure crede ! 264
The grete peyne whiche þat is dempt to 3ou,
Their suffer- ing is reckond as Baptism. In stede of baptem) shal it be as now. 266

"God may with feer¹ purge[n] mannes synne, 267
With water eke, right as hym lest demene ; ^{1 at. fyre (2 syll.)}
Somme men) arn) baptised heuene for to wyne
With that water whiche in þe fount is seene,
Somme arn) purged in her blood, I wene, 271
Thei deye as martirs, this is oure decree ;
They are purged by their blood. Somme men) arn) baptised eke, as leue¹ wee, ^{1 r. leuen} 273

247 all pis 248 euery n. 251 þan for wantyng may we 252 be
tyl 253 no new chapt. vntyll 254 3e 256 deye om. 257 wante
of 258 schall 260 hys p. 262 wheche þat he for hem dyd blede
263 suffred . hem 264 leue 3e wel p. d. trostly 265 þe wheche is
266 it om. 267 fyre purgen' 268 right om. lyst 269 are 270
fonte 271 wyth 272 deyn . marteres 273 men om. . are

"Right in her feyth, that stedfastly trost 274 *Bk. V. Ch. 5.*
 In goddis mercy and deyn) oute of synne—
 This calle oure cle[r]k's baptem) of the goost.
 Therefore, 3e knyghtis of crist, now be-gynne
 To cleyme 3oure herytage, þat 3e were ther-Inne; 278
 Beth not a-feerde, but suffre the peyne mekely,
 Than) are 3e baptised, troste me now, truly!" 280

Ca^m. 6^m.*Bk. V. Ch. 6.*

Whanne that thei were of this hooly mayde 281
 Thus recomforted, the officeris come anon);
 Thei bynde her handis, right euene as I sayde,
 Thei lede hem foorth, as fast as thei may goon),
 On-to a strete whiche was pathed with stoon). 285
 Weel is hym that may a fagot bere
 To brenne the clerkis! the emperour tho was there, 287
 Sette in a stage, for he wolde see the eende. 288
 The fyre is made, blokkis arn) leyde on hepe,
 fflagottis gonne they amongis the cloggis bende,
 There is not ellis but fette,¹ renne and lepe, ^{1 al. fече}
 Blowe now faste, the foweris shal not slepe. 292
 Thei bynde her feet and through¹ hem in the fere.
 But thei arn) glad, ful mery eke of chere, ^{1 al. throw} 294
 Thankynge god that al thyng made of nought, 295
 That thei may deye for swiche a lordis sake;
 Thei prey to hym), right as he hem bought
 her soules now fro hem þat he wil take.
 What shulde I now lengere this tale make? 299
 Thus are thei dede, her soules gon) to blis.
 Eke to her bodyes oure blessed lord graunted this: 301
 Skyn) ne flessch was noon) of hem brent, 302
 Ne hood ne cloth, ne her on) berd ne heed;

Martyrdom
is spiritual
Baptism.The Christian
Converts are
bound,the Fire is
made,they are cast
in it,and burnt to
death.

274-7 out of order (b c a d) 277 begune 281 weren 282 com-
 forted. offyceers comene 283 bondyn). euene om. 284 leden. as om.
 287 tho om. 289 are 290 gan. amonge 291 fече 292 shuld
 293 and om. þei throw 294 are. & full. eke om. 298 tyll hym
 now þat he wold 300 on inst. of gon 301 tyll 303 of berde ne of

Bk. V. Ch. 6.

Yet the fire
only kills
them,doesn't dis-
colour them.

Thei lay there ded with browes fayre I-bent,

With fayre faces coloured white and reed.

ffor right as fyre maketh þe rusty leed 306

Bryght and shene, so made the fyre these men); ¹ MS. henhoo knewe hem be-forn), yet he myght hem ¹ ken). 308

In her peynes men) seyde thei cryed thus : 309

“Blissed be god, þat we neuere knewe ere,

Blissed be crist, honoured be oure lord Ihesus!

ffor of [pis] torment haue we now noo fere.”

This was a scole merueylous to ¹ lere, ¹ al. meruelous forto 313

That thei in torment merthe and Ioye shulde make!

On-to god oonly her soules gunne thei take. 315

They are
martyrd on
Nov. 13,and lie as if
alive.

Thus deyed these men) in Nouembre þe xiiij. day. 316

After her deth, semyng not to be ded,

As slepyng men) in fayre coloure thei lay,

In handes, bodyes, ¹ legges eke and hed ¹ al. body

With colour fressh, lyuely and also red. 320

This ¹ þe puple sey ² and merueyled wonder sore; ¹ MS. ThusGod thei preyed for now and euere-more. ² al. sey þe p. 322Many are
converted by
this miracle.

ffor be this myracle conuerted was that day 323

Meche folkis ¹ to cryst, and for deuocyon ¹ al. folke

Bothe of the clerkis and eke of the may

Thei took the bodyes with solenne oryson),

Beried hem there in dyuers mansion), 327

Trostyng to spede the betere for her cause.

Thus endeth her martirdam right in this clause. ¹ 329[¹ Here fol-
lows in MS.
Ar. 20 the
last stanza of
Book IV, and
ends Book
IV. V. 380—
420 are want-
ing.]

Bk. V. Ch. 7.

Cam. 7m.

Tho sey the emperour there is noon) other spede 330
On-to this mayden) whiche is soo stedfast,

304 I om. 305 face. bothe whyght 306 ffor lyk as þe f. 307
makyth. pis mene 308 who so. before. yet om. myth ken hem
& see 312 of pis t. 313 for to 314 myrth 315 gan 316 pis mene
317 þei semed not to a be dede 319 body 320 louely 321 þis see
þe puple 322 for þan 324 miche folke 326 token 327 And beried
þem 328 the om. 330 opir botte

MS. Arundel.] *The Emperor tries to win Katharine's love.* 349

But fayre wordes, whiche drawe womanhede		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 7.</i>
And maketh hem often other thyng to tast		The Emperor
Thanne thei shulde doo if thei wolde be chast.	334	tries fair
Therefore this mayde[n] right thus tho he gloseth :		words to win
“ Kataryn,” he seyth, “ ther is no man) supposeth,	336	Katharine.
“ Not 3e 3oure-selue, þat I wolde but good	337	
On-to 3oure persone ; but this grete distresse		
To whiche I putte 3ou, spillynge as 3et noo blood,		
Was for to chace you fro þat fykelnesse		
Whiche 3e haue caught of fonned hoolynesse	341	
And lefte þe ryghtes þat oure ¹ olderis be-fore	¹ orig. 3oure	
Receyued and honoured as for souereyn) lore.	343	
“ This was the cause whi I distressed 3ow soo ;	344	
But loue haue I on-to 3ow, sekirly,		He declares
As to best of alle saue oon) and no moo.		he loves her,
[&] whi I doo soo if 3e wil wete why :		
Yowre beute it causeth, 3oure connyng eke, þat I	348	her beauty
loue 3ow so weel that, if 3e wil consent		and clever-
And thuryfye to Iubiter omnytpotent,	350	ness.
“ 3e shul haue honoure, no woman) shal be lich.	351	
O swete virgyne, enclyne 3our wil to me !		He prays her
O fayre visage of beute now most rich,		to love him.
O woman) wurthi to Imperial degree,		
O very merour of parfighte felicitye,	355	
Wolde god 3e knewe what care I haue for yow,		
And what behestes I made in myn) avow !	357	
“ Whi wolde 3e despise oure goddis immortal ?	358	
Whi wolde 3e calle hem soo villenous a name ?		Why will she
Why seyde 3e thei were feendes infernal ?		abuse his
Whi slaundre 3e soo her hooly endued fame ?		Gods ?

332 womanhoode 333 thingis 335 mayden 337 nothe 339
putte 3ou om. spellyng 3et as 340 chast. sekenes 341 Wheche þat
342 riches. elderes 344 whi þat 346 þe best 347 And why 348
& inst. of þat 349 lyke to consent 350 Iupiter þat is 351 shalle.
3ou liche 352 youre loue 354 most worthy of 355 merueyle 356
knewen 357 beheest I haue made 359 unemous 360 þat þei are
deneles. 361 hooly om.

350 *The Emperor tempts Katharine to be Pagan.* [MS. Arundel.

Bk. V. Ch. 7. ffor this blasphemē, I-wys, 3e be to blame— 362

Disceyours thei be of puple, as 3e sayde.

Chaunge 3oure langage, o noble goodly mayde, 364

The Emperor
urges Katharine to
propitiate his
Gods.

“Chaunge be-tyme! for though thei suffre longe, 365

At the last thei smyght and [taken hy veniaunce]¹

Tender 3oure thought, speke hem no more wronge:

Thus shal 3e best her grete Ire aswage. <sup>1 MS. corr.: pay ful
hard wage</sup>

Take 3oure offerynge 3et, in short langage, 369

And plesē hem soo, thei may ben 3our freendes!

[&] sey neuere more that thei been feendes! 371

“If 3e wil doo as I 3ow now counsayle, 372

She shall be
next his
Queen,

This shal 3e haue: next after the queen)

Shal 3e be to us, with-outen faile;

To 3oure commaundement alle [men] shul been)

her friends
shall be his,

Obe^engē for euere; whom 3e wil susteen), 376

he shal be fauoured with al myght & mayne,

her unfriends
his foes,

And whom 3e hate, compendiously to sayne, 378

“That man) shal lyue[n] in ful grete distresse. 379

Comforte 3oure-self, despise not good counsayle,

Make not 3oure freendis to lyue in heuynesse;

Lete my woordis synke in 3oure entrayle,

flee swiche thyng¹ that may not awayle! ^{1 r. thyngis?} 383

With-inne my kyngdam) may 3e haue this right:

What þat ye wil, shal be fulfilled as tight. 385

“If that 3e wil exile[n] oony man), 386

That man) shal goo, þer shal no good hym) saue;

More plesauns to 3ow noon) graunte I can)

In all, her
will shall be
done.

But suffre youre wil, al þat 3e wil haue.

ffro this decree shal I neuere-more waue. 390

362 are 363 deceyvores. thei be om. of þe p. 364 3e noble
366 smyten & taken hey veniaunce 367 hem om. 368 grete om.
swage 370 plesith. be 371 And sey. be 372 don 375 alle men
shalle 376 Obe^engē but whom þat. susteyne 378 whom þat 379
leyn) 380 Counforthe 381 makith. leyn 382 myn. sinken
383 thyng om. 385 tythe 386 exilen 388 noon om. I ne 390 ffor

hom) þat 3e liste of grace to avaunce, Bk. V. Ch. 7.
In ioiful dayes that same man) may daunce. 392

“Be-twixe the queen) and you shal be no distaunce 393 The Emperor
promises
Katharine

But oonly this, be-cause of oure spousayle :

She must of me haue more dewe plesaunce ;

The loue be-twixe vs, I trowe, shal neuere fayle.

But to 3ou shal longe bothe lawe and counsayle 397

Thurgh al oure reem, to gouerne at 3oure wille ; absolute
power,

Right as 3e bydde alle men) shul fulfille. 399

“Yet shal I make right in the market-place 400

A solenne-ymage like an emperesse ; and the
setting-up
of her image

As liche as craft wil countirfete 3our face

It shal be made : ilke man), more and lesse,

Shal honoure þat¹ with ful grete besynesse, ^{1 r. yt?} 404

Whan) thei come forby shul falle on kne anoon.

This ymage shal not oonly be made of stoon), 406 to be
worshipt,

“But of clene metal, gilt ful bryght & shene. 407

Who-so come forby, be sufficient euydens

Shal knowe ful weel þat she was a queen)

Whos ymage stant there, and in grete offens

Shal he falle that dooth noo reuerens 411

To þat same ymage, and ho-soo flee ther-too,

What-manner offens that he hath doo 413

“Shal be for3oue, for reuerens of yow, mayde. 414

Thus may 3e ben) deifyed, if 3e wil it take.” if she will
turn Heathen.

Swiche-manner woordts on-to hir he sayde,

he wolde a temple al of marbil make

Of ful grete cost, right for hir sake, 418

Wenyng euer with swyche feyned plesauns

To brynge this mayde fro hir perseuerauns. 420

391 whom . forto 393 non 394 youre 399 shall 400 right
om. 401 solempne . liche a 402 As man of craft 405 comen .
fallen . knes 408 comyth . wyt/ 409 knowen 410 & þat 412
same om. soo om. 413 þat euer 414 for3oue at þe r. 415 be
416 vntill 417 marbelle 420 oute of hir good p.

Katharine is
amused at the
Emperor's
offer

She low a lityl whan she herde al this, 421
And thanne she spak with mery countenance :

“fful happy am I,” she seyde, “on-to blys

Whanne þat the emperour wil me thus avaunce

to set up her
Statue

To rere an ymage of soo grete plesaunce 425

In wurshep of me, and of so grete prys !

Somme men wolde sey þat I were ful nys 427

of gold or
silver,

“ If I refused it, for of goold it shal bee 428

If I commaunde, but 3et at the lest

Of siluer he wil it make, and of swiche quantite,

The chaungeouris shul stryue and be in on-rest

To brynge so moche tresour out of the nest 432

To make a memorial to Kataryn the mayde”—

[S]whiche-maner woordis at that tyme she sayde. 434

“ And though this ymage be made of marbil grey, 435

Suffiseth it that to my laude eterne

Euery man that shal come be that wey

Where þat it shal be sette in an herne,

to be knelt to.

On bothe knees he muste falle 3erne 439

An[d] doo his homage, ellis muste he deye.

What-maner woordis hope 3e thei shal seye? : 441

“ ‘ heyl ymage, made right in memorial 442

Of a lady ful wys and ful prudent,

heyl statue that art now as eternal,

heyl signe made right to þis entent,

The grete beute of Kataryn to present.’ 446

Wil not þis noyse ben ful grete plesauns

To hem þat loue this wordly lusti dauns? 448

She asks
what her legs
are to be
made of.

“ But this wolde I knowe[n], er we þis thing make,

Of what mater shal my leggis bee?

421 had hard 423 vn-to 425 reren a 427 seyne. ful om. 429
last 431 chaungours. in no rest 432 bregyne 433 of 434 Sweche
437 that om. be þe 438 a 439 hym muste 440 omage. must hym
447 noyse om. be 448 Tyl. louen. worldly 449 knowyne. or

- What-maner werkman is he that dar vndirtake
 To make hem meue and walke in her degree?
 Myn handis eke I wolde wete hough that hee 453
 Shul[d] make to fele,¹ and of what matere? ¹ r. felen
 Er we goo ferthere, this thyng wolde I lere. 455
 "The eyne eke whiche þis ymage shal haue, 456
 If it¹ shul looke right as I doo in dede, ¹ al. þei
 Where is that werkman that swiche þingis can graue?
 he were ful worthy to haue ful grete mede!
 I leue neuere þat this werke shal spede; 460
 This cristallyn matere thus sotilly to congele
 There is no werkman in erthe that can it welle. 462
 "A tounge eke, if he shul[d] to it make, 463
 On-to th[is]¹ ymage to² speke and for to crye, ¹ MS. the ² MS. for to
 Where is he that dar this vndirtake?
 If he doo thus, he werketh a grete maystrye!
 But for this cause that there is noo man so slye, 467
 Therefore I conclude thus in short sentens:
 Whan ye haue wared þoure wyt and [your] expens 469
 "To make this ymage, it shal be insensible, 470
 Stonde liche a ston, and byrdes flye rounde aboute,¹
 As I suppose it shal be right possible ¹ al. þat flye ab.
 That þei shal come somtyme a ful grete route,
 her on-clene dunge shul thei there putte oute 474
 And lete it falle right on the ymagis face.
 loo whiche a reward¹ I may now purchase, ¹ al. sw. a gwerdon
 "That men shul[d] drede and birdes shulde defyle; 477
 But whan deth hath shake on vs his blast
 And þat oure mynde is passed a litel whyle,
 I am a-ferd this werk shal not last. It can't last.
 Wherefore to make it me thenketh but [a] wast; 481

Bk. V. Ch. 8.

Katharine
asks who'll
make her
statue's legs
and hands
move,and its tounge
speak.The statue
must be
senseless.Birds 'll
dung on it.

451 is he om. 452 to meue 453 my. who 454 shuld 455 Or. thyng
 om. 457 þei schul 459 wel w. 460 shuld wel sp. 461 cris-
 tallyne om. 462 it fulfyll 463 shuld it 464 þis. for om. (twice)
 468 in a 469 & þoure 470 vnsensible 471 lyke. þat flies ther
 abowthe 473 That om. comyne. rowthe 474 shall 475 ymage 476
 sweche a gwerdon¹ 477 shuld dredyn'. foules 479 be p. 481 a wast

- Bk. V. Ch. 8.* To truste in fame and fonned veynglorye,
 It is but feyned¹ and fykel flaterye. ¹ Ar. feynnyng 483
- Katharine
 says dogs
 'ud defile her
 Statue.
 " And though thei make it as fayre as þei can, 484
 3et shul dogges defyle it eueri day;
 ffor þough it be honoured of euery man,
 The smale childern þat come be þe way
 Shul somtyme make there [ful] foule aray. 488
 Shal I for this leue my god for euere
 And fro his frenshipe my soule now disseuere, 490
 "To wurshipe deuyles þat stande in temple here 491
 Kepte as heres? do wey, it shal not bee,
 There shal noo loye ne payne me [n]euere¹ stere ¹ corr.: euere;
 To leue my lord, to leue my felicyte, ^{al. neuer.} 494
 To renne in Apostasie, fy! [it will not be].¹ ¹ MS. 3e shal it neuere
 Lete be 3oure labour, sir, lete be 3oure promysse! ^{see, on erasure.}
 Thei shal not make me [n]euere¹ to doo amyssse. ¹ al. neuer 497
- What would
 be the good
 of a Statue
 to her soul?
 "What, shuld my lyf better ben) in ese 498
 ffor swiche a statue? what shulde it profyte
 On-to my soule? me thenketh, it coude not plesse
 No good man); for though it were to the sight
 fful delectable, with colouris shynynge bryght, 502
 On-to oure dayes it shulde 3eue noon) encrees,
 On-to oure siknesse it shulde be no reles, 504
- How could it
 comfort her
 at death?
 "On-to oure lyf it shulde be noo myrthe, 505
 On-to oure deth it shulde noo comforte bee,
 N[o]n¹ avayle to ende ne to birthe. ¹ MS. No
 To what parte longeth it of felicyte?
 If it myght kepe my flesh in swiche degree 509
 It shulde not rote, I wolde it neuere weyue, ¹ on eras., al. om.
 But as profytable thyng¹ I wolde [it] thanne receyue. 511

482 trosten. & in. fonned om. 483 feynnyng a fekyll 485 shalle.
 defylen 486 honoured be 487 childeryn 488 a ful fowle 490
 frenchip. deseuyr 491 standen 493 neuer 495 fye it wille not be
 496 sere 497 maken. neuer 499 profythe 501 sythe 502 brythe
 503 3eue om. 504 be om. non 506 non coumforthe 507 None
 avayle 509 mowte 510 I shuld. weyuen 511 thyng om. it þan
 reseyuen

" I haue a promys, made of a grettere lord,	512	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 8.</i>
Of a ¹ grettere fame þan I wil now expresse,	¹ om. in Ar. 20.	Katharine has
And made a-fore persones of record,		
In whiche is graunted, truly, wyth-out[e]n] gesse,		
A memoryal of parfight stablnesse,	516	
As ȝe shal knowe, many that here bee.		
Leueth ȝoure besynesse as now on-to me !	518	
" Laboure no more to wynne me to ȝour part,	519	
It shal not be, I wil be as I am ;		
It wil noȝt awayle, ȝoure sotilte ne your art.		
he is my spouse whiche is bothe god & man),		Christ, God-
I am his mayde, and wil doo that I can)	523	man, for her spouse.
To haue his loue ; he is al my swetnesse,		She is His.
he is my Ioye, he is my gentilnesse."	525	

Ca^m. 9^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 9.

T ho chaunged the emperour bothe word and chere,	526	The Emperor
And on-to the mayde he seyde as I rehers :		
" The more benyngnely that we trete ȝow heere,		
As me semeth, þe more ȝe reuers.		
This shul ȝe haue, shortly in a vers :	530	offers her Death, or Joy
Deth or Ioye ; chese now whiche you ¹ lest !	¹ Ar. ȝe	
If ye wil lyue in solace and in rest,	532	
" Thanne shul ye now wyth hy deuocyon)	533	
Thuryfie on-to that mageste		if she'll offer incense to Apollo,
Of grete appollo—his exaltacion),		
As ȝe knowe weel, for it is noo secree,		
Redresseth þis world with hete whiche þat hee	537	
Spredeth vp-on it. mayde, obeye her ¹ -too !	¹ MS. hir	
There is noo choys, this thyng muste nedes be doo.	539	
" ffayre speche awayleth not [to] ȝou in noo wyse—	540	
I wolde with solace a led ȝoure gentilnesse,		

513 a om. 514 aforne 516 (stabyl parfyttesse expunged) 523
 I inst. of and 524 hauen. al om. 527 on om. mayden 528 The
 benyngglyer. tretien 530 shalle 531 chese now om. leuest 532
 leue 533 shal. hey 534 on om. 537 werd 538 upon iche. þer-
 too 540 to ȝou. wysse 541 wold wele. salas

Bk. V. Ch. 9. But alle¹ my promyses ye sette at² lytel pryse; ¹ al. at ² al. om.The Emperor
threatens
Katharine
with Death
by Fire,

Ye shul repente it sothly, as I gesse.

There is the fire; dispose you to hoolynesse, 544

Doo it with good wyl: ye shal the sonnere purchase¹Pardon of synne² and encrece of grace. ¹ This v. on erasure. ² r. synnes? 546

“If 3e doo not, in short tyme 3e shul be ded, 547

as an example
to deter
others.

Right in exaample of [3e] puple that is heere.

here hertes arn hangynge heuy as the leed;

A¹ man may perceyue right be her cheere ¹ all MS. A, r. As? 548

It may nozt passe[n] lyghtly, swiche matere, 551

It muste be punysshed right for fer of other;

he shulde ben ded th[o]ugh he were my brother.” 553

Bk. V. Ch. 10.

Ca^m. 10^m.Katharine
welcomes
Death.

“Peyne is weelcome to me,” seyde she thanne, 554

“And deth eke, I wil it nozt forsake;

ffor pough 3e smyghte, sle, curse and banne,

It skilleth me nought for my [lordis sake]¹ ¹ MS. souereyn make, on erasure. 555

Swiche myschefis for his loue to take; 558

he tooke for me meche more wretchednesse,

Whil he leued here in this wyldernes. 560

As Christ
suffred for
her,

“Pouerte he suffred, that lord, ful buxomly, 561

Whanne that he myghte haue had riches at his wylle—

This same myschef 3et suffred neuere I,

But if it come, I wil obeye per-tille.

so will she
suffer for
Him.Ageyn bla[s]phemours stood [3at lord]¹ ful stille, 565Yeuyng exaample to us of pacyens— ¹ MS. he stood, he overl. 567Why shulde his seruau^tis make ony resistens 567“Whanne 3at the wykked purpos¹ to doo hem wrong?ffor his cause, his feyth, or his loue ¹ MS. purpos^{is}, Ar. purpos 568

542 But at my promysse. at om. pryse 543 shalle 545 3e schon(!)
 547 in syght inst. of in short tyme. shal 548 of 3e 549 arne. the
 om. 550 perseyuen 551 passen 552 ponched 553 be. thou 556
 smyth fle sle or banne 557 rithe nothe. my lordis sake 558 mys-
 cheys 559 myche 560 lyued. pis worldly wyldernes 561 3an
 inst. of that lord 562 an had riches 563 3e 565 he om.; stod
 3at lord 566 til 567 shulden. maken 568 3at om. purposyd.
 don hym

Am I now redy, be it short or long, Bk. V. Ch. 10.
 To suffre despyte, peyne¹ or² reproue. ¹ r. peynes ² al. &
 I wote ful weel it wil¹ falle to my behoue ¹ MS. wel 572
 Whan I am gon); the more we suffre heere,
 The more Ioye [shal we hauen]¹ ellis-where. ¹ MS. haue we 574

 "he offred hym-selue on-to the fadyr of blis 575 As Christ
offred Him-
self as a
sacrifice,
so will
Katharine
offer herself.
 An oste ful clene, ondefiled with synne;
 And I wil offre my body, for it is his,
 On-to his plesauns whiche I wolde wynne.
 looke 3e 3oure-self whan 3e wil be-gynne, 579
 flor I am redy, in body and in goost;
 Slee or fle, frye or ellis roost! 581

 "There shal come tyme¹ þou shalt repente ful sore 582
 Of cruel domes whiche þou vvest heere; ¹ MS. the t., the overl.
 Of thi powere settest þou ful grete store,
 Whiche shal rewe the ful soone after þi beere;
 Cristis seruauantis hast thou brente in-feere, 586
 In tyme comynge therfore þou shalt be shent,
 Whan þat with feendis in helle þou shalt be brent. 588 But the
Emperor
shall burn
in Hell.

 "The more þou threstest, the more glad am I; 589
 The moo peynes þou aplyest to me,
 The more my Ioye encresseth, sekyrly!
 I go not alone whan þat I parte fro the,
 ffor whan I deye, many of thi mene, 593 Her death
will turn
many of his
men to
Christ.
 Of thynd housholde shul folwe me ful soone;
 Of crist my lord haue I asked þat boone 595

 "That of thy mene right a ful grete part 596
 Shul trowe in hym & leue her ydolatrye—
 Wayte a-boute with al thi sotil art,
 Thou shalt fynde[n] that I make noo lye.
 her soules fro peyne frely shul thus flye 600

570 I am 571 & r. 572 ful om. wille. myn 573 I suffyr 574
 shal I hauen 575 on om. 576 And host 582 the om. 583
 domus 585 sore 587 shalbe 588 þat þou wyth. shalbe 591 Ioyes
 ences 594 shal folow 596 meny 597 leuyne hire 598 þin 599
 shalle fynd 600 þus shal

Bk. V. Ch. 10.

Streyte to heuene, & þou shalt brenne in helle.

This thyng is sooth that I now the telle."

602

*Bk. V. Ch. 11.*Cam. XI^m.The Emperor
orders men

Thanne was þe emperour ny wood for Ire; ¹ r. stoden 603
 he commaunded his men þat stood¹ there aboute,

To gete[n] ȝerdes of ful sotiȝ wyre; ² MS. þat were ekehe chase men eke² þat were of body ful stoute,

To hem he seyde right thus, with-outen doute: 607

to strip
Katharine
naked,

"Take this mayden and strype hir modir-naked—

I trowe, she shal soone of [hir] sleep be waked. 609

"Bete hir weel, right for hir blaspheme, 610

To fese hem alle that troste in hir doctryne!

lete hir no more speken of that bethleeme,

Ne of that galyle shal she no more dyuyne.

I trowe that peyne shal hir rathere enclyne 614

On-to oure wil, than may besy plesauns:

and flog her. Doo ȝe ȝoure dedis, though that she falle in trauns." 616

The tormentouris haue take hir now a-syde, 617

Made hir naked, bak and armes ther-too,

They do so
till her blood
flows.With yern rodde as faste as thei myght¹ glyde ¹ al. may

Thei beten hir body, the blood gan oute goo.

Whanne thei were very, than cam fresh [men] moo. 621

Thus is she beten for hir spouses loue,

She trosteth on comforte þat cometh fro aboue. 623

She prays to
God.

These were hir woordis: "lord, sende me pacyens, 624

Make me strong to suffre þis penauns;

If þat I haue ronne in thyn offens,

lete it be purget be this same grevauns!

Thankynge be euere on-to thi purueauns, 628

602 trew. þe now 604 comaund. stodyn hem a. 605 To fecchen
 606 eke om. stouth 607 Tille. hei. wythout douth 609 hire slepe
 610 feryne. alle om. trostyn. 612 lere. spekyn 613 that om. 614
 rether 615 þat may be oure pl. 616 deuer 617 taken. now om.
 on syde 619 Wyth eyrend wandes. may 620 cam fast hir froo
 621 fresh men 622 betyn 624 þeis weren 626 þi 627 purged
 628 vnto. puruauns

Eternal lord, makere of man) and beeste ; Bk. V. Ch. 11.
Of thy seruauntis I that am the leeste, 630

“Thanke the more for this same betynge 631 Katharine
Than) for the welthes þat þou sent me before ; thanks God
ffor weel wot I that this tormentynge for letting
her suffer.

It is to me [as] a gret¹ tresore. ¹ or. grette

ffarweel the world now for eueremore ! 635

Stele and robbe the¹ goodes that I haue, ¹ MS. tho

I care not now neyther for tour ne caue.” 637

The tyraunt asked a-mongis this bitter peyne, 638

Whan al was blood, and [þe] beteri^s wery alle :

“What sey ye, mayde[n], wil 3e yet susteyne The Emperor
offers to stop
her flogging

Youre olde heresy^e in whiche þat 3e be falle ? 642 if she'll ask
mercy of his
Gods.

If ye wyl mercy of oure goddis calle, 642

Ye shul it haue ; and ellis alle-newe game. 644

Er þat ye goo, I trowe 3e shal be tame.” 644

She answerde thus : ¹ “sir, knowe þis weel, 645

That I am strengere in body & in goost ¹ Ar. 20 þus ageyn She says she
is strong to
suffer,

Than) [euer] I was, to suffren) euery deel,

Al-maner torment, wheder þou frye or roost. ¹ Ar. 168 shameful
Ar. 20 vnshamfull ;
r. mysshapful ?

But þou mysshapful¹ dogge ful of boost, ¹ Ar. 168 shameful
Ar. 20 vnshamfull ;
r. mysshapful ?

Doo what þou wilt, for I shal strengere bee 651

In my sufferauns than) þou in thi cruelte. 651

“Be-thenke þe weel on ylke-maner syde 652

how þou may slee and brynge¹ now of dawe ¹ r. bryngen

The crysten) puple that knowen) is so wyde,

Whiche doo no wrong but kepen) a ful true lawe :

I shal deyn) and passe this wordly wawe, 656 and to die.

ffolwen my lord and dwelle with hym in blys, She will
dwell with
Christ in
bliss.

Where noo thyng is thought ne doo amys. 658

632 sett 634 as a 635 werd 636 þe 638 amonge 639 þe beters
wery were a. 640 mayden 641 elde . þat om. 643 shallc . alle om.
644 Or 645 sere 647 euer . sufferne 648 wheyther þou wolt fry
649 myschamful 653 Whom . or . now om. on d. 655 kepyⁿ 656
dey . passene . wordes 657 folow 658 wher þat

Ek. V. Ch. 11.

Katharine
tells the
Emperor
he shall be
in Hell,

"There shal I dwelle in Ioye and al solace, 659

Whan) þou thi-self shal be in horry[b]le peyne.

Thou shalt desyre, but þou shalt haue noo grace,

Thou shalt be bounde[n] with þat wooful cheyne

Of obstynacye; þou shalt repente, and seyne 663

'Allas þat euere I wrought swiche torment

On-to 3on heueneley blessed heygh couent!' 665

while she is
in blisse in
Heaven.

"Thus shalt þou wayle whan) þou seest us¹ in blis, 666

And þou in sorwe with-oute[n] remedie, ¹ Ar. 20 we are

Lyenge in peynes whiche shul neuere mys—

This shalt þou knowe vp hap ful hastylie.

Therfore fulfille now of ire al thi malencolye, 670

And I shal suffren) for the loue of heuene."

Thus seyde this lady with [a] ful boold steuene. 672

*Ek. V. Ch. 12.*Cap^m. 12^m.

The Emperor
orders Katha-
rine to be put
in prison,

The emperour commaunded on-to his seruau^ti^s an-noon

They¹ take this mayden) and to preson) lede. ¹ so Ar. 168; Ar. 20 þat þei

he wil thei putten) hir in the depe caue of stoon),

Noo man) soo hardy hir for to feede.

"I wil," he seyth, "3e fulfyllle this in dede; 677

and left 12
days without
food,

Alle these twelue¹ dayes whiche I shal ryde. ¹ so Ar. 168 and 20.

Lete hir no mete haue, to slake hir pryde, 679

drink, or
light.

"Geue hir noo drynke, ne lete hir noo light haue! 680

ho-soo-euere trespace a-geyn) my commaundement,

Soo hooly Iubiter mote my soule saue,

Whan I come hom, he shal be brent!

I wyl [þat] 3e fulfille al myn) entent 684

Euene streytly, with-outen) dispensaciō),

Noo man) soo hardy of noo-maner naciō) 686

659 & in s. 660 schalt. orybylle 661 schalt þan d. 662 bounden
665 3oure. heygh om. 666 qwan 667 wyth-outen 669 ful om.
670 al om. 671 suffyr. of god of h. 672 þe. a ful bold 673
comaunde. anon 674 3e take. mayd. into p. hire 675 I wille 3e
put 676 in no maner hire to f. 677 þat þis be done in d. 678
þeis fourty. wheche þat 679 slake þerwithe h. p. 680 3eue.
drynke inst. of light 681 Who so operwyse do a. m. c. 683 sone
shalle he be b. 684 þat 3e 685 wyth-oute delacione

- "Bere¹ hir mete or drynk or ony lyght." ^{1 r. To b.} 687 *Bk. V. CA. 12.*
 This cruel maundement and this same decree
 Made the emperour thus ageyn lawe & right,
 And he is ryden foorth with his mene The Emperor
rides into the
country.
 Vp in to the lond, for causes whiche that hee 691
 had for to doo, as potestates haue.
 Thus is this mayde allone in the caue, 693
 With-outen comforte, with-outen solace. 694
 But crist hath not for-geten his wyf But Christ
 Alle these xij. dayes of his good grace,
 he wold not leue[n] hir liche a caytyf,
 he sente down seruau^tis fro the hous of lyf, 698 sends his
Angels to
comfort
Katharine
in prison
 his Aungellis I mene, to counforte this mayde.
 Swiche maner of woordis thei to hir sayde : 700
 "Oure lord commaunded¹ that 3e shuld be glad, 701
 Suffre this disese with sobre pacyens ; ^{1 r. commaundeth}
 Mete shul 3e haue 3e neuere swiche had,
 light hath he sent now with oure presens.
 The emperour for youre cause renneth in offens, 705
 Whiche he shal somtyme ful soore repent."
 Thus was she comforted in hir torment 707
 With light of heuene and with heuently mete, 708 with heavenly
light and
food.
 With presens of Aungellis—for thei þat hir keepe,
 Thei myght heere¹ noyse hough thei hir trete, ^{1 r. heere her ?}
 Thei myght see light² as it gan creepe ^{2 r. þe l.}
 Thurgh-oute the scarres ; thei myght not sleepe, 712
 Soo haue thei meruayle of al this thyng.
 But ryght nowght tolde thei on-to þe kyng. 714
 But to other folk in the court there 715
 Sprang this woord soore hough that þis mayde
 Was kepte fro light, in ful grete fere, This becomes
known.
- 689 þe law of r. 690 he om. redyn 691 cause 692 don 693
 And þus . left alone in caue 694 ony comforthe or ony s. 696 fourty
 697 leuyn . like 698 his s. 700 of om. þoo til hir þei 701 comaund
 703 shalle . sweche 704 lithe . 3ow inst. of now 707 tornament
 709 kepte 710 þe n. 711 sene . strepe 712 outh om. skarrys
 714 nothe 716 spronge . þer inst. of soore . how.

*Bk. V. Ch. 12.*Katharine's
miraculous
help gets
known.

And fro mete eke, right as I sayde,
 And hough the gayleris were sore afrayde 719
 Of certeyn light at the dongeon-doore—
 This woord in the court abouten gooth soore. 721

*Bk. V. Ch. 13.*Cap^m. 13^m.The Queen
hears of her
cruel
sentence,

The tydyngis are come to the queenes eere¹ ¹ or. heere 722
 Of the cruel sentens, of the light eke,
 hough that the mayden with-outen ony feere
 had answered the clerkis this other weke,
 hough þat the mayde[n] with woordis moke 726
 had turned hem to crist and hough thei were brent,
 And she for that cause in preson was ny shent. 728

The emperour was absent, as I seyde be-fore, 729
 ffoorth in to þe lond ryden in haste.
 Thei toold the queen that he commaunded soore
 That she neither mete ne drynk shul[d] taste,
 But for pure hunger she muste deye & waste, 733
 “These laste woordis seyde he¹ on the heth¹ MS. he seyde
 No man 3eue hir mete in peyne of deth!” 735

and pities
her.

This meued the queen of very womanly pete 736
 To haue compassyon of these peynes alle
 Whiche þat this lady be very cruelte
 Of the kyng had suffred; thus is she falle,
 The Queen The queen, al in stody, walkyng in the halle, 740
 Thenkyng besyly euere on this mayde;
 On-to¹ hir-selue ful preunly thus she sayde: ¹ *al.* And to 742

says the
Christians
do no man
wrong.

“These cristen foolkis,¹ thei doo noo man wrong; 743
 Alle that thei beye, truly therfore they pay, ¹ *al.* folke
 On-to her god thei synge ful good[ly] song,

718 right om. as I ere 719 iayloures. so 720 dongon 721
 gothe aboute 722 tydens. onto 723 & of 724 wyth-out 725 in
 þat tothir 726 And how þat þe mayden 728 is 730 redyne 732
 shuld 734 þeis. seyde he 735 3efe. mete ne drynke ne lyght 741
 euere om. vpon 742 And til. ful om. 743 Theis. folke 744
 bye 745 syngyne. goodly

Newe and newe as men) seyn) euery day ; *Bk. V. Ch. 13.*
Wastful are thei nought in [no]¹ maner of aray, ¹ MS. only 747
Glotonen ne drunkelewe wil thei neuere bee—
This same lyf, ful weel it pleseth mee. 749

“And oon of hem) had I be or now, 750 The Queen
says she
would have
been a Chris-
tian but for
the Pagan
law.
had not oure lawe [for]fended¹ us that scoole ; ¹ MS. defended
If it were seyn) that I to hem drow,
Men shuld seyn) that I were a foole ;
It myght turne me eke to mekel doole, 754
If that my lord myght this chaungynge knowe.
But in myn) herte euere there gynneth growe 756

“A grete desyre for to see this mayde. 757 She wants
to see
Katharine.
Allas, hough shal I fu[l]file myn) entent ?”
Thus be hir-selue this lady thought & sayde.
But in this stody ryght euene as she went,
happed to come, as though god hym) had¹ sent, 761
A noble knyght, a wyse man) in al thyng, ¹ *al.* had hym A wise
knight,
preuy in counsayl, right specyal with the kyng, 763

Gouernour of knyghtis, ledere to hem alle, 764
A very fadir to 3ynge folkis¹ that shulde lere— ¹ *al.* folke
Porphirye, the storyes right thus thei hym calle ; Porphiry,
comes to her.
On-to the queen) he kneled with ful sad cheere.
“I am glad, porphiry,” she seyde,¹ “*put 3e been* here ; 768
Ye ben) a man) that may meche avayle : ¹ *al.* she seyde, porphiry.
To 3ou I wil telle now my preuy counsayle. 770

“I am so troubled newly with the¹ cristen) lawe, 771 She tells him
how troubled
she is about
Christianity.
I can) not slepe, I may not ete ne drynke ; ¹ *al.* om.
Euery day, er it begynneth to dawe,
And eke al nyght on) pis mater I thynke ;
I trowe I am ful ny my lyues brynke, 775

747 in no . ray 748 In gloteny ne drunkchip 750 ben 751
forfend 752 sene 756 But 3ete . my . euere om. begynnythe to
757 An . sene 759 be 760 ryght om. 761 hym om. had hir
763 pruy of 764 leder of 765 3onge folke 766 porphery 768
she seyde porphery . be 769 myche 770 now I wille tellen) 771
trobilled . the om. 772 neythir ete 773 or

*Bk. V. Ch. 13.*The Queen
begs Por-
phyry to lether, with
him,speak to
Katharine.He promises
he will
manage it.Katharine
has suffered
great wrong.The Queen
and he will
see her this
night.

But I haue comfort"—right thus tho she sayde;

"Goode porphirye, I muste nede see 3one mayde. 777

"Ordeyne ye the mene ryght as 3e can), 778

Geue the gayleris golde and syluer I-nough,

Ordeyne soo þat I and ye, my man),

May speke this lady. to god I make a vough,

Looke my lord neuere soo wroth ne row, 782

I muste nedes speke hir, or I shal be ded;

ffor in this mater myn) herte is [h]euuy as led." 784

Porphyrye seyde, "madame, it shal be doo, 785

I shal parfoorme this thyng, trost in me!

In swyche degree the doores shul be [on-doo],¹ ^{1 MS. be ordeyned for soo}

There shal noo man) be preuy but we thre,

That is to sey the gayler, I, and 3e. 789

Drede 3ow nought, 3e shul haue *your* entent.

With this mater haue I ben) sore torment; 791

"Me thenketh, grete wrong this lady suffreth heere, 792

Soo horribely bete[n], kepte fro mete and drynk,

And she noon) harm) dooth in noo manere!

fful ofte[n]-tyme she made me on hir thynk,

Sith that I herde hir the noble argumentis clynk 796

With the clerkis, whan) she conuycte hem alle.

Therefore, madame, falle what may be-falle, 798

"We wil see hir, and that with good leyser, 799

And speke wyth hir this same nyght fol[o]wyng.

Grete 3eftes wil I 3eue on-to the gaylere

To holde his pees and speke of this noo-tyng.

Go 3e to chaunbre, & whane I 3eue you¹ warnyng, 803Come foorth the alone, lete *your* women slepe; ^{1 al. om.}

Looke ye be redy whan) I shal yow cleepe." 805

777 me muste nedes 779 3efe. gaylere. enowe 780 3e & I may
 than 781 May om. vowe 782 & rowe 784 heuy 785 seyde om.
 787 þe dorys shalbe ondoo 788 pryuey 789 seyne 790 schal
 791 sore be 792 þat þis l. 793 horribly. beten) 794 no 795
 oftene. to thynke 796 Sithin, that om. hir herde 798 what so;
 may om. 799 that om. 800 nyte 801 shalle. on om. 802 To
 kepe counsayle & 803 you om. 804 Comyth. & lete

Cap^m. 14^m.*Bk. V. Ch. 14.*

- Thus be consent the queen and porphirye, 806 The Queen
whanne alle men slepte, to preson are thei goo and Porphyry
Al alone, right soo seyth oure storie. go to Katharine's prison,
- Whanne thei too come there¹ and no moo, ¹ Ar. 168 þei come
So grete light in preson sey² thei thoo ² Ar. 168 se 810 þer, þei too
- That thei falle [doun] with-oute[n] speche or breth—
Thei supposed neuere to¹ haue be so ny her deth. ¹ om. in Ar.
- ffor that brightnesse was lyke a lyghtenyng 813 and see so
Whiche thei seyn thanne, soo wonderful & soo bright bright a light
her witte is goo and doun in stamerynge that they fall
Are thei falle now for feer of that sight. down.
- There was a sauour also with that light, 817
Thei felten neuere swiche, the story seyth, certeyn,
ffor with that sauour her comfort cam ageyn. 819
- Tho spak the mayde swiche woordis on-to hem: 820
" Ryse up, sister, ryse up, brother, in-feere !
Crist that was bore in þe Citee of bethleem, Katharine
he hath called you to his seruyse here. welcomes
Beth glad and mery, be of right good chere, them
Oure lord hath chosen 3ou newly of his grace ;
ffor that cause he sente 3ou to this place." 826 as chosen by
Christ.
- Thei behelde the mayden at that tyde 827
how þat she satte on knees ful mekely,
Many Aungellis seyn thei on euery syde
With swete gummess anoy[n]tyng hir softly ;
Euere as thei touched with handis, by & by 831 Angels anoint
Katharine's
wounds,
The flesh was heeled, þe skyn closed ageyn,
Wyth meche more beute, soothly for to seyn, 833 and heal
them.
- Than euere it was whil [þat] it was hole. 834
Thus can oure lord redresse¹ al doloure ¹ r. redressen

807 slepyne 808 soo om. 809 too om. comen þer þei too &. 810
lithe. sow 811 fallen downe. wyth-outene 812 hopyd. a ben. hir
813 brytnes. lyche 814 sey. soo 2 om. 816 fallen. nowom. 817
þe l. 818 felt 820 maydene. on om. 823 onto 824 Be 825 chose.
to 827 beheldene. mayde 828 sate 829 sey 834 whyle þat

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 14.</i>	Whiche men) suffre, be it in heed or sole, he can) in lesse tyme than an houre hele oure soores, comfote oure labour. 838 These folke, I trowe, thei had a blessed sight, fful of comfote, ful of heuenly delight. 840
Nine or ten old men also comfort Katharine.	There sat be-syde eke sundry olde men), 841 Yeuynge comfote on-to hir heuynesse— Were thei nyne or ellys were they ten), Of her nombre haue I no sekernesse ; Thei were sente thedyr, soothly, as I gesse, 845 Be-cause this woman) was with-oute solace, hir to comfote with som heuenly grace. 847
From one she takes a 5-brancht crown,	On of hem held in his hand a crowne, 848 ffayre ¹ and ryal, we can) it nozt discryue ; ^{1 r. So f.?} Right fro his hand Kataryn) tooke it doune, To the queen) thus she seyde belyue : "This croune, suster, with his braunches fyue 852 Shul 3e haue and were it on youre heed, As for assay, but after that 3e ben) deed, 854 "Thanne shul ye haue it for a ¹ reward euerelastyng." On-to the olde men) tho turned the mayde ^{1 al. om.} 856 Whil she helde the croune, in 3e settinge, Thus to hem with meke voys she sayde : "ffor these persones to my lord I prayde, 859 Thei shul be wreten) in the book of lyf : Therefore, sirs, as I am cristis wyf 861 "Graunted be patent, soo wil I that 3e wryte 862 These too names in 3at book for euere, Clense her synnes, make 3at heuy wighte ffro my lord no more hem disseuere.
The names of her and Porphyry are in the Book of Life.	

837 in halfe a houre 839 3eis . I trowe om. 3ere hadden . blysfull
840 delyte 841 s. ful elde 842 on-tyll 843 3ere were in cumpanye
no mo 3an nyne or tene 844 hyr nowmbre 849 reall . not 851
Onto 852 syster . 3eis 853 shalle . hauene . weryne . it om. up-on
854 after whan . be 855 shalle . a om. 856 3at mayde 857 Wille .
elde 858 tyl 859 3eis 861 seres . am om. 862 wrythe 863
Theis 864 make so . withe 865 deseuyre

- I pray to god that now falle thei neuere 866 *Bk. V. Ch. 14.*
 After þat tyme that thei receyued the feyth."
 Oon) of the olderes ageyn) on-to hir seyth : 868 An Elder
 "O precyous spouse of god that sitteth aboue, 869 assures
 O gemme ryal shynynge in chastyte ! Katharine
 What-soo-euere þou aske of cryst þat is thi loue, that
 Thou can) not fayle it, soo propicyous is hee
 On-to thi persone. therefore, trost þou me, 873
 This lady shal proue to grete perfeccion); the Queen
 The knyght shal haue eke swiche progressyon) 875 shall reach
 perfection,
 "In vertuous lyf, þat thurgh his good counsayle 876 and that
 Too hundred and mo fro her fals beleue Porphyry
 Shul turne to cryst, and ful soore wayle shall turn
 her false feyth whiche thei can) not preue." 200 Pagans
 to Christ.
 Thus haue this folkis at Kataryn) taken) her leue, 880
 Walkyng to chaunbre with hertes ful suspens ;
 keepyng this mater al clos in sylens. 882

Cap^m. 15^m.*Bk. V. Ch. 15.*

- T**he mayde is kepte in preson) euere stille, 883 Katharine
 with swiche comfort as 3e herde[n] heere ;
 Of mannes comfort hath she neyther letter ne bille,
 Noo man) dar doo it, swiche is now her feere ;
 Twelue dayes ful thus was she keepte there, 887 is fed for
 12 days in
 With-oute[n] mete, but be alle these dayes prison with
 Of heuenly mete had she swete asayes. 889 heavenly
 food.
 ffor he þat fedde Danyel in the lake, 890
 And caryed Abacuc soo fer oute of Iude
 To brynge hym) vytayH, that same lord myght make
 That in preson) this mayde soo feed shuld bee.
 In storyes redde I deuers too or thre, 894

866 now mote þei falle 867 þe . reseyuyn 868 eldest 870 realle .
 shynyst 871 soo om. 872 It can not fayle so precious to þou is he
 873 to me 874 preue onto 875 þis knyte 878 shalle . & ful sore
 for here synne wayle 880 þeis folke of . take 881 ful om. 883
 This maydene 884 haue herdyne 887 ffourty . kepyd 888 wyth-
 outene . in . þeis 889 metis 890 D. þe prophete 891 abouthe (!)
 893 maydene . þat þus inst. of soo feed 894 þat I rede in dyuers

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 15.</i>	A fayre dowe fro heuene brought hir mete—	¹ overlined.
A Dove brings Katharine food from Heaven.	Whether bodyly or goostly it ¹ is hard for to trete,	896
	ffor as Austyn ⁿ seith, þat same seed	897
	Whiche oure faderis receyued in wyldernesse,	
	Whiche serued hem thanne in stede of bred,	
	This doctour seyth in very soothfastnesse	
	That possyble it is swiche seedes mo and lesse	901
	Shul[d] be noryshed in the eyr, be supposicyon ⁿ	
	In the lowere part whiche hath disposyeyon ⁿ	903
	Somwhat to erthe acordynge in nature—	904
	This is his sentens, hoo-[so] wil it reede,	
	In his book whiche treteth þe merueile of scripture.	
	I trowe this same was doo heere in dede :	
The Holy Ghost feeds her with heavenly food.	The holy goost this goodly mayde gan ⁿ feede	908
	With heuenly thyng whiche had erthely kynde—	
	Thus wene I, [but] I wil no man ⁿ bynde	910
	But if he ¹ wil, for to leue my tale.	¹ MS. 3e 911
	She was fed—that haue we of treuthe ;	
	If god had lefte hir in soo bitter bale	
	With-uten comfort, it had ben ⁿ grete reuthe.	
	In that preson ⁿ thus leued she with-uten ⁿ slewthe	915
On the 12th day	Alle these xij dayes. but in the last of alle,	
	As she in preyer ful besyly gan ⁿ calle	917
	On-to crist, she saugh an heuenly syght :	918
Christ comes to her in prison,	Oure lord hym-selue to preson ⁿ is come down ⁿ ,	
	With many Aungell's shynynge wonder bryght,	
	With many maydenes, noon ⁿ swyche in this toun ⁿ .	
	ffor very Ioye kataryn ⁿ is falle in swoun ⁿ ;	922
and comforts her.	Oure lord comforted hir with goodly cheere,	
	“Doughter,” he seyth, “look up whom 3e see heere !	924

896 wheythir 897 Austene 899 hyme 900 þis very doctir. very
om. 901 more or 902 shuld. eyzere 904 to þe erde 905 who
so 906 þe merueile om. in sc. 907 don 908 mayden 909 erdly
910 but I wil 911 he. leynⁿ 915 prysone. thus om. she lyued.
sleuth 916 these om. fourty 918 saw 921 maydenes of ful grete
renowne 922 fulle (is om.) 923 counforth. ful goodly 924 he
seyth om. lokyth

“Knowe youre makere, for whom al pis disece 925 *Bk. V. Ch. 15.*
 3e haue suffred. take it in paciens!
 The more 3e suffre, the more 3e me plese;
 keepe 3oure constauns, drede noo wordly offens,
 Thenke not longe, lyue not with herte suspens! 929
 I am with 3ow, I shal you neuere forsake.
 Many an herte ful redy shul ye make 931

Christ bids
 Katharine
 know Him.

He will never
 forsake her.

“On-to my seruyse, er 3e departe¹ fro this lyf; 932
 Grete noubre of puple shul 3e tourne, ¹ *al. part*
 Many an husbonde, mayde, wydewe and wyf
 ff[ro]¹ here maumetrye shal 3e [hem tourne]² ¹ *MS. corr.: ffor*
 And to my feyth lede hem to soiourne.” ² *corr.: make mourne;*
 Whan this was seyde, oure lord is up to heuene, *Ar. 168 returne.*
 With grete brightnesse, as it were a leuene. 938

She shall
 turn many
 folk to Him.

He goes up to
 Heaven.

Shee looked¹ after til she seeth no more, ¹ *Ar. 168 lokith* 939
 Returned² to prayere, as tho was hir vsage; ² *returneth*
 It was to hir a ful grete tresore
 That ihesu lest to make þat pilgrimage
 hir hertly sorwe soo goodly for to swage 943
 With his presens—blessed euere he bee!
 And be this mayden), commended to hym be we! 945

She prays.

Cam. 16m.

Bk. V. Ch. 16.

¹ *al. his*
 W^hanne these¹ causes arn) brought fully to ende 946
 whiche that he rood fore, Maxens now I mene,
 he is come hom. a-noon) he gan) to sende
 ffor pis mayde be sexe knyghtis, I wene;
 If thei ben) fals, soone it shal be seene, 950
 Thei þat kepte hir, thei shul it ouere-thynke ¹ *MS. eyther mete.*
 If it be proued thei 3oue hir mete¹ or drynke. 952

When the
 Emperor
 Maxentius
 comes home,
 he sends 6
 knights for
 Katharine.

926 t. it euer 928 worldly 931 hart 932 or 3e part 933 shalle
 3e returne 934 a. widow 935 & 6 transp. 935 ffor hire m. shalle
 3e hem returne 936 Onto. ledyne 937 do. went up 939 sey 940
 Returnyth. as euer was 942 lyst 943 goodly om. 945 comend
 946 his c. arne. to þe e. 947 Wyth þat. forth 948 comyne 949
 ffor hir. rithe as I w. 950 be 951 it shalle hem o. 952 3ouen.
 eyther om.

370 *The Emperor is wroth to see Katharine better.* [MS. Arundel.]

Bk. V. Ch. 16. Al the Citee is gadered to see þis sighte, 953
A grete puple, some for cruelnesse,
Som^e arn^d there that han^d ful grete despite
The Emperor On-to the emperour for his wykkydnesse,
Thei thenke this lady is put to grete distresse 957
ffor noo cause oonly but for good.
The emperour seyde with ful sturdy mood : 959
“Brynge foorth this woman), brynge þis concyonatrix,
Brynge that wytche ! noo man may turne hir herte ; 961
In hir errorr is she made soo fix
That fro it noo man) may make hir to sterte.
But if she doo, ful soore shal she smerte ! ” 964
Thus is she brought be-fore¹ his presens. ^{1 r. beforen}
he supposed verly that for¹ abstynens ^{1 al. for hir} 966
She had be peyned euene to the deth : 967
Now looketh she fresh, [wyth] white and rody colour.
He is furious to find her fairer than ever,
Very anger his herte now ny sleth,
ffor she is fayrere than) she was that hour
Whiche he commaunded to lede hir to the tour. 971
“Tretoures,” he sayde, “ȝe shul deye ilke oon),
But if ye telle me in this place anoon) 973
“hoo hath fedde, a-geyn) oure commaundement, 974
This froward caytif that no man) may ouerlede.
I swere be Iubiter, whiche is omnytpotent,
It shal be wist hoo þat dede this dede !
There shulde¹ noo man) for noo-maner nede ^{1 al. shal} 978
Doo this thyng whiche we [for]fende² soo.” ^{2 Ar. forfended}
he dede hem byndyn) wit Iern) be too and too. 980
Thanne the mayde[n], to excuse hem alle, 981
Seyde to the kyng swhyche-[maner] woordis, certeyn) :

953 sene . sythe 955 are . despythe 956 At the 959 stordy 960
2 bryng forthe 961 Br. forthe ; that wytche om. 966 for hire 967
pynynd . the om. 968 freshe wyth coloure (white and rody om.)
969 ffor very a. now om. ny it. 971 Whan . comaunde . ledyne .
þat . 972 Traytours . shal 973 if om. 978 shalle . mede 979
forfend 980 bynd wyth eyryne 981 maydene . excusen 982 sweche
maner

"Thou art a lord, an emperour men the calle,		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 16.</i>
Thou art ordeyned al treuthe to susteyn;		Katharine
Thei that doo ageyn the lawe or seyn,	985	begs the
hem shuldest ¹ þou punyssh; but innocentis noone;		Emperor
If thou doo, þou doost ageyn thi trone.	987	¹ r. shuld not to punish
"ffor these men whiche had keepynge of me,	988	the jailers,
Brought me no mete ne drynke, þou vndirstande;		for they
I was susteyned al in other degree:		didn't feed
Be my lord whiche is al-weeldande;		her.
ffor be his massageris sente he me to hande	992	Christ fed her
Al my sustenauns—no dore myght hem lette		
To spere hem oute—sir, þou can noo iette.	994	
"Therefore these Innocentes, do hem no torment,	995	
Thei be not worthi, sir kyng, I sey the why:		
Be hooly Aungellis my lord this mete sent,		by His
Noon erthely creature was ther-to preuy;		Angels.
ffor hunger he wolde not suffre me to dy.	999	
he is my loue, I am his for euere,		He is her
Ioye ne sorwe shal us not disseuere."	1001	Love.

Cam. 17m.

Bk. V. Ch. 17.

T o these woordis the tyraunt with doubelnesse	1002	The Emperor
Answerede ful faire, that thei whiche stood aboute		answers her
Shulde not suppose in hym suche cruelnesse;		with fair-
The sturdy herte in hym whiche was soo stoute,		seeming
Was hid with langage as venym in a cloute;	1006	words at first.
fful fayre woordis at that tyme he sayde:		
"I am for you ful sory, most goodly mayde,	1008	
"Ye born of kyngis, douter to kyng and queen,	1009	
Cosyn to lordis many þat serue[n] me,		
The [best] bore woman of this contre 3e been)—		

985 done . þi 986 shuld . ponyshe 987 dost 988 þeis 989
 neythire m. 990 a-nothir 992 massangeres 994 sir om. canst
 not gette 996 sere 997 me mete 999 dey 1002 Tho þeis . dobyl-
 nesse 1003 þei þat stodynz abouth 1005 stouth 1006 hid om.
 venyne . c'outh 1009 a kynges dowter of k. & of 1010 seruyn
 1011 The best borne

*Bk. V. Ch. 17.*The Emperor
tells Katharine

Thus arn) ye named : and al þis with sotylte

Of certeyn) witches—cursed eue^re thei bee !— 1013

Is turned and lost ; for other Ioye haue ye noon)

But Ihesu crist, mary, petir & Ion), 1015

“ Whiche arn) tretoures proued be þe senat, 1016

And damned to deth for treson) & heresy^e.

Why wil 3e lese thus youre honourable astat

And yeue attendauns to wytchecraft^e & to lye?she has turned
to witchcraft
and lying.

It had ben) beter to haue kepte the same sophie 1020

Whiche þat youre maysteris lerned you first in scole!

This-maner lernynge wil proue¹ you a foole. ¹ r. prouen? 1022

“ Eke ageyn) oure holy goddis seruyse 1023

Ye speke & crie, and that soo malyciously,

With woordis¹ and cheer on)-goodly hem) despise : ¹ al. wordeThis causeth me, I sey you suerly, ² or. not-wythstand (so Ar. 168).That, not-wythstandyng,² so mote I haue mercy, 1027He must
punish her,
to protect his
people.That I wolde saue you, I muste¹ nedes punyssh^e þis pride,Right for my puple þat standeth heere be-syde. ¹ al. mut 1029

She must die,

“ Therefore chese now whether þat ye wil deye 1030

Whith suche deth as lawe wil damne you too,

or deny
Christ.

Or ellis youre feith if ye wil reneye ;

Thanne shal ye haue mercy & worship eke alsoo.

Come of a-noon), lete see what ye wil doo, 1034

Offre to Iubiter, 3oure god omnypotent ;

Your^e tendre body with yern) shal ellis be brent.” 1036*Bk. V. Ch. 18.*Ca^m. 18^m.Katharine
says she**T**he mayde answerde to the emperour agayn) : 1037

“ Though that my lyf bee ful swete to me,

Yet had I leuere with a swerd be slayn)

will die
rather than
offend Christ.

Than) that my lyf in ony-maner degree

Shulde offende the blessed mageste 1041

1012 are 1014 is *per none* 1016 are 1017 to *þe* 1018 lesse
 1019 3euyne. to 2 om. 1020 to a k. 1021 youre maysteris om.; 3e
 lerned fyrst 1022 I wille preue 1025 word 1026 sewirly 1027
 not wyth-stand 1028 mut nede 1029 stand 1030 wheyder 1031
 sweche 1036 yrne 1038 Thou

Of my lord god. I sey the, cryst is my lyf,		<i>Bk V. Ch. 18.</i>
And grete ences, though I deye on ¹ knyf,	¹ at. on a	1043
“Soo that I deye in charyte and for his sake.		1044
Therefore, thou deth come to me this hour,		Katharine welcomes death for Christ's sake.
ffor his loue ful mekely I wil it take,		
I shal neuere with myght ne with labour		
Grutche ageyn my lord, my saueour;		1048
Deeth shal auance me with grete emolume[n]t,		Death will
Deeth is a chaungeour—fro this lyf present		1050
“To beter he leedeth us, this is oure beleue;		1051
Oure dedly bodyes whiche arn corruptible,		lead her to a better Life.
Whan that he cometh he bryngeth hem to pis preue		
That thei shal reste and rote, as seith oure bible;		
After þat restyng, yet it is possible		1055
On-to oure lord tho bodyes to rere ageyn,		Her body will rise again.
In fayrere foorme than euere thei were seyn.		
		1057
“Therefore, þou tyraunt with thi feyned langage,		1058
Doo what þou wilt, put me to torment,		
Brenne me with brondes thyn Ire for to swage!		burn me!
I wolde offre to cryst, whiche is omnipotent,		
Som plesaunt offrynge, som delectable present;		1062
Keen and caluern or sheep I al forsake,		
Myn owen body to offerynge wil I take.		1064
		I offer up my body,
“But for I may not leeffully do it my-selue,		1065
As make this offerynge, therefore thi cruelte		
Shal bydde thi seruantes other ten or twelue		
With vengeable herte to make an ende of me.		
To hym that was offred in caluerye on a tree,		1069
To hym I offre my flesh, my blood & felle.		to Him that died on Calvary.
But for thi cruelnesse yet ofte I the telle,		1071
“Thou shalt ful soore heer-after this thyng repent,		1072
Nought oonly in helle whiche þou shalt be Inne,		But you shall not only go to Hell here- after;

1043 one a k. 1046 lufe 1051 ledyth 1052 are corruptible 1057
fayrer 1058 teraunt 1063 kyin. calueryne 1064 owe 1065
lefully 1067 eythere 1068 a hende 1070 & my felle 1073 Nor.
shalbe

- Bk. V. Ch. 18.* But here in eerthe shalt thou fayle thyn e[n]tent ;
 on earth you ffor thyne¹ deedes, whiche arn ful of synne, ¹ r. thi
 God shal rere a lord whiche² shal wynne ² r. þe whech? 1076
 shall lose Alle thi londes fro þe, and make the pore,
 your land, Take away thi worshipe and thi tresore ; 1078
 "Yet shal he sleyn the, as þou art wurthi, 1079
 and your Thi wykked heed he shal make of smyte,
 wicked head. Thi blood shal ben offred thanne ful solemnelly
 On-to thi goddⁱs right for despyte.
 Looke my woordⁱs that þou note & write ! 1083
 This man that shal brynge the thus of¹ dawe, ¹ al. u d.
 Shal be a lord of the cristen lawe. 1085
 Still, you "Yet may þou skape¹ al this grete myschauns, 1086
 may escape If þou wilt turne the and aske god mercy, ¹ r. skapen?
 if you'll Of thi wikkednesse if þou haue repentauns
 repent." And forsake these maumentⁱs whiche stande on hy."
 These were the woordⁱs whiche that þis lady 1090
 Seyde at that tyme this man to conuerte ;
 But alle hir woordⁱs sette he not at herte. 1092
 Katharine is So semeth it weel, this lady for hoolynesse 1093
 thus made a Was soo avaunced, whil she was lyuande,
 Prophetess; That god made hir as a prophetesse
 To telle þinges þat were after comande.
 for the ill end ffor this same deeth, as I vndirstande, 1097
 she foretold had this same Maxcens as she seyde, truly :
 ffor in storyes [I] am weel avysed that I 1099
 haue red of hym, that he wente to rome 1100
 To feyghte with oon whiche had gouernaunce
 Of alle þat Citee and oonly to¹ his dome ¹ al. on-to
 befell Maxentius. Stood al þat contre with al here puissaunce,
 Bothe Ytalie and almayn, engelond, spayne & fraunce—

1074 erde . schal 1075 þi . are 1076 þe wheche 1078 tresore
 1079 slee 1081 be . solennly 1083 noote 1084 a dawe 1087
 wyll 1089 þe m. 1090 are 1093 Tho 1094 lyuande 1096
 comaunde 1099 I am 1101 fyght 1102 on-to 1103 pusauns
 1104 ytayle . ynglond

Constantyn) he hyght, whiche tho baptised was *Bk. V. Ch. 18.*
 Of seynt syluestre be a ful specyal gras. 1106 The Christian
Constantine

This same constantyn) discounfyted in batayle 1107 conquerd
Maxentius.

This forseyde maxcens, for al his pompe & pride,
 As this lady in propheeye, whyche myght not fayle,
 had seyde be-fore. the fame was bore ful wyde,
 And merked ful weel the day & eke the tyde 1111

Of sundry men), whiche afterward ful weel knewe
 Al þat she seyde was ful stable and true. 1113

Ca^m. 19^m.*Bk. V. Ch. 19.*

Bv^t whanne the[s] woordes were seyde of þis mayde,
 he cryed loude to the puple a-boute— 1115 The Emperor

Soo was he with hir woordis now afrayde,
 What he shal doo now is he fallen) in doute—
 Swiche was his cry: “fy on swiche a route, 1118 calls on his
men

That shal suffre here a woman) þus defame
 Oure hye goddes, her seruyse and her name! 1120

“hough longe shal we this witche thus susteyne? 1121
 hough longe shal we suffre this cursednesse?

To alle goode leueres it shul[d] be very peyne
 To here a woman) with suche sturdynesse <sup>1 MS. he cryed, he overl.;
Ar. 20 cryed he.</sup> 1125

A-geyn) alle men), the more and eke the lesse, 1125
 Thus euere-more crye¹. ley on handes, for shame! to seize

Ye stande as men), me thenketh, þat were lame!” 1127

Thus cryed this tyraunt with ful loude voys, 1128

Thus berked this dogge ageyn) th[at]¹ heuenly name, ^{1 MS. the}
 Ageyn) ihesu that was hanged on a croys;

his men) a-boute hym) thus he gan) to blame;
 “Come foorth a-noon, looke ye take þis dame, 1132

Bete hir and reende hir with Iern) and plummes of leed! and send
Katharine
to death.
 leue not youre labour til that she be deed!” 1134

1107 discounfetyd 1114 þese 1116 now om. 1117 fall 1119
 þus suffyr a w. here d. 1121 who. whyche 1123 schuld 1126 he
 om.; crye. hondys 1127 þat om. 1129 bergyd. þat h. 1130 a
 om. 1131 gan he 1132 Comforthe 1133 yrne. plumbys

Bk. V. Ch. 19. She was betenⁿ newe [þan] be-fornⁿ his face, 1135
 Katharine is cruelly beaten,
 Soo dispitously that shame it was to see.
 ffor many manⁿ that stood tho in þat place,
 Might not looke on hir for reuthe & pytee.
 The tyraunt wolde neuere seynⁿ “now leue yee,” 1139
 But euere he cryed: “of hir make an eende!
 ffor if she lyue, oure puple wil she shende.” 1141

*Bk. V. Ch. 20.*Cap^m. 20^m.and led into
the town.

¹ on eras.; Ar. to, into
 Thus is she bounde & ledde foorth in¹ the toun. 1142

The puple that folwed, on hir thus gunne thei crye:

“O noble mayde, whi wil ye not falle down

On-to the emperour and of hym aske *mercy*?

The people
sorrow for
her,

We are ful sory þat youre fayre bodye 1146

It is soo reent, 3oure skynⁿ is al to-tore;

But ye askenⁿ mercy, ye arnⁿ lost for eueremore. 1148

“What womanⁿ are ye that soo despyse youre age, 1149

Youre body, youre beute þat ye sette at nought?

Ye may haue wurship, ye may be sette in stage

Ryght as a goddesse—where-on is *your* thought?

And al the world for beute shulde be bought, 1153

here myght thei fynde yt,¹ thei nede no ferthere seeke.

Sith ye be wys, sith ye be hoolde soo meke, ¹ MS. þ, az. it 1155

“Whi wil ye not obeye on-to the kyng? 1156

and urge her
to give way to
the Emperor.

Beter it is to bowe, thanⁿ velenously¹ to be dede. ¹ az. vylensly

In youre bokⁱs, I trowe, ye lerned this thyng:

The grete dignyte may ye not downⁿ trede,

It longeth to you to obeye on-to youre hede. 1160

Sith it is right, [why] wil ye not it doo?

We wolde doo thus, if ye counseildenⁿ us soo. 1162

“Ye lese the flour of youre virginyte, 1163

Ye lesen þat god plentuously in you sette,

1135 bete new þan befor 1137 many a 1139 sey 1140 an hende
 1143 thei om. 1147 It om. 1148 aske. are 1153 werde 1154
 it inst. of þat 1157 vylensly 1161 why wyll 1162 counselled
 1164 lese

Ye lese youre herytage, ye lesen) your degree, Bk. V. Ch. 20.
 Al for on) woord whiche that is youre dette. ¹ MS. knette The
 Ouere-soleynly thenke we that youre herte is [s]ette¹ 1167 Alexandrians
 Whan) that [no] counseil may you reden)² ne rayle,
 Most speecyaly whan) it is youre awayle— ² *al.* lede 1169
 Swiche wordis spak the puple there-about. 1170
 “Remembre yow, mayde, what ye shal now lese,
 Al for youre herte, for it is soo stoute.
 ffeyneth som plesauns, sith ye may not chese !
 Bothe body and bones with betyng [wyll 3e lese] ;¹ 1174
 Oones mercy may avoyde al this— ¹ MS. he wil yon fese
 This is oure counseyl, it may 3ou bryng to blis. 1176
 “Your white skyn) pat shyneth as the svnne,¹ 1177 and save her
 Ye wil shende it, and make it pale and wan), ¹ corr.: sonne skin.
 ffor very betyng it wil ben) al dvnne ;² ² corr.: doun
 Your blood ryal, whiche now pat³ no man) ³ Ar. 20 wh. pat now
 In these dayes remembre noon) hyere can), 1181
 This wil 3e spylle right vp-on [3e] ground.
 Your counseyl in this is neyther saue ne sounde.” 1183

Cam. 21m.

Bk. V. Ch. 21.

“O wycked counsel !” seyde the mayde ageyn), 1184
 “Go to youre werkis, and thenke no more on me !
 ffy on beute, that wil with wynde and reyn)
 Be steyned ful sone ! my fayrenesse whiche pat 3e
 Complayne soo sore, though [pat] I lyue [parde]¹ 1188
 And falle in age, yet wil it [3an] apeyre ; ¹ MS. so longe
as it may be
 Thanne for my flesh falle ye not in dyspeyre ! 1190
 “But troste ye this as for a sekernesse : 1191
 Alle oure bodyes, be thei neuere so bryght,
 Shal deye and rote¹ in her wretchednesse— ¹ r. roten
 ffor this same deth longeth on-to vs be² right, ² *al.* of

her body will
die and rot.

1165 lese 1166 a w. 1167 solenly. sette 1168 no c. . lede ne
 1174 he om. wyll 3e lese 1176 consell 1177 whyght. sune 1179
 wylbe. dunne 1180 reall 1181 no 1182 3e gr. 1183 counsell
 1188 3ow; pat I lyue parde 1189 it 3an 1194 of rygth

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 21.</i>	Condemned for synne be the prouydens & the sight	1195
Katharine says that	Of god oure lord. what shal we thanne soo wayle ffor fykel beute that soo sone wyl quayle?	1197
every man must rot,	“Euery man) muste thus, as of necessitye, Deye and rote, but if that speeyal grace Be graunted to some of that deite—	1198
save those pure folk	ffor somme with clennessen ben ¹ there þat purchase Swiche dispensacyon) þat in what-manner place Thei be leyde, thei shal neuere rote, fflessh ne senewe[s], veynes, sheete ne cote.	1202 1204
to whom exemption is graunted.	“This speeyalte is to hem graunted heere That keepe here bodyes fro al onclennesse Of lust and filthe, and fro that loue on-clere Whiche þei calle letcherie—it is no loue, I gesse, I calle it rathere a wylde rage of wodenesse. But now to purpos: thei þat keepe hem clene, Thei haue this pardon) graunted, as I wene;	1205 1209 1211
	“And if my lord my loue wil graunte it me That after my deeth my flessh shal not rote, Thanne am I more bounde on-to his deyte Thanne euere I was, & ¹ this I hym be-hote, There shal neuere man) make me soo to doote That I shal leue his loue or his plesauns.	1212 1216
The people	Therefore ye puple, leue this obseruauns, “ffolweth noo lengere, gooth hom) to your werke, Weepe not for me, but for your-self ye wayle! I shal deye bodyly, but be-cause I haue the merke Of cryetes baptem), I shal skape that grete asayle	1218 1219 1223
are to wait for themselves, not for her.	Of alle the feendes whiche with grete trauayle Are ful besy oure soules for to gete On-to her preson) where thei shal hem bete.	1225
She will escape the Devil,	“This shal I escape, and efte ¹ ryse ageyn), In fayrere foorme than) euere ye seyn) in me—	1226
and rise fairer than ever.		

1197 fekyll 1199 but of 1201 be 1204 senowis 1208 it is
om. 1215 & þis 1225 persone 1227 sey

I beleue and troste this thyng as for certeyn). Bk. V. Ch. 21.

Therefore, seres, for youre-selue weepe yee,
ffor youre errour that ye in derkenesse bee ! 1230

ffor if ye deye[n] in this same errour, ^{1 Ar. rysyng}
Youre rerynge¹ ageyn) shal cause you grete dolour." 1232

Many of hem þat herde[n] hir thus speke, 1233 Many who
hear Katha-
rine, turn to
Christ.

Were conuerted to crist, oure saueour ;
fful preuyly her maumentis dede thei breke
Whiche þat thei hadde in ful grete honour ;
With-drowe hem fro synne and wayled her errour, 1237

Al preuyly, soole, heuy as oony leed,
ffor natural fer, that thei shulde not be deed. 1239

Cap. 22^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 22.

There was a man) in Alisaundre at þat tyme, 1240

Meyer and leedere of alle the puple there The Mayor of
Alexandria

Vnder the emperour, punyshere of alle cryme ;
Of whom the cytee had ful meche[l] fere,
Venemous in anger was he as a¹ bere, ^{1 al, any} 1244 is a bad man,

Dispetous, vengeable, with-oute discrecyon)—
Cursates thei called hym thurgh-oute þe toun). 1246 Cursates.

he sey the emperour in anger and wodnesse, 1247 He advises
the Emperor

And of pure malice sette hym more on feere ;
“O emperour,” he seyde, “thy wysdam, as I gesse,
Shulde make the ashamed of this matere heere,
That oon wenche shulde brynge the thus in dwere ; 1251

Thou standest stoynd as though þou were bounde.
listen) my counseyl therfore now a stounde. 1253

“This mayde Kataryn) sey yet noo torment 1254

Whiche shulde fese hir, to make hir afrayed ;

Therfore, sir, I telle you myn) entent :

We shal make thyng soo horrybely arayed

to make a
horrible
engine of
torture for
Katharine.

1231 deye 1233 herde 1238 And pr. 1241 ledyr (!) 1242
punchers 1243 mechille 1244 venemhous. ony bere 1245 dis-
pitous ueniabill 1249 wisdom) 1251 o 1254 Katereyne 1255
hir 2 om. 1256 ser 1257 a þing (a overlined)

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 22.</i>	It shal be dred or it be fully assayed ;	1258
	lete hir see oonys this thyng I shal denyse,	
	She shal leue sone thanne, I trowe, al this gyse.	1260
The Emperor's workmen are	“Commaunde werkmen) for to obeye to me,	1261
	I shal be mayster, thei shal doo her werke ;	
	ffor I haue conceyued now a newe cruelte,	
	fful sekirly therof haue I take my merke.	
	In this mater bothe counterollere and clerke	1265
	Wil I bee, and noo man) but my-selue,	
	Werkemen) wil I haue with me ten) or twelue.	1267
	“Thus haue I deuysed in my besy thought :	1268
to make 4 great Wheels	ffoure grete qwheles thus shul we make,	
	In swiche-maner wyse shal thei be wrought,	
	What-maner thyng that euere thei take	
	Anoon) in pecis thei shul it reende & shake	1272
	With her sharpenesse whiche þei shul haue ;	
	ffor alle the spokes that come fro the naue,	1274
with sharp nails on their spokes,	“Shul haue nayles sharpe as a knyf,	1275
	I-fastned to the sercles rounde al-about.	
	There is no man) now that bereth lyf,	
	Be his herte neuere soo styf and stoute,	
	And he be oonys In, hee cometh not oute	1279
	Or he be deed and al to peces drawe—	
	Right be experiens þis thing shal ye knawe.	1281
and saws on their fellies, hookt,	“Sharpe sawes shul thei haue somewhat croked,	1282
	Nayled on-to the wheles on þe vtter syde ;	
	In swiche-maner foorme thus shul þei be hooked,	
	Eche of hem) be other fful sotilly shal glyde,	
some up, some down, that will tear everything between them to bits.	Somme shul come vpward with her cours wyde,	1286
	Somme shul goo downward, & þus shal þei rende	¹ MS. and
	Alle thyng be-twyx hem) & thereof maken) an ¹ ende.	1288
	“Therefore lete these wheles be made now in hast ;	1289
	Sette the mayde right be-[twyxx] ² hem whan) þat thei goo,	
	² MS. be, Ar. 20 be-twene	
	1259 þat I 1265 controllere 1276 I-fastned 1279 com 1281 we	
	1283 qwelys 1286 shalle 1288 make 1289 qweles. now om. 1290 be	

She shal ben) afrayed, or she hem taast—

Bk. V. Ch. 22.

There is noo man) lyuenge hath seen) swiche wheles moo.

Katharine
will be afraid
of these awful
Wheels.

This same deuyse shal plesse youre lordshipe soo," 1293

Seyde this Cursates, "ye shuln) cun) me thanke;

Yonder wil we make hem) right on the banke." 1295

The emperour commaunded, & þat in hasty wyse, 1296

The Emperor
orders
Cursates's
Wheels.

These wheles shul[1] be made, & þat an-noon),

Right as Cursates thus can¹ deuyse. ^{1 = gan}

Thei arn) called foorth, bothe robyn) and Iohn),

Carpenters and smygthes, as faste as þei may goon); 1300

Thei hewe and thei blewe ful soore, leueth me!

The wheelles musten) be redy with-inne dayes thre. 1302

Cap^m. 23^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 23.

Now it is come, the same thredde day; 1303

On the 3rd
day the
Wheels are
ready,

The wheelles arn) redy sette as thei shal bee;

She is brought fortht, Kataryn) þis same may,

Right betwix hem sette now is she; ^{1 MS. before seyde we}

and Katha-
rine is set
between
them.

Too wheelles goo downward, as [we seyde, parde],¹ 1307

And too reende vpward—there is noon) that it seeth

But for feer he gruggeth with his teeth. 1309

O noble mayde, hough shalt þou scape this thyng? 1310

This Irous emperour, he is noot thi frende,

The meyer is cruel in his ymagynyng,

ffor he hath stodied with al herte and meende

This virgynal body to destroye and shende; 1314

There is noo comforte but fro the courte aboue—

She has no
comfort but
Jesus.

he wil not fayle the, Ihesu that is thi loue. 1316

Thus is she sette, and likly to be reent, 1317

With al her labour the seruauunt's dresse her gere;

Thei tarye somewhat [be-cause] that hir entent

Thei wene to chaunge[n] right for very fere.

1291 be. he 1292 sey 1294 shulle 1297 shuld. anone 1298
gan 1299 are 1300 Carpenteres. smythes 1302 must 1303 is
it. þat s. thrid 1304 are 1307 as we seyde parde 1308 seythe
1310 who shalle 1311 nothe 1312 meyhur 1318 hir 1319 be-cause
þat 1320 chaunge

Bk. V. Ch. 23. hir eyne and handes ful mekely gan she rere 1321
 Vp on-to heuene, swiche was hir oryson: ¹ *al. om.*

Katharine prays to God "Lord god," she seyde, "that made bothe¹ sonne & mon),

"Lord that art al-mygthy in mageste, 1324

Thou can alle thynges and may fulfille in dede ;

Lord that neuere hydest thy grete pytee

fro tho folke that cry[n]e on-to the at nede,

O lord of lordis, my prayere þou may spede : 1328

I prey the, lord, with ful besy entent

That þou destroye this horryble newe torment ; 1330

to strike the
 Torture-
 Wheels with
 lightning,

"Make thi thunder descende now with the leuene, 1331

Brenne it, breke it, lord ; this tyme, I praye,

Shewe thi power, open now thy heuene,

That men may knowe þi lordshype at this daye—

It is ful esy to the to make heere swiche afraye, 1335

And to the puple it is ful merueylous.

Goode blyssed lord, þat art soo gracyous, 1337

not because
 she fears
 Death,

"This aske I not for ony fere of deeth, 1338

But for thi¹ puple that standeth² here-about ; ¹ *r. the ?* ² *al. stand*

Me thenketh, lord, her langage myn hert sleeth,

That þei with toungeis and woordis proude and stoute

Shuld blaspheme thy name, and putte in doute 1342

Thi true feyth. this is, lord, my cause,

To shryue me shortly to the in a clause, 1344

but that the
 folk may be
 converted,

"That thei shulde troste thi myght & þi powere 1345

And honoure thi name, [&] be conuerted eke,

Be turned fro maumentis whiche þei wurshiþe heere,

and turn to
 God.

The, lord, onoly her god for to seeke.

This prey I the with herte lowe and meke ; 1349

Graunte me this as thou art omnyotent,

Suffre not thi seruauentis with maumentis be circumuent !"

1321 yne 1323 bothe om. . sune 1325 & myn f. 1327 cryne
 1331 þi l. 1332 lord om. I the 1333 thy 1335 to 2 om. 1339
 stand 1346 & be 1348 þe lord godd only forto a.

Cap^m. 24^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 24.

- W**hanne þat this lady had ended hir orison), 1352 At Katharine's prayer
 A-noon) an) aungel was sent doun fro heuene ;
 With wynde and thunder tho cam) he doun),
 There cam) with hym) eke an horryble leuene—
 The houre of the day, thei sey, it was but seuene, 1356
 But er eyte ; he with wynd and feere
 Brake alle the wheles, thei fley) heere and there, 1358 the Torture-Wheels fly in pieces,
 Thei spryngyn) aboute be pecys in the place. 1359
 Somme haue¹ harm) on legges and on) knes, ¹ Sum man hath
 Somme men² arn) hurt on handes and on) face. ² *al. om.*
 The feer fley [ful] wundryrly with the trees.
 Meche of the puple haue take there her fees : 1363
 Thei that blasphemed oure god with cruel herte,
 ffor this vengeauns thei may not lightly sterte ; 1365 and kill the blasphemers,
 The lady sat stille, for she felt noo grevauns, 1366
 Makyng hir preyer with gret deuocyon).
 Thus can) oure lord for hese make purueauns,
 Thus can) he shape hem her sauacyon).
 Thus dede he somtyme in the calde nacyon) 1370
 Whan) that his seruau^ts in the ouene were sette,
 Where that þe feer of his myght was lette ; 1372
 ffor thei in the ouene were noo-thing brent, 1373
 But þei a-boute it, thei took the harm).
 This lady is lyke hem in this myracle present :
 The fyre fley aboute hir, and in hir barm)
 It rested ofte-tyme, but she was not warm), 1377 though Katharine is unhurt.
 Ne hurt ne harmed in no-manner degree.
 Yet was this fyre soo horryble that hee 1379

Brente the wheles and threw hem) alle-about^e,¹ 1380 4000 Pagans are burnt.
 Brent men eke, and tho were not fewe²— ¹ This v. follows 1383 in the MS. ² *r. a fewe?*

1353 a 1357 or 1358 breke. qwelys. fley 1359 spryng 1360
 Summe man hathe 1361 men om. are 1362 þere fley fere ful w.
 1368 his 1375 lyche 1377 of tyme 1379 fere 1380 alle om.

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 24.</i>	ffoure thousand, sey[th] oure story with-oute[n] dowte, Were ded with the blast, leyde alle on) rewe Of hethen) caytyues, [shrew rith be shrewe], ¹ 1384 herowdes noumbred hem) for thei can) best. ¹ MS. right a shrewde rowte
Katharine sits still.	The lady sat stille in hir holy nest, 1386 Knelande deuoutely in sobyr prayere. 1387
The Angel and Fire go back to Heaven.	The Aungeſt and feer bothe thei took her weye To place thei can) fro—for ¹ men) myght hem here ¹ al. om. Bothe in her comyng and goynge, thei seye. Mechel fook ¹ for feere were in poynt to deye, 1391 Saue þat the comforte of this swete may ¹ al. folke Lefte hem) a-geyn ² fro þat afray. ² Ar. 20 vp ageyn 1393 This is the ende of al this costful werke. 1394
The Heathen are sad,	hoo arn) now woo but hethen men) there? hoo arn) now mery, hoo gonne her frontes merke
the Christians glad.	But crysten) folkys, whiche han) skaped this feere? 1397 Somme ¹ for vengeauns may not goo ne stere. ¹ al. Sum men Thus oon) syde is in Ioye, the other in sorwe & care. Of swliche-maner vengeauns lete euery man) be ware! 1400

*Bk. V. Ch. 25.*Ca^m. 25^m.

The Emperor is wild,	N ow is the emperour oute of mesure wood, 1401 ffor alle fayleth and falleth þat now shul[d] ¹ stande; ffor very anger he rente habyte and hood, ¹ al. shuld now
and reproaches Saturn	“Saturne,” he seyde, “why take ye not on hande Youre owen) cause ¹ ? for, as I vndirstande, ¹ MS. causes 1405 This vengeauns is repugnynge to <i>your</i> deyte. Where is now youre myght? where is now hee, 1407
and Jupiter.	“Iubiter, youre sone, that hath the gouernauns 1408 Ouere these ciclopes, smethes I mene, Whiche with her thunder make the erthe to dauns, Soo it is aferd of tho strokes keene?

1382 seythe . wyth-outen³ 1383 on rowe 1384 shrew rith be
shrewe 1385 heraudes . coud 1389 for om. 1391 Meche folke
1393 lyft 1394 al om. 1395 who are n. who 1396 gune . frutes
1397 folke . hathe 1398 Sume mene 1399 o 1402 shuld now
1405 cause 1409 smythis 1410 erde

But ye defende yow, youre offerynge wil be lene. 1412 *Bk. V. Ch. 25.*
 Rise vp ye goddis, and suffre not þis wrong! ¹ Ar. 168 wondlr
 Me thenketh, ye abyde now wondyrly¹ long." 1414

In al this care the queen), that stood aboue 1415 *The Queen,
 who has seen
 all,*
 hy in a tour for to be-holde this sight,
 Whiche on-to that tyme had bore the loue
 fful preuyly in hir herte of god al-mygth,
 Now wil she pleylny [rith] be-forn) hy[s s]ight¹ 1419 *resolves to
 speak out.*
 Vtter hir herte, falle there-of what falle; ¹ MS. hym right
 She is come down), and hir seruau^tis alle, 1421

To the presens of hir lord; thus thanne she sayde: 1422
 "Thou wretched husbonde, what [h]ast þou I-doo? *She upbraids
 the Emperor
 with his
 cruelty,*
 Whi tormentest þou soo wrongly this goodly mayde?
 A-geyn the grete god whi wrestillest þou soo?
 What woodenesse maketh the with care & woo 1426
 To pursue goddis seruau^tis with payne & deeth?
 O cruel best, whan) þou shalt yelde thi breth, 1428

"Wh[i]dir¹ wylt þou sende thi wretchede goost? 1429
 Thou fyghtest ageyn) the prykke, þat shalt þou fynde;
 ffor whan thou art hiest and in pryde most, ¹ MS. whedir *and tells him
 that God will
 abuse his
 pride.*
 Oure lord god ful soore shal the hynde.
 Turne thyn) bestialte to mannys mynde! 1433
 knowe the grete power of thi god aboue,
 Whiche werketh soo wonderly for hem þat hym) loue! 1435

"The grete myghty god of crysten men), 1436
 See what he dede this ilke same day:
 With oon) thunder-clap, of thi lordis, ten) *He has seen
 God slay 10
 of his Lords,*
 Smet he to deth—þou thi-self it say;
 ffoure thousand of [þe] comouns in her aray 1440 *and 4000 of
 his commons.*
 Thei lyn) yonder ded—hoo shal hem reyse?
 If appollo doo it, I wil than hym¹ preyse. ¹ *al.* hym than 1442

1414 now om. 1416 hey 1417 to om. 1418 hir om. 1419
 ryth before his syth 1421 now come 1422 the om. 1423 hast
 1425 wrestyllist 1429 whidir 1430 fytyst. shalle 1433 þi 1434
 þi, grete om. 1436 myty 1438 a 1439 þe dethe 1440 þe comonys
 1441 ly. who. 1442 hym þan

Bk. V. Ch. 25.

The Queen
bids the
Emperor
forsake his
Idols and
turn to God.

"he that with oon) strook may swyche thyng make,
he is a lord : I counseyl,¹ knowe hym for thi kyng ! 1444
Thi false maumentrye I reede thou forsake, ¹ I c. al. om.
Turne the to that lord that made al thyng !
The synnes that we dede w[h]il we were ying, 1447
he wil forgeue vs, if we mercy craue ;
Aske mercy of hym) and thou shal it haue." 1449

Whan the tiraunt herde what the queen) sayde, 1450
"Woman)," seyde he, "wote ye what ye say ?
I am ful seker ye haue spoken)¹ with the mayde ¹ al. 3e spoke
Whan) I was oute on the² other day. ² al. on om.; þis 1453
A-vyse yow³ som)what beter [or 3e asay]⁴ ³ MS. yow weel
⁴ MS. of this afay, oneras.
The horryble peynes whiche þat ye shal haue,
Youre freendes ne youre kynrede shal you not saue. 1456

He threatens
her with
horrible
punishments,

"ffor be the hye mageste of oure goddis alle, ¹ al. om.
And be the gracyous¹ pr[o]uydens² of Iubiter, oure³ kyng,
But 3e fro these fonnes,⁴ and that in hast, falle, ³ al. þe
Dame, ye shal haue as foule an endyng ⁴ al. þis fonnednes
As euere had woman), eyther old or ying, 1461
In youre dayes. therfore avyse you weel !
ffor, thou youre god hath broken) oure whel 1463

unless she
gives up the
Christians.

"[Be]¹ wytche-craft or [be] nygromauncye, ¹ MS. In 1464
Troste me in this, we shal ordeyne a mene
ffor to destroye the¹ fals tretcherye. ¹ al. 3our
What, art thou [now], dame, led on that rene ?
Thi witte¹ counte I not worth a beene ¹ MS. with 1468
Whan) þou forsakest þi goddis protectyon)
And as a fool takest the crysten illusyon)." 1470

Bk. V. Ch. 26.

Cp. 26m.

He orders her
to be seizd.

Thus in his anger and in his grete Ire 1471
he byddeth his mynystres to take the queene,

1443 a 1444 I counseyl om. 1452 3e spoke 1453 on om. þis
1454 weel om. sumwhat or þat 3e asay 1455 shul 1456 kynrod
1457 be þat. of þe 1458 be þat. gracyous om. prouydens. þe
kyng 1459 þis fonnednes 1460 an om. 1461 eld 1464 Be. or be
1466 3oure f. 1467 þou now 1468 witte. I om. w. to a 1469 þe g.

- With sotil launces made of Iern) wyre 1473 *Bk. V. Ch. 26.*
- Thei shul¹ rende hir tetes right a-noon) be-deene ; ¹ MS. shuld The Emperor
In his presens it shal be doo,² for he wil it seene ; ² *al.* þei shal orders his
do it Queen's tents
longe peyne and woo³ he wil his wyf shal haue, ³ *al.* Long sorow to be torn
out,
"lete see," he seyth, "if crist shal hir now saue !" 1477
- After this is doon), he wil thei hir take, 1478
- leede hir to the feeld there tretours alle
han) as thei haue deserued ;¹ tey hir to a stake,
Smyte of hir hed & lete it down) falle ; ¹ *al.* deserue, haue om. and her head
lete it lyn) there, hungry dogg's shalle 1482 struck off,
for dogs to
ete it and deuoure in despyte of Ihesu. ¹ *al.* men eat.
- As the tiraunt bad, his seruau^ts¹ dede pursue : 1484
- Thei pulled hir tetes in ful horryble wyse 1485 His men pull
Right fro hir brest—pitee it was to¹ see ¹ MS. te her teats out.
- Th[e]² blood in the veynes with the mylke ryse ; ² MS. That
Al rent and ragged and³ blodly was shee. ³ *al.* all
- Yet on-to Kataryn) she fel down) on knee, 1489 She kneels,
preyng ful doolfully, and ryght thus she sayde : and begs
"O crysten p[eler],¹ o moost holy mayde, ¹ MS. puple 1491 Katharine
- 'Prey now for me on-to thi lord aboue, 1492 to pray that
- That this peyne whiche I suffre heere
Oonly for his wurshiþe, his feyth & his loue,
May ben) to my soule a sufficyent cheere
Whan) I shal come to that blis ful cleere 1496 she may go
Whiche thou be-hight me not longe agoo. to heaven,
- Prey eke for me that I may kepe alsoo 1498
- "The same good purpos whiche I am Inne, 1499
- That this peyne horryble makemenot reneye ¹ *al.* þis holy lyfe, to and not deny
turne agayne to synne. the Christian
The lawe of you cristen, for more ne for mynne ;¹ faith.
I am soore² a-feerde my flesh, er þat I deye, ² MS. ful s.
ffor very dreed the contrarie shuld seye : 1503

1473 yrn 1474 shul 1475 þei shall do it 1476 longe sorow.
and woo om. þat his 1479 tretours 1480 haue. haue om. ;
deserue 1482 lye . it schalle 1483 it om. 1484 hys men 1486
from 1487 þe 1488 all bl. 1490 euyz inst. of ryght 1491
pelere 1495 be . sufficyaunt 1501 þis holy lyffe to turne ageyne
to synne 1502 ful om. . or 1503 þe c. of þis

Bk. V. Ch. 26.

Wherefor, lady,—al this lyth in the,—
prey thou to god that he may kepe me!" 1505

Katharine
assures the
Queen that

she has won
Christ,

The mayde¹ seyde on-to the queen) ageyn) : ¹ r. mayden 1506
"O blyssed lady, þat hast forsake al thyng,
Croune and Loye, shortly for to seyn),
And wonne the therfore oure heuene kyng,¹ ¹ *al. þe lufe þerfore*
Crist I mene; make now noo stakeryng ^{of oure k.} 1510
As in this mater, for he shal make the strong
ffor whoos loue þow sufferest [now þis]¹ wrong. ¹ MS. meche

She will
please Him
by her
suffering,

and will see
His face this
day.

"Suffre¹ hertely al this grete disese, ¹ MS. Suffre now 1513
It shal not lesten) but a lytil space;
Cryst youre lord her-with shal ye plese,
Whiche hath graunted of his specyal grace
That this same day shal ye seen) his face. 1517
A meruelous chaunge, lady, shal it bee,
Whanne þat ye come be-forn the trinite : 1519

Katharine
will soon join
her.

The Emperor
bids his men
make an end
of the Queen.

ffor temporal lond, ye shal¹ haue heuene[ly] blys; 1520
ffor erthely husbonde, y[our]¹ spouse shal bee he² ¹ MS. ye ² MS. he bee
That may alle thyng a-mende³ þat is a-mys, ² *al. am. all þing*
A lord þat dwelleth euere in felicyte,
A lord þat hath neuere [non]¹ aduersite; ¹ MS. ony 1524
Thus shal ye chaunge, lady, on-to the beste.
I shal not long ben) absent fro þat reste."¹ ¹ *al. nest* 1526

Thus is she comforted, this noble cristen) queene,¹ 1527
Thus is she stabled myghtyly in oure feyth, ¹ In the MS. v.
Thus is she led with knyghtis, as I wene, ^{1527 and 9 are}
And euere the emperour on-to his meny seyth ^{transposed.}
fful boystous woordis, strokis eke he leyth 1531
Vp-on) her bakkys, that they shulde make an ende
Of this woman). for now hir tetes¹ thei reende, 1533

1504 lyghte 1509 þe lufe þerfore of. heuene om. 1512 lufe.
now þis w. 1513 now om. 1514 lest 1517 se 1519 þat om.
before 1520 3e shul. heuenly 1521 þoure sp. shalbe he 1522
amend alle þing 1524 non 1525 shul 1526 be. nest 1527-9 in
their right place. 1532 a c. 1533 for hire tetys now

As I seyde her; anon¹ after that grete payne, 1534 *Bk. V. Ch. 20.*
 With a sharp swerd hir hed of thei smyte— ¹ *al. and* *The Queen's*
 Oure lord god to suffre graunte hir myght & mayne² *head is*
 with grete pacyens al þis same vnrighte. ² *al. O. l. g. strenghid* *smitten off.*
 Thus is¹ passed hir soule to heuene² lighte 1538 *Her soul goes*
 Whiche is endeles, right as we beleue. ¹ *al. is she* ² *al. is to þat* *to Heaven,*
 The thre and twenty day of nouembre right at eue, 1540 *on Nov. 23.*
 And on a wedenesday was this martyrdom 1541
 Thus consummat. hir body when it¹ was dede, ¹ *MS. þat it* *Her body is*
 Was left stille vnberied,² in despite of cristendam, ² *al. om.* *left unburied.*
 lyande ful faire coloured, both^e white and rede,³ ³ *al. = Rawl.*
 No man¹ soo hardy to wynden hir⁴ in clooth or leed— 1545 ⁴ *al. it*
 Thus bad the emperour of his cruelte; ¹ *al. om.* ² *al. þouzt.*
 And¹ that she lay thus, moche folk had² pyte. 1547

Cap^m. 27^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 27.

NOW is the nyght come, and on-to her rest 1548 *At night,*
 Is euery man¹ goo that was abydyng there.
 Porphyrye thought it was most¹ honest ¹ *al. om.* 1550 *Porphyry*
 And eke [m]edeful² this body for to rere, ² *MS. nedef.*
 Eke³ to the beryenge deuoutely it [to] bere: ³ *MS. And eke*
 Therfore cleped he certeyn¹ knyght's to hym, *and his*
 And whan¹ the wedyr was ful derk and dym¹, 1554 *knights*

Right in the wyntyr a-boute seynt Katarynes day, 1555
 he cam to the body with ful holy entent,
 Euene in [hir lyuand]¹ ryght as she lay; ¹ *MS. the lyuene, Ar.*
 With ful swete and costeful onyment *20 hyr lymyn*
 he baumed the body, and foorth with it he went. 1559 *embalm and*
 With preyere, wepyng and ful besy cure *bury the*
 Thus thei lede it on-to the sepulture. 1561 *Queen's body.*

1534 ere and after . peyne 1535 a om. . smythe 1536 Oure l. g.
 strenghid hire to susteyne 1537 vnrythe 1538 is she . hire s. is
 to þat lythe 1539 wheche was 1541 wednesday 1542 þat om.
 1543 vnberied om. 1544 lyinge þer fulle white & eke fulle rede
 1545 wynd it 1546 had 1547 And om. þouthe pyte 1548 nythe
 1550 most om. 1551 medfulle 1552 And om. . to bere 1553
 called . knythis onto 1555 kateryne 1557 in hire lyuand 1559
 hire b. . he om. 1561 on om.

*Bk. V. Ch. 27.*Question
being raised,
who buried
the Queen,Porphyry
boldlyblames the
Emperor for
torturing
Katharine
and killing
his wife.He, Por-
phyry, buried
the Queen,to save her
body from
being eaten
by dogs.

The nexte day after¹ is² grete questyon) 1562
 hoo beryed the queen), hoo was soo hardy ¹ *al. om.* ² *al. is per*
 To fallen) in³ sueche greuous transgressyon) ³ *MS. in to*
 To remene or bere¹ this ladyes² body? ¹ *al. bery* ² *al. same*
 Oonly for¹ suspecyon) certeyn) foolkis² openly 1566
 Weren arested be the offyceris there, ¹ *al. of* ² *al. folke*
 And porphyrie boldly with-outen) fere 1568
 Appered to the emperour, and thus he sayde: 1569
 "Sethen þou art lord, and Iustyse shuldest keepe,
 Whi [h]ast thou tormented thus this holy mayde?
 Thi owen) wyues heed of dede þou¹ sweepe— ¹ *MS. þou dede*
 Grete cause hauest þou soore for to weepe! 1573
 These Innocentis eke this is þin entent
 With-outen) cause now to doo¹ torment. ¹ *al. om.* 1575
 "Cece of thi Ire, cece of thi wronge, 1576
 Leue thi besynesse of Inquysy[cy]on)!
 I telle the pleynly, þough þou shul¹ me hong, ¹ *al. om.*
 I am that man) whiche with deuocyon)
 þat beryed thi wyf—I thought it reson),¹ 1580
 And² ful weel a-cordynge to nature, ¹ *al. me th. it no treson,* ² *But*
 To brynge that body [on]-to sepulture. 1582
 "Where hast þou seen) sweche cruelnesse? 1583
 Yet theues¹ and robbouris whan thei arn) dede, ¹ *al. to th.*
 her frendes han) leue of the lawe, I gesse,
 To wynde hem in clothes, in boord¹ or leede, ¹ *MS. in boord
in clothes*
 To solace her neyghbouris with drynk and breede. 1587
 Al this is turned ageyn) discrecyon),
 Ageyn) keende eke and¹ ageyn) relygyon). ¹ *al. om.* 1589
 "Where lerned þou euere þat beestis shulde ete 1590
 Bodyes of men), of alle creaturis best?

1562 after om. is *per* 1563 who 1564 falle. to sueche om. 1565
 bery þis same body 1566 of s. folke 1567 were 1568 ful boldly
 1570 Sithe . a lord . shuld 1571 hast. thus om. 1572 thin . of
 þede þou s. 1573 hast 1575 doo om. 1576 Chese . þin ire. 1577
 in I. 1578 shul om. 1580 þat om. me thout it no treson) 1581
 But. weel om. acordand on-to 1582 onto 1583 seyn) 1584 yete
 to . are 1585 haue 1586 in clothis in bord 1587 or br. 1589
 kynd . and om. 1590 lered

Thus writen) oure Antouris and þus þei trete :

Bk. V. Ch. 27.

It is neyther wurshipful ne¹ honest ¹ *al. ne ek*On-to mankeende to foule¹ soo his nest. ¹ *Ar. defoule* 1594

Sir emperour, I confesse heere, þis dede haue I doo :

Porphyry
declares that
he buried
the Queen.Punysh¹ notȝ þese Innocentis, but lete hem goo !” 1596¹ *MS. Punysh þou*Cap^m. 28^m.

Bk. V. Ch. 28.

These woordis of porphirye, thei arn) a wounde 1597The Emperor
is greatly
hurt by
Porphyry's
words.

On-to Maxcens-is herte : for he made a cry,

Whan) he had sor[o]wed a litel stounde,

Soo grete and soo loude, the halle, whiche was hy,

Sounded with the noyse ; the very malencoly 1601

Made hym soo wood he wiste not what he sayde.

But sone after suche woordis he up brayde : 1603

“O me most wretched of alle men) þat leue ! 1604

Wherto brought nature me on-to lyf ?

Whi wolde she to me suche astate geue,

He blames
Nature for
killing his
wife,

Whanne she thus wretchedly hath taken my wyf ?

had she suffered me with a sharpe knyf 1608

Be steked in my cradel, she had doo þe best !

ffor¹ now am I reued of my² dewe reste. ¹ *al. om.* ² *al. all my*

“ffor porphirie here, on whom I most trost, 1611

and depriving
him of his
best friend,
Porphyry,A,¹ porphiry now,² the beste frende I haue, ¹ *al. om.* ² *al. here*My good³ porphirye, my gentel³ knyght, is⁴ lost, ³ *al. om.* ⁴ *al. þus is he*So disceyued of witchecraft þat he gynne[th]¹ to² raue.Euene as the spokes resten in the naue, ¹ *MS. gynned* ² *om. in Ar. 168* 1615

Soo in his breste stood al my comforte ;

To swiche a-nother frend can I neuere resorte. 1617

“He dysceyued my wyf, but she now is ded ; 1618

he hath disceyued hym-self, that greueth me most.

who is self-
deceivd.

1592 þus oure a. wrythe 1593 ne eke h. 1594 mankynd . to
folow his own' n. 1595 sere 1596 punche not 1597 aren 1598 is
om. 1599 sorowed 1601 sounded 1603 sweche 1604 lyue 1605
on om. 1606 gyue 1607 take 1608 a om. 1609 stykyd 1610
ffor om. alle my 1611 of wh. 1612 A om. here 1613 good om.
gentel om. þus is he l. 1614 begynnyth raue 1615 rest in here n.
1618 deceyuyd. now om.

Bk. V. Ch. 28. Myn herte is waxen¹ as² heuy as ony leed, ¹ *al. it waxith* ² *al. om.*

The Emperor Soo am I comered with thoughtis in my goost.
is sad.

Allas, my porphirye! I durste a made a boost: 1622

Though al my kyngdam had me forsake,
ffals to my croune no man shuld the make! 1624

“Yet, though thou hast¹ doon this grete despite, 1625

Disseyued my wyf and² disseyued thi-selue, ¹ *al. haue* ² *al. but*

Yet of þi treson thou shalt haue respyte;

He will give
Porphyry
12 days to
forsake that
elf Christ,

Ten dayes I graunte the or ellis twelue:

Leue þat¹ crysten company, forsake þat elue, ¹ *al. þis* 1629

Ihesu of nazareth—he dede neuere man good,

he is cause of spillyng of¹ mekel gentel blood. ¹ *overl.* 1631

“If þou wilt leue this newe cursed scole, 1632

and so escape
death.

Thou shalt haue grace þou shalt not deye.

Soo wyse a man now made a foole!

hoo caused the soo¹ sone to reneye ¹ *al. hym þus*

The holy relygion, the very¹ true weye ¹ *al. eld, olde* 1636

Whiche that oure faderis kepten with-oute¹ mynde?

Allas man, alas! thi reson is ful blynde.” ¹ *Ar. out of* 1638

Bk. V. Ch. 29.

Cam. 29m.

The Emperor
examines all
his knights,

Right with this langage th[e]¹ emperour dede calle 1639
Alle the knyghtis of the courte be oon & oon,

he examyned hym-self that tyme hem alle ¹ *MS. that*

how that thei thoughten the¹ mater shulde goon. ¹ *al. this*

fful doolfully to hem he made his moon, 1643

“Be-holde,” he seyth, “how my porphirye

Al sodeynly is fallen on-to this myserye! 1645

“I hope it is to you not¹ but ignorauns, ¹ *al. om.* 1646

and threatens
them if they
side with
Porphyry.

If that ye faouere now hym¹ in his dede, ¹ *Ar. hym now*

But ye be ware of that grete vengeauns

Whiche may falle with-uten drede

1620 My h. it waxith. as 1 om. as þe 1621 acomered 1625 haue
do 1626 but inst. of and 1627 shall 1629 þis e. 1631 meche
1633 shalle 1 1635 hyme thus 1636 þe eld trew 1637 kipt 1639
þe e. 1640 the 1 om. & be 1642 who. thouthe þis 1644 Be-
holdith. who 1645 I-falle 1646 not om. 1647 now om. 1648
be 3e 1649 wheche þat

O[n] swiche renegates that other men leede ¹ MS. of 1650 *Bk. V. Ch. 29.*
ffro her trewe lawes, hough wil ye answer?"

Alle seyden tho¹ thus, that stoden there: ¹ *al. thei* 1652

"Be it knowen) to the now, sir emperour, 1653
That god and lord whiche this same man)
honoureth at this tyme, ihesu oure saueour, 1655

The
Emperor's
knights all
avow their
Christianity,

This same god we¹ with al that we may & can) ¹ *al. om.*
hym¹ wil we² euere seruen), curse pou or ban), ¹ *al. om.*
Endyte thou or smyte pou¹ with tormentis strange; ² *al. We wil*
Leue this weel, pou shalt vs neuere chaunge. ¹ *al. om.* 1659

"ff[e]re o[f]f¹ deth, or loue of lyf swete ¹ MS. fyre or 1660
May neuere departen) oure hertely loue
ffro Ihesu crist, the trueste prophete

and will
suffer death
for Christ.

That euere was sente fro heuene aboue;
Whan) peynes arn) plyed, than) shalt pou proue 1664

That alle oure hertis arn) sette thus¹ in oon) ¹ *al. om.*
In th[is]¹ same feyth, as stable as ony² stoon)." ¹ MS. the
² *al. the* 1666

The emperour commaunded in hasty wise 1667
Thei shulde be led on-to her passyon)—

He orders
them all to
be kild.

ffor of swyche renegates he wil be Iustise,
To venge the wronge whiche that was don)
Vp-on the goddis, þe sonne and the mon). 1671

Thus arn) thei led foorth tyl her ende;
Saue porphiry allone now thei haue noo frende. 1673

Porphyry

ffor he, to comforten hem with ful myghty feyth, 1674

On-to the emperour preceed there¹ he stood, ¹ *al. where*

Swiche-maner woordis at that tyme he seyth:

"Men wil wene¹ that thou be ny wood ¹ *r. wenen* 1677

rebukes him
for his folly.

To sle th[is]¹ puple thus² sodeynly in her blood ¹ MS. the
² *al. om.*

And lete me scape whiche stered hem alle.

ffor perel I counsel, whiche may falle 1680

1651 who 1652 seyð þei þus 1653 knowe . ser 1656 we 1 om.
1657 hym om. euere om. serue 1658 endithe . & smythe. pou om.
1659 shalle 1660 Sere of d. 1661 depart 1664 ar applied . shalle
1665 are . thus om. 1666 þis . as þe 1667 comaund 1672 are . to
1674 conforthe . myty 1675 where 1678 þis . thus om. 1680
perelle . wheche þat

*Bk. V. Ch. 29.*Porphyry
comforts the
knights,who, 200 in
number, have
their heads
cut off,and their
bodies are left
for dogs to
eat,on Friday,
Nov. 24.*Bk. V. Ch. 30.*The Emperor
has Katha-
rine up,
and saysshe is guilty
of the deaths
of his wife,
of Porphyry
and his
knights.

“On-to the and eke on-to thi londe, 1681

Euene with the membres take now þe heed!”

Thus seyde this man) as I vndirstond,

To comforte hem) þus er thei be deed;

Be-cause thei were of visage heuy as leed, 1685

he was adred ful soore þat thei shulde fayle

If thei with-oute hym had goon to [þis] batayle. 1687

Therefore after¹ his holy hertis desyre 1688Is he now serued, bounden) and foorth led. ^{1 at.} Wherefore euen a.

Thei were not brent as heretikes in fyre,

But in her martirdam) thus were thei sped:

Too hundret were there, [of] whiche not oon) fled, 1692

here hedes the emperour bad thei shuld of smyte.

This was her ende, shortly to endyte. 1694

The bodyes were lefte, þat doggis shulde [hem] ete, 1695
ffor very despite right of cristen) feyth.

[On] of the Auctouris whiche this legende trete

In very sothnesse thus writeth and seyth;

The day of her deth eke ful fayre he leyth 1699

Of nouembre moneth the foure and twenty eke,

The fyfte day also of the same weke. 1701

Cap^m. 30^m.

The nexte day fol[o]wyng he clepeth this mayde; 1702

Be-fore his trybunal now is she presente.

With ful sotil langage on-to hir he sayde

Alle [his] male-corage and his euele entent;

“Though þou be gylty,” he seyde, “of this torment 1706

Of porphyrye and¹ my wyf & my knyghtis alle— ^{1 at.} of
ffor fro her feith thou madest hem to falle, 1708^{1 at.} modyre

“With so[r]cery and myschauns þou hast turned hem,

Thei cowde neuere resorte on-to her moderis¹ wytte; 17101683 vnderstand 1684 or 1687 go to þis 1688 eyn) after
1689 bounde. & f. eke l. 1692 of wheche 1695 shuld hem 1697 On
of 1699 after inst. of of 1700 tw. day eke 1701 also om. þats. 1705
Alle þis male 1707 of inst. of and 1708 fier. made 1710 modyre

Thei dede more for the than for fadir or em ; ¹ *at. knottis þat 3e* *Bk. V. Ch. 30.*

I coude neuere perceyue the knot til it were¹ knytte— *The Emperor*

But deed are thei alle, [&] we repente not yitte ;— 1713

Mayden), þou may leue, if þou haue grace,

Not-withstondynge thyn treson & thi trespass. 1715

“ Wherefore I counseyl now on-to thi fonnednesse, 1716 *offers to forgive Katharine*

fforsake thy witchecraft, & wepe¹ and weyle ¹ *at. þi magik, wepe sore*

That euere were thou² soo boold in fool-hardynesse ² *at. thou were*

To yeue the queen) or porphirye swiche euele counseyle ;

ffro thi eynez lete the water now be¹ thi cheekis reyle, 1720

fle thi deeth now ! for, though [þou dede] this gylte, ¹ *at. om.*

That is to seyne, thou art cause of the¹ blood þat is spilte, *the blood he says she has spilt,*

“ Yet may thou amende it with deuocyon) 1723

To make an offerynge on-to¹ hooly saturne. ¹ *at. to þe* *if she will worship Saturn.*

We alle wil folwen the right in processyon),

Soo that thou wilt on¹ to this counseyle turne. ¹ *at. om.*

Allas, woman), hough longe wilt þou soiorne 1727

In this grete cursednesse oute of al reson) ?

Yet wil I forgeue the alle thyn) olde treson), 1729

“ Thou shal haue, mayden), tho¹ behestis alle ¹ *at. al þo* 1730

Whiche I promysed the,² to brynge þe to astat ; ² *om. in Ar.*

Tarye noo lengere, for pereH þat may be-falle,

Chese the better, or ellis sey chek mat.

But if thou offre, we too arn) at debat, 1734 *If not, her*

ffor thou shalt deye, and that in hasty wyse,

Thi deth a-noon) in this maner wyse :¹ ¹ *at. I wil deuyse* 1736

“ I wil make thyn hed to smyte of with a blad 1737 *head shall be cut off with a two-edged sword.*

Sharpe on bothe sydes, whiche may not faile—

he waranted it, the smyth þat it mad,

That it was suer at eche-maner assayle,

1712 knottys þat 3e knyte 1713 & we 1714 May. lyue. hafe
1715 þi 1716 counsell. fondenesse 1717 þi magyke wepe sore
1718 þou were 1720 þin eyne. be om. . rayle 1721 thow þou dede
1722 sey. the om. 1724 on om. to þe 1725 folow 1726 on om.
1727 who 1728 cursydhed 1729 elde 1730 al þoo b. alle 1731
þe om. 1732 falle (be- om.) 1734 are 1735 ful h. 1736 on þis
m. I wyll deuyse 1737 make smyght of þi heed wytþ 1739 waraunt
1740 sewyre. ilke

Bk. V. Ch. 30.

Were it flesh, were it boon), or mayle, 1741

It shulde it kerue. therefore, mayde, consente,

And of thi errour I counseyl þe to¹ repente." ¹ *al. om* 1743*Bk. V. Ch. 31.*Cap^m. 31^m.Katharine
declares she
is ready to
die for Christ.The mayde [answerde] thanne with ful mylde¹ voys: ¹ *al. meke*

"Euere haue I seyde þat I am redy to deye 1745

ffor his loue whiche was hanged on croys.

This¹ shal ben), shortly for to seye, ¹ *al. þis day*

A grete spectacle to the wordly[s] eye, 1748

ffor¹ to seen) a queen) forsake lond and halle, ¹ *al. om.*

Soo sodeynly on-to deth for to falle. 1750

Her death-
fall"Som) men) wene that deth-fal were¹ myserye, 1751Som) men) wene the fal were² reprouable, ¹ *al. þe fall is* ² *al. is*

Som) wenen) we cristen), whanne we deye,

We lese þing, to us that is supportable;

will be gain
to her:

I seye we lese þing that is disseyuable, 1755

I sey we lesen a leuyng ful of stryf,

And wyne a regyon) whiche is the lond of lyf. 1757

she will
change tears
for joy;

"ffor grete sekenesse here, there shal we haue helthe,

ffor weeping teeres we shal haue lawhyng Ioye; 1759

That place abundeth euere-more in welthe,

That place in seker hath neuere [no] noye,

It is more seker than euere was the tour of troye 1762

ffro shot and treson). therefore theder I glyde;

Christ will be
her guide.

Whan) I shal deye, crist shal be my gyde. 1764

"Wherfore I wil no lengere now the drawe 1765

With veyn) termes—doo as¹ thou hast thought! ¹ *MS. ast*She despises
the heathen
Gods and
Idols.

I dyspyse thy goddes, thyn) offeryng and thi lawe,

Alle thi maumentis eke I sette at nought.

Too hym) I goo that hath me ful deere bought, 1769

1743 þin . counsell . to om. 1744 answerde . meke 1745 hafe
 1746 hang 1747 þis day . be 1748 spectacle . werdylys eye 1749
 ffor om. . se 1750 on om. 1751 weene we crysten whan we dey 1752
 is r. 1753 Sume men weene þe fall is myserye 1754 ful s. 1756
 lese a lyuyng 1757 wyne 1758 here om. 1761 neuer no 1767 þi

Too hym I wil, I coueyte to see his face.

Bk. V. Ch. 31.

The Aungellis song whiche is in that place, 1771

“Iff thou myght heere it, þou shuldest astoyned be; 1772 Katharine

Thou hast noo grace suche mysteryes to approche.

ffarweel my freendes, farweel al my mene,

bids farewell
to her
friends.

ffarweel my castellis tho¹ stonde hy on roche! ^{1 at. that}

A newe drynke my loue wil me [a]-broche, 1776

After my blood be spilt heere on the grownde.

ffarweel thys world that is shape soo rounde! 1778

“I shal folwe the lomb that washed with his blood 1779

Oure bloddy synnes wretched and onkynde;

I folwe the lomb whiche is ful meke and good,

Whos steppes folwe virgynes with-oute[n] mynde.

Come of, tiraunt, slee, and doo thy kynde! 1783

I abyde not ellis but deth and goo to lyff,¹ ^{1 MS. lyffis}

She awaits
Death,
and goes to
Life.

I drede noo fyre, watyr, swerd ne knyff.”² ^{2 MS. knyffis} 1785

With these woordis sentens was youe anoon) 1786

She is
sentenst to
death.

She shal be ded as was deuysed before.

ffoorth his she drawn) ; men) and women) ilkon)

ffolwen) on) faste and presse wonder soore,

The folk
follow her.

Wepying, and cryenge euere more and more : 1790

“O hooly mayde, whi wilt thou þus wretchedly

Take thi deth, [&] wyth swyche velony?” 1792

She seyde ageyn) : “moderis and ma[i]denes alle, 1793

Weepe not for me, lette not myn) passion),

She bids
them weep
for their own
sins, not for
hers.

leue youre woordis with whiche ye on me calle!

ffor if nature enclyne you to consolacyon),

To haue mercy on myschef and desolacion), 1797

Weepe ye thanne ryght for youre owne synne

Whiche ye haue haunted, in whiche ye be Inne, 1799

“Weepe for youre errour, whiche shal you brynge 1800

On-to brennyng fyre, where youre goddis dwelle!

1770 couett 1772 astoyned shuld þou 1775 castels þat stand
1776 abroche 1778 þe 1782 wythouten) 1785 fere 1788 is. drawe
1789 folow. & folow on w. s. 1792 & with. velany 1793 moder-
his. maydenys 1794 my 1801 fere

Bk. V. Ch. 31. Though þat youre prestis reede to you and synge
 Of þe goddis hoolynesse and moche thyng you telle,
 The heathen Gods are in Hell. I suer yow this, that thei ben in helle, 1804
 And euere with-outen ende in þat place shal be ;
 And but if ye amende yow, eke soo shal ye." 1806

*Bk. V. Ch. 32.*Cam. 32^m.

When at the place of execution,
 A fter this is seyde, she is come to þat place 1807
 where she shal deye. and of the man) tho
 Whiche shulde hir smyght, she prayed a space
 ffor to haue, eer she fro this world goo,
 That she may seyn) woordis oon or too 1811
 In preuy meditacion) on-to god aboue,
 Whiche is hir maker, hir lord and hir loue. 1813
 Katharine kneels, and The man) graunted, and she kneled down), 1814
 With handis and eynes¹ lift up to heuene, ^{1 al. eyne & handis}
 In suche sentens she made hir orison) :
 prays God, " O myghty god, whos name for to neuene
 Is ful merueylous, makere of planetes seuene, 1818
 helthe of hem alle tho¹ trosten) in thi mercy, ^{1 al. that}
 hope of al virgynes that to thyn helpe cry ; 1820
 her sweetest Jesus, " O Ihesu most swetest, whiche hast noumbred me 1821
 Right in th[i]¹ collage a-mongis thi maydenes alle : ^{1 MS. the}
 Doo with thi seruauant after thi benyngnyte,
 Spreede me in¹ thi mercy, lete me neuere falle ^{1 al. wyth}
 In to myn) enemyes handes. lord, to the I calle, 1825
 Doo me this mercy for thyn hye name
 that whoever That what-maner man), the right or the lame, 1827
 thinks of her death, " Whiche hath my passyon) in rememb[e]rauns 1828
 Eyther in his deth or ellis in sekeneesse
 Or in his persecucion) or other greuauns,

1803 meche 1804 sewir 1805 wyth-oute 1806 And om. 1809
 smythe. a om. 1810 or 1811 sey 1815 eyene & handes 1816
 On sweche 1819 þat trostyne 1820 pi 1822 into pi college amonge
 1823 seruauantis 1824 me om. wyth pi 1825 my enmy 1826 pi
 1827 1828 remembrauns 1830 eythir g.

If he with deuocyon and hertly besynesse		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 32.</i>
Aske ony reles, lord, of thi wort[h]ynesse	1832	and asks any boon of Christ,
Graunte hym his bone, lord, for my sake		may have it granted for her sake.
As I now my deth for thi loue take.	1834	

“ And alle tho that my passion haue in memorye, 1835
 Pestilens ne deth mote hem neuere greue;
 hunger and sores and other myserye,
 And alle euele eyres on morwe or on eue
 Suffre hem not to haue, but rather hem yeue 1839
 Abundauns in heruest, and eyr temperat;
 lete not her londes abyde desolat, 1841

“ But graunte hem plente of her greynes alle— 1842
 Be-cause thei loue me, thou shalt hem loue.
 Beholde, lord, for thi cause I muste¹ now falle ^{1 al. mut} Katharine
 Doun in to deth: take to thin behoue prays
 Thynge that this bocher may not hale ne shoue, 1846
 Take þou my soule—no man may but þou;
 O Ihesu crist, my soule I commende now 1848
 Christ to take her soul; and

“ On-to thyn handis, I pray the þou it take, 1849
 Lete þin Aungellis whiche þat see thi face to send His
 Come doun fro heuene for thyn maydenes sake, Angels
 Suffre hem to come now on-to this place,
 To lede my soule, lord, on-to thyn grace, 1853 to lead her
 On-to that felawshepe whiche þou me behight, ^{1 al. that} soul to Him.
 A-mongis thyn seyntis tho¹ shyne with the ful bryght.”

Cam. 33m.

Bk. V. Ch. 33.

She had scars mad hir conclusyon	1856	
Of this preyere, but anon sodeynly		At once a Voice from Heaven
fro [þe] heuene thei herden tho a soun,		
A swete voys, and thus it gan to cry:		
“ Myn owne spouse, my wyf & mayden holy,	1860	

1831 hertyly 1840 eyir temporate 1844 mote 1845 þi 1849
 þi 1851 þi 1853 þi 1854 feleschepe 1855 among þi s. þat 1856
 scarise 1858 þe h. . herd þoo a sownde soun 1860 mayde

Bk. V. Ch. 33. Come now to me, [come now] on-to thi reste! ^{1 al. as best}
ffor in my feyth þou hast laboured at þe beste.¹ 1862

tells Katharine that her dwelling in Heaven is ready for her. "The blissed yate of heuene is now ope, 1863

It is made redy to the, that mansyon);

ffor thy feyth, thi charyte and thi hope

Shal thou haue my specyal benyson).

There abyde the persones of thy nacyon) 1867

ffor to receyue the to that eternyte

Where thou shal Ioye be-forn) the trynnye; 1869

"Maydenes arn) redy to brynge the thi croune, 1870

Aungell's arn) ordeyned eke thi soule for to¹ lede.

Angels will bring her to it;

As for a tyme caste of thi fleshly gounne, ^{1 al. þi s. eke to}

Thou shal receyue it in an other stede.

Come forth in hast! looke þou haue no drede 1874

her petitions are granted;

Of thi peticyouns, for I graunte hem alle.

What-maner man) that on the wil calle 1876

those who worship her

"Or wurshiþe with herte thyn hooly passyon), 1877

What-maner myschef whiche he be Inne

will be forgiven their sins.

I wil relese it, and al transgressyon)

Of her defautes or of her olde synne,

If thei wyl leue it and newe lyf begynne, 1881

ffor thi sake I wil foryeue hem alle,

Conferme hem eke no more after to falle." 1883

• Bk. V. Ch. 34.

Cap. 34^m.

Katharine lays down her neck for the Executioner.

The mayde leyde foorth hir nekke fayr & white, 1884

And thus she seyde on-to the smyttere thoo:

"I am called to feste now of god al-myghte:

Do thou thyn) office! the tiraunt bad the soo;

ffulfille his commaundement! and thanne may þou goo

With-oute¹ daungere, stonde eke in his grace— ^{1 r. Withouten}

I preý to god forgeue the thi trespass." 1890

1861 come now on-to þi rest 1862 as best 1865 þat f. 1869
schalt . before 1871 are redy ord. þi sowle eke to 1877 þi 1879
relese 1880 eld 1884 qwyte 1886 almythe 1889 stand

- The man) was glad to doo the commaundement 1891 *Bk. V. Ch. 34.*
 Of his lord, wherfore with besy corage
 he applied hooly al his entent
 Somwhat to spare this yonge tender age :
 ffor with oon) strook, þat was ful wood of¹ rage, ¹ *al.* & 1895 With one
 hir heed he parted from hir body there. stroke
 Too grete myracles a-noon) men myght lere : 1897 Katharine's
 Oon was, in tokene of vyrginal clenness 1898 head is off.
 In stede of blood mylke ran) at hir nekke,
 Whiche of hir purite þat tyme bar wytnesse— Milk runs
 There myght noon) other thyng renne at þat bekke from it,
 Than swiche as was be-fore in the sekke, 1902 instead of
 I mene thus, to putte you oute of doute : blood,
 Swiche thyng as was in hir, swiche þing ran) oute. 1904
 It ran) so plenteuously it wattered al the ground 1905 and waters all
 That lay abouten) hir. O most merueylous welle ! the ground.
 There¹ is the heed, the mylk aboute al rounde ! ¹ *al.* here
 What shuld I more of this myracle telle ?
 Saue mary allone, of maydenhod she bereth þe belle ;
 That witnesseth weel this present visyon),
 Whiche may no-weye be called Illusyon). 1911
 A-nother myracle eke was seyn) at eye : 1912
 Aungell's apperynge in ful merueylous aray,
 Bodyes liche men), wenges had they to flye ; Angels
 Thei cam doun) ful sodeynly, auctouris say, appear, like
 Thei taken) the body and sone bore it away 1916 men with
 On-to the mount where Moyses þe lawe took. wings,
 Of this myracle right thus seith oure book : 1918 and bear her
 The hiȝh in whiche god yaf the wrytyn¹ lawe 1919 body to Sinai.
 On-to the Iewes, ledeth to that perfeccyon) ¹ MS. wrytynge
 Of crystis gospell and of his vertuous sawe,
 In whiche we fynde ful sweete instruccyon).
 Paule in his bookis maketh swyche induccyon) : 1923

1893 holly 1895 a stroke . & rage 1897 mythe 1906 aboute
 1907 here 1909 she hathe 1912 y3e 1914 bodys . wynges 1916
 toke 1919 wretyn) 1922 I wh. 1923 Poule

- Bk. V. Ch. 34.* he seyth it longeth to Ierusalem as in seruage,
 With alle his children heere in pylgrimage. 1925
- Thanne, syth this hiȝ is as it were a gyde 1926
 On-to that mount whiche þat stant in blysse,
 It is good to us þat we ful hastily ryde
 After this mayde, þat she may vs wisse
 A stedefast lore for to amende oure mysse ; 1930
 Soo shal she been in maner of a fygure,
 To brynge us to heuene after oure sepulture. 1932
- Mount Sinai
 is in Arabia, This mount, þei seyn, stant in arabye ; 1933
 It is fro Alisaundre of lond ful grete distauns ;
 In twenty dayes, if I shulde not lye,
 Myn auctour seith, thou men had purueauns
 And gydes goode & eke grete puissauns, 1937
 fful scarsely shulde he labouren it in these dayes—
 There leue¹ but fewe [þat] han made asayes. ¹ MS. leuee
- Katharine
 was martyrd
 on a Friday, ¹This passyon was, as oure storry seyth, 1940
 On a fryday, right for this entente ¹ The next 2 stanzas are transp.
 That, sith she faught soo strongly for oure feyth, in Ar. 20.
 Men wene therefore it was conuenient
 That this same day whiche oure ihesu went 1944
 Oute of this world, that same day his mayde
 Shuld deye for hym—thus oure Antour sayde. 1946
- the same day
 that Iesus
 died.

Bk. V. Ch. 35.

Cam. 35m.

- The grete myracles whiche ben at hir graue 1947
 Arn ny vnknowe, right for grete distauns
 Be-twyxe that and vs ; but this knowleche we haue
 That oyle it renneth euere in abundauns,
 With whiche oyle of soores alle grevauns 1951
 Whiche men suffre, it wil¹ be hooled² anonon. ¹ MS. wel
 Somme men say þat if thei bere a stoon ² so all MSS. 1953
- Oil runs still
 from Katha-
 rine's tomb,
 which heals
 all sores.

1926 sithe þat þis. a om. 1928 fulle good 1931 be 1933 sey.
 stand 1935 if þat 1937 pusauns 1938 scarsly. laboured ; it om.
 þeis 1939 þat hath 1947 be 1948 are. onknow 1952 wilbe
 holyd

¹ Of the ² same graue, whider þat þei it bere	¹ These last stanzas are wanting in Ar. 20, which has 2 different stanzas instead.	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 35.</i>
It wil sweten) euere þat same licoure—	² <i>al.</i> that	Pilgrims
Thus seyn) the pilgrymes þat haue ben) there,		
This sey oure bookis whiche ben) made in honoure		
Of this sweete mayde, ¹ of this vertuous floure—	¹ <i>r.</i> mayden	
It longeth to flowres swliche lycoure for to swete.		
I herde men) eke of other myracles trete,	1960	and writers
Of laumpes hangynge be-forn) hir sepulture	1961	report other Miracles of St. Katharine's tomb and its oil,
ffilt with þat oyle, whiche brenne ¹ a mannes lyue		
And of her light neuere maken) forfeiture,	¹ <i>MS.</i> brenneth	
Though thei brenne yeeris ten) & fyue.		
In this mater pleyntly I wil me shryue :	1965	
I may weel leue that swyche merueyles þer bee,		
But for be-cause I haue noon) auctorite,	1967	but, as I have no Authority for them,
I dar not wryte heere her declaracyon),	1968	I don't repeat them.
lest that I poyson) alle myn) forsayd weerk,		
lest þat men) eke of myn) owne nacyon)		
Shulde ymagen) þat I, whiche am) a clerk,		
Might of swiche thyngis take a wrong merk ;	1972	
Wherfore I commytte al this thyng in-feere		
On-to the ¹ discrecyon) of hem þat shul it heere,	¹ <i>al.</i> om.	1974
ffor I wil determyne noo conclusyon)	1975	
as in this mater ; but fully I beleue		Yet I believe that folk who visit the Tomb 'll know things which I can't prove.
That hoo-soo myghte see that solenne stacyon),		
he shulde knowe thyng whiche we can) not preue.		
Of this mater thus I take my leue.	1979	
God oure lord for his hye mercy		
Graunte vs heuene after thys mysery ! Amen !	1981	

Soli deo honor et gloria

Per Cappegrau.

1954 *pat.* wheder 1955 swete. same holy 1956 sey . be 1957 be 1959 licoures. for om. 1961 before 1962 brenne 1963 make 1968 hire 1969 poysene . my 1970 eke mene 1974 the om. 1978 to whiche

Col. *Per* Capgrau

Iste libellus constat Willclmo Tybbe Capellano (by the same hand).

VARIOUS READINGS TO THE RAWL. TEXT.

1. FROM MS. ARUNDEL 168, fol. 15.¹

1 O (Initial marked by a small o). criste. crowne. maydyns 3 Amonge
 4 ledyste thies. rithe. pis boke. 5 alle her herte. one 6 her love here plea-
 saunce. one overl. sette. 7 lorde. cane not lette 8 Rith. ordire 9 modire.
 resone 10 rithe. here 11 schape. heme. ioy. thate. note 12 But nexte.
 blisse 13 ffolowithe. whiche 14 we om. thynne 16 privileges whiche beth.
 founde 17 Are sete. hire. degree 18 thies richly. abounde 19 pies. worlde.
 rounde 20 leuyde 21 shalle 22 zave. Iohne 23 owne. whane. schulde
 24 euyne 26 wolde 27 Oute. hadc 28 hire. graunte 29 Whiche. mylk.
 ryth om. ate 30 Rane oute. mene sein. tokynnyng 31 martirdame. maydyn-
 ode rithe 32 medelyde-to-gedir. douter one-to. kyngis 33 pies. thingis
 34 his aungels. gode 35 Rithe. he om. dide 36 hire 37 hire. grauntede.
 almyghte 38 mane. womane 39 Askith. hire. righte 40 wille. ife. aske.
 righte 41 ellis 42 pou 43 Purchasede. lovers 44 serue pe as (so om.). cane
 45 Ande. lyfe. mor pat (pat overl.). shalle. 46 womane. mane 47 There.
 fulle wane 48 fflore. labour. lyfe 49 lyue. thirtene yeres. fyfe 50 ȝit.
 fonde. grete 51 ffere 53 More glade. basnet brith or 54 Thane. preste.
 whane 55 blisside. saide 56 salace. ioy 57 made. liffe. welle 58 yite. do
 59 scharpe wheelle 60 leffe. yite. do 61 made. perto 62 Right 63 dede.
 haste 64 make. liffe 65 Oute 66 & wiffe 67 haste sufferede. whate. haste
 68 lorde. dore vndoo 69 Suspire. wittes. prey 70 hyme 71 preste. whome.
 spake 72 tellithe ate h. d. 73 pat om. 74 martire 75 hire modire. hire sere
 76 yeres 77 Withe. fastynge colde. mychil 78 laste. renelacione 79 Alle. hyde
 al 80 thoughte 81 honeste clothide. schoroude 82 Whiche. vpone. preste
 83 what. ame 84 thinge. why. came 85 hande. helde 86 rotene. rente
 87 preste. behelde seems corr. to beholde 88 entente 89 wote. wele. haste
 soute. mente 90 mouthe. boke. eke inst. of ete 91 do. wille. shalle. noȝte
 92 lorde seide. hyme. 93 schulde. boke 93 rotene bredes pies leues derke &
 dyme 95 mouthe 96 mouthe. smale 97 wille breke. cheules 98 likely.
 no 99 sayde. muste. booke 100 shalle elles. mouthe 101 hoke 102 Lete.
 go downe 103 bake 104 mouthe bytter. wilbe 105 sumtyme to be eȝ. 106
 preste. tooke. mouth anone 108 othir mane 109 preste. stounede. pouȝ. 110
 ioy. thoughte. hade. pane per 111 glade 112 blissede 113 Aftere. longe.
 felde 114 fflores. herbes. smal 115 fonde 116 rith 118 laide per. knythe
 119 Armarake. knythis 121 fonde. amonge elde tresoure 122 kynge petirs
 123 fonde 124 Vrbane. as om. vnderstonde 125 felle 126 Which. herde.
 yit. ȝe om. 129 taughte hire. coude deuyne 131 hire 132 I-turnede vn-to
 criste & vne-to. faith 133 hire ledere. seith 134 liffe 135 hire. laste 136
 saw hire martyrede. hyme-selfe 137 hire liffe 138 seruauante vne-to hire 139
 pis 140 hire chaunceler. secretarie 141 hire. thorow-oute. parties 142 hire
 faderes 143 hire. row 144 paiede 146 hire kyne 147 hire 148 hire. liffe
 149 hire. customes while 150 hire 151 saw. aungels who. hire 153 veni-
 aunce. who. 154 eke om. hire dethe 155 saw. maxiense. slayne 156 downe.
 ryuere 157 Diede. sodenli. payne 158 fforth. drawe. helle-fiene 159 Aungels.
 hire. deuels. h. bere 160 sondry. synne 161 pe othire in helle w. 162 Longe

¹ For want of type, the dashes on n m t l l d g are replaced by e, noblé articlé by noble article. The variants of this MS. are for the most part merely orthographic.

aftere . maxience 163 Byschope . Alisaundre . Cite 164 same mane 165
 whiche . myche 166 wote . verely zite ife 167 which 168 Whiche . ofe-tyme
 synge . 169 diede euene . ane 171 liffe 172 hye 173 dede 174 oute 175
 liffe 176 speke oftime 177 Both . hire . ende 178 love hire liffe had 179
 gostely 180 sikire 181 sprynge 182 ony . any 183 Twelf 184 what . myth
 185 ther vsage 186 miche 188 liffe 190 founde 191 eritykis 192 both pe
 leffe & brede 193 soughte 194 gode . hy 195 fonde . noghte 196 noghte .
 noble 198 A hundrede 200 miche 201 passede 202 tonge both 204 in-to
 205 I-sought . broughte 206 hyde alle in . amonge 207 vne-to . mans hande
 208 whene . note vnderstonde 209 righte 210 liff . kepte 211 Neuer-pe-lesse .
 dide miche thinge 212 noble . goode mane 213 lede . way . dore vne-doo
 214 myche . better 215 poutz 216 helpe . wyth₂ om. 217 Whiche . purchase .
 219 diede . many a yere 220 nye fro . leste 221 Yit . diyng . grete 222
 aperede 223 glade . moste godely 224 rewarde 226 speche . bi 227 seint
 228 Cite . wile 231 vne-to 232 Aftere 233 sette 234 Tristynge 235 helpe .
 cas . wrigh 236 parte . heuenly 237 appollo . seint 238 makith . grow .
 mans 239 wite whate 241 Oute 242 Vn-to . brotherode whiche 243 gife
 244 fadirs 245 Whiche . Austeyne 248 paiede 250 whene 251 heuene 252
 Thoroughe .

The titles of Books and Chapters are wanting.

I.

1 Some tyme pe . grece 2 Sipire boþ lorde 3 telles . olde 4 reuled 5
 gouernede . alle his e . 6 Costus þo mene . kinge . poo here om. 7 losede 8
 liene 9 liste 10 wele . boþ 11 Alle thei dide . boþ ferre 13 here be-hoffe .
 soughte 14 helpe . whene . nedede owt 15 Iles . vne-to . gret 16 þai om.
 buxome . requeste 18 hauens . weste 19 welde . righte . liste 20 mariners
 21 homagers 22 reynede 23 wase 24 wilbelouede . homagers 25 noble 26
 felde . pesibale 29 wolde him 30 what . dide 31 Whene . vengeance 32
 Prayer . a-waile 33 assaile 34 castille bette 35 Whene thei . nozt . bone
 38 Stabulle 39 hande . douthi 41 wroughte 42 sperite 43 Peas . pute 44
 cleymede 45 noble . vne-to peas . lofe 46 made . ax vne-to 47 Amonge 48
 moste . wise 49 hatyde . harlottrie . vise 50 petie vne-to . thought 51 suche
 a trewe 52 rithe . wise 53 thorny 55 spronge 56 Katrine . true 57 Citees .
 amonge 58 largeste 59 coste . golde . fodire 63 whiche 64 high Amaliehe
 65 highte . egipte 66 londe . Sipre . nothinge . wante 67 of beis 68 golde 69
 londe closede 70 north-weste 71 kinge . key 72 sette 74 shippe 75 peas .
 were it were 76 hade 77 castille 78 vne-to 79 Be causes . freedoms 80
 hethnesse . cristendome 82 meire 83 nozt 84 To 86 shippis . Cite 87
 vpone . owne 88 ofe . cuntrees 90 Whiche . Cites 92 othire 94 grete . highe
 95 Egipte 96 Vne-to . thoroughe 99 egipt 100 Thithere . Marke 101 bi
 102 lordis 103 twiste 104 belyne 105 made . criste 106 plate 107 boke
 108 theoretica . sayne 110 hermyttis 111 such 113 alle . pies 114 martirs & f .
 confessours 115 maydyns wydowes . chaste 116 Nombre 117 growith . aftere
 118 mythe . nombire 119 pute . sharpe asaie 120 This vessels . martirs 121
 fiere . Irune . I-brente 122 founnesse . sorow . maide 123 schapede 124 turne
 125 firste excersise . devyne 126 Whiche . longith . foule 127 patenus . boke
 129 score (!) 132 goode comeniente . exortacione 133 Moste . whiche 134 Alis-
 aundre whiche . nowe 135 pepile 136 thidere drowe 137 knygh . marchaunte
 gone 138 though . Inow whane 140 elles 141 wones 143 Alisaundre . saide
 144 a om. wurthi such 145 tounge . dome 146 lofe ner 147 doth . wele
 myght 149 þis kingis 150 leuyde . myehille 151 suche 152 wane . lande .
 scharp 153 thingis . pleyn 154 cronnycale seyne 155 Almighty 156 mo
 merueils . caste 157 herithe . els 158 some . tyme om. laste 159 vne-to 160
 whene 161 wille 162 Whene thinge 163 wirkith . righte . wille 165 childir .
 not hem 167 whiche . fallene 168 halp . whene . þat om. blynye 169
 holpene . mighte 170 not om. 171 alle . entente 172 þat om. 173 Whene .

not 174 helpe 176 wrought 177 vne-lyke 178 thies olde . which leuyde .
dwire 179 haue . childe . moste . moder 180 kinge . foder 181 mighte . seker .
suche a newe 182 elsaBeth 183 dide Abrame . Sara . wiffe 184 conceyded
185 lyffe 186 Maris 187 wille (= well) . suche 188 blisside 190 maydene 191
owne 192 which speketh 193 parte . hire goode preyere 194 moste 195 wille
196 come 197 Whene . pis sesone 198 maydene . lithe 199 ordeynede ite .
suche . a om . 200 whiche 201 sprynge os 203 olde 204 a om . loughte 206
kinge . febile . qwene . olde nowe 208 now lye 210 Ladys . chambire . & om .
211 come om . 213 marie 214 Excuside 215 writene 216 faire maide 217
hire fadire . kynge . 218 hire modire . saide . sche om . highte 219 doughter .
armeny 220 beaute sha . price . presse 221 Thorought . sarcentrie 222 liste
noghte . hire praysinge 224 shewede 225 hire helpe . mischef 226 whene .
passed 228 ordeynede 229 noght 232 wesche 233 lifte . lulle 234 wipe .
roke 235 laboure . bi 236 kepte 238 qwene . nozt . hire yee (yee on eras.)
239 norischte . noble 241 both meke 242 tetes 243 lastede . hire . alle life
244 pleasede 245 wondre . haue 246 provede 247 sette . boke 248 Alle .
laide 249 alle . scoleres . are 250 lofe . fere 251 Made . whene she gane .
kenne 252 pe letters & wordes 253 maisters 254 hire . retrik 255 case .
nombres . such . gysse 256 verbis whiche longed . foule 258 figurs 259 per-
sons . modis 260 Of monge alle 261 hire chauncellere 263 survioire of . w.s
264 paide hem here hyre 266 Alle . couthe 267 moste 268 alle pe longe daie
269 sauynge mesure 270 amonge . hire playe 271 say naye 272 bade . play .
sitte 273 goodnesse . hire 274 lerned . latene 276 any philisophire bi 278
alle . bodys . planettis 279 thorough besinesse 280 vne-to . sette 281 sei .
storye 282 reynede 283 alle . victorye 285 lerne . þu ynge 286 herisye .
blasphene 287 Thorought . grece . reeme 288 ydeottes 289 apostyls . noght
290 worlde . sowne 292 wyne . fere 293 bustonesse . I om . 294 thinkethe . pis
om . case 296 ordeynede 297 worlde 298 hire 299 hire 300 faile boste 301
mythi . strenkethe . gooste . 302 Hire fadire . pies 303 noble . owne doughter
304 Dede make 306 knytis 307 ordeynede . hire owne 308 reeste . for om .
309 telle 310 maistres . thithire . fette 311 myth strech 312 lernyde . with-
outyne . lette 313 sette 314 wele 316 craftely . I-pythe 317 cheyers . myche
318 beste . brithe 319 bi 320 Sete . weste 321 rithe 322 heuene 323 Alle .
one rowe 324 Righ aftere 325 mithe wile y-k . 326 worthiare . hye 327
Hire 328 thies . I-take 331 faste . lernyde 332 Whene 333 chaungynge .
maisters 334 noble . mych 335 wele witte . lofe 337 made make . for hire
338 paleis walleded rith . seuthe 339 sonne . hire troone 340 none suche . worlde
342 Whene . bi . selfe . soule 343 In om . gardeyne . moste 344 ferre . frome .
wighte 345 ordeynede . owne device 346 lye . wrighte 347 strange 348
& om . 349 alle 350 Solatorie liffe to stodiars his comforth 352 Whene .
schet . faste 353 sparede . truly 354 thingis . agaste 355 moste . laste 356
wordly 357 insure 358 tours . made vp so 359 sotely I-caste 360 mith .
come . foule . dope 361 yates . faste 362 hire-selfe . laste 364 lyued . hire
366 firste . moste 367 telleth . wey 368 wrighte 369 Rethorike is pe s . 370
dope 371 materes . colours 372 calle . dialatike 373 litille throw 375
truethe . falsede . techith 376 rithe 378 wande 379 taught hire 380 wile
(= wel) 381 hade 382 departede 384 voice 385 arne 386 lernede 387 eu-
clides bokes . purtreitures 388 Ite . myche . longithe 389 letturs 390 of ite .
schalle . forfeitures 391 Agene 392 suche 393 styre 395 planettis . reyne .
hye 396 Whiche . which 397 helpe 398 pies . lernede bope 399 moulede .
Idilnesse 400 hire . such 401 hire fadire dide gadire . Ionde 403 Right .
vnderstonde 404 wit . doughter . one hande 405 aposede . meny 406 That .
gaderede 408 straunge thinge 409 lernede . life . rith 411 not . katherine .
zynge 412 vnderstode 413 sone hath vndo 414 goode . thies clerkis þanne
415 maide . hire life 416 supposede . þat inst. of than 417 wondre how . dryfe
418 concludene for in yeres fyfe 419 Conne 420 this wisement 421 toke
423 maide . shalle 424 wondre 425 not . haue 426 myche 428 noble .
rewardede . wille 429 gyftis 430 Lordis dide . clerkis . dele 432 bountifus-

nesse . suche 433 rewardede 434 lefte 435 Whane . wele 437 alle hire .
 ane 438 owne 439 world . lede . were 440 suche . vne-to 441 kynne 442
 Which duede wyth-oute faith wythoutene cristendame 443 such one ȝite . longe
 444 lordis came (corr. fr. come) 445 wronge 446 Alle hire . wurchipe only
 447 noble kinge . lythe now per 448 closede . afterwarde 449 solempnite 450
 wailinge 451 cite 452 wele away . what shalle 453 lorde 454 ded 455
 lefte . no heire . hede 456 yonge 457 ȝite . sche wedede 460 say 461 likly .
 suggete vne-to . londes 462 bonde . suffre bondes . 463 noble qwene . what
 464 petie here (to om.) 465 couthe 466 teres 467 yonge . hire 469 hire
 470 leide . tombe 471 wite . he om. per kinge 473 Schulde not . such 474
 thinge 475 Was þane saide . whiche nede 476 happely . mith 477 such 478
 stille 479 dukes . Erles . knyghtis 480 Thirti . euene 481 ranne faste . be-
 gonne . pasce 482 kinge 483 haue . thinge . 484 suche lastynge 485 rith
 486 graunge 487 vanysch . waste . brente 488 alle 489 gret 491 high .
 grete 492 his . coste 493 þither . carte 494 cite of famagooste 495 made .
 ooste 496 have . mouth 499 moste 500 þe c. . hade 501 dide 502 þis cause .
 same om. 503 while . stand . loste 504 knowlege . famagoste 506 G. C.
 507 noble 508 thorowoute 509 wirkithe many a 510 worthi 511 schalle .
 such . per 512 qwene . hire owne 513 Alisaundre . whiche 514 helde . hire
 housbonde 515 schulde 516 bolde 518 lordes . wiste 521 londe 522 hade .
 solempnite 523 custome . holde 524 troble 527 cite 528 in whoos 531
 stores 532 Al . lordis aftere 533 a lord om. 535 bylyde 537 scholde 538
 wille . aftere . daie 541 Este 542 oute of . affrike 543 ryde whedere . beste
 544 grete feste 545 hire . kynne 546 Oute . & mynne (þe om.) 548 semer
 549 lond 550 reinede 552 kinge . Alexsaundre . rith . defferens 553 kinge .
 Egipte . sentence . 554 wille (= well) 555 Which 556 which of w. r. 557
 deeyuede 559 telle forth 560 Which longe . kynrode 561 after 562 Madag-
 dalaus . high 564 Reinede 565 hitte 566 which speker 570 clepede 571
 reinede 572 rith 573 owne 574 bylyde . fadres 575 firste lyfe . iche 577 hitte
 579 spronge . oute 580 one-to . þe f. 581 noble 583 philip fadere . Alisaundre
 584 secunde 585 ȝone s. . hafe 587 wondres . Alisaundre south 588 labourer
 ȝete 589 kyng om. hith 590 owne 591 mythe 592 wane . guzue 593 cesede
 594 chaungede 596 made . þe om. 597 haue his . high 598 hool 599 hote . rithe
 601 deie . þis world in 602 selue 603 lordis gafe 605 gafe . he om. mythi
 606 Alexsaundre . rith 607 firste 608 whiche . lefte . now om. 609 thinge .
 clerkes . 610 reinede 611 ayre 612 noble 613 amonge 614 ceptire 615
 which 616 reinede per 617 calle 618 reinede 620 which . reynede 622
 dide 623 temple 624 noble boke . writithe 627 whane 628 askede 629
 lefte 630 hithe 631 synnede bi . doughter 632 brente . brith 633 þe inst.
 of ȝe . story 634 seuene 635 euene 636 reynede 637 high 640 regnede
 demetirus 641 a Crowne 643 euene . regnede 645 wanne 646 mich . grete
 648 sette 649 dede 650 rithe 651 lede . fere 652 loste . fadres wanne 656
 dede þane 657 euene 658 after 660 gouernde 661 pies 663 here 665
 weddede . calle 666 saide 667 By . rith 668 And om. 669 mayde 670
 Rithe . high 671 Sey . suche anoþer 673 sone bi 674 highe 677 Sone .
 fadere . alle regnede 678 rithe . haue 680 fader 681 fader . Katrine 684
 schewede 685 be-high 686 reknyng 687 acordith . wyth cronicles . þe
 688 fro . thinges 690 þese kinges 691 & om. ; one-to oþer mens reknynges
 692 which 693 pise . degree 694 But . hapely 695 meneth 697 Nombres
 of yores which 699 lordschepe 700 kynrode . scherews . worschepe 701 doth
 702 Criste . schrewes 703 whi . world 704 correcte synners 707 Katrine .
 þe 708 firste 709 lordes . which 710 araiede 711 oþer 712 noȝt 713
 Grete 714 bi . þat ite 715 lordes wyth . bachilere 716 come . þider . seruike
 717 Bischoppes 718 wittes 720 Sume lordes 721 ladies . qwenes 722
 crownede . þe om. 723 Whiche seruede at þat 724 prayede . hire 725 goddes .
 & 726 whiche 727 lordes 729 grete 730 costome 731 & to þe pouert low
 732 one-to . manne 733 dayntes . reherce canne 734 plenty . in hale & in
 halle 735 seruede . nedede 736 Swiche rule . I- om. 737 warnede . withe

738 righe glade 739 opene bothe 740 curyde 741 meel . opire 742 vesselle .
foder 743 voide neiper . ne 746 pepile 748 cite 749 gentils 750 ladys .
hire 751 bothe . othere 752 loggede . Inne 753 hire fadire kynne . hire 754
othere 756 spake . whiche 757 beste 758 Summe 759 reste 761 noble .
whiche 762 asayede eche one 764 is om . 765 reuelle . festis gunne 766 take
767 are 768 Eche . whiche . or make 769 too courseres . whiche 770 blake .
othir white 771 & silke (of om .) 772 sey 773 Summe . mantyls white .
mylke 774 whiche 775 ryde . bei om . forth . weye 776 note elles nowe .
farewelle 777 & praye 778 storye 779 hire . holde 780 qwene 781 hire .
not blynne 782 doth . grete 784 durste 785 Ioy . & om . 786 herte . noghte
787 affirwarde 788 Both witte . wisedame 789 Euene . rennethe 790 Sweche .
stody dede 791 whiche 792 wite . presens 793 Durste ones touche . any
794 dide 795 ener-more 796 her seruante 799 neuyr 800 gouernauns
801 Both prey . a-saie 802 Stedfaste . stabile 803 seynte 805 preyer 807
one-to 808 articles 809 before 810 criste . rith 811 good om . werkis 812
werkis causede . sei pis 814 hauntede . werkes . sperithe 815 Which . haue
816 vertue both nyth 817 nedeth . myche . eye lithe 818 wele . fele 819
hire noble presens 821 whene . coude . ony mysorawte (!) 823 loue 824 fulle
wisely 825 honeste 826 reulede . is om . beste 827 whanne 828 noghte .
truly 829 lokith 830 menbires . body 832 deyneth 833 what 835 rulere
836 worlde . falle (be-om .) 838 schul . I-wis 839 goode lordschipe 840 whane .
pat om . 841 noble 842 hire 843 homely 844 comforth 845 glade . disporth
846 Sade . whane 847 Goodely . hire 848 whane . no hede 849 kepte . diso-
late 850 hertis hangynge . be lede 851 commons gruchynge . at debate 852
no rule 853 pepile . surre 854 kinge . lythe . ny 856 opire 857 helpe crye
858 come . too 859 alweg thoughte 860 who . stande 861 loste . lande 862
commyth amonge 863 elles . bokes 864 Lete . londe . & renne 867 zete
myth alle 868 blynde . who turnyste . wheele 869 low 870 Lith 871
supposede . conquire . his 872 not have 873 hole 874 vnsekirnesse . variable
875 worldly . arte . vnstable 877 zete . sarsenrye 878 lette . one-to . womans
879 muste . mayde 880 summe kynge . not pis 881 if om . wurchip 882
weldeth . are made 883 schul . pis 884 per golde 885 lyve . tende 886
haue . myrth . any * 887 euene . now om . 888 haue 890 noble kynge 892
pepyle saide 893 Iustice 894 sette . schire . cessiones 895 Righe . liste . nowe
896 no-thinge to 898 schalle 899 abile 900 pepile 902 capteyn ony ; oþer
om . 903 rankyre 904 laye . lande 906 alle . hande 907 sche one-weddede .
3onge 908 lykynge 909 abile . housebande 910 nede . safe 913 certene
915 panne 917 moste goodely 918 on-to om . qwene 919 hire modire whiche
921 ladys 922 suffre 923 olde 924 serteayne . writene 925 ladys 926
know 929 opire . whiche . honde 930 to-gedire 933 leue 934 hertes .
pitouse 935 lette 937 pepile 938 oute 939 welle 940 vndire . nowe 942
riche . whych (corr. fr. whech) 944 leue . reste . pees 945 crie . I-sees 947
gouernende . werke 948 Thinkithe 949 summe-what 950 sume . oute 951
Suffre . pepile . sume 953 perfore 954 appolyne 957 one-doo 958 seene 961
desireþ alle oure grete counselle 962-3 transp. and 961 & 962 are marked b a.
962 of alle þe londe be-dene 963 weddede 964 Lete hire . choise 965 Choise .
hire 966 soule 967 nowe 968 ane 970 suche 971 to-morowe . oute . bede
972 ere 974 answerde . rith . agene 975 algatis mote 976 leue 977 any
978 hire . heretoo 979 hire daughter 980 weddede hastily . sume 981 hire .
sente 983 qwene . surre 986 passede . dede . hire pepile 987 aloweth 988
done 989 hire daughter . sume 991 hire . to om . 992 were 993 fayne 994
fynschede 995 hire 998 neithere 999 leke . say . naye 1001 daughter
1002 zet 1003 wighte 1005 hire . plithe 1006 rithe 1007 caste 1008 hire
1010 certeyne 1011 nozte 1012 muste 1013 elles 1014 fertheeste 1015 weel
1018 schulde . elles 1022 come . his beste 1026 lettede 1028 pepile . apaiede
1029 voise 1030 endip þe b . 1031 which hire . kynrede 1033 sende 1035
which . worchip 1037 be-twixe . hire 1038 which . rially holde 1039 stoute
1043 reste rithe .

II.

(Title om.) 1 *brithe* 2 *fiere*. *faste* 3 *rithe* 4 *tellith* it so 5 *neither*. *ne*
8 *Thies*. *wordis*. *pis*. *dedis* 9 *Which*. *leuande* 10 *tokens*. *hire* 11 *hire* *gostely*.
fonde 12 *honde* 13 *hath* *tokyns* 14 *alle*. *zet* 15 *criste* 17 *Brennethe*. *hire*
18 *hire*. *sittithe* 19 *dew*. *pe om.* *whiche* 20 *made*. *neste* 21 *wille*. *reste* 22
speche. *commende* 23 *whiche*. *with inst.* of *we* 24 *Amonge* vs 25 *duly* 26
which 27 *desireth* 28 *weddede* 31 *chidis* 32 *qwenchede* 35 *sercule*. *rounde*
36 *othir* 37 *calleth*. *felawe* 38 *to-gedire*. *sistire*. *as om.* *brother* 39 *Eche*.
drawe 40 *suche*. *hire* 41 *haste*. *laste* 42 *hire* *sercled*. *caste* 43 *hire*. *pies*
44 *ferre* 45 *whel*. *caste* *hire* 46 *hire*. *tiede* 47 *so swetely* *take* 49 *bounde* *to-*
gidire 50 *welle*. *thinkith*. *hire* 51 *liffe*. *hire*. *hafe* 52 *Thise* *latene* *bokes*. *pe*
same 53 *hire*. *sey* 54 *destroie* 58 *Soundith*. *hire* 60 *destroiede*. *hire* 61
Thies. *hire* 62 *synne* 63 *schete* *oute*. *sperde* 65 *onworthi* 66 *pi* *langure* 69
which. *sufferede* 70 *streith* 71 *elles* 72 *Messengers* 74 *beste* 75 *Clerkis*
muste 76 *lordis* 77 *tary* 79 *thider*. *grete* 80 *wyth*. *grete* 81 *erle* 82 *mene*
myth. *beste* 83 *phaphone*. *pider* 84 *ane opire* 86 *rialle* 87 *wyth* (*overl.*) *fulle*
88 *pi* *reall* *om.* 89 *solempnite* 90 *receyuede* 91 *is om.* 92 *Laste*. *thidire*.
approche 93 *owe* 94 *calle*. *anteoche* 97 *both*. *rith* *nojt* 98 *wille*. *hire* 99
daie. *which assynede* 100 *gaderede* 101 *lengthe*. *hundrede* 102 *certeyne*.
whiche 103 *Sittynge* 104 *mette*. *hemeselue* 105 *Swiche*. *worlde* 107 *telle*
hire. *pei sei* 108 *wote* 109 *wente*. *easly* 110 *rith* *before*. *fas* 111-12 *last*
half-lines *transp.*: *3e schul* *note* *be* *dismaide* 112 *My s. lady*. *pane* *pus* *he* *sayde*.
114 *trueth*. *muste* 118 *alle*. *lordes*. *other* 119 *excepte* *rith*. *certeynly* 120
cas. *rith* 122 *duke*. *eme* 125 *muste*. *bokes* 126 *take*. *bi* *brokes* 128 *lyue*
130 *phelosophire*. *wille* *I sey* 131 *hardely* 132 *no* *pleasaunce* 133 *pleassith*
134 *peple*. *housbonde* 135 *rialle*. *whiche* 136 *goddes* 138 *peple*. *shulle*
139 *Excusith*. *note* 140 *suche* *choise*. *refuside* 141 *myth* 142 *haue*. *myche*
143 *now om.* 144 *wey* 147 *desireth* 148 *seruauntes* 149 *yow om.* 150 *liste*
152 *Rith* *alle* 153 *rith*. *liste*. 154 *thise* 155 *alle* 157 *though* 158 *qwene*
160 *preuy*. *whiche*. *longe* 161 *muste*. *wronge* 162 *schew*. *longe* *haue* 163
preuyeste *poynte* 164 *suerly* 166 *veyneglorie* 167 *please* 168 *peple*. *rith*
169 *concele*. *councelle* 170 *alle*. *peple* 171 *deny* 172 *telte* 173 *Which*. *falle*
174 *herte*. *sette* 175 *suche*. *lette* 176 *3ete*. *ageyne*. *owne* 178 *mynde*.
fareth. *rith* 179 *schepe*. *whane*. *beste* 180 *eschapede*. *wawe* 181 *schipe*
182 *poynte*. *broughte* 183 *leffe*. *ease* 184 *muste* 185 *peple* 186 *muste*
188 *knoweste* 189 *haue* 190 *mythe* 195 *thought*. *hire-selue* 196 *softely*
197 *myth* *pane h.* 198 *saide*. *goode* 199 *feldes* 200 *poynte* 201 *one me* *tille*
202 *alle* 203 *both* *reste*. *habundaunce* 204 *welle* 210 *grete* *haste*. *haue* *rith*
211 *3onge*. *welle* 212 *haste* 214 *3eres*. *paste* 215 *both* *loke*. *taste* 216
ayuse 218 *not* 219 *suer*. *housbonde* 222 *to* *yow* *lenger* 223 *faste*. *lith*
224 *lith* 226 *it om.* *thinkith* 227 *peple*. *while*. *iangle* & *carpe* 228 *Speke*.
luste. *wone* 229 *chynke* 231 *summe* 232 *grete* 233 *riche* 234 *wordis*. *taugh*
236 *wite* 237 *thoughte* 238 *owne*. *aboute* 239 *fadire*. *londc* 241 *pounde*.
hande 244 *hider* 245 *aske* 246 *avisede* 248 *I* 250 *sekire*. *birde* 252 *pro-*
fitable 253 *gresse* 254 *hungre* 257 *grow* 261 *law* 262 *traitours*. *rowe*
263 *lordes* 264 *kende* 265 *blode* 266 *slayne*. *owyne om.* 267 *bowels* *cute*
269 *mene* 272 *mythe* 273 *make*. *falle* 274 *beste*. *pinke* 276 *Which*. *sinke*
278 *have* 279 *Rith*. *make* 282 *faders* 284 *pouz*. *lyuede* 285 *myth* 287
such 288 *while* 289 *selue*. *pouz* 290 *enmys* 292 *fadere*. *dede* 293 *yeres*
be-fore 294 *dede*. *doth* 296 *obeyede* 297 *rowe* 298 *durste*. *pan om.* 300 *dide*
302 *loste*. *sumtyme* 304 *theft*. *grete* 305 *hyde*. *crafte* 306 *summe*. *pun-*
chide 307 *ofte*. *rith* *nozte* 308 *pis* *same* *wise*. *wroute* 309 *ryde* 310 *Go*.
enmys *which* 312 *be* *neke* *pat*. *honge* 313 *neuer* 314 *lete* 315 *goode*. *rith*
316 *a* *reall om.* *eke* *with-alle* 317 *capadoce* 318 *knes* 321 *this*. *hyde* 322
And om. *Yit* *may* *3e* *note* *neyther*. *byde* 323 *haue*. *soule* 326 *lykely* 327
I-passede 328 *lefte* 329 *lykith*. *welc* 330 *wonderfulle* *we* *pinke* 332 *in*
om. *synke* 333 *youre*. *myth* 336 *satille* 337 *myth*. *alle* 338 *ordeynede*

rith 339 castelle 340 pepile . bei . schente 342 alle . Inow 343 muste . kepe
 344 pe om . faireste 347 3e om . 348 brynge forth 349 please 352 hyde .
 kepte . crosse 353 mythe 354 capadoce 355 whiche myth 356 raunsome .
 gode 357 thinge consente 358 wiseste 359 thinge . wante 360 selue 362
 Mythe . strenghte . wante 363 haue beaute 364 3it 365 Bodely strenghte wher-
 with . opresse 366 wikkede . whiche . now om . ryffe 367 veniauns 368 or wiffe
 369 telle . sekere . kinges 370 haue . wurchipe alle 371 Summe . pepile . ofte .
 muste 372 Thise thinges falle . thinkethe 373 wille 374 Ordeyne . mene .
 leue 375 3it 377 Spede . longe 379 sere 381 welle 382 worchipe 385 to
 be-holde 386 welle 387 streyte 388 Whiche disese . leke . dele 392 true
 393 rith no3te 394 lordschipes . wonne . handes 395 wroughte 396 faute . no
 om . londes 397 prisoners whiche . lede . bandes 399 borders 400 soudyours
 401 rith no3t . couet 403 no3te . sende 405 no3te . fynde 410 swyche . halde
 411 drope 412 gunne 413 Rithe . wedede 416 pepile . wille . schalle 417
 make 418 graunte 419 hange 421 swone 422 Mith graunte . pou3 423
 dede . fadere 427 note 428 kinges . herte 429 suche fredome . rithe 430
 smerte 431 myne 432 punche . scherewes 433 euelle dedes . daye 434
 nedethe 435 Suche deputies sires . feele 436 suche maters . muste 437 pat om .
 fith . ande 438 officers . sekerly 440 sleithe . are . case 441 lase 442 Alle
 443 faders 444 lete . lete 451 rith 452 perilous 453 fulle sone be 454 any sisme
 457 pepile 458 lande 459 Renne 460 fize . fite . & om . 461 Alle . araye .
 sette . no3te 462 alle thinge 463 sitte 464 olde 465 luste . elles 467 bokes .
 wille 468 beste . dulle . mannes 470 you firste 471 hangede 472 suche 473
 heme 477 goddes loue . pepiles 478 life . lete . boke 479 letters 480 trouthe
 481 Tende vne-to . take 482 heyle . querte 483 myche . haue . herte 485 Rith .
 no3te 488 any gode . rithe no3te 492 I-wisse 493 euene . pepile 494 tachede .
 pouer 495 amende . a-mysse 496 muste helpe 497 litelle 498 helpe . I om .
 499 true 500 hertes 503 plithe 504 pane say . rithe 505 pepile 506 amysse
 508 I-wise 509 blisse 510 nabugodonsore 511 pepile 512 preste 514 breste
 515 & om . pestelense 516 which . offense 517 such 518 amonges leons 519
 pute . pepile 520 durste . withstande 521 muste . pou3 523 goddes 524 Whiche .
 seruede . myth 525 made om . 526 suche low pepile . keene 527 pepiles . cry-
 inge . kinge . oftene 528 such 530 meuede . him 531 haue 533 muste . boke
 534 sers . helpe 535 worldely 536 pise . mans prow 537 such now 538
 alle 539 faste . growe 540 witte 541 hith . wiffe 542 whiche 543 saw . rede
 545 muste 547 faders . knowe 548 conqueste 549 tolde 550 dede 551
 telle 552 Swiche . thingis . hade 553 sire . muste yow lete 554 law . mannes
 556 prestis are 557 be feeste . the halidaie 558 suche 559 Eythire . Iupiter
 560 carpe . summe 561 Blamethe no suche thinge 563 semethe . hyde 564 to
 om . suche wordis 566 mayntene alle . thinge 567 Whiche . goddes . offerynge
 568 sire arcules 569 grete 571 here . whiche 572 autorite 573 grete 574
 wordis 576 suche 578 either yere 581 new . ware 582 commeth . late 583 is
 586 ferre a-sundire fer fro 587 Whiche 588 oste 589 such 590 salte watire
 row 591 any 593 londe 594 mote nedis 596 goste 597 saile . londe 600
 hande 602 suerly . schulde wille 603 schulde 605 myche . ofte 608 dothe bi
 610 sire 612 myche 615 no3t 616 I-bou3te 619 tende 620 alle . wille now
 perof . wante 621 sette . plante 622 maners 623 lerne . Iuste . here 624 grete .
 whiche . alle 625 knyth 626 haue wurchipe pou3 . haue 627 teche . schaftis .
 bene 628 schalle . habunde 629 note 631 fadere . note 634 wedede 635
 casede 636 wise 637 herte felle . or l . 638 mythe . alle thise 639 Whiche .
 rithe 640 plenteuously alle 641 Whiche kepte 642 armles 644 3e myth he
 note . faste inst . of softe 645 rith 646 laide 648 leide rithe 649 plas 651
 herisie 652 rithe 653 reste 654 kynde 655 Whiche . rith . leste 656
 departede . beste 658 now inst . of lo . dwellis 660 muste 661 alle . cooste
 662 reste him 664 Rith 666 duke 667 he be-gane . say 668 3onge . rith .
 dide 669 pepile muste . obey 670 dey 672 hertely bow 673 kinge 674
 pepile . hye 675 Rith . amonges 682 thise thinges . seel 684 onc (to om .)
 685 othire 686 wille obey 687 weddede . summe 688 law 693 laste . muste

bow . hardelie 694 Sire . suche 695 Rith . whiche . enforcede 697 insuer
 yow 698 thouth 699 it . ooste 701 kepte . whiche 703 wille (= wel) . in om.
 704 resons 705 Whiche 706 liste . such pinge 707 sire 708 That inst. of As .
 faders . he om. reste 709 lykly 710 any 711 one-true 713 crowne 714
 liste 715 grete . stode . bi 716 scharpe 717 thoughte 718 one-to 719 pise .
 alle 720 sit . arte 721 pringnautly . parte 722 arne . thei be noghte 723
 lesse . pouje 724 thoughte 726 Greteste . alle 727 preise . supposede 728
 whiche 729 inhaunse 730 alle 731 poynte . not 732 herte 733 I-wisse
 734 drinke to . trow 735 moste 736 Whiche . semethe . wedede 737 counselle
 739 langore 740 Whiche . one-to . fikille whel 741 spousaile . olde 742
 Valarye . moste 743 suche 744 suche . grete om. 745 whiche 747 saide wele
 748 longe sith . rith 752 such . alle thinge 753 wele 754 wysche 757
 schate . longith . rith 759 gouernenoure . goode 760 alle 761 purpose 763
 Beholdithe 764 stedfastly 766 othire 768 purpose . warye 769 Lete 773
 zonge . goode 776 wondire meche 778 pat om. 779 which 780 note 781
 suche thinge 782 Such 783 Neither . othire withe 784 grete dissipthe 785
 effe-sone 786 alle vnthir 788 weddede 791 Both . myne faders . moders
 793 Which . ordeynede 794 Which . decense 795 grete 796 such 797 wele .
 kinge . alle 798 Ouere 800 and 802 transp. 801 maytene rith . wronge 802
 kinges myth . hardely 803 such helpe . wele 804 liste . say . parte 805 sire .
 truly . arte 806 pretendede 808 myne . stably 809 suche 811 purpose 816
 kinge . lorde 817 lete 818 brynge . hole bunche 819 make . vnche 820 haue .
 beste 822 leste 825 suche 827 choise 828 whiche 829 no . 830 to corr. to o?
 muste . bow 831 entente . effe . newe alow 832 schulde . & 3e schal 833 sire
 835 thise 837 such 840 othire 841 seathe . note 842 to om. 843 no-thinge
 844 maters . ouer 846 which 848 wille (= welle) . rith . seyne 849 liste 850
 Whiche 851 londe . wiste 852 myth . suche . fiste 853 Draw mych . euene
 854 rith well 856 note leke . leuyng 858 lorde rith 860 eke om. amenges
 any 862 answerde shortly 863 Sire 864 poynte . which 865 liste 866 mayden-
 hede . twiste 870 too 871 wede 3ete . thinkithe 873 liste . graunte . to 874
 withoutene 876 grete 877 rith 878 wisdame 879 frendes . sittene 881 grete
 namede loos 885 suche thinge 888 thise . witte 889 vsede 893 know . beste
 895 schende 901 wote . beste 902 suche 903 know . frende 904 If ; se om.
 905 liste 906 deynte 907 counte 908 suche 914 such . neither . luste 915
 suche ping 916 Drede 918 pepile 920 putte oute . whiche 921 falsede 922
 which . reeme 927 lykly . note om. 929 such 931 wene . opresse 933 Sire
 936 mych to 937 conceyte 938 suche . witte 939 wittes . 940 Leke . egile .
 alle 943 fostere . whiche 944 Dispise . noghte . pat om. 945 liche 947 Growe .
 witte . I-nowe 948 thowe . witte . suche 949 goode wille muste 950 mene
 (mens ?) 952 haunce . witte oute 953 lettithe 954 seruantes 955 counceille .
 whiche 956 telle 957 bettire ende 958 broute . hedis 961 witte . whi
 963 bydde . commaunde . sende 964 such 965 alle 966 his om . londe . lyme
 967 stryffe . 3e debate 968 Amonges . pepile 969 staunche both enuy 970
 compelled 972 kinge 973 streuen . thinge 974 whane 976 anothire 977
 brothir 978 Ageyne . sone . striueth 979 rithe . entente 980 brynge . thinge
 981 Sume . witte 982 ande sume 983 trew . on erasure . wittnesse 984 kinge
 985 pepile 986 seene 988 pepile 991 choise 993 abouthe 994 selue . muste
 995 louth 996 herte 996 whate . telle . plate 997 smerte 1000 if om. stronge
 hyme-selue 1001 fith . alle 1002 wille 1003 Lete 1004 bringe 1005 con-
 naunte 1006 wele carpe 1008 lete . falle . mende 1009 I-now 1010 mornyde
 1011 saw . drow 1013 sy 1014 douthire . note 1015 suche 1018 worlde
 1019 suche 1020 grete 1021 haue 1022 impossibile . crane 1023 anothire
 daie 1024 thouth 1025 suche araie 1026 suche thinge . noghte 1027
 Cursede . brought 1028 doth 1029 That euer thei poynte bei uarie euer for
 soth 1030 thinge which 1033 clyueth 1034 Wheder 1035 counselle 1038
 lorne (I om.) 1039 xalle . schalle 1043 here om. 1044 duke 1047 brouth .
 to 1049 myche 1050 suche 1051 one-to 1052 highe . hire homagere 1053
 myche 1055 kynrede 1056 mythe . alle . entente 1059 zonge . wise 1060

thinge . law . for-byddith 1063 wille . wytte whate 1066 rith 1068 sote
 1070 Brouth . lith 1071 steppes 1072 wronge elles . childerne 1073 Whiche
 1078 douthere . both maide 1079 councele . þus 1081 hew 1084 bore . myth
 1087 myth 1090 distrucione 1092 worchipe 1094 haue 1100 diede . elles
 1101 louyde beste 1102 myth falle . happe 1103 breste 1104 parte . reste
 1106 entre while 1107 councel . suche 1108 Which 1109 I . gladnes . euer
 is 1110 pleaseunce . medelith 1111 lyve . dispise 1112 sewerte 1113 haue .
 londe 1114 grete 1117 hire crafte . suche . hire 1118 philosophire . deuyne
 1119 Whiche . termes 1120 ȝeueþ . prise 1123 selue 1125 ȝit stode 1127
 haue 1128 What . haue 1129 note ȝe 1130 alle 1131 wote 1132 which . my
 1133 sothly 1134 goode 1135 witte 1136 haue . wrouȝt 1138 lordschipe .
 noȝte 1139 bouȝte 1140 elders 1143 wordes whiche semede 1145 rith 1146
 suche . prise 1148 haue 1150 whiche . pise 1151 witte . sadnes 1152 one-
 too 1153 othire . reulede 1154 Lete 1156 neybour 1158 heme . othire . carpe
 1159 he om . 1160 Whethire 1161 wele 1162 This v . wanting 1163 Alle
 1165 werkes . dyrke 1170 answer 1172 to-gidire 1174 wille 1175 which
 1176 pise 1177 say neither . strenghe 1179 landes . lenghe 1181 suche . banne
 1182 suche 1186 worchipe 1187 sikirly 1188 wed not 1191 wise 1192
 whiche length 1193 nyse 1194 holde 1199 Athanes 1200 longe 1201 peple
 1202 choise . pere & 1203 whate . whiche . heede 1204 in . stele 1208 goode
 1209 & your 1210 semethe 1212 elders 1216 phelosophie . is ite 1218 take .
 sote 1219 bokes 1221 all pise 1222 Eythire 1223 herte displesith 1224
 oneurteisly 1226 duke 1227 grete 1228 schewe . haue 1230 Were . witte
 1231 Athanes 1232 Wo . ouȝte . lete . take þidere 1233 endewede 1234
 worldely 1235 soffyne 1236 motyffe 1237 voyde . weel 1239 heede . ofte-
 1240 o . growinge diuers 1242 rede . white . diuers 1245 acorde 1246 diuers
 1249 hardely 1251 Whiche . clouene 1252 gryffe . gryf 1253 myne 1254
 schulde 1255 I schalle 1256 certainly 1258 ffare weel . ffare welle 1259
 counseile . profitabile 1260 sweche . stabile 1261 saide 1262 asundire 1263
 Comonde . wittes stille 1264 hopynge . after 1269 Whiche . wise . cumynge
 1271 lernynge 1272 thinge 1273 whiche . vtter 1274 all om . loste 1276
 Whiche . wedede 1278 firste 1279 oure 1280 worlde whiche 1281 fulle sone
 be 1283 beaute . mote 1284 leueth 1285 leste 1286 blissid . whiche 1287
 thirde 1288 Whiche 1289 falle 1290 fourte . grete 1291 Whiche . telle
 1295 pepile 1297 roialle 1302 Alisaundere . worlde wanne 1303 kynge 1304
 Whiche . babelle 1305 lyuynge 1306 enhaunsede hyly . grete 1307 hede .
 goddes 1308 weddede 1309 kynrode 1310 othir . brite Beaute 1312 yee
 1313 Swiche . hardely 1314 flater . sekerly 1315 preyside . booke 1316 wyth-
 outyne 1317 poynte 1318 schapithe parfithlye 1319 vnder 1321 mankynde .
 eyȝe 1322 schappe 1324 rithe 1325 brite . with-al 1329 ping . cer-
 teyne 1331 Whiche 1332 takithe hede 1334 suche a faire maye 1335 sekirly
 1336 rithe 1340 wille 1342 suche thinge 1343 Suche goodly . hyde 1345
 thirde poynte . whiche 1346 grete lernynge 1347 wittes . suche 1348 kynge
 1349 mythe . wele troste . cumynge 1350 selue 1352 commune . othire 1354
 firste . your 1355 Whiche . sterres . hye 1356 wisdame 1357 to pis entente
 1358 sente 1359 heede . parelle 1361 drawe 1362 speke nowe 1363 myche
 1364 fourte poynte . pise . laste 1365 whiche 1366 worlde wondrith 1368
 witte 1370 parte . wone 1371 beste like if . kinge 1372 askynge 1373 swete .
 wizte 1375 whiche . dede endyte 1376 plate 1378 alle herte 1380 sente .
 whiche . wante 1382 wyse . warante 1383 muste purpose . ane 1384 a hous-
 bonde goode . deboneyre 1385 I inst . of ȝe 1386 lyte 1388 passe 1390 wolde
 knowe 1391 argumente 1392 worthieste 1393 muste . þe om . alle 1394
 rith 1395 heede 1396 wise 1397 suche lenage 1398 suche 1399 haue .
 wele 1400 stande 1402 my housbonde 1403 alle . muste 1405 muste . stabile
 1406 purpose . sette 1407 suche 1408 haue 1409 muste . wise . know 1410
 amendede 1411 rered 1412 suche 1414 fynde such 1415 muste . suche
 mythe 1416 nede . helpe 1417 selue . þe om . rithe 1418 myth 1419 me
 suche one 1420 haue 1421 Herkeneth 1423 mennes 1426 herte 1427

askide . ony pinge 1428 askynge 1429 muste 1430 muste passe 1432 goode . schynynge 1433 Passe . whiche 1436 alle . noghte 1437 Alle . bute if 1438 grete . soughte 1440 alle . wile . alle . blis e 1441 suche welthe 1442 telle . desire 1443 strenkthe . alle pise faile 1444 leste 1445 whiche . disseuer 1448 warante 1450 I craue 1451 noute 1454 Which 1455 fader e . asundere 1457 this . o lowde 1460 wepyng . gune 1461 felle . rounde 1462 swounede 1464 lifte vpe 1465 laste . caute 1466 nye om . 1467 wez om . such 1468 wele hire 1470 such one . hade 1472 suche 1473 seeke . muste 1474 scorneth . iche one 1475 faste 1478 satte 1479 cursinge . maistirs 1481 lordship 1482 sende . realme 1484 grete 1485 meeche . grucchynge 1486 asunder . iche 1487 lykyng 1488 qwene wrothe . iche one 1489 lefte . dwelle 1490 write 1491 fynchede . white 1492 Iss . herte 1493 chaungynge 1494 alle 1495 loste . endynge 1496 whiche . pletynge 1497 alle . legemene .

III.

2 goode 4 fadire . heuene . sone 5 rith 6 it om . pe beste 7 goste 9 noble . hede 10 grete disputyng 13 suche . beste 15 Whiche 17 telle . ordire 18 criste 19 merueylously 22 pe rederes 23 Whethir v . 24 overl . 25 writene 26 Miche ping . hyde . diuers 28 Kepte 29 wydder 31 liffe . hire 32 While . lyffe 33 medecyne 34 treacle 35 deuele 36 streite . to om . 37 blissede . coumforte 38 such 39 muste lofe 40 lerne om . troste 41 better . troste 46 it om . 47 knelyng 48 preste . sothly 49 songe 50 sleep 51 counceile 52 longe 54 bapteme 55 schorge 57 was om . ordeynede 60 wente . lady 61 hermyte 62 bodely . gostely 63 criste . mayde 64 stronge . stabile 66 worldly 68 wroute . passith 69 worldly . agaste 70 speke . passith . gnaste 73 mythe . strengthe 75 leuyde . vitale 76 he om . 77 lande hye 78 schippis . fasteby 80 Sixti . lede sothly 84 lede 85 alle 86 ermytes 87 dwelte . six 90 wyth . outene 91 pis wordis 92 hermyte . falle 93 myth . bedes . wonte 95 Rith bi . scharpes 98 werkis 99 sittithe hye 100 wele 102 sekirly 103 faste 105 goodnes 106 Deme . mythe 107 desirith 108 blissede . allowede . sithe 109 mythe 114 sithe . pouth 115 walkede 117 blissede sith 119 Passinge . myche . erdly 120 Alle 121 brith 122 wote 125 lyte 126 pinkith . selue . lithe 128 sith . thinge 129 benedecite . merueile 130 3ynge 131 hydyr om . morenyng 132 noþer inst . of now here . 133 Nother . fletynge 134 mervelyng 135 wente 136 thoughte 137 firste . entente 138 omnipotente 139 heuene 141 hermyte 143 myschape 144 desese 149 one-to 150 troste 151 do . werkes . rith 152 vsethe . brith 153 sere . messagere 154 wille . wordis 156 forsake 158 cōnaunte 159 breth 160 feche . maydens 161 Speke 163 Arte . haste saide 164 nyth 165 not^(t) overl . by another hand , ping om . wroth 168 meyne rith 170 petous uoyse hathe criede both . nythe 171 dulnesse 172 mythe 173 massagere . gostely 174 to om . 176 buske 178 suche 179 alle . worlde 181 rialle 182 bodely . schalle 183 rith 188 straunge . astōnede 192 ordeynede 193 meeche 194 wede . myth 195 ordeynede 198 alle 199 wille . telle 202 shalle 203 goodnes 204 ffirste . wite . qwene 205 rialle . wise 206 worlde suche 209 raynes 210 sonnes 211 sofhnesse 212 in alle in 215 worldly . eke om . 216 worldly 217 hyer 218 sche om . 219 muste . meeche ping ertayne 221 pouerte 223 Or om . 225 hire . fyzte 226 Ageyne . herysie . philosopie 227 all om . lite 228 sophymys 230 mytily . schal . arte 231 draw . parte 232 telle . sekirly 233 suche 234 lyue parfitly 237 as om . a gl . ende 239 ping 240 hermyte . plate 241 aferde . swonyng 242 lifte . agayne 243 sayne 248 I om . 249 commerous 250 comynge 251 witte . verely 253 hire seruauante . caste 254 pleynte 255 ping . agaste 256 knowe . certayne 257 thoughte . souerayne . 258 rekles 260 petous . praye 261 punche . leste 262 nyth 263 obediente rith . requeste 264 beste 265 sewerly . grete 266 dede 267 note 268 certeyne 269 rith 270 fulfille . biddynge 272 pider . haue . mych 273 weys 274 wilderness 275 weye . wikkede beste 276 hastely 277 schalle . leste 278 not a-reste 283 sayne

284 rialle 285 not om. stumbille 286 suche 287 comste. in om. 288 spoke
 292 onworthi. mythe. dispyse 293 selue. muste 296 rialle 298 doungione.
 walle 299 schalle 300 fynde 302 alle 304 Rith. crouche 306 lette 309
 walles. new 310 smal. schape 311 faste sew 312 note. rape 313 ope
 lithly. swape 314 shalle entre. fynde. swete 316 woundre. any 317 Mithe
 entre. preuy 318 rith 324 postelles 325 stande 327 loller wyche 328
 dismayde. gyf 329 suche 330 Rith 331 Suche wondire. stōnede 332
 Cristo. endew. elde rekles 336 hire 337 sothnesse 338 leuande 339 vertue
 340 wedde. schorte 341 massagere 342 hire. one-to 344 tokene 345
 enquere. thidire sente 349 durste 350 wurste 351 hire 352 sotil cunnynge
 354 alle. stodyng 355 faste. hider. hire 357 Take. stafe 358 rith. waye
 359 Trostyng. suche. longe 360 pouze. aungels 361 ledyng brouthe 362
 longe. euene 364 runne 365 thinge 366 pe om. worlde. liste 367 werk-
 yng 368 ciste 369 stronge. beste 371 Rithe 373 chase 374 is om. gone
 forthe 375 hille. wildernesse 376 is om. as om. 377 stodyng 378 en-
 trede. is he 379 too 382 sodenly 383 Be-fore. rithe 384 conceyte 385
 stoyne (a om.). certayne 386 fonde. lokyng 387 stody. solatorie 388
 amonge. looke 389 suche beaute 391 blissede mythe 392 brith 394
 Wende. suche a. leuyng 395 herde. womans 396 brith. beauteuous.
 thinge 397 Blissede. heuene-kyng 398 hider 399 passithe wyth-oute 400
 othir 401 lokede anone one. stoyne 402 mythe. pe walles 403 elles 405
 selue. laste 406 faste 410 brith were 411 amende 412 sithe. 413 heile
 414 rithe. agayne. seide 415 Goode. telle 419 firste. witte. muste 420
 Whepire. wuste. 421 mythe. maistirlye 422 walles 423 enchautelemente
 424 entrede 425 witte. ping 430 lyue 431 nepire 432 preuy. ite is 433
 take suche ping 434 falle happely 435 now om. 436 boldnesse 437 witte
 439 founde 440 wende 441 rithe 442 agayne 444 sayne 447 leste 448
 state 453 yeene haue 454 boldly make. commendyng 455 passithe. thinge
 456 ferre 457 what-so. liste 458 dede 459 lne. wiste 460 wroth.
 schapithe. fiste 461 zow om. 463 worde 464 dede euer er before 465 any
 466 leide. tresore 467 Rith. herte. emprentede 468 massagere 469 criste.
 selue 470 Rithe os 472 a mane 473 zonge 476 dede 478 ferre. knowlech-
 yng 479 smerte 480 turnythe. ping 481 left. apposing 482 seyinge
 483 worthi a 485 worchipe. witt 487 zette 488 lithe. fayne. it 489
 hire. wheper. lordlesse 490 pinges 491 Wheper. lyuyng 492 soole 493
 weddede sekirly 494 Meche. wille. bow 495 rowe 496 And om. leue. selue
 497 ofte 498 Rithe. abouthe 500 oute a doute 503 welle 504 suche 506
 lordschipe. souerayne 507 heuene. erde 508 sothly. sayne 509 comethe.
 sunne 510 & of 511 Such. myth 512 lordschipe. stronge 514 truly.
 wronge 516 mythe 517 leue 518 mechil 520 Modire. norse 521 to-gidre
 522 zete ofte 523 bythe 524 moder 526 Sire 527 ze so 531 merueile we
 more 532 arayde. sympile. massagere 536 suche 537 longe. seruantez
 538 cloth. worschipe 539 clothinge semyth. rithe 541 telle 542 make.
 massager. dide 544 hardely 545 suche 546 alle. muste. rithe 548 gostely.
 passithe 549 Bodely disgisinge 550 suche 551 clerkis 552 truth 554 sente
 555 Desirithe. inwardely araye 556 clothes spredde 557 boldely 559 brith
 560 Suche 563 sende 564 wille 565 feele 566 frenschipe 567 wordly.
 parte 568 nozte 569 nozte 570 thouzte 571 lyuyng 574 dwelle. blisse
 576 blissede. dide 578 massager 579 zone maydene 580 enprentede 582
 sittinge 583 princis 585 kyng 586 stronge. mythy 588 endewede. goode
 590 pat om. 591 leue. fiere 594 wille 597 pise 598 any 601 wordis 602
 daie areste 604 note 605 mervelous 606 is modire his 609 worlde 611
 mythe. & pitte 614 suche. whepire 615 suche 616 wheper 617 pinges 622
 seithe 623 ermyt. blisse 624 thouth 625 ping longe 626 & alle hire
 goodes. nozte 628 caste. worlde 630 bere it 632 rith 634 ony 637 sire
 639 pou. not excersyse 643 zite. ilke 644 haue a. he om. 646 dide 647
 be-gynne 649 sleep. swowe 659 goode 660 Proue. alle ping 662 sunne.
 brith 664 remembrauns. telle. plite 665 othire 666 pise. werkes 668 telle

any merkes 669 proueaþle . clerkes 670 wittes muste 671 suche 672 Leke
 673 aydele . myth 674 freile 675 bettere 676 lekyng 678 offendede . witte
 680 inne 682 inne 683 leuyng . delice 685 dwelle 686 semeth 687 mer-
 chaunte 689 auante 690 dide 698 wikkede 699 acorde . grette 700
 longe . stronge 706 Loke . herisie 707 phelosophie 709 passithe 710 failithe
 712 pise 713 medille 715 thinge 716 myche better 717 poynte . gyue .
 warnyng 721 suche thinge 726 credulle . childere 727 thise 729 thinge
 730 one-to 731 alle . wildyng 732 blissede 739 How . blissede 742 zow
 743 coupelyng 744 too . cryst om. 745 wille proue 747 arbitoure . tonge
 749 Too . haue 750 skille 751 noȝte 752 þene . thies . wille 753 in appetite
 in werkyng & in thouȝt 754 bouȝte 757 wille . vne-to 758 How 760 kynde
 761 mynde 762 Alle thyng . muste 763 herisie 764 Whiche too 765 heme
 766 firste mouer 767 mouer 769 shalle 770 owne 771 pies 772 Assoilyde .
 þis 773 Vne-to . laste 775 bote . too 777 þat shalle 778 Thies wordis wente .
 lefte 779 astoynde . wote . verely 780 Wheper 781 elles 782 wordis .
 vnlyklye 783 ane inst. of & 785 þei inst. of men 786 liche 787 ffeue
 wordis 789 prouede 790 counceile 792 hermyte 795 see 796 thoroughte .
 Cetee . gune 799 house 800 How . or ȝates . myth 801 smothe . sekenesse
 802 aurisia . heme 803 sekere 804 astoynde . shalle 805 hande . þene 806
 cetee 808 lete . chide now & 809 knowithe it now whethere 810 forthe
 walkyng 811 Tille . house 813 wone 814 is but wildernesse 815 waylde
 816 caste 818 Goode lorde . leste 819 hyȝte . geste 820 how 822 herde .
 sekirly 825 myȝty 826 lede 827 turnythe 828 lokethe . cooste 829
 sodenly 832 wene 833 vntrew massagere 834 queene 835 verry . how 838
 turmentede 839 Tel . þat om. stande . now om. 840 Counceile . lesse ne
 mynne 841 lefte . house 842 wente . sente 843 straunge inst. of meruelous
 845 olde 846 thouthe 848 þis mane 849 feche 851 suffere . diuersite 852
 straunge 854 good om. lithe . sekernesse 855 saide 856 haue . troste . þene
 myne-selue 857 entrede 858 passe 859 noȝte . beste 861 saue vs 862
 thoute 863 gruben . make . new agayne 865 sayne 866 dwellynge 867
 gruchyng 868 counforte 871 syȝtes . swete 875 lede . kyngdome 876 hade
 878 glade 879 goodly 881 loste . wille 882 truly . thinge 883 zondere .
 nowȝte 884 wonderfulle walles shynyng . suene 885 Swiche . thyng .
 wroȝte 886 suche thyng . erthe . begunne 887 bryȝte . robes . dunne 888
 merely . note yonder sighte 889 yondere . bryȝthe 890 noȝte 891 Noȝer
 892 blissede . brouȝte 895 haue felle 897 wepte 900 seithe . bryȝtere 901
 othere . olde . growene . grase 902 olde . newe 903 ȝane 905 zonde . zonde
 906 ledyng 907 presse 908 graunte 910 ye . me om. 912 Desiryng . goodly
 913 folowede whene 916 whene . ȝates 917 receyuede 918 suche 919 noȝte
 920 suche 921 whene . thiȝer brouȝt 922 hire thouȝte 925 pies 926 suche
 sithes . for om. 928 rauschede 929 Whethere . noȝt 930 nouȝte 934 truly
 935 Bute ife . ȝonge 936 olde 937 what-so-euer . liste 938 myche thinge
 939 receyuede . firste 940 bettere 941 Whene 942 swettere . mete . þene
 943 hundrethes 944 þene 945 pies 946 Welcum 949 verry 950 any 952
 Thies goodly folkes . wonderfulle 954 knyȝtis 955 mene . abites . bryȝte 956
 successors 957 colours 958 hire 960 ledde 962 welcummyng . suche
 963 welcum 965 felle . bones 966 alle ate ones 967 abites certeyne tokens
 968 a t. 969 Aftre . passions . sufferde 970-1 transp. 970 tokens 971 þer
 973 ertþ come 974 whene . brouȝte 975 one . here 976 thouȝte 977 suche
 979 suche heuenly 981 wakede 982 folowede 983 Thene . sche om. alle .
 makede 985 rialle 986 thyng 987 commyng 989 souȝte 990 witte 991
 þis 992 is om. on om. 995 suche 997 leyede 999 Leste 1000 note haue
 1002 lifte 1003 goode 1004 heuynesse . passede 1005 Alle . disport 1007
 housholde . haue 1010 Rithe 1011 maydens 1013 tellithe note . seker
 1014 ynow 1015 myche . bothe 1016 pies 1017 almithi 1018 compeny . þer
 1019 stode 1022 solempnite 1023 wordis whene 1024 Sone . thinge
 1025 haue brouȝte a 1026 þer (st. þi?) sp. . louyste . hire I hire bryng 1027
 shalle . ryng 1035 haue the . thinge 1036 shalle . siȝte lastyng 1038

Washide 1039 whiche 1040 Clensede . merkede . marke 1042 Whene . erthe
 1043 Whiche . ofte . vnkynde 1049 she hathc 1450 Brynge . me to 1051
 suche . tokenc 1053 preste 1054 goste 1055 Parforme 1056 note 1058 zite
 3owe . mythe 1060 baptise . erthe 1061 zite . note 1062 suche 1063 moste
 rizthe 1064 wyzte 1066 discomfortede . wey 1067 sons . sekernesse 1068
 moste 1072 make 1073 myzthe 1075 . 2 do ye . deligens 1076 please
 1077 zonde . baptistarye 1079 walkyde 1080 one-to 1081 fonde . funte
 1082 watere 1083 callide . pepile 1088 suche 1091 watere 1093 clothis
 1094 thinge 1095 ye 1096 Rizthe . tokenynge 1097 know . oper olde . 3ynge
 1098 Shalle 1101 thynges . trew 1102 wilis wrouzte 1103 suffice 1104
 spoylide 1105 spoylynge 1106 feeste . teeme 1107 baptise . blissede 1108
 fadre . sonne . gooste 1109 In þe . witnesse 1110 one-to criste 1111 booste
 1112 Loke . dowghter 1113 one 1114 kirke 1116 dide wyrke 1119 vnde-
 foulede . presente 1120 witnesse 1121 answerde . pies articles 1122 sire
 1124 founte 1126 wille . souerayne 1127 rithe 1129 renewede 1131 dide .
 clothis 1132 Alle . ilke 1133 blyndnesse . ermytis 1136 lyzte receyuede
 1137 myrthe 1138 easly 1139 sekerly . efte 1140 thankithe 1141 to om.
 1145 writhe . tende 1146 bade . sekerly . dide 1148 How . he . elles . how 1151
 zite . goynge . swetely 1153 shalle 1154 sekirly 1155 Suche wordis . walk-
 ynge soberly 1157 mayde 1159 Suche 1165 grauntede . hyr om. 1168
 blissede 1169 myche 1172 erthe 1174 be doo 1175 þene felle 1176 here
 croune 1178 leuande 1180 heuene 1182 be þi modire 1184 bade . roos
 1185 crounde 1186 myzthe 1187 any . whene 1189 Katrynes . felle 1190
 Plate one-to . stille 1191 telle 1192 thinge 1193 arte . erthe 1194 com-
 maundyng 1195 Mercy y craue lorde þat ofe alle maner thinge 1196 elles
 1197 lernyd 1198 lyfte 1199 welcum doughter 1201 Wonderly . beaute
 1203 seruyce 1204 Iustyce 1206 welcumynge 1208 ffor my loue . byddyng
 1211 comons 1212 how lyke 1214 thies 1215 Plate . goode 1216 whene .
 wittis 1217 thene . kyng 1218 soucreyne . alle . thyng 1219 aungels .
 mene . beste 1221 solempnite 1223 forgyfe 1227 sauncefalle 1232 yow
 1235 house . rove 1236 broches . mantille 1237 for om. 1238 worldlye
 thynges 1241 ellez 1242 thouzte 1245 parte 1246 to om. 1247 in 1248
 ordeynede 1254 alle . þoo om. 1256 one-to 1258 alle 1259 Next my modire
 ioyne to my presence 1260 shortly in sentence 1263 To be my wyfe for
 euer & my make 1264 ffor youre constauce & stedfastnesse in virginite 1265
 shalle 1266 Be-gynne . nouzte 1267 shalbe bouzt 1268 rizthe 1269 spousaile .
 nedes 1270 gyf 1271 seruede 1272 commaundede Iohn . one-to 1274 ryng
 1275 toke . ryng 1276 fyngire 1277 tokenc 1279 wille 1281 wedede 1282
 seene . ryng 1283 my nawtere 1284 grauene thyng 1286 callede . calsi-
 dony . cloude areyne 1287 swiche 1288 touchede 1289 autere 1290 bereere
 1291 any maters . perilous 1293 debate 1295 bodyes . chaste 1296 songe .
 aboute 1297 most om. euery . myzte 1298 Wordis 1300 songe . songyn .
 it om. 1301 þe same 1303 wil 1304 aungels 1305 songe 1306 wreched-
 nesse 1307 The 1308 Cherche . y may 1309 wedynge 1310 liste 1312
 hande . dide 1314 blissede 1319 sekenesse 1320 kepe . trew. 1321 reue
 1322 shalte 1325 & om. sone . goste 1326 godede 1328 alle . truste 1329
 commaundement 1331 treuly 1332 Eche day whil sche (wyll I se crossed
 out) 1334 solempnite 1337 ertly 1338 aungels shalle 1341 erthe dyede
 1344 passede . myrth 1345 brygthe 1347 þe Chapelle . fount . lyzthe 1349
 celle 1350 lefte . amonge 1352 how . þan om. 1353 swone 1355 watour .
 comethe 1357 to om. 1358 rubyde . chekes 1361 lady om. 1362 pake 1363
 do we lake 1364 chere inst. of rere 1365 ffalle . sorowe 1367 nouzte 1368
 fforake 1369 ande thougte 1370 wille . myche rouzte 1371 worldlye .
 erthly pleasaunce 1373 tho 1374 Weddyde 1375 how 1376 blisse . shulde
 1377 suche . sekernesse 1378 ryng 1379 weddynge 1380 muste yow 1381
 sekire . pleyne 1385 godhede . grounde . alle 1386 telle . shalle 1387 Thus
 1389 besily 1390 suche 1391 sekirly . wretyne om. 1395 & om. sone .
 goste 1397 moste 1398 coste 1402 goste . with-outyne 1403 wille haue

1404 myzte . lyzthe 1410 fadur . sone 1412 sone . blisse 1413 begotene .
 gooste 1414 beleue 1415 myzthe . connyng 1416 Goodnes . goste 1417
 any 1418 myzte . goodnesse 1419 allmythi . sone 1422 thise 1423 the
 eyzte 1424 saide . more om. 1426 þe 1427 bettere . thoughte þene 1428
 tongis . broke 1430 lyzte 1432 bryzter 1433 Aungels . seuene 1434 longithe .
 here 1435 emprise . heuone 1437 dede lohn 1439 þe om. 1440 myzt 1443
 Doughtur 1444 goode blissynge 1446 telle . a maner 1447 tyraunte . lyu-
 ynge 1448 reigne 1450 stytle . owne 1451 tirauntrye 1452 in-dew 1454
 muste . suffre . velony 1455 þour, om. goodes 1456 laste 1459 nozt 1460
 doughtur . þe 1462 like 1463 eke inst. of ete 1465 dede . ryzth 1470 croune
 1471 thingis 1472 how 1473 warnyngis 1474 whiche . þe om. ded 1475 y-
 passede 1476 nozt discomfortede 1479 Shal . dwelle 1482 lyuynge 1483
 prayere . elmesdede 1484 þene þe . þe om. 1485 passede 1486 þene . make .
 ende 1487 doughtur 1489 mynde 1491 euerlastynge 1496 Whedur . theþer
 1497 note 1498 dyd . mysse 1500 ordeynede . souereyne 1504 please 1505
 say . a voise.

III.

1 Thies . dwellers . leue 2 Are lykned . dwel 3 els 4 farithe 5 Sume .
 summe 6 diuers eke 7 laborers are lykned 8 law 9 flours 10 to om. 13 thies
 14 alle 15 be n. prophete 16 waste 17 but if it . the om. 18 vne-to 20 þene .
 slepe . sikere 23 þfor þat þei here þouȝ . noon om. dilectacione 24 zet in 25 encesse
 28 Suffisith . ful 29 semyth 30 arayde 31 pis be-nethe 33 haue om. 34 of₂
 om. 35 list 41 pis wordly 42 Agayne . slulkyde 43 pis 44 wheche 45 wheche
 46 the om. 47 the om. 48 wel 51 first and om. 53 vertuse 54 dwelle 55
 thene he . hyme 57 wrytyn . myche 58 mynde 60 mankynde 61 blynde
 62 & clothe . olde 67 chyrches 68 trost 69 labour 70 galy 71 welle 73
 ryȝt 74 lyuynge stably 76 to hire 79 Emperours 81 Maxencius 82 thyrd
 parde 83 diocleciane 84 mans 86 Dwelt 87 sacrifices dide 88 any 92 pis
 93 Lefte 99 per 100 emperours 101 empire . thei om. or 102 shorows 103
 tonnes om. 104 sethe 106 And to 111 wheche 112 the om. 117 or . dide
 119 in salisbury 121 the om. þe om. 122 crounede 123 myche solempnite
 125 That 126 schrot 128 or 129 Sicile . dide . dyd 130 say 132 lyeth .
 abyde 133 Whedire . or elles 134 dwellithe 138 labourerth . and eke 141 or
 143 dome 144 reignede . the om. 146 kepe 147 slepe 149 speke 150 ne wilf
 ne no 151 wheue 153 husbunde let 154 set 155 þene bi 156 peple 160
 had hyme in-haunsede 161 couet 162 Romayns 163 lettoures . ded om. 164
 brytayne 165 preyd . a knȝte 166 fyȝt 168 per ende 169 strenthe 170 his
 171 encesse . lenketh 173 peple 176 hostis 177 trostith . one . Cete 178
 disceyuede 179 housholde . meche . and om. 180 emsample 181 troste in .
 peple . wil om. 183 of Brytayne 184 is he 185 righfully 186 lyuynge 187
 victorious 188 dide . strengthis 191 þe felde wone 195 suche maistres 197
 whene . thus om. exiled 198 fadyrs 201 letters 202 serge . honge 203
 distroy 204 Theis letters 205 folowed 207 thynkit 208 dwel 210 leges .
 empire 211 witt . faders 213 neþer 214 Suche . þat be 215 peple 218
 hyng 221 I om. sweche 222 meche 226 in his 227 this 229 forfete . shal
 230 Sweche 231 note 232 mene ony 233 þene . seete 234 officers 235 any
 236 sweche 237 shal . sweche maystres 239 the om. letters 240 Wheche
 242 lest 245 dame wheche 246 messengeris are . ferre 247 pis 248 selue
 251 wheche . eke om. 252 meny lyued . al om. 253 dide 255 are 258 þene
 260 whech 261 poyntes dide 264 wolde 265 dwelte 266 dampnacione 269
 sune 273 the om. 277 Vne-to . wyechis 278 thinke 279 whene . are 283
 how thei 287 peple . statly 289 londe 290 gunmys 297 be 298 shulde
 300 Castels 301 none 302 thirde 305 the 308 ceremonies 309 mytour .
 crosse 312 his s. 315 witene . Iupiter . hye 317 al oper 318 forsake 321
 apparicion 323 bad . peple . & renew 324 olde ryȝtes 325 faders . any
 327 who 328 heilth 330 make 333 orribile lyȝtenyngis eke 334 pis shewede
 336 lesse . not om. 337 pis 338 amonge 339 shepperdis 340 ful wil 342

sey pies 344 be 345 pat shalle zeue 348 councelle 351 pe g. 354 lande 355
 pat s. 356 no overl. of om. 358 is 359 is 362 is 363 pepile 364 els. song
 366 did he 367 shulde 373 diede 375 bouchers labourede 376 waishyng.
 carcays done 385 pepile. solempnite 388 suspexione 389 sume are
 391 bryzte sune 397 whene 398 pene. veniaunce 400 arayde 402 y-par-
 trayde 406 dispyse 408 offeryngis 410 slee & flece. pies 412 mynstrals. shul
 414 elde. sey. per 415 Suche 416 ways 420 amonge 421 solempnite 423
 pise 424 are. in mychelle 432 sprede 433 worldly. are 434 pat tyme 435
 ryzte inst. of lyke 436 mayde 441 sers 444 elde 445 Riches 447 wit
 448 pore 450 bei pat agayns 452 is om. 454 Suffisithe. lyne 455 com-
 merows. any 457 we om. 458 shal 459 begynnythe 461 faders 464 po
 drede 465 counselloure 466 one yow v. 467 om. 468 that om. 470 Whene
 pis mayde. pise 471 how 474 be 475 to2 om. 476 talkyng 478 pis q. 484
 conant 485 baptene whene. waishede 488 thorow 490 rudy 493 enprentede.
 494 worldly 496 firo 497 pene 498 for om. 499 pene. trewe 500 po inst. of
 loo 506 my housbonde 507 sonere 508 & brede 509 Allace. any 510
 boldly. drage 511 Agyene. trueth 512 suche 513 chyrches 516 Who
 louethe. worlde. wille heme 518 shall 520 his palays 524 be-tuex 525
 al pat 526 pepile 528 the om. porters 531 stand 533 Thies solemp-
 nites 534 no om. to no 538 offeryng 540 emperours. pies 541 whene.
 sey. & so 543 speke 544 seide. pepile 545 Are 546 not 548 vne-to 549
 strenghe 552 to pis 553 pene. lyke. 557 y-wisse 558 thies. blisse 559 one
 560 grete 566 wolde 567 sitt 568 be om. 569 pene 573 such deucls pat be
 574 sothly sere 576 for 577 his c. 581 pene 582 Thise. mene om. 584
 Agayne. agayns 589 are. deuyles 591 wit 592 pise 593 of om. 596 pi
 hert frome 598 one-kynde 599 Agayne 602 shal. an om. 604 how 605
 suche pepile 609 be myxte white 610 he om. begane 611 Astonede. beaute.
 pleasaunce 614 veniaunce. 615 haue take 617 pene 621 Be. sistire 622
 veniaunce 629 gybet 630 the om. 631 mayd 632 Who. pis 644 pene 645
 are 646 how. whene 648 pepile. decyue 652 besyli po. mynde 653 strenth
 654 ensamples. kynde 656 seide 663 now om. 664 womb 665 a mayd 669
 such 672 ben om. 674 Suche. o lyne 675 herises. hath be take 679 Theis
 concyete3. thei om. 680 pise. semythe 683 now to you 684 littithe. such
 deliaunce 685 are. trow 686 neuer 687 take. yee 690 such 691 customs
 694 no rose 696 wille 698 ferre abouene. any 701 pise stokkis. goode 706
 no such 707 wil preue 711 oure 715 lange. doyle 718 verrey trueth 720
 pene 721 treuth. any 722 Thow myzt. sayne 724 pene. sume. gune 725
 pe Idols 728 Vne-to. thei om. pleasaunce 732 gune 735 gunne thei crie 736
 and om. 737 inst. of & 741 thinkith. gunne 744 haue 749 pene 750 Mayde.
 gune 752 sune 754 yow 757 veniaunce 760 wille 762 me perfor. elle3 763
 his om. Rebelle3 767 beams 768 ner nere 770 are 771 are 774 be. pusaunce
 775 suche 779 Certene 780 Dispise 783 tho om. traytours 785 semyth
 787 frome 789 Whene. besily oure helth 791 solempne 792 Loke 3e 793
 shul 795 that t. 796 thise. brestis 798 pene 802 sunne 804 Wherefor
 805 punch 807 no-thinge perby 809 encesse 816 for 819 counceile. ryzt
 thus. 822 sentence 824 sonest distroie 827 messagers. letters wilde 829
 pat wil. lyueloode 832 are write. ichone 833 messagers. pise. are 835 pise
 lettours 837 be lettours 842 pere 843 pepile. on om. 844 kynrode 845 al
 his 847 are 848 witte 849 counceile 852 pise. folke. pepile. to om. 853
 suasiones 854 swheche 857 Meche 859 nygromancye 869 are. lettours
 writene 870 pat mayde 871 palayse 873 pleasaunte 877 alle. of om. 878
 pene any 883 of om. shul 887 suche 890 pise 891 ryght om. 895 vp om.
 896 pene 897 lorde aboue 898 forsake 904 pi. suche 905 prounounde 909
 dispise. stand o row. 910 are 913 my 916 myne2 om. 918 are 919 such.
 our. land 921 hande 922 trumpis. before. stande 925 forto 928 pene 932
 malicolye 935 take 937 he kepe. so so she. goo om. 938 he dey 943
 theme. are 945 telle yow 950 vnderstande 951 sese. begunne 952 gunne
 955 massageres. be haue 956 thies 958 & pus 960 philosophirs are. coun-

ceile 961 witte . for heme hath 962 any 964 thise maistirs 965 phelosophie
 967 were 969 & alle 970 none heme 971 groundis 973 seith . entrynge 974
 Maisters 976 Reneyhithe . suche . vse 977 falle 978 be (ye ?) 979 is into pis e .
 981 trueth 982 be 983 thinkith reuthe 985 berne 987 the om . 989 are .
 cunynge 991 pat t . 992 pat same 993 leuyde 996 suche . cunpanye 999
 pise 1002 theme bi autorite 1003 resone 1005 pat wheel 1006 I om . 1011
 her om . 1012 special . suche 1017 counceile 1018 auailede note 1020 wil .
 mayde . proporcionis 1022 Stately 1027 Agayne 1032 aune sistere 1034
 whedere . stille om . 1035 holde 1039 lesse 1044 sire . lekithe 1045 alle
 worldly 1046 alle worldely 1050 be . trew 1054 suche 1055 þus wille 1059
 os 1061 Thinke . kynrede 1062 neuer none . theme . suche 1068 wiehe 1070
 suche 1072 he hire þus 1073 in om . 1075 wheithere o 1078 but om . 1080
 sikerly 1082 seide 1085 stande 1086 hangede 1090 nedis muste 1091
 enmyse 1092 þene speke 1099 a om . 1101 meche 1102 of wheche . sweche
 1103 nouȝt 1107 whiche 1111 enmys 1112 trew 1113 oribale 1114 tungis
 1118 wrechis 1120 nede 1122 sere 1124 belyue 1128 philosophirs are . coun-
 ceile 1129 sirs 1130 cunynge 1131 maisters 1133 the om . are haylede
 1135 sey 1136 many mene 1138 yit . that om . 1140 Suche . rouse . þo 1145
 a-taste 1146 waste 1151 she seide lorde 1152 syttis 1153 seconde 1154
 Dyede 1155 fynde 1158 pise 1162 worldly 1163 graunte . to om . apostyls
 1164 Whene . stande . & kyng 1167 shuldȝ 1169 the om . 1171 strenghe
 1172 resonos shrape 1173 chirches 1174 maners 1177 cunynge 1178 troste
 1179 communes 1180 nouȝt . loste 1181 makiste . froste 1182 þowe 1184
 pleasance 1185 estere . please 1186 solempne 1191 Whene . that om . 1192
 fro 1193 mervelouse 1195 prisone 1197 corners 1202 sayde 1204 fro
 heuene om . I ame come now 1208 pise 1209 clerly 1212 theme 1213 shal
 om . theme . autorite 1214 lede 1217 dye 1218 prophesye 1219 determynde
 1220 Thies . shal now dispute 1222 grete troste 1223 þe om . 1227 Shal .
 meche 1229 meche . you om . 1232 shal . pise 1233 trew 1234 spirith 1238
 weȝte 1239 Whedire . be . lyȝt 1243 spouse 1244 suche 1247 confortede
 1248 prisone . suche 1256 cunynge 1261 stande 1266 she om . is best
 1268 pise 1269 Maistirs . pis e . 1273 glewide 1274 shaftis . yow 1275 Thene
 1276 strange chalenge . in 1277 pise . in om . 1280 ye 1284 shalle 1286
 þene 1287 trew 1288 thies 1292 I-now 1293 dameselle . tow 1297 garedȝ .
 to om . v . 1300 overl . and on the margin . wille 1305 emperours 1306 mayde .
 write . eghtene 1309 know we 1310 thanne om . 1311 shal . puruey 1312
 answer 1313 conueye 1316 þene 1319 Thene speke 1320 the om . 1321
 pronounce . leeste 1324 auctours 1326 be 1330 yow 1333 erely 1339 alle
 om . 1340 meche trewere 1345 Beholde . Maistirs . pise mens 1348 hardlye
 1351 swache 1352 wheche euer shal 1354 is gode 1356 fyere . or 1359 borne
 1360 one-to . thirty 1361 þene 1362 hynde 1365 sundrie 1368 ite inst . of is
 1375 reignede erthlye 1378 whene 1379 Wype 3e þe . hillide 1380 whene
 1381 shal . ful om . 1382 my om . 1383 haue ; me om . þer 1384 oute bi
 1389 sauacione 1391 science make . soo om . 1392 trueth 1395 maters 1398
 be 1407 speke . þene 1408 citeceynes 1410 shalle . to om . 1411 endewid
 1412 wysdome 1413 suffre pise 1414 such 1417 here he seide 1418 nouȝt .
 vnderstande 1420 pise 1422 say . be . vnkynde 1423 benefitis 1424 ȝynkith .
 kynde 1425 for om . 1426 colours 1427 deuels 1429 here offence 1431
 Thise lewede folke . liste 1432 resonos 1435 suche prechours 1436 hidere
 1441 y-now 1442 counite 1449 lewde . note worth 1451 say . lyfe agayne
 1453 harde Iewis sayne 1454 stale . rayne 1457 pise 1458 She om . 1460 my
 1461 is he þer . any pere 1462 or 1464 his fadire is 1465 þene 1466 ferdere
 procede now 1467 before 1468 eterne 1473 no om . 1474 newly 1477 didȝ
 1480 are 1481 gruntyne whene þei eilith 1483 trueth . fledȝ 1485 pise resonos
 1488 has done . sow 1489 sikire . whene 1490 wolde 1491 shal 1492 þo stode
 1493 mayde . suche 1495 vnderstande 1496 make 1498 note . no 1499 þe
 1501 Like . pis 1504 are thise y . 1513 New chapter . mayde 1514 pise . wheche
 þe worthieste 1515 stande . arow 1516 perseyue . dignite 1517 þene . 1518

lyuede 1520 *pat* same 1521 a om. 1524 owene childerne 1526 Banischide .
harborow 1527 sistire 1529 pise are 1530 stande 1531 Whene . bilide .
brithil bande 1532 maydons 1533 violent 1534 Wulcane . cokkolde 1535
suche 1536 are . theme are 1537 vnclene 1538 Thise . vylonyes . fro heme
shoue 1539 whechcraft 1540 suche 1541 whene . dronke 1542 pene wolde .
Iangle 1543 deuine 1544 tresorye 1546 Thies . *pat* om. 1549 *3e* om. 1550
commythe 1552 y-rounge 1553 be wisse 1560 pis . whene 1561 make relees
1570 self 1571 pise 1579 amonge 1585 pene 1586 suche thyngis 1587 My
nowne 1593 I wheche . suche v. 1594 om. 1598 Gladede 1601 bere hire
nowe . koyo 1604 tho om. *pe* 1606 figur . colour . wone 1607 ley 1608
Are 1609 se theme 1610 sune 1611 the be 1612 are . graue 1613 kene
1614 are . 1616 shadow 1619 shul euer stande 1621 be for to be 1623 be
1625 pene are 1628 are . nethere . the om. 1632 philosophirs 1634 are 1635
harde . suche 1639 a womane suche 1641 entendaunce 1642 worlde . stande
1645 lestene 1648 be 1650 stodyinge 1651 be 1656 is he . pis wynde . rayne
1657 suche . pene inst. of thei . I sayne 1661 theme 1664 are . rediare 1671
sei 1672 one p. 1673 *parfiztly* 1674 no syche 1675 counseile 1677 one .
merveille 1678 mans 1684 he om. 1685 hym blynde 1690 ate *pat* lorde
1693 dyede 1696 ffor *pat* theme . same om. 1700 conuercione 1701 mer-
ueille the . his 1704 yite 1706 Be 1707 be . one p. 1708 suche 1715 be bot
bare . 1716 tho om. 1720 solempne 1721 pis w. 1723 lazer 1724 ley fourty
1726 do 1728 he 1731 vrouzte . pise meruailes 1732 Meche 1735 truethie
1736 ful om. reuthe 1737 his 1739 mete 1740 penne 1742 thies 1743
preue 1747 cane 1749 pise 1751 auctours 1752 meruosly 1754 leke 1755
laide 1756 shal 1757 pise autrix 1761 thies 1762 is . blessed 1763 hyng
1764 come 1770 saye 1771 waye 1772 suche 1775 wol 1776 Wyth-outene .
no om. 1777 suche . ye shulde 1778 resones 1779 constryne 1781 leue
1782 loffe 1783 houe 1784 this om. 1786 ful goode 1788 as om. 1790
mater now e. 1794 were inst. of bere 1795 are . *pus* om. pise 1799 whame
1801 Whene 1802 any 1803 Suche 1804 this thyng 1805 are 1806 walke
1811 cunynge 1815 pise 1816 shal . now om. pene 1818 *pat* 1820 meche
thingis 1822 Iche 1829 heme 1831 freilere . stably 1833 holde 1836
resones 1837 *pat* be 1838 pepile 1840 pingis . shuld 1841 be-gynne 1842
he is 1848 thus om. theme 1854 passith 1855 thenkithe . stande 1860 for
pis 1871 marrithe 1872 rekynynge 1873 any 1874 birthe . liethe 1875
borne . oetouyane 1876 betheleme . lewede 1877 note fully *3et* . hundreth
1878 was of his modire 1879 suche 1880 thingis 1882 thowsandis 1883 er
pat . lyffe 1886 pepile . fyere 1890 Sweche 1892 sire 1893 oo om. 1896
countithe 1897 not om. wheche *pat* 1899 ago 1902 vnede 1903 merueille
1905 begynnynge . shal 1909 of 1910 kynde 1911 kynde . his om. 1913
not om. suche disease 1914 pise . couplynge 1915 faders . please 1917 man-
hode 1918 manhode . not om. 1920 yit inst. of *pat* 1922 mayde v. 1923 on
the margin 1924 betheleme 1926 Whene 1927 stonyde . marryde . mynde
1929 kynde 1933 motyffe 1935 left . lyffe 1939 pene 1940 not om. rialle
1941 maistirde . soo om. 1942 nozte sende (a om.) 1944 Suffire suche 1945
suffirde 1946 note 1947 selfe 1948 pene . take 1951 thorne 1952 enmys
1953 thinkith 1955 uoyede 1956 lerede 1958 fyzte 1959 suche kynde 1961
be . mankynde 1964 *parfyzt* 1966 blesside . or 1968 money . dyede . a om.
1971 fyzte 1972 *be* tre . bore—1973 loye om. 1974 *pat* . blessede 1975 a
om. 1979 he om. 1980 lady om. v. 1986 om. 1987 note verely *3it* 1991
pise . no 1993 witenesse 1997 sune 1999 trew 2001 hundrethe 2002
endewede 2005 reignande 2006 suche 2007 communicacione 2008 be 2009
resones 2012 be assailede 2016 Suche sundrie 2023 thundire 2024 is he .
reignynge . aboue 2025 yite 2029 folowith 2033 lere inst. of sir 2034 & of
2036 chose 2037 a 2038 reigneth . any 2040 chosyne . commyth . bi 2042
cache 2049 are 2052 *pat* gode 2058 al 2059 maistire . pene 2062 maistres
2065 drunke . a . cupe 2066 secrees . pene 2069 wil 2070 enterely 2072 any
2074 knowlege 2080 comoursly 2081 consente 2084 *3ite* . vtire 2087 pepile .

incessede 2088 lede 2089 are 2090 loy . bede 2091 flede 2095 whate is
 pene 2096 ych . preyuly . dide bei 2097 pise 2098 dispise 2100 pene per
 2101 looketh om. 2104 any . shul 2105 wisere . sawe 2106 zit 2109 meche
 thyng 2112 resones 2114 lye 2116 maters 2119 maistire . þe lande 2124
 Distroye 2126 we seene 2127 wilde . þeme 2129 uictoure . þene 2130
 solemply 2133 be 2134 zite . my pees 2135 pis m. þus 2138 it om. 2141
 wuzne 2142 victour þo 2145 before haue be 2146 thinkithe 2147 suche
 2148 I inst. of it 2149 pursew 2152 thinkithe 2154 thies 2156 Wolde
 2161 mans 2164 in his 2169 mayde 2170 Wyth-oute any 2171 mankynde
 2173 myche 2174 But of . be 2177 sitithe þus 2178 whene þat 2179 leke .
 sune 2180 Like . lykene . maydens 2181 sune 2182 thorow 2184 downe
 came 2187 carnacione 2188 neuer 2189 be 2191 fonde . vntrew 2193
 Repliyng 2194 suche 2196 Suche . douztes 2197 suche thingis 2199
 auctours 2200 speke . pringantly 2204 þus 2206 o 2211 sune 2214 sune
 2215 be . one 2216 iche 2217 þene are 2218 one 2219 wriith 2225 þene
 2232 truethe 2233 dide . ruethe 2235 meche 2240 here 2241 sey . fadirs
 2242 wheche . gouerne om. 2251 alle mankynde 2255 soude . preydence
 2261 of om. 2262 sey 2266 alle þe hoste . philistees 2267 on om. 2268 a
 om. 2273 ordeynde 2278 Eentereferede 2279 longe 2281 plede . hyme 2285
 chapitre . thinkis 2289 pise 2290 special 2292 as amasede 2293 speke o
 2294 hoost 2295 make . mayde 2296 are 2297 spoke . saluacione 2301 any
 2303 coude note . resones 2305 go 2307 trewere 2308 note 2309 blesse
 2310 his sone is 2311 beleue 2312 beleue . dyede 2315 erthly . fyndes 2316
 note 2318 The . alle þo . þat om. 2319 had om. lyue 2320 kepe 2321
 perlyous 2325 the om. 2326 Praynge 2327 hem om. 2328 shul it þus 2329
 pise 2330 Cryyng 2332 forȝite 2333 Deme . lorde note 2334 lorde petous
 2335 we om. 2336 oure om. 2340 wil we 2343 þat heuene-b. 2344 Were .
 loke . þat face 2345 mene . be.

V.

5 fauoured 7 thirde & eke . ferthe 10 me 15 like . deuysede 17 Thies
 18 cleue 19 rede flowers kepte 20 Or 21 þene 23 wiffe 24 sharpe 25
 Wheche 31 yite 32 pies . clyue 33 are 34 stante . wyth-oute dage 35 are .
 wone . grow 36 Thise . wel 37 one h. 38 & date 40 lyuede 46 oppiniones
 . note 48 thride 52 alle 55 are 56 Reinyng 60 whelis 61 pepile toke þo
 62 translate . latene 63 the om. of om. 64 pise 65 alle þat . crudelite 66
 emperours 67 speke 68 alle 69 disputous 71 a om. 72 a om. make 73
 counceille 74 worldly 77 note . what þat þe pepile 78 sey 80 þat same 81
 alle om. 83 Whene . hiper . alle 84 cumnyng . mekil 86 cumnyng 87
 Thinke 88 note . þene 92 stande 93 be 94 haue 96 fare 99 þeme 106
 yow . pykyde . compeny 109 þe om. 110 Theologe 111 an om. 113 or
 117 velonye 118 wage 119 we om. worldis 124 hange 125 spech 131 my
 bowels . gane 133 alle 135 refuesse 136 renounce . the om. 137 know 138
 here rowe pawe 142 mankynde 146 shal yow 152 thise 153 dye 155 and
 om. 157 Clerkis 158 more in 162 fyere . hastely 164 saturne 165 pise
 166 frye heme . be om. 169 rosyne 172 dey 173 very om. 174 lewesse
 that it be do 175 do . shal 176 theme 177 theme 180 gyf . hem om.
 suche . vyllence 181 be 182 theme schape 184 one ashes 185 to om. 186
 theme 187 more om. 189 shal 191 wrestil note 194 pis 195 þeme . at om.
 198 self . coumforthe 199 tiraunde . any 201 to þat 202 are riȝte gaderede
 203 a 206 merour 215 Alle 216 waishithe 217 waishide 222 refewsede
 223 rewe 224 leuede . on-trew 228 for om. lye 230 are . þeme 232 his om.
 233 sitte 235 he 236 seste 237 are 238 kende 240 wayshede 243 please
 247 al pis 248 eche 250 dispence 252 be 254 yow 256 daie 257 waish-
 yng 258 shal . angels shal 262 alle 263 suffire 264 harde ay y. c. 265
 demp 267 fyere . purgyne mans 269 are baptizede 270 funte 271 are 272
 þat dey 273 are 275 deyene 277 þe knyȝtis 279 noȝte 280 now om. 282

officers 284 theme . as₁ om. 285 pavide 289 fyere . are 290 gune . amonge
 291 feche 292 fewelers shulde 293 throw þem 294 are 295 alle 296 suche
 297 theme 298 theme . þat om. 300 go 302 ande f. . theme 306 fyere 307
 pise 308 þeme before . þeme 309 sey 312 of om. 313 meruelous for to 314
 myrthe 316 diede pise 318 þe laie 319 body 321 þis sey the pepple . mer-
 uelede 324 folke 326 solempne 327 þo 331 mayde 334 þene shulde þei
 335 mayde 337 selfe 340 fekylnesse 342 lost . ryȝtes . elders 347 & om.
 wite 348 Beaute 351 shalle 354 temporal 355 myrour . parfith 359 þeme
 360 þe om. are 363 Deceyuours . pepple v. 365 om. 366 smyte . take 367
 þem 370 please theme . for inst. of soo . be 371 & om. be 375 al . shal 376
 Obeynge 379 leue 381 leue 383 suche thyngs whiche 386 any 387 goode
 388 pleasaunce 391 Whome 393 Be-tuex 398 reame 399 shal 401
 solempne . Emprise 402 like 405 Whene . shal 414 for-ȝeue 415 be 416
 Suche 419 pleasaunce 430 suche 431 chaungeours 432 so om. myche
 434 Suche 438 a 442 ryth 445 to om. 446 beaute . represente 447 be .
 pleassaunce 448 theme . worldly 449 know or 452 theme 453 wite 455 Or
 456 yene 457 it shal 458 suche . cane om. 463 tunge 469 your₂ om. 471
 Stande like . þat flye ab. 474 vnclene 475 ymage 476 suche a guerdone
 477 shul defile 478 one-to 481 thinkithe 482 troste . fonnyde 483 feynynge
 & fykyll 485 shal 487 childrene 491 deuyls . stant 494 loue₁ 498 be .
 ease 499 such . profyȝt 500 thinketh . please 502 dilectable . colours 503
 encesse 504 sekenesse . relesse 505 it om. 507 Ne 509 suche 511 thyng
 om. þene 512 promesse 514 before 516 parfyȝte 520 It wil 521 Its shal
 note 524 is om. alle 525 is₂ om. 527 on om. 528 The more benyngly
 530 shal 531 ye 532 lyfe 539 nede 540 noȝte 542 at my promysse . at
 om. 544 fyere 545 sonere 547 shal 548 pepple 549 are 550 bi þer 551
 passe . suche 552 punchide 553 be 554 welcum 556 smyte 558 myscheuys
 560 lyuede 561 Pouerte 562 had om. 565 blasphemours . 566 Geyynge
 567 any 571 or 574 haue we 575 offerde 576 hoste 577 offire 578 & to
 582 yow shal 591 encesithe 594 shal 596 menye 597 Shal 599 fynde
 600 þus shal 605 gete 608 mayde . strepe here 609 hir om. 612 speke 613
 galale . deuyne 617 tormentours 619 yrne . may 620 bete 621 come 622
 bete 623 conforth 624 Thise 627 purgede 628 þurayaunce 632 yow
 sent . me om. 638 amonge 639 þe om. beters 640 mayde 641 herisyse
 643 shal 644 Or 647 suffre 648 wheþer 649 shameful dogide 651 thi om.
 652 Be-thynke . wille 653 oute inst. of now 654 pepple . is om. 655 kepe
 656 dye . worldly 657 ffolow 658 Where þat 660 orible 661 shal 662
 shal . bounde 663 shal 664 suche 665 yow . hy 666 shal 668 Lyinge .
 shal 669 shal . hastily 670 shal þou inst. of fulfille . malicolie 672 a om.
 673 anone 674 mayde . hir lede 675 put 677 this om. 678 pise 679 slate
 682 mout 683 Whene 684 pat om. 685 straitly . wyth-oute 690 rydyne .
 menye 695 forgotene 696 pise 697 leue . lyke 699 aungels 700 of
 om. 702 disease 703 suche 709 aungels . kepte 712 sarris 713 mer-
 ueilede 714 note . on om. 715 courte 716 Spronge 719 laylers 720
 dongione 721 þis w. goth aboute þe courte s. 723 & of 724 mayde . any 728
 And om. was om. 730 lande 732 shal 734 pise . he om. 736 pite 737 pise
 v. 740 on the margin . a stody 742 & to . preuely 743 Thise . folke . no
 wronge 744 bye 746 Now & now 747 of om. 748 Glotons . dronkelew 749
 pleassithe 751 nouȝte 753 sey 754 mykyl 756 my . gyunyth 759 selfe
 761 hade hyme 762 alle 765 folke 768 she saide porphirie . be 769 be 771
 troble . the om. 773 or 774 maner 775 lyfes 776 tho om. 779 gaylers .
 y-now 781 vow 784 my 787 suche . shal 790 shal 791 be 792 thinkithe
 . sufferith 793 horibely bete 794 no 795 oft-tyme . one þis 797 whene 801
 gyfe 803 you om. 804 Comythe 807 slepe . prisone 809 þei come þer þei too
 810 prisone . se 811 down om. wyth-oute 812 to om. be om. 813 lyȝtyn-
 ynge 814 sey 817 þe lyȝt 818 felt . suche 820 suche 822 borne 824 Be
 825 chose 829 aungels sey 833 beaute . softly 837 a 839 Thies 840
 delyȝte 842 on om. 845 thithere 849 note 852 sistere 853 Shal 854 be

855 shal . a om. euerlestyng 858 theme 859 pise 860 shal . writyne . lyue
 861 sers 863 Thise . þe booke 864 þer synnes . wyte. 865 theme 867 that
 om. receyue 868 elders . one-to oþer 869 precious . sitte 871 yow 872
 precious 875 suche 878 Shal 880 pise folke . take 883 prisone 884 suche .
 herde 886 suche 887 fulle 888 Wyth-oute . pise 891 Abacuche 893 prisone
 . þus fede 894 diuers 895 brout 896 gostely or bodely . it om. 898 fadirs
 899 þene 902 norchide . erthe 905 so om. 906 þe om. 909 erdly 910 but
 om. 911 wille 914 be 916 thise 918 sey 920 aungels 921 suche 925
 alle . disisease 927 please 928 worldly 929 Thinke . leue 931 a . shal 932
 or . parte 933 pepile shal 934 a housbonde . wydow 935 ffor . maumentrie .
 shal ye returne 936 theme . soiorne 939 lokithe 940 Returnethe 942 liste
 944 be he 945 comende 946 Whene his . are 950 be 953 Alle 954 pepile
 955 are . haue . dispyte 957 thinke 961 þat weche 963 to om. stirt 964
 smarte 966 for hire 967 pynede 968 wyth qwyte 972 trayturs . shal dyc iche
 one 974 fede hire 978 shal 979 forfendede 980 bynde . yrne 981 mayde .
 escuse 982 suche 984 alle 986 shulde . punche 988 thise 992 messagers 993
 Alle . hyme 994 sere 995 pise 996 nouzte 997 angelles 998 No 1001 nouzte
 1002 thise 1004 suche v. 1005 om. 1009 to þe kinge 1010 scruyne 1012
 are . alle 1013 certene wicchis 1016 are traytours 1019 yife . wycherafte
 1020 be . to om. a kepte 1021 maisters lorde 1026 sewirly 1027 note-wyth-
 stande 1028 mute nede 1029 pepile . stante 1031 sueche 1033 þene 1036
 yrne . rente 1040 Thene 1042 the om. 1043 encresse . dye one a 1048
 gruche 1052 are 1053 whene 1055 possible 1057 þene 1062 pleasaunt .
 dilectabile 1063 kyne . calueryne . alle 1065 lefully 1068 veniable 1072
 shal 1073 shal 1074 shal 1075 þi dedis . are 1079 fle 1081 be . þene .
 solelymply 1084 adawe 1086 alle 1087 wil 1089 pies 1090 Thise 1093 wol
 1095 prophetysses 1101 fyfte 1102 one-to 1103 pusaunce 1104 ytai'e .
 ynglonde 1108 alle 1111 markede 1112 sundre 1113 Alle . trew 1114
 Bot . þis wordis 1115 pepile 1117 falle 1118 Suche 1119 þis 1121 wheche
 1123 goodly lyuers . shal 1127 thynkis 1130 a om. 1133 hir . om. yrne
 1135 bet 1139 sey 1141 lyfe . pepile 1142 lede . to 1143 pepile . gane 1147
 alle 1148 aske . are 1149 dispise 1153 alle . beaute 1156 nouzt 1157 it
 om. þene . uelensly 1162 counsellede 1164 lese 1165 lese 1166 Alle 1167
 thynke 1168 lede 1169 special 1170 pepile 1172 Alle 1175 alle 1176
 counsel 1179 be 1181 pise . no 1183 counsel 1185 thinge 1188 leue
 1193 dye 1194 of ryzt 1196 þene 1197 fykyll 1201 be 1202 Such 1204
 senew . weynes 1206 alle 1208 lofe 1212 þene 1218 pepile 1221 dye 1225
 prisone 1227 sey 1229 seris 1231 dye 1232 rysynge 1233 theme . herde
 1237 wyth-draw 1238 priuily 1241 meyre . pepile 1243 mekyl 1244
 Venemhous . any 1245 Dispitous veniable 1251 O 1252 standiste 1253
 lystyne . counsel 1257 orrybile 1259 this om. thyng þat (pat overl.) 1265
 countrollere 1268 bysy 1269 whelis 1270 suche 1272 shal 1275 Shal
 1276 y-fastenede . alle 1279 come 1280 alle 1281 know 1282 shal 1283
 whele 1284 suche . shal 1285 Iche . theme 1286 shal 1287 shal 1288 a
 1289 pies 1290 be 1291 be 1292 lyuynge . sey such whels 1293 please
 1294 shal 1295 zondur 1297 Thise whelis shul . anone 1298 gane 1299 are
 calde 1300 smythes 1302 whels must 1303 it om. thride 1304 whels are
 1307 whels 1308 seithe 1309 grugith 1310 shal ye 1312 meyre 1313 hath
 stodyethe . alle . mende 1321 yne 1322 suche 1323 bothe om. sunne 1326
 hydist 1327 crye 1330 orribile 1333 þi 1335 easy . suche 1336 pepile .
 meruelous 1339 stande 1340 thynke . my 1341 tinges 1345 thei om.
 1346 & om. 1352 pat om. 1355 a horibile 1357 or eyzte 1358 whels . fley
 1359 sprynge 1360 Sum mane hath . or 1361 mene om. are 1363 take om.
 1365 veniaunce 1368 his 1375 theme 1376 fere 1379 fere 1380 whels .
 alle om. 1385 heraudes nombre 1386 his 1389 for om. 1391 Meche folke
 1393 Lyfte 1394 alle 1395 are 1396 are . gunne . frunttis 1397 folke .
 hath 1398 Summe mene . veniaunce 1399 o 1400 suche 1401 mesure
 1402 and falleth om. shulde now 1405 aune 1406 repungynge 1409 thies .

smythis 1410 makith 1411 is it . þe 1414 thynkis . wondire 1415 allo
 1419 before 1420 whate may falle 1422 the om. 1425 wrestilliste 1428 shal
 1430 fyztiste . þou shal 1433 þi . mans 1437 dide 1438 o 1439 selue 1440
 comounys 1441 lye 1442 hymc þane 1443 o . suche 1444 I counseyl om.
 1448 gyfe (for- om.) 1452 ye spoke 1453 on om. þis 1454 or þat 1455 oribile
 1456 kynrode 1457 þat hye maieste of þe 1458 þat . gracyous om. þe kynge
 1459 þis fondnes 1460 an om. 1462 riȝte welle 1463 broke one 1464 wich-
 crafte 1466 youre . trechorie. 1467 one þe rene 1468 noȝt 1470 illucione 1472
 ministirs 1473 yrne wyere 1474 shal . right om. 1475 I . þei shal do it 1476
 L. sorow . and woo om. þat his . wyf om. 1479 traitours 1480 haue . haue om.
 deserue 1482 it om. ly . ite shalle 1483 it om. dispite 1484 his mene 1485
 oribile 1486 from 1488 Alle . and₂ om. alle bloddy 1490 euene inst. of ryght
 1491 pilere 1495 be . sufficiante 1501 þis holy lyfe to turne agayne to synne
 1502 or 1503 þe c. of þis 1504 alle . lyȝte 1507 maydene 1507 alle 1509
 þe loue þerfore of oure kynge 1511 she 1513 disease 1514 leste 1515 please
 1517 se 1519 þat om. before 1521 he be 1522 amende al thyng 1523 in
 om. 1526 be . neste 1531 bostous 1533 hire tetis now 1534 ere . & aftur
 1535 a om. smyȝt 1536 O . l . g . strenghide hire to susteyne 1537 peynes
 1538 is she . soule is to þat l. 1541 wensdaie 1543 vnberied om. 1544 Lyinge
 þer ful white & eke ful rede 1545 wynde ite 1547 And om. meche . folk om.
 1550 most om. 1552 byriynge . to om. 1553 callede . one-to 1554 dyrk
 1555 Katherine 1558 oynntmente 1559 this . he om. 1561 on om. 1562 after
 om. is þer 1563 biriede 1564 falle . suche 1565 berie þis same body 1566
 of . folke 1567 were . bi . officers 1568 ful boldly 1570 Sithe . shulde 1571
 thus om. 1572 þyne owne wyfis 1573 hast 1574 Thise 1575 doo om. 1576
 thyne i. 1577 & þi i. 1578 shul om. 1580 þat om. Biriede . me thouȝte it no
 tresone 1581 But . weel om. acordande one-to 1582 þe 1583 seyn suche
 1584 ȝet to . robours . are 1585 haue 1587 neyours 1589 kynde . and om.
 1590 lorde 1592 write . autours 1593 ne eke 1594 man-kynde . defoule
 1596 note þise 1597 Thise . are 1598 maxience hert 1604 lyue 1606 gyue
 1607 take 1609 stikede . cradylle. 1610 ffor om. alle my 1612 A om. P.
 here 1613 good om. gentel om. þus is he lost 1614 whichcraft . gynnythe .
 to om. 1615 reste in here 1616 alle 1617 suche 1618 deceyuede . now om.
 1620 My . ite waxite . as₁ om. as þe lede 1622 a₂ om. 1623 alle 1625 haue
 do 1626 þut 1627 shal 1628 els 1629 þis 1631 meche 1633 shal note
 1635 hymc þus sone 1636 þe olde trew 1637 fadir kepte oute of 1639 this
 om. 1640 the om. his courto . & be one 1641 examede 1642 thouȝt þis m.
 1644 Beholdethe 1645 sodenly . y-falle . meserie 1646 not om. 1647 hymc
 now 1648 be ye. 1649 Wheche þat 1650 suche renagatis 1652 seide thei
 1653 know 1656 we om. or cane 1657 hym om. We wil . serue . ande bane
 1658 ande smyte . þou om. 1659 shal 1661 departo 1662 trust 1663 to fro
 1664 are appliede . þene shal 1665 are . thus om. 1666 þe stone 1669 suche
 renagatis 1671 sumne 1672 are . to 1674 comfort 1675 presede where 1676
 Suche 1678 fle . peppe . thus om. sodenly 1680 wheche þat 1682 menbris
 1683 vnderstande 1684 or 1687 go 1688 Wherefore euene after 1689 bounde
 & forthe eke 1690 heritiks . fiere 1692 hundrede 1694 þer 1695 we left .
 doges 1697 autores 1699 hire 1707 of inst. of and 1708 ffor . made 1710
 hire modire 1712 þe knottis þat ye 1713 & om. 1714 Mayde . lyue 1715 þi
 1716 counselle 1717 magik . & om. wepe sore 1718 þou were 1719 suche
 1720 þyne eyne . be om. 1722 saye . the om. 1724 on om. to þe 1725 folow
 1726 on om. counsell 1728 þi . alle 1729 forgyffe . þi 1730 alle þo 1731
 the om. 1732 falle 1734 are 1735 shal 1736 on þis m. y wil deuyse 1737
 smyte þyne heede of 1738 none faile 1739 warante. 1740 sewire . ilk 1743
 þyne . councele . to om. 1744 þene . meke 1746 hange 1747 þis daie . be
 1748 wordes 1749 ffor om. To þe a q. & alle 1750 one om. 1751 wene þe
 falle is 1752 is 1753 Summe mene wene . dye 1754 ful s. 1755 deceyuabile
 1756 lese 1758 hethe 1759 lawghynge 1760 haboundithe 1761 hate 1762
 the om. 1763 theder om. 1764 dye 1766 haue 1767 dyspise . þi o. 1770

couet 1771 aungels 1772 shulde astoundede 1773 misteris 1775 þat stande
 1777 spente 1779 waishide 1785 fere 1786 thise . 3eue 1788 is . draw
 1789 folow . prese 1792 sweche 1793 modirs . maydens 1794 my 1797
 myschyff 1801 brynnynge fiere 1803 meche thyngis 1804 swere . be 1805
 wyth-oute 1806 And om. 1808 dye 1809 smyte 1810 or 1811 sey 1815
 eyne & handis 1819 þat trostyne 1822 to þi college amonge . maydens 1823
 þe b. 1824 with 1825 enmy 1828 remenberaunce 1838 at eue 1843 shal
 1844 mute 1845 þi 1846 bother 1849 þi 1850 aungels 1851 þi maydens
 1853 þi 1855 Amonge þi . þat 1857 sodenly 1858 herde 1860 & om. mayde
 1862 as beste 1869 before 1870 Maydens are 1871 Aungels are . þi s. eke to
 1879 relees . alle 1882 forgyue 1887 þi 1889 stande 1890 forgyfe 1893
 holly alle 1895 wode & rage 1902 þene suche 1904 Suche 1905 watirde alle
 1906 aboute 1909 hathie 1913 aungels 1914 like . wyngis 1915 come .
 autoris 1916 toke 1920 the om. 1921 & of this v. 1923 on the margin.
 Poule . suche 1927 þe mounte 1928 hastily 1930 for om. 1931 be 1933
 sey 1935 if þat 1936 autor 1937 pusaunce 1938 labourde . it om. þise
 1939 byne . hane 1944 weche 1945 day om. 1947 be 1948 are . onknowe
 1949 knowlege 1952 holede 1954 þat . wheder 1955 swete . þat same holy
 be lycoure 1956 sey þei p. be 1957 Thus . be 1959 suche lycours 1961
 before 1962 mans 1963 hire . make forfiture 1964 or fyue 1967 autorite
 1968 nouzt 1970 eke om. 1971 ymagyne . a om. 1974 the om. shal 1977
 solempe 1978 to wheche

Col.: Explicit vita sancte Katerine facta per Doct. Capgrau

2. FROM MS. ARUNDEL 20, fol. 1.

I.

Prologus (v. 1—252) om.

1^{us} liber 1 grece 2 surry . both lorde 3 clarkis . olde storece 5 gouernde
 6 calde . to inst. of poo 7 luffyd . ful om. 8 lambe . lyone 9 nootyde . 3ow
 lyst 10 be-knowne 11 dyd . omage 12 bachalere 13 theyr . sought 14 þei
 nedyd ought 15 yles longyd . poo om. vnto (so always) . londe 16 to hys 17
 he had . honde 18 havens 19 weldyd þem . ryzt . lyste 20 marchandis .
 maryners 21 omagers 22 pece . reynynd . 3erys 23 feyr 24 belowyd . omagerys
 25 nobyle . seyde 26 felde . pessabulle 28 pennes 29 wolde hym 30 dyd .
 xulde yt 31 began vengeance 32 Prayer 34 bet . ryzt 35 lawys 37 meyd
 38 Stabulle . euermore . I- om. 39 manz om. 40 þem 41 thyngis . þer wrouzte
 42 pytus . spryte 43 Pece 44 clynnyd 45 on- om. & to 46 als mete . axe
 vnto 47 lordis . ther inst. of poo 48 wysse 49 hatyd he hardely . harlotry &
 vyse 50 pete vnto . thouzt 51 such . xulde hethyne 52 wysse 53 Ouzt .
 hard thorne brymbulle tre 54 growys . rosse . 3e mey 55 Iues 57 Two .
 othur 58 large & grete a. þe tothyr alle 59 fothur 60 & walle 61 þe
 tothyr . bokis 62 or 63 whych . kyngis there crownyd 64 hyzt Amelech .
 stande 65 þe tothyr . Alexander . Egypt 66 same om. land 67 & eke of 68
 frewte . I-wysse 70 surry . douzt . 71 key 72 alle þe kyngdome . trone 73
 surrey . must cum . wey 74 mey . shyp 75 els 76 hayvene . hooge . ful om.
 77 castels 78 Oppun to . wolde cum 79 theyr fredomes . feyr 80 ouzt . heyth-
 nes . crystyndum 81 repeyr 82 Vndyr . meyr 83 xulde . ffeylle 84 wyth
 mete men & vyteytle 85 Alexander 86 schyp s. cyte 87 owne lordshyp 88
 of . cuntresse 89 in toune felde or one see 90 whych 91 done 92 othyr 93
 egypt . standis 94 & large . grete fame 95 must 96 Vnto . way & wayre 98
 must 100 sent 101 By seynt p. sent 102 þem 103 so þer þei alle yt wyste
 104 ffor . theyr 105 theme 107 whyche 108 xalle 110 þer 111 Munkis .
 suche 113 þeis 114 Alle . martyrs and fulle 115 meydyns wydous 116 numbyr
 117 medow . shourys 118 Than numbyr theme I trow not he mey 119 assey

120 Theys vessels. martyrs 121 fyer. yerne. sleyn & brent (I-om.) 122 four-
nesse 123 scapyd 124 xulde. Intent 125 devyne 126 longys 129 after 132
an holy 133 callyd 135 large & ryzt fulle. pepile 137 gan. than om. 138
xulde 140 nouzt els 141 wones 142 callyd theyr. no nothyr 143 alexander
144 wordy suche 146 neper louys nor 147 do 3yt. myzt 149 eyvne. þis kyngis
deys 150 lyvys here in. mykkelle 151 longis. lawes 152 landis. assays 153
thyngis. now om. 154 cronaccules 155 As mythy. alle overl. makis 156 mo
marvylys 157 how. Ere 159 whete vnto h. whete. quaste 160 must nedis.
whene 161 muste nedys 162 fardyst 163 wyrkis. wondyrs ryzt 165 þe om.
chyldyrne. þem 166 þem 167 falne 168 helpt þem. whan. þat om. 169 helpt
þem soner 170 bene. þeyr 171 changyd. theyr 172 þem. þat om. 173 not
175 sauejoure 177 vnylke 178 þeis olde. lyvyd 179 haue. mother 180 fodder
181 sykker. suche new 183 dyd habraame. sara 186 Marys. bryngars 188
feyr thyng. blyssyd myzt 190 vnto. meydyne. hathe chosse 191 owne 192
whyeh. spekis 193 hyr 196 vnto 197 Whane. þe om. seassone xulde 198 to
lyue 199 ordynd yt. suche 202 þe w. wondryd 203 how. olde. xulde v. 204
follows v. 208. 205 was 206 olde 207 Shalle. xalle 208 lye now. 204 a
om. lough 210 lordyes 211 cum. begynnys 212 Cryes a waylys. dose 214
Excusyd 215 wryttnye 216 meydyne 217 Hyr father. callyd constus 218
Hyr mother. seyð. hyzt 219 dougher 220 beawte. presse 226 passyd & gone
227 holde 228 wordy. ordynd 229 travvyll. þere om. 230 rouzte 231 aboutt
233 hule 235 þeyr 236 xalle 238 hyr eye 239 nurryshyd 241 boþe om. 242
teetis 243 lestyd. hyr. lyue 244 ful om. 249 scolers 250 nor f. 251 gan. (be-
om.) 252 lettars. þe om. sche om. spellyd 253 He. masters 254 hyr (so
always) 255 case. numbyr 256 modys. verbs 257 lernyd 259 þe modes om.
and þe tence 262 master 263 servyoure 264 ore. peyd þem theyr hyre 265 a
hye clarke 268 sche om. 273 Inclynynd. alle hyr 276 any 278 bodys 279
bysynes 280 Whyeh was wyth hyr. thus om. one þis w. 281 seys 282 Ageyns.
reynyd þan 284 be a rewlyd 285 3ung god 286 xalt over-cum 287 grece. þe
reme 288 ydiotes 289 mene. appostels. 290 worlde 292 wysdome 293 bus-
tyusnes. we xuld 294 thynkis. caas om. 296 ordynd. gyffe 297 worlde. xulde
not hyr 298 Nor 301 mythy. strength of þe holy goste 302 wold þat. þeis aretys
303 dougher 304 palyce 306 knyghys 307 ordynde 308 for to. ryce 309 And
eke hyr to nurtur 310 masters 315 hyer master 316 I-om. 317 chayrs.
myche 318 glasyd 322 þe boke 323 one rowe 324 after. om. 325 knowe. I-om.
326 wer 328 Vnto þeis clarkis. 329 only om. now þus newly 330 now inst. of
þan 331 waxt 332 one. gone 335 wele wyt. louys 337 made make 339
Oppun 340 none. worlde 343 In om. 344 from 345 devysey 346 & stodye
ryzt 347 treesse. off strange wysse 348 & om. ryse 350 Solatory to stodyars
of lyffe to theme comforte 351 gardyne & no moo 352 shytt 356 worldly. nor
357 wyse man seys 358 walls. towrs. made vp so 359 east (I-om.) 361 shytt
364 lyvyd 366 lyzt 367 tellys 368 how. wryzt 369 hys plyzt 370 arays
371 colours. displays 373 lernys. lytyle 374 be om. 375 trouthe from. falsed.
teehys 376 þan om. folows 377 cornyngis 378 xalt 380 in þat 381 master
383 meture 384 A. ys wyse 385 are 386 gemetry 387 ynglysh (!) 388 Yt
ys. mych. longis 389 letturs 390 of yt. 392 I can. makis 393 stythe 394
string. standyng 395 reyne vppone heyth 397 it om. 399 dulnesse 401 dyd
gadyr 402 clarkis 404 wyt. dougher. one hand 406 gaddyrd 407 þem
408 alle hys c. of any 409 þat he hath l. alle hys. ful om. 411 nozt 413 Theyr
problems. vndo 415 haue. thyngis 417 how. hyr a. 418 Or hyr c. for in
419 Can 421 þan om. than alle 422 certene 424 mey lyue 425 nedis 426
myche 427 wysse 428 þem 429 gaue þem. gyfftis 431 off theyr l. 432
theyr bountisnes. such 438 takyne. owne fathyr 439 worlde 440 longis
vnto 441 loggyd. loordis 442 dyed. & c. 443 3yt 444 great 445 done.
done wr. grete om. 446 þeir 447 lythe. now om. 448 clothyd. after (ward
om.) 449 solemnyte 451 no noþer noyce. cyte. 452 weleaway. xalle 455
no ayre 456 3unge 457 3yt 458 father. þus om. 459 bene. sykernes.
more. om. 460 sykterly 461 subiectis to o. laudis 462 must. bandis 463

noble . what . þat om. 464 to here om. 465 gladde 466 terys 467 changyd
 hyr 469 hyre 470 tombe 471 mey wyt . a kyng 472 anyntyd . balme .
 neþer 473 nor . suche 474 thyngis 475 Was þan . whyche nedis 476
 hapely . warse 477 suche . ryȝtis 478 lorde 479 byschops . knyghys 480
 deys for evyne so v. was 481 run . begynne . passe 482 theyr 483 Must haue
 484 suche lastyng whych . feyll 486 enteylle 487 vanysh . rotun 488 to þis
 intant 491 ameleke 492 Thys . oute om. 493 dythyr cum . seke 494 must
 now alle clepe þis cyte 495 coste 496 must haue . it om. 500 myche loy and
 myrthe 501 In þis c. eke dethe dyd hyme doune falle 502 cawsys . thys n.
 503 stand . not 504 knowlege 505 ys yt callyd 507 standis 508 þis ys yt
 namyd 509 walkis . werkis many a . 510 worthy 511 schrewys xalle . þeir
 512 hyr owne 513 Alexander 514 had . husband 515 xulde 516 cum 520
 One 521 kyngis in . land 522 solemnyte 523 custome 524 trobulle . þer (-for
 om.) 525 Many a . parliament 526 kynred . hyre 527 foundyd 528 in whose
 529 now om. 531 storys 533 Sodene 534 egyp . babbelle 537 nor 540 lesse
 541 standis 542 ouzt off 543 wheþer 545 hyer ryalle 546 babbylle 547 seyð
 548 grettyst . vnto 549 land . egyp 550 wyche . reynyd 554 athanas 555
 makis 556 same om. 557 deseuyd 559 & other 560 longis 562 Madagda-
 laus hyzt 564 Reynyd 565 seys 566 No . spekis 569 wordy 573 owne 574
 fathers 576 must . treuly 577 gorgalus zunger . mardaemius 580 mardamy .
 þe 583 father 585 gorgalus zung . haue 586 whyle om. 587 wonders . souȝt .
 lyue 588 ȝyt . ryve 589 conquestyd 590 araby . fenyse . owne 591 gorgalus
 592 wan . gunne (?) 593 sessyd 594 calde 597 haue hys 601 When . dye . in
 602 alle alone . sumtyme om. 603 gaue 604 Surre 605 þat om. He gaue . a
 mythy 609 onys . clarkis 610 reynyd 612 so dere (!) 614 septure 615
 callyd anthiocus 616 þer xv ; ȝere om. . rosse 617 callyd 621 lewys ȝyt 622
 dyd 623 robbyd 624 wrytis þeis 625 þe c . and tresun 627 when 629 the
 same plyȝte 630 philelator . sey 631 wyth . dougher . vnkynndly 632 a
 bryȝt 636 any om. 637 þat hyzt 642 þe kyng . þer-too 644 callyd 645
 No new chapter . þis t . romayns wan from 646 Myche 648 In mene 649 þat
 inst. of for . feyne 651 in om. 652 landis . faders wan 653 reynyd evyne þe r.
 656 dyd 659 calde hys 660 governd . lande 661 þis . seys 662 þe om. 663
 t. from theyr h. 664 elyus adryames 665 dougher tylle . calde phalome 666
 on . om. ; to þis seyð 667 surre to þe r. 668 And om. to þem cessyd 670 þei
 seyð þat hyr dyd s. 671 Þei saw . suche 673 sone . solabre 674 fathyr 675
 archeyone & 676 glandace 678 barus 680 custos fathyr 682 ȝow . of om.
 683 meydyne inst. of lady 684 holly 685 behyzt 686 þe rekkunnyng . ane
 687 accordis . cronacules . be 690 d. in many thyngis 691 othyr mens rek-
 kynnyngis 692 gyfe 693 þeis . men om. in ordyr ryȝt as þei xulde þe 694
 apply reply 695 menys 696 rekkun 697 Numbers & reheyse . wh. wyll 698
 thynkis 700 kynredd . not worschypp 701 þerto . dothe 702 shrews . seys 703
 how . cam 704 corek synnars 705 ware 706 genology 707 standis . þe same
 708 to om. 710 ageyns 711 vyteyll . oper 712 þer inst. of þat 713 off alle
 m. v. 714 so om. 716 cum 717 to-gydder 718 shew now 720 cum . omage
 721 ladyes 723 mace 724 þem av. 725 gods 726 lat þer 727 how 728 hyr
 sewtis 729 began . enowgh 731 to þe povert lowgh 732 foyssone . vnto 734
 in bows & in halle 735 þe . nedis 736 had (I- om.) 737 wyght 739 nyght
 740 boredys . coverde 741 meelle . anothyr 742 vesselle . 743 neydyr om. 744
 & men 745 palyce . standis 746 pepile 747 among lordis . or X 748 þus þei
 kept þeyr state . eke om. 749 gentyls 750 ladeys 751 cam . othyr 753
 fathyr . & sum . were om. 754 curtasy . cam inst. of game 755 spake 758
 best . warre . 759 theatur 760 euery man was þer fythyng . 763 Also . wrostyl-
 lyng 764 And whan . was . & ylk dele done 765 lustyng rewylle . þan began
 to 766 homward ychone for to . 767 had fully . I- om. 768 þat had . or make
 769 gyffne . coursars . þe tone 770 þe tothyr whyȝt 771 of om. 772 eke om.
 773 war gyffne mantyls whyȝt . þe om. 775 þei ryde . forth om. 777 And
 preyð 778 tellys 779 kepyd . helde . þer 780 quene þat þer style dwels 781
 for om. she can þerof 782 Hoo . þei dyd grete 783 þis 785 & hyr 787 flor

hy 788 grete wyt & . hert om. wels 789 rynnys frome . wels 792 pat was
 793 any evle 794 And he pat dyd 799 neuer 800 court 801 perte 802 pat q.
 804 was 805 3yt hys 811 good om. 813 meydyn . bapt. not 814 vsyd .
 spryth 816 bothe be 817 mech om. pe eye 818 wyt 819 Pat 821 spy .
 mys wrozt 823 nor inst. of or 826 hez om. 832 deynys 833 thys 836 falle
 (be- om.) 837 Pat lord ys ever and xalle be in blys 843 also pow . was 850 as
 any 852 kepyd no r. nor none a. 855 landis 856 must 861 both oure 862
 cummys 863 lovys 866 to₂ om. 868 turnys 870 lyth . beneyth 871 ys now
 alone 872 He ys dede & beryed & leyd fullle depe. 873 we be hole . be we₂ om.
 874 o₂ om. 876 now w. k. now 878 Into 880 not þus 882 weldis 884 þeyr
 887 now om. lykly 888 xalle 889 eke om. 890 ryalle k. 891 conselle 893
 land . in₂ om. 895 os 896 for oure prow 897 xulde to batylle 898 ho . xuld
 be 899 kynd . 3yt neuer 901 a st. . wyngis 902 chesse . a captene 905 a om.
 907 pat feyr 3yng thyng 910 must 911 Appone . matere om. 912 wythe ; oute
 om. 913 hath. 914 That om. xulde 916 wryzt 917 þis matter 919 is om. .
 per lady 921 Os 922 þeis l. 924 on 925 ladeys . helder . 3yng 926 now om.
 knowne . lande 927 spokun 928 lyke . bannde 929 hathe . hand 930 Os 931
 ladeys 932 Appon . appone 935 lat 938 alle þe 941 alle inst. of ylde 942
 pat long to 3owe now 943 Shall 945 ceasse (I- om.) 947 wyrk after 949
 veylle 951 of þeyr hertis desyre 952 þe men 955 owne 956 xulde be soo
 957 for pat wolde yt vndo 958 nor 960 for om. 961 desyrys 963 3yng . must
 nedis 964 let . chosse 965 on om. 966 Spede 3e 969 myzt 970 a om. 971
 3yt inst. of ryzt . or out of bedd 3e rysse 974 ryght om. 976 al-vey inst. of
 alone . yt wyll not be-seeme 982 in₂ om. . skylle 983 & of 987 She lovys .
 hyr meydynhede 989 on om. 991 to om. 992 so om. 993 wylde . þing om.
 994 bene . tyme om. 995 lyggynne in me or my w. 996 I thynk . 3e sey 999
 nor 1000 3ow ; selue om. wysse 1001 xalle to 3oure wylle 1002 3yt asseyd
 neuer 1003 nor me in no 1004 As om. neythyr nay nor 1005 pleynne inst. of
 blame 1006 dose . as om. 1007 castis 1008 oppose 1010 same om. . touchys
 1011 nor to 1012 land therto 1013 þer (of om.) 1014 fallys 1015 wyt . wele
 om. 1016 must nedis . 1018 xalle . eke inst. of ellys 1019 muste 1020 lat .
 matter . lengare 1022 now cum . hys 1024 sey theyr alle 1025 þerto I make
 god 1026 speke he what he wylle 1027 off þe olde quens bylle 1028 wer
 1029 thus wyth one v. 1030 endis þe fyrste b. 1031 kynred 1032 Ys d. now
 at thys tyme 1033 she myzte send. 1034 A new boke now begyne xalle wee
 1035 on- om. 1037 be-tweyne hyre l. 1040 Vnto þe 1041 or þis 1042 prosse
 inst. of pause 1043 And a reste ryght here at þis same clausse.

Explicit primus liber vite beate virginis Katherine.

Incipit prosa (!) in 2^m librum.

II.

2 fyer . to om. 3 mey 4 tels 5 gosse . nor 6 there be ffyer 7 In þ. s. m.
 I sey be þis blyssyd ladye 10 tokuns 11 no tulle 12 knew 13 Os . xalle .
 hasse tokyns 14 knew . roote. 15 knew . hard 17 byrnys 18 sytte om.
 abouue 19 þat (inst. of þe qwech) one 24 Among vs 25 duly thynk one 26
 ffor whyche ensampyls went 27 desyryd 28 must . nede 29 burne 30 þis ys
 no d. 31 frome þe thynne. 32 be₂ om. 33 vertue 35 ffor she gaffe hyr fully
 þerto þat stounde. 36 ryth om. 37 cum yt callys . ffelow 38 to-gydder as s.
 & brother. 39 yche . alle om. dose . drowe 40 To þei be cum alle suche ys
 þeyr l. 42 sercule & course . lo om. 44 ffar past 45 Pat fro þem she casts 46
 & þem are 47 she hathe so swetly takyne 48 metis and mats 49 bonde 50
 accordis . me thynk om. 51 lyvyng 52 þe same 53 say . it om. 55 menys . ney
 56 þus om. 57 or—ryne om. 58 Soundyth . hyre 60 neyde 62 synne 63 Per
 64 ys inst. of art 65 vnwordy 68 & eke dyuersyte 70 streche . (fol. 9 & 10 are
 transp.) 71 rynne 74 þeir 79 þei cam 81 loppynne . ryth om. 82 ho cowde .
 syt or 84 many oper 85 saracene 86 ware . there om. ryalle 87 & fullle 88
 þe ryalle 92 there 93 awne . ny om. 94 callyd 95 now he xulde 96 one 97

bothe om. 99 now om. assynyd 100 gaddyrd alle togydder 101 spas 102 so om.
 Was in certene 103 at þeir . þe 104 it om. 105 Syche 106 chosse . among þem
 107 þei seyð 111 þus om. 112 My . lady om. xalle 113 forgyue 114 sey to 3ow
 trough 115 take om. 116 many a 117 chosyne 119 exceppe . ryght om.
 mothyr 120 certainly inst. of ryght. 121 wyllē sey þat 3e 124 lengar 125
 3oue 126 tak om. 127 & on 128 olde awncetre 129 xalle falle 130 Nor .
 here om. 131-3 Yt ys no plesance þat 3e xulde þus wrye, Yt plece þem better
 and 3e consent þer-too, þat 3oure awnswere myȝt breke theyr wo 134 husbande
 137 must nedys 138 3e xalle therby amend 139 Excuse 140 chosse 143
 now om. 145 cr. & hys . rathyr wolde he 146 wysse 149 yow om. 150
 Oppyne 151 case 153 Oure p. oure s. 154 theysse 155 astuznyd 156 hard
 157 now om. 158 nor . wyt nor 161 me thynkis 164 thynkis suerly 166
 cumis 167 scruffis . plece 171 theyr 172 þem 173 thyng yff 175 mey
 176 yt ys ȝyt 177 sworne 180 cumis 181 fellys 185 mothyr . & inst. of if 186
 must 189 alle om. 190 mey . ȝet om. 192 my stody 194 loffyd . how xulde
 196 sythyng 197 þei harde hyr 198 lord 199 & alle 3oure wones 200 at p.
 205 curtasy 206 syne 209 fle me thynkis noþer but 3e 210 but I 211 abyed
 213 þeis matters now for a w. 215 The whyls 216 linst. of & . avysse 217 nyse
 219 swere 222 to yow lengar tale m. 223 loop 224 sey . lythe 225 w. one
 wysement wyrk 226 it om. thynk 227 for om. bark 228 theyr lyst . wont
 229 chose . must 231 as om. 233 seyð 235 eke þe more and lasse 236 þat casse
 238 my awne . bouȝt (a- om.) 241 yore inst. of þoo 243 3e inst. of opir men.
 244 cum hydder 246 a om. avysyd 248 but a lytylle. 249 3e yt
 253 whyls þe gyrs growys 254 sterffe 255 now om. knowys 257 clark
 one 261 xulde . arre 262 traytois 263 þeis lordis . warre 264 ffor 3.
 gouernance and 3our kynd þis ys f. fare 265 abyed 266 men so sleynē . owyne
 om. 267 theyr w. 268 þem whyls þei are 269 men scruffyd . scruffe . lambe 270
 Throw 271 þeme drawne by (oute om.) . or 272 petyus 274 as me thynk
 276 se hem om. 277 & suffyr 279 lengar 280 growys 281 vnto þeis wordis
 282 father 285 one 286 a 287 nedis 288 one 290 þe enmys 292 fathyr
 293 ȝers . ȝede 294 do 295 chase . captyne þan 296 alle in þis 298 þan om. ney.
 299 sers 300 mey 30ue 301 nede 30ue now to . blame. 302 was om. 303 Was
 wur . als w. 304 thyng inst. of theft 305 frome 306 ware punnyshyde 307
 & off þis punnyshment ȝyt he k. 308 þis ; same om. weyse 309 I wytane .
 ryne 311 þeir cuntre . brynne 312 hem om. 313 othyr 315 lyke as 316 a
 ryalle lorde & ryche wyth-alle. 317 calde . þe prince 318 knesse 320 3oure
 feyrnes Is sprung 321 þei . knowne 322 And om. ȝyt mey 3e not nethyr . nor
 324 Os . gone 325 or ȝyt calle 326 care & om. 327 what xalle . I-pased &
 om. now goo 328 for om. 329 lykis . weel om. 330 chaunce 332 wysse
 334 trouthe 335 fyngers 336 settylle 338 ordenyd 339 castels 340 peple .
 þei . no 341 weys went 343 must om. 344 feyryst . berys 345 so do m.
 347 awne . wyllē 349 xulde plece . þat om. 350 mothyr 351 Ryche . xuld .
 aveylle 352 coffer . kepyd 353 myȝt . bothe plate . meylle 354 land . capa-
 dosse 356 Wyldē pey . raunsum 357 on- om. 358 þe om. wysyst 359 ȝet om. ;
 3e haue not one 361 wyllē not nor can not 362 nor strength . for þat þei w. 366
 þe . reyne 367 þoo om. 368 in₂ om. in₃ om. 369 sykker . knythys 370 þeis
 worshypps . at easse 372 me thynk 373 þat inst. of & 374 Ordnye 375 Spous-
 ayllē . os ȝyt 3e neuer 376 þis ys my tale and ours fully therto. 377 in spense
 378 warde . hope om. ; oure l. & expense. 379 Gramercce . þan om. 381 I- om.
 382 worshyp & my honour wolde 383 syre om. 384 spake 386 thynkis . awayse
 388 desesse . wyldē lyke 389 þus om. pretendythe 390 noþer . nor 391 all
 om. 392 thynk 393 als . conquestis . seres om. 394 lordshypps . wer wonē
 395 þat om. 396 no om. 397 presoners . layd 398 were . seyne þat 400
 sowiers. 401 ne om. we no covyt þat 3e do 402 a-fere 403 A. 3e 405 P.
 3e . vnto 3oue 406 in a. 408 peyns gylfyne 409 semys 411 My . drope
 412 gane 414 must nedis 417 To om. Make fre or make to hyme presonare
 419 hope to hang and drawe 421 swone 426 awȝt. 429 haue suche freedom g.
 hyme w. 430 nor 431 pere ys offycers 432 þe shrews . nor. 433 ylle . i. dey

pus meȝ 3e 434 nedis . not om. 435 offycers 436 must þem 437 slesse fyȝtis
 438 xalle 439 Nor þeir dede but 440 slesse þeȝs men þat are. 441 Serwandis
 to þe l. 443 Os . fathers 444 let . lat . or saue. 445 longis 446 meȝdyne
 447 be hem om. ; thow þei dampnyd be 448 to þe Iuggis b. k. & q. to se. 451
 began . ryȝht om. to r. 452 perloȝs 454 rysyng at any seasoȝe war steryd
 455 afferyd 457 ȝowe . how 459 men om. 461 thynk 462 It f. þat off alle þis
 ȝe ne r. 463 syttis 464 an . eke om. 465 be om. were . Iustyes 468 Nother .
 nor . mans mynde. 469 And peȝr . yene 470 t. ȝowe 471 myȝt . be 472
 hath om. 473 þem 474 boke 475 how 476 fulle s. 479 lengare . þe
 lettars 480 wyll 482 full om. holle and in quarte 483 xalle 484 wyll
 486 gryme 489 xulde . a man þan more þan ȝe drede 490 als w. 494 ewle
 tacchyde . yt ys. 497 it om. 498 os . xalle 499 on- om. 500 lat 501 lande
 505 here now how þe pepyl . peȝr 506 toȝ om. 507 I now shew 510 babilone
 515 dethe 516 One 519 ryth om. 522 repentand 524 I wolde 526
 loue 527 oft tymes 528 opynyons . fomyd 529 Make oftymes a l. 530 hyme
 onȝte at herre 531 theyr wyttis 532 þat om. 535 wardly . ware 536 ware
 538 slydis . ȝe knowe 539 fulle fast ageȝne 542 þat om. 543 saw . wrete om.
 ane eyȝne 544 þe boke 545 Reseuyd os ȝyt . thynk . must nedys. 546 yt tellys
 547 how xulde we k. 548 wordy . eldyrs 549 tolde þem 550 what 551 Where
 553 oppynyons . sere now om. ȝow lett 554 gods 555 þat 556 prechars are feȝne .
 one rowe 557 haly 560 we om. perfore inst. of þan . a noþer 561 standis . full
 om. 562 master . I wyll 563 semys 564 to om. 566 meȝntyne 567 longis .
 godds 568 calde 569 of om. 570 theyr pesse 573 þoo om. 576 cause .
 must 578 hyde (a- om.) . one ȝere 582 cumis 583 hens om. agoo 585 landis
 586 fare a . farre fro þe 591 wythouȝt 592 thynk 595 Whyche þat xalle wele . eke
 om. 599 we . lande one se & 601 studdy 602 thynkis surely . xulde do wele thus
 603 xulde 604 lesure 606 no . wherfor 607 one . vaffe 608 do . counselle 613
 os 614 and cypre 615 drede I 616 so I dere yt b. 617 þat om. 620 þer-offe
 not wante 621 xulde set a p. 622 ȝynge 623 lere 624 ek om. 626 xulde .
 had 627 þe om. be so 628 presyng ȝoure t. xalle 630 now om. 632 farther-
 more 633 yff yt . newe om. 638 at alle 639 Whyche off ȝoue spake 640 plen-
 tuosly 641 frome 642 sayyd . os . a vale 643 Os off . borne 644 ryde 646 yt
 647 fun 649 One 650 for om. 651 is om. c. has as 655 Whyche as . euene
 om. 656 hathe d. to þem þus þan 658 . 659 dwels . at 661 owte om. 662 & inst.
 of Ete . rest hyme and eke at evy[n]e 663 peȝr 665 no fycalte 667 þore . þus be-
 gan 668 ȝunthe 669 a kyng 671 bone 672 we om. hartely 673 sworne 675
 Ryȝt so & 678 yt ys 679 xalle now m. 685 not om. no noþer 690 cum affray
 694 style 695 in ȝour wyt ȝe enf. 697 I inst. of ȝe . swere 698 to om. 699 yt
 xulde 704 rehersed 705 awnswer 706 for om. . thynȝis 708 þat for . he om.
 710 þem sesse 711 And om. But yff 713 gylte 714 þat om. 715 þer stode
 717 þoo om. delffe 717 deppar . to (vn- om.) 720 hert 721 perte 722 are
 727 ȝow 728 in þe whyche . are indosyde 729 ȝoure ylke 730 eylys 731 be-
 leue 732 lady om. harte ys surely sett 734 ȝe so sore drynke 735 most om.
 737 concelde . tyll 738 ȝay 740 febulle wele 741 os wrytis þe 743 þe om.
 oft suche dystance 745 now lady ȝowe 748 ryȝht om. 750 but yff 752 as is
 754 nethyr in wake nor 755 as here 756 standis 757 on- om. 758 Seyne .
 grauntyd þen 760 hathe ȝoue . we wyll craue 764 I- om. vp om. one p. 765
 thynk . chaunge 766 Now and þan wyll ȝe now are ȝe not of Ioynt 767 Now
 wyll 768 know om. 772 nedis ffor ȝowe care 774 be 775 nor 777 þat ȝe
 sey . myche mervylle 780 hartly 781 wyll 782 were no behoue 783 nor
 784 dysseyuer . spyȝt. 785 sey also þat 786 all om. 788 Os to . xalle be.
 790 knowne 791 fathers . onȝ om. mothers 793 ordynd . gods 794 eke ys
 796 ware . yne þat n. 798 leegys 799 it were om. buttraces 800 shew 801
 meȝntyȝn 802 ys fulle smalle herdely 803 als w. 806 pretendys 810 &
 xalle I trow 812 lere 815 þer ȝe sey fully þat 817 be but 818 alle þe
 bunche 819 of ane yneche 820 I put case I gafe ȝow a b. 821 folowys . þerof
 þat om. I gaue 822 I meȝ . peȝ ȝoue 823 And gyue ȝoue an horse 824 cum .
 þe 825 arestotels . & made . such a gyse 826 lernys þem 827 chose 828

chose 829 vp om. 831 I 3yt eft 832 xalle . & om. 833 þis ys 834 þoo om.
 lamosines 835 here now 837 mervylle 840 a faryd 841 skeyth 842 had om.
 843 But yt ys 844 mattys 846 flor þe loue 847 Accep 848 do wele 849 3e
 lyst 855 hym alle 856 leke . vs om. 857 haue rest nor no esse 858 ware . lyke
 as . are 859 wele 860 many of 861 herd 863 sche sayde om. troste 864
 one . þe inst. of to 865 loste 866 wost 868 eyre 869 cum 871 thynkis
 873 haue om. 3ow om. 876 amerelle 877 can 879 thynkis . syttis 880 now
 om. myre 881 loose . now om. losse. 882 yt ende þus (!) 885 thyngis 887
 wolde thynk 890 sey 891 dose lyke 892 dose a f. 893 frome 894 Be ware
 895 nor 896 now om. wyll 899 man off d. d. 902 here om. 906 dente . leue
 907 not om. 908 sullyne 909 hathe byddyne 912 not I . þe g. 914 nor loue
 915 þe . thyngis 917 Be . telle . mo thyngs 918 among 919 ful om. 920 be .
 so om. 921 vsys 922 reme haply 923 Seyne 927 ful om. note om. 930 3e .
 correk . 3oure-s. 931 wolde o. 932 þan began 933 cald 935 ful om. 936 3oue
 madame . ful om. to b. 937 Os 938 of . om. 939 wyt 940 lyke as . Egvyle
 941 in als m. 942 fallys 943 whyche þat 3e loue 944 not theme . þat om. 948
 But þow 953 lets . beleue 954 be om. 955 shal om. 956 xalle 957 end om.
 958 þe om. 959 yt ys . as om. 960 flor inst. of sore 961 wyt þe cause off 3oue
 962 meyny . shal om. þe g. 963 to send forthe . both om. 964 þat om. 965
 One . hath om. off 966 off londe lorde . and lyme 967 olde . debate 968
 Among . per reynyd 971 soo inst. of thoo 972 why þat þe chasse 974 flor
 qwan om. Ther was not els 975 þer was nor þan wyld 976 seyð . xulde 977
 oft fallys betwene 978 Ageyns . stryvys 981 ware chosun 982 strenghe & sum
 985 Excellys . þow þe be as 988 wer 991 chosse 992 drawne 993 Nor
 994 heed om. must þe 995 my 998 Nor 1001 he om. 1003 as om. 1005
 cumand . ne om. 1007 be behynde 1008 fawle 1009 eke om. 1010 morenyd
 sore & 1011 saw 1012 þe om. 1013 ganc om. 1015 pereyille 1016 dayes om.
 1017 wyt 1018 ne rome 1019 not such a m. 1020 yff inst. of of 1022 or craue
 1024 To þat . be ch. 1025 turnyd now 1027 hath brougt 1028 do om. 1029
 þat euer þey poynt þey v. euer for s. 1031 who om. my 1033 clyvys 1035 not
 yt 1036 I-wey 1037 wepyd 1038 ys lorne 1039 sey speke or els doo 1040
 þe tyme om. 1041 though . is om. 1042 I wyt nevyr 1043 meiy wyt hyr answer.
 1045 cum . auzt farther 1046 doyne 1047 me . om. stunnyd . to abey 1049 but
 om. 1055 kyndrede 1056 all om. 1057 one 1058 elys 1059 3yng 1060 for
 byddis 1062 turne 1063 3oure entent 1064 frome 1066 lyke as 1067 here bef.
 1068 cume ne set 1070 lyue 1071 folow 3oue . stepps . 3ede 1072 þe chyl-
 dyne 1074 decesse 1075 I hope 1077 þat om. xalle 1078 dye . meidyne
 1079 þus yff 3e conceyff 1082 getyne 1083 lerne . lessone om. at me 1084
 thynk 1086 Vnkylle . ware I 1089 land 1090 eke om. vnto 1094 bothe
 gouerne 1096 my hart 1099 my harte 1100 ellys om. 1104 ware 1105 my
 hart . to do alle þing 1108 nor 1110 oft medlyth 1112 haue 1113 londe
 1115 þe inst. of þoo 1116 nor 1119 dredys 1120 What so e . gyffis . pryse
 1121 os 1123 seyne tyme 3e 1126 Os yt standis . land 1127 One th. þat 3e loy
 1129 not om. gyffine 1131 longis to þat 1132 regalyte . my 1133 standythe
 1134 eke om. wykryng 1136 how we 1137 werke and laboure 1138 lord-
 shyps . xalle not 1139 it om. brougt 1140 gyffine 1141 scruff . be 3oue
 sworne 1142 lord om. 1143 semyd 1144 þoo om. 1145 þan om. in 1146
 astate 1148 haue 1150 haue 1153 Os 1155 he om. wrytis . þe astr. to me (!)
 1156 how . not om. naypur wyk 1158 xulde . barke 1159 man om. 1160
 wheyther₂ om. 1161 i- om. 1163 xalle 1164 xalle fele and se 1165 dyrk
 1166 xalle 1168 xulde one 1171 of 3oue she seyð 1172 myzt 1173 at þis
 t. 3oure p. 1174 wele . put m[e] in d. 1175 I put case . xulde 1176 oure l.
 1177 nor 1178 rewle 3e 1179 length 1181 thyngis 1182 ware 1183 hertis .
 full om. 1186 nor 1190 holde 1191 seyne (= syth) 1192 one th. þat longis to
 þe regalyte 1194 if om. holde 1195 it om. 1196 for om. 1198 3yt knelyd doune
 before þe q. 1199 þe Ryche duke off Athenys þe Cyte 1200 of scole 1201 chosyne
 (I- om.) also inst. of þoo 1202 theyr chose . as om. 1203 wheche om. l. to be þeyr
 h. 1207 descendyth 1208 bothe lentylle 1210 semys . of þat k. 1211 ware . nor

1212 eldyrs 1213 Os greyne ryally groune . theyr 1215 ware lyke 1216 in om.
 þus om. 1218 soote 1219 Farther-more 1220 lyke thyng hys l. 1221 semes
 1223 despytis . os. 1224 vncourtyslye 1226 answard þus 1228 þat om. hathe
 1231 of wyt yt berys 1232 He þat 1233 indwed 1234 wardly 1236 I mey
 1237 þoue ; resoun om. 1238 tent 1240 one t. 1242 berys . he om. suete 1244
 eke inst. of & 1245 & in þat 1246 In þis we dyflyr 1247 semys . graffe 1248 I-om.
 olde 1249 and savour 1251 clyvyd a fore 1252 graffe 1253 farys . be₂ om. myne
 1254 xalle . lyue 1255 Os do now I . I xalle 1258 fladyr om. 1260 I wyll chose
 suche lyue as ys 1263 Kestyng 1264 hopyng 1265 þis seyð m. it om. 1268
 chase . theyre althys 1272 hath formyd 1274 but yf 1275 is in þoue 1276
 for om. 1279 none þer 1281 fulle wele asp. 1283 myzt 1284 lyvys . se
 1285 For þoure feyryde no man can decerne 1287 gyvne . þow om. 1288 yt
 over þoue ys so leyð 1289 frome 1291 nere s. 1294 vnto þoure 1299 xalle .
 inclyne 1303 þe noble 1304 þat om. þe name 1305 & many othyr of þoure
 lynageyng 1308 Seyne . ylkone 1309 do . kynred. 1310 for þour 1311 and
 byde therby 1314 ame not 1316 wyth-owtyne 1317 paynt 1318 schapys
 1319 is om. 1320 vyser 1321 gyue . nose 1324 gyffe 1325 fayre om. 1328
 thus do . mey s. hath 1329 thyng whyche 1330 do alle-wey . þat hyr dysdeyne.
 1332 take 1333 lesse . helde 1336 it om. 1337 farther-more . myzt 1338 &
 inst. of þow . coppylyd . one 1342 thyngis 1343 thyngis . 1344 wolde she
 1345 poynt om. 1346 lyueyng 1348 for and þe 1351 os . thynk 1352 þow
 comynne þeis gyftis 1353 gyffe . þem 1354 man inst. of mever 1355 syttis
 1356 gafe 1357 haue sum xxⁱⁱ . to 1358 xuld commun 1359 therto . peryle
 1360 man . syttis 1363 os 1364 poynt om. & þe last poynt 1365 to þoue ys
 1366 wondyrs 1368 os 1371 xalle be best 1375 endyzt 1376 sey 1378 alle
 my 1379 haue bene 1383 ane eyre 1384 a husband 1385 wele inst. of syre .
 þat om. 1386 lye 1387 set vs aboue 1389 þus I 1391 Thys argument ys þoure
 awne lare 1392-8 om. 1399 none 1402 whyche I wolde 1403 wyth-owtyne
 1405 vawe 1406 settis 1407 such one . h. wyll I none 1413 sykkerly 1416 he
 nede 1421 H. what I wyll also more sey 1423 nedis . mens 1424 in e. þat
 xulde be hym lych 1425 so Ientyll of blode 1427 onys om. askis 1429 he₂
 om. 1430 ameable 1431 seyne 1434 on om. seruauit om. 1437 but yf 1438
 seyne 1439 Os . semys . alle amysse 1441 feylle 1443 alle thys feylyth 1448
 xalle . þat he 1449 wyll . newe om. 1451 Els myzt þe wene þat I . 1452 Os
 1454 Wh. þat 1455 eke om. mother 1459 as þan om. 1460 so sore . can 1463
 sees 1465 takyne w. 1466 nye om. 1469 wotis 1470 wher xulde 1471
 desyrys 1474 scornys . euery chone 1475 lat 1478 sat 1481 xulde þus .
 combird 1482 a kyng . werys 1484 a om. 1486 yche . on om. 1487 go to
 ryde . as þeyr 1488 are þei ylke one 1490 bothe reherse 1491 fynyshyd
 1492 lyvys 1496 tretyd 1497 betwene þe . & hyr lordys legemen.

Explicit 2^{us} liber huius benignissime vite s. Katerine virginis

Incipit prosa in 3^m librum vite sanctissime virginis Katerine.

III.

1 Sythyne . here om. present lyue 3 þe holy gost . frome 4 and off 5 frome
 vs 6 þat yt ys 7 þe holy gost 9 kynred 11 how she 14 no₂ om. 15 on-
 om. 16 now om. myne 19 mervensly she ys enteryd in to hys t. 23 Whedyr
 24 do om. haue bene 25 never can 31 be hyd 32 Inclyne 33 hyre inst. of
 my 34 ageyne . venum 35 dewle h. gyffe to 36 vnto 37 Kateryne inst. of
 may . þou om. me now 38 was . & so gode a 42 hathe done Explicit prosa.
 Incipit Tercius liber huius vite sanctissime virginis Katerine 43 hermyt . old
 44 fulle grete 45 seyð . þoo om. selle 46 þat om. 47 full om. 50 Slept .
 walkyd . he had 51 off holy meyd 53 spake afore . thane not 56 xalle 57
 ordynyð 59 vnto egypte 60 more om. 61 harmyt 62 bodely . wark 67
 wythe f. d. 68 passys 69 men om. 70 passys . goste 75 hys lyvyng wane 76
 flor to no t. . euer 78 shypps þat saylyd . pere om. 79 had om. 81 frome þis

82 a partye . & a partye . hys om. 84 armyt 86 armyttis . þei om. 87 dwellyd
 frome townys 89 were om. dwellyd 90 wyth-owtyne 92 was fallne in grete a.
 97 eylys now þe 98 and werkis 99 seyth . syttis 101 Os . wont 103 nor
 105 alle þat 106 Demene me not 108 to be about in thy s. 112 and meke
 113 he had 114 þo om. 115 w. by hys selle vp 116 I- om. 117 vnto 118
 saw 120 accordythe wele 121 croune 122 not best what ys to doo 124 Into
 125 hathe cauȝt comforth of a new l. 126 ȝonged he th[is]nkis & hys myȝt 129
 mervylle hath I 130 feyr freche & 131 here . morenyng 132 ne boote ne om.
 nowhere (!) 133 nor 136 to hym also ȝ. 137 fulle gode meke 139 þe om.
 145 myȝt 146 þat om. 148 full om. 151 dose 152 mey 153 massyngere .
 ware 154 for om. 155 þan seyð thys 157 & om. 158 cummand 159 me om.
 my br. 160 To . a meydyns 162 the meyd 164 preyð . whan þi myȝt 165
 of no thyng 166 nor . wyth₂ om. flebylyte 167 yke . hard 170 haue . boþe
 om. 172 for om. 173 eke om. 175 haue . newer 179 sethe 182 boldly 184
 gretys 185 commaundis 187 xalt 188 astunnȝd 189 þe om. 191 Seyne
 192 was made 194 wed 195 ordyne 197 xalt 198 do om. 203 cumnyng
 hyr godenes 205 A ryȝt ryalle / a ryche / a w. 207 nor . no eyr 208 lyffe .
 heyr 209 reyns 210 sonnys 211 in sothe also . ryth om. 213 schewde . in w.
 214 spence 215 Ryches 217 for a hyer 218 not ȝyt knowys 220 whyche she
 now in flowys 222 Os . þe sothe 226 off theyr ph. 227 lyȝt 228 sothly 230
 mythy . xalle 231 off g. p. 233 a . othere om. 235 Os 237 ane ende 238
 kynde 241 & om. . ravysshyd . swonyng 243 can . þoo om. 244 And om.
 247 recheles . bustous 248 late om. 249 comborous 250 to me was 251
 gone . þan om. 252 my 254 allas₂ om. wrytȝyne 256 ho . knowne . forgottyn
 258 fulle rechles . but late 260 pyteus woyce 261 puznyche . snyb me 262
 euermore redy 264 do om. 265 suerly . & large 266 spake 267 nor 268
 hard 269 wyll I doo 271 werenesse 272 full om. 276 hastily . now om.
 277 in . xalle 278 Ordyne 285 fade inst. of stumble 286 gyed 287 cummys .
 þe 291 xalt 292 here 293 And one suche thyngis þei wolde Iangylle & clatter
 294 þer-flore þi wordes kepe only. 295 xalt . þe 296 þat om. on- om. palyce
 300 þer om. gaatis 301 ȝepe 302 ffrom 306 Nor . eke om. þe om. 307
 dwels she 308 xalt 309 walls 310 of₂ om. 311 þat₂ om. 312 nedyth om.
 þou nethyr (noȝht om.) . nor 313 oppyne 314 þou entyr xalle 315 be to hyr
 a f. 317 in om. 318 blode 320 casse 321 nor 322 þat þou xalt 327 calle
 ȝoue loller 328 Be 331 stunnȝd 332 olde . rekeles om. 333 which om. ryȝt
 inst. of full 334 speycalle 336 wyll she þerto 338 haue 339 for₂ om. 341
 xalt 342 e. ryȝt to 343 w. any s. 344 þou xalt 345 and inst. of if . inquire
 347 chosse 348 chose . full om. I- om. 349 so os 350 warst 351 xalt 355
 hydder 356 well om. 358 ryȝht om. one 359 whych long 360 þer . nor
 361 led hyme 362 þat . were 363 day om. . full om. 364 gone . ryne . full
 om. 365 god þat vnfullykly th. 366 Os . lyst 367 chese 368 & aye awaye .
 cast 370 In þe Epystols . þat om. 371 wyth-ouȝt any 373 chose 374 gone
 375 hylle 376 wher þat . empyce 377 gardyne . þan om. 381 mervylld 382
 can 383 þer ryȝt 384 Os 386 leyning 389 suche a . saw 390 Os . see
 391 myȝt 392 þoo om. 393 O 394 never such a creature to a fonde l. 395
 as off 396 nowne . bewteus 399 passys oure mesure 402 þe 404 Cropȝyne .
 mervylld 405 ffor hyr-s. . bene 407 began 411 hundryth 413 knelyd . seyð
 417 suddenly 418 & cum . any oþer 420 be t. 422 whych þat 424 ey 425
 wyt 426 ho gaf ȝe 427 entyr wyth-in. 430 if om. rechesly 431 nor 432 yt
 ys 434 haply 435 now om. 438 man þorow whome 439 if om. may be . mene
 440 xalle ȝoue . frome 445 grettyr . yf þat 446 dwellys 447 longis 449
 weyne 450 os 451 tyllle 452 Nor 453 ffor hyre & ȝoue both . wyth eyne om.
 sene 455 passys 456 poure 457 þat om. 460 scapys 461 wyll om. 462
 frome 464 in hyr 465 for criste 466 ermyte om. 467 hert om. pretyd .
 suere 468 os 470 os . from 473 freche . ȝung 474 or . on- om. meydyns
 476 wyll om. 477 was cum 478 ȝyt far he was as to h. knolegyng 480 turnyd
 481 ore 482 procedyng seyð vnto 483 wordy a 484 Os 485 hye om. 486
 we wene wer we 488 lyggis . land 489 wheythere om. 492 lyffys . os I 494

welc. must 495 she 499 **pis** wyt 501 whedyr yt be 502 ys most 504
as yt xalle 509 cumis. nor dewis nor eke r. 511 pover 513 **pat** om. 520
mothy. nurryche 522 eft 523 leue. be 527 so preche of so hy 528 sey þus
529 passys 530 be₂ om. 532 ylle. symepylle 533 ys bene (inst. of it had be)
534 not to send 536 os 537 hyr inst. of alle 539 semys 540 wyll 541
wyll 543 **pat** om. had 547 wyt 548 passys 549 both in hye & lowe 550
cete 551 clarkis 552 in many 553 Elyne. gryce 555 dysyrys. m. g. þan
worldly 556 in body 563 I mene 564 on- om. 566 ludy. now om. 567
must. parte a twynne 568 welthys om. settis 569 xalle 570 must 573 wher
579 zone 580 I toke þan so empretyd 583 erls 584 pis₂ om. 585 wyld. nor
586 pere 588 war 592 drownyd nor 593 eyr om. 597 pis. plentyus 598
any 599 vertue 600 Cun zone 603 xalle 607 & om. she ys meydne 609
syns of pis. clensyd 611 in₁ om. in₂ om. 614 stand 615 suche a 616 þe
sothe. wottis 618 & wh. 619 leue om. 621 tulle. manyns 622 se 624 hath
625 haue om. 626 hyr₁ om. gode & hyr godds settis 627 Infyryd 628 castis.
maryed 629 **per** to 630 enformacyone 631 **pat** of om. one th. 634 wyth-
out 635 at om. & om 638 þe inst. of of 639 wey. not excercysse 641 Nor.
but **pat** hye 642 can devysse 643 knowys 644 haue a. he om. . sowys. 648
on- om. 649 same om. slept 650 þan out 652 Sytlyne 653 poure 656
chosyne hath. **þour** om. & **þyt** 657 of pis 660 proue be gode r. 661 Seke. of
om. leffe 664 & telle 665 ware. ethyr 666 Than om. Seyne **pat** 667 yt ys
668 xulde haue merkis 671 as we 672 lat 673 eylls 677 ever wyth mankynd
679 can now. vs om. 682 Inne 684 boþe om. 686 semys. a. w.; fulle om.
687 marchande 688 crose dyd sp. 689 pis same 690 weshyd 691 gretiste
693 **perfore** om. 694 how. comple. **þe** 695 erthe inst. of eyre 698 suffyrd. hande
700 grete paseyone 701 how. lyue. eye 702 is om. complete 703 of om.
god and man 704 haue takyne. seyð 705 is om. 706 luke now **þoure** speche
pat **þer** be now no heresy 707 offendys 708 questyone 711 standis 712 of
om. 713 in no 715 & inst. of if 716 **þour** om. 717 one. gyffe 718 of oure
719 Nor. sole. xalle **þoue** 720 old 721 know. **pat** om. 723 on- om. 724
pat w is bounden sumwhat wyth a bande 726 credulle as chylderne 728 haue
inst. of hem 730 commaundis. on- om. 731 hasse 733 byddis. xulde 734
Suffythe 736 arguee 738 **pat** om. 740 þinge inst. of most. **precus** 743
coppyllyng 746 awne 747 arbytor. oune tong 749 wyth-ouyt 751 þe tone
desyrys þe todyr. not 752 Contrary be þeis ij þan in wyll 753 & þouyt 754
in þis 755 Be. wyls 756 ryght om. 760 know. tretis 761 determe. mynde
763 þe 764 be-gynnyng puttis 765 chosun 766 man 767 man cumis o. c.
769 xalle 770 In. owyne om. thys mey **þe** ssee 771 þe ermyte om. hard 772
And soylyd. many one 773 at last 774 seyð 776 and wyth þis lady speke
777 **pat** xalle 779 no v. 781 frome 784 awysyde 785 whane þey 788
semys. and chere 789 Os. haue **provyd** 793 folowyd 794 in þe halle 795
nor saw off 796 Thus passyd they bothe þorow þe place 798 went. ryzt thus
s. þe b. 799—805 om. 806 c. blynyd thane 807 I w. 808 lat. or b. 809
knows 811 **cam** at the ground 813 wont. ys go 815 **þede** 819 as om. to c.
822 full om. suerly be weys 825 hym 826 a. **pat** lede 827 morenys. turnys
828 lokys 829 he fallys 831 xuld 833 & vntr. 837 **þe** 840 haue. nor myne
841 my 843 contrary 844 Alle is gone drenchyd or brent 845 old 846 my
847 must 848 Than 849 the inst. of **þow**. seehe 851 in suche dyuersyte 854
good om. lyggis. tyme om. 855 be **þoue** 857 þe om. a. om.; but lete 858
cythyr 859 Be. nor 861 beleue. soo om. 862 now ys now 865 ys gone
867 lady om. 868 myzt 871 sythys & of so swete 874 from þe shyp 875 take
kept 879 and trosty 880 on- om. aswage 882 telle **þoue** 883 se **þoue** 884
as þe sone 887 þe rowffe yt not dyme 888 **þendyr** 889 **þendyr**. shynys 890
sawe 891 wals ne **þatis**. gret s. 892 ware. borne 894 haue done 895 lyvyand
897 Ther 899 in a noþer 900 sees 901 olde. growne. grace 902 olde. was
large 904 now om. 905 **þoure** towre 906 Trust. off no l. 907 preys 910 **þe** me
om. 912 for inst. of sore 916 to 917 resevyd off 918 of om. 921 saw 922
hyr. nor hyre 927 evyne one 929 not. was. þe 930 but þe bodye 933 creme

938 do . pat 942 & myche . met hyr 943 A C . . can we 944 vddyr . sene 945
 on om. 946 Welcum 947 haue 951 bei om. . ledes 952 wedis 954 Emprowrs
 955 abyttis fulle b. 956 creatours 957 þe freche and gay 958 saw . hyr 959
 lyffe 960 þoo om. forthe þus . f. grete 961 gate 962 þoo om. 963 Welcum
 now 964 Os . but fulle 965 fell om. 966 Os 968 manz om. 969 pascyons
 971 þer tokyns . þeyr ryzt 972 What 973 þe erthe cam 975 l. one h. leders
 how þei l. 976 þeyr m. 978 in to a tr. . nor 980 it om. 982 in to þe holy p.
 983 saw 984 Wh. þat callyd . vnto . nobulle 985 ryally 988 wost . he was
 989 hym 991 þis 992 euyr om. on- om. þe om. 995 thyng 1001 nyer
 1002 Thane . lyft 1009 now om. for me must 3. l. 1011 meydyns 1013 tels .
 we 1014 enoughe assynyd 1015 had lothe 1017 walkyng 1018 þei om.
 walkyng þer a. 1022 ordynyd a p. 1025 a 1027 desyrys . xuld 1029 haue
 bene 1032 seyð . 3ow know 1034 to lok of . do 1035 no noþer 1036 xalle .
 blys l. 1038 Weshyd from . be om. dyrk 1039 whych 1043 to me lalle ;
 ofte om. 1045 hafe om. 1048 lat 1049 mark 1053 & om. 1055 perfurme
 1056 My aungels 1057 w. any d. 1058 3et om. 1066 Be . discomforth 1069
 a om. 1070 on- om. or to 1071 a bapty3yng 1073 run 1075 do 3e 1080
 Vnto . vnto 1082 wyed 1083 from . assyed 1086 now om. 1087 cr. men
 1089 the now here 1090 bapty3yd . lordis 1091 crystynned 1092 commaundyd
 1093 of om. 1094 als n. . redy om. 1095 þis n. . xalt . cleppe 1096 forz om.
 1097 eythyr old 1098 an om. 1101 þat we 1102 are om. nor 1104 þer
 1106 solemp . þe tyme 1107 here om. 1111 vn- om. 1113 one 1116 B. in þe
 1119 vnðefylde 1123 ame 1125 for ch. 1127 yt ys 1129 renewde 1130
 there 1133 ey 1134 þeis werkis . sey 1138 essely . now om. 1139 hath
 sene 1140 thankis 1141 vnto 1142 dane 1143 þis om. þat inst. of wheche .
 saw 1145 tent to 1147 o. here 1148 els cum 1149 þis lady 1150 enteryd
 1153 xalle 1154 Or 1157 medyne 1159 tale om. 1160 myzt 1161 þe here
 1162 humbynes 1163 That om. 1165 hyr om. 1169 ys . meche om. to þe
 bothe beh. 1170 ful om. 1175 vnto 1176 of om. 1182 be thy mothyr 1184
 ryse . rosse 1185 crownyd . or she was 1186 þore . was 1187 came 1188
 þoo om. 1190 to om. . os 1192 of om. 1196 nouzt els 1197 þe wels ; is om.
 1202 hem om. on- om. . deyte 1203 þat m. 1204 Than 1205 xalle 1208
 my l. & 1209 3ow om. 1210 þe same 1211 communs assent 1212 Chosse .
 lyke 3oue 1217 þan ageyne to 1218 athyng 1219 O maker off aungels of man
 best & 1221 coppylde 1223 forgyue 1224 seruande 1229 on- om. 1232
 þoo om. . 3owe 1234 castylle 1235 roue 1236 Broche & ryng 1238 delec-
 tacyus 1240 þis wote 1241 & of none els 1244 os 1247 in 1248 ordynyd
 1254 þe meydyns 1260 schortly to sey 1262 receue . a om. 1263 Aboue alle
 creaturs here I 3oue make 1264 My wyff for ever here constant in virginite
 1267 offendis 1268 Than 1269 Sythen . spouseylle must 1271 gyffis 1273
 alle bloody one þe tre 1275 þe r. 1276 & put 1277 off þat sannde 1279 vnto
 1280 berys 1282 hath sene 1283 os my 1284 sey . grene 1287 ellys om.
 1289 auctor seys 1290 To bere of . þat om. 1293 þe bate . & strete 1295
 þem inst. of here body 1296 Ther . abowyn 1297 most om. þat any man
 1298 s. þer . fulle ewyne 1299 þe s. 1300 sunge . it om. 1302 þe awnswer
 1303 semys 1309 endis 1310 Now lyst 1312 þe s. 1314 hyr inst. of þis
 swete 1315 seyð 1316 lat . nor 1318 þat yt ys 1321 I make 1322 Os .
 xalt 1325 & om. 1328 now om. 1330 wylt . sone om. 1333 Informe 1336
 gyffe 1337 lyffe 1338 xalle 1340 sene 1341 dyed 1342 þus . my dere
 1345 þe 1346 Alle om. I- om. 1347 þe . þe . & lyzt 1348 now om. 1350
 Was . tresse 1351 for om. 1352 swete meyd 1353 swone . os . þer 1355
 cummys 1356 gane to hyr sey 1357 came . to om. 1358 þe cheekis 1360
 Tylle she woke 1363 do we 1365 sorowe 1366 Thynk now 3. l. 1367 Haue
 1368 os 1369 3owe be . in2 om. 1370 mys wrouzt 1371 nor erthly 1372
 no thyng 3ow 1373 Os 1376 þe s. b. ageyne sum tyme xalle t. 1377 suernes
 as xalle 1378 be 1379 of 3our 1380 3oue . my aune 1383 3oue 1384 soke
 1387 3oue 1388 ware 1391 as om. off hymne wryttn I fynde 1392 is
 om. 1395 & om. 1397 nor 1398 evyne of 1399 plurelyte 1400 in any

wyce 1402 Nor. þe holy gost 1403 One. in alle thyng 1406 madame om.
 1411 & haue 1412 begetis 1413 begottne. from them two 1416 þus om.
 1420 hath. haue 1421 wyt 1424 þan I rehers cane 1425 But at þis tyme
 sufflythe 1426 þe 1427 þei may om. 1430 cam. from 1431 ys þan 1432
 semys 1433 þore 1434 longis. theyr. dew om. 1435 emprice 1436 cam þer
 1439 eke there 1441 vnto þat 1444 gretis. godly 1445 behest. cum 1447
 a₂ om. 1448 reme 1449 3oue, nor þat 3e flee. 1450 Abyde. ryght om. 1451
 tyrauncy 1453 none; woman om. 1454 must. suffyr. velanye 1455 3our,
 om. 1460 so fleyr 1461 was 1465 bothe inst. of she 1468 dyuersnes. or
 rode 1472 done 1473 warnyng 1474 þe₂ om. 1475 I- om. and layd 1476
 But om. Be. dyscomforthe 1481 3e om. 1482 Kepe 1484 gyff 1485 I- om.
 1486 ane ende 1489 mynde 1490 now om. 1492 I- om. 1493 Os 1494 my
 1495 þat om. rede how 1496 on dey or weke 1497 now þer 1500 ordynd
 1501 we hath 1503 off crossed out; vnyte wyth-ouȝt discorde 1505 a v.—
 Explicit 3^{us} liber istius vite beatissime virginis Katherine
 Incipit prosa in 4^m librum.

III.

1 dwellars 2 lykkynynd. dwelle in a h. 3 els. draynes, off 3e 4 farys.
 theyr 6 þere bee om. dyuers eke 7 laborars are lykkynynd 8 gode l. 10 lerne
 and soke bothe teche and drawe 12 conseyt, wele savourd sauoures 13 bene
 v. 14 om.: MS. Othyr þer be þat prophytabull no thyng 17 but yf. tabyll
 18 vnto þat wark. fulle grete. 19: Theyr bodyes to stuffe and make þem more
 abyll. To vycus lyvying to be Inclynabyll 20 slepe 21 dranys 22 þe
 draynes 23 fior þat þei here þouȝ they haue d. 24 3yt in 25 nor 27 no om.
 28 Suffythe þem here to haue theyr reste 29 semys 31 And holy kyrk The
 hye I-wys 32 Wyth many stormys of tymys affrayd 33 vertues. haue om.
 34 hyr. to hony & waxe 35 menys. lyst 36 lere 37 owlde 38 þis ys to
 hymne. succore 39 stabulle 42 flukyng 45 Of euery wyȝt was feyr to sene 46
 ouȝt of hony grete holynes 47 can 51 first and om. 52 one syde 53 one a
 cl. n. 55 Ware. be. on om. hym 57 eke she gaddyrd 58 truly to kepe euer
 61 eke om. 62 of clothe. olde 63 laboryng and hyr 64 sukkyd. bettyr 65
 flours 67 in to h. chyrche 68 os 69 labur 70 any galye 74 lyuyng
 stabully 75 heynly 76 hyr p.—Explicit pro huius 4th libri. Incipit 4^{us} liber
 vite sancte Katherine 78 os 79 Emprowrs 81 galarius 82 hight om. thyrd
 84 mans 85 galarye 86 kept styll þe 87 sacryfyce. þer 88 any 89 presse
 90 and to. 93 left þeir. resynynd 94 excusse 96 awaylde. nor inst. of now
 99 Resynynd. vnto 100 Emprours 101 empyre. or cane 102 batels. shours
 104 seys. Ieste 105 assynynd 106 And þe. tho om. 107 to kepe L. 109
 cuntreesse 110 ware 111 brytan. land 112 lyke as I 3oue telle 113 Thys
 115 a om. batelle 117 or. dyed. lyue 118 os. caryne 119 lat. in salysbery
 120 Thane. took om. romans 121 on om. the om. 123 & wyth g. 124 ouȝt
 om. vnto m. 125 þat inst. of and 126 þat 127 cum 128 or. doune cast 129
 cycille. dyd he lere 130 As c. tels whych I saw l. 132 lythe. abyed 133 wepe
 or els 134 dwelt 136 þis om. 137 bothe om. 138 be ryght 139 for sothe to
 seyne 140 reyne whe[n]. was 141 or. to 142 soiors 143 dome 144 regneth
 om. 145 Now os alone 146 kepe 147 slepys. ellis om. 148 reynynd. al om.
 149 speke. what so euer 150 no wyffe meyd nor m. 151 must nedis cum 153
 What man þat let. it om. 154 Appone. xulde set 156 pepile 157 oppun.
 þore 160 poure. had 161 covyd. wyld 162 Thane. romayns. cummyne
 assent 163 ded om. wryȝt 164 brytane 165 preyd. os. knyȝt 166 cum.
 ageyns. fyȝt 169 greyt strenghe 170 lande 171 eneresse. lenghe 172 by
 whyche 173 Ytaly. up om. pepile 177 trustyd. one 178 lefte 179 hows-
 holde. myche 180 weel om. 181 in 182 and streyt frome 183 ouȝt off
 bretane 184 þis same 185 deseuyd 186 lyvyng 187 os a man 188 strenghtes
 189 os 190 cald 191 þe felde wun 192 yt put. wars 193 þe ende 195 suche
 mastres 197 exaltyde 198 and om. fathers 199 waxde 200 more om. In-

clynnd 201 lettys to 203 he seyð truly . wolde . þe 204 came 205 hem om.
 207 Wryst . thynk 208 dwelle 210 greetis . legis . empyre 211 þoue wyt .
 fathyr . before 213 batelle . neyther om. nor lore 214 Suche . gods þat he
 wyce 215 os 217 we . frome suche v. laws 218 speccially from . hong one a t.
 220 man inst. of god 221 I- om. suche 222 myche 223 now dwellyng . lande
 224 nothyr . nor 226 os 228 sermones 229 xalle 230 Suche . deseruiff 231
 lordshys nor ryches 232 men any 234 offycers 235 any 236 We xalle
 ordene . Iett 237 xalle . suche mastres 240 vnto 241 knyghys and lordys
 242 cum . b. þe more & þe l. 243 vnto 245 þat inst. of whiche 246 massyngers
 are . fare 248 abyede 249 Into . as om. vnderstande 250 mythy hande 251
 cetye 252 meny . levyd ever in preyr 253 cam om. 255 are . os 257 speccial
 om. 258 per inst. of the cytee 259 storyd ther wythe m. 260 cum 261 þer
 dyd 262 w. were 263 stode in sentence 264 wolde 269 gods 270 now om.
 271 ful om. 274 Ther . cum 276 what we gyff 277 Vnto suche wyches . far
 278 thynk 279 are 281 þat he 282 þat þei 283 Who 285 brytayne 287
 pepile . stouzt pouere 288 tretor 289 Os . entyryd 290 gunnys and engyne
 291 nor . þer 294 seys 295 conquerre 296 on₂ om. þat c. 297 prayd . were
 298 xulde . bowys 299 gyftis 300 and landis . castels 301 nede þei none
 302 thyrd 304 wyll 305 þe seruyce . þe newe 306 godds wer ordynd þe
 comynys 307 seys xalle . þe more mercyffulle to vs 308 þat om. sermonys
 309 þer . crosse 310 Suche . þan 311 cryed þan . closse 312 moughe . hys
 saw 313 a lytyle wyth-drawe 315 wyt . hye 316 haue . conseruatye 318
 forsakyn . false 319 we inst. of me 321 apparycyone 323 bad . teche þe
 pepylle 324 sermones . ryghes 325 fathers . knew . vsyd overl. any 326
 knythys 327 Who gyffis . fyrthys 328 holdis . vpp hym 330 make . mastrye
 331 quakis 332 makis 333 lyztynyng . makis 334 Alle þis shewys he to vs .
 forsakis 335 ful om. 336 or 3e be shent. 337 Leue 338 gods 339 schep-
 pardis . plowmen 340 wyt fulle wele . standis . mans 341 Vnto 342 Os seyth
 þis c. of criste os s. þe b. 343 alle þe syns from þe worlde he toke 344 be . shal
 om. 345 xalle gyfe 346 longis 347 euerlastyng 348 Repelle from 349 I
 gyue þoue 350 sowlys . bodys . shame 351 off þe . grete om. sermones 354
 wolde 356 of om. 358 was 359 ys . replenyshed 360 & wyth 363 pepile .
 grete and also so st. 364 nouzt els 365 cum 366 borne . þei dyd 367 there
 om. xulde 368 Serche . mynstralcy 372 trumpettis 373 Myche . dyed
 375 bochers laboryde os . bene 376 weshyng . carkas doune 377 moredyr . the
 om. 379 the₂ om. 380 byschops . areyd . theyr seruyce 381 mattyns . seyð
 om. nor 382 gaue 385 þe s. 387 eye 388 had . suspeccyone 389 are 391
 sune . owres 392 graffene (I- om.) . sotelle 393 The next 394 welys . hyr
 meydyns 396 Wyth hys sykkylle in hys h. 397 no nothyr 398 vengeance
 399—405 om. 406 awe . I not auance 407 Myche 408 was . offeryng 409
 nethyr oxen hors nor 410 sle and fle . þus was theyr crying 411 þe prestis &
 byschops . thyng 412 mynstrals 413 makis 414 The olde pepile seyð . sawe .
 deys 415 os 416 haue . weys 417 godds 419 þunge . Iolely 420 rewyll
 among 421 at þe solennyte about 422 harde 423 þeis syers so stouzt 424 are .
 wyth fulle mykylle pryed 425 lokyd 426 dose . gods 428 holy inst. of noble
 429 longis 430 hir om. 431 styll inst. of tho 432 frome 433 worldly welthys
 are . frome 434 þat t. 435 ryzt os. 436 meyd . hard þis grete c. 437 now
 om. 438 meny 439 knythys 441 scrys qwat 442 þan . annolde seruand
 443 he om. 444 He hathe c. euery man to haunte 445 ryches and seruyce
 447 and inst. of if . wyt. 448 off lyue . pore . state 450 þei þat ageyne 451
 clossyt 452 poure 453 Lat þem 454 Suffythe . and . lyue 455 cummorouse .
 any lece 457 we om. 458 cytyners off þe cyte . xalle 459 os . begynnys 460
 tauzt anon vppone theyr gods 461 þeyr fathyr 462 hard 463 cum . ower
 464 þo drede 465 receyffe . conceilloure 466 vppone 468 þe . that om. ware
 470 þis meyd . hard 471 remembyr how 473 She spake þus to me & seyð my
 meyd 474 be 475 to₂ om. 476 & suche 477 vnto 478 oure 479 behestyd
 me yt ys . I- om. 482 reysys 484 Per . remembyrd þe cunnan þat 485 bap-
 tyme . weshyd 486 sadd 487 nor . lesse 488 war throwne . cawdurun 489

chosse 490 þan waxyd she feyr & ruddy of colour lyke þe rosse 493 enprentyd
 494 worldly . fykkylle 495 nethyr . nor 496 firo . hart . yt xalle 497 þan
 softly 498 fful om. astumyd . for om. 500 she þoo 502 eke om. gyfine
 503 þis inst. of tho 504 & towne 505 trough 506 Vnto my 507 soner cum
 508 nought om. but sorow & quede 509 euer om. any 510 boldly 511
 trewth 512 suffrys . now om. 513 chyrchys . seruandis 514 Onc . I wele
 515 xalle 516 Ho louys . world . þat om. hyme wele to spylle 517 ordynd
 518 xalle . frome . No new chapter. 519 walkis 520 place 521 folowyd . þe
 place 524 purpose 525 Scater . þat 526 pepile 527 replete . entyr 528 on
 om. pore tars 529 lat . errande 530 Vnto 531 stand 534 vanytes nor to no
 536 at om. 537 þer . strong 538 hyre offeryng . l-om. 539 þeyr 540
 emprours 541 saw þis bryzt meyd and sh. 542 ful om. 543 speke 544
 seyð . pepile 545 Ar cum frome farre 546 a done 548 ryzt to 549 strenght
 551 manes 552 entyrde 553 ryzt as 555 kynde . curtasye 557 3yt . myche
 560 done ageyne . grete 562 þus take . frome 563 gyff 564 not help . nor .
 eke om. 566 woldest om. 567 knowe om. syttis 570 vnto . & do 571
 vnto . os 572 agenst . causyst . to rysse 573 suche duels os be 574 sothly
 577 & fro . wykyl 578 gane 579 Vnto 580 xalt 581 yet om. trost þis
 582 l-om. 583 ydols magre off theyr 584 Ageyne . resonos 585 & eke 586
 þyk & burnstone off 587 for þem . no nothyr 588 ware . do 589 gods are
 duels 590 dyscevers . covytyse 591 als wele 592 nor 593 ete nor drynk .
 of om. 594 wythowtyn . fote þei mey 595 thei om. no thyng 596 þi .
 illueyone 597 þat þe and alle thyng made (made on the margin) 598 vnkynde
 600 þe amend . mayst 602 xalle . an om. 609 colour waxyd whyzt 610 &
 he begane 611 Astumyd . a party 612 aremys to hyme gan he 613 seyð
 ageyne 614 vengeance 615 hathe take 617 þeir 619 hath ordynd to þem
 621 syster 626 ware 628 ware 629 lebytt 630 That 3e . godds 631
 Thane . meyd 632 Who . gods 634 xalt 635 ware 637 so s. 638 land 639
 father 640 ytale 641 þan reynyd 642 calde hyme w. þe dobile 643 lokyd .
 & to 645 þan are þei 646 ware 647 longis 648 3e þe pepile dysceyff and
 clade 649 nor 652 tho om. mynde 653 strenghe 654 ensample . kynde
 655 trow . stabyle 656 seyð 658 lat 659 oppnyly 660 whyche þat 662 þe
 om. Impossybyls 663 sadly om. hope 665 meyd 667 imp . ys vnto 668
 Remeue . hart 669 soo om. 670 That om. þouȝt þat 672 be 675 os .
 herrysye 676 seyð 677 frome . man chylð & wyffe 678 And fro euery
 meyd . yehone 679 þeis fonde 680 Vnto . semyd 681 awnsward 683 now
 inst. of on-to 3ow 684 lettis 685 are 686 nethyr . nor . the om. 687 take .
 eye 689 fruet 690 ys 3oure rage 692 freute 694 sekis rosees . rooses 697
 yt . among 698 far . any pere 701 stokkis 703 Leue yt 705 gyffis 706
 no suche . gyffe 707 ensampylle . 3oue inst. of than . preffe 708 rottyne .
 thyng 709 byzt 711 oure 714 haue 715 also long 716 rudenes & crokyd
 o. 717 xalle . sykkerly 720 habile 721 the om. what so euer any 722
 Thene myzt men a sene 723 men . l-om. cherde 724 ere om. & theyr browys
 gan þe b. 725 þe ydols 726 & deth . afferyde 728 vnto 730 vnto 731 hyre
 732 haue . begyne 734 nor into suche 735 gane þei crye 736 saw 737
 begane . þe colour in 738 ylle 739 Vnto 741 My oune . thynkis . thei om.
 gane 744 haue . mervously 745 now om. 748 bewte 749 vnto 750
 Meyd . seyð . begune 751 vnto 752 3e om. sune 754 3e spend . 3oue slake
 758 l-om. 759 dampe 761 stoppe 762 þer-for . ware . els 763 rebels 764
 any 768 walkis . nor 769 master 770 are bune 771 traytours are 772
 spendythe . great 773 ensampyle 774 be . ful om. pusanee 778 cace 779
 menye 780 deffye 783 þe traytours . lyue 785 semys by . creatore 787
 frome . honore 788 kulde hathe . þat he 789 When . byselye oure helthe 790
 gyue . dewls 791 solenly off 793 Traytours . os . xalle 794 wyll þe 3oue not
 795 Vnto þat 796 lat . frome 798 xalle 799 sturnyd 800 alle þeyr wyttis .
 for om. are 801 vexyd . harte 802 toz om. nor 803 lowzt . the om. 804
 Wherefore . thynkis . right om. harte 805 punyshe . peyns 806 strangylle
 hyr sle . bryne 807 3yt . þerby nothyng 808 thynk . rymic 811 resonos

814 councele 815 *per can* 816 *frome* 817 *whedyr* 819 *ryzt þus* 820
clarkis 824 *sonyst dystroye* 826 *I. om.* 827 *massyngers . wylde* 828 *laude*
 829 *þe clarkis þat . lyuelode* 830 *cum* 831 *Vnto* 832 *þe lettars are wrytтын*
 & now selde ychone 833 *massyngers . are* 834 *as for* 835 *Selyd þeys lettars*
 836 *gravyne (I. om.)* 838 *off inst. of if* 839 *Bee om.* *flor þe leste 3yt* 841
haue 842 *off councele . cete* 843 *flathyr vnto . on om.* *kynrod* 845 *Sendis .*
clargye 847 *lordshyppe . are* 848 *wytt* 849 *Vnto . prudence* 850 *nethyr*
taxe nor deme 851 *oure feythe & sekte* 852 *makis . to om.* 853 *seyence*
 854 *musse* 855 *moost om.* *now haue we cauȝt* 857 *myche* 858 *frome* 860
pervertys . lande . wysse 861 *byd ȝowe þat . wysse* 862 *now om.* 866
xalle . cristynyd . and eke 867 *avaunsyd xalle* 868 *rychece* 869 *are .*
lettys wrytтын . I. om. 871 *Vnto . palyce* 873 *vnto* 874 *many om.*
behestys to hyr he hyght 877 *of₂ om.* 878 *any* 879 *on om.* 882 *in₂ om.*
 883 *of om.* *gyffe* 884 *Vnto . as to . goddece* 885 *that om.* *lyffe* 886 *xalle .*
lece 887 *wordynes* 890 *þeis promysees* 892 *euor inst. of tho* 894 *hem om.*
 895 *wylle he* 896 *w. grete sadnes* 897 *þeis wordis . lorde aboute* 898 *forsake*
hym wylle I neuer more 899 *man . nor* 900 *my . frome* 901 *ful om.* *there*
om. lyke 902 *dye* 903 *Vnto* 904 *seyne . þi . myȝt* 905 *Os . promysyd*
 906 *lat* 907 *rasse* 908 *nor* 909 *os . stand* 910 *are* 912 *wolde . xulde .*
inclyne 913 *my* 914 *vnknowne* 915 *dyscens . tastament* 916 *os . myn om.*
 918 *Seyne . are* 919 *suche mastres in vddyrr mens landis* 920 *tennans* 921
offryng . handis 922 *trumpyttis . tabors . before . stande* 923 *or my lysence*
 924 *to god & to me grete o.* 926 *vnryȝtfulle* 927 *þair byddyng* 928 *ageyns*
 929 *went* 932 *Thane* 935 *xulde take* 937 *soo om.* *þat she* 938 *þat om.*
horriblye . 940 *Os . spouse . chambur* 941 *nor nothyng* 943 *are* 946 *ys*
þus in p. so closydde 947 *ryddyne . lande* 948 *as I supposyd* 949 *bande*
 950 *cetes . vnderstand* 951 *ceesyone . begune* 952 *Yche . off othyr . gune*
 953 *But whan þat he hys Iurney had spedd* 954 *cum . hom om.* 955 *mes-*
sangers 956 *þeis clarkis* 957 *Are cum wythe bookis charygd many a weyne*
 958 *þus are met* 959 *are* 960 *are entyrd . concelle* 961 *wyt . for them hathe*
 962 *any fleylle* 964 *masters chosse* 966 *if om.* 967 *My awter* 968 *in₂ om.*
 969 & alle 970 *none theme* 971 *studdyd . grounde* 972 *now om.* *cumnyng*
 973 *seythe* 974 *Masters* 976 *renythe . suche . vse* 977 *fallyd . þe* 979 *ys*
Into 980 *dewls* 981 *supposse . trouthe* 982 *be* 983 *suche a ȝunge .*
thynkis yt reuthe 987 *To cast . the om. how inst. of now* 988 *cum* 989
answers are 990 *sykker* 991 *Vnto* 992 *Vnto . hyer father* 993 *hyr*
mother 994 *whiche om. ȝe doo* 998 *studyous* 999 *þeis masters* 1000 *nede .*
cumnyng 1001 *on om.* 1003 *resone* 1004 *goddess* 1007 *cum* 1008 *hard .*
wher a w. 1009 *And after . semonyng . on om.* 1010 *commandis* 1011 *her om.*
 1012 *specyalle* 1013 *longis vnto* 1015 *destresse . No new chapter* 1016 *odyr .*
cum 1017 *assey . a prevye councele* 1018 *vaylythe* 1019 *hys resone wylle*
not veylle 1020 *meyd . proposycyon* 1021 *tho om.* 1022 *Stale . experyence*
 1023 *armony . þer* 1024 *hyer* 1026 *macedony* 1027 *Ageyne . not hyr* 1028
provest 1030 *resones* 1031 *mayd* 1032 *syster . hedir om.* 1033 *Before*
 1034 *whedyr* 1035 *holde* 1036 *renye* 1038 *persone* 1039 *streue* 1040
meydyns . roosse 1041 *longis . gloosse* 1043 *Vnto* 1044 *I haue . lykis*
 1045 *alle worldly . yt ys* 1048 *know ȝe . for a fulle certeyne* 1050 *be* 1051
Thane 1052 *laborde* 1054 *now must ȝow* 1055 *Os longys . traytorus . þus*
wylle raffe 1057 *or els* 1058 *ermony* 1059 *on om.* 1060 *leue* 1061 *Thynk .*
 1062 *neuer none* 1063 *ȝow* 1064 *vnto* 1065 *þer* 1067 *knowne* 1068
wyche 1069 *in wychrafte he had þe name* 1070 *wysdome* 1072 *and hyr*
þus r. 1075 *wher ys* 1076 *wordy . to om.* 1077 *wold* 1078 *the om.*
wysdome & þe treuthe wyth-owtyn mysse 1079 *erle . macedony . caspanas*
 1080 *Vnto þat . thus om.* 1082 *borne* 1085 *stand . casse* 1086 *hangyd*
 1088 *Vnto . wysse* 1090 *frome . nedys must* 1094 *Vnto* 1095 *seruandis*
 1096 *peyne om.* 1101 *myche . on om. ȝow echone* 1102 *off whyche* 1103 *are*
gone 1104 *vnto payns* 1105 *frome* 1106 *bounde sore* 1108 *Nor* 1110 *þe .*
was 1112 *ware* 1115 *þe* 1117 *barkyng . on om.* 1118 *any wrechis* 1119

and off so hye d. 1120 must 1121 proveste 1122 þeis clarkis . lat 1123
kene 1124 must . dye 1125 no nothyr 1126 clatteryng 1128 are entret
into . concelle 1129 seyr . owre 1130 wyll se 1131 masters do 1132
from 1133-4 But yf 3e spede oure feyth wylle sone slyede, ffor þe pepile wylle
turne one euery syde 1136 many man 1138 any 1139 Ageyns . nor 1140
rosse . þer 1141 lat . cum 1142 ware 1143 gone to presone to hyr 1144
Ientylle 1146 nedys . for om 1147 thydyng 1149 Thane . al om. 1150
hyr and hyer cause euer to g. a. 1152 seruffe . whyche þat syttis 1154
Dyed 1155 vnto . fyndis vnkynnd 1157 canne 1159 þi d. 1160 wondis
blowe . wanne 1161 gyffe 1162 gan . worldly 1164 stande 1166 nor
1171 mey haue str[e]nghe . for om. 1172 reasons 1173 chyrches . can 1174
frome . maners 1176 Os 1177 my h. 1178 truste 1179 cum . but only
1180 lat 1181 makis 1182 þerfore . powe 1183 3yt . 3et₂ om. 1185 ester .
plece hyr answer 1186 solemp 1189 causse 1190 clausse 1194 Os .
os 1195 woutis 1197 dyrke cornars 1200 cummyng 1204 And as hys
messanger he sendis me now 1205 greetis 1206 þis matter 1207 com-
maundys 1208 not om. 1209 clerely 1210 3et om. xalle 1211 now om.
1214 lede . vnto petrus 1215 fygures . seys 1516 xalle 1217 xalle dye 1218
whyche þat 1219 determyd 1220 þeis clarkis xalle now 1222 xalle now
from þem 1223 þe om. 1225 saue3oure 1227 xalle suffyr . myche 1228
lesure 1229 þis myche . gyffe . ful om. 1230 for om. þe kyng 1231 dye
evyne In 1232 xalle 1233 gyue . messyngere 1234 spryte . dobulnesse
1236 of heuene om. haue 1238 pays . weyght 1239 be 1240 beleue 1241
ordynynd 1243 spous 1246 be 1247 comforyd 1248 suche inst. of swete
1250 þat om. 1252 herte om. 1253 nor frome 1257 cum . owre 1259
paretye . elles om. 1261 stande 1262 þey 1263 þe l. sat 1264 and be 1265
meyd . eke also 1266 was best 1267 one hye 1268 exortyd he 1269 Mas-
ters . þis conceyanatryx 1270 off whome 1271 devyour 1273 gluede . from
1274 cummyng 1275 vnto 1276 strange chalaunce sayng 1277 Vnto . in om.
1278 os 1279 guerdome grete off price 1280 that om. 1281 thynkis . hath
3e 1282 3owe . guerdome 1284 xalle leyff 1285 as om. take & know 1287
Iuste Iuge and man trewe 1289 on- om. 1290 has 1292 thynk . enowe 1293
lat . damselle . towghe 1294 Entermyte 1295 ful om. 1296 Than . meydye
to 1297 Seyne 1298 Appone 1299 myzt 1300 mynd frome 1301 frome
1302 lat . any . to me now 1303 Than 1304 a 1305 cum . sey . emprours
1306 meyd 1308 cum . know we 1309 lyggis 1310 Seyne . araye 1311 xalle
purvey 1312 hens away 1313 sykkerly . convey 1314 þe 1315 councele
1316 aunswer xalle we 1321 pronounse . þat om. þe leste 1322 vnworthy
1323 sethe þe tyme . þat om. 1324 loste . auctorytees 1325 fynde . fructe
1326 be gone . gyffe . els 1328 fathyr 1330 3e dyd 1331 Off alle þem haue I
take now 1332 þeyr . In termys & in proce 1333 erely 1334 gloce 1335
chosyne 1336 eke om. 1338 takyne . Escalape 1339 alle om. heyr . serchyng
1340 myche trwer . susteyne 1341 euery creature 1342 eke om. 1343 done
1345 Beholde . masters . þeis mens 1346 studdyd & laburde 1347 sottelle
1348 lyffis 1350 laste 1351 lerenyng 1352 treetis . þat xalle 1354 alle crea-
ture 1355 whyzte 1356 fyer . or . ys 1359 borne 1360 vnto 1361 prophyt
1362 hyng 1363 here inst. of tho 1365 knowne . was om. sundre 1367 abeyd
1368 eselye . is om. 1369 saw 1375 reynynd erthlye 1376 suffreyne 1377
tumble . wawe 1378 Troste not in þem, ffor nowght ys theyr myght 1379
whych blyndis 1381 þei xalle . ful om. 1382 my om. 1383 xalle . haue, me
om. 1388 of 3e b. 1390 not . ne om. 1391 scyence makis 3e 1392 more om.
1393 ys þat þat makis 1395 matters 1397 bettyr 1398 be 1400 and om.
makis 1402 ane . tho om. 1403 os powe 1404 Master . calde þei 1405
angure 1406 he styrt vpp in þe p. 1407 Thane 1408 cytynars 1410 xalle .
3e for to calle 1412 wysdome 1413 suffyr 1414 in suche vengabile 1416
lande 1417 here om. 1418 vnderstande 1419 Many of þem be brent wyth a
brande 1422 sey . that om. be vnkynde 1423 benyffyttis 1424 3ungyst .
womans kynde 1425 so for to 1426 al om. coloure 1427 dewles 1428 &

thys ys warste 1431 folke . lyste 1432 resonos . I- om. 1433 frome 1434
 cum 1435 prechars . ageyns 1436 novylte 1437 be-gynnys 1438 calde . pro-
 phyte . galalee 1439 cals 1440 Off sande off se off water and off erthe 1441
 Inowthe 1442 convicte 1444 greate dobbylnesse 1445 sey 1448 whyche
 know alle men ys 1451 frome 1452 was 1453 hard Iwys 1454 stale . prevely
 1455 master . I- om. 1456 and so 1457 Vnto 1458 She om. 1460 take . my
 1461 wythowzt any 1462 One . or 1464 hys fader ys 1465 seyne 1466 pro-
 cede farther-more 1467 before 1468 eterne in hevynne reynynge 1470 noted
 om. 1474 newly 1477 dyde . ware 1480 And zoure . are 1481 ffor þei .
 grunt . þei ayle 1482 Os flare In þis matter os 3yt I haue sowght 1483 frome
 1484 now ame 1485 than . reasons 1486 trubbylde 1488 sowne 1489 cum
 1490 wolde 1491 maners xalle overl. 1492 clarke . þer 1493 Vnto . meyd
 1495 vnderstand 1496 make . diffence 1498 nor . no 1499 be 1501 lyke
 1502 betokyns 1504 are . tokyns 1505 gyue . harte 1506 Not ffor theme but
 ffor theyr s. 1509 now sum-what 1512 To do theyr d. men þat go þem bye
 1513 meyd 1515 stand one . rowe 1516 perseue 1517 þan in ane oper 1518
 lyvyd 1521 Veniabulle dispeteus . a om. 1522 condycyons vnstabile 1523 a
 whyle wyth hyr abyede 1524 chylderne kykle 1525 gyltee . father 1526 He
 banyshyd hym and made hym hys harborow to seke 1527 systre 1528 ffather .
 he om. þe lande 1529 þeis are 1530 feythe þis eternally stande 1531 bygydd .
 bryttyle lande 1532 Plato wyth (!) r. of þeis meydyns vyolent 1534 Wal-
 cane . cukkolde 1535 such a persone . any 1537 encressys . vncleue 1538
 þis . vyolence . from þem shoue 1539 god om. 1540 soverye 1543 suttelle
 reasons . þan 1545 sothe seyde 1548 habomynabile 1550 cums 1551 haue
 1552 wer þis ; openly om. I- om. 1553 be 1554 ffe 3e . drede 3e 1555 Thane
 1556 one worde to hyr 1557 so hys harte dyd b. ; tho om. 1558 Vnto . latt
 1559 os 1560 xalle . thei om. 1561 wysdome . make sone r. 1562 clark 1563
 so inst. of tho 1569 commune . Intent 1572 mocyons 1576 despreue 1579
 Os . now amongis 1580 os 1581 Hym take we . & eke Iuno 1582 takyne .
 ayer . gyffys 1584 Resembled . that om. sempytterne 1586 over suche thyngis .
 be eterne 1587 My awne 1593 founde 1594 Off theyr godds but for a con-
 clusyone 1595 þis man haue 1596 preue 1598 Gladddy 1599 waxyd 1600
 frome 1601 bere hyr now . koye 1603 lat . here 1604 tho om. vnto þe
 master 1605 hyed 1606 figure . coloure 1607 ley 1608 Are 1609 se 1611
 þey be 1612 are . graffine 1613 easye 1614 are not nor 1615 arre 1618
 planyttis 1619 xulde stande 1621 bene 1623 alle planettis be 1624 farther
 1625 þan be they 1626 he om. 1627 wyth inst. of alle 1628 are . nor 1629
 Vnto 1630 off zoure errour 1631 haffe 1632 mervelyd 1634 are 1635 hard
 1636 can declare . be 1637 master . tho om. 1638 the om. 1639 a woman .
 attayne corr. to attame 1640 Lat . felows 1641 gyue 1642 world . standis
 1645 laste 1647 Whyche þat . thus om. 1650 devyne . farre . euer-more study-
 inge 1651 I haue bene . semys 1652 demys 1653 alle thys 1654 lerne off h.
 þe platt and þe pleyne 1656 ys he 1657 I- om. 1658 ys he 1659 now to lerne
 1662 þeis same men . she dyd 1663 Seyne . now þe forme . a scolere 1664 are .
 redyare . mysteres 1665 as for 1667 one 1669 ful om. 1670 in god 1671
 auctor seys 1672 one 1673 commun 1674 none suche 1675 ordynyd .
 councelle 1677 one . fulle myche mervelle 1678 consydered . mans myche
 1679 þeyr substance 1681 theys iii 1684 falne 1685 can hyme 1686 Among .
 off grete delice 1688 in erthe abulle 1690 þis lorde dyed 1691 in to . into
 1693 dyed 1695 master 1696 same om. 1697 loye (ful om.) 1699 puregyd
 1700 And made . correccyone 1701 mervelythe . Infymacione 1702 wyth
 1703 One 1704 conceue as 3yt very clere 1705 copypyllng 1706 Be 1707
 be . in one 1708 none suche 1709 and inst. of if . he must 1715 be 1716 tho
 om. þis 1717 conceue 1719 copypyld 1722 enowght 1723 raysyd lasare
 frome 1724 leyne 1726 He . os . dyd . þe greue 1727 þat . om. 1728 tyed
 1729 on om. dydd glyde 1730 and sowle 1731 þeis myracles 1732 myche
 1733 gyffying . 3ow 1735 Indewe 1736 ful om. 1737 hys 1738 shews . &
 man 1739 right om. 1744 that om. . slepyd 1746 wele inst. of pleynty 1747

can 1750 werkyng. whyls 1753 blysse 1756 wolde. what om. I xulde vnto
 1758 a. amyttyd 1759 zoure 1760 Berys 1763 hange 1764 cum zoure a.
 1767 meyd 1769 overtanne 1770 preyd 1771 his om. 1773 falle 1774
 makis 1775 Ageyns. qualle 1777 xuld 1779 mans 1781 ho þæt. thyng
 1783 Vn om. 1784 desyrys 1786 fulle gode 1787 wyllē scruffe h. as þis t.
 1789 Vnto 1790 matter 1791 them 1792 þæt þei xulde n. m. t. one þeyr
 old l. 1794 abouuzte 1795 are loynyd to-gydder þeys ii. 1799 frome 1800
 els. owre 1801 qwykk 1802 any 1803 for om. serche 1804 Beleue 3e þis
 thyng 1805 are. now om. 1806 In euery. walke 1807 for to 1808 it om.
 I. om. 1809 warkyng 1812 cum 1813 haue. from. þe 1814 seyne 1815
 knolege 1816 than off 3owe now 1817 3owe inst. of ful 1818 3owe. þæt l.
 haue 1819 3oue 1820 þæt om. 1821 gyffne 1822 Yche. there a. 1823 mer-
 velous to ch. 1824 ware 1829 where om. prechyd þem so t. 1830 forsoke
 þem 1831 freyler 1832 worthye 1835 The thodyr seyd 1836 saw 1837
 stunnyd. þæt be theyr 1839 and om. experyence 1841 begane 1842 he om.
 ys 1844 bones aremys 1846 many 1847 astunnyd 1848 Cowardis choris
 1850 now inst. of thus 1851 moost om. 1852 Or. shul be om. 1854 passys
 1855 thynk. stande 1856 Ther 1859 nor 1860 So off þis matter as he now
 a-fesyde was 1861 sothly 1863 sundre 1864 Contradyccions in theme fulle
 sone. ffune 1865 ys fulle wele knowne 1866 Os. seyd. fulle rownde 1868
 that om. haue 1869 seyd 1871 Provenyng 1872 made om. rekkynnyng.
 wyllē 1873 Among. any 1874 bookis 1875 borne ffulle trewly 1877 not 3yt
 fully 1878 Seyne. was off hys mother 1882 þæt inst. of thyng. thowsandis
 1883 þe d. or he. than om. 1884 an om. 1886 þeis sympulle pepile 1890
 haue 1891 on om. 1892 grounde 1893 takyne one parte 1894 the tother
 1895 falls. rekkynnyng 1897 þe b. 1899 ago 1900 Vnto. lengar 1902 But
 as for þis matter þis mystry. vndoo 1904 Os. semys 1905 begynnyng. first
 om. xalle 1906 god om. haue. oure lorde Ihesu 1907 lyvande 1909 off
 1910 kynde 1911 kynd. his om. 1913 decesse 1914 cuppyllyng 1915 plesse
 1916 & þe fals dewls þus. fesse 1917 manhode 1918 manhode 1919 haue he
 bene 1921 þæt 1923 dyd hynge 1925 haue bene 1927 stunnyd. mynde
 1929 of om. and alle þe kynde 1931 þer. wyth a grete crye 1932 Os 1934
 off cryst hys feyth & 1937 þer away. tho om. 1939 Whan. eke gane felle.
 1940 his om. ryalle 1941 mastyrd 1942 not he. massynger 1944 losse.
 myght 1945 wer mythy 1948 take 1950 þane om. 1951 thrune 1953 me
 thougt 1955 haue. I note 1956 Os 1958 fycht 1959 ouercam. suche kynde
 1960 wele 1961 be. by mankynde 1962 among 1964 parfyt and 1965
 that om. so stabile 1966 or 1968 dyede 1970 a tre 1971 fycht 1972 In þe
 tre. was wo 1974 þæt tre. a om. 1975 a om. 1978 appoysaylle 1980 Os.
 lady om. . one-syede 1981 Os. abyed 1984 But & cum 1985 one 1986 pro-
 phyce 1987 not 3yt verly 1988 spekis 1990 whome. singler 1991 noo
 1992 moo 1993 prophytis. berys wytnes 1996 to om. in h. 1997 haue
 2000 calde 2001 prophytis vn-to 2002 induede. ful om. 2004 How forbare
 3ow 2005 raynyng 2008 syne. be 2009 reasons. lady om. vaylle. raakis
 2012 haue. be 2013 calde 2018 you om. 2019 meryte 2020 yif 3e 2021
 nor nevyr none were 2024 reynyng 2027 Thow callys 2029 folows. the om.
 2030 þer where 3e. can 2031 ther be godds thre fowlous 2032 syttis 2033
 here inst. of sir. among 2035 as om. 2036 chose 2037 a. styllē 2038
 reynys. any 2039 þut yff 2040 cumis 2041 My. breke 2042 þerfore thys
 conceyt in 3owre hartis now founge 2043 raynys 2044 pyte haue calde. to om.
 2045 right om. 2047 euere om. 2048 Reynyng 2049 are. chyldernē 2051
 eft 3yt legge 2052 balaam 2054 rehersys. dede om. 2055 þe. prophytis.
 hy s. 2056 dyvynars 2058 alle þæt ther ere 2062 masterys 2063 avaylys
 2064 gyue 2065 haue. a 2067 passys 2068 spekis 2069 seys 2070 harte
 enterly 2072 what so any 2073 xalle. my 2074 one. knolege 2075 I haue
 2076 lat 2078 breke 2080 anone inst. of concoursly. one 2081 þe consent
 2082 One. þei alle wyth one voyce 2083 commandis 2084 þei wyllē 2085
 vthyr 2087 increasyd 2088 haue we ladd 2089 are knowne 2090 ware.

leyne 2092 holdyn . a vanye 2095 but one þei wot ys saturne 2096 Yeh to
 thodyr . preyly . thus om. 2099 falsed 2100 þat was inst. of there thanne
 2101 lokyd 2102 thus om. renythys 2104 any maydyn 2105 wyser in hyer
 sawe 2106 grevys 2109 myche . vntrew 2110 One 2111 was cum off newe
 2112 reasons þer othyr 2113 my 2114 lye þer fulle s. 2115 þat inst. of lete
 2118 dey inst. of lady 2119 master . þe 2121 now wyll we 2122 chosyne .
 commyn 2123 þat om. 2124 dystroy 2126 we see 2130 vp om. solely
 2134 my pece 2135 þis matter þus . dowȝtlece 2138 it om. greate 2140
 fro . fykkulle 2141 haue om. that om. 2142 victor þan 2144 off cryste
 2145 beffore haue 2146 thynk yt ys 2147 farther 2152 thynkis 2153
 A-fore 2154 frome . þis 2156 wolde 2157 ȝyt 2160 Seyne 2161 gyffne .
 manes . as a 2164 calle 2166 balle 2168 proue þem wele 2169 meyd 2170
 any 2171 mankynde 2173 myche . ageyns 2176 or off velanye 2177 syttis
 2178 harborage 2179 cummyng . lyke . sune 2180 lyke . lykkinid . meydyns
 2181 shynys thorow 2183 peresyð 2184 farde þe 2185 hyer 2186 conceyvyd
 2188 neuer 2189 be 2190 xalle 2191 ȝe xalle not fynde me vntrewe 2192
 moyd 2193 sore om. 2194 fulle sore & hard 2195 vttur 2196 strong 2197
 my . thyngis 2198 yet om. vnnethys 2200 spekis . more om. prengnantly
 2202 þat syre 2203 ȝoue . myre 2204 vnto 2205 bothe inst. of hough 2206
 coupyde 2208 not he 2209 done . as I gesse 2213 one 2215 Seyne . be .
 one 2216 yche 2217 are 2218 eke om. one . accordis 2219 a om. thynkis .
 wrythys 2220 seyð 2221 Oon om. 2222 Wherto 2223 thus . 2224 Seyne .
 worde 2225 off inst. of on-to 2226 folowys 2227 perreyced 2228 vnto 2229
 longis 2232 trow 2234 myche 2235 not farther 2236 wysdome . nouȝt
 2237 os 2238 But ȝyt 2239 Vnto 2240 here 2241 sey . vnto . faders 2242
 longys . whyche . gouerne om. 2243 longys 2244 wysdome . a om. 2246
 Wher . be h. longis 2248 folowys . seyne 2249 in om. 2251 mankynde 2252
 Intent 2256 Os . tho om. 2258 one god 2259 emsample . we om. 2260
 puttis 2261 wryghys þeroff in . of om. 2262 sey 2266 phylstens 2267
 parylle 2268 þat thyng 2273 ordynd 2274 burdyne 2275 and secunde
 2278 Entyrferryd whyche 2279 Os . thynkis . longis 2280 occupythe 2281 in
 hyre . hyme 2284 shortly inst. of as of this book 2285 Off þis dysputacione .
 thynkis . it om. 2286 Seyne 2287 vnto . mynde 2288 Know 2289 haue .
 þeis masters alle b. 2290 inspecyally 2291 yt vaylys 2292 standis now m.
 2294 gode oste 2295 naken om. meyd 2296 are 2297 after om. 2298
 whedyr 2299 & off hys progressyone 2300 At alle tymes þis l. 2301 any
 2303 ffrome hyr reasons he cowde 2304 Vnto . ffelows . thus om. 2305 vnto
 2309 off one 2310 leue . hys sone ys 2311 holy goste . knytter 2312 dyed
 2313 elensyd be theme 2314 Vnto 2315 hartely . from 2317 sey now ȝe
 2318 aunswerd . new 2320 kepe 2321 perlous 2323 leyue 2324 and plato .
 sudiorne 2327 purchase . hem om. vntrewe 2328 haue inst. of shulde 2330
 fulle grete 2331 gloryous p. 2332 forgyff 2333 lorde not 2334 Os . pyteus .
 þou om. 2337 mayntyne & s. yt.
 2339—2345 follow after V, 329. Vv. 1—63 of the V. book are wanting.
 Book V. begins v. 421.
 2339 martyryzed . I om. 2344 loke . þat f. 2345 gladdis alle men . be.

[V.]

64 complent 65 alle om. credylyte 66 emprours hart . to ffaynte 67 speke
 68 coviete 69 dyspytyous 71 truste 73 experyence 74 reyvdyd . al om.
 worldly 76 ioye om. longis vnto 77 pepulle 78 sey . haue 81 þe om. (twice)
 82 bene 83 heder om. 84 mykkelle 85 Lat . you om. 86 losse 87 Thynk
 88 Be not . losse 89 lyfte . hartis 92 stand . hartlesse 93 be astunnyd 95
 myȝt haue bene 96 fare . though om. boundyne . w. a lyne 97 gyue 98 vaylythe
 99 maister om. 100 þat I spake off 101 he om. begane 102 Vnto . came 103
 Thys 106 ȝe 107 & in þe a. 109 Indewyd . þat s. þat þei 111 To inst. of Tyl
 þat 113 or 114 reasone . be₂ om. 115 neuer 116 wer 117 velanye 118

wage 119 than . worldys 120 it om. 121 wot not 122 makis . in a trauunce
 123 semys now, it om. 124 spekis . whyche hang & was rent 125 to þe p.
 126 no purchace 127 as om. solemnyte 128 makis 129 curyalyte 130
 mystely harde h. speke 131 mye bowels begane to; sore om. 134 proferde
 135 refusse 136 renouns 137 3owe . knowe 138 þeyr row bowe 139 3e .
 preue 141 hys byllesyd p. 142 mankynd . hyme inst. of now. 143 Vnto 145
 burne & put to destresse 146 xalle 3e 147 to om. hartis 148 baptyme 149
 off vs he 150 felows . Intent 151 syttis 153 wylle forsake 155 and om.
 156 wolde haue falne 157 chorlys 158 more in 160 tho om. 161 seyde
 162 now om. hastily 164 saturne 165 þat þeis renegattis þat 166 grece
 167 nor 169 rosyne 171 Vnto . any 172 dye 173 very om. 174 & se my-
 selue þat yt be d. 175 done . xalle 176 3ow . in om. handes 177 vnto 178
 mythy . bandes 179 boodes . nor . her om. 180 gyue . hem om. vylenye
 181 be 182 escape . no 184 vnto askis 185 fast now one thys 186 haue
 187 no mo w. more om. 189 cum and aske 3oure mede 190 drawne . velanye
 191 Vnto . wrastelde not per-ageyne 192 eye 193 dare now 194 þeis mene
 196 nor 198 felows . now comfort 199 any 201 ledys vs 202 are gaddyrd
 203 In hevyne a loyffulle 204 haue . frome 206 myrroure 209 dye 211 a .
 warke 212 causys . and f. eke . it om. induthe 213 marke 214 cryestes
 stepps sewys 217 wasshyne 219 this om. 220 now om. 221 off-tyme 223
 & euer-more xalle rewe 225 ys now 226 seyne . must vs dye 228 for om. lye
 230 are purched 233 for goddis loue . syttis 234 crosse 235 to hyme for vs
 þat ys 237 lyvynge . are 240 weshyd 241 baptyme . þe better 243 prayr
 244 þat thyng 245 wylle 247 ffor alle þis mey he do ffor he 248 lovys . euery
 250 3e 251 may om. 252 be 253 on om. 254 3e 256 dye . luff 257 þe h.
 258 xalle 260 seruffys 263 þat þei suffyr ffor god to theyr g. m. 264 leffe þis d.
 troste euer one 3oure c. 265 þat om. 267 fyer purge many 269 are 270
 water eke . fonte 271 are puregyd . full clene inst. of I wene 272 þat dye os
 273 are . beleue 275 dye 276 callys 277 There (fore om.) . knyghys 278
 clayme now 279 Be 281 ware 282 cam 283 bound . euene om. 284 as om.
 myzt 285 One a . payrde 286 he 287 hym-selue inst. of tho 288 one 289
 fyer . are . heppe 290 gane . among 291 renne feche and leppe 292 not om.
 293 bende . feyte . threw . fyer 294 and full. eke om. 298 now to hyme þat
 he wolde 299 lengare 300 go 301 graunte 303 nor c. . of berd 304 bowys
 feyr and bent 305 fayre om. 306 makis . þe om. 307 þis fyer 308 before
 styll þan myzt 309 mene seyde om. cryed alle-vey thus 310 knew neuer erre
 312 now om. no-maner 313 forto 314 thei om. 315 Vnto . gane 316 dyed
 317 sememyng 319 body . eke om. 320 colours 321 þis saw þe pepulle 324
 Myche folke 326 solempne 329 endis . martyrdome . evyn inst. of right.

Then follow IV, 2339—2345, and the Colophon: Explicit 4^{us} liber huius
 beatissime vite virginis devotissime Katerine martiris. Incipit prosa in 5^{um} lib-
 rum in folio sequenti (but this prologue, v. 1—63, is wanting; v. 64—322 form
 the end of the 4th book; 330—420 are wanting).

421 lewhe . hard 423 vnto 424 What þat . þus me 425 make 429 If om. 431
 chaunchors xalle . no reste 432 myche . weste 436 Suffythe 438 a 439 full
 3erne 440 dye 441 langage 444 þou inst. of that 445 synge . right om. Intent
 446 represent 447 be . ful om. 449 know or I 453 My . wolde wylle 455 Or .
 thyng om. 456 xuld 457 þei xalle 459 full wele wordy . ful om. 460 beleue
 462 no man . yt cane 463 to om. 464 Vnto . & eke to 466 þis . werkis .
 mastrye 467 so om. 469 & grete e. 471 Stand lyke . þat flye about 472 Os
 474 vnelene . xalle 475 ymage 476 querdome 478 shakyd 480 worlde 481
 a om. 482 feynyd 483 but veyne and feynynge flatorye 484 it om. als f. 485
 xalle 486 honord wyth 487 chylder . cum 488 xalle . þer make 490 frome
 491 dewls . stande om. 492 repte 493 nor 494 leyff . leue 496 sir om. 497
 neuere om. ffor to 498 be bettyr at esse 499 statute 500 thynk 502 colours
 503 Vnto . wylle gyue 506 hele . comforthe 507 Nor nouzt aveylle . nor 508
 longis 510 þat yt . leue 511 as a thyng prophytabile . receue 512 vnto a
 513 a om. 514 before 515 groundyd . mysse 518 Leue 520 wylle not 521

xalle . nor arte 526 Thane 528 benyngly 529 Os . semys 530 xalle 531 Ioy
 or dethe . what 3e 532 3ow 533 xalle . grete d. 534 þe hye m. 536 Os 537
 Redressys 538 Spredis . ther-too 539 chosse yt must 540 avaylys . not om.
 542 at my p. at om. pryse 543 xalle . shortly 546 encrease 547 xalle
 548 peple . be 549 hartis are 551 passe 553 xalle be 556 he sle flyght curse
 or b. 557 skyls 558 myscheyfis 559 suffyrd . myche 560 Whyls . lyvyd 561
 ful om. 562 haue om. 564 But and . cum 566 gyffyng ensample . of very p.
 567 any 568 purposyd . 569 and his l. 571 and r. 574 xalle we haue 575
 offerd . vnto 576 vndefylde 577 And om. 580-81 transp. 583 vsys 584
 pover . settis . grete om. 585 sore 586 in ffyer 587 xallt þou 589 threttis 592
 frome 593 menyne 594 pi . xalle 597 xalle . leyue 599 fynde 600 frome .
 xalle 602 the om. 603 nere 605 geyt jardis 606 eke om. ful om. 607 right
 om. 608 meyd . modir om. 609 3e xalle 611 feese 612 speke . bedleeme 613
 Nor . galale 614 rather hyr 615 þat mey be besye p. 617 takyne 619 yrne .
 mey 620 bet 622 bett . spous 623 trustis . cum from 626 rune 627 purchyd
 628 vnto 630 I that I 631 I thank 632 þat om. senttis 634 as om. 635
 euer & more 638 among þe 639 þe betyrs very 640 meyd 641 holde erysye
 whyche 3e be in f. 642 now calle 643 xalle . or els 644 Or 645 þus ageyne
 646 strengare 647 suffyr 648 wheper 649 vnshamfulle 650 wyll 651 thi
 om. 652 Bethynk 653 mast sle & bryng ouzt adaw 655 kepe 656 dye &
 passe pis worlde fulle wele I know 657 folow 658 nor done 659 and In alle
 662 bound 665 hy 666 whane þat we are in 667 wythowtyne any 668 xalle
 669 in happ . hastily 670 shew inst. of fulfille 671 suffyr 672 a om. 674
 þat þei take . hyr lede 675 And put hyr 676 hyre 677 seyð þat she fowle
 fylthe in dede 679 for to 680 gyue . ne om. 682 myzt 684 þat om. 685
 wythouzt 686 any maner 687 any 688 commaundment 690 ryddyne . menee
 691 land 697 leue . lyke 698 from 700 of om. 701 lord om. commandis
 702 decesse . sobur 703 xalle 704 now om. 705 rynnys 707 comforthet
 709 kepte 711 dyd crepte 712 cornars 713 are þei mervelyd 715 men .
 cuntre 716 Sprong . þer inst. of soore 717 from 718 frome 719 Iayls 720
 sertyne . dungeone 721 goth aboutt 722 thydyngis . cum vnto . eyre 724
 meyd . any 728 And she þerfor in presone lyggyng to be shent 730 land ryd-
 yng 732 nor 733 hungure 734 Þeis wer þe last wordyes that he seythe 735
 gyue . deythe 736 pyte 740 studdye 742 And to . þus prevyly ; ful om. 743
 folke 744 by . peye 746 sey 747 of om. wey 748 gloterous nor drunkyn
 749 plesys 750 I had bene 752 sene . drewe 753 wolde sey 754 mykkylle
 dolle 756 my hart . there om. begynnys to 761 cum evyne as god had hyme
 762 nobulle 763 councele 764 and leedyr 765 jung folk 766 porphyre
 story 768 she seyð porphyre . be 769 be . myche . aveyll 770 concelle 771
 trubbylde now newly . the om. 772 cane inst. of may . nor 773 or . begynnys
 776 tho om. 777 nedis now see þis meyd 778 Ordnye 779 gyf . ynowgh 780
 3ow myne owne mane 781 þis lady vnto . for to g. 782 nor so rowgh 783 wyth
 hyr or els I must 784 my hart 785 Porphyre 786 purvey 787 dorse xalle .
 vndoo 789 and I 790 xalle . 791 ffor wyth . I haue bene 792 thynkis .
 suffrys 793 oryble bet . frome 794 no . do 795 oftyme . ouer 796 Seyn .
 hard 799 that om. lesure 801 gyfts . gyue 803 chambur . you om. 804
 Cum 805 whane 3e here me c. 806 are c. . porphyre 808 right om. seys oure
 storye lyer 809 came 810 sawe 811 ffele . doun om. wythouzt 812 to om.
 a bene 813 þe 814 saw þer so wonderly bryght 815 wyttis are gone 816
 falne 818 felt . seys 819 þe s. 820 Thane . vnto 822 borne 823 he om. 824
 Be 825 haue calde . to hys 826 ffor many cawses now to thys place 827 tyed
 829 saw . syed 833 myche 834 whyls . þat om. 837 and inst. of than . ane
 nowre 838 comforth 839 thei om. 840 lyghte inst. of delight 841 eke om.
 842 gyffyng . vnto 844 numbur 849 cane om. 850 frome 852 systre . þeis
 853 xalle 854 Os . be 855 xalle . a om. 856 Vnto . man þan 857 Whyls . in
 hyr hand þer syttyng 860 xalle . wryttyne 861 serys 862 wryzt 863 þe b.
 864 wyzte 865 þat from . þe xalle no more desevyr 867 þe t. . that om. receyue
 þis 868 olde men vnto hyr ageyne 869 syttis 870 O quene 871 askis 875

haue om. 876 powro . councele 877 þat porow þeir f. b. 878 xalle 880 hathe
 þeis folke . take 881 hart . ful om. 884 haue hard 886 dare vysyt hyr . now
 om. þe fere 887 thus om. 888 wyth-ouȝt 891 soo om. 892 veytalle 893
 soo om. 894 storys . dyuerse 895 frome 896 Whedyr bodely . for om. 897
 seȝyt Awstynse seys 898 fathers 900 seys 901 it is om. þat suche 902 nur-
 ryshyd . erthe 904 þe erthe 905 þe s. 906 wher he trettis off mervyll 907
 donne 908 mayde om. gan hyr 910 but om. 914 wythouȝte . rowthe 915
 þis p. . levyd she þis ys trewthe 917 in presone 918 sawe a. 919 cum 920
 aungels 921 meydens 922 falne 924 Dowgher loke vp he seyde . se ȝowe 929
 Thynk . leue . hart 931 a hart . xalle 932 oure . or . parte from 933 numbur .
 peple . xalle 934 a 935 ffrom . mawmentry 936 sudiorne 939 to she se
 940 þan returnyd . preyare . tho om. 941 tresure 942 lyst 943 hartly 944
 þe hee 946 hys causys was . to an ende . 947 þe emproure I mene 948 cum .
 he om. begane 949 be hys knyghys 950 be . wyll 951 xalle . it om. 952
 may be provyd . gaue 954 pepulle 955 are . hath 956 Vnto 957 thynk 960
 concyanatryx 961 wyche . harte 962 ys she so sore infyxt 963 from . to om.
 966 for hyr 967 bene pynyd 968 lokyd . quyke . ruddy 969 angure . hart .
 nere sleȝthe 972 Traytours . xalle . euerychone 974 commendment 978 xalle
 979 that we forbyddyd 980 bynde In yerne 981 meyd 983 þou art an em-
 prour a grete so mene . 984 ordynd . 985 þi law 986 xuldis 987 doste . dost
 ageynst 989 me om. nor 990 in a nother 992 massyngers . be hand 994
 caust 997 aungels þis mete my lorde 999 he nolde suffyre 1001 nor . deseuyr
 1002 dublynes 1003 þat stode 1005 hart 1006 hyd in . nevyne 1009 a
 kyngis doughter to 1010 scruffe 1011 borne 1012 are . al om. 1013 wychys
 1014 kepe ȝe 1015 petyr mary 1016 are traytours prevyd 1019 gyffe 1021
 maysters 1024 soo om. 1025 worde . vngodely 1026 cawsys 1027 no wyght-
 standyng so haue I 1028 but I must 1029 peple . stand 1031 deme 1032
 denye 1033 eke om. 1036 els wyth yerne xalle 1037 meydne 1040 any
 1042 to þe 1043 ffor hys loue I ame redy to dye one k. 1045 þow þat . cum .
 owre 1047 nor 1048 gruche . and my 1049 honowrment 1050 a om.
 changoure 1051 ledys 1052 are 1053 commys . bryngis . þe preue 1054
 seys . bybylle 1056 Vnto . þe 1057 seene 1060 Bryne 1063 kyne calvys and
 shepe 1064 offyr 1066 Os 1068 vengabylle 1069 Thane xalle I go to that
 hye felicyte 1070 To hym þat was offyrd In caluery one a hylle 1071 after
 þis inst. of yet efte 1072 heer-after om. dede 1073 Not 1074 Intent 1075
 þi dedys . are 1077 landis 1078 And take 1079 sleȝ 1080 gare inst. of
 make . smyt 1081 be . thanne om. solennlye 1082 Vnto 1083 that om.
 wryȝt 1084 a dawe 1086 grete om. 1089 standis 1093 semys . meydne
 1095 That om. hyr here . prophytess 1096 cummannde 1098 ys seyde 1099
 storys 1101 fyȝt 1102 vnto 1103 pusaunce 1104 ytale . yngland . spayne
 om. 1105 þat inst. of tho 1107 dyscomfyt hym 1109 Os 1110 þat . borne
 1112 yt kweue 1113 þat ener 1114 þeis 1116 he þan . now om. 1117 falne
 1119 suffer þus a woman here to 1121 wyche 1123 lyvers . xalle 1126 cryed
 he 1127 me thynkis as men . ware 1129 barkyt . þe 1130 done one þe crosse
 1131 gane he . to om. 1133 Irne . plumbys 1135 bet now þan beffore 1136
 disputiously 1137 þer 1139 say 1141 pepulle 1142 bunc . in to 1143 can
 1144 not ȝe 1145 Vnto 1147 It om. toore 1148 aske . are 1154 farther
 1155 Seyne . holdyne 1156 vnto 1157 þat vylensly 1158 we trowe 1159 ȝe
 mey 1160 longis . vnto þe h. 1161 Seyne . why om. 1162 wyde . counceild
 1164 ȝow lese þe god in ȝow plentyously sett 1165 erytage . lese 1167
 solemnly . that om. hart 1168 ȝe lede nor rewle 1169 to ȝoure awaylle 1171
 Remembyr 1173 feyne ȝet . syne 1175 mereye askyng 1177 shynes 1179
 be . done 1180 wh. þat now 1181 Hyer in þeyr deys r. none canne 1186 þe
 bewte 1187 þat om. 1190 not ȝe 1193 in erthe wyth w. 1194 ffor þat longis
 to vs off equyte and ryght 1195 pr. of god allmyȝt 1196 Ihesu owr lord . xulde .
 soo om. 1197 wyll so sone 1198 as om. 1200 hye deyte 1201 bees (?) 1203
 þat þei 1204 nor synnews . nor 1207 vncleue 1208 lechyry 1209 or w.
 1212 it om. 1213 fleche . shal om. 1215 & om. hoot (be- om.) 1216 soo om.

for to 1219 ffolow . go 1221 bodely 1222 baptyme . þe 1223 traweylle
 1225 Vnto 1226 scape . after 1227 sawe 1228 I b. þis thyng and troste 1229
 sers as for 1230 dyrknes 1231 dye 1232 rysyng . ageyne om. 1233 hard
 1237 Wythdrew . frome 1238 any 1241 mayr . ledare . pepulle 1242 Vnto
 1243 mykkylle 1244 Crewlle in hys a. . any 1245 dyspyteous vengabulle wyth-
 owtyne 1246 Cursate . oute om. 1247 saw 1248 in fere 1249 O lorde em-
 prour . wysdome 1252 standis stunnid os þouȝ . wart 1253 lystyne to 1254
 sawe 1256 Intent 1257 horrybile 1259 lat . ons 1260 thanne om. 1261
 vnto 1262 master 1264 marke 1265 countroller . clarke 1269 whelys . xalle
 1272 xalle 1273 xalle 1275 xalle . neyls 1276 ffestynynd 1277 berys 1278
 hart . nor 1279 cummys neuer 1280 in peecys 1281 knowe 1282 xalle
 1283 vnto . whele 1284 xalle 1285 yche 1286 xalle cum . cowrsys 1287
 xalle 1288 & þus make 1289 made and þat now 1290 betwene þem ryght .
 þat om. 1291 be 1292 þat hathe 1294 cursate . xalle 1295 zendyr 1297 whels
 1298 þis cursate 1299 are calde 1300 Carpentars . smythys als f. 1301 leue
 now we 1302 muste 1303 it om. cum . thyrd 1304 whels are . xulde 1305
 Kataryne om. 1308 reende om. seythe 1309 grutythe 1310 ascape 1312
 meyr . ymagenyng 1313 stodyd . hart . mynde 1314 ffor to 1315 from 1316
 the om. 1318 hyer l. . dressyd 1320 chaunge 1321 Hyer yne 1323 bothe om.
 1324 ys alle-mythy 1326 hydyst nevyr 1327 þe folk . crye to 1328 preyar .
 mast 1329 Intent 1331 leyvyne 1333 vppone now 1334 power now 1335
 easye 1337 ys 1338 I lord . not om. for no 1339 stand 1340 thynkis . my
 hart 1341 wordys & tungis 1344 Þis prey I shortly in a clawse 1346 And om.
 1347 from 1348 clepe 1349 hart 1353 frome 1354 per 1355 orrybylle 1356
 owre the om. 1357 or viii . ffyre 1358 flew 1359 sprong 1360 Sum man had
 1361 men om. are 1362 fyer flew . wonderfully 1363 myche . takyne . fesse
 1364 hart 1365 from . veniance . styrte 1367 Makeyng . preyare 1368 hys
 electe 1370 colde 1371 What . ffett 1372 fyer by 1375 lady is om. 1376 fyer
 flewe 1377 oftyme 1378 Nor . nor 1380 alle om. 1383 and leyd . alle om.
 row 1384 caytyffis . shrow be shrowe (rith om.) 1385 heroddys numbyr 1386
 holy om. reste 1387 sobere preyare 1388 & þe fyer . bothe om. 1389 To þe p.
 for om. 1390 cummyng 1391 Myche folke 1393 vp ageyne frome þat grete
 frey 1394 al om. 1395 are . þe hethyne 1396 Who are . who can . for-
 heddis 1397 folk . hathe . fyer 1398 Sum men . nor 1399 þe too . þe tother
 1402 feyls and falsys . now om. 1403 abytt 1406 repugnys vnto (is om.) 1409
 cyclops smythys 1410 makis 1411 it om. thy 1414 thynk 1416 one 1417
 What vnto . borne 1419 before 1420 what so 1421 cum 1423 wrechyd
 man . hathe . I . om. 1424 turmentis . wrongly om. 1425 wraystyls 1426
 makis . & wyth 1427 pyne 1429 Whedyr 1430 fyztis . & þat 1433 bestyalyte
 vnto mans kynd 1435 wyrkis . wonderfully 1439 Smote 1440 þe om. com-
 munars 1441 lye zendyr 1442 hym þen 1444 I counseyl om. 1445 rede þe
 1447 whyls 1448 forgyue 1449 xalt 1450 hard 1452 ȝe spake 1453 on om.
 thys 1454 ȝe 1455 orrybulle . þat om. 1456 nor 1458 gracuous om. þe
 kyng 1459 frome þis fondnesse 1461 Os 1463 haue brookyne a whele 1464
 nygramansye 1465 ordyne 1466 ȝoure 1467 art þou one þat oure goddis now
 dysdene 1468 I count not at shyttyn bene 1469 forsakis 1470 takis 1472
 byddys hys sarvantis 1473 sotelle . yrene and wyre 1474 xalle . right om.
 1475 þei xalle do yt 1476 L. sorow . and woo om. wolde he þat hys w. xulde
 1477 lat . now om. 1478 done loke ȝe hyr take 1479 þer wher traytours 1480
 haue om. deseruffe and teye 1481 smyȝt 1482 lye . hungre 1484 Os . þeis
 men 1485 pullyd off 1486 frome 1487 vaynys . doth ryse 1488 alle raggyd
 alle blodye 1489 ȝyt vnto 1490 preying . ryght om. 1491 pyller . moost om.
 1492 vnto 1495 be 1496 cum 1500 orrybulle 1501 þis holy lyue to turne
 ageyne to synne 1502 or 1503 xalle 1505 Prow ȝow 1506 vnto 1507 hathe
 forsakyne 1509 þe loue perfore off oure k. 1511 Os . make ȝow 1512 whosse .
 ȝe suffyr 1513 hartely . desesse 1514 last 1515 þer-wyth 1516 haue 1517
 se 1518 mery 1519 When ; þat om. cum before 1520 land 1521 husband .
 he be 1522 amend alle þing 1523 dwellys 1524 haue . non om. dyversyte

1525 vnto 1526 be . frome . neste 1528 stabelyd myztly 1529 knyghys
 1531 boustyous . & strokis eke 1532 and bad þem make annende 1533 and
 off hyr teetis wyztly rende 1534 Os . and after wyth g. p. 1535 smyt 1536
 god om. strenthys hyr to susteyne 1537 þeis grete peynys þat she suffyrd for
 hys ryzt 1538 ys she . ys to þe lyzt 1540 at om. 1541 on þe wedynsday
 1543 vnberyd om. 1544 lyggyng ther fulle whyzt & eke fulle rede 1545 to
 om. wynd yt 1547 And om. myche . thouzt. 1548 come and om. vnto
 1549 gone . byedyng 1550 porphyr . ryght h. 1553 callyd . vnto 1554 ful
 om. dyrk. 1555 Kateryne 1557 in hyr lynnynce evyne as 1558 oyntment
 1559 bawmyd 1560 preyr . and wyth 1561 layd . in to 1562 after om. ys
 þer made 1564 falle . suche 1565 berye þis same bodye 1566 off suspeccyone .
 folke 1567 Wer be-restyd 1568 porphyr 1570 Sythe . a lorde . xulde 1572
 wyffys . dyd þou off 1573 hast . euer inst. of sore 1574 Intent 1575 þus inst.
 of now . doo om. 1576 thyne Ire 1577 leue þi b. leue þis deuoracyone 1578
 shul om. 1580 þat om. me thouzt yt no treasone 1581 But . vnto 1582 vnto
 1584 ȝyt to. Robbers . are 1585 haue 1587 neyburs 1589 kynde . reasone
 1590 byrdys 1592 wryghys . auctors 1593 nor eke 1594 Vnto mankynd .
 deffowle 1597 porphyr . are 1598 maxence hart 1601 Soundyd 1604 O I .
 lyue 1606 vnto . gyue 1609 stykkyd . credylle yt had bene þe beste 1610
 ffor om. reyyvd . alle my 1611 porphyr now off 1612 A om. Porphyr here
 þe b. 1613 good om. gentel om. and þus ys he loste 1614 decevyd be .
 begynnys 1615 rest wyth-in 1616 standis . comforthe 1618 deceyvyd . now
 she ys 1619 & þat grevys 1620 My hart waxys hevy as any 1621 comburde .
 thouzt 1622 porphyr 1623 kyngdome 1624 xulde no man þe make 1625
 haue . grete om. 1626 deceyvyd my w. ȝyt deceyff not 1629 þeys 1631
 myche lentylle 1632 now þis cursyd 1635 hyme þus sone . renye 1636 þe
 olde trewe 1637 fathers kept ouzt off 1640 & be 1641 examenyd 1642
 þouzt þis 1643 dulfully 1644 seyde . how om. my gode 1645 soddenly . false
 vnto . meserye 1646 hoppe . fulle inst. of not but 1647 faver hyme now . þis
 1649 Whyche þat 1650 renegattis 1652 seyde þei þus . stode now there 1653
 knowne 1654 þat inst. of and . whyche þat þis s. meyd 1655 honourd 1656
 god we om. or cane 1657 hym om. we wylle . scruffe 1658 smyt . þou om.
 turment 1660 so swete 1661 departe . hartely 1662 ffrome 1663 ffrome 1664
 are peyd xalle þou þan 1665 hartis are . thus om. 1666 as om. stabulle os þe
 1672 are . vnto 1673 porphyr . now om. had 1674 he dyd comforthe . mythy
 1675 Vnto . preysyd where 1676 wordyes 1677 nereand 1678 þeis pepylle .
 thus om. 1679 lat 1680 perylle . councele . befall 1681 Vnto . lande 1682
 menbyrs 1683 vnderstande 1684 comforthe . or 1688 Wherefore evyne after
 1689 now om. 1690 erytykis . ffyer 1691 martyrdome 1692 ware þei . one
 not 1694 endyght 1696 crystys 1697 auctor . in this legent doth t. 1698
 sothfastnes . wryztis 1702 clepyd 1704 sottelle . vnto 1705 sottelle entent
 1706 gylte . seyth 1707 porphyr off . & off 1708 from . madis 1709 socery
 1710 resort off þeir mother 1711 father 1712 persewe þe knottis þat þe knytt
 1713 & om. 1714 lyue 1715 Not-wythstandyng þi 1716 councele . vnto .
 fondnes 1717 magyke . & om. wepe sore 1718 þou was 1719 gyue . porphyr .
 ewle concelle 1720 Lat thyne eyne wyth water now þi cheekis reylle 1722
 sey . cause þat blode ys spylte 1724 an om. on-om. to þe holy 1725 folow
 1726 on-om. 1729 forgyue 1730 xalt . alle þe b. a. 1731 the om. 1732 lengare
 1734 are 1736 one þis maner I wylle deuyss 1737 þi . to be smyte 1739
 warand 1740 sure . yehe 1741 fleche . or els 1742 caruffe 1743 thyne . ye
 repent 1744 meke 1745 dye 1746 was om. hangyd one þe croce 1747 þis
 dey . be 1748 vnto weredyd aye 1749 ffor om. se . and alle 1750 on om.
 to dethe now 1751 wene þe falle ys m. 1752 men om. ys 1753 Sum men
 wene . dye 1754 fulle s. 1755 deceyvabill 1756-7 transp. 1756 I sey om.
 We lesse þat thyngh whyche ys fulle of stryff 1757 land 1759 per xalle we
 haue grete Ioy 1760 aboundys 1761 ys sykker yt had 1765 lengar 1767
 thyne lawe 1769 haue 1770 So wylle I desyre for to se hys face 1771 & here
 þe angels whych are 1772 þem . woltis astunyd 1775 castels þat standis by

zone roche 1776 aproche 1777 spent 1778 alle pis . shape om. 1779 þe
 whyche wyth h. b. 1780 O. wrechyd s. weshyd 1781 bothe inst. of ful 1782
 folows 1783 Cum 1784 abyed 1785 nor 1786 þe sentence . gyffne 1787 as I
 was avysyde 1789 folow . preys 1791 so wrechydly 1792 velanye 1793 mothers
 & maydyns 1794 my 1796 inclyne 1799 hathe . & whyche 1802 pat om.
 1803 þowr goddis . myche 1804 swere . be 1805 wythouzt 1806 if om. yow
 om. ryght so 1807 was s. she came . þe 1808 xulde dye, and þer ys þe man to
 1809 smyzt . preyd of 1810 or . frome 1811 sey 1812 In om. medytacyons
 vnto 1813 hir₂ om. 1815 eyne and handis 1816 Wyth meke harte she seyð
 wyth sharpe sounne 1817 whosse . vnto nevyne 1819 þat trustis 1821 num-
 byrd 1822 þe collage among 1824 me now wyth 1826 lorde for thy 1828
 haue . remembrance 1829 ellis om. in hys 1831 hartely 1832 any relese
 1833 þem theyr 1834 Os 1836 pestelence nor . myzt 1837 and; om. nor o.
 meserye 1838 alle om. ewle 1839 but lord off þi mercy þem gyue 1840 off h.
 1841 landis abyed 1842 Lord graunt 1845 vnto 1846 tyrant . nor 1848
 To þe I. cr. 1849 Vnto 1850 þi aungels 1851 Cum . frome . þi 1852 vnto
 1853 now inst. of lord . thy 1854 fleshyppe 1855 Among þi . þat . so bryght
 1856 scarsly 1857 preyre . 1858 frome . harde þer . swounne 1859 noysse . can
 1860 My . spoosse 1861 cum . vnto 1862 þou arte fulle stedfastly ffeste 1863
 yt ys 1864 now redy 1866 xallt 1867 abyede 1868 thy eternyte 1869
 before 1870 are 1871 are ordynyd þi sowle eke . for om. 1873 xalt 1874
 dowgher inst. of in haste 1876 wylle one þe 1877 harte thy 1882 forgyue
 1883 Confermyng . hem eke om. 1885 vnto . smyther 1886 calde to a f. .
 now om. 1887 thou om. 1889 & stand 1890 forgyue 1891 þis c. 1893
 holly 1895 & rage 1896 þe bodye 1897 þer lere 1900 clennes at þat t.
 1901 no noþer . rune 1902 os 1904 thyng om. wyth-in . þing om. came
 1905 plentyously . wattyrd 1906 as a most meruelusse 1907 Here 1909
 meydynhed . berys 1910 wytnes 1912 was sene eke 1914 lyke . wynggis
 1915 þus auctorus 1916 toke . bare 1919 gaue 1920 Vnto . luwys . ledys
 1921 cryestis 1923 poulle . makis 1924 longis 1926 gyed 1927 Vnto þe .
 standis 1928 for vs . hastely 1929 wysshe 1931 be 1933 seye standys
 1934 frome Arabye . of lond om. a fulle 1935 In om. Iurneys 1936 My . seys
 1937 gyedys . pusance 1938 þei labure . it om. 1939 are but f. here . hathe
 made þat seys. The next 2 stanzas are transp. 1947 are 1948 Are . vnknowne
 1949 knowlege 1950 þat yt runnythe oyle 1952-3 Whyche men suffyr one
 bodye or one bone, þis holy oyle wylle hole þem anone 1940 The passyone of
 þis holy meyd as þe story s. 1941 Was one . right om. 1942 seynde 1945 þe
 same 1946 auctours 1954—1981 These last stanzas are wanting; Ar. has
 instead the following 2 stanzas :

Hyr dey ffals newlye euery 3ere
 Þe xxvth dey of þe monythe off nouemyr,
 Suche tyme as she was martyryzed here,
 Os wytnesse berys euery kalender.
 He þat thys lyue wryttis, redis or els cvthe here,
 Cryste, kyng off glorye, graunt þem þat grace
 Off alle þeir synnes mercy to purchase.

Þorow þe Intercessyone of oure lady seynt mary
 & þe medys off þe passyone of þis glorys meyd,
 bryng vs, lorde, to þi hevygly concistory
 ffor whom most specyally þis holy meydyn preyd.
 Now, glorious Katerine, be to vs an eyde
 And specyalle succur yne þis perlous pylgrymage,
 þat after þis lyue we mey cum to thy cage.
 Amen.

INDEX OF NAMES.

By THOMAS AUSTIN.

- ADRIAN, Roman Emperor, A.D. 117—138, 57/664.
- Adrian, a hermit monk, 173/43; lived sixty years on a rock, 175/80; Virgin Mary appears to him, 177/118; is sent by her to St. Katharine, 179/148; swoons, 185/240; tells the Virgin Mary that he will obey her, 187/272; is told how to find St. Katharine, 189; reaches Alexandria, and finds Katharine, 193; tells her of the Virgin, 199, etc.; tells her of Christ, 213, etc.; asks Katharine to go with him, 217; quits Alexandria with her, 219; finds his cell has disappeared, 219; enters the Holy City with Katharine, 227; baptizes her in Heaven, 239; teaches Katharine, 250.
- Alexandria, in Egypt, one of the chief cities of King Costus, 21; its Divinity School, 25; built by Babel, and called the Lesser Babylon, 49; Athanasius writes of its foundation, 51; its former kings, 51, etc.; Parliament held there, 59; Katharine's coronation there, 61; a Parliament meets there to consider on her marriage, 83, etc.; the city gathers to hear Katharine's discussion with the Philosophers, 302.
- Alfragan confuted by Katharine, 325.
- Amalek, a city in Cyprus, and the port of Syria, 21/64; is one of King Costus's chief cities, 21; ruled by a Mayor, 23; its name is changed to Famagost, 47.
- Amphos of Athens, 303.
- Ananias, Earl of Joppa, comes to Alexandria, 83/81; urges Katharine to marry, 107.
- Antioch, in Syria, is built by Seleucus, 51/574. It was the capital of the Greek kings.
- Antiochus I., or Soter, King of Syria, B.C. 280—261, 51/566, 53/612; he was the son of Seleucus I.—Antiochus II., or Theos, B.C. 261—246, 51/570, 53/615; son of preceding.—Antiochus III., or Great, B.C. 223—187, 55; son of Seleucus Callinicus.—Antiochus IV., or Epiphanes, B.C. 175—164, 55/637; he was the son of Antiochus the Great, and had also the name of Epimanes.—Antiochus V., or Eupator, B.C. 164—152, 55/638; son of preceding.—Antiochus VII., or Sidetes, B.C. 137—126, 55/642; he was the son of Demetrius Soter. — Antiochus VIII., or Grypus, B.C. 125—96, 57/659; he was the son of Demetrius Nicator.—Antiochus, son of Archibelon, 57/676.
- Antigonus, King of Asia, B.C. 316—301, 57/676. He was one of Alexander's Generals.
- Apollonius of Tyre, 55/633. He was a Stoic Philosopher, and lived in the time of Ptolemy Auletes.
- Appollymas is silenced and converted by Katharine, 321.
- Arabia, subdued by Alexander the Great, 53/590.
- Archenon, King of Alexandria, 57/675.
- Archibelon, King of Alexandria, 57/675.
- Arnenia, King of, Katharine's uncle, argues with her, 295.
- Arrek finds St. Katharine's Life, 5; englished it, 7/57; has a vision, 9; Capgrave adapts Arrek's version, 17; turned into Latin St.

- Athanasius's *Life of St. Katharine*, 13/173, 15/199; died at Lynn, 15/219; was Rector of St. Pancras, London, 15/227.
- Aryot disputes with Katharine, 330; converted by her, 336; openly professes Christianity, 342.
- Astenes argues with Katharine, 306, etc.; is silenced, 309.
- Athanasius, St., teaches St. Katharine, and is converted by her, 11/128; wrote her *Life*, 11; was afterwards Bishop of Alexandria, 13/162; is Katharine's Chancellor, 33/261.
- Athens, Duke of, argues with Katharine, 153.
- Babel, Sultan of Assyria and Egypt, built Alexandria, or Babylon the Less, 49.
- Baldake, Prince of Palestine, urges Katharine to marry, 147.
- Borus, King of Alexandria, 57/678.
- Candia, 73, 75.
- Capgrave takes St. Katharine's *Life* from Arrek's version, 17; born at Lynn, 17.
- Cappadocia, Prince of, comes to Alexandria, 83/80, 99.
- Clamadour, Duke of Antioch, addresses Katharine, 135.
- Clarus, Prince of Cappadocia, comes to Alexandria, 83/80; urges Katharine to marry, 99.
- Claudas I., King of Alexandria, 57/676; Claudas II., 57/679.
- Clement of Alexandria, A.D. 200, 25.
- Constantine, Lord of Britain, 265/112; is appealed to by the Romans, and drives out Maxentius, 267.
- Costus, King of Greece, father of St. Katharine, 17; a good man, 19; his chief cities, 21; is old at time of St. Katharine's birth, 29; builds her a palace, 35; dies, 43; is buried, 45.
- Cursates, Mayor of Alexandria, constructs wheels to tear Katharine to pieces, 379.
- Cyprus, part of King Costus's dominions, 17.
- Damascus, the Duke of, comes to the Parliament at Alexandria, 85, 119.
- Daniel, 111/518.
- Darius III., or Codomannus, King of Persia, conquered by Alexander, 53/589.
- Demetrius, King of Alexandria, 55/640; Demetrius I., or Soter, son of Seleucus IV., or Philopator, B.C. 162—150, 55/644.
- Diocletian, 264/83.
- Euclid, 41/387.
- Eugenius, Lord of Nicopolis, urges Katharine to marry, 149.
- Famagoost. See *Amalek*.
- Garaencen, the Duke of, comes to the Parliament at Alexandria, 85/85.
- Gorgalus, son of Antiochus I., 51/568.
- Greece, 17/1.
- Hercules, Prince of Paphon, 85/83; urges Katharine to marry, 113.
- Iaf. See *Joppa*.
- Janus, 282/642.
- Joppa, the Earl of, comes to Alexandria, 83/81, 107.
- Katharine, St., her *Life* written by St. Athanasius, 15; her father Costus, 19; born in her parents' old age, 29; her mother Meliades, 31; her teachers, 33; her father builds her a palace for study, 35; she learns the Seven Liberal Arts, 39; her pedigree, 57; is crowned at Alexandria, 61; her great goodness, 65; her people wish her to marry, 69; a Petition is sent to her, 73; a Parliament is called in reference to her marriage, 79; meaning of her name, 83; the Parliament individually addresses her on the necessity of marriage, 89, etc.; she craves delay, 93; is urged by her mother, 141; her beauty, 159; has an ideal husband, 165; her refusal

- angers her Lords, 169; the Monk Adrian seeks her by command of the Virgin Mary, 193, greets her, 195, tells of the Virgin, 199; she is told of Christ, 207, 215; Adrian asks Katharine to leave Alexandria with him, 217; she leaves the city, 219; sees the Heavenly City, 225, and is welcomed there, 227; is taken to Christ by the Virgin, 233; Christ orders her to be baptized, 235; is baptized in Heaven by Adrian, 239; is taken to Christ, 241; consents to wed Christ, 244; weds Christ, 246; Christ comforts her, 248; goes to Adrian's cell, and is taught by him, 251; the Virgin Mary visits her, 256; her death foretold, 258; is at Alexandria, 269; reproaches Maxentius for his idolatry, 279, etc.; refuses the Emperor's hand, 290; is imprisoned by him, 291; they try to convert her, 292, etc.; she is threatened with death, 295; prays for help, 299; gives up her heathen books, 304; argues with Astenes and silences him, 308; denounces the heathen gods, 310; expounds the Trinity, 315; effect of her arguments, 320; Appolymas questions her, 321; she converts him and Alfragan, 323, 328; the Emperor is wrath at her victory, 329; she disputes with Aryot, 330; converts him, 336; comforts the martyrs, 345; refuses to turn heathen, 352; declines a statue, 353; is flogged, 358; Angels visit her in prison, 361; the Queen's visit to her, 365; Christ visits her, 368; her death ordered, 375; torture wheels shattered at her prayer, 383; she comforts the Queen, 388; is sentenced to death, 397; is beheaded, 401; her tomb, 402; miracles there, 403.
- Lymason, Earl of, comes to Alexandria, 85/87.
- Lynn, in Norfolk, 15/219; Arrek died there, 15/219; Capgrave born there, 17/240.
- Madagdalus, son of Babel, succeeds him as King of Alexandria, 51/562.
- Mardemius, second son of Gorgalus, 51/577.
- Maxentius, Emperor of Rome, A.D. 306—312, his death, 11/155; made Emperor of Rome, 265; is a tyrant, 266; flees from Constantine, 267; flees to Persia, and becomes king, 267; orders Christians to be persecuted, 268; comes to Alexandria, 269; his edict against Christians, 270; festival on his birthday, 273; warns Katharine, 281; sends for Clerks to convict Katharine, 288; offers to wed Katharine if she recants, 289; threatens her with death, 295; reproaches his philosophers, 340; orders the converts to be burnt, 343; tries to win Katharine over, 349; orders her to be flogged, 358; imprisons her, 360; orders her death, 375; orders his wife to be tortured, 386, and beheaded, 389; threatens Porphyry with death, 392; has 200 knights beheaded, 394.
- Maximian, 264/82.
- Maximinus II. or Galerius, A.D. 305—314, 264/81; made ruler of the East, 265; dies in Sicily, 265/129.
- Meliades, daughter of King of Armenia, marries King Costus, and is mother of Katharine, 31; summons a Parliament, 47; agrees with those who want her daughter to wed, 75; the Monk Adrian seeks her, 193.
- Meliore, wife of Mardemius, 51/581.
- Nicopolis, ? in Africa, 149/1142.
- Northfolk, or Norfolk, 17/240.
- Origen, 25/130.
- Pancras, St., London, Arrek Rector there, 15.
- Pantænus, 25/127.
- Paphon, or Paphos, in Cyprus, 85/83.
- Phalon, King of Alexandria, marries Solaber, the daughter of Hadrian, 57/665.

- Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great, 51/583.
- Philo, *De Vita Theoretica*, 23/107.
- Philosophers summoned to argue with Katharine, 292.
- Porphyry visits Katharine in prison, 364; rebukes the Emperor, 390.
- Salence, the Duke of, comes to Alexandria, 85/85.
- Seleucus I., or Nicator, King of Alexandria, B.C. 306—281, 51/572; cousin of Alexander, 53/606; Seleucus II., or Callinicus, B.C. 246—226, 53/617; Seleucus III., or Ceraunus, son of Antiochus II., B.C. 226—223, 53/618; Seleucus IV., or Philopator, B.C. 187—175, 55/630.
- Severus, ruler of Lombardy, 265/106; raises an army against Maxentius, but is slain by his own men, 266.
- Solaber, daughter of Hadrian, marries Phalon, 57.
- Surry, or Assyria, 17/2, 51/569, 57/667.
- Tholome, or Ptolemy, the astronomer, 149/1155.
- Tyre, 77/1016.
- Valerius, a writer against marriage, 123/735.
- Virgin Mary appears to the Monk Adrian, 177, etc.; takes Katharine up to Christ, 233; gives directions for her baptism, 237.
- Zozymus, King of Alexandria, 57/674.

GLOSSARY.

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

- ACRISIA, *sb.* 218/802. See *Aurisia*.
 Afrayed, *pp.* ? assaulted, 262/32.
 Almyght, *adj.* almighty, 5/37.
 And, *conj.* if, 43/424, 144/1079.
 Apeyr, *vb. t.* impair, 106/469.
 Apposayle, *sb.* apposal, examination, 189/321.
 Appose, *vb. t.* examine, 40/405, 76/1008, 297/1127.
 Apryse, *sb.* price, value, 302/1279.
 A-rere, Arrere, *vb. t.* gain, win, 34/284.
 Armonye, *sb.* harmony in music, formed of symphony and euphony, 40/384.
 Arn, *vb.* first pers. pl. of present of *be*, 45/461.
 Arsmetryk, *sb.* arithmetic, 38/377.
 Arts, Seven Liberal, 39/365. They are Grammar, Rhetoric, Dialectic, Arithmetic, Music, Geometry, Astronomy.
 Asay, *sb.* trial, affliction, 24/119, 27/152.
 Asayle, *sb.* assail, assault, 19/33, 35/299.
 Astoynd, astounded, stupefied, 277/498, 281/611.
 Astronomy, 41/393.
 A-taast, A-taste, *vb. t.* test, try, 298/1145. O. Fr. *ataster*.
 Attaine, *vb. t.* attack, meddle with, 314/1639. Fr. *entamer*.
 Auctrix, *sb.* authoress, authority, 318/1757.
 Aurisia, *sb.* a disease of the eyes, 219/802. Gr. *ἀοραία*, blindness.
 Avysyon, *sb.* vision, 6/80. O. Fr. *Advision*, *avision*, vision, dream.
 Banne, *vb.* curse, 54/621, 97/301.
 Barn, *sb.* bosom, 383/1376.
 Bate, *sb.* strife, contention, 248/1293.
 Beck, *sb.* brook, 401/1901.
 Be-dene, *adv.* together, 74/961, 169/1478, 246/1256.
 Behest, *vb. t.* promise, 256/1445, 277/479.
 Behest, *sb.* promise, vow, 277/486.
 Beye, *sb.* bracelet, 63/774.
 Beyn, *adj.* bain, ready, 210/670.
 Beuerych, *sb.* beverage (of melted lead poured down throat), 280/586.
 Biled, *pp.* built, 310/1531.
 Bille, *sb.* letter, proclamation, 78/1027; article, item, 213/691.
 Blaspheme, *sb.* blasphemy, 34/286.
 Ble, Blee, *sb.* complexion, 166/1432.
 Blowe, *vb.* blow, publish, divulge, 320/1811.
 Blynne, *vb.* blin, cease, 27/168.
 Boteras, *sb.* buttress, 127/799; "bot-races" on page 126.
 Boystysnesse, *sb.* boisterousness, outburst, 34/293.
 Bredes, Bredys, *sb.* boards of a book, 7/86, 9/94.
 Bregge, *vb. t.* abridge, 327/2041.
 Brethel, *adj.* brittle, 310/1531.
 Brymbyl-tree, *sb.* bramble-tree, 20/53.
 Busk, *vb.* hasten, 219/792.
 But if, *conj.* unless, 73/936, 939, 250/1330.
 Buxum, *adj.* obedient, 18/16.
 Byrd, *sb.* a byrd in your fest (fist), 93/250.
 Calle, *sb.* caul, net for head, cap, 168/1482.
 Carnacion, *sb.* incarnation, 332/2187.
 Carpe, *vb.* speak, converse, 113/560; prate too much, 121/703.
 Carpynge, *sb.* talk, conversation, 63/755.
 Cast, *vb. t.* purpose, devise, 77/1007.

- Cessyons, *sb.* sessions, 71/894.
 Chalcedony, its virtues, 249.
 Chaueles, Chaules, *sb.* jowls, jaw-bones, 8/97, 9/97.
 Chauncelere, *sb.* chancellor, secretary, 10/140.
 Chepe, *sb.* cheap: "Grete chepe," good bargains, 59/713.
 Ches, Chees, *vb.* chose, 222/860.
 Cheuentayn, Cheuetayn, *sb.* chief-tain, 130/850.
 Circumlocucion, *sb.* evasive way of speaking, 312/1591, 322/1887.
 Circumuent, *pp.* circumvented, 300/1208.
 Clappe, *vb.* *t.* strike, smite, 281/621.
 Claryfy, *vb.* *t.* purify, make pure, 231/993.
 Clatere, Clatyr, *vb.* chatter, talk noisily, 140/1006.
 Cloggis, *sb.* blocks, logs, 347/290.
 Clospe, *sb.* clasp of a book, 8/101.
 Clynk, *vb.* *t.* jangle, 364/796.
 Collusyon, *sb.* deceit, trickery, 236/1102.
 Colour, *sb.* disguise, pretext, 307/1426, 313/1606.
 Comered, *pp.* cumbered, encumbered, 168/1481, 392/1621.
 Comerous, Comorous, *adj.* cumbrous, stupefied, stupid, 185/249, 276/455.
 Communycacyon, *sb.* converse, conversation, 335/2276.
 Comoun, *vb.* *t.* common, make common, communicate, 161/1352, 1358, 315/1673.
 Compendiously, *adv.* briefly, 350/378.
 Concionatrix, *sb.* *f.* oratress, public speaker, 302/1269, 370/960.
 Conclude, *vb.* *t.* redargue, confute, 293/1002, 300/1211.
 Concludyng, *sb.* conclusion, summing up, 322/1894.
 Conclusyon, *sb.* end, close, 258/1456.
 Concourely, *adv.* in concord, together, 328/2080.
 Confeder, *vb.* *t.* confederate, 315/1678.
 Conferme, *vb.* *t.* confirm, strengthen, 400/1883.
 Consent, *pp.* consented, agreed, 46/488.
 Conservacye, *sb.* protection, 271/316.
 Conuersacioun, *sb.* way of life, habits, 10/148.
 Convict, *vb.* *t.* convince, confute, 289/867, 300/1213, 303/1283, 307/1417, 308/1442.
 Corown, *sb.* crown, 240/1176; *vb.* 242/1185.
 Cote, *sb.* cot, covering, *fig.* of the body, 4/31. Compare *Kage*, 332/2180.
 Coude, *vb.* could, understood, 32/266.
 Counterollere, *sb.* controller, 380/1265.
 Crede, *sb.* creed of St. Athanasius, 12/167.
 Creke, *vb.* make a disturbance, 140/1006, 276/453.
 Creyn, *vb.* cry, 227/945.
 Cristen, *sb.* Christianity, 293/1978.
 Croke, *vb.*; crept, *pp.* 195/404.
 Cruelnesse, *sb.* cruelty, 54/625.
 Crysm, *sb.* holy oil for baptism, 235/1082.
 Crystendom, *sb.* Christianity, baptism, 43/442.
 Cure, *sb.* care, 32/267.
 Cyse, *sb.* assize, 71/894.
 Dalf, *vb.* delved, dug, 8/115. See *Delue*.
 Dame, *sb.* dam, 308/1445.
 Dawe, *sb.* brynge . . . of dawe or a daw, put out of life, kill, 374/1084.
 Dawe, *vb.* *int.* dawn, 363/773.
 Debate, *sb.* strife, contention, 18/43.
 Debater, *sb.* quarreler, bully, 310/1519.
 Declaracyon, *sb.* explanation, tale, 50/558.
 Declynacion, *sb.* declension of nouns, 33/259.
 Delectacyon, *sb.* delight, pleasure, 245/1238, 262/23.
 Delice, Delys, *vb.* delight, 213/683, 316/1686. Fr. *délice*.
 Delirament, *sb.* raving, insanity, 307/1421.
 Deliuier, *vb.* *t.* bring to end, decide 74/966.
 Delue, *vb.* dig, 150/1166.

- Deme, *vb.* deem, give sentence, 105/444.
- Demene, *vb. t.* manage, conduct, 165/1418. O. Fr. *Demener*.
- Dempt, *vb.* deemed, judged, 258/1464.
- Depute, *sb.* deputy, 105/431.
- Dere, *vb. t.* harm, injure, 115/613, 248/1316.
- Despouse, *vb. t.* bestow, betroth, wed, 233/1028.
- Dever, *sb.* devoir, duty, 235/1075.
- Deyn, *vb.* die, 229/980, 347/275.
- Deyte, *sb.* deity, godship, 286/764.
- Dialelike, *sb.* dialectic, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/372.
- Dilatacyon, *sb.* extension, prolongations, 335/2278.
- Diserse, *vb.* differ, discord, 59/688.
- Do, *vb. t.* do off, take off, 239/1131.
- Dome, *sb.* opinion, judgment, 35/314.
- Domynacyon, *sb.* rule, dominions, 270/265.
- Doole, *sb.* sorrow, trouble, 33/257, 69/866, 314/1643.
- Doubilnesse, *sb.* duplicity, 301/1234, 308/1444.
- Drane, *sb.* drone bee, 261/3, 262/21.
- Dreedful, *adj.* timid, fearful, 67/844.
- Dresse, *vb.* address, apply, 83/70.
- Dreynt, *pp.* drowned, 206/592.
- Dun, *sb.* dun is in the myre, *Prov.* 143/1046: *i. e.* "I am at a loss," or "in a fix," *Dun* being a horse's name.
- Dwere, *sb.* doubt, fear, 27/178, 89/172, 105/418, 271/304, 284/698, 299/1165, 308/1461.
- Dyme, *sb.* dime, *lit.* tithe, 289/850. *L. Decima*, Fr. *Dime*.
- Dysdayn, *adj.* disdainful, 161/1330.
- Eem, *sb.* uncle, 87/122; "hem," on page 186.
- Egal, *adj.* equal, 334/2269. Fr. *Egal*.
- Egaly, *adv.* equally, 346/249.
- Eke, *adj.* ilk, same, 57/662.
- Elenk, *sb.* proof, main point of argument, 128/825. Gr. *ἔλεγχος*.
- Elmesse, *sb.* almesse, alms, 175/82.
- Em, *sb.* uncle, 124/753. See *Eem*.
- Emprende, *vb. t.* imprint, 205/580, 260/1488, 277/493.
- Enbraas, Enbrace, *vb. t.* embrace, engage, 71/897.
- Endoos, *vb. t.* ? endorse, magnify; ? endow, 132/882.
- Enforce, *vb. t.* strengthen, 299/1183.
- Enprende. See *Emprende*.
- Entayle, *sb.* intaglio, 45/486.
- Enterfered, *pp.* mingled, mixed, 335/2278.
- Entermete, *vb.* interpose, meddle, 303/1294. Fr. *S'entremettre*.
- Erde, *sb.* earth, 242/1193, 250/1341.
- Erdely, *adj.* earthly, 252/1371.
- Erdely, *adv.* on earth, 250/1337.
- Ereeth, *vb. t.* eareth, plougheth, 27/157; herb on p. 26.
- Erthely, *adv.* on earth, 305/1375. See *Erdely*.
- Euphonye, *sb.* euphony, in music, 40/385. See *LANE*, *Continuation of Chaucer*, p. 20. "Melodie proceeds out of musickes euphonic."
- Ex, *sb.* axe, 18/46.
- Faculte, *sb.* college, body of professors, 37/319.
- Fane, *sb.* vane, weathercock, 277/494.
- Faste-by, hard by, 275/439.
- Faunt, *sb.* child, 275/444.
- Febilte, *sb.* feebleness, 181/166.
- Feer, *adv.* far, 284/698.
- Feere, *vb. t.* fear, frighten, 249/1316.
- Feet, *adj.* feat, nice, pretty, 21/77.
- Fele, *adj.* many, 256/1438.
- Felle, *sb.* skin, 181/159, 245/1243.
- Fere, in-fere, in company, 59/717.
- Fese, *vb. t.* attack, annoy, 115/590, 321/1860, 323/1916, 358/611.
- Filiacion, *sb.* affiliation, 335/2297.
- Fix, *adj.* fixed, inveterate, 370/962.
- Fle, *vb. t.* flea, flay, 357/581.
- Fleete, Flete, *vb. t.* float (as a witch), 95/276.
- Flyght, *vb.* strive, contend, 107/460.
- Fonge, *vb. t.* grasp, 327/2042.
- Fonned, *adj.* fond, foolish, 110/528, 283/679, 349/341.
- Fonnednesse, *sb.* fondness, folly, 395/1716.
- Font, *sb.* source, spring, 251/1347.
- For, *prep.* on account of, to prevent, 37/330.

- For-barre, *vb. t.* forbear, decline, reject, 326/2004.
 Forby, *adv.* by, along, 219/798, 241/1155.
 Forfete, *vb.* incur a charge, be guilty, 269/229.
 Forfeiture, *sb.* crime, error, 41/390.
 Forlore, *pp.* forgotter, 14/201.
 Forth-brynger, *sb.* parent, 28/186.
 Fother, *sb.* weight of about a ton, 20/59, 27/180, 61/742.
 Foulhed, *sb.* foulhead, foulness, 67/831.
 Foyson, *sb.* plenty, 61/732. Fr. *Foison*.
 Fulfilled, Fulfyllyd, *pp.* filled full, 22/110.
 Fundament, *sb.* grounds of belief, 330/2124.
 Fy, sey fy, say fie, 342/152. Comp. Fr. *Faire fi de*.
 Fyn, *sb.* fine, end, 76/1019. Fr. *Fin*: Lat. *Finis*.
 Gaule, *vb.* bawl, yell, 98/325.
 Geometry, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 41/386.
 Gette, *sb.* ? get, prize, 269/236. This may be *Jette*, fashion, but the subst. *Get* is used thus.
 Glose, *sb.* lie, 295/1041, 327/2028; gloss, 304/1334.
 Glose, *vb. t.* deceive with fair words, 349/335.
 Gnast, Knast, *sb.* spark, snuff of candle, used in derogatory sense, 26/159, 174/70. Compare *Snast*, in E. Anglia.
 Gonne, *sb.* ? any warlike weapon, 292/952. See *Gune*.
 Goost, Gost, *sb.* flesh & gost (spirit of life), 114/596; Holy Ghost, 35/301, 170/3, 334/2246.
 Gramer, *sb.* one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/366.
 Gret-namyd, *adj.* great-named, renowned, 132/881.
 Grew, *sb.* Greek—the language, 82/56.
 Gripe, Gryppe, *vb. t.* get hold of, 145/1085; catch, get the better of, 147/1116.
 Grope, *vb. t.* seek into, 175/73; explore, 231/995.
 Grotch. See *Grutch*.
 Grubbe, *vb.* grub up, 222/863.
 Grugge, *vb.* he gruggeth with his teeth, grinds his teeth, 381/1309: compare next.
 Grutch, *vb.* murmur, take in dud-geon, 67/851, 97/301. O. Fr. *Gruchier*.
 Gryf, *sb.* graft, 155/1247.
 Gune, *sb.* gun, 52/592. It is applied in *Cath. Angl.* to an engine for throwing stones, or one for attacking walls. See *Gonne*, above.
 Gye, *vb. t.* guide, 264/87.
 Hale, *sb.* hut, tent, 60/734. Properly a wattled hut. L. L. *Hala*.
 Hame, *sb.* ? skin, film, 239/1132.
 Hard, *vb. t.* harden, 297/1098.
 Hardyly, *adv.* hardily, surely, 87/131, 121/693, 203/544, 305/1348; firmly, 346/264.
 Hardynesse, *sb.* courage, boldness, 299/1177.
 Hatte, *vb.* be named, 47/491; “hyght” on p. 46.
 Haunt, *vb. t.* frequent, 301/1223.
 Heende, *sb.* end, death, 12/177.
 Helve, *sb.* handle of axe, *fig.* 18/46.
 Her, Here, their, 2/5, 6, 18/13, 30/225, 35/298, 267/185.
 Herburgage, *sb.* abode, dwelling, 331/2178. O. Fr. *Hébergage*.
 Herne, Hyrne, *sb.* nook, corner, 312/1587, 313/1622, 343/182, 352/438.
 Herr, Herre, *sb.* hinge, 132/891.
 Hethenese, *sb.* the heathen world, 21/80.
 Heyl, *vb. imp.* hail, 298/1133. It is used transitively for *Hail upon*.
 Hille, Hylle, *vb. t.* hele, wrap, cover, 30/227, 306/1379.
 Homager, *sb.* one that does homage, a subject, 19/21, 24.
 Hoore, *adv.* ere, before, 195/410.
 Hope, *sb.* expectation, 105/419.
 Horse, *sb.* grey horse, *prov.* 95/253.
 Houe, *vb.* ? loiter, ponder, 134/915.
 Hyght, *vb.* See *Hatte*.
 Hyng, *vb.* hung, 246/1273.
 Hyze, Yze, *sb.* eye, 65/817.
 Iape, *sb.* jest, 127/782.
 Ildes, *sb.* isles, 19/15.

- Impossible, *sb.* impossibility, 282/662.
- Indignacyon, *sb.* contempt, 89/170.
- Induction, *sb.* counsel, instruction, 401/1923.
- Inn, *sb.* abode, mansion, 278/539.
- Inquietude, *sb.* molestation, annoyance, 38/355.
- Insolible, *adj.* insoluble, insolvable, 316/1713.
- Intrusore, *sb.* intruder, 270/289.
- Iornay, *sb.* day of battle, battle, 97/296.
- Iust, Iusten, *vb.* joust, 116/623. O. Fr. *Jouste*. It is properly a combat between two knights, for honour.
- Kepe, *vb.* keep, intend, mean, 245/1246.
- Keye, *sb.* key, *fig.*: main defence, 20/71. *Clavis* also means "en-droit fermé," or fortified place.
- Knettere, *sb.* knitter, bond, 336/2311.
- Kynhod, *sb.* kindred, kinsfolk, 49/526; it is spelt "kynrode" on p. 48.
- Lame, *adj.* unsound, crippled, dishonoured, 48/537.
- Lappe, *sb.* lap of garment, 191/356.
- Laight, *vb.* *pp.* of *Lacchen*, got, 328/2062.
- Leeche, *vb.* leech, heal, 212/685.
- Leed, *sb.* lead, the metal, 348/306.
- Leke, *sb.* leak, "not worth a leke," 54/628.
- Leke, *vb.* *t.* like, please, 200/504, 318/1748.
- Leones, *sb.* lions, 111/518.
- Lette, *vb.* *t.* let go, abandon, 112/553.
- Lette, *sb.* let, hindrance, 35/312.
- Lette, *vb.* *t.* let, hinder, 266/153, 269/227.
- Lettyng, *sb.* hindrance, 36/330.
- Leue, *vb.* believe, 346/264, 273, 381/1301, 393/1659.
- Leve, *vb.* live, 42/424.
- Leuene, *sb.* lightning, 54/632, 369/938.
- Leuyng, *adj.* living, 345/237.
- Leuys, *sb.* leaves of a book, 329/2114.
- Lewed, *adj.* foolish, 313/1596.
- Lofte, on loft, aloft, above, in this world, 266/146.
- Lollard, used as a term of abuse, 191/327.
- Lomb, *sb.* lamb, 17/8.
- Loos, *sb.* honour, fame, 133/881. O. Fr. *Los*.
- Lope, *sb.* leap, 92/223.
- Lordles, *adj.* lordless, husbandless, 201/489.
- Losyd, *adj.* honoured, 16/7. See *Loos*.
- Loute, *vb.* bow in worship, kneel, 287/803, 320/1825.
- Low, *vb.* laughed, 352/421.
- Loy, Loyn, *pp.* lay, lain, 329/2090.
- Lyne, *vb.* *t.* lime, with bird-lime, 341/115.
- Lyn, Lyne, *vb.* cease, rest, 52/593, 76/1020.
- Magre, maugre, in spite of, 280/583.
- Male, *sb.* mail, trunk, 333/2219.
- Marred, *pp.* amazed, thunderstruck, 192/381, 206/610, 274/386, 322/1871, 323/1927. It seems to mean *senseless* on p. 322.
- Massager, *sb.* messenger, 324/1942. Fr. *Messenger*.
- Maument, *sb.* idol, 279/563.
- Maumentrye, *sb.* idolatry, 22/104, 45/477, 271/318. L. L. *Mahomeria*; O. Fr. *Mahomerie*.
- May, *sb.* maid, 297/1108, 302/1265.
- Meke, *adj.* meek, domesticated, 309/1475.
- Mene, Meny, *sb.* retinue, attendants, 72/936, 196/439, 269/252, 286/777. O. Fr. *Mesniee*, *Meyné*.
- Mere, *sb.* ? measure, 332/2203.
- Meuere, *sb.* mover, 319/1798.
- Mocyon, *sb.* motion, proposition, 151/1169, 316/1714.
- Modes, Modys, *sb.* moods of verbs, 32/259.
- Modir-naked, *adj.* naked as a new-born child, 358/608.
- Moone, *sb.* moan, 314/1629.
- Motyf, *sb.* argument, idea, 321/1856, 322/1884, 324/1954, 333/2227.
- Mowled, *vb.* rusted, 40/399.
- Musyk, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/379.

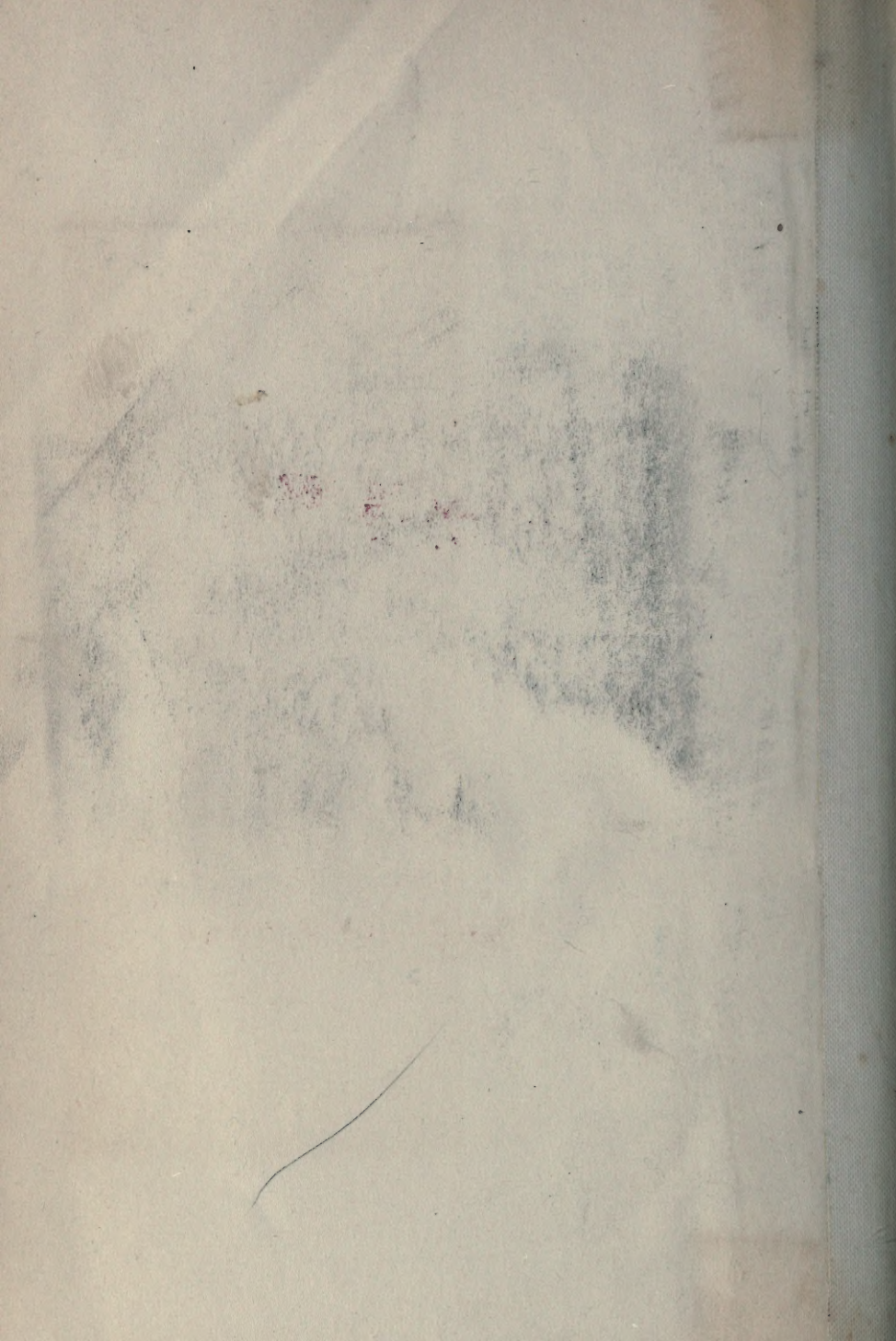
- Myn, Mynne, *adj.* less, 49/546, 104/431, 387/1501.
 Myne, *sb.* mine, 270/290.
 Mysdraught, *sb.* misbehaviour, 65/821.
 Mysty, *adj.* dim, uncertain, 312/1566.
 Nase, *sb.* nose, 159/1321.
 Ne were, were it not for, 113/555.
 Noblehed, *sb.* nobleness, nobility, 171/9.
 Not, *vb.* ne wot, know not, 141/1031.
 Noye, *sb.* annoyance, trouble, 313/1600.
 Noysed, *pp.* celebrated, 330/2120.
 Nugacyon, *sb.* trifling, 329/2115.
 Lat. *Nugacio*.
 Nyce, *adj.* foolish, effeminate, 65/822, 108/493; fastidious, 310/1522.
 Nygramauncy, *sb.* necromancy, 289/859.
 Omager, *sb.* See *Homager*.
 Onlykly, *adj.* unlikely, unlike, not in keeping, 217/782.
 Onreuerently, *adv.* irreverently, 285/752.
 Onrightful, *adj.* unjust, 291/926.
 Onsekernesse, *sb.* uncertainty, mutability, 69/874.
 Oppresse, *vb.* t. keep down, keep under, overcome, 101/365, 289/863.
 Ouere-leede, *vb.* t. draw over, win over, master, 328/2060.
 Ouere-thinke, *vb.* t. repent; compare "remember it," 369/951.
 Overt, *sb.* overture, 248/1302.
 Palustre, *sb.* palæstra, arena, 288/830.
 Partye, *sb.* side, 322/1893. Fr. *Parti*.
 Party . . . party, partly . . . partly, 289/859.
 Passyble, *adj.* possible, 316/1712.
 Passyon, *sb.* suffering, death, 393/1668.
 Pathed, *pp.* paved, 347/285.
 Pere, *sb.* pear, value of a pear, fig, 133/907.
 Peroracyon, *sb.* peroration, close of speech. 278/536.
 Peyse, *vb.* t. pese, weigh, 301/1238.
 Fr. *Peser*.
 Plat, *adj.* flat, flatly, used as *adv.*, plat and pleyne, 22/106, 139/996, 315/1654.
 Plesauns, *sb.* plesaunce, pleasure, 2/6.
 Plete, *vb.* plead, 164/1400, 300/1189.
 L. L. *Placitare, Placitum*.
 Pletyng, *sb.* pleading, 170/1496.
 Pluk vp your hertis, pluck up your courage, 103/402.
 Plumb, Plumme, *sb.* plum, plummet, 375/1133.
 Point, *vb.* t. cause to appear, 316/1698.
 Portrature, *sb.* figure (in Euclid), 41/387.
 Potestate, *sb.* potentate, 361/692.
 Povert, *sb.* poverty, poor people, 61/731.
 Pregnantly, *adv.* significantly, 122/721, 154/1237.
 Processe, *sb.* matter, cause, 264/76, 306/1401. Comp. French *Procès*.
 Procession of the Holy Ghost, 335/2299.
 Progression, *sb.* a royal progress, or visit, 187/280.
 Promission, *sb.* promise, 256/1429.
 Prone, *vb.* int. attain, reach, 367/874.
 Prouost, *sb.* viceroy, proconsul, 294/1028.
 Prow, *sb.* profit, 111/536, 115/592.
 O. Fr. *Prou*.
 Pryme, *sb.* prime; the first Roman Catholic service (after Lauds), 12/168.
 Pryme, *sb.* spring, 316/1698.
 Puple, *sb.* people, 119/669.
 Purchase, *sb.* purchase, hold, grasp, 161/1333; compare nautical usage.
 Puttyng at the stoon, putting the stone, 63/763.
 Quayll, *vb.* int. fail, give way, cower, 294/1019, 318/1775.
 Queke, *vb.* t. quick, quicken, make alive, 319/1801.
 Quenchere, *sb.* q. of vice, extinguisher, 65/820.
 Qwat, what, 6/67.
 Qweche, which, 12/167, 80/19.

- Qwert, qvert, *adj.* sound, hearty, 108/482.
 Qwhy, why, 6/84.
 Qwome, whom, 6/71.
- Race, *vb. t.* tear, destroy, 290/907.
 Rake-stele, *sb.* rake-handle, 326/2009.
 Rap, *vb.* rynge ne rap, at a door, 189/312.
 Rayle, Raylle, *vb. t.* array, 245/1230, 294/1020. Compare *Nightrail*.
 Rayle, *vb. t.* range in line, 377/1168.
 Real, *adj.* royal, 153/1213, 181/181. O. Fr. *Real*.
 Regalte, *sb.* regality, royalty, royal power, 122/726.
 Regalye, *sb.* regality, royalty, 286/778.
 Remembre, *vb. t.* remind (with two accusatives), 253/1379.
 Remene, *vb. t.* interpret, 335/2271.
 Reney, *vb. t.* reject, disown, 293/976, 294/1036. Fr. *Renier*.
 Repayr, *sb.* repair, resort, 22/81. Fr. *Repaire*.
 Replashed, replenished, 278/527.
 Replicacion, *sb.* reply, 310/1508.
 Resultans, *sb.* resultance, origin, 213/704.
 Retoryk, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/369.
 Reuers, *vb. t.* upset, overcome, 306/1396.
 Reve, *sb.* steward, delegate, 251/1321.
 Revers, *vb. int.* ? be perverse, 355/529.
 Reyle, *vb. int.* rail, flow, 395/1720.
 Ront, Runte, *vb.* ? scold, 177/96.
 Roos, Rowse, *sb.* rouse, stir, 298/1140.
 Rought, Rowth, recked, cared, 253/1370.
 Row, *adj.* rough, 72/942, 94/262, 114/590, 200/495.
 Rowne, *vb.* round into ear, whisper, 329/2096.
 Ryf, Ryffe, *adj.* rife, evident, 246/1280.
- Sadly, *adv.* soberly, in a settled way, 16/5, 315/1662.
 Sadnesse, *sb.* soberness, steadiness, 148/1151, 290/896.
 Sale, *sb.* opportunity, 208/635. See *Seel*.
 Saluatour, *sb.* Salvator, Saviour, 270/270.
 Sare, *adj.* sore, used as *adv.*, 242/1188.
 Sarsynrye, *sb.* Saracenry, 68/877.
 Sarysbury playn, "let him go walk on Salisbury plain," *prov.* 265/119.
 Saunsfayle, without fail, 245/1227.
 Say, *vb.* saw, 10/136; sayn, 252/1383.
 Scar, *sb.* chink, 361/712. Comp. *Armor. Skarr*.
 Schape, *pp.* shaped, prepared, 246/1257.
 Scysme, *sb.* schism, party disturbance, 106/454, 108/486, 292/951.
 Seel, *sb.* opportunity, occasion, 121/682. A.S. *Sæl*.
 Selkouth, *adj.* strange, 179/128.
 Sempiterne, *adj.* eternal, everlasting, immortal, 282/647, 312/1586. L. *Sempiternus*.
 Sencyall, *adj.* essential, 294/1012.
 Sere *sb.* sir, 275/423, 441. Fr. *Sire, sieur*.
 Serge, *vb.* search, 319/1803.
 Servage, *sb.* servitude, subjection, 57/654.
 Sewe, *vb.* pursue, follow, 2/7, 60/728.
 Shene, *adj.* radiant, beautiful, 279/541.
 Shew, *vb. t.* display, 30/224; *vb. int.* 31/224.
 Shides, *sb.* burning brands, fire-brands, 81/31.
 Shour, *sb.* shower, squall, in fig. sense, 265/102, 298/1132.
 Shrew, *sb.* wicked person, 47/511, 59/702.
 Sisme, *sb.* schism, 107/454.
 Skyl, *sb.* skill, reason, 59/702.
 Slughed, *adj.* slugged, slothful, 263/42.
 Slyde, *vb. int.* slip, be forgotten, 72/935, 91/213.
 Smytyng, *sb.* smiting, striking (of
- Sacrifye, *vb.* sacrifice, 274/389. Fr. *Sacrifier*.

- musical instruments, as harp), 40/384.
- Snebbe, Snybe, *vb. t.* snub, reprove, 187/261.
- Soke, Sook, *sb.* suck, 2/2.
- Solen, Solenne, Soleyn, *adj.* solemn, terrible, 132/908; sacred, 317/1720.
- Solennyte, *sb.* solemnity, 265/123, 273/385.
- Sonde, *sb.* message, dispensation, 12/194, 334/2255.
- Soonde, *sb.* See *Sonde*.
- Soothsaw, *vb.* speak truthfully, 311/1545.
- Sophem, *sb.* sophism, sophistical argument, 185/228.
- Sophie, *sb.* learning, 372/1020. Gr. *σοφία*.
- Sowdyoures, *sb.* soldiers, paid troops, 102/400. O. Fr. *Soldaier*: comp. M. Fr. *soudoyer*.
- Speker, *sb.* speaker, one who presides at a meeting, 84/107.
- Sperd, Spered, Sperryd, *pp.* barred, closed, shut, 38/353, 275/432.
- Spousesse, *sb.* wife, 231/999.
- Spyce, *sb.* species, manner, 2/20. Fr. *Espèce*.
- Staker, *vb.* stagger, hover, 278/525.
- Stakeryng, *sb.* staggering, 388/1510.
- Sterue, *vb. int.* starve, die, 157/1285, 295/1039.
- Stenene, *sb.* voice, 193/361.
- Stodieres, *sb.* studyers, students, 37/350.
- Stoyne, *vb. t.* astound, stupify, 9/109, 287/799, 320/1837.
- Surveour, *sb.* surveyor, overlooker, 33/263.
- Swap, *sb.* blow, at a blow = at once, 189/313.
- Swete, *vb.* sweat, distil, 403/1959.
- Swow, *sb.* swoon, deep sleep, 209/649, 242/1214, 252/1353.
- Symphonye, *sb.* symphony, related to harmony, 40/385.
- Syse, *sb.* size, conceit, self-esteem, 128/845.
- Sysed, *pp.* app. set, 338/17. Comp. Fr. *assis*.
- Tarie, *vb. t.* tarry, delay, 291/930.
- Tary, *sb.* tarry, delay, long study, 12/186.
- Tast, *vb.* try, 287/815. O. Fr. *Taster*, L. L. *Tastare*. See *Ataast*.
- Teche, *vb. t.* teach, 291/925.
- Teene, *sb.* anguish, pain, 7/77: Tene, 6/77, 12/186.
- Tetched, *pp.* taught, 108/494.
- Tetys, *sb.* fro þe tetys, or teats, *i. e.* from infancy, 30/242.
- Thenswart, thenceward, *i. e.* to depart thence, 231/1015.
- There = where, 47/506.
- Poo, those, 246/1254.
- Thurify, *vb.* burn incense, sacrifice, 349/350.
- Tight, *adv.* tite, quickly, 350/385.
- Touch, *vb. t.* touch on, allude to, 331/2157.
- Trace, *vb. t.* track, rove through, 90/193; *vb. int.* (of a dance), 275/421.
- Trappure, *sb.* trapping, array, order, 240/1166. Fr. *Trappure*.
- Trayn, *sb.* treachery, artifice, 267/185.
- Treacle, *sb.* theriac remedy, 173/34.
- Turbe, Turbel, *vb. t.* disturb, trouble, 49/524.
- Twyst, *vb. t.* turn aside, 22/103; destroy, 131/866.
- Vengeable, *adj.* vindictive, 310/1521.
- Veniable, *adj.* vindictive, revengeful, 307/1414. See *Vengeable*.
- Vinolent, *adj.* given to wine, 311/1533.
- Vlix, *sb.* Uliesses, as a crafty person, 302/1271.
- Vnch, *sb.* inch, 129/819.
- Wade, *vb.* dive, flounder about, 120/703, 314/1624.
- Wale, *sb.* within the wale = on board of, 117/642. The wales are thick planks which give the form of a vessel.
- Walk, *vb.* be off, go, 210/672.
- Want, *vb. int.* be lacking, fail, 80/26.
- Wared, *pp.* guarded against, saved, 100/378.
- Warn, *vb. t.* warn a gate, forbid it, 61/737.
- Wave, *vb. int.* waver, totter, 183/199, 207/593, 306/1377, 350/390.

- Wave, *sb.* wave, 89/178.
 Wayr, *sb.* wear, lock, 22/96; thorow
 wey & thorow wayr, by road and
 by river.
 Weech, Wetcche, *sb.* watch, in wecch,
awake; 125/754.
 Weede, *sb.* weed, clothes, array,
 229/952, 259/1484.
 Weent, Went, *sb.* bent of mind,
 course, 291/929.
 Weniaunce, *sb.* vengeance, 10/153.
 Werre, worse, 263/55.
 Weyue, *vb.* *t.* waive, decline, 354/
 510.
 Whanse, Wanyse, *vb.* *int.* vanish,
 disa; pear, 47/487.
 Wilfully, *adv.* willingly, of free will,
 47/516, 305/1361.
 Wisse, *vb.* *t.* teach, 402/1929.
 Wonder, *adj.* wonderful, 289/860;
 as *adv.* 313/1608.
 Wondyrly, *adv.* wonderfully, 242/
 1201.
 Wone, *sb.* house, abode, in wones
 = at home, 18/26, 25/141; pro-
 perty, 163/1370. In 25/141 it
 seems almost equivalent to *once*.
 Word, *sb.* world, 53/600.
 Wordly, *adj.* worldly, 299/1162.
 Woundyr, *adj.* wonderful, 42/424.
 Wrake, *sb.* wreck, harm, ruin, 18/
 29, 69/866.
 Wreche, Wreke, *sb.* wrath, venge-
 ance, 326/2014, 339/61.
 Wyte, *sb.* weight, 301/1238.
 Xalle, shall, 40/390.
 Ya, 3a, yea, 123/738.
 Yave, *vb.* gave, 5/22.
 Yche, *adj.* ilk, same, 50/575. See
Eke.
 Ydiotes, *sb.* ignorant people, unlet-
 tered men, 35/288.
 Yeede, 3ede, *vb.* yede, went, 45/466.
 Yefte, *sb.* gift, 271/299.
 Ylde, *sb.* isle, 72/941.
 Yongthed, 3onthyd, *pp.* youthed,
 made youthful, 179/126.
 Youe, *pp.* given, 7/63.
 Yryn, *sb.* iron, 24/121; "yern" on
 p. 25.
 3aue, *vb.* *t.* gave, 4/22.
 3erne, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, 352/
 439.
 3onthyd, *pp.* made youthful, 178/
 126.
 3oue, *pp.* given, 6/63.
 3yng, *adj.* young, 40/411.





PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.80 Original series. no. 80;100

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

